HP LaserJet MFP E72525, E72530, E72535

Service Manual



www.hp.com/videos/laserjet
www.hp.com/support/lje72500mfp

HP LaserJet MFP E72525, E72530, E72535

Service Manual

Copyright and License

© Copyright 2018 HP Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 9, 4/2019

Trademark Credits

Adobe®, Acrobat®, and PostScript® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows® XP, and Windows Vista® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Conventions used in this guide

TIP: Tips provide helpful hints or shortcuts.

NOTE: Notes provide important information to explain a concept or to complete a task.

CAUTION: Cautions indicate procedures that you should follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.

WARNING! Warnings alert you to specific procedures that you should follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

Table of contents

1 Product specifications and description 1
Printer views 2
Printer front view 2
Printer back view 3
Interface ports 4
Control-panel view 5
Inner finisher view 6
Stapler/stacker finisher view 6
Booklet finisher view 7
Specifications 8
Technical specifications 8
Supported operating systems 11
Printer dimensions 13
Mobile printing solutions 13
Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions 14
Environmental specifications 14
General Specifications 14
Print specifications 17
Scan specification 18
Copy specification 20
Paper handling specification 22
Software and solution specification 30
Supplies 31
Service parts 31
Optional 31
Feeding system 33
Feeding system overview 33
Main components and functions 34
Cassette (Tray 1, 2, 4, 5) 36
Pickup unit 37
Registration (regi) unit 38
Tray 1 (multipurpose (MP) tray) feed assembly 38

Image creation 40
Printing process overview 40
Imaging unit 40
Fuser unit 43
Fuser unit overview 43
Fuser unit drive 44
Fuser unit temperature control 44
Laser scanner assembly 46
Laser scanner assembly overview 46
Laser scanning optical path 47
Laser synchronizing detectors 47
Drive system 49
Drive motors 49
Main Drive Unit (OPC/DEVE/Registration/Tray 1/Feed) 50
Pickup Drive 53
Duct Drive 54
Fuser/Exit Drive 55
Toner supply drive 56
Flatbed Scanner System 57
Flatbed scanner system overview 57
Scanning system components 59
Caution for moving the scanner 65
Flow Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) z bundles (GX) 67
Flow (GX) ADF overview 67
Sensors 68
Ultra Sonic Multi-feed (USM) 69
Flow ADF drive system 69
Flow ADF Registration 72
Flow ADF Scanning Position 73
Mixed Size Original (MSO) 73
Dual sensor cleaning method 74
Flow ADF z bundles (GX) 75
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) dn bundles (LX) 76
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (LX) overview 76
Electrical parts location 76
LX ADF Registration 77
LX ADF drive system 77
LX ADF Scanning position 80
LX ADF Specification 80
Hardware configuration 81
Main controller (main board) 84

Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS; Type 5) / Switching Mode Power Supply (SMPS) 89
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4) GX ADF models 90
Fuser drive board (FDB) 91
High-voltage power supply (HVPS) board 92
Eraser PCA 94
Waste Sensor PCA 95
CRUM PCA 95
Toner CRUM joint PCA 96
Paper Size sensor PCA 96
Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit 97
Inner finisher 101

2 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacemnt 105
Support portals and documentation resources 106
For additional service and support 106
Channel partner resources 106
How to search for printer documentation 107
How to search WISE for printer documentation 107
How to search GCSN for printer documentation 107
Order parts, accessories, and supplies 110
Ordering 110
Orderable parts 110
How to use the parts list and diagrams 110
ESD precautions 110
Service approach 111
Precautions when replacing parts 111
Before performing service 112
After performing service 112
Post-service test 112
Maintenance 114
Machine cleaning for maintenance 114
Main parts 120
Main assembly 120
Upper and lower exit 243
Cassette Tray 2 249
Cassette Tray 3 251
Main engine frame 253
Fuser exit drive 275
Registration sub-frame 277
Main frame pickup 1 and 2 286
Main frame pickup 288

Main frame pickup, upper 296
Main frame 298
Cover 323
Right door 331
Tray 1 346
Right door exit 352
Right door duplex 354
ADF (LX/dn models) 359
ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models) 393
ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models) 406
ADF (GX/z models) 421
ADF open cover (GX/z models) 434
ADF upper pick (GX/z models) 441
ADF stacker (GX/z models) 452
ADF main frame (GX/z models) 454
Image scanner 484
Image scanner assembly 486
Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models) 494
Image scanner, lower (GX/z models) 503
HP LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF) 510
DCF main 510
DCF main frame pickup 1 527
DCF main frame pickup 529
DCF main frame pickup, upper 535
HP LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup) 538
HCI main 538
HCI sub - frame 555
HCI sub - pickup upper/lower 576
HCI drive 583
HCI sub - cassette 608

3 Problem solving 621
Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview 622
Error codes 622
How to search for printer documentation 624
Troubleshooting process 627
Determine the problem source 627
Tools for troubleshooting 641
Problem-solving checklist 641
Print menu map 644
Print current settings pages 644

Print event log 644
Pre-boot menu options 646
Control panel menus 663
Clear paper jams 736
Paper jam locations 736
13.A1 tray 1 paper jam 736
13.A2, 13.A3 tray 2, tray 3 paper jam 737
Clear paper jams in the Bottom HCI 739
Service mode (tech mode) 741
Entering service mode 741
Service mode menu tree 741
Information tab 747
Maintenance Counts tab 748
Diagnostics tab 749
Service Functions tab 765
Print quality troubleshooting guide 769
Image quality problems and solutions (HP LaserJet MFP E72525, E72530, E72535) 769
Other Errors 783
Adjusting the flow ADF/ADF skew 803

4 3,250-sheet Stapling Finisher/2,250-sheet Booklet Finisher 807
For additional service and support 808
Product specification and description 809
Finisher system 809
Service approach 822
Precautions when replacing parts 822
Before performing service 823
ESD precautions 824
After performing service 824
Post-service test 824
Order parts, accessories, and supplies 824
Part diagrams, removal and replacement procedures (stapler/stacker and booklet finishers) 826
ESD precautions 827
Finishers (Booklet finisher and stapler/stacker finisher) 827
Top output bin 876
Right top cover 878
Top cover 881
Front door 885
Rear cover 892
Front cover 897
Front lower cover 905

Booklet tray 914
Caster cover 917
Lower shield assembly 921
Upper shield assembly 934
Controller PCA 950
Stapler unit 956
Dummy feed guide 968
Top jam access cover 974
Top lower feed assembly 985
Ejector unit 998
Front tamper unit 1023
Rear tamper unit 1048
Feed entrance motor (M1) 1073
Feed exit motor (M2) 1079
Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3) 1085
Front tamper motor (M6) 1093
Rear tamper motor (M7) 1119
SCU motor (M10) 1145
Main tray moving motor (M11) 1163
Booklet finisher front cover 1173
Booklet finisher 1175
Booklet finisher PCA 1186
Booklet finisher fold stopper unit 1198
Booklet feed entrance motor (M13) 1210
TE presser motor (M14) 1213
Stopper moving motor (M16) 1216
Separate pawl motor (M17) 1220
Folding roller motor (M18) 1223
Blade motor (M19) 1229
C fold motor (M20) 1233
Problem solving 1240
Control panel message document (CPMD) 1241
Clear paper jams 1242
Finisher system diagram 1255

5 Inner finisher 1257
Product Specification and Description 1258
Specification 1258
Finisher System 1263
Service approach 1268
Before performing service 1268

ESD precautions 1268
After performing service 1268
Post-service test 1268
Order parts, accessories, and supplies 1269
Part diagrams, removal and replacment (inner finisher) 1270
ESD precautions 1271
Inner finisher 1271
Entrance sensor 1281
Entrance motor 1286
Exit sensor 1292
Exit motor 1297
Front Jogger Motor 1300
Front Jogger Home Sensor 1313
Rear Jogger Motor 1325
Rear Jogger Home Sensor 1334
Stapler 1341
Stapler position sensor assembly 1345
Traverse Motor 1356
Stacker Motor 1362
Stacker Encoder Sensor 1369
Stacker Lower Limit Switch 1376
Stack Beam Sensor 1384
Stack Position Sensor 1389
Paper Holding Lever Solenoid 1400
Paper Support Motor 1409
Paper Support Home Sensor 1418
Ejector Motor assembly 1431
Main Paddle Motor 1446
Main Paddle Home Sensor 1449
Main Paddle 1452
Ejector assembly 1454
Punch Dust Full Sensor 1467
End Fence Home Sensor 1473
Problem solving 1475
Control panel messages document (CPMD) 1241
Block Diagram 1475

6 Diagrams 1477
Diagrams 1478
Diagrams (FUSER EXIT) 1479
Diagrams (PICKUP/PH DRIVE/SIDE) 1480

Diagrams (laser scanner assembly/HVPS) 1481
Diagrams (toner) 1482
Diagrams (FDB/LVPS) 1483
Diagrams (UI) 1484
Diagrams (FRONT/OPC) 1485
Diagrams (scanner) 1486
Diagrams (Dual Cassette Feeder) 1487

Appendix A Glossary 1489
Glossary of terms 1490

Appendix B Revision History 1495
Revision History 1496

Appendix C Certificate of Volatility 1499
Certificate of Volatility 1499

Index 1501

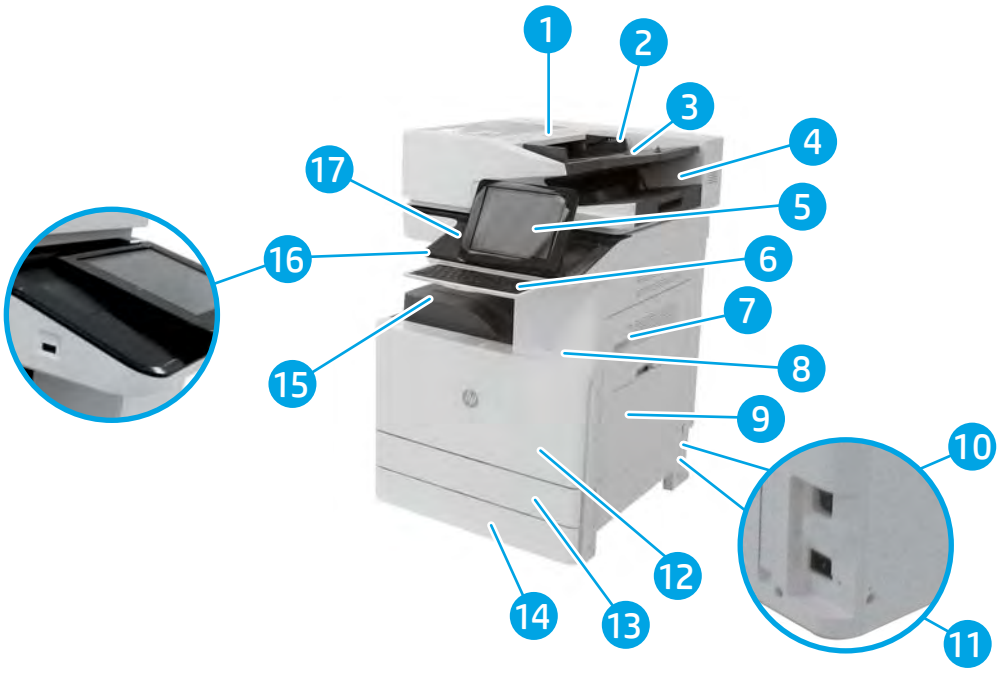
1 Product specifications and description

- Printer views
- Specifications
- Feeding system
- Image creation
- Fuser unit
- Laser scanner assembly
- Drive system
- Flatbed Scanner System
- Flow Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) z bundles (GX)
- Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) dn bundles (LX)
- Hardware configuration
- Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit
- Inner finisher

Printer views

- Printer front view
- Printer back view
- Interface ports
- Control-panel view
- Inner finisher view
- Stapler/stacker finisher view
- Booklet finisher view

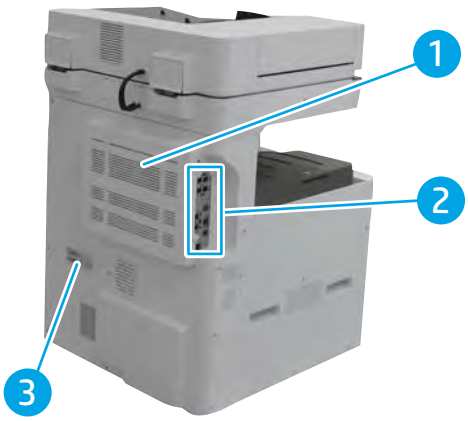
Printer front view



1	Automatic document feeder cover (access for clearing jams)
2	Automatic document feeder width guides
3	Automatic document feeder input tray
4	Automatic document feeder output tray
5	Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)
6	Physical keyboard (Flow models only). Pull the keyboard straight out to use it. (NOTE: Close the keyboard when it is not in use.)
7	Right door (access for clearing jams)
8	On/off button
9	Tray 1
10	Power switch

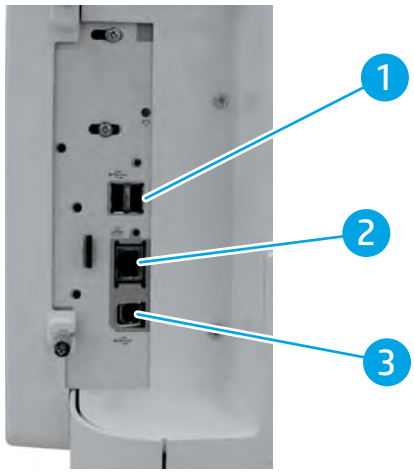
11	Power connection
12	Front door (access to the toner cartridges)
13	Tray 2
14	Tray 3
15	Output bin
16	Easy-access USB port. Insert a USB flash drive for printing or scanning without a computer, or to update the printer firmware. (NOTE: An administrator must enable this port before use.)
17	Hardware integration pocket (for connecting accessory and third-party devices)

Printer back view



1	Formatter cover
2	Interface ports
3	Serial number and product number label

Interface ports



1	USB port for connecting external USB devices (NOTE: For easy-access USB printing, use the USB port near the control panel.)
2	Local area network (LAN) Ethernet network port
3	Hi-Speed USB 2.0 printing port

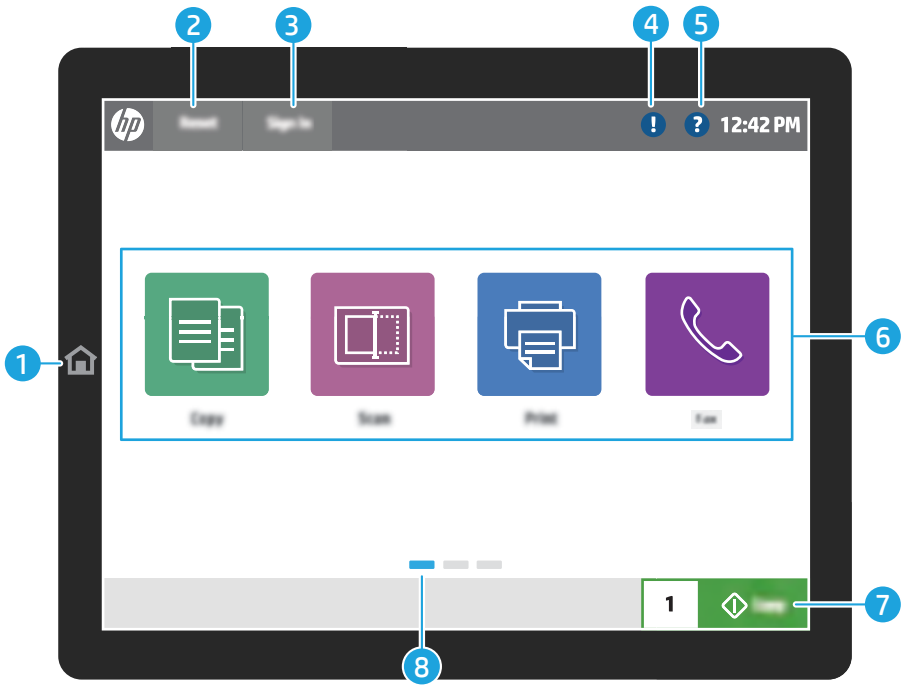
Control-panel view

NOTE: Tilt the control panel for easier viewing.

The Home screen provides access to the printer features and indicates the current status of the printer.

Return to the Home screen at any time by touching the Home button on the printer control panel.

NOTE: The features that appear on the Home screen can vary, depending on the printer configuration.



1	Home button	Touch the Home button to return to the Home screen.
2	Reset button	The Reset button returns the printer to default settings and is always present if users are not logged in. The Reset button is not present when the Sign Out button is present. Touch the Reset button to resume and release jobs from the previous pause state and interrupt mode, reset the quick copy count in the copy count field, exit special modes, reset the display language and the keyboard layout.
3	Sign In or Sign Out button	Touch the Sign In button to access secured features. Touch the Sign Out button to sign out of the printer. The printer restores all options to the default settings. NOTE: This button displays only if the administrator has configured the printer to require permission for access to features.

4	Information button	Touch the information button to access a screen that provides access to several types of printer information. Touch the buttons at the bottom of the screen for the following information: • Display Language: Change the language setting for the current user session. • Sleep Mode: Place the printer into sleep mode. • Wi-Fi Direct: View information for how to connect directly to the printer using a phone, tablet, or other device with Wi-Fi. • Wireless: View or change wireless connection settings (only when an optional wireless accessory is installed). • Ethernet: View or change Ethernet connection settings. • HP Web Services: View information to connect and print to the printer using HP Web Services (ePrint).
5	Help button	Touch the Help button to open the embedded help system. The status line provides information about the overall printer status.
6	Applications area	Touch any of the icons to open the application. Swipe the screen sideways to access more applications. NOTE: The available applications vary by printer. The administrator can configure which applications appear and the order in which they appear.
7	Start Copy button	Touch the Start Copy button to start a copy job.
8	Home-screen page indicator	Indicates the number of pages on the Home screen or in an application. The current page is highlighted. Swipe the screen sideways to scroll between pages.

Inner finisher view



Stapler/stacker finisher view



Booklet finisher view



Specifications

Technical specifications

Table 1-1 E72525dn, E72525z, E72530dn, E72530z, E72535dn, E72535z

Model number		E72525dn	E72525z	E72530dn	E72530z	E72535dn	E72535z
Product number		X3A60A	X3A59A	X3A63A	X3A62A	X3A66A	X3A65A
Paper handling	Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Tray 2 (520-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Tray 3 (520-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	HP LaserJet dual cassette feeder (DCF) (workgroup)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet 2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray (HCI) (workgroup)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet Printer cabinet (workgroup)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet Stapler/ stacker finisher[1]	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet Booklet finisher[1]	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet Inner finisher[1]	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet 2/3 hole punch[1]	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet 2/4 hole punch[1]	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet Swedish hole punch[1]	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet HP Job separator	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet HP Second exit	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet Spacer	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Automatic duplex printing	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Connectivity	10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Hi-Speed USB 2.0	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-1 E72525dn, E72525z, E72530dn, E72530z, E72535dn, E72535z (continued)

Model number		E72525dn	E72525z	E72530dn	E72530z	E72535dn	E72535z
Product number		X3A60A	X3A59A	X3A63A	X3A62A	X3A66A	X3A65A
	Easy-access USB port for printing without a computer and upgrading the firmware	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Hardware Integration Pocket for connecting accessory and third-party devices	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Memory	6 GB base memory	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported
	7 GB base memory	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓
Mass storage	320 GB HP Secure High-Performance Hard Disk	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported
	2 x 320 GB HP Secure High-Performance Hard Disk	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓
	16 GB embedded Multi-Media Controller (eMMC)	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported
Control-panel display	Color touchscreen control panel	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Retractable keyboard	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓
Print	Prints 25 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper.	✓	✓	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
	Prints 30 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper	Not supported	Not supported	✓	✓	Not supported	Not supported
	Prints 35 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	✓	✓
	Easy-access USB printing (no computer required)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Fax		Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Copy and Scan	Scans 80 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and letter-size paper	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported
	Scans 120 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and letter-size paper	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓

Table 1-1 E72525dn, E72525z, E72530dn, E72530z, E72535dn, E72535z (continued)

Model number		E72525dn	E72525z	E72530dn	E72530z	E72535dn	E72535z
Product number		X3A60A	X3A59A	X3A63A	X3A62A	X3A66A	X3A65A
	100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported
	250-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓
	HP EveryPage Technologies including ultrasonic multi-feed detection	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓
	Embedded optical character recognition (OCR) provides the ability to convert printed pages into text that can be edited or searched using a computer	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓
	SMART Label feature provides paper-edge detection for automatic page cropping	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓
	Automatic page orientation for pages that have at least 100 characters of text	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓
	Automatic tone adjustment sets contrast, brightness, and background removal for each page	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓
Digital Send	Send documents to E-mail, USB, and shared folders on a network	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Send documents to SharePoint®	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓	Not supported	✓

[1] Hole punch accessories are optional for the stapler/stacker, inner finisher, and booklet maker accessories.

Supported operating systems

The following information applies to the Printer-Specific Windows PCL 6 and HP print drivers for OS X and to the software installer.

Windows: The HP Software Installer can be downloaded from the printer support website for this printer and installs the “HP PCL.6” version 3 print driver, the “HP PCL 6” version 3 print driver, or the “HP PCL-6” version 4 print driver, depending on the Windows operating system, along with optional software when using the software installer. Download the "HP PCL.6" version 3 print driver, the "HP PCL 6" version 3 print driver, and the "HP PCL-6" version 4 print driver from the printer-support website for this printer: www.hp.com/support/lje72500mfp.

OS X: Mac computers are supported with this printer. Download HP Easy Start either from 123.hp.com/LaserJet or from the Printer Support page, and then use HP Easy Start to install the HP print driver. HP Easy Start is not included in the HP Software Installer.

1. Go to 123.hp.com/LaserJet.
2. Follow the steps provided to download the printer software.

Linux: For information and print drivers for Linux, go to www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting.

UNIX: For information and print drivers for UNIX®, go to www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts.

Table 1-2 Supported operating systems and print drivers

Operating system	Print driver installed (from the software on the web)	Notes
Windows® XP SP3, 32-bit	The “HP PCL.6” printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows XP in April 2009. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued XP operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows Vista®, 32-bit	The “HP PCL.6” printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows Vista in April 2012. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued Vista operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows Server 2003 SP2, 32-bit	The “HP PCL.6” printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows Server 2003 in July 2010. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued Server 2003 operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows 7 SP1, 32-bit and 64-bit	The “HP PCL 6” printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	
Windows 8, 32-bit and 64-bit	The “HP PCL 6” printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Windows 8 RT support is provided through Microsoft IN OS Version 4, 32- bit driver.
Windows 8.1, 32-bit and 64-bit	The “HP PCL-6” V4 printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Windows 8.1 RT support is provided through Microsoft IN OS Version 4, 32- bit driver.
Windows 10, 32-bit and 64-bit	The “HP PCL-6” V4 printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	

Table 1-2 Supported operating systems and print drivers (continued)

Operating system	Print driver installed (from the software on the web)	Notes
Windows Server 2008 SP2, 32-bit	The "HP PCL.6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows Server 2008 in January 2015. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued Server 2008 operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows Server 2008 SP2, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
Windows Server 2008 R2, SP 1, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
Windows Server 2012, 64-bit	The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
Windows Server 2012 R2, 64-bit	The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
OS X 10.10 Yosemite, OS X 10.11 El Capitan, and OS X 10.12 Sierra	To install the print driver, download HP Easy Start from 123.hp.com/LaserJet. Follow the steps provided to install the printer software and print driver.	

NOTE: Supported operating systems can change. For a current list of supported operating systems, go to www.hp.com/support/lje72500mfp for HP's all-inclusive help for the printer.

NOTE: For details on client and server operating systems and for HP UPD driver support for this printer, go to www.hp.com/go/upd. Under **Additional information**, click the links.

Table 1-3 Minimum system requirements

Windows	OS X
• An Internet connection • Dedicated USB 1.1 or 2.0 connection or a network connection • 2 GB of available hard-disk space	• Internet connection • 1 GB of available hard-disk space

Printer dimensions

NOTE: Dimension and weight information is approximate and for reference only.

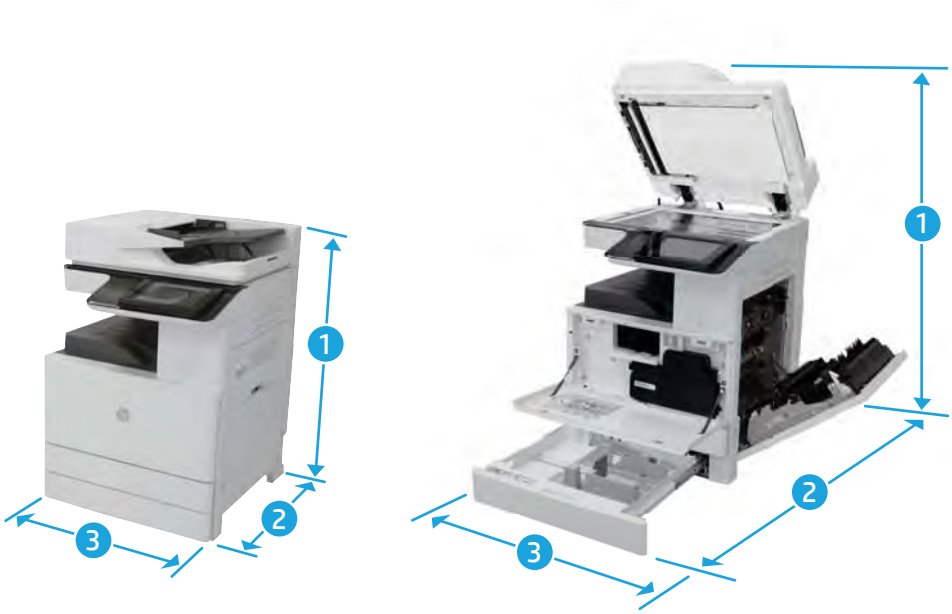


Table 1-4 Dimensions of the E72525dn, E72525z, E72530dn, E72530z, E72535dn, E72535z models

	Normal operating dimensions	Maximum operating dimensions
1. Height	**dn models**: 829 mm (32.6 in)	**dn models**: 1196.4 mm ((47.1 in))
	z models: 877 mm (34.5 in)	**z models:** 1333.5 mm ((52.5 in))
2. Depth	**dn models**: 724.3 mm (28.5 in)	**dn models**: 1115 mm (43.8 in)
	z models: 775.9 mm (30.5 in)	**z models:** 1216 mm (47.8 in)
3. Width	**dn models**: 566 mm (22.3 in)	**dn models**: 1010 mm (39.7 in)
	z models: 585 mm (23 in)	**z models:** 1026 mm (40.3 in)
Weight	**dn models**: 68.13 kg (150.2 lb)	
	z models: 68.13 kg (150.2 lb)	

NOTE: HP recommends that 30 mm (1.81 in) be added to the printer dimensions provided in this chapter to make sure there is sufficient space to open doors and covers, and to provide proper ventilation.

Mobile printing solutions

HP offers multiple mobile and ePrint solutions to enable easy printing to an HP printer from a laptop, tablet, smartphone, or other mobile device. To see the full list and to determine the best choice, go to www.hp.com/go/LaserJetMobilePrinting.

- Wi-Fi Direct
- HP ePrint via email (Requires HP Web Services to be enabled and the printer to be registered with HP Connected)

- HP ePrint app (Available for Android, iOS, and Blackberry)
- HP All-in-One Remote app for iOS and Android devices
- HP ePrint software
- Google Cloud Print
- AirPrint
- Android Printing

Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions

See www.hp.com/support/lje72500mfp for current information.

⚠ CAUTION: Power requirements are based on the country/region where the printer is sold. Do not convert operating voltages. This will damage the printer and void the printer warranty.

Environmental specifications

- Operating-environment specifications

Operating-environment specifications

Consider the following points before installing the printer:

The following table lists the recommended environment conditions:

Table 1-5 Environmental specifications

Environmental Condition	Recommended
Temperature	15^0 to 30^0 C (59F to 86F)
Relative Humidity	20% to 80% relative humidity (RH)

General Specifications

Table 1-6 General specifications

Item		Specification
Processor	CPU	1.2 GHz
User Interface	Control Panel	Flow: 20.3 cm (8 in) Color Graphics Display (CGD) with touchscreen; rotating (adjustable angle) display; illuminated Home button (for quick return to the Home menu); USB High-speed 2.0 port; Hardware Integration Pocket; Extended Keyboard Non-Flow: 20.3 cm (8 in) Color Graphics Display (CGD) with touchscreen; rotating (adjustable angle) display; illuminated Home button (for quick return to the Home menu); USB High-speed 2.0 port; Hardware Integration Pocket

Table 1-6 General specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	LED	2 (Power/Status)
	Key/Button	1 (Power)
Memory	Standard	Flow 7 GB, Managed 6 GB
Storage	Standard	One 320 GB Standard, embedded HP High-Performance Secure Hard Disk; AES 256 hardware encryption or greater; Secure erase capabilities (Secure File Erase-Temporary Job Files, Secure Erase-Job Data, Secure ATA Erase-Disk). NOTE: US Government SKU uses 500 GB FIPS 140–2 validated hard disk.
	Optional	N/A
Interface	USB (Device)	Yes (Hi-Speed USB 2.0)
	USB (Host)	Yes (Hi-Speed USB 2.0)
	USB (EDI)	N/A
	Wired LAN	Standard (Ethernet 10/100/1G Base TX)
	Additional Wired LAN Support	Optional
	Wireless LAN	Optional (IEEE 802.11b/g/n + NFC Active Type
	NFC	Optional (IEEE 802.11b/g/n + NFC Active Type
	Other	N/A
Warmup Time	From Ready	Less than 25 seconds
	From Sleep	Less than 23 seconds
Power Consumption	Ready	Less than 250 Wh
	Normal operation	Less than 800 Wh
	Max/Peak	Less than 1200 Wh
	Sleep	Less than 1.5 Wh
	Power Off	Less than 0 W
	TEC	• E72525: Less than 1.478 Wh • E72530: Less than 1.798 • E72535: Less than 2.279 Wh
Default Sleep Delay Time	2 minutes	
Maximum Sleep Delay Time	• E72525/E72530: 60 minutes • E72535: 120 minutes	

Table 1-6 General specifications (continued)

Item	Specification	
Power Requirement	• Input Voltage (Europe): AC 187—253 V (-10%-6%) • Input voltage (USA): AC 93.5–137 V (-10%-6%) • Input Voltage (Korea): AC 187–253 V (-10%-6%) • Rated Frequency: 50/60 Hz	
Acoustic Noise Level (Power)	Power Emissions	• E72525: 6.5 Bel (A) , printing mono simplex, A4 at 25 ppm • E72530: 6.6 Bel (A), printing mono simplex, A4 at 30 ppm • E72535: 6.8 Bel (A), printing mono simplex, A4 at 25 ppm
	Acoustic Power Emissions (ready)	Inaudible
	Acoustic Power Emissions (active, copy)	• E72525: 6.7 Bel (A), ADF copy mono simplex • E72530: 6.8 Bell (A), ADF copy mono simplex • E72535: 6.8 Bel (A), ADF copy mono simplex
	Acoustic Power Emissions (active, scan)	• E72525, E72530, E72535: 6.2 Bel (A), ADF scan mono simplex at 44 ipm 6.9 Bel (A), ADF scan mono simplex at 85 ipm
	NOTE: Acoustic values are subject to change. For current information, see www.hp.com/support.	
Acoustic Noise Level (Pressure)	Acoustic Pressure Emissions Bystander (active, printing)	• E72525: 49 dB(A), printing mono simplex, A4 at 25 ppm • E72530: 50 dB(A), printing mono simplex, A4 at 30 ppm • E72535: 51 dB(A), printing mono simplex, A4 at 25 ppm
	Acoustic Pressure Emissions Bystander (ready)	Inaudible
	Acoustic Pressure Emissions Bystander (active, copy)	E72525, E72530, E72535: 52 dB(A), ADF copy mono simplex
	Acoustic Pressure Emissions Bystander (active, scan)	E72525, E72530, E72535: 47 dB(A), ADF scan mono simplex at 44 ipm 54 dB(A), ADF scan mono simplex at 85 ipm
Recommended	• E72525: 5000 pages • E72530: 6000 pages • E72535: 7000 pages	
Max Monthly Duty Cycle	Up to 50,000 recommended monthly page volume	

Print specifications

Table 1-7 Print specifications

Item		Specification
Print Speed	Simplex	• E72525 – Up to 25 ppm • E72530 – Up to 30 ppm • E72535 – Up to 35 ppm
FPOT	From Ready	• E72525: Less than 8.5 seconds • E72530: Less than 8.0 seconds • E72535: Less than 7.5 seconds
	From Sleep	• E72525: Less than 31.5 seconds • E72530: Less than 30 seconds • E72535: Less than 30.5 seconds
Resolution	Optical	600 x 600 dpi
	Enhanced	Up to 1200 x 1200 dpi with reduced speed
Printer Language		HP PCL 6/HP PCL 5c/HP PostScript Level 3 Emulation/PDF (v1.7)/AirPrint™ compatible
Font		84 scalable TrueType fonts
Network Protocol	• IP Management (DHCP, BOOTP, AutoIP, SetIP, Static) • Discovery Protocol (SLP, UPnP, Bonjour, DNS, WINS) • Printing Protocol (TCP/IP, LPR, IPP, WSD) • Management Protocol (SNMP v1.2, SNMP3, SMTP, Talnet) • Scan Protocol (SMTP, FTP, SMB, WSD) • Security Protocol (SMB, Kerberos, LDAP, IPsec, EAP)	
Duplex Print	Built in	

Table 1-7 Print specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Direct Print	PRN/PDF/TIFF/JPEG/XPS
Print Features	• WSD print • Secure print • Stored print • Booklet • N-up • Cover page • Insert page • Except page • Barcode • Eco • Poster • Glossy • Watermark • Tray priority setting • Auto tray setting • Tray protection • USB print • Secure PDF print • Google Cloud print

Scan specification

Table 1-8 Scan specification

Item	Specification
Scan method	MMT
Compatibility	Network TWAIN/Network SANE
Color Mode	Mono/Gray/Color

Table 1-8 Scan specification (continued)

Item		Specification
Scan Speed	Scan to folder speeds (hardware)	DN bundles (black and white, gray scale, and color): • Simplex up to 80 ipm @ 600 dpi • Duplex up to 120 ipm @ 600 dpi Z bundles (black and white, gray scale, and color) • Simplex up to 120 ipm @ 600 dpi • Duplex up to 240 ipm @ 600 dpi
File Formats	• PDF • Searchable PDF • Compact PDF • PDF Encryption • Digital Signature in PDF • PDF/A • Single-Page PDF • Multi-Page PDF • TIFF • Single-Page TIFF • Multi-Page TIFF • XPS • Single-Page XPS • Multi-Page XPS • JPEG • PNG	
Resolution	Optical (ADF)	Up to 600 x 600 dpi
	Optical (flatbed)	Up to 600 x 600 dpi
	Enhanced (ADF)	Up to 4800 x 4800 dpi
	Enhanced (flatbed)	Up to 4800 x 4800 dpi
Scan Destinations	Email/FTP/SMB/HDD/USB/WSD/PC	
Multiple Destinations	Yes	

Table 1-8 Scan specification (continued)

Item		Specification
Communication Protocol	• SMTP (IPv4, IPv6, SSL/TLS) • FTP (IPv4, IPv6) • SMB (IPv4, IPv6) • WSD • T4Net	
Scan Size	ADF	Minimum for dn bundles: 128 x 140 mm (5 x 5.5") Minimum for z bundles: 105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.82 in) Maximum 297 x 437 mm (11.7 x 17.2 in)
	Flatbed	Maximum 297 x 437 mm (11.7 x 17.2 in)
Scan Original Types		Text/Text and Photo/Photo

Copy specification

Table 1-9 Copy specification

Item		Specification
Copy Speed	Single Document Multiple Copy (SDMC)	• E72525: Up to 25 cpm • E72530: Up to 30 cpm • E72535: Up to 35 cpm
FCOT	From Ready	• E72525: Less than 6.2 seconds • E72530: Less than 5.5 seconds • E72535: Less than 4.9 seconds
Resolution	ADF (Flow ADF/ADF)	• Scan: 600 x 600 dpi • Printing: 600 x 600 dpi
	Flatbed	• Scan: 600 x 600 dpi • Printing: 600 x 600 dpi
Reduce/Enlarge	ADF (Flow ADF/ADF)	25–400%
	Flatbed	25–400%

Table 1-9 Copy specification (continued)

Item	Specification
Copier Settings	• 2–sided copying • Scalability • Image adjustments (darkness, contrast, background clean up, sharpness) • Optimized text/picture (text, mixed, printed picture, photograph) • N-Up • N or Z-ordering • Content orientation • Collation • Booklet • ID scan • Job build • Job storage • Watermark • Stamps • Book mode scans • Erase edges • Automatically detect color/mono • Image preview

Table 1-9 Copy specification (continued)

Item	Specification
Copy Original Type	• Text • Text and Printed Photo • Text and Glossy Photo • Newspaper • Printed Photo • Glossy Photo • Copied Original • Map • Light Original
	• ID Copy • N-up • Booklet • Image Repeat • Auto Fit • Book Copy • Poster Copy • Watermark • Image Overlay • Stamp • Covers • Job Build • Preview • Erase Edge • Image Shift • Image Adjustment • Background Adjustment

Paper handling specification

Table 1-10 Paper handling specification

Item		Specification
Input Capacity	Standard	1040 sheets
	Multipurpose	100 sheets

Table 1-10 Paper handling specification (continued)

Item		Specification
	Other Options	Dual Cassette Feeder (2 x 520 sheets)
	High Capacity Input Tray (HCI)	2000 sheets, A4 only
	Maximum	1040 Std + 100 Tray 1 + 2000 bHCI
Standard Cassette Tray	Capacity	520 sheets x 2
	Media Sizes	• Cassette 1: 148.5 x 210 mm — 297 x 354 mm (5.8 x 8.2 in — 11.7 x 14 in) • Cassette 1: 148.5 x 210 mm — 297 x 432 mm (5.8 x 8.2 in — 11.7 x 17 in)
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin CardStock • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Heavy Weight • Envelope • Label

Table 1-10 Paper handling specification (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Weight	• Plain Paper: 70-90 g/m² (18.5-24 lb/ Duplex) • Thick Paper: 91-105 g/m² (25-28 lb / Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper : 106-176 g/m² (Duplex) • Extra Heavy Weight 1 Paper : 177-220 g/m² • Thin Paper: 60-69 g/m² (16-19 lb/ Duplex) • Cotton paper : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Colored : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Pre-Printed : 71-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Recycled : 60-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Bond Paper: 105-120 g/m² (Duplex) • Letterhead : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Hole Punched Paper: 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin CardStock : 105-163 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin Glossy : 106-163 g/m² (Duplex)
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: Yes
Tray 1	Capacity	100 sheets
	Media Sizes	98 x 148 mm — 297 x 432 mm (3.8 x 5.8 in — 11.7 x 17 in)

Table 1-10 Paper handling specification (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin CardStock • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Heavy Weight • Envelope • Label • Card transparency
	Media Weight	60 to 176 g/m² (16 to 47 lb): Simplex, Duplex Envelope (75 to 90 g/m²) Label (120 to 150 g/m²): Simplex
	Sensing	Paper Empty Detect: Yes Paper Size Detect: Yes
Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Capacity	100 sheets
	Duplex Document Scanning	Yes
	Document Size	• Width: 128 — 297 mm (5 — 11.7 in) • Length: 140 — 432 mm (5.5 — 17 in)
	Document Weight	• E72525 – Simplex: 42 — 163 g/m² (11.25 — 43.25 lb) – Duplex: 50 — 128 g/m² (12.25 — 34 lb) • E72530, E72535

Table 1-10 Paper handling specification (continued)

Item		Specification
		– Simplex: 42 — 163 g/m² (11.25 — 43.25 lb) – Duplex: 50 — 163 g/m² (13.25 — 34 lb)
	Sensor	Document Size Sensing: Potentiometer
	Auto Detected Size	A3/A4/A5/B4/B5/Letter/Legal/Statement/ Folio/Executive
Printer Output Capacity	Standard	500 sheets, face down
	Maximum	615 sheets [500 sheets (Standard) + 125 sheets (Job Separator)]
Printing Size	Maximum Size	297 x 432 mm (11.7 x 17 in)
	Minimum Size	98 x 148 mm (3.8 x 5.8 in)
Maximum Printing Area	Trays 1–3	Top: 4.23 +/- 1.5 mm / Left: 4.23 +/- 1.5 mm
	Simplex from optional trays	Top and Left: 4.23 +/- 2 mm
	Duplex	Top: 4.23 +/- 2 mm / Left: 4.23 +/- 2 mm
Duplex Printing	Support	Built-in
	Media Sizes	148.5 x 210 mm — 297 x 432 mm (5.8 x 8.2 in — 11.7 x 17 in)
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin CardStock • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Heavy Weight
		60 to 176 g/m² (16 to 47 lb)

Table 1-11 Paper handling specification (optional)

Item	Specification	
HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Workgroup Feeder	Model Name	Y1F97A
	Capacity	520 x 2 sheets
	Media Sizes	• Cassette 1: 98 x 219 mm — 320 x 354 mm (3.85 x 8.2 in — 12.6 x 14 in) • Cassette 2: 98 x 219 mm — 320 x 432 mm (3.85 x 8.2 in — 12.6 x 17 in)
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin CardStock • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Heavy Weight • Extra Heavy Weight

Table 1-11 Paper handling specification (optional) (continued)

Item	Specification	
	Media Weight	• Plain Paper: 70-90 g/m² (18.5-24 lb/Duplex) • Thick Paper: 91-105 g/m² (25-28 lb/Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper: 106-176 g/m² (Duplex) • Extra Heavy Weight 1 Paper: 177-220 g/m² • Thin Paper: 60-69 g/m² (16-19 lb/ Duplex) • Cotton paper: 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Colored: 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Pre-Printed: 71-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Recycled : 60-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Bond Paper: 105-120 g/m² (Duplex) • Letterhead: 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Hole Punched Paper: 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin CardStock: 105-163 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin Glossy: 106-163 g/m² (Duplex)
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: Yes
	Dimensions	566 x 610 x 265 mm (22.3 x 24 x 10.4 in)
	Weight	Net 20 kg (44.09 lb), With Packaging 23.5 kg (51.81 lb)
HP LaserJet Workgroup Cabinet	Model Name	Y1G17A
	Dimensions	566 x 610 x 265 mm (22.3 x 24 x 10.4 in)
	Weight	15 kg (33.07 lb)
HP LaserJet Job Separator WG	Model Name	Y1G15A
	Capacity	125 sheets
	Dimensions	464 x 394.7 x 124.5 mm (18.3 x 15.5 x 4.9 in)
	Weight	2.36 kg (5.2 lb)
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher	Model Name	Y1G00A
	Capacity	550 Sheets (Main 500, Top 50) @ 80gsm
	Sensing	Paper Jam/Tray Sensing/Stapler/Cover Open
	Media Sizes	• Main: 148 to 320 mm x 140 — 457.2 mm (58.3 — 126 x 55.1 — 180 in) • Top: 98 — 297 x 140 — 432 mm (38.6 — 116.9 x 55.1 — 170.1 in)

Table 1-11 Paper handling specification (optional) (continued)

Item	Specification	
	Media Types	• Plain • Thick • Heavy Weight • Thin • Cotton • Colored • Recycled • Bond • Archive • Pre-Punched • Card Stock • Glossy • Envelope
	Media Weight	• Main: 52 — 256 gsm (13.9 — 68.3 lb) • Top: 52 — 325 gsm (13.9 — 86.7 lb)
	Bins	2 (main/top)
	Dimensions	458 x 491 x 173 mm (18 x 19.3 x 6.8 in)
	Weight	15 kg (33 lb)
	Tray 2 Finishing Capacity	50 sheets @ 80 gsm
	Tray 2 Finishing Mode	Stapling (Left, Right, Center)/Punch (2/3, 2/4, Swedish)
	Tray 3 Finishing Capacity	500 sheets @ 80 gsm
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch	Model Name	Y1G02A
	Type	2/3 hole punch
	Paper Weight	256 gsm (68.3 lb)
	Dimensions	440 x 105 x 75 mm (17.3 x 4.1 x 3 in)
	Weight	1.2 kg (2.65 lb)
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch	Model Name	Y1G03A
	Type	2/4 hole punch
	Paper Weight	256 gsm (68.3 lb)
	Dimensions	440 x 105 x 75 mm (17.3 x 4.1 x 3 in)
	Weight	82 g (0.18 lb)

Software and solution specification

Table 1-12 Software and solution specification

Item		Specification
Application	Anyweb Print	N/A
	Easy Printer Manager	Windows/Mac
	Easy Color Manager	N/A
	Easy Document Creator	Windows
	Net PC Fax	Windows/Mac
	Direct Printing Utility	Windows
	Easy Deployment Manager	Windows
	Easy Eco Driver	Windows
	Universal Printer Driver	Windows
	Universal Scan Driver	Windows
	Scan	HP Scan
Mobile Printing	Google Cloud Print (GCP)	Yes
	AirPrint	Yes ('14.09)
Solution	Device Management	SyncThru 6.0
	Output Management	CounThru Enterprise/Pro
	Document Management and Distribution	SmarThru Workflow 3.0
	Security	SecuThru Pro 1.0
	Mobility	SCP 1.0 ('14.09)
Security	Authentication (Local)	Yes
	Authentication (Network)	Yes (SMB/Kerberos/LDAP/IPSec/EAP)
	IP Address Filtering	Yes (IPv4 Filtering/IPv6 Filtering/MAC Filtering)
	HDD Overwrite (Standard)	Yes
	HDD Overwrite (Maximum Overwrites)	9
	Secure Print	Yes
	Encrypted Secure Print	Yes
	Encrypted PDF Mode (Encrypted Scanning)	Yes
	IP Sec	Yes
	Smart Card Authentication	Yes

Supplies

[1] Print cartridge life is approximately based on average A4 /Letter-size page count with ISO coverage. Declared cartridge yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC 19798. Actual yields vary considerably based on images printed and other factors. For more information, visit www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies.

Item	Part number	Estimated life
HP Black Managed LJ Toner Cartridge[1][1]	X3A65-67901	48,000 pages
HP Managed LJ Toner Collection Unit	X3A60-67901	100,000 pages

[1] Print cartridge life is approximate, based on average A4 /Letter-size page count with ISO coverage. Declared cartridge yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC 19798. Actual yields vary considerably based on images printed and other factors. For more information, go to www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies.

NOTE: Depending on the print pattern and job mode used, the lifespan of the consumable can vary.

Service parts

Table 1-13 Service parts

Item	Part Number	Life
HP Managed LJ Imaging Drum	X3A65-67903	200,000 pages
HP Managed LJ Toner Collection Unit	X3A60-67901	100,000 pages
HP LaserJet Black Developer Unit	JC96-11666A	400,000 pages
HP LaserJet 110V Fuser Assembly	JC82-00479A	320,000 pages
HP LaserJet 220V Fuser Assembly	JC82-00481A	320,000 pages
HP LaserJet Transfer Roller	JC82-00466A	150,000 pages
HP LaserJet Trays 2-x Rollers	JC93-00540A	200,000 pages
HP LaserJet Tray 1 Roller	JC93-00540B	200,000 pages
HP LaserJet Flow ADF Pick Roller	JC97-04650A	200,000 pages
HP LaserJet Flow ADF Separation Roller	JC97-04915A	100,000 pages
HP LaserJet ADF Pick Roller	JC97-04857A	200,000 pages
HP LaserJet ADF Separation Roller	JC98-04852A	100,000 pages

NOTE: Depending on the print patterns and job mode used, the lifespan can differ.

Optional

Table 1-14 Option List

Item	Model	E72535	E72530	E72525
HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Workgroup Feeder	Y1F97A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Workgroup Cabinet	Y1G17A	Yes	Yes	Yes

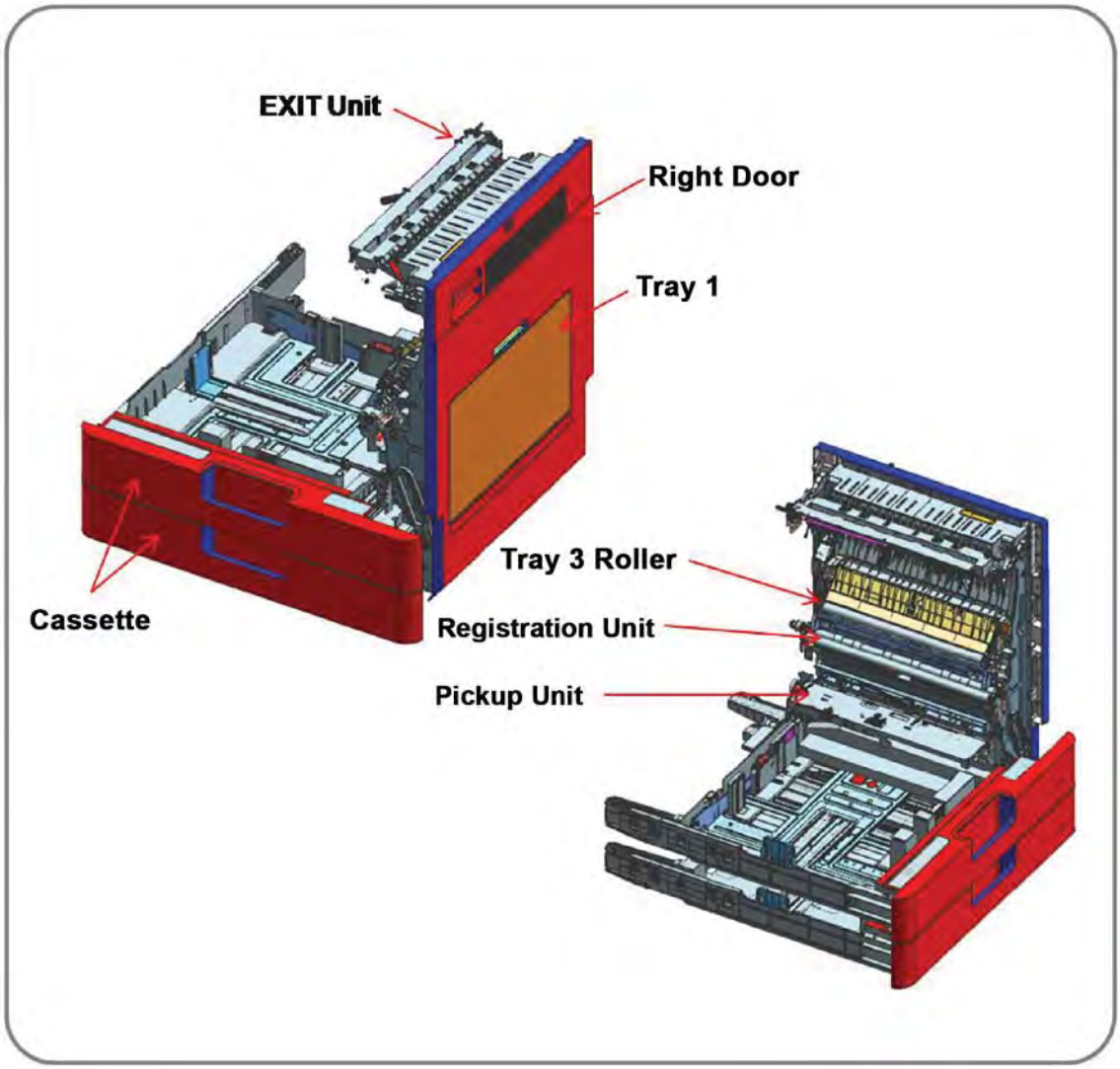
Table 1-14 Option List (continued)

Item	Model	E72535	E72530	E72525
HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray WG	Y1F99A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher	Y1G00A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher	Y1G07A	Yes	Yes	No
HP LaserJet Job Separator WG	Y1G15A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher Staples	Y1G14A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Inner/Booklet Finisher Staples	Y1G13A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch	Y1G02A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch	Y1G03A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch	Y1G04A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory	Y1G10A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory	Y1G11A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory	Y1G12A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters WG	Y1G22A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accessory WG 110V	Y1G22A#BGJ	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accessory WG 220V	Y1G22A#B19	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP Second Exit NOTE: Required if attaching an external finisher.	Y1G23A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP Spacer NOTE: Required if attaching an external finisher to a monochrome printer.	Y1G24A	Yes	Yes	Yes

Feeding system

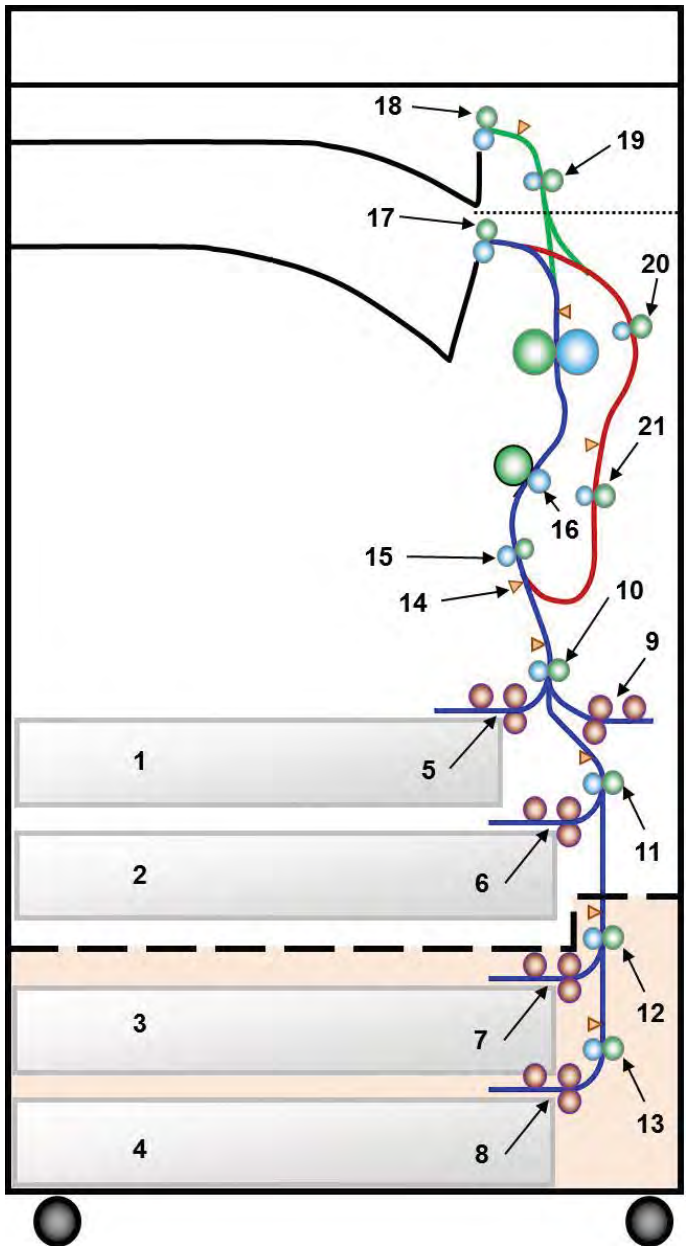
Feeding system overview

The feeding system picks up paper from the cassette or Tray 1 and moves it to the printing mechanism inside the printer. The feeding system consists of the pickup unit, registration unit, transfer roller assembly, and exit unit.



Main components and functions

Rollers

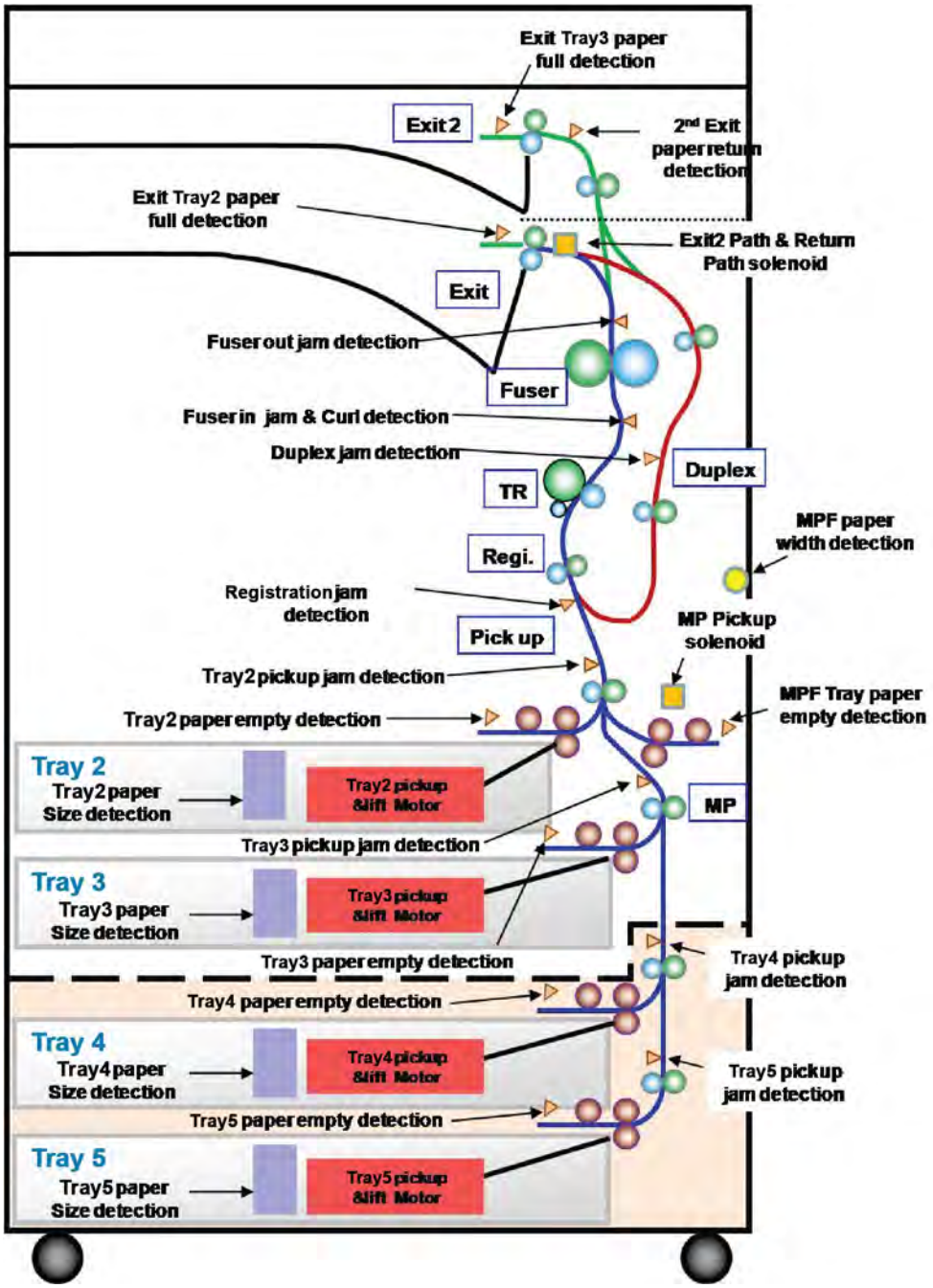


Item	Description
1	Tray 2
2	Tray 3
3	Tray 4 (optional)
4	Tray 5 (optional)
5	Tray 2 pick/separation/feed rollers
6	Tray 3 pick/separation/feed rollers

Item	Description
7	Tray 4 pick/separation/feed rollers
8	Tray 5 pick/separation/feed rollers
9	Tray 1 pick/separation/feed rollers
10	Tray 2 paper path rollers
11	Tray 3 paper path rollers
12	Tray 4 paper path rollers
13	Tray 5 paper path rollers
14	Sensor registration
15	Roller registration
16	Roller transfer
17	Roller output 1st
18	Roller output 2nd
19	Roller invert
20	Roller duplex 1
21	Roller duplex 2

- Pick roller (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5)
  - This roller picks up the paper from the tray.
- Feed roller (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5)
  - This roller is placed against the separation roller. It transfers the paper from the pick roller to the feed roller.
- Separation roller (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5)
  - This roller is placed against the feed roller and transfers only one sheet of paper to the feed roller. When two or more sheets of paper are being transferred from the pick roller, the load of the torque limiter of the separation roller is heavier than the frictional force between the sheets of paper. As a result, the separation roller is stopped and the lower sheet of paper is not transferred.
- Feed roller
  - This roller transfers the paper sent from the forward/separation roller to the registration roller.
- Registration roller
  - This roller aligns the leading edge of the paper and transfers the paper to the transfer roller assembly.

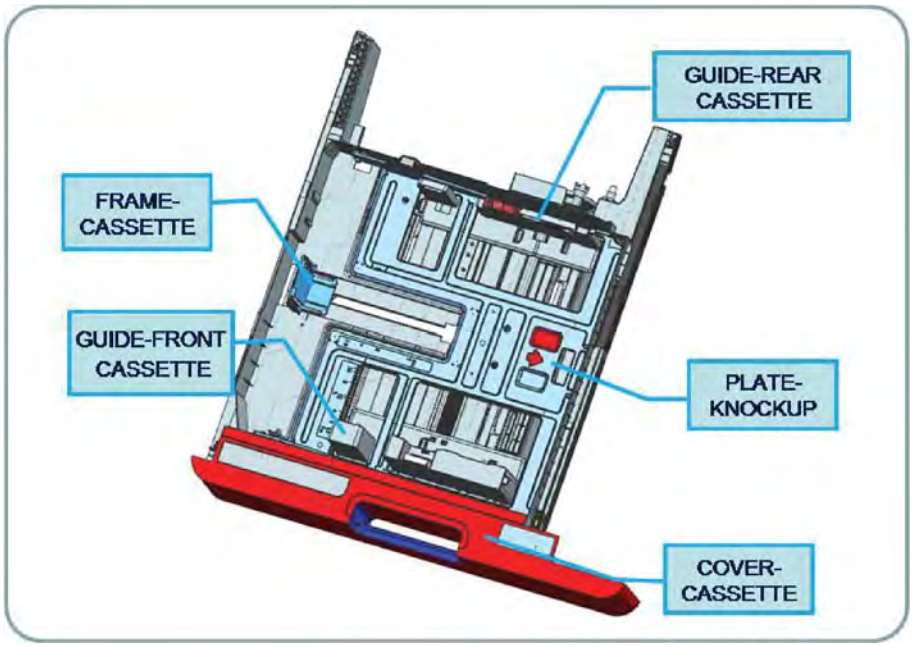
Sensor, Motor, Solenoid



Cassette (Tray 1, 2, 4, 5)

The cassette stores paper. The paper size is set using the guides in each tray.

Figure 1-1 Basic Cassette



Item	Description
1	Structure: Drawer Type
2	Capacity: 520 sheets (80g/m^2 (21 lb) paper standard) NOTE: Tray 2 does not support A3 or 11 x 17 paper,
3	Paper type • Plain paper: A5, A4, A3, B5, B4, Letter, 11 x 17 (Ledger), Statement, Legal NOTE: Tray 2 does not support A3 or 11 x 17 paper.
4	Paper weight • Plain paper: 60-216 g/m^2 (17-58 lb)
5	Plate knock up lift type: Lift Motor + Up Limit Sensor

Pickup unit

When paper pickup occurs, the pick roller moves down in order to come in contact with the surface of the paper. If the cassette is installed, the LEVER-INPUT CST is pushed and the pick roller moves down. The feed and separation rollers make sure that a single sheet of paper is moved into the paper path, and that the feed roller moves the paper as far as the registration (REGI) roller.

NOTE: The pickup unit 1 and pickup unit 2 are not interchangeable.

Figure 1-2 Pickup unit 1

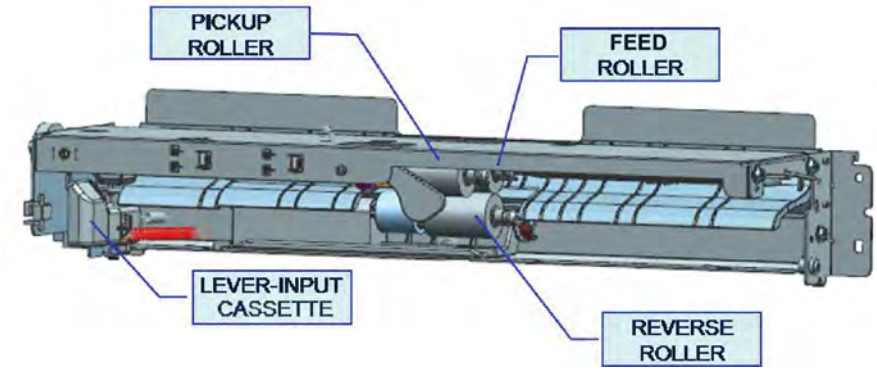
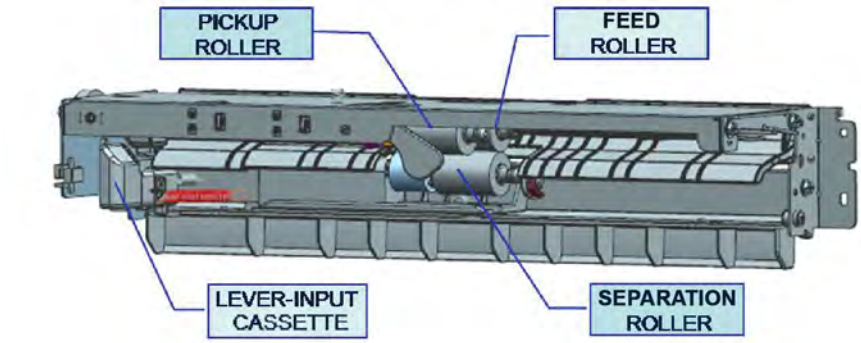


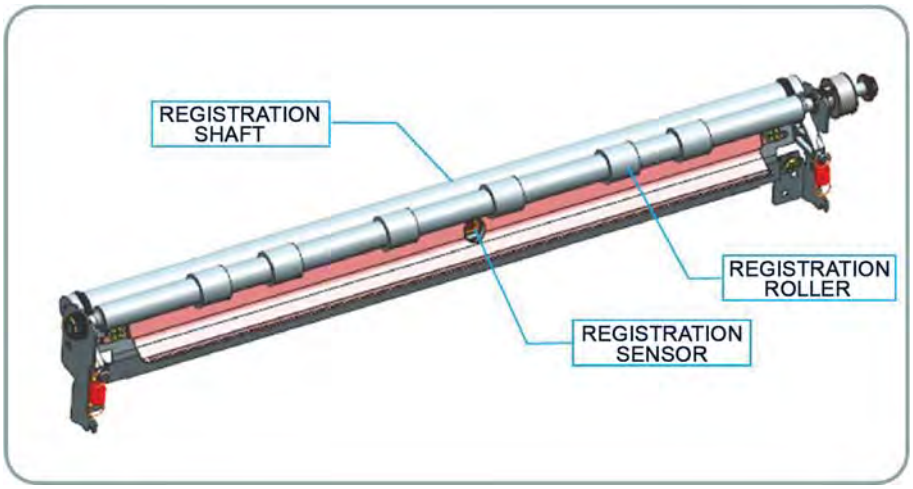
Figure 1-3 Pickup unit 2



Registration (regi) unit

The registration roller is driven by the registration/multipurpose motor. The registration roller clutch is located between the registration/Tray 1 motor and registration roller, or on the transfer belt (for color), and it controls power to the registration roller in order to match paper and an image on the drum at the predetermined registration point.

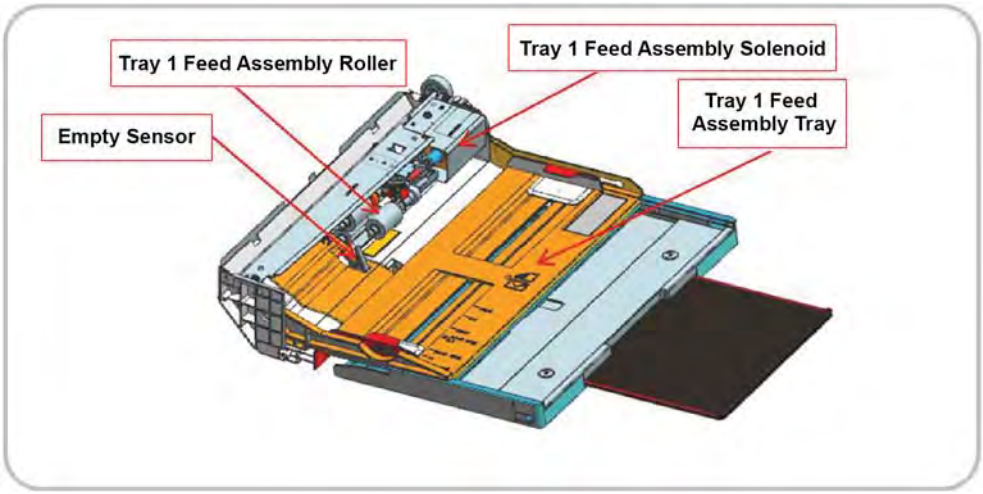
Figure 1-4 Registration (Regi) roller



Tray 1 (multipurpose (MP) tray) feed assembly

The Tray 1 feed assembly allows feeding of special media cardstock and custom size paper.

Figure 1-5 Tray 1 feed assembly

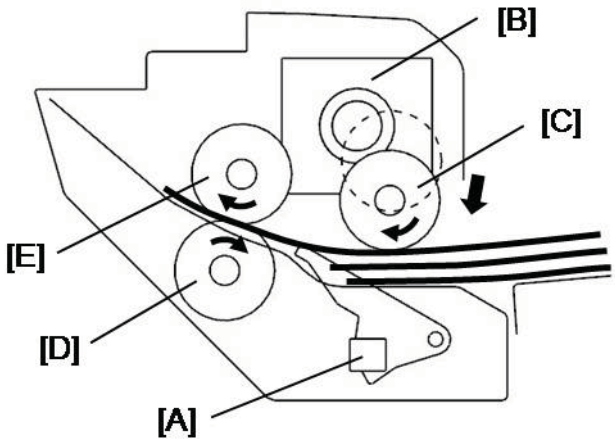


Specification

- Capacity: 100 sheets (80g/m^2 (21 lb) paper standard)
- Media Size: Maximum 297 x 432 mm (11.7 x 17 in)/ Minimum 98 x 148 mm (3.87 x 5.8 in)
- Media Weight: Plain paper 60-176 g/m^2
- Feeding speed: 35 ppm (E72535), 30 ppm (E72530), 25 ppm (E72525) Letter/A4 LEF (Long Edge Feeding)

Paper Separation

Figure 1-6 Paper separation



When the Tray 1 paper detection [A] sensor detects paper and the machine gets a Tray 1 printing job, the Tray 1 solenoid [B] drops the pick roller [C] onto the top of the paper stack in Tray 1.

This machine uses an FSR (Feed and Separation Roller) system for feeding paper. The friction between the separation roller [D] and feed roller [E] separates the top sheet of paper from the stack.

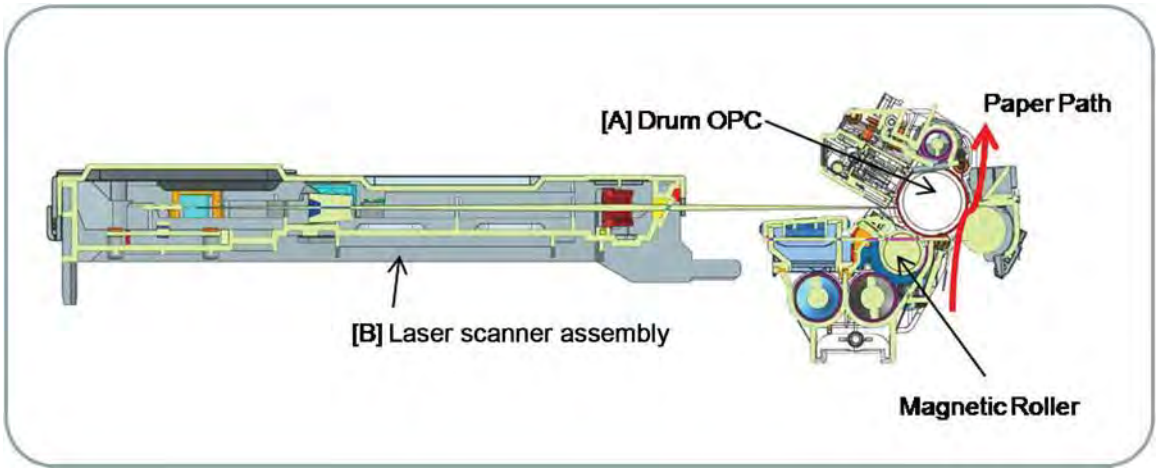
Image creation

Printing process overview

This printer uses one imaging unit and one laser for mono printing. The imaging unit consists of a drum unit and developer unit.

The drum unit consists of an Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) drum, charging roller, and cleaning blade.

Figure 1-7 Printing process overview



The OPC drum (A) is charged with a negative voltage and is exposed to light from the laser scanner assembly (B). The light produced by a laser creates a latent image by discharging on the surface of the OPC drum. The negatively charged toners are attracted to the latent image by an electric field. The toners (real image) on the OPC drum are transferred to the transfer media by the positive bias applied to the transfer roller.

1. OPC drum charge: The charge roller gives the drum a negative charge.
2. Laser exposure: Light produced by a laser diode hits the charged OPC through the lens and mirrors.
3. Development: The developing roller transfers negatively charged toner to the latent image on the drum surface.
4. Transfer: The transfer roller opposite the OPC drum transfers toner from the drum to the paper.
5. Cleaning for OPC drum: The cleaning blade removes remaining toner on the drum surface after image transfer to the paper.
6. Erasing for OPC drum: Discharge cleaning is done by illuminating the whole area of the drum with the cleaning lamp at the end of every job.

Imaging unit

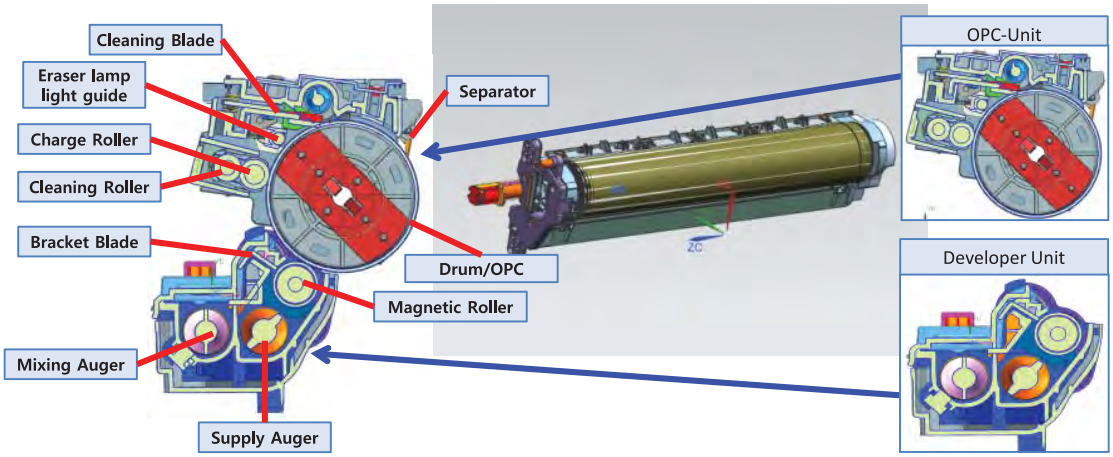
Imaging unit overview

The imaging unit consists of the drum unit and the developer unit.

The diameter of the drum is 30 mm and the circumference is approximately 94.2 mm.

The developing gap between a drum and the corresponding magnetic roller cannot be adjusted. The CRUM chip is the subpart of the drum unit. The CRUM chip stores job count information and other data.

Figure 1-8 Imaging unit

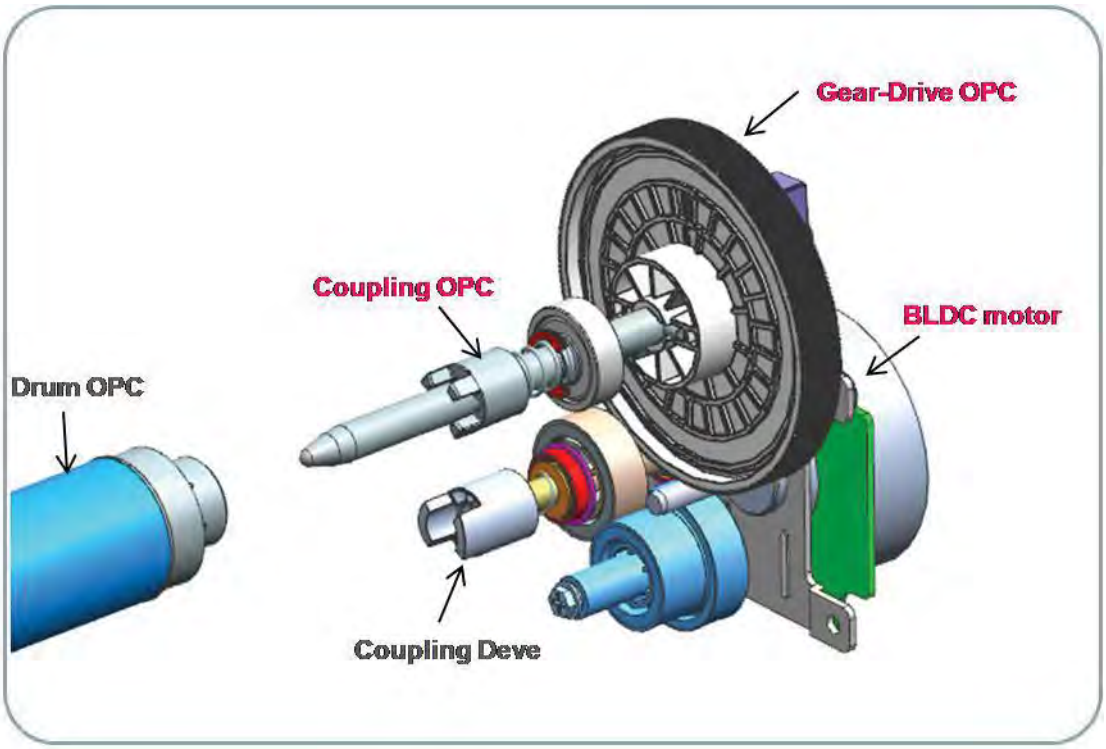


Drum drive

The Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) drum and magnetic roller are driven by one BLDC motor and supplied with power from the coupling.

The drive shaft is directly inserted into the OPC drum to fix the drum unit. This structure provides stable printing quality.

Figure 1-9 Drum drive



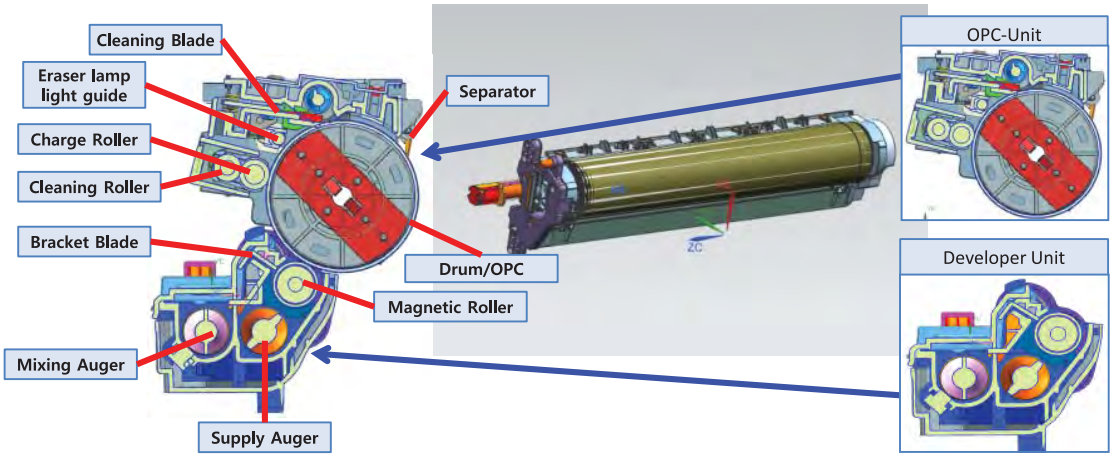
Developer unit

This printer uses a dual-component development system.

The developer unit contains 345 g of toner carrier that is supplied to the magnetic (development) roller by the two mixing augers. The diameter of the magnetic roller is 18.2 mm.

The developer unit has a toner concentration (TC) sensor. The TC sensor is used for controlling the operating range of toner density.

Figure 1-10 Developer unit



Developer Circulation

Two mixing augers circulate the developer forward and backward in order to sufficiently mix the toner and developer.

This occurs at the following times:

- During the process control self-checking
- During toner supply job
- During development job

The developer unit must be stored below 50°C or the toner will harden and not work properly.

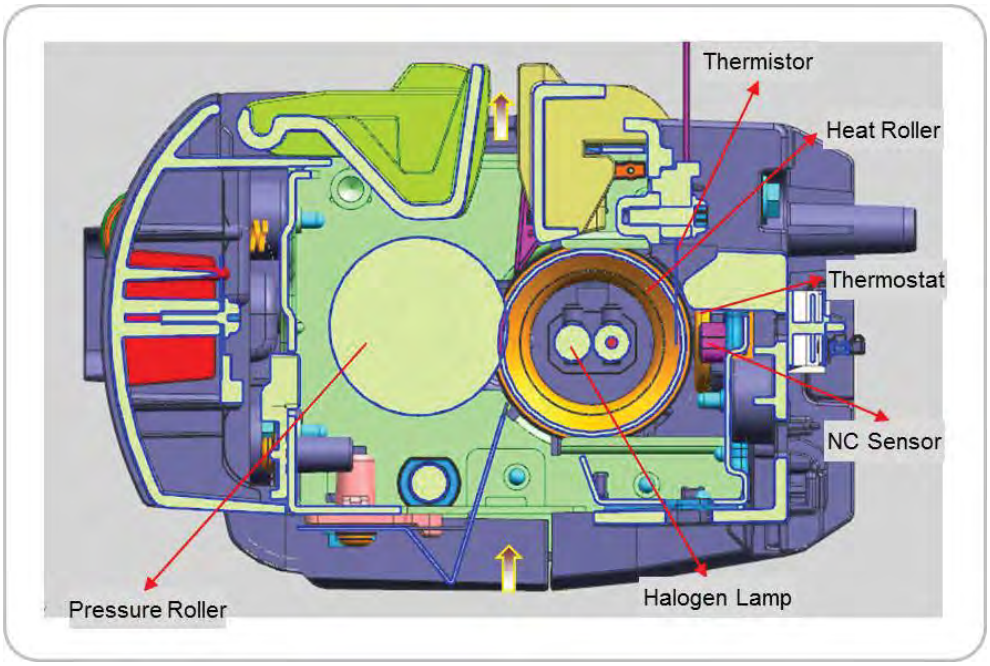
Fuser unit

Fuser unit overview

This section describes the image fusing process used by the printer.

This unit fuses the toner that was transferred by the transfer roller onto the paper by applying heat and pressure. The printer uses a two-roller fusing system and thinner heat roller to decrease warm-up time.

Figure 1-11 Fuser unit overview

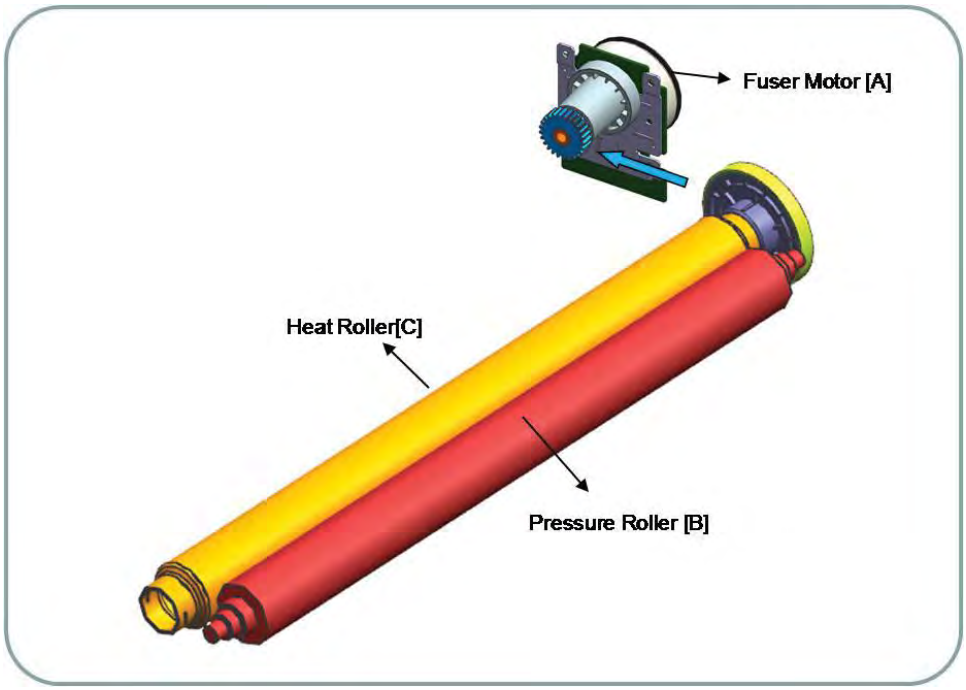


Item	Description
1	**Halogen Lamp** The fuser unit has two halogen lamps. One lamp heats the center of the heat roller, and the other lamp heats the end of axial direction. The halogen lamps are lit alternately to heat the heat roller. Each lamp has its coil in a different location. The coil of the center heater lamp is in the center. The coils of the side heater lamp are located on both sides. The lamps are fixed inside of the heat roller. The lamps do not rotate when the heat roller rotates.
2	**Heat Roller** The aluminum heat roller transfers heat from the halogen lamp to the toner and paper. The thinner heat roller reduces the time needed to warm-up and switch modes. To prevent the heat roller from adhering to the toner, its surface has a PFA coating. The heat roller is rotated by a gear located on the side of the roller.
3	**Pressure Roller** The pressure roller is made of rubber, which ensures proper nip width between the pressure roller and the heat roller. The force applied by the pressure roller ensures toner effectively adheres to the paper.
4	**Non-Contact (NC) Sensor** NC sensors (non-contact type thermistors) are located near the center and the end of the heat roller and control the temperature of the heat roller.

Item	Description
5	**Thermistor** The thermistor detects the temperature on the surface of the heat roller and controls the halogen lamp.
6	**Thermostat** The thermostats cuts off the power supply to the halogen lamp by opening the circuit when the heat roller becomes abnormally hot as a result of problems such as a NC sensor malfunction. The force applied by the pressure roller ensures toner effectively adheres to the paper.

Fuser unit drive

Figure 1-12 Fuser duplex exit drive

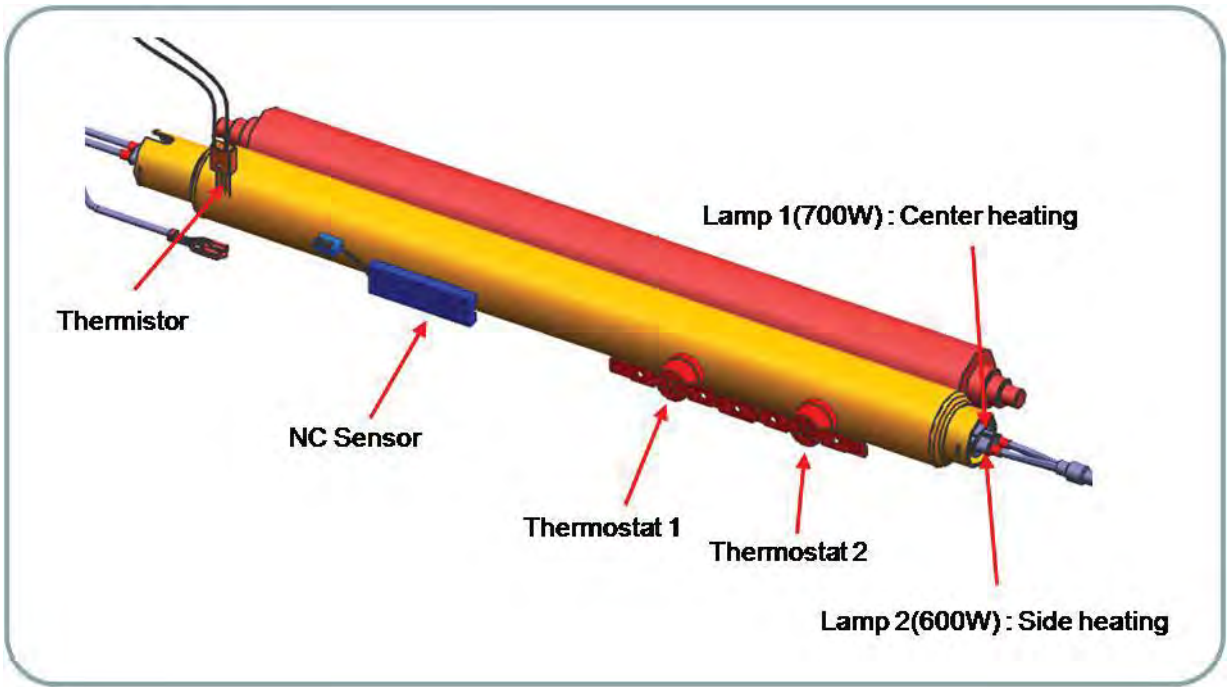


The fuser motor (A) drives the heat roller (C) through the gear train. The pressure roller is pressurized and rotated by the heat roller.

Fuser unit temperature control

When the main switch turns on, the CPU turns on the fusing lamp. The lamp stays on until the NC sensors detect the standby temperature. The CPU then raises the temperature up to the printing temperature.

Figure 1-13 Fuser unit temperature control



Overheat Protection

The CPU cuts power to the fusing lamp in the following cases :

- The temperature detected by the NC sensor stays higher than 240°C for 20 seconds.

The following components are used when the thermistor overheat protection fails:

- Two thermostats are in line with the common ground wire of the fusing lamp.
- If one of the thermostat temperatures becomes higher than 195°C, power is cut to the fusing lamp. If the other thermostat temperature becomes higher than 195°C, it will also cut power to the fusing lamp.

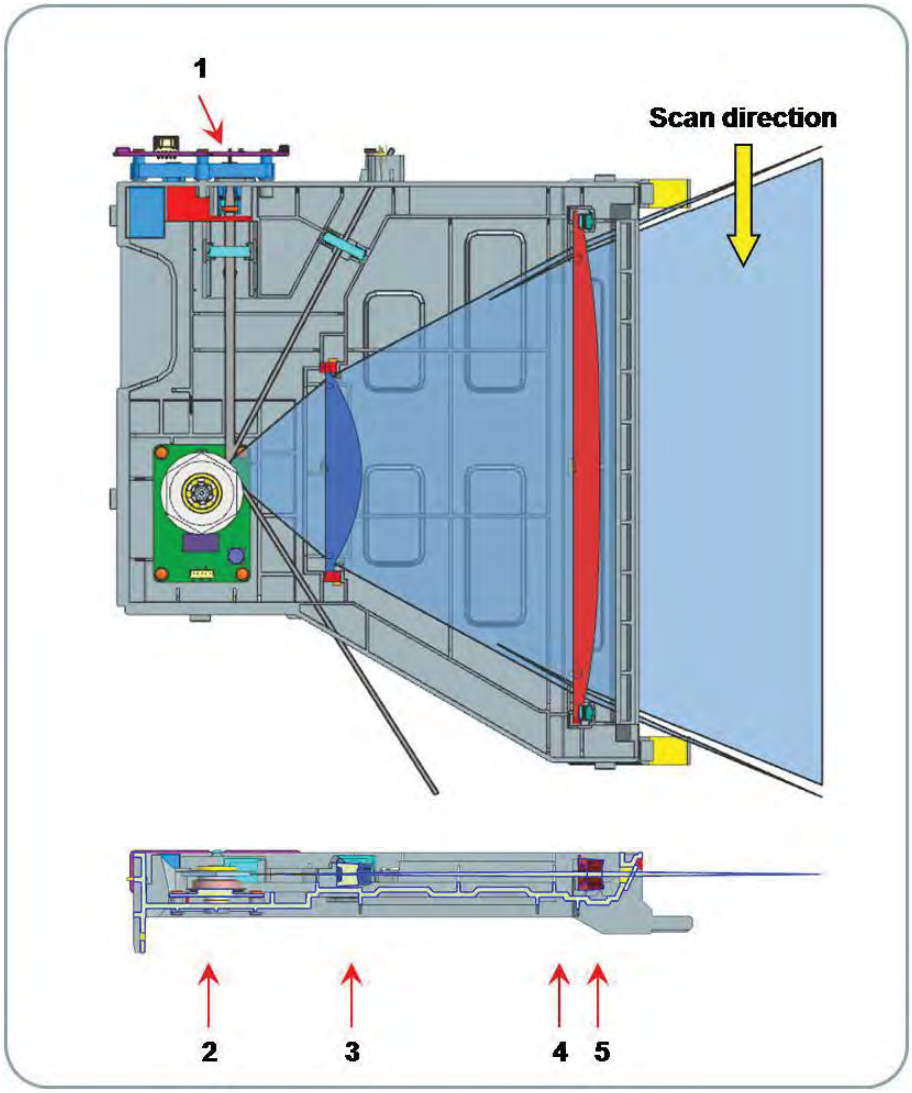
Laser scanner assembly

Laser scanner assembly overview

The laser scanner assembly consists of one polygon motor and one laser diodes (LD) unit. The laser scanner assembly forms a latent image on the surface of the OPC drum. For this process, the laser scanner assembly has a collimator lens, cylindrical lens, and an F-Theta lens on an optical path for each color.

The laser scanner assembly has cover glass to protect the glass on the optical path from contamination. The laser diodes (LD) PCA interfaces with the printer.

Figure 1-14 Laser scanner assembly overview



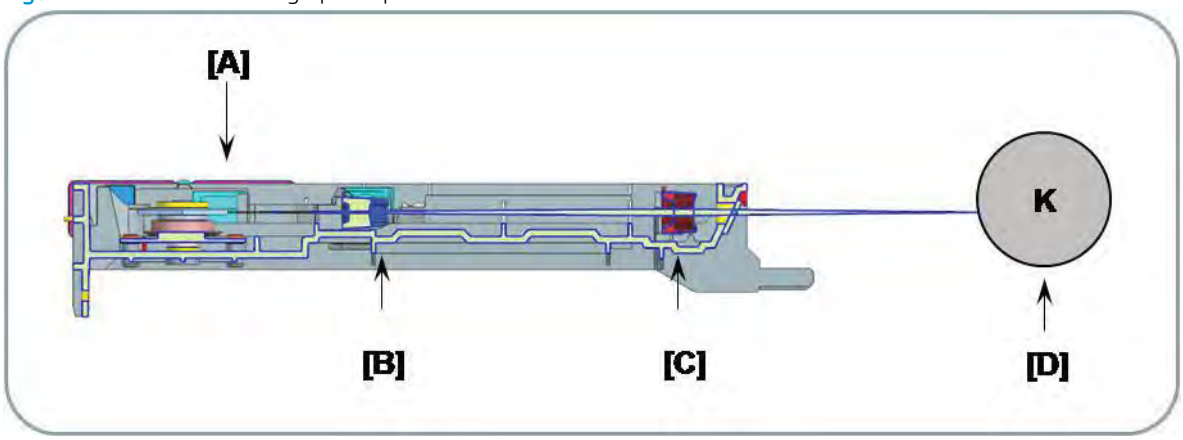
Item	Description
1	LD PCA
2	P/Mirror Motor
3	F1 Lens

Item	Description
4	F2 Lens
5	Cover Glass

Laser scanning optical path

The laser moves from the polygon motor (A) to the OPC drum (D). The F1 lens (B) and F2 lens (C) determine the scanning line and the image position. This setting is adjusted by the manufacturer.

Figure 1-15 Laser scanning optical path



Laser synchronizing detectors

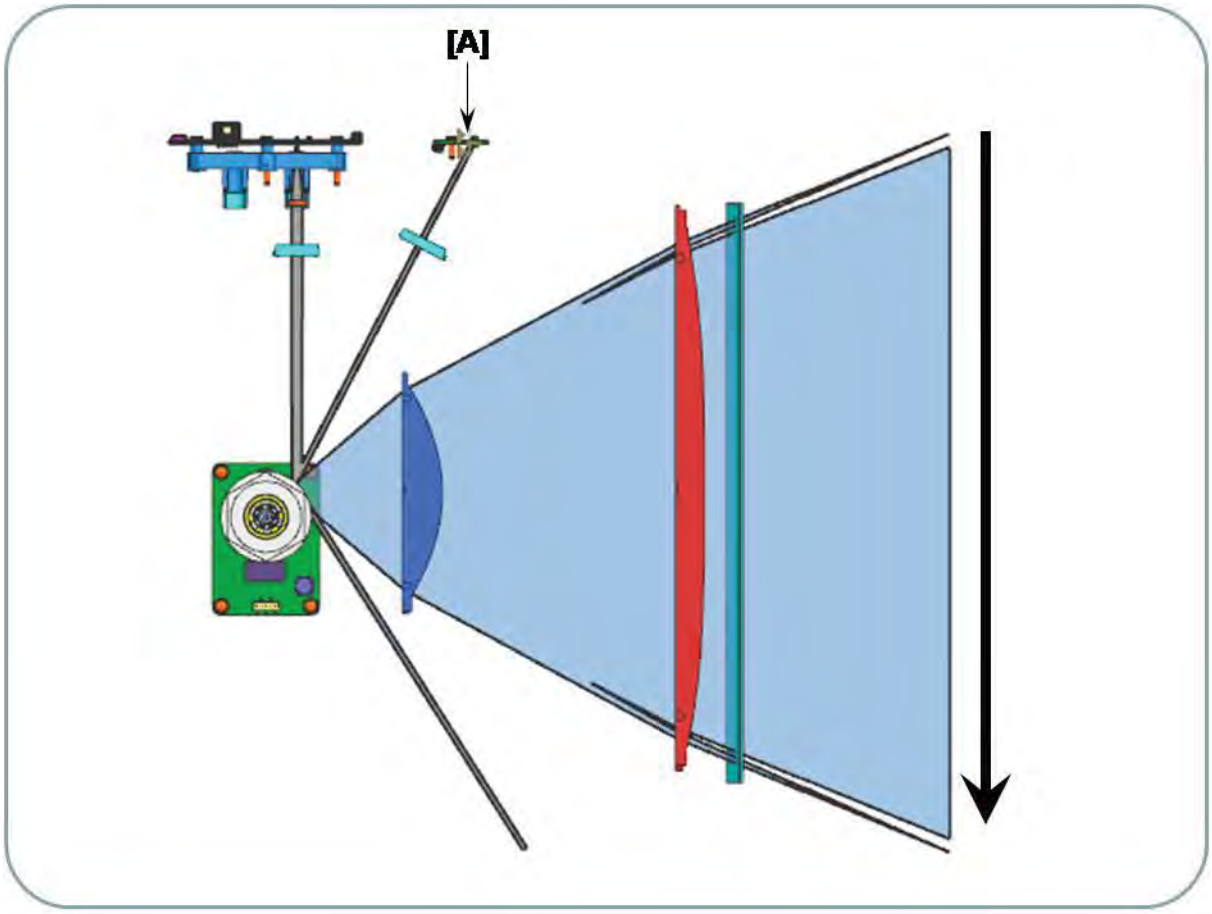
The laser scanner assembly has a beam detector sensor board (PD PCA). The PD PCA (A) detects the scanning start point.

Main Scan Start Detection

The beam is detected by the PD PCA at the scanning start point and creates the horizontal sync signal (Hsync).

The following diagram shows the data scanning direction.

Figure 1-16 Laser synchronizing detectors



Drive system

Drive motors

The following diagram shows the location of the printer drive motors.

Figure 1-17 Drive motors

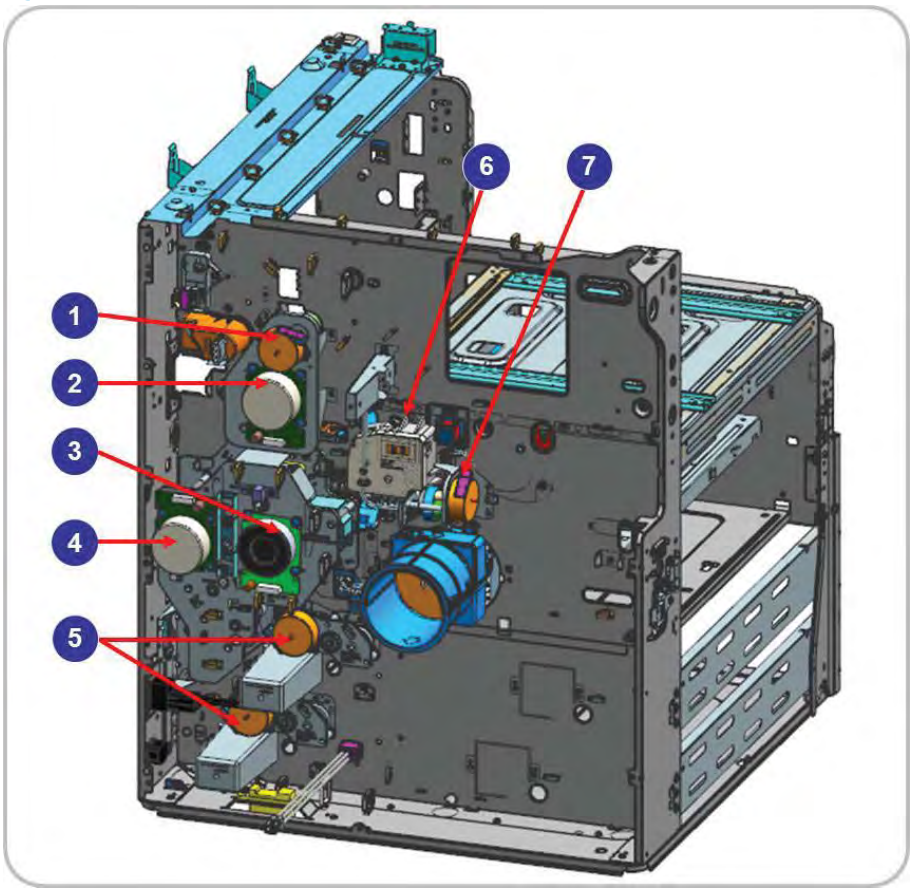


Table 1-15 Drive motors

Number	Motor	Motor type	Quantity	Function
1	Exit	PM-STEP	1	Exit drive (Reverse drive at duplex job)
2	Fuser	BLDC	1	Fuser drive/Fuser pressure mode (Reverse drive at pressure mode)
3	OPC/DEVE	BLDC	1	OPC/DEVE drive
4	Registration (Regi)/ Tray 1	BLDC	1	Registration (Regi)/Tray 1/Feed 1, 2 drive
	Feed 1, 2	E-Clutch	3	Registration (Regi)/Tray 1/Feed drive control
5	Pickup	PM-STEP	2	Pick roll/Tray 2 and 3 lift drive

Table 1-15 Drive motors (continued)

Number	Motor	Motor type	Quantity	Function
6	Toner supply	DC	1	Toner cartridge drive
7	Toner Duct	PM-STEP	1	Toner transport in toner cartridge drive duct

Main Drive Unit (OPC/DEVE/Registration/Tray 1/Feed)

Figure 1-18 Main drive unit—front view

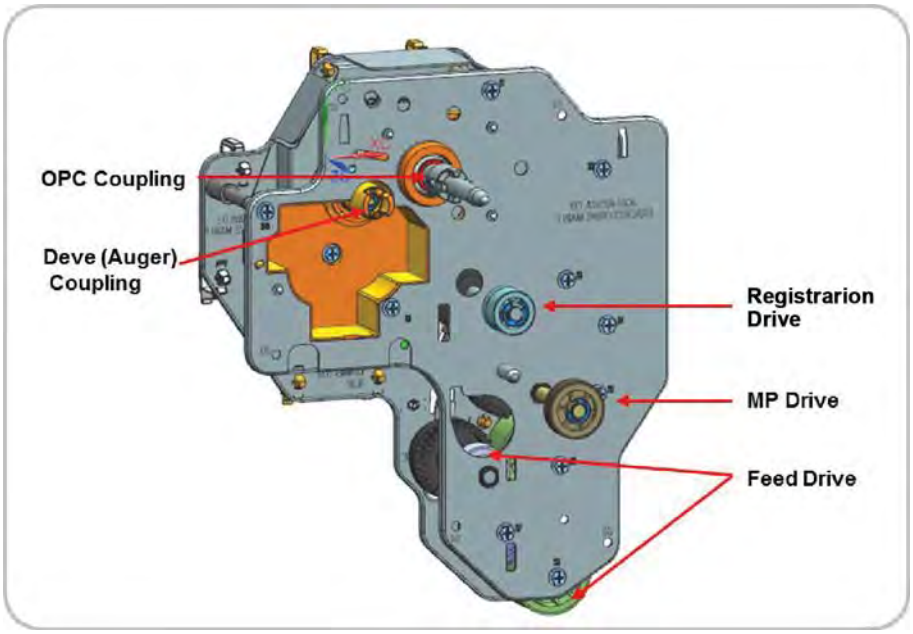


Figure 1-19 Main drive unit–rear view

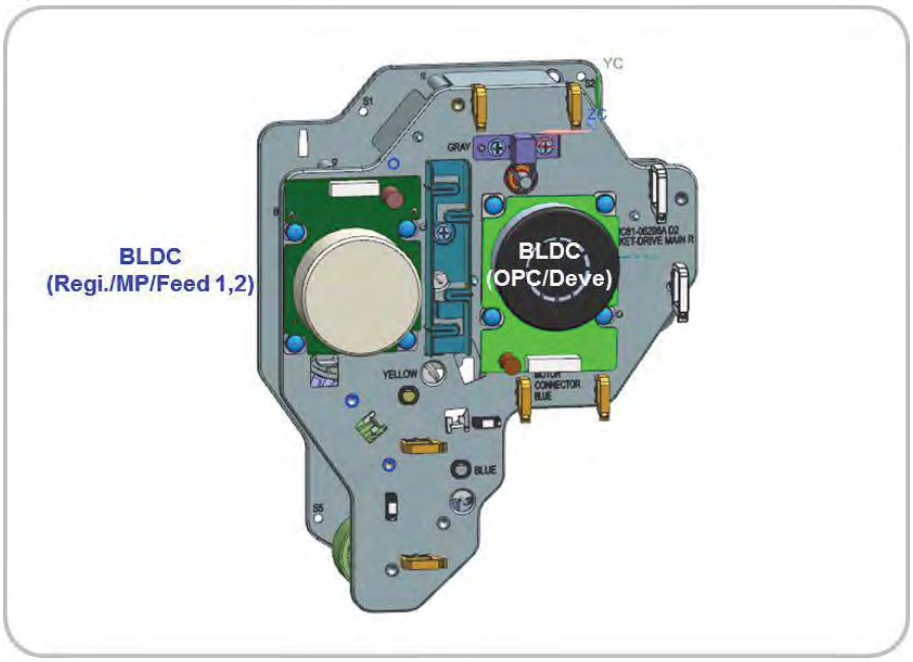
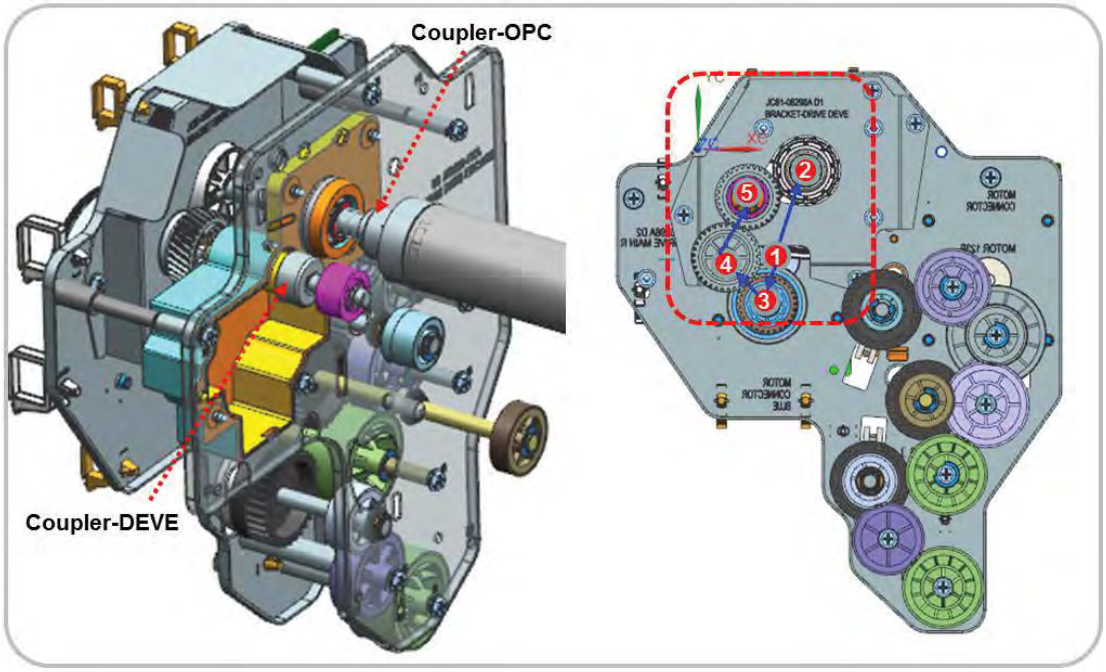
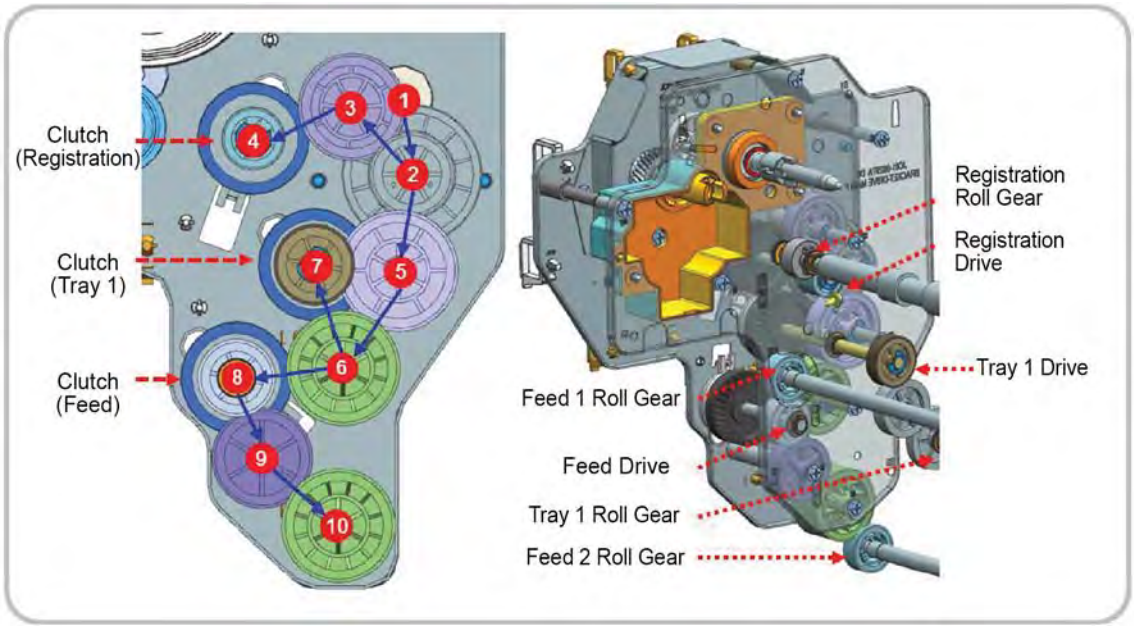


Figure 1-20 Main drive (OPC/Deve motors)



Power Train	Registration (Regi)/Tray 1/pickup: BLDC motor drive, Clutch drive control
• 1 → 2 → 3 (OPC drive) • 1 → 4 → 5 → 6 (Magnetic roller drive)	

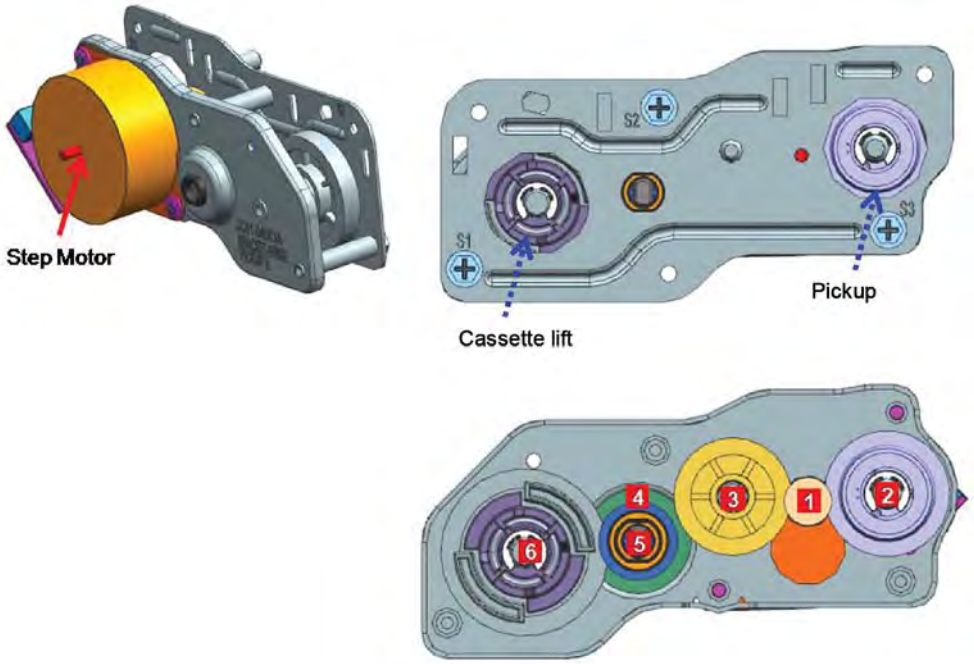
Figure 1-21 Main drive (Registration (Regi)/Tray 1/Feed 1, 2)



Power Train	Registration (Regi)/Tray 1/Feed 1, 2: BLDC motor drive, clutch drive control
• 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 Clutch/Gear (registration (Regi) input) • 1 → 2 → 5 → 6 → 7 Clutch/Gear (Tray 1 input) • 1 → 2 → 5 → 6 → 8 Clutch/Gear (feed 1 input) → 9 → 10 (feed 2 input)	

Pickup Drive

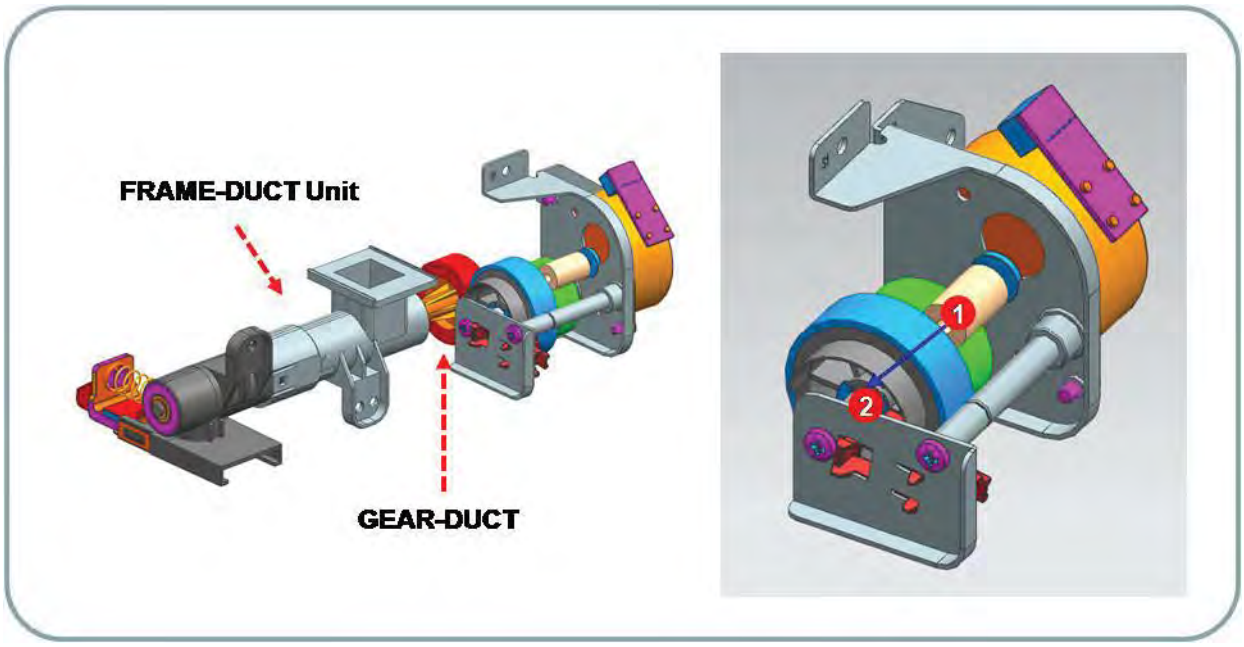
Figure 1-22 Pickup drive



Power Train	Pickup: rotating (pickup/input)/counter rotating (tray lift input)
• Step → Forward rotation → Gear 1 → Gear 2 (pickup) • Step → Reverse rotation → Gear 1 → Gear 3 → Gear 4 → Gear 5 → Gear 6 (tray lift)	

Duct Drive

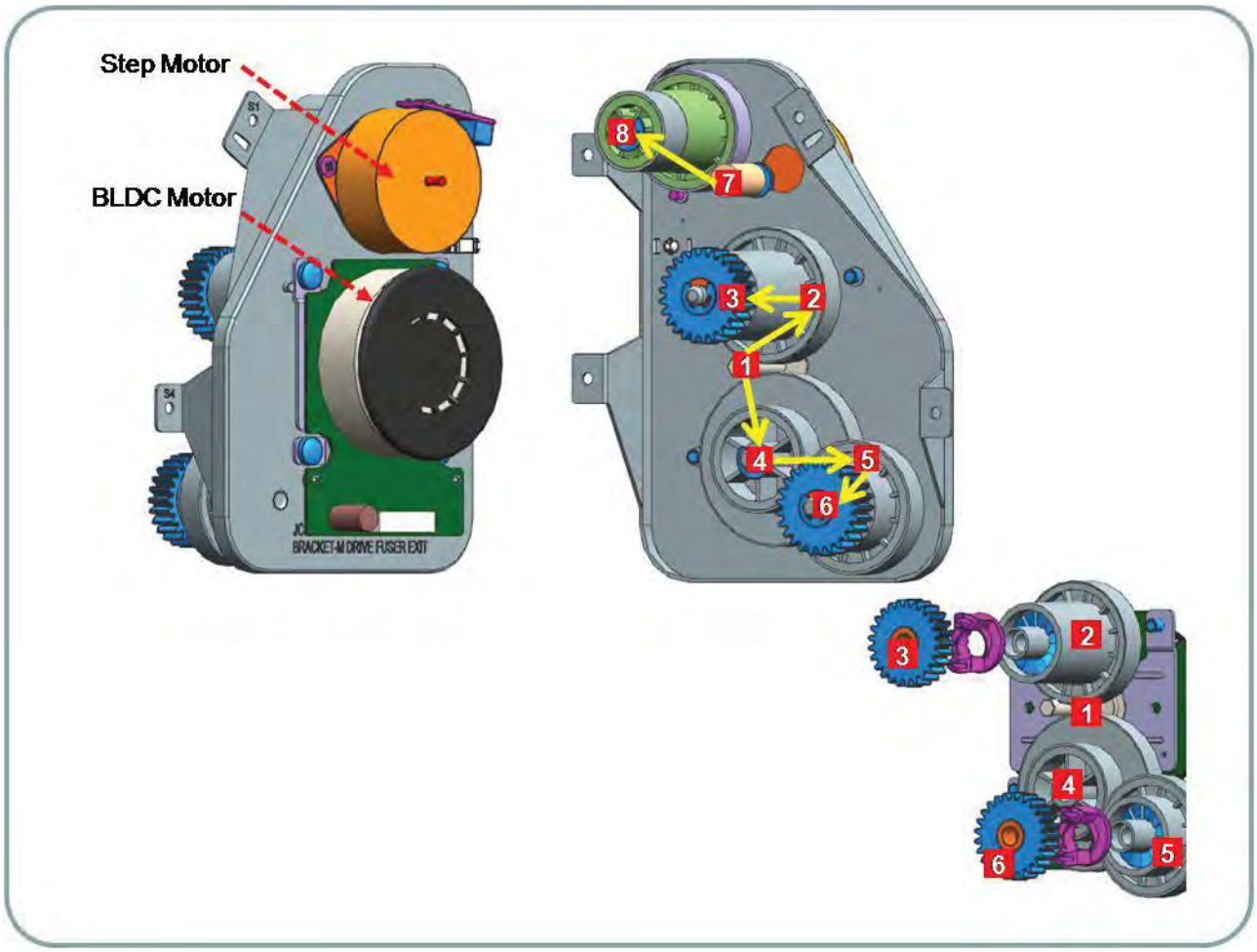
Figure 1-23 Duct drive



Power Train	DUCT: PM-STEP motor drive
• 1 PM-Step motor → 2 gear → gear duct drive	

Fuser/Exit Drive

Figure 1-24 Fuser/exit drive

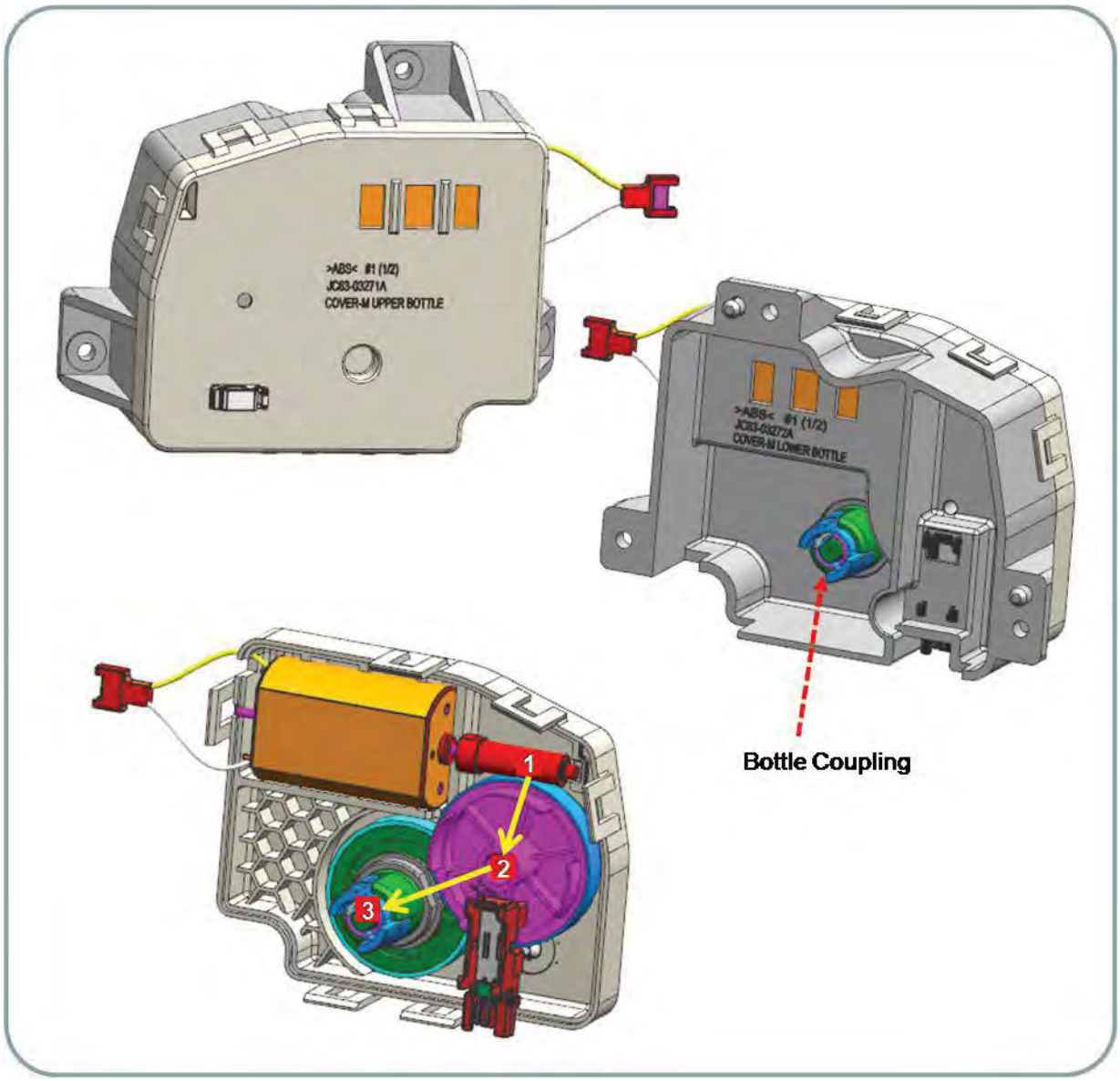


Power Train	• Fuser: BLDC motor drive • Exit: Step motor drive • Fuser and fuser release: One-way gear is used

- 1 BLDC Motor → counterclockwise rotation (CCW) → 2 clockwise rotations (CW) → 3 (CW) (Fuser drive)
- 1 BLDC Motor → 1 clockwise rotation (CW) → 4 (CCW) → 5 (CW) → 6 (CW) (Fuser release drive)
- 7 Step Motor →8 RDCN Exit (Exit drive)

Toner supply drive

Figure 1-25 Toner supply drive



Power Train	Toner cartridge drive
• 1 DC Motor → 2 gear-M RDCN supply → 3 gear-M supply (toner cartridge drive)	

Flatbed Scanner System

This section describes the scanner system, parts, and functions for both color and monochrome printers.

Flatbed scanner system overview

The scanner converts a hardcopy original into data. To scan an original, the scanner uses the lens and Charge Coupled Device (CCD). The scanner stores and transfers the converted image to the storage space or transfers the scanned data to the printer engine for copy.

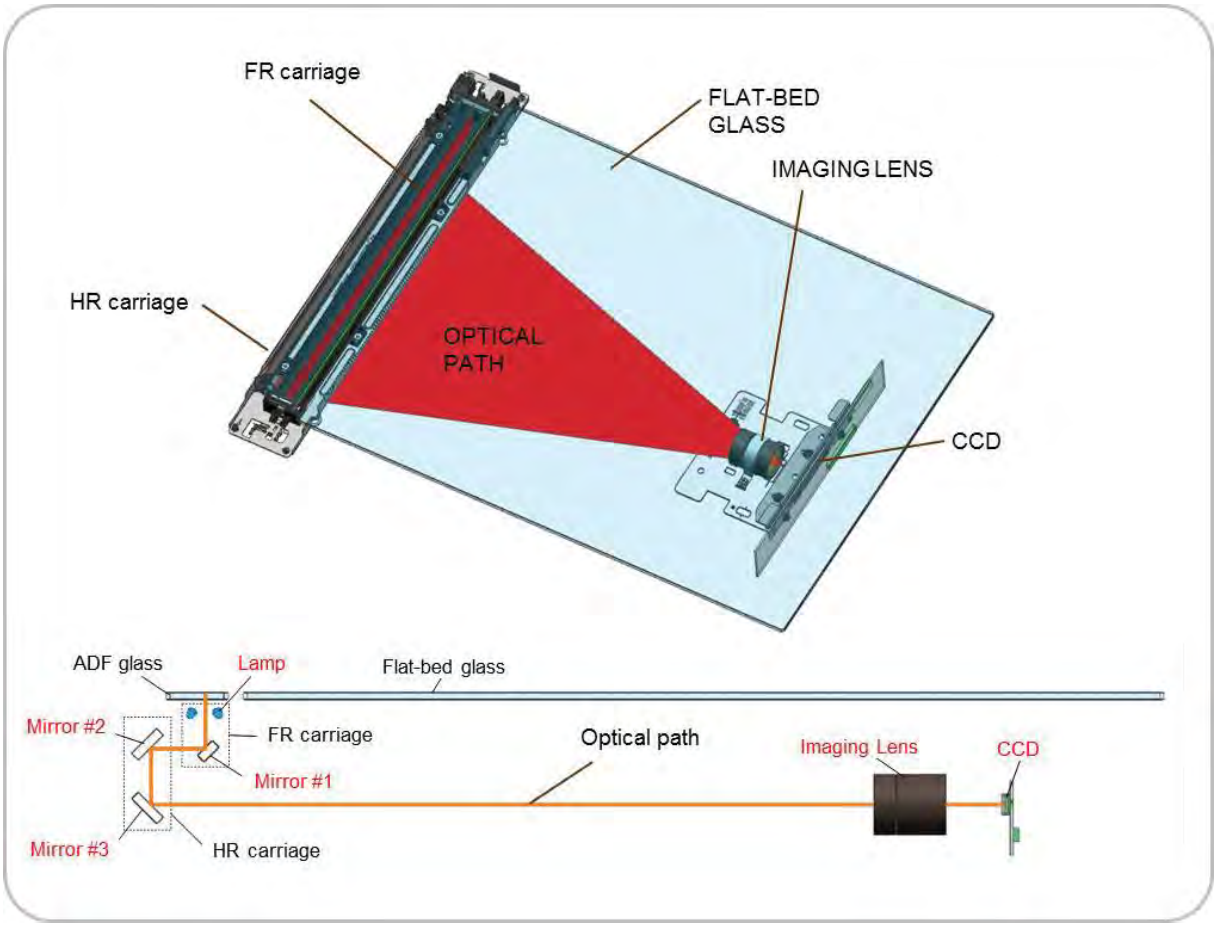
For scan operation, the scanner uses a full rate (FR) carriage and a half rate (HR) carriage that is moved by a wire. It scans the original document on the scanner glass or from the ADF.

The scanner system consists of the three following modules:

- **Full Rate (FR) carriage**: Illuminates the original and reflects the light at a 90 degree angle.
- **Half Rate (HR) carriage**: Transfers the reflected light from the FR carriage to the lens.
- **Imaging module**: Makes an image on the Charge Coupled Device (CCD).

The HR carriage moves half the distance at half the speed of the FR carriage. This maintains a constant distance between the original and the imaging lens.

Figure 1-26 Scanner system overview

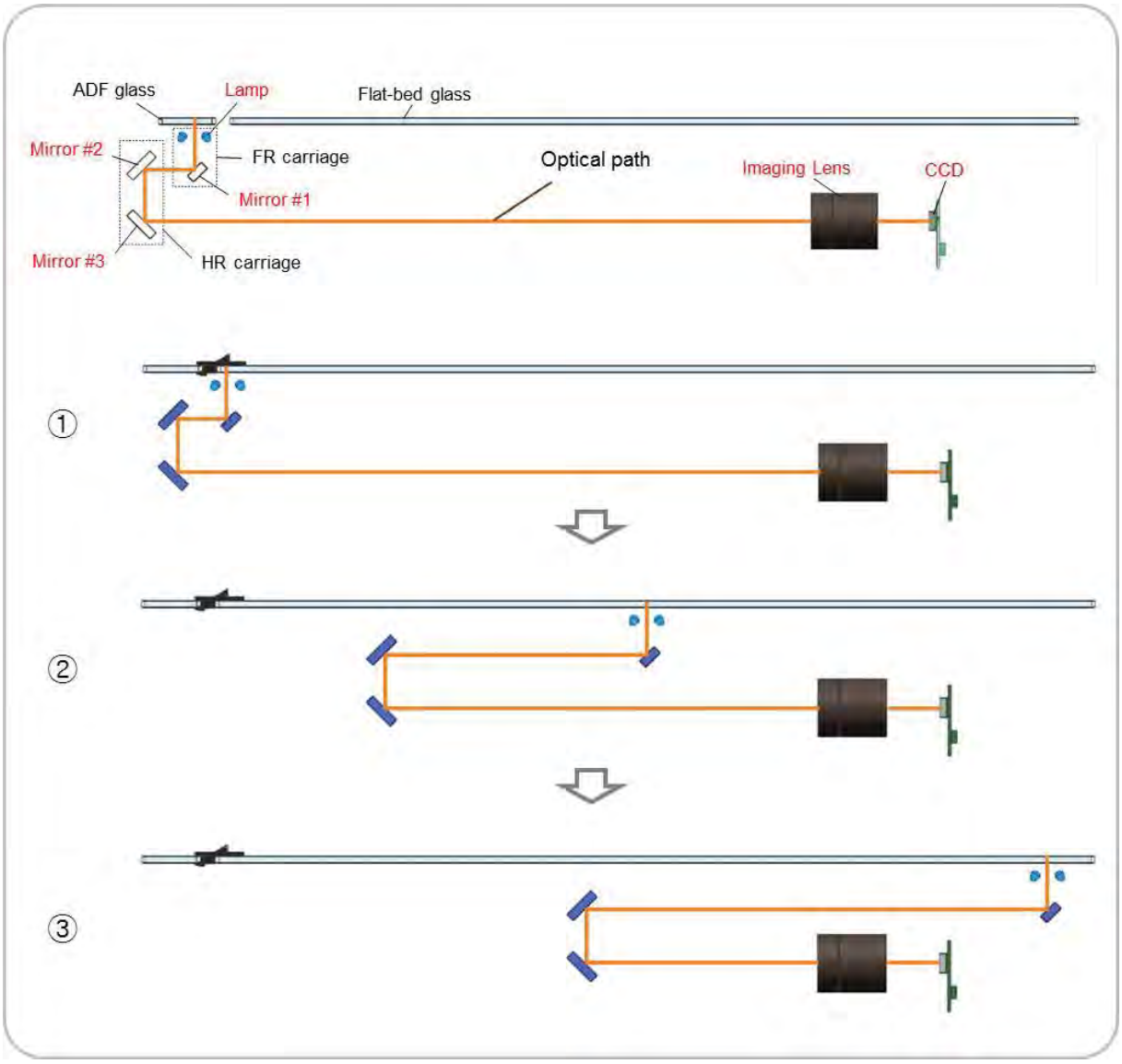


The following describes the scan process:

1. The FR carriage lamp illuminates the original. The reflected light is moved to Mirror #1.
2. The reflected light from Mirror #1 is sent to the imaging lens through Mirror #2 and #3.
3. The light becomes smaller and makes an optical image.
4. The optical image is generated to the electrical signal by the Charge Coupled Device (CCD) sensor.

To make a stable image, a constant distance must be maintained between the original and the lens. To maintain a constant distance, the HR carriage moves half the distance and half the speed of the FR carriage.

Figure 1-27 Scan process



The optical image made by the CCD sensor is changed to an electrical-analog signal.

Each color element signal in the optical image is separated by the CCD sensor into red, green, and blue.

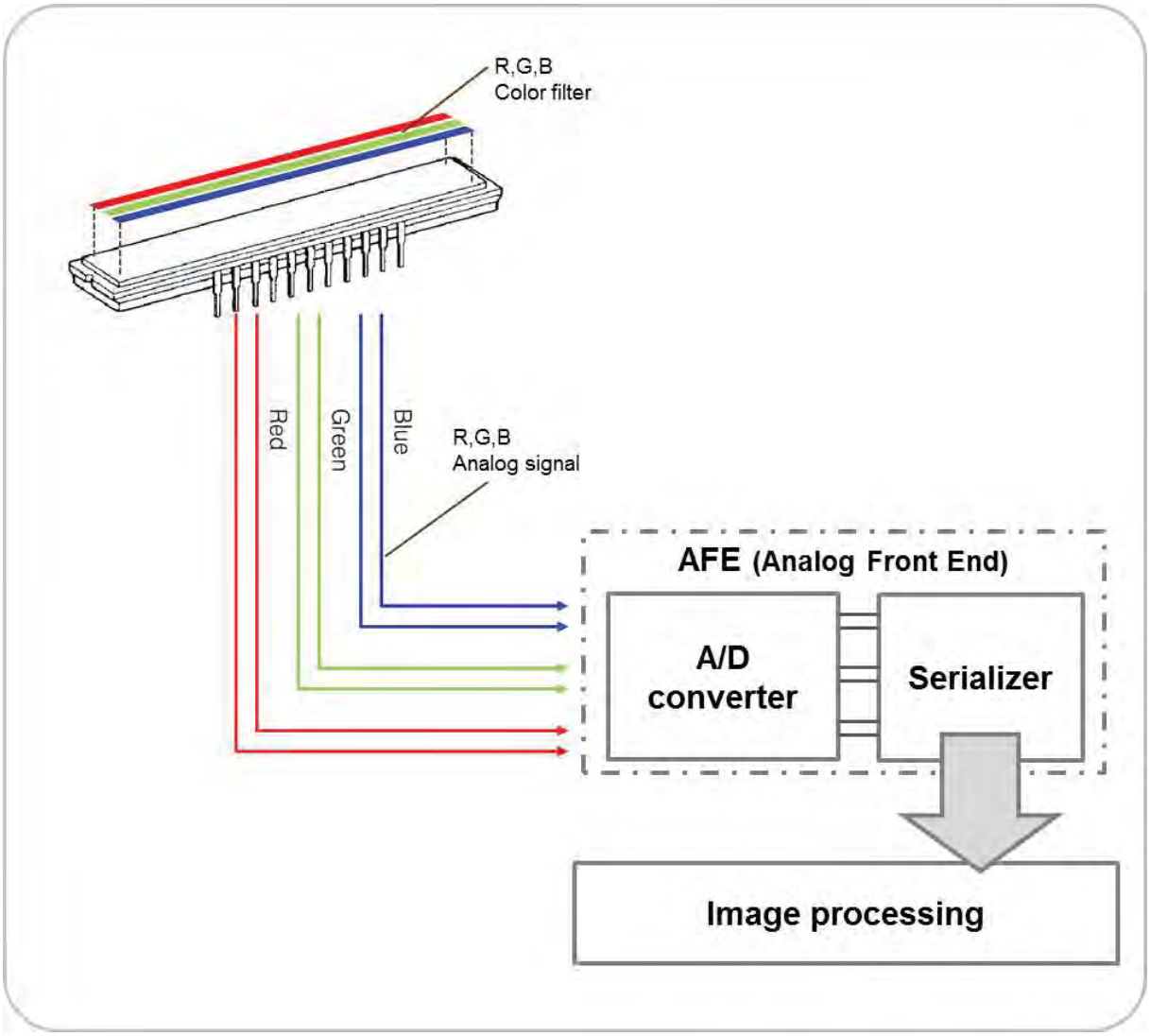
The red CCD sensor extracts the red color from the optical image, the green CCD sensor extracts the green color from the optical image, and the blue CCD sensor extracts the blue color from the optical image.

The analog image signal is changed to a digital image signal by the A/D converter and is transferred to the processor.

The image scan of the main scanning direction is performed by the CCD sensor. The CCD sensor consists of approximately 7500 pixels. The image scan of the sub scanning direction is performed by the FR carriage and HR carriage. The carriage is moved by a wire driven by the scan motor.

Scan resolution is 600 dpi.

Figure 1-28 Image processing



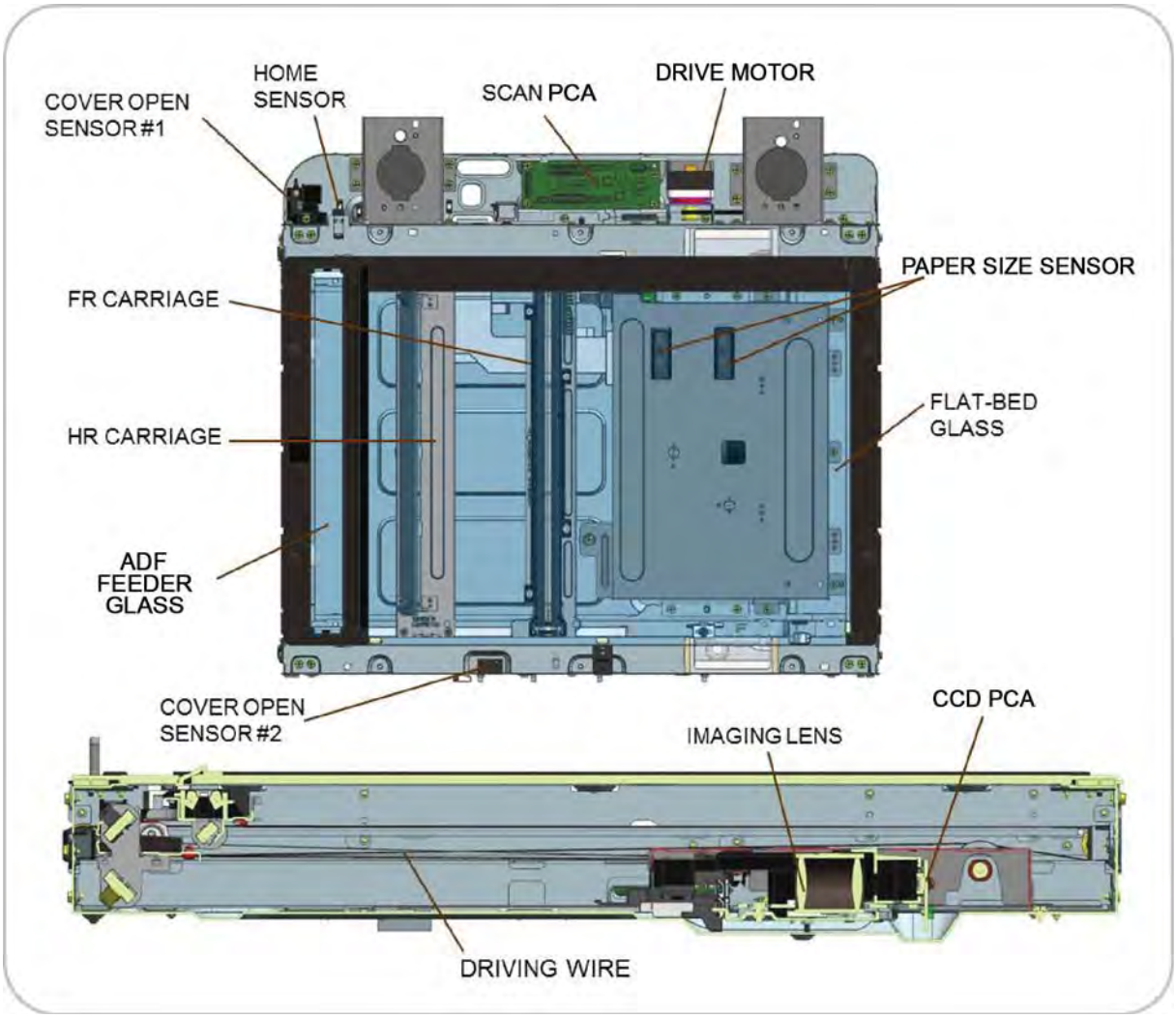
Scanning system components

The following shows the construction and purpose of the scanning system.

To scan the original on the scanner glass, two carriages driven by the motor move at a regular speed. The motor drives the timing belt, pulley, and wire. The wire pulley rolls and releases the wire to move the carriage.

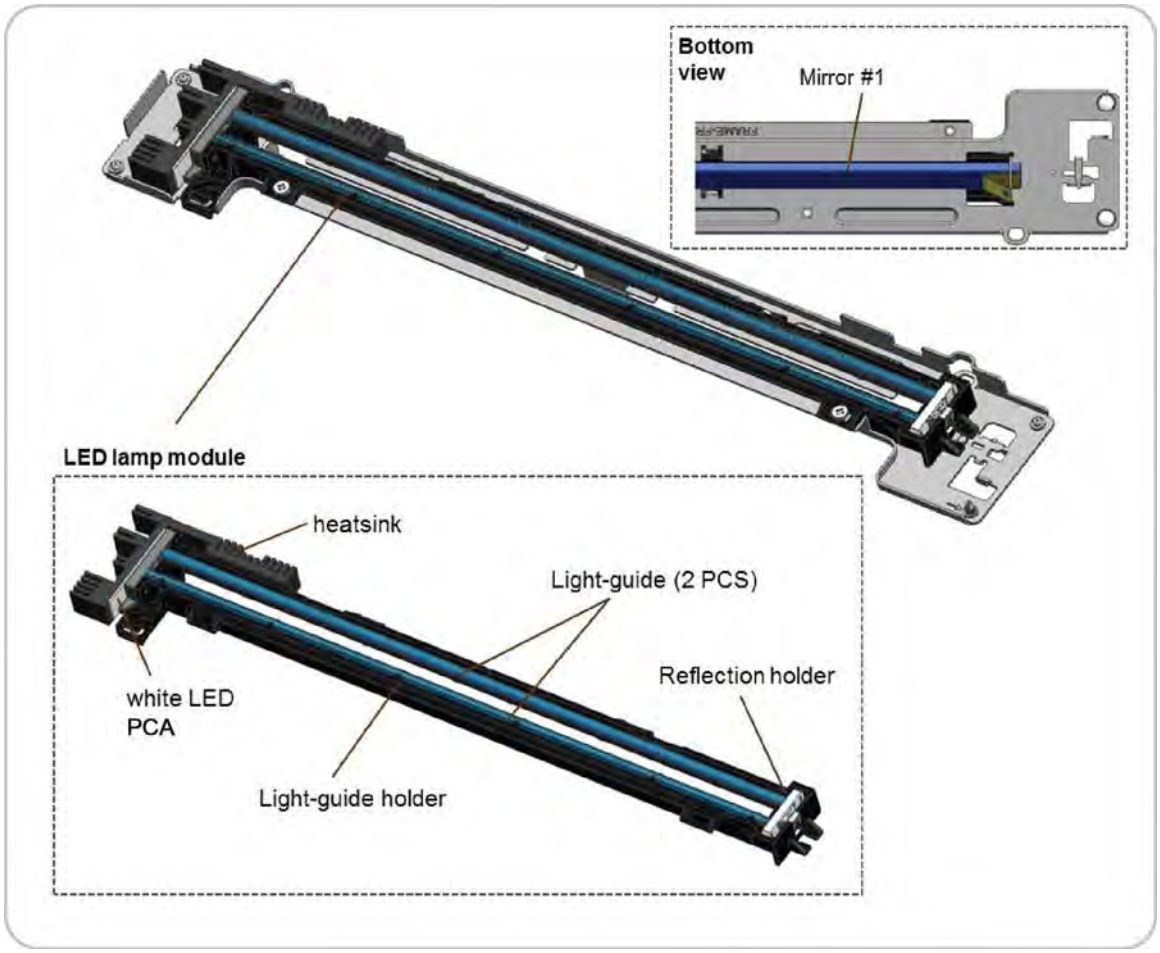
The scanner consists of the scanner glass, FR carriage, HR carriage, imaging unit, and drive unit.

Figure 1-29 Scanning system components



- FR Carriage

Figure 1-30 FR carriage



– LED lamp module

  This module illuminates the original. Two white LEDs are assembled on the side of the module. The original is illuminated by the light-guide.

  - Light-guide

    The light-guide changes the light from point type to line type. The light-guide is made by transparent resin and controls the amount of light in the scan area uniformly.

  - White LED

    The white LED emits white light. The heat sink attached to the PCA prevents heat deterioration.

  - Reflection holder

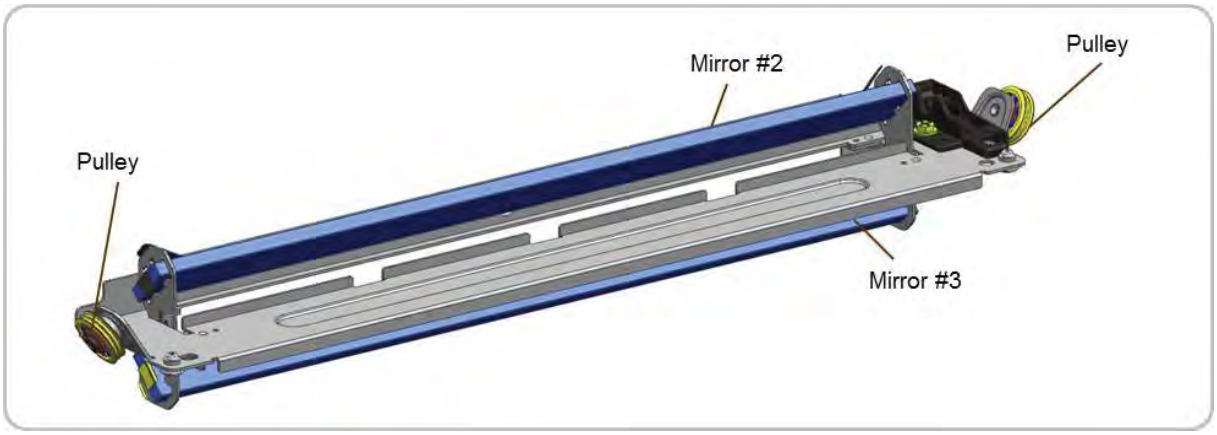
    The reflection holder reflects the light that has passed through the light-guide.

– Mirror #1

  Mirror #1 reflects light at a 90 degree angle.

HR Carriage (mirror unit)

Figure 1-31 HR carriage



- Mirror #2 and #3

  Mirrors #2 and #3 are positioned at a 45 degree angle in order to change the direction of the light. The reflected light from mirror #1 is sent to the imaging lens through mirrors #2 and #3.

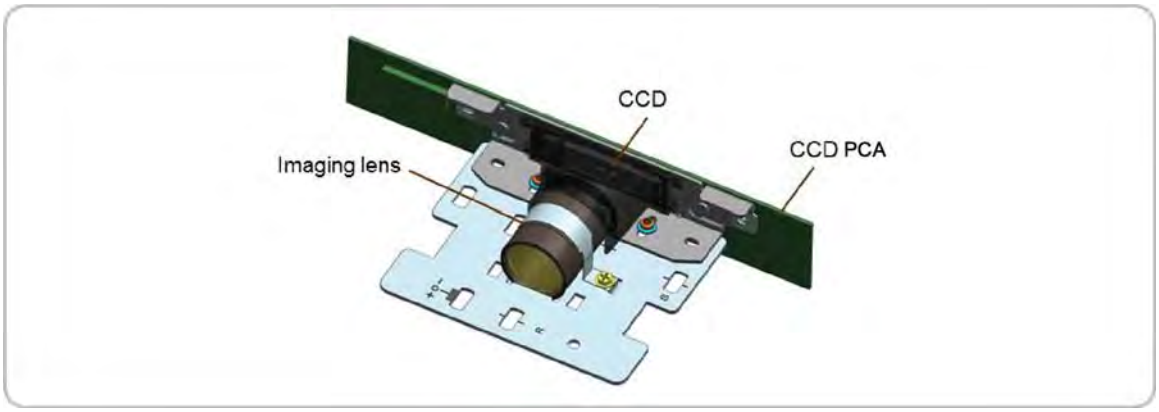
- Pulley

  The pulley is a ball bearing type. The pulley rolls and releases the wire which makes the HR carriage move. The HR carriage moves half the distance at half the speed of the FR carriage.

Imaging unit

The imaging unit changes the optical image to an electrical signal.

Figure 1-32 Imaging unit



- Imaging lens

  The reflected light from the imaging lens is focused on the CCD. The image is reduced to the fixed CCD sensor and pixel size.

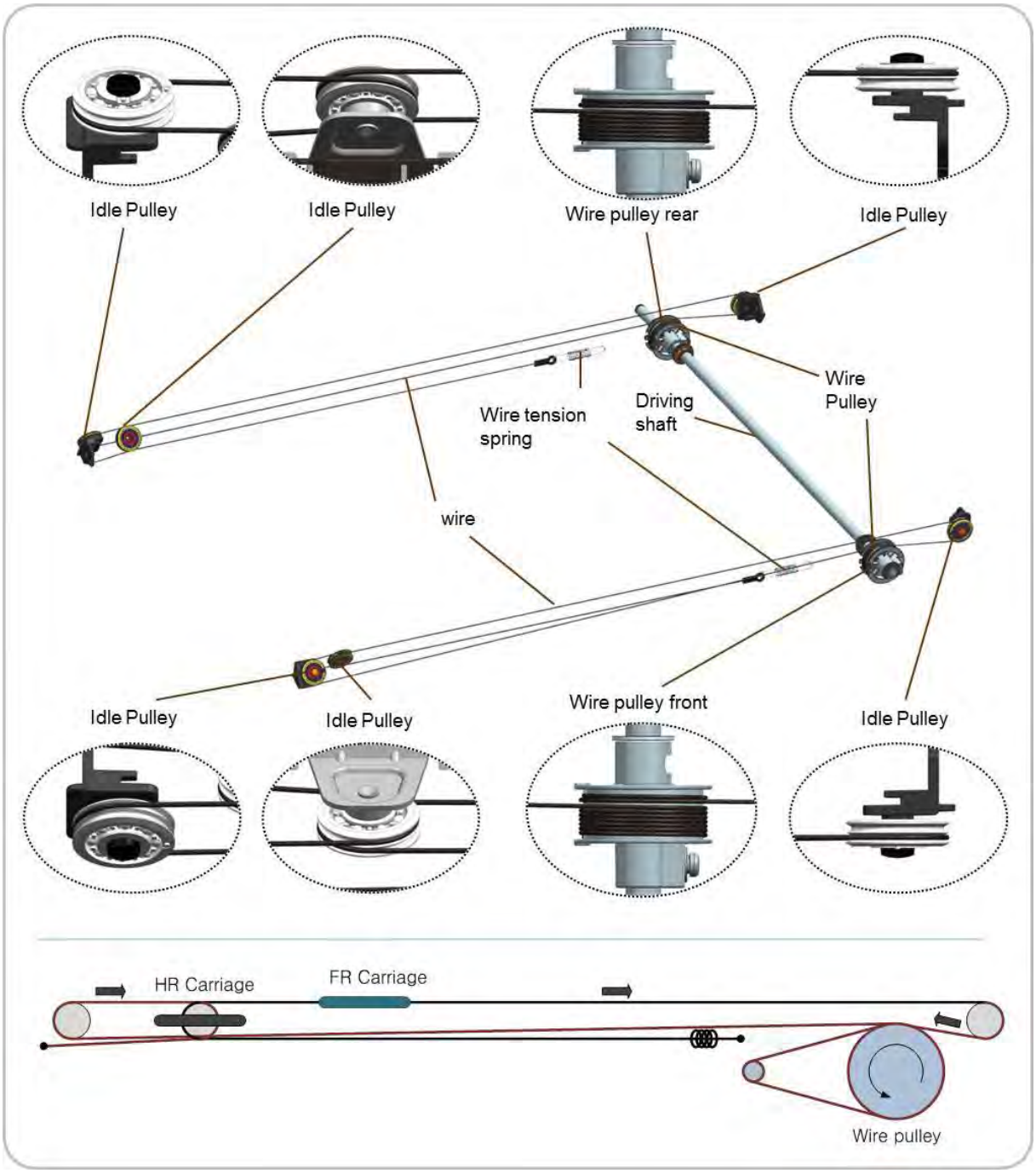
- Charge Coupled Device (CCD) PCA

  The image made by the imaging lens is changed to an electrical signal by the CCD. The CCD consists of three channel line sensors for image creation. The brightness and darkness of the image depends on the voltage level from the CCD. The output voltage is changed to a digital signal. The digital signal makes the scanned image.

Wire drive

To move the carriages, the wire is assembled in the front and rear of the scanner. The pulley rolls and releases the wire which moves the FR carriage and the HR carriage.

Figure 1-33 Wire drive



Scanner glass (flatbed glass)

The original is placed on the scanner glass for scan or copy jobs. The scanner glass is made of tempered glass and is held in place by the frame to prevent distortion.

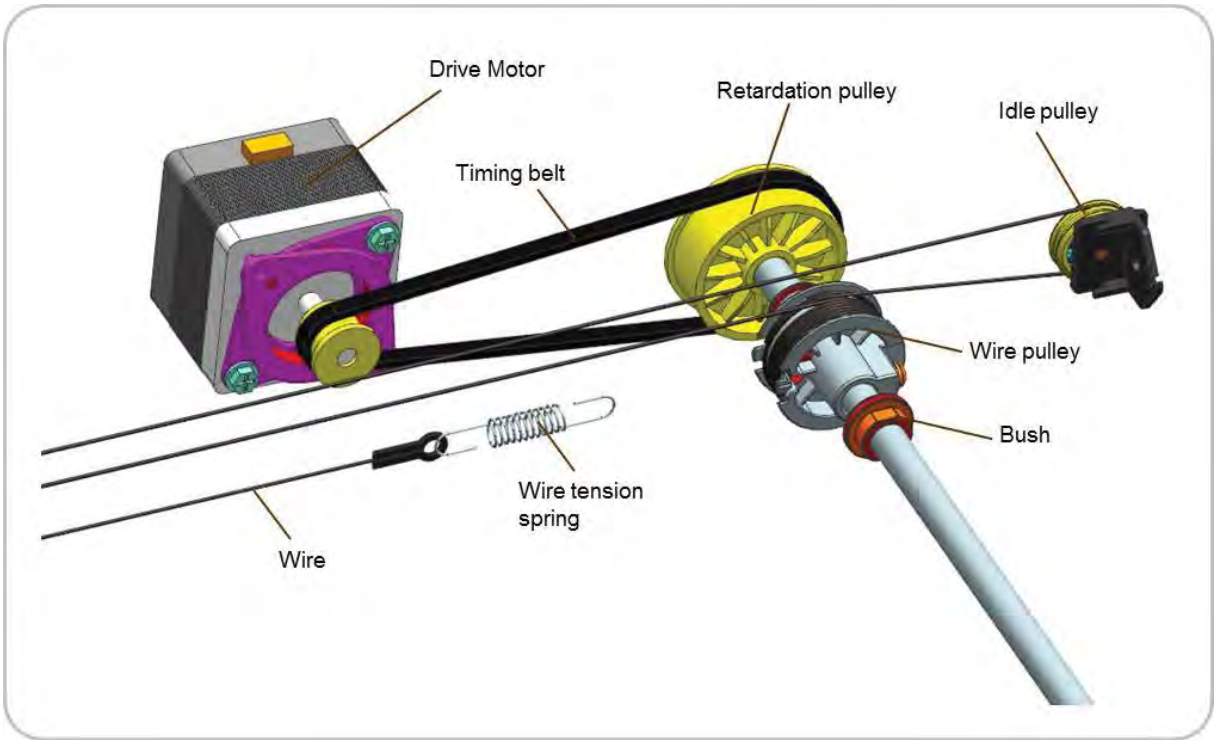
Drive motor

The scanner drive system uses the step motor to move the carriage. The step motor controls the position and maintains constant speed. The motor power is transferred to the wire through the timing belt and pulley.

Timing belt

The timing belt transfers the motor power to the pulley.

Figure 1-34 Timing belt



Paper size sensor

The paper size sensor automatically detects the size of the original on the scanner glass. The paper size sensor uses two sensors. An infrared LED is used to detect the dark original.

Home sensor

The home sensor detects the FR carriage position. The home sensor is a transmission photosensor.

Cover open sensor #1

When the ADF unit opens and closes, a function is triggered which detects whether the paper size sensor is on or off.

Cover open sensor #2

The cover open sensor #2 detects when the ADF unit is closed using a magnetic field.

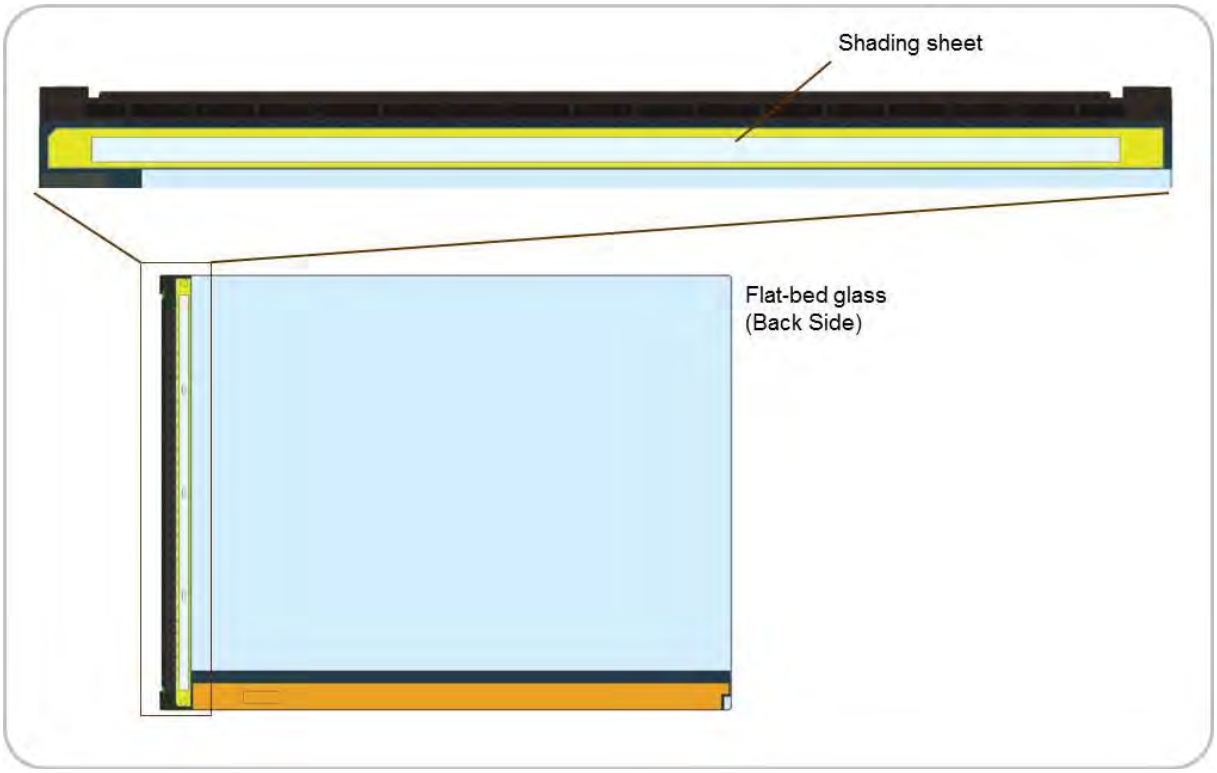
ADF glass

ADF glass scans the original through the ADF unit. The FR carriage reads the original as it passes. If the ADF glass is contaminated, a horizontal black or white line might appear.

Shading sheet

The shading sheet detects white color in the base. Before every scan job, the scan module reads the shading sheet to scan the image with the same color and brightness. If the shading sheet is contaminated, a vertical image might occur.

Figure 1-35 Shading sheet



Caution for moving the scanner

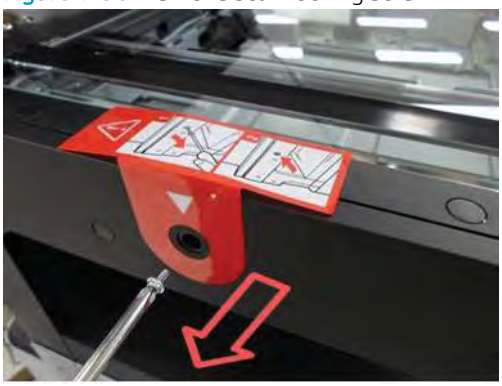
Lock the FR and HR carriages to prevent damage when shipping or moving the printer.

When installing

After unpacking, before turning on the printer, the scan locking screw must be removed. If the locking screw is not removed scanner failure will occur.

1. When installing the printer, remove the scan locking screw.
2. After removing the screw, assemble the screw cap from the accessory package.

Figure 1-36 Remove scan locking screw



When moving

When moving the printer, tighten the scan locking screw to prevent damage to the carriages.

1. Make sure the FR carriage is located in the home position.
2. Remove the screw cap.
3. Tighten the M3x8 screw to secure the FR carriage.

Figure 1-37 Tighten scan locking screw



Flow Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) z bundles (GX)

Flow (GX) ADF overview

Figure 1-38 Flow (GX) ADF overview

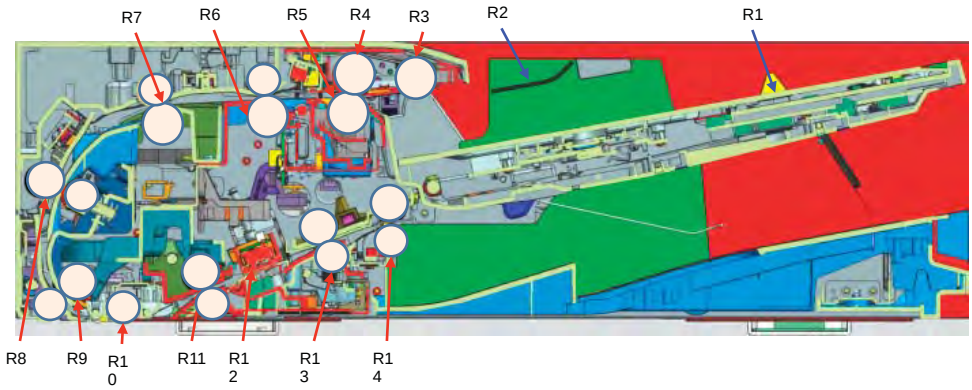


Table 1-16 Flow ADF overview

Part		Function
R1	STACKER ASSY	Original paper input tray
R2	GUIDE-DOCU F&R	Original paper guide (front/rear)
R3	PICK ROLLER	Pick up original paper from the input tray
R4	ADF ROLLERr	Original paper feed roller
R5	SEPARATION ROLLER	Original paper separation roller
R6	FEED ROLLER	Original paper transfer roller (A6 size)
R7	PRE REGI ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller (1 round)
R8	REGI ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller (2 round)
R9	SCAN IN ROLLER	Feeds an original paper before scanning
R10	SIMPLEX WHITE-ROLLER	Support of simplex scanning unit
R11	SIMPLEX SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the duplex white-roller
R12	D-CIS MODULE	Back side image scan unit
R13	DUPLEX SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the exit roller
R14	EXIT ROLLER	Sends an original paper to the exit tray

Sensors

Figure 1-39 Flow ADF sensors

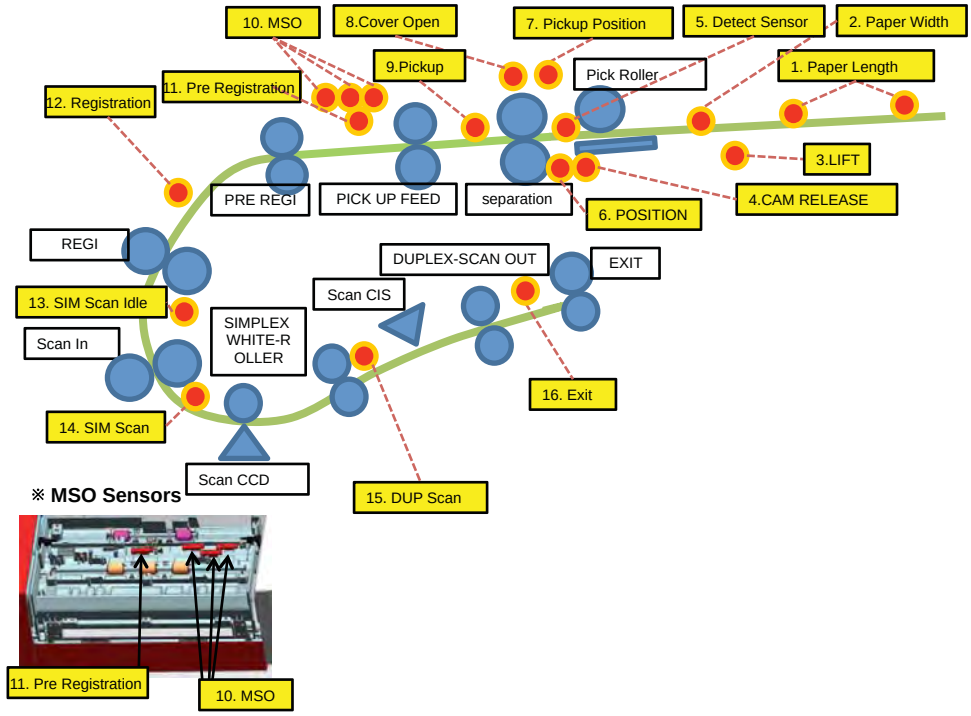
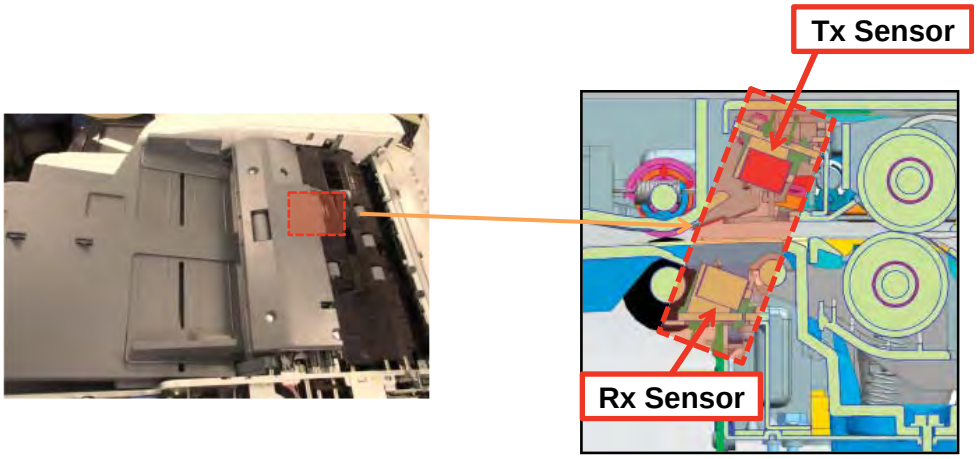


Table 1-17 Flow ADF sensors

Callout	Item	Function
1	Paper Length Sensor	Detects paperlength
2	Paper Width Sensor	Detects paperwidth
3	Stacker Lift Sensor	Detects Stacker Position
4	Cam Release Sensor	Sensing 'Separation Roller' rotation
5	Detect Sensor	Detects if tray is empty
6	Position Sensor	Detects Stacker Position
7	Pickup Position Sensor	Sensing 'Pick Roller' rotation
8	Cover Open Sensor	Detects if cover is open or closed
9	Pickup Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the feed path
10	MSO Sensor	Detects mix size
11	Pre-Regi Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the pre-regi path
12	Regi Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Regi path
13	SIM Scan Idle Sensor	Sensing 'Scan In Roller' rotation
14	SIM Scan Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Scan In path
15	DUP Scan Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Scan Out path
16	Exit Sensor	Paper Exit Sensing

Ultra Sonic Multi-feed (USM)

Figure 1-40 Flow ADF Ultra Sonic Multifeed

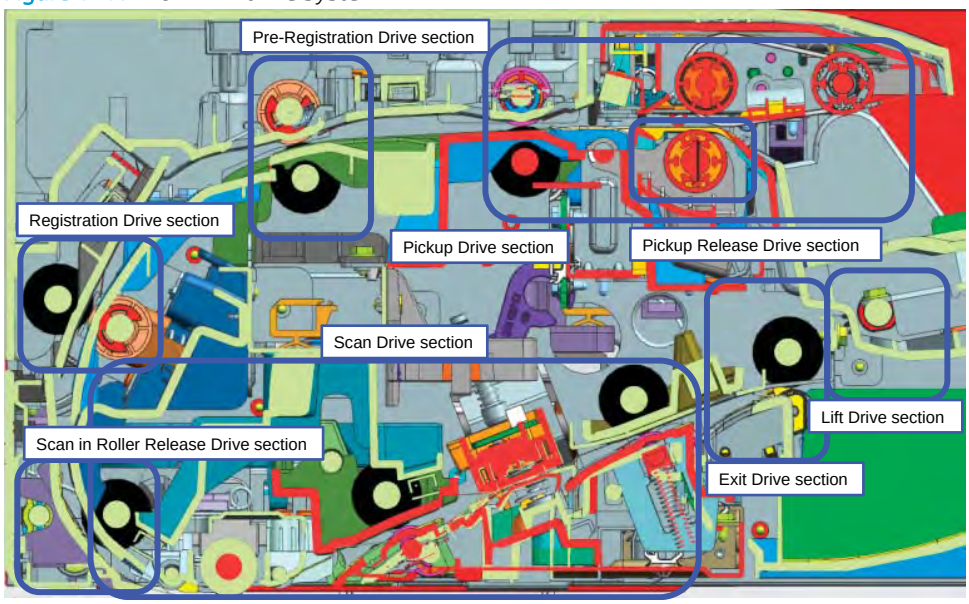


- This sensor detects multi-feeds.
- Component: Ultrasonic Sensor Tx Board, Rx Board , HIC Board (Amp and Filter)
- The Rx Sensor has a different level on each paper status: no paper, one paper, multiple papers.
- Detect the multi-feeding through the level change of Rx Sensor.
- Transmit and receive operation of 300 khz frequency.

Flow ADF drive system

The flow ADF drive system consists of eight motors.

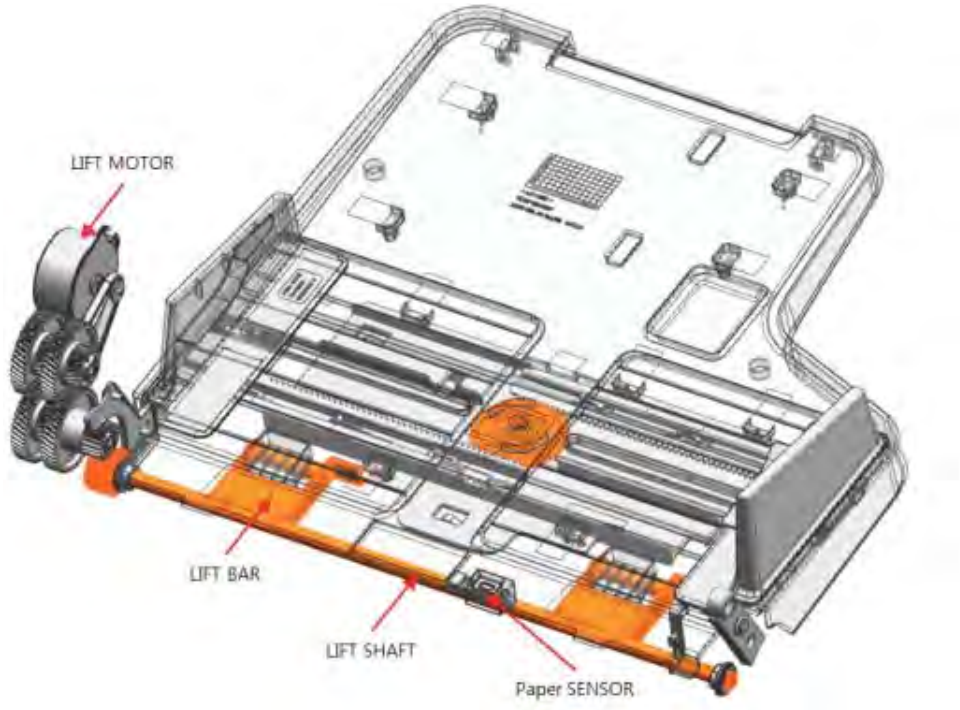
Figure 1-41 Flow ADF drive system



The Flow ADF drive system has eight sections: Pickup Release Drive, Pickup Drive, Pre-Regi Drive, Regi Drive, Scan-in Roller Release Drive, Scan Drive, Exit Drive, and Lift Drive sections.

Flow ADF document lifting drive system

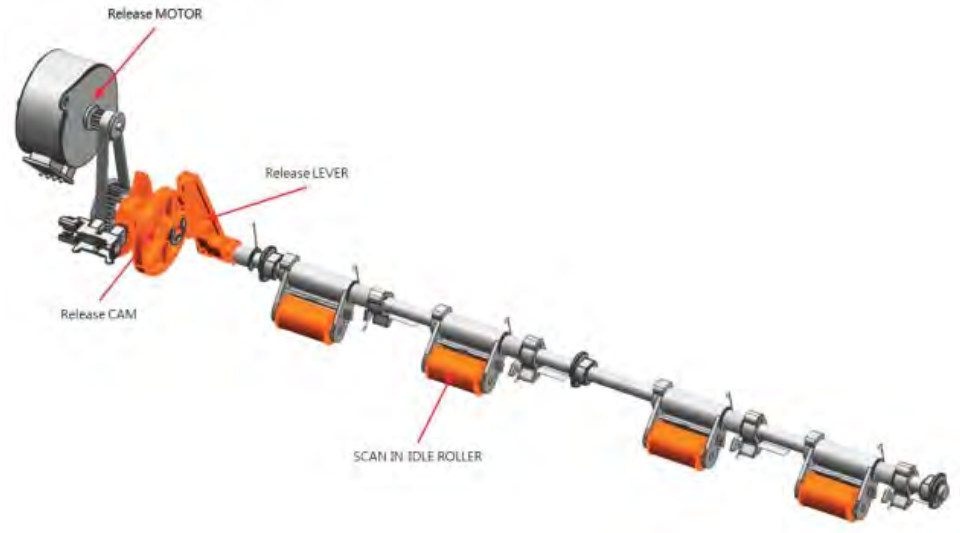
Figure 1-42 Flow ADF document lifting drive system



- Component: LIFT MOTOR, LIFT SHAFT, LIFT BAR, PAPER SENSOR
- LIFT MOTOR Starts > LIFT SHAFT and LIFT BAR lift Tray
- PAPER SENSOR detects paper in the Tray
- Paper contacts PICK ROLLER and stops movement
- Document is passed through SCAN OUT SENSOR. Duplex scanning starts.

Flow ADF Scan-In Roller Release Drive System

Figure 1-43 Flow ADF Scan-In Roller Release Drive System



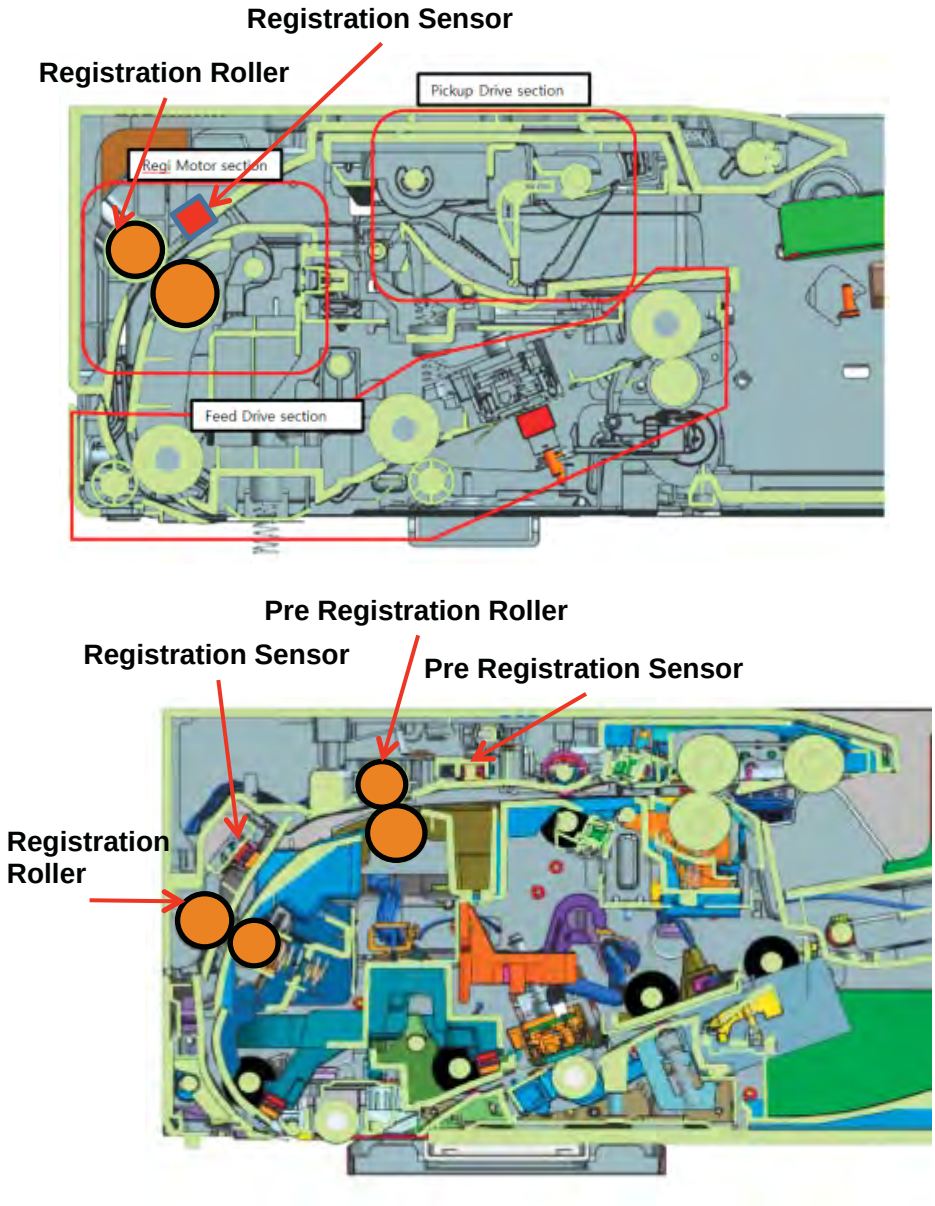
- Holds the rear of the paper using cam motion for improved scan quality
- Component: RELEASE MOTOR, RELEASE CAM, SCAN-IN IDLE ROLLER
- Motor and cam operation repeats for every piece of paper

Flow ADF specification

Capacity	250 pages (stacker lifting)
Scan Speed	120/240 ipm
Pickup	Semi-Retard
Registration	2 times registration
Motor	8 each
Stacker	Lifting
Scanning	White Roller/White Bar
MSO	Support

Flow ADF Registration

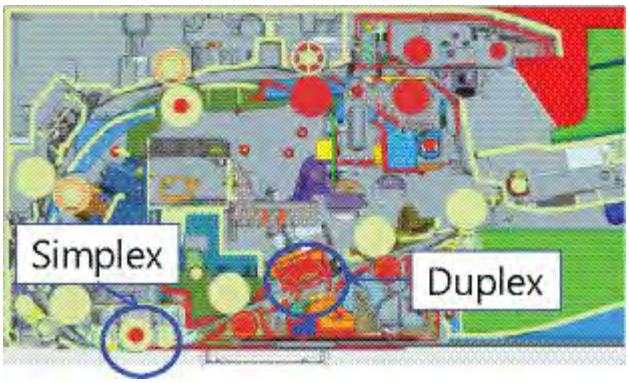
Figure 1-44 Flow ADF Registration



The Flow ADF has two times registration.

Flow ADF Scanning Position

Figure 1-45 Flow ADF Scanning Position



	Type	Simplex	Duplex
Scanning	Z-GX	White Roller	White Bar

Mixed Size Original (MSO)

The MSO detects the size of mixed size papers and sets the alignment of the papers to the rear.

Figure 1-46 MSO 1



Figure 1-47 MSO 2

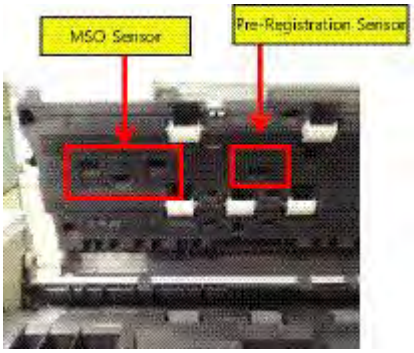


Table 1-18 MS03

Max width / Length	A3 SEF (297 mm)	A4 LEF (297 mm)	B4 SEF (257 mm)	B5 LEF (257 mm)	A4 SEF (210 mm)	A5 LEF (210 mm)	B5 SEF (182 mm)	A5 SEF (148 mm)
A3 SEF (420 mm)		X						
A4 LEF (210 mm)	X							
B4 SEF (363 mm)	X	X		X				
B5 LEF (182 mm)	X	X	X					
A4 SEF (297 mm)	X	X	X	X		X		
A5 LEF (148 mm)	X	X	X	X	X			
B5 SEF (257 mm)			X	X	X	X		
A5 SEF (210 mm)					X	X		

Dual sensor cleaning method

- Component: LEVER GUIDE EXIT F, GUIDE-EXIT UPPER ASSEMBLY.
- Open LEVER GUIDE EXIT F.
- Cleans with a D-CIS GLASS in the direction indicated.
- Cleans the GUIDE EXIT UPPER ASSEMBLY in the direction indicated.

Figure 1-48 Dual sensor cleaning method

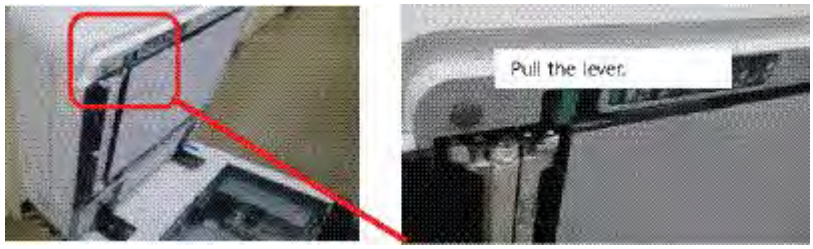
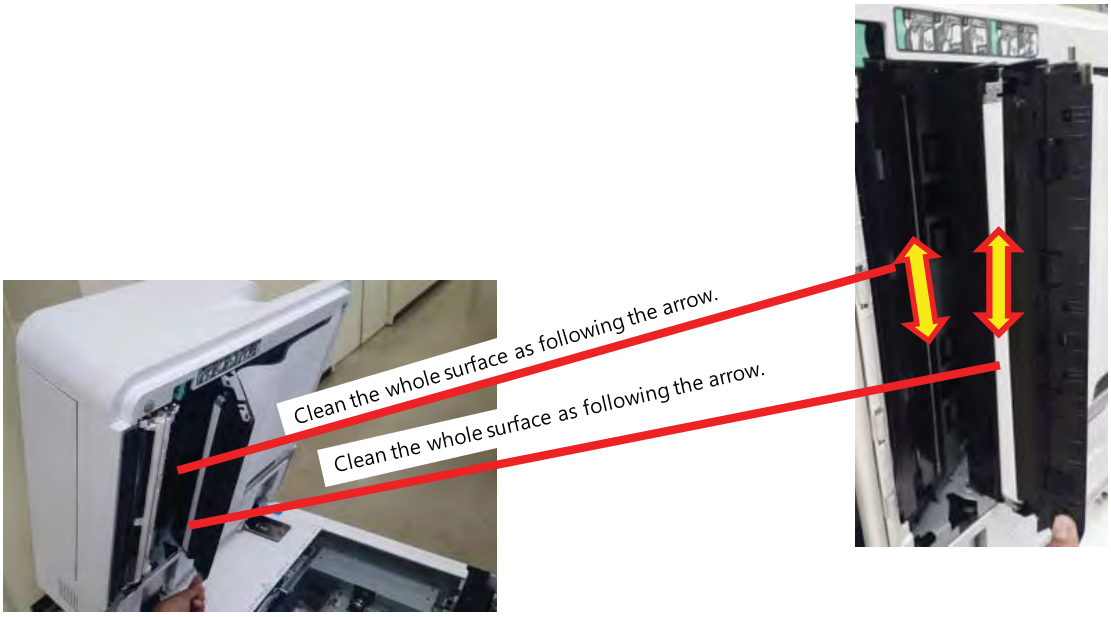


Figure 1-49 Dual sensor cleaning method



Flow ADF z bundles (GX)

Model	Engine	Scanner			
		Platen	Z-GX		
Color	40 ppm	Same at whole machine	Scan Speed	USM	Capacity
	50 ppm		120/240 ipm	0	250 sheet
	60 ppm				
Mono	40 ppm				
	50 ppm				
	60 ppm				

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) dn bundles (LX)

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (LX) overview

Figure 1-50 ADF (LX) overview

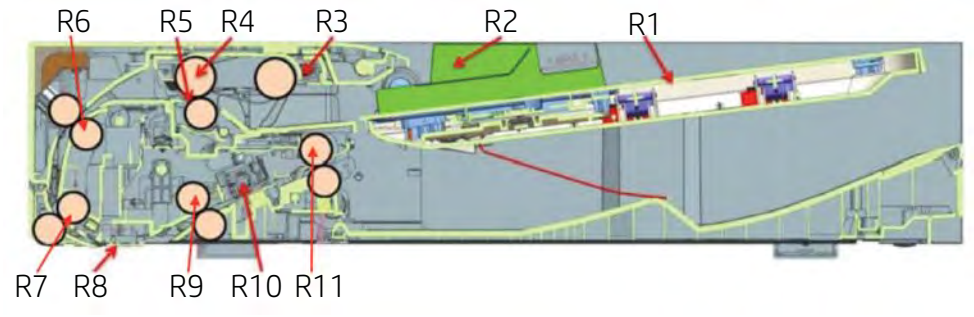


Table 1-19 ADF (LX) overview

Part		Function
R1	STACKER ASSY	Original paper input tray
R2	GUIDE-DOC F&R	Original paper guide (front/rear)
R3	PICK ROLLER	Pick up original paper from the input tray
R4	ADF ROLLER	Original paper feed roller
R5	SEPARATION ROLLER	Original paper separation roller
R6	REGISTRATION (REGI) ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller
R7	SCAN IN ROLLER	Feeds an original paper before scanning
R8	SIMPLEX WHITE-BAR	Support of scanning unit
R9	SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the exit roller
R10	D-CIS MODULE	Back side image scan unit
R11	EXIT ROLLER	Sends an original paper to the exit tray

Electrical parts location

Figure 1-51 LX ADF electrical parts location

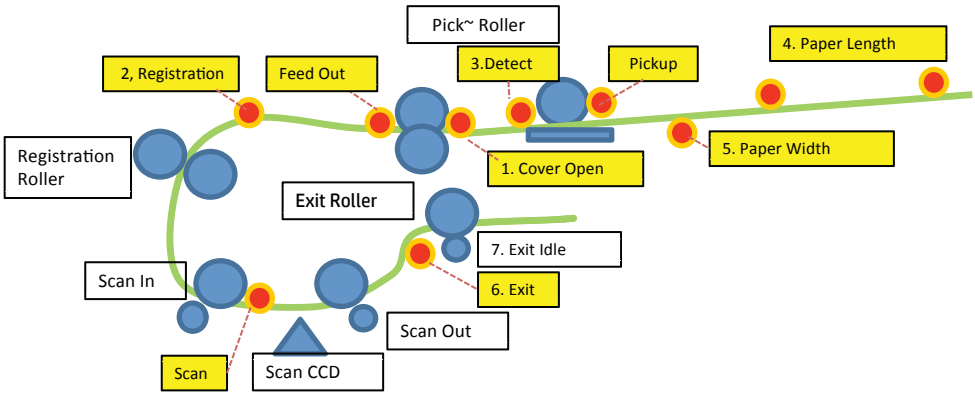
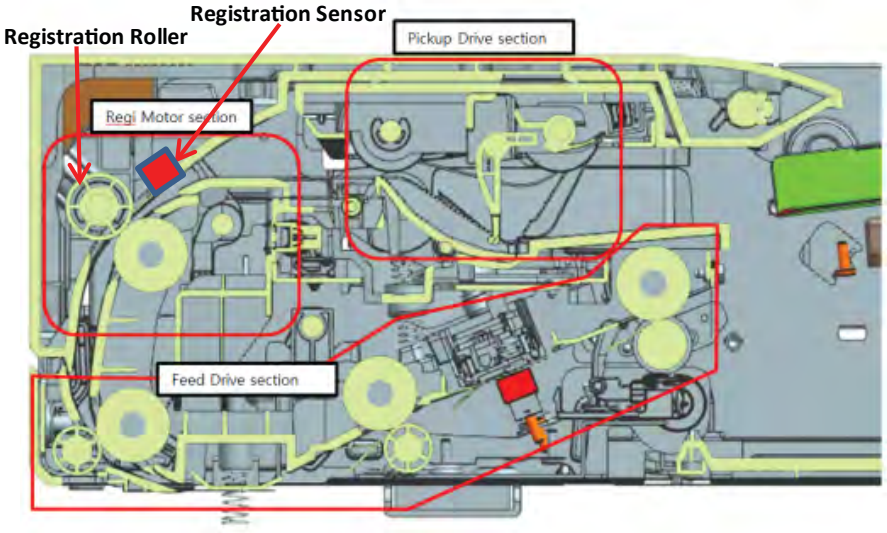


Table 1-20 LX ADF electrical parts location

Callout	Item	Function
1	Cover Open	Detects if cover is open or closed
2	Registration (Regi) Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the registration path
3	Detect Sensor	Detects if tray is empty
4	Paper Length Sensor	Detects paper length
5	Paper Width Sensor	Detects paper width
6	Exit Sensor	Paper Exit Sensing
7	Exit Idle Sensor	Sensing 'Exit Roller' rotation

LX ADF Registration

Figure 1-52 LX ADF registration

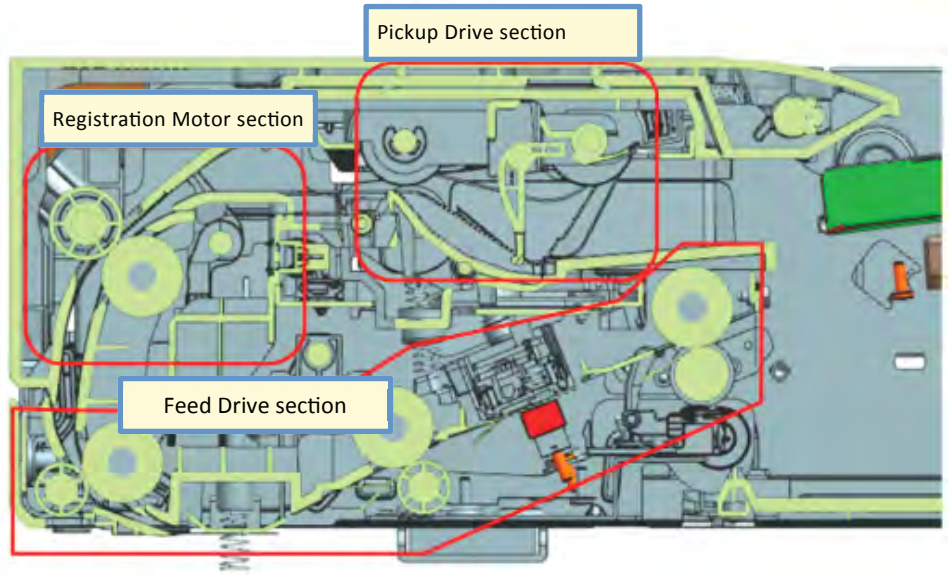


	ADF (dn bundles) (LX)
Registration	1 times registration

LX ADF drive system

The ADF drive system consists of one motor and two clutches to transfer the paper.

Figure 1-53 LX ADF drive system



The ADF (DSDF) drive system consists of two motors (BLDC and STEP) and one clutch that moves the paper.

- BLDC Motor > Feed and pickup
- STEP Motor > Regi
- Clutch > Pickup

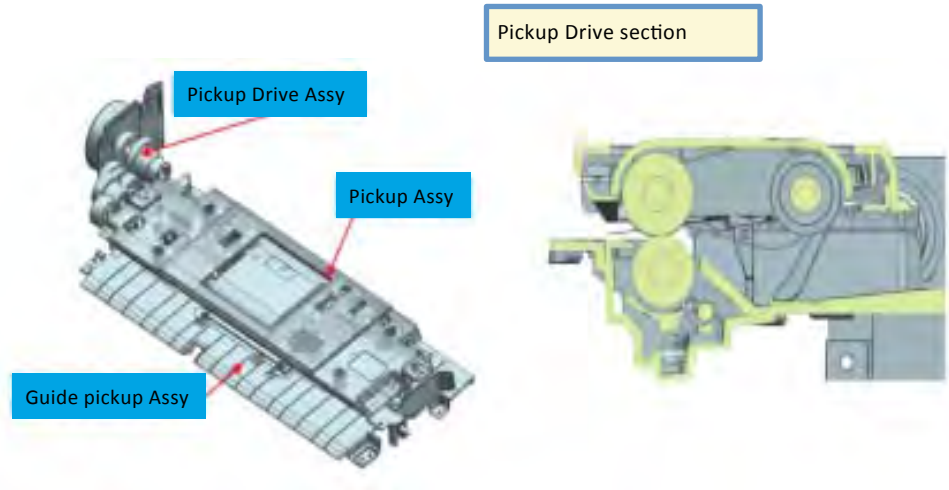
There are three sections: pickup drive section, registration (regi) motor section, and feed drive section.

The pickup drive section has three assemblies: pickup drive assembly, pickup assembly, and guide pickup assembly.

The registration motor section has the regi motor, trans gear, regi roller, regi-idle roller, regi sensor, and actuator.

LX ADF original pickup assembly

Figure 1-54 LX ADF pickup assembly



After detecting the paper, one motor controls the drive system.

The CLUTCH-ELECTRIC provides the power to pick up the paper.

The CLUTCH cannot rotate inversely. The spring that is included in the ADF GUIDE PICKUP ASSEMBLY is connected to COVER-OPEN. When the CLUTCH does not drive, stand-by status occurs and stops the operation.

The ADF roller and pick roller are connected by the belt.

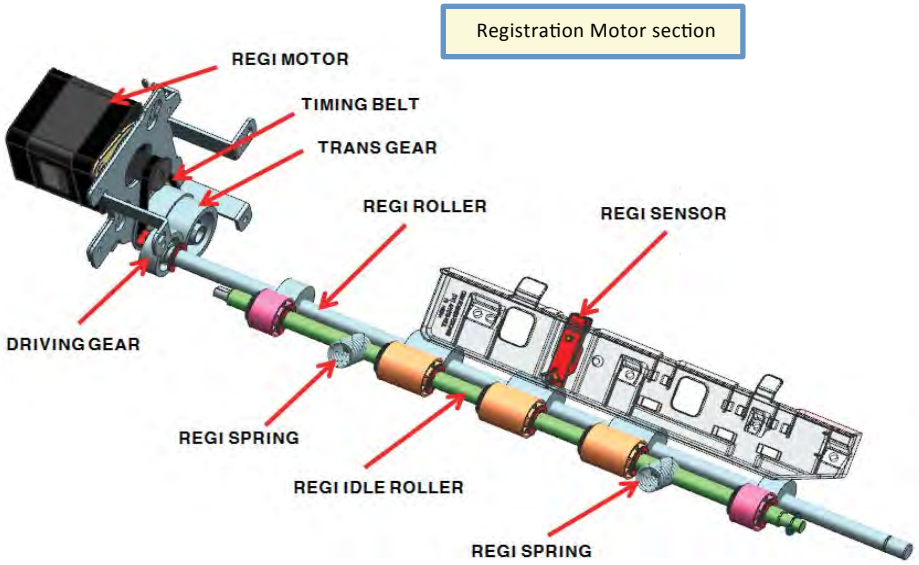
The ADF roller is provided with power while the paper is picked up and transferred to the registration roller. When the pickup drive is stopped and the registration roller is driven, the ADF roller becomes idle.

The normal process is:

- When the original is setting up, the detect-sensor is activated and the printing job starts. The motor and pickup clutch begin working. The pick roller then moves down and contacts the original in the tray.
- When the registration sensor detects paper, the pickup clutch stops.
- When the detect-sensor detects that the tray is empty, the motor stops and the printer enters stand-by status.

LX ADF registration (regi) drive assembly

Figure 1-55 LX ADF registration (regi) drive assembly



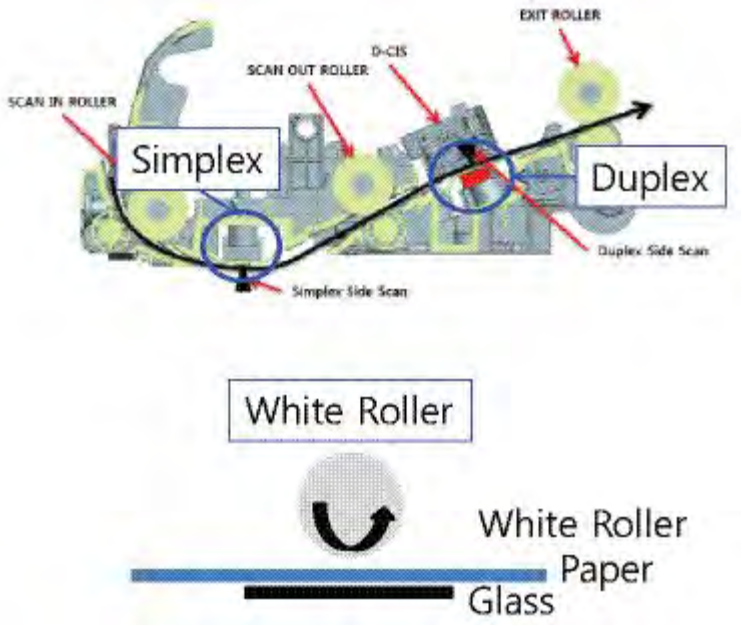
The registration drive uses the CLUTCH-ELECTRIC to drive the registration roller and transfer the paper to the ROLLER FEED.

The registration roller aligns the leading edge of the original. When the original is placed in the nip, the roller is rotated for alignment.

The CLUTCH-ELECTRIC repeats on/off to align each original.

LX ADF Scanning position

Figure 1-56 LX ADF scanning position



	Type	Simplex	Duplex
Scanning	DN-LX	White Bar	White Bar

LX ADF Specification

	dn bundles (LX)
Capacity	100 pages
Scan Speed	80/160 ipm
Pickup	Semi-Retard
Registration	1 times registration
Motor	2 each
Stacker	—
Scanning	White Bar
MSO	—

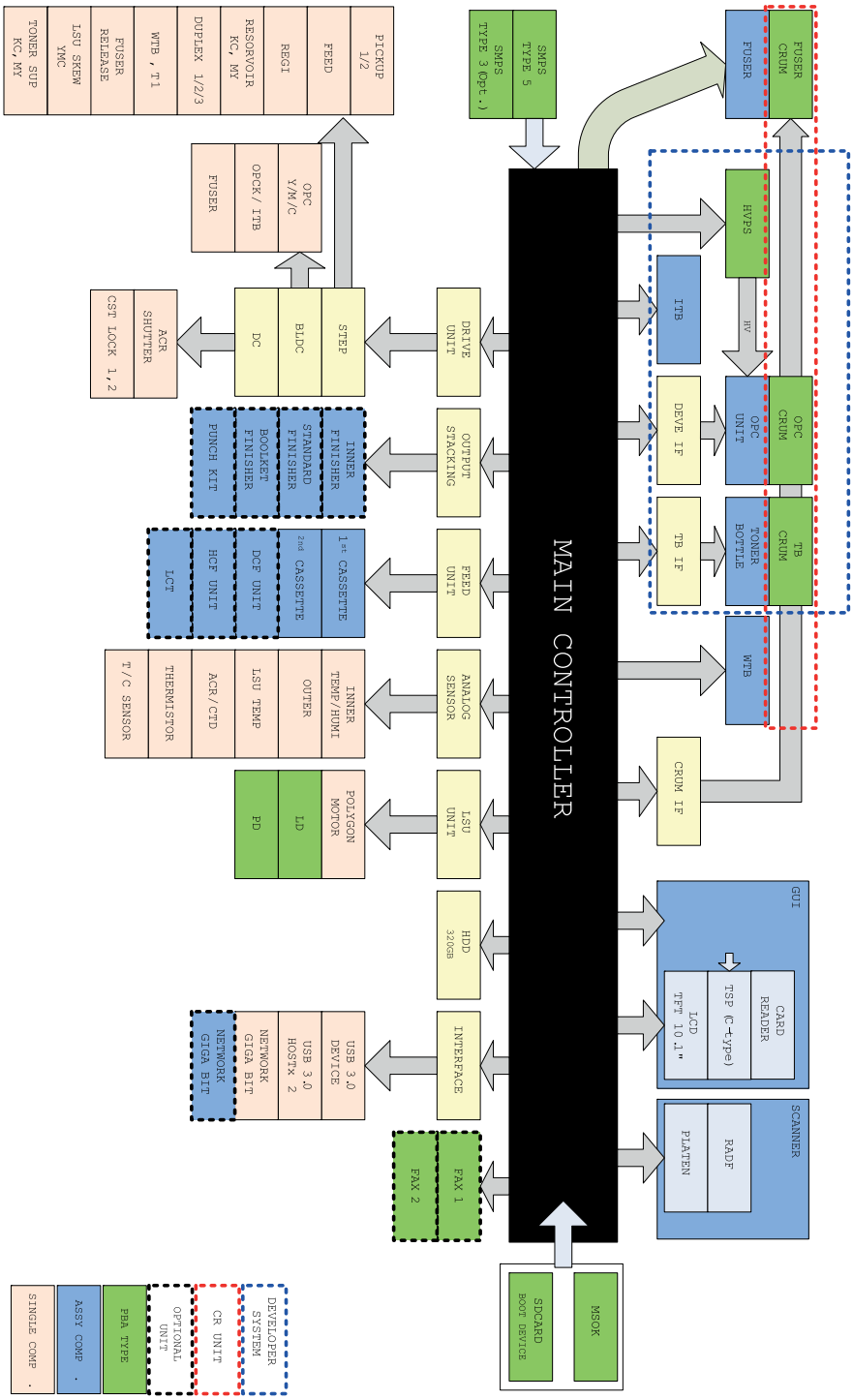
Hardware configuration

The electronic circuit system consists of the following:

- Main controller (main board)
- Control panel
- Document feeder (flow document feeder/document feeder) controller
- High-voltage power supply (HVPS) board
- Low-voltage power supply (LVPS-SMPS) board
- Fuser drive assembly

Electronic circuit diagram

Figure 1-57 Electronic circuit diagram



The main controller handles the video controller, engine controller, and scan controller.

The main controller receives print data from the host through the network or USB port and receives copy data from the scan controller. The main controller uses this information to generate printable video bitmap data. It controls all modules required to print, including the laser scanner assembly, HVPS, FAN, fuser, and so on.

The main controller communicates with the drive system and other devices through Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART). The main controller communicates with and checks the life of the toner cartridge, drum, and developer units through I2C.

The main controller uses Quad Core CPU 1.5 GHz, DDR3 4 GB memory, Micro SD 4 GB, and a 320 GB SATA HDD to control the engine drive, video signal processing, and user interface.

A MICOM controls power to the fuser lamp and power to the system according to an optimized energy saving algorithm. The MICOM communicates with the OPE controller through the USB 3.0 protocol to display the system information on the control panel.

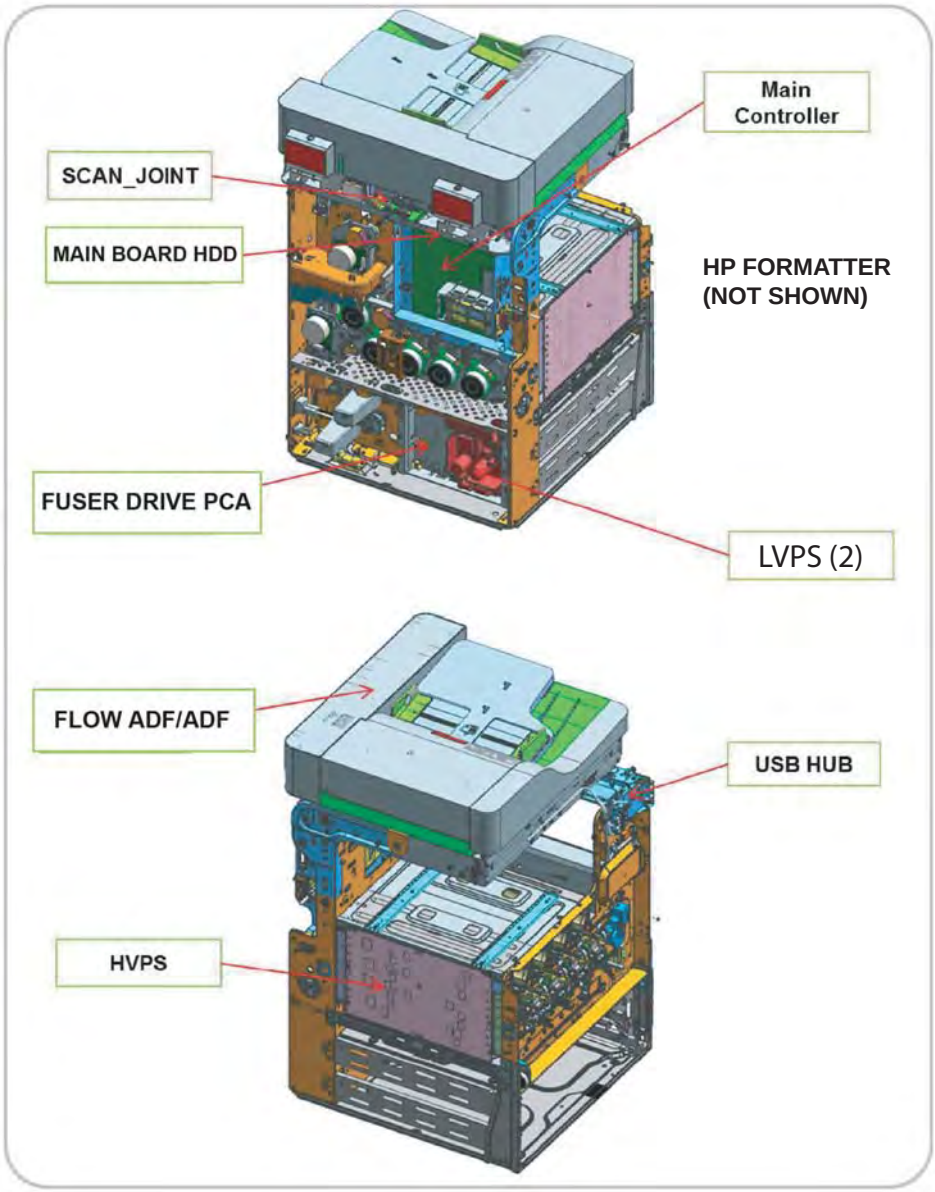
The document feeder controller controls some mechanisms required to scan continuously from the document feeder. The document feeder controller communicates with the main controller to synchronize scan timing.

The HVPS board generates and controls high-voltage channels. The fuser drive assembly controls power to the fuser lamp. The LVPS (SMPS) board generates 5 V and 24 V power for the system.

Circuit Board Locations

The following diagram shows the location of the printer circuit boards.

Figure 1-58 Circuit board locations

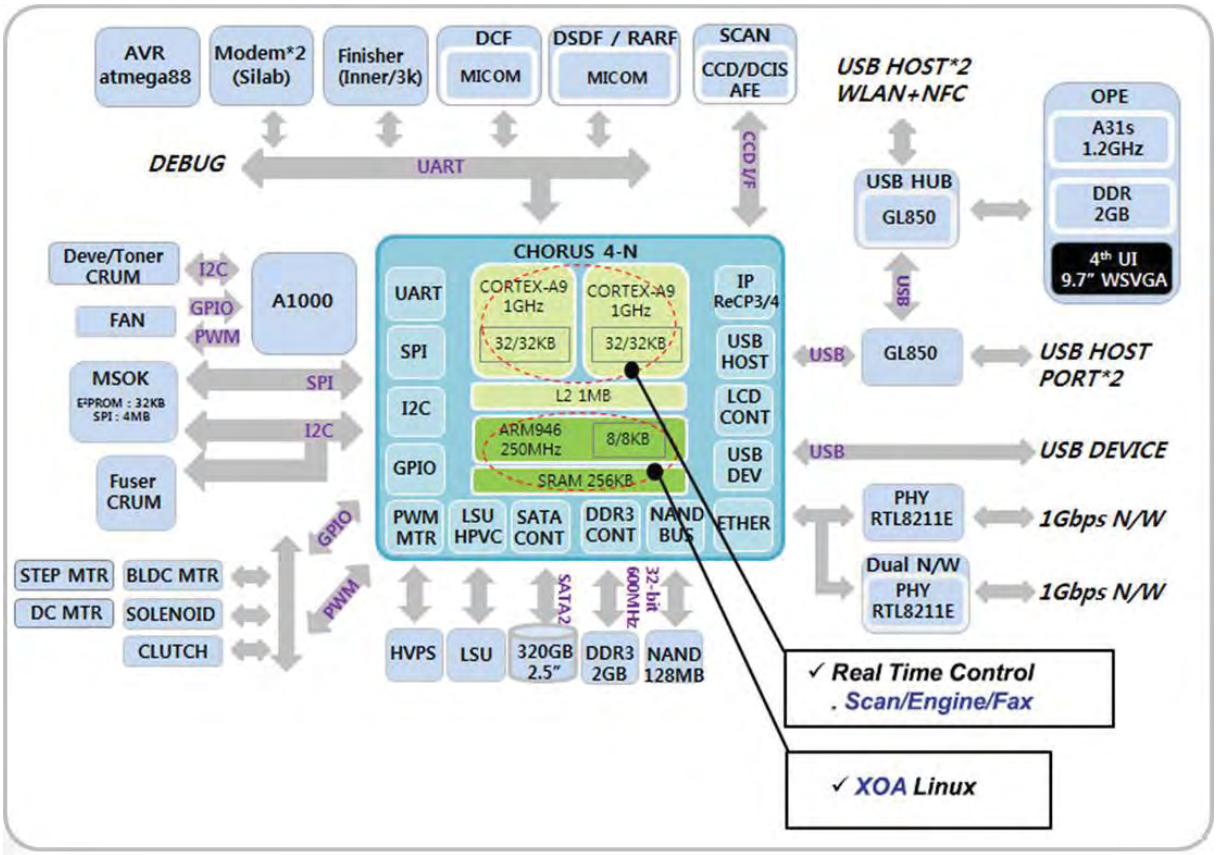


Main controller (main board)

The main controller consists of the main processor (Chrous4N), memory (DDR3 2 GB), flash (128 MB), 1 G Ethernet PHY, USB 2.0 HUB, Micom (power/fuser control), can/video/UI/fax signal interface connection, motor drive IC, engine signal interface connection, and power interface.

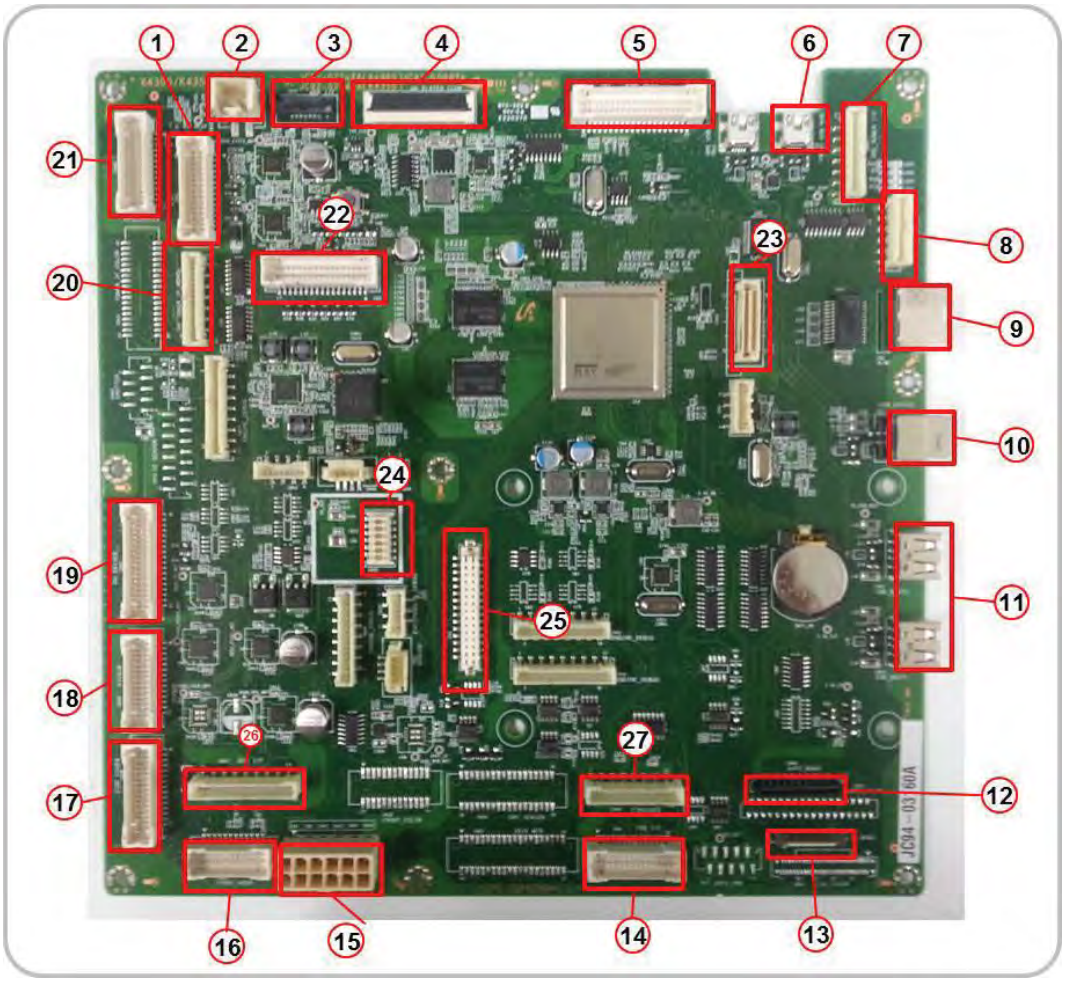
The main processor (Dual Core 1 GHz CPU) controls video, engine, UI display, and communicates with various devices. The HDD is connected to the main controller by SATA cable and to other devices (ADF, dual cassette feeder, finisher, modem) by UART.

Figure 1-59 Main controller diagram



Main controller connection information

Figure 1-60 Main controller connection information



- Connection

Table 1-21 Main controller connection information

1	EXIT	12	HVPS MONO	23	2nd GIGA NPC
2	HDD POWER	13	Laser scanner assembly MONO	24	MSOK I/F
3	HDD I/F	14	Fuser drive assembly I/F	25	MODEM JOINT
4	Image scanner CCDM	15	POWER I/F	26	Dual cassette feeder I/F
5	Flow ADF DCIS	16	FRONT MONO	27	FINISHER
6	FRONT USB HUB	17	Right door		
7	OPE POWER I/F	18	PICKUP		
8	Not used	19	PH DRIVER		
9	GIGA N/W RJ45	20	TONER I/F MONO		
10	USB HOST 1/2	21	FUSER		
11	USB DEVICE	22	SCAN I/F		

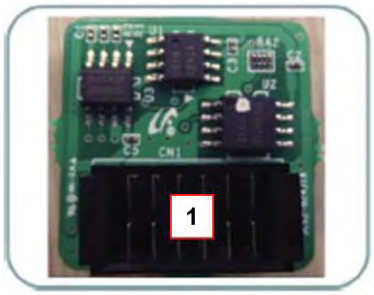
- Information
  - Part number: JC92-02746A
  - Part name: PCA-MAIN

Master System Operation Key (MSOK)

The MSOK PCA is used to store all system information and consists of serial flash memory, an EEPROM and an X-CRUM. The flash memory (4MB), EEPROM (256Kb), and X-CRUM are used for all system operations (system parameter, device status, tech information, and service information).

NOTE: When a main board needs to be replaced, the MSOK PCA should be reinstalled to the new main board to retain the system information.

Figure 1-61 MSOK



NOTE: The MSOK is not an available part.

- Information
  - Part number: Not applicable
  - Part name: PCA-MSOK

Formatter cabling

Figure 1-62 Formatter cabling

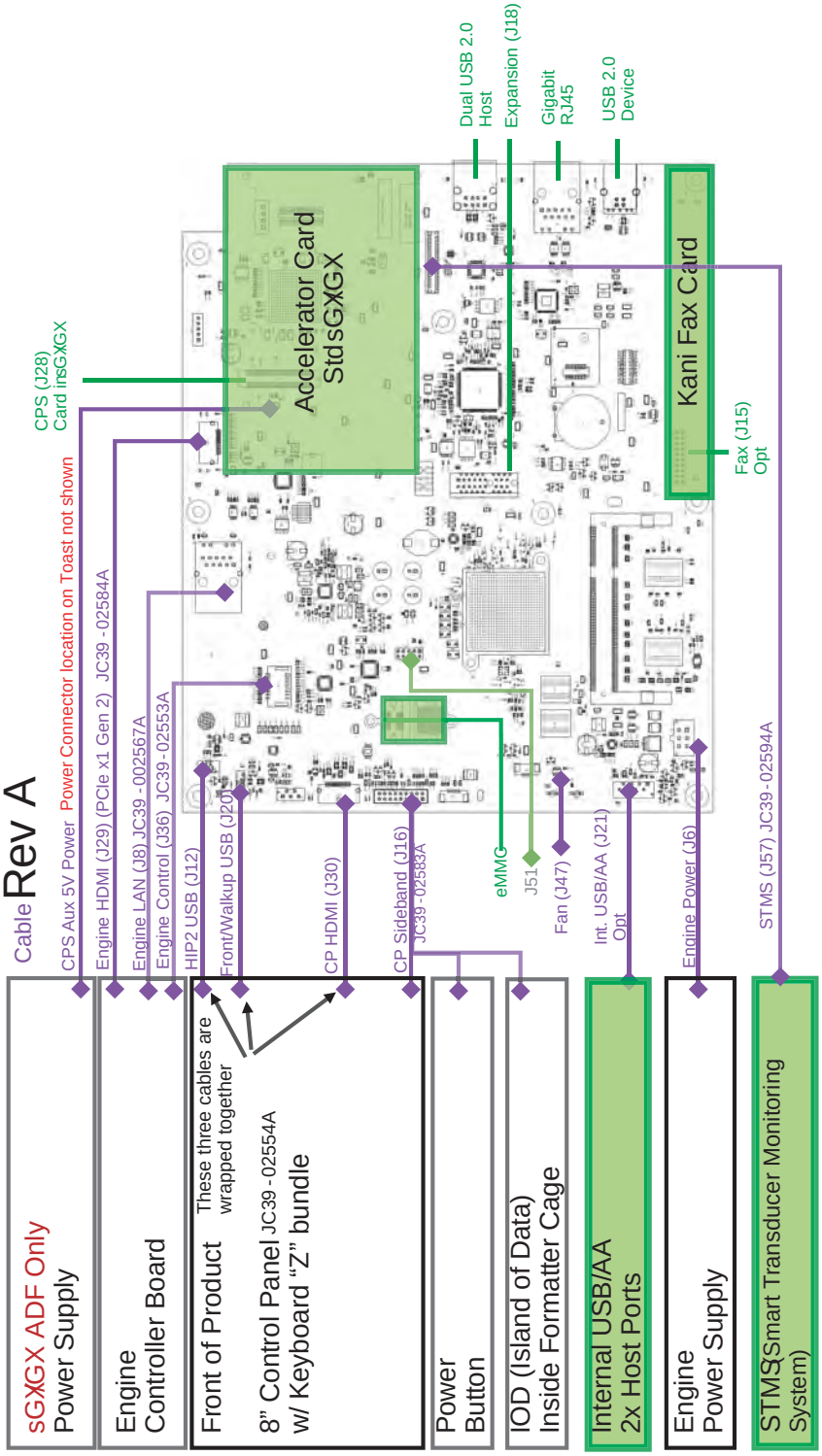


Table 1-22 Formatter cabling

Cable	Jxx	From	To	Purpose
Formatter cabling	NA	LVPS	Accelerator	Power for accelerator

Table 1-22 Formatter cabling (continued)

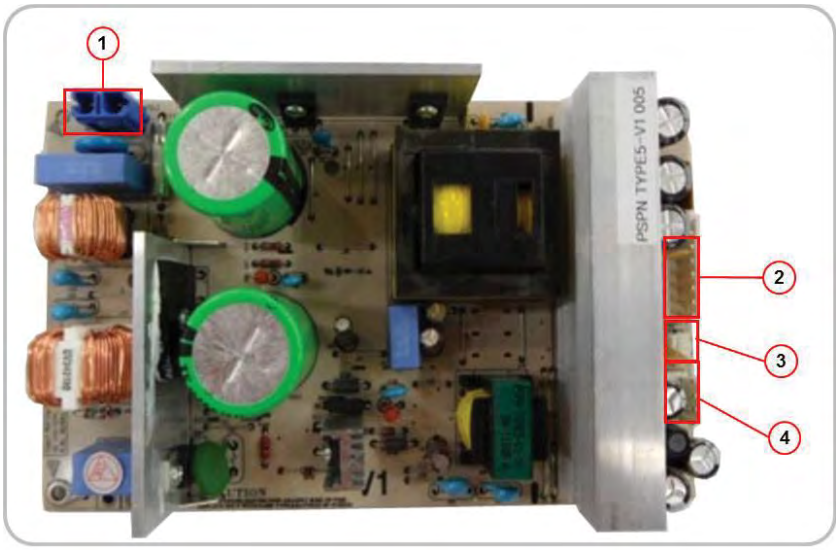
Cable	Jxx	From	To	Purpose
HDMI cable	J29	Main board	Formatter	High speed print data (JC39-02552A)
Engine LAN	J8	Main board	Formatter	High speed print data (JC39-02584A)
Engine control	J36	Main board	Formatter	Low level engine control (SAM-JC39-02553A)
HIP2 USB	J12	Formatter	HIP	USB for HIP
Front walk-up USB	J20	Formatter	Front of printer	USB for walk up
CP HDMI NOTE: These cables are bundled together three-in-one.	J30	Formatter	CP	Data to CP
CP side band	J16	Formatter	CP	Power, reset, wake lines, display power, keyboard (JC39-02583A)
Power button	J16	Formatter	Power button	Power ON/OFF
IOD	J16	Formatter	IOD	Data to/from Island of Data
Internal USB/AA	J21	Formatter	Accessory	Accessory
Engine power	J6	LVPS	Formatter	5V supply to formatter

[1] These cables are bundled together.

Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS; Type 5) / Switching Mode Power Supply (SMPS)

The Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS-SMPS) Type 5 board supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5V, and +24V from a 110V/220V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

Figure 1-63 LVPS (SMPS) Type 5 board



- Specification

  General input/output voltage

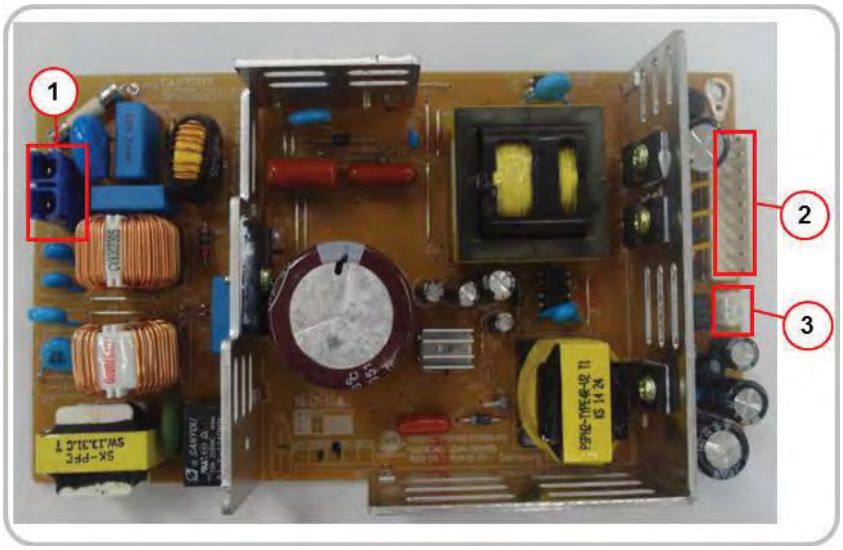
- AC 110V (90V-135V)
- AC 220V (180V-270V)
- Input current: 13.7A (110V)/6.8A (220V)
- Output power: 1500W
    - DC 5V: 55W/DC 5VS: 30W/DC 24V: 432W

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4) GX ADF models

NOTE: Some models have three LVPS boards. (Type5 x 1 each, Type4 x 2 each)

The low voltage power supply (LVPS) board supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

Figure 1-64 LVPS PCA (Type 4)



1	INPUT_AC
2	OUTPUT_DC +24 V1/2/3 and DC +5 V 1/2 (to Main PCA)
3	24 V on/off

Specification

- General input/output voltage
    - AC 110 V (110 V — 127 V)
    - AC 220 V (220 V — 240 V)
    - Input current: 6.3 A (110 V)/5 A (220 V)
    - Output power: 205 W

- DC 5 V: 25 W
- DC 24 V: 180 W

Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	JC44-00091D	JC44-00092D
Part name	LVPS 110V Type 4	LVPS 220V Type 4

Input/output connector

- AC input connector (CN1)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input
2	AC_N	

- DC output connector (CN4)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+5V1	Power
2	GND	5 V ground
3	+5V2	Power
4	GND	5 V ground
5	+24V1	Power
6	GND	24 V ground
7	+24V2	Power
8	GND	24 V ground
9	+24V3	Power

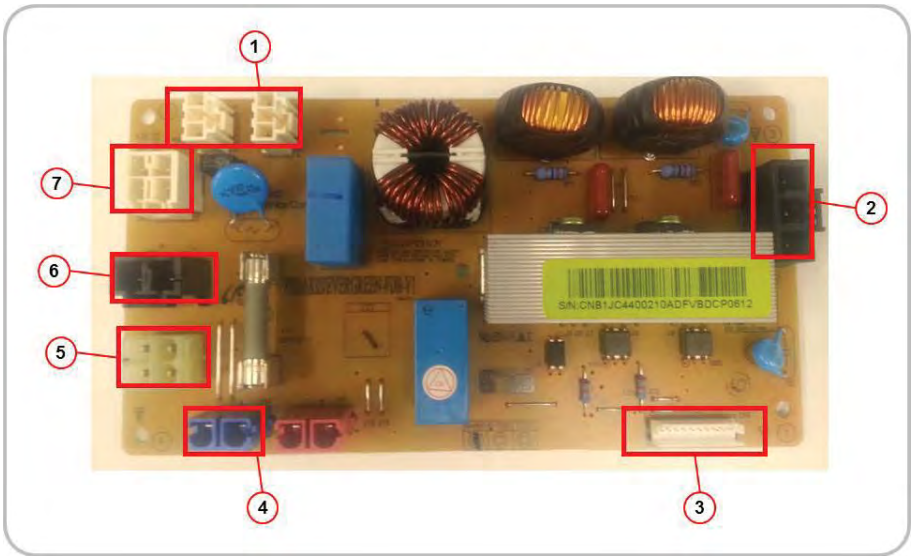
- Signal Connector (CN3)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	GND	Active Low
2	24 V On/Off	
3	GND	

Fuser drive board (FDB)

This board supplies voltage to the fuser AC, heater, and main board.

Figure 1-65 Fuser drive board (FDB)



- Information

	110V	220V
Part name	Fuser drive assembly V1	Fuser drive assembly V2

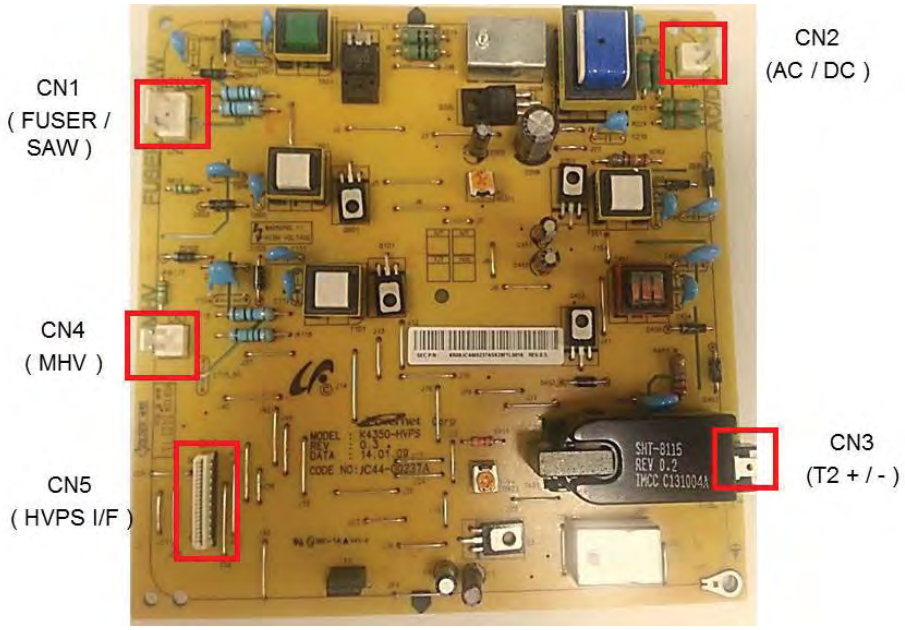
- Connection

1	Heater I/F
2	Fuser AC
3	Fuser drive PCA I/F
4	Type 5
5	Main S/W
6	Inlet
7	Heater S/W

High-voltage power supply (HVPS) board

The HVPS generates 5 high-voltage channels, including FUSER, SAW, AC/DC, T2+/-, and MHV.

Figure 1-66 HVPS board



Specification

- Input voltage: DC 24V, 3.3V
- Output voltage:
  - MHV: —1200V
  - DEV DC: —497V, AC: Vpp 1000V
  - THV+: 39.6uA, THV-: —1300V
  - SAW: —990V
  - FUSER: 400V

Connection

CN1		
Description	**PIN NAME**	**PIN ASSIGN**
Output voltage	FUSER	1
Output voltage	SAW	2

CN2		
Description	**PIN NAME**	**PIN ASSIGN**
Output voltage	AC/DC	1, 2

CN3		
Description	**PIN NAME**	**PIN ASSIGN**
Output voltage	T2 +/-	1

CN4		
Description	**PIN NAME**	**PIN ASSIGN**
Output voltage	MHV	1, 2

CN5		
Description	**PIN NAME**	**PIN ASSIGN**
PWM signal	PWM SAW	1
PWM signal	PWM DEVE AC	2
PWM signal	PWM FUSER BIAS	3
PWM signal	PWM VPP AC	4
PWM signal	PWM MHV	5
nEN signal	nEN DEVE AC	6
Output signal	ADC MHV READ	7
PWM signal	PWM DEVE DC	8
nEN signal	nEN MHV	9
nEN signal	nEN THV	10
Input voltage	3.3V PS	11
PWM signal	PWM THV	12
Output signal	ADC_HVPS_24V	13
Output signal	ADC THV READ	14
GND	GND	15, 16, 17
—	NC	18
Input voltage	24V	19, 20

Eraser PCA

The eraser PCA has one LED. The LED is used for erasing the negative charges on the surface of the drum after printing.

Figure 1-67 Eraser PCA (mono models)



Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PCA-ERASER

Waste Sensor PCA

The waste sensor PCA detects the waste toner level inside the toner collection unit.

Figure 1-68 Waste sensor PCA



Information

- Part number:
- Part name: WASTE SENSOR RX

CRUM PCA

THE CRUM PCA includes memory for the drum, toner cartridge, and fuser.

Figure 1-69 CRUM PCA



Information

- Part number: JC92-02164A
- Part name: PCA-ZCRUM

Toner CRUM joint PCA

The toner CRUM joint PCA is the interface PCA between the toner cartridge and the printer.

Figure 1-70 Toner CRUM joint PCA



Paper Size sensor PCA

The paper size sensor PCA is used for detecting the size of the paper in the tray.

Figure 1-71 Paper size sensor PCA

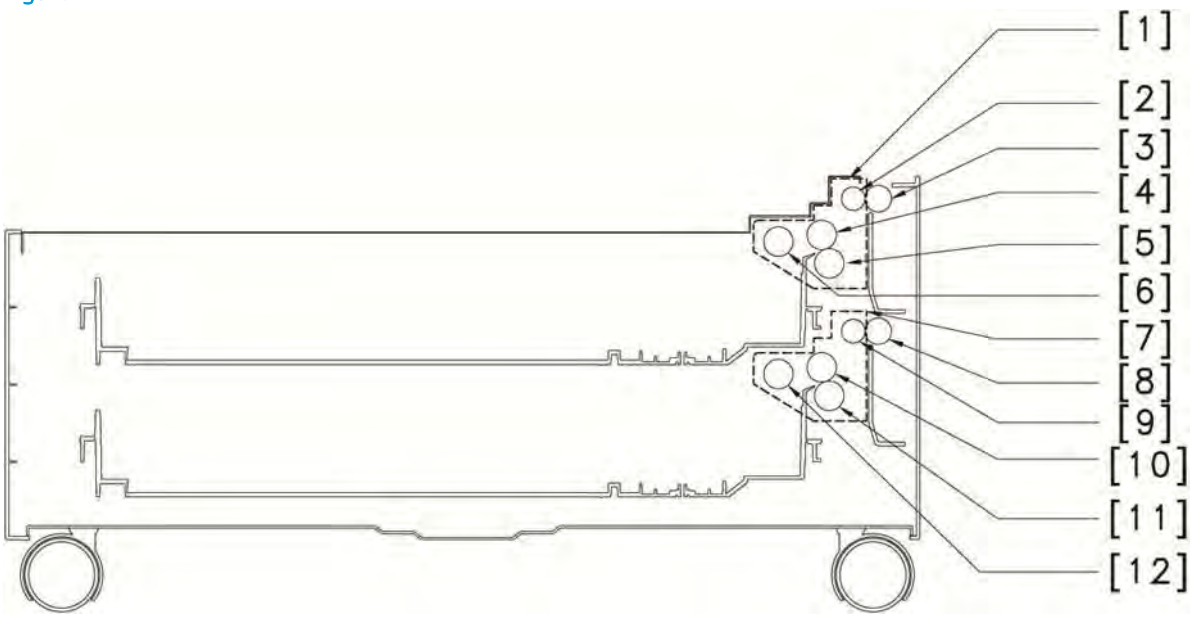


Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit

The DCF is an optional device that stores additional paper.

Front sectional view

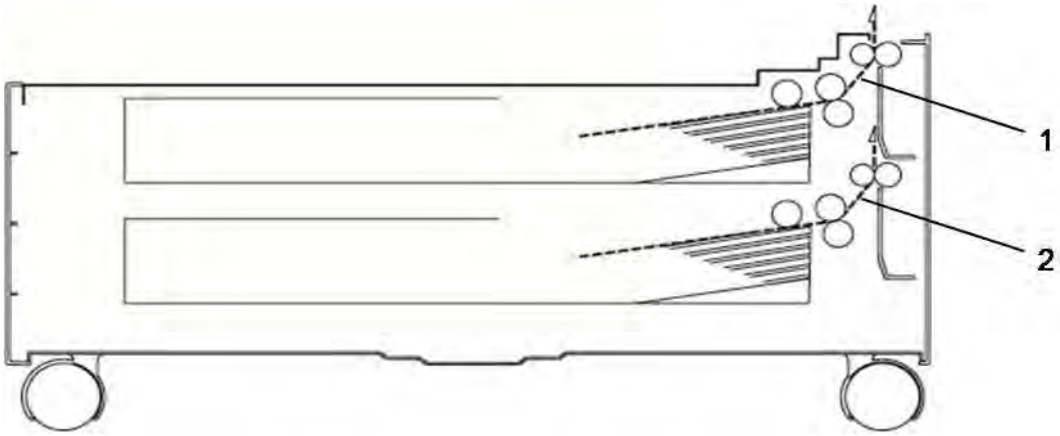
Figure 1-72 DCF front sectional view



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Global HCI to tray	7	HCI 4 pickup assembly
2	Feed roller (HCI 3)	8	Feed roller (HCI 4)
3	Idle roller (HCI 3)	9	Idle roller (HCI 4)
4	Feed roller (HCI 3)	10	Feed roller (HCI 4)
5	Separation roller (HCI 3)	11	Separation roller (HCI 4)
6	Pick roller (HCI 3)	12	Pick roller (HCI 4)

Paper path

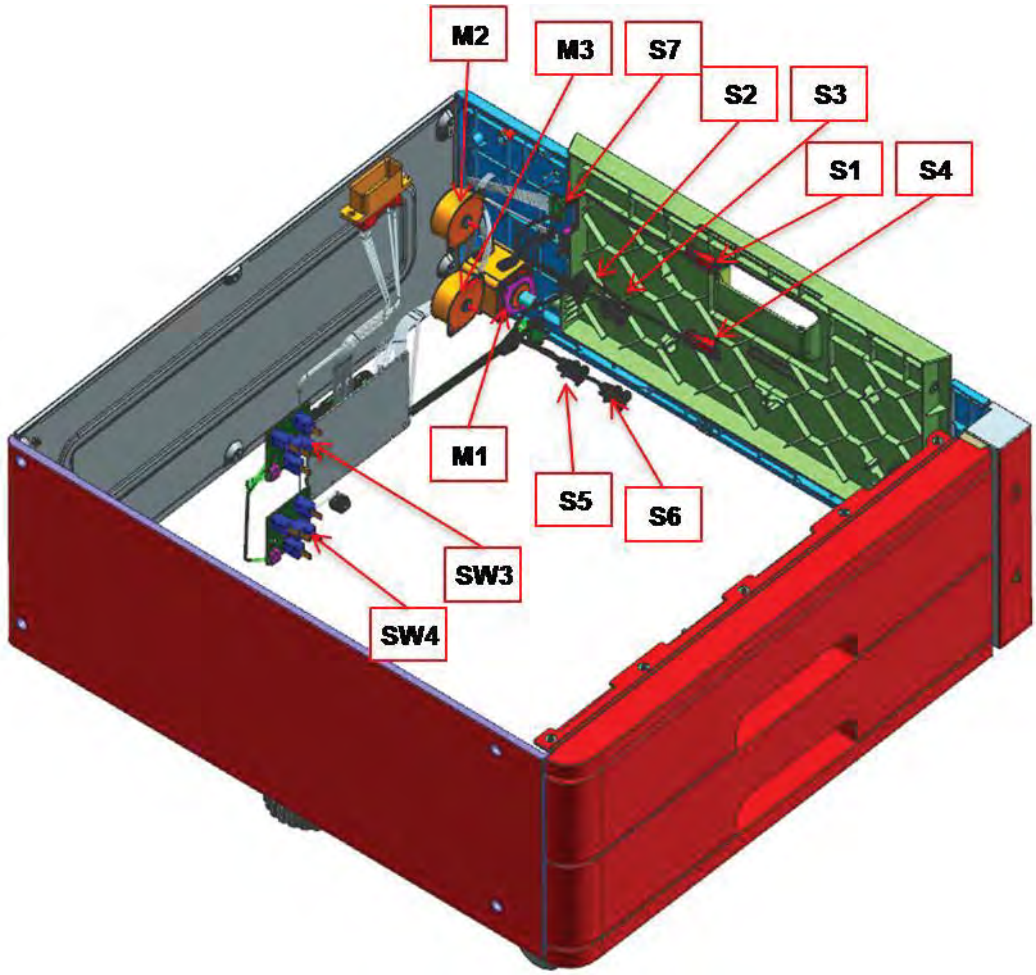
Figure 1-73 DCF paper path



1	Tray 4 paper path
2	Tray 5 paper path

Layout of electrical parts

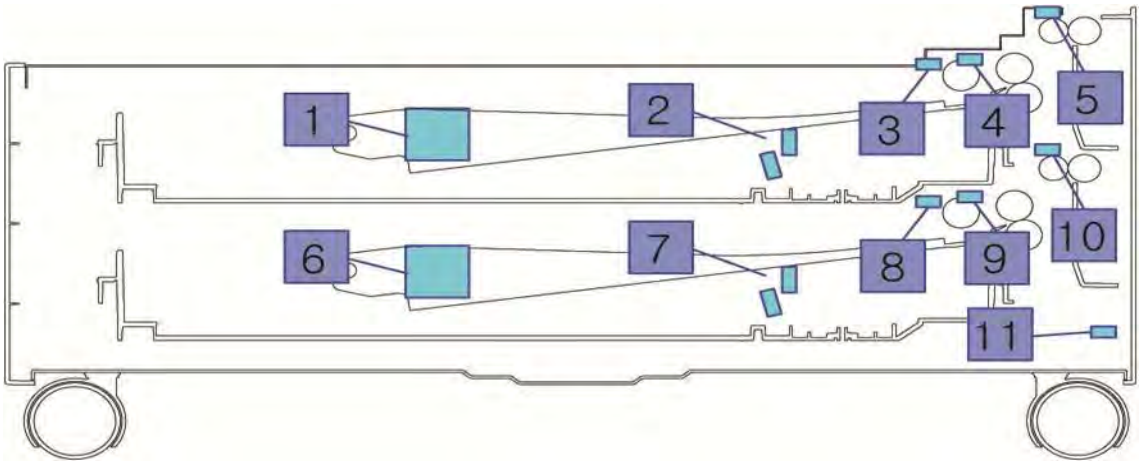
Figure 1-74 DCF electrical parts layout



Item	Description	Part number	DC controller PCA
M1	Feed motor	9	CN5 3 to 6
M2	Tray 4 pickup motor	10	CN5 9 to 12
M3	Tray 5 pickup motor	11	CN5 13 to 16
SW1	Tray 4 auto size switch	12	CN9 1 to 4
SW2	Tray 5 auto size switch		CN9 5 to 8
S1	Tray 4 feed sensor		CN6 7 to 9
S2	Tray 4 limit sensor		CN6 4 to 6
S3	Tray 4 paper empty sensor		CN6 1 to 3
S4	Tray 5 feed sensor		CN6 16 to 18
S5	Tray 5 limit sensor		CN6 13 to 15
S6	Tray 5 paper empty sensor		CN6 10 to 12
S7	Door open sensor		CN3 1 to 2

Sensor and signal

Figure 1-75 DCF sensor and signal

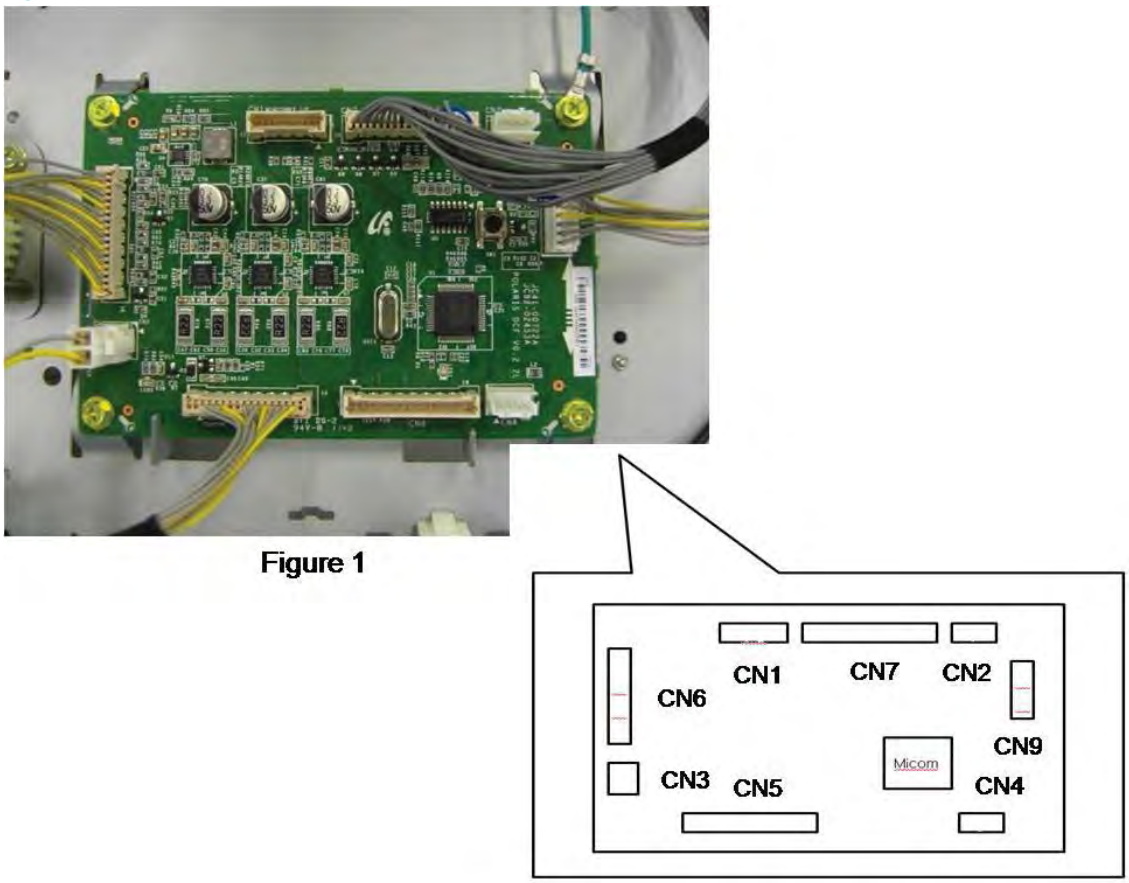


Item	Sensor	Signal
1	P_Size_DCF 1	Tray 4 paper size analog signal
3	nP_Empty_DCF 1_IHCF	Tray 4 paper empty signal
4	Limit_DCF 1_IHCF	Tray 4 paper limit signal
5	Feed_DCF 1_IHCF	Tray 4 feed signal
6	P_Size_DCF 2	Tray 5 paper size analog signal
8	nP_Empty_DCF 2	Tray 5 paper empty signal
9	Limit_DCF 2	Tray 5 paper limit signal

Item	Sensor	Signal
10	Feed_DCF 2	Tray 5 feed signal
11	nDoor_open	Door open signal

Plug and jack location list

Figure 1-76 Plug and jack locations

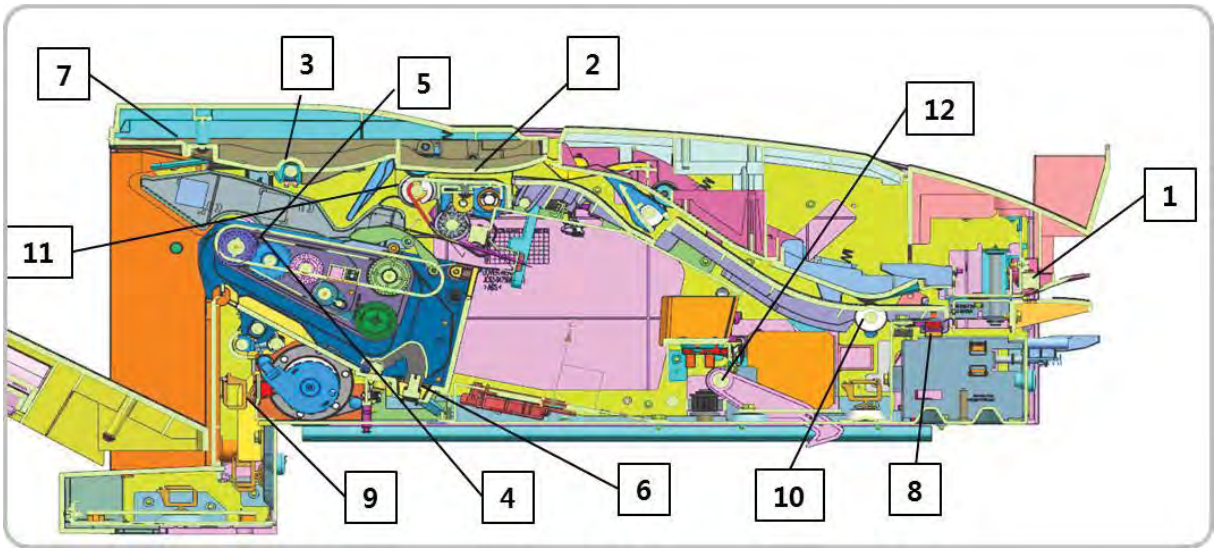


Number	Connection
CN1	Download tool I/F (minicube)
CN2	Debug I/F
CN3	Cover open switch (24V interlock switch)
CN4	USB I/F
CN5	EMPTY/LIFT/FEED (Tray 4 and 5) sensor
CN6	FEED/PICKUP 3, 4 motor
CN7	Interface with main
CN9	Paper size sensor (Tray 4 and 5)

Inner finisher

Sectional view

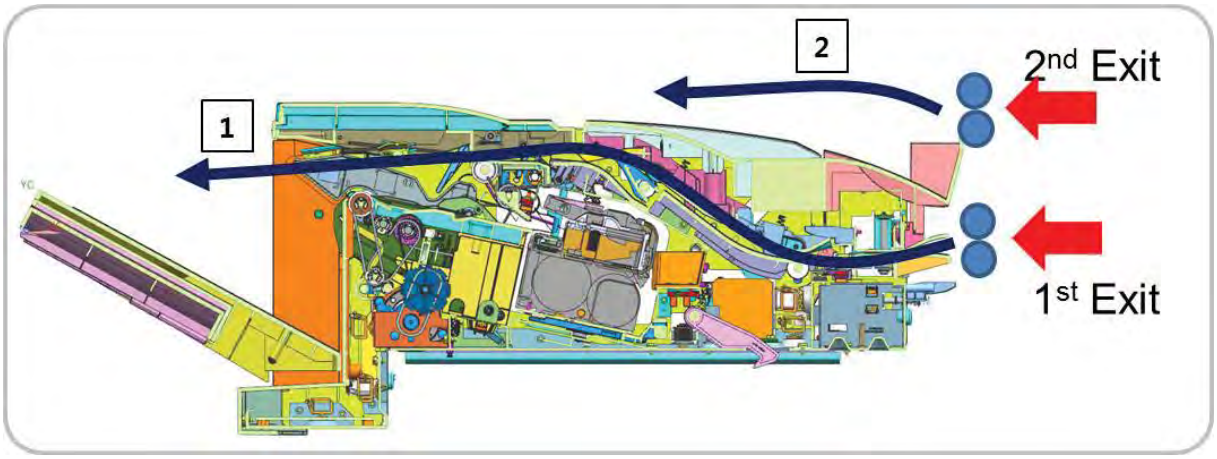
Figure 1-77 Inner finisher sectional view



1	Entrance sensor	8	Front door open sensor
2	Passthru sensor	9	Stacker tray home sensor
3	Paddle home sensor	10	Paper feed roller
4	Alignment home_F sensor	11	Paper exit roller
5	Alignment home_r sensor	12	Turning knob
6	Eject home sensor		
7	Jam door open sensor		

Paper path

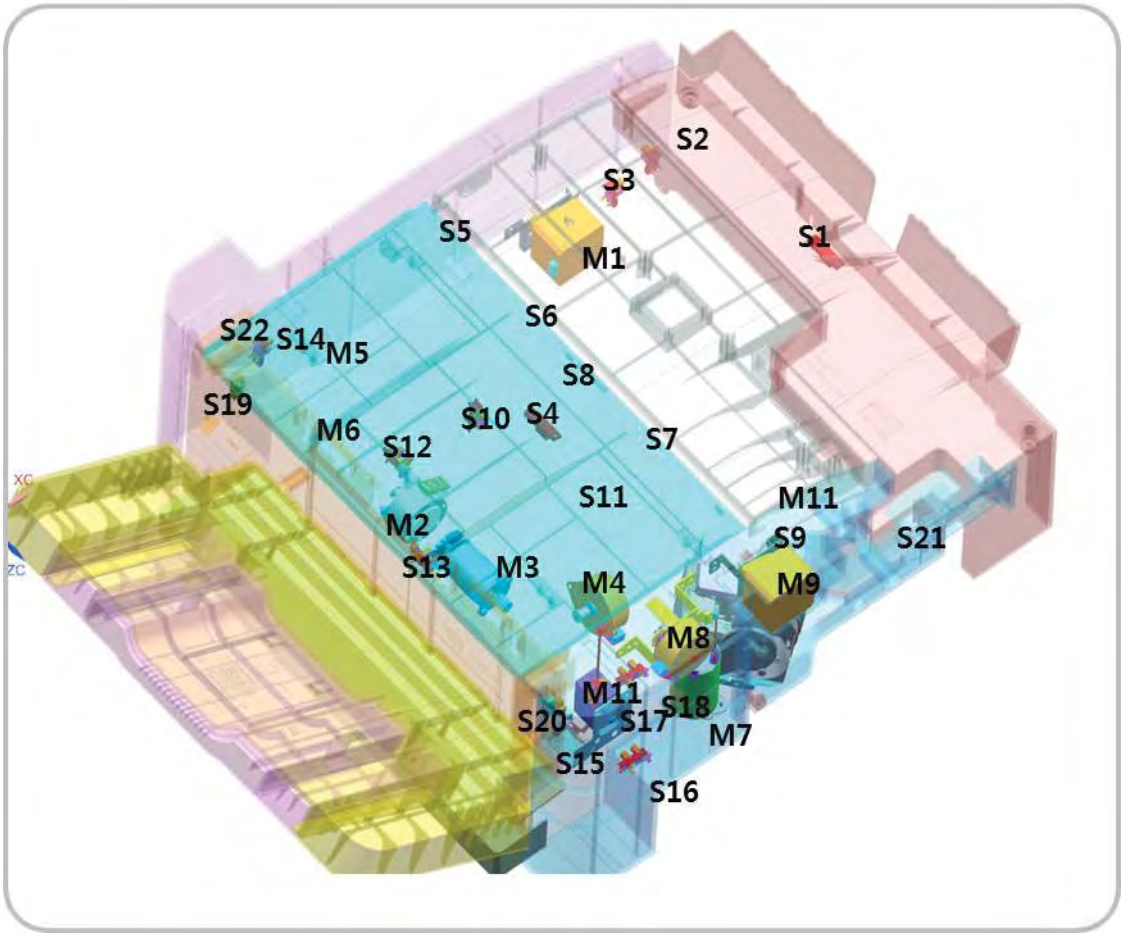
Figure 1-78 Inner finisher paper path



1	Finisher main tray — staple/offset/punch
2	Finisher top tray — stack only

Electrical parts layout

Figure 1-79 Electrical parts layout

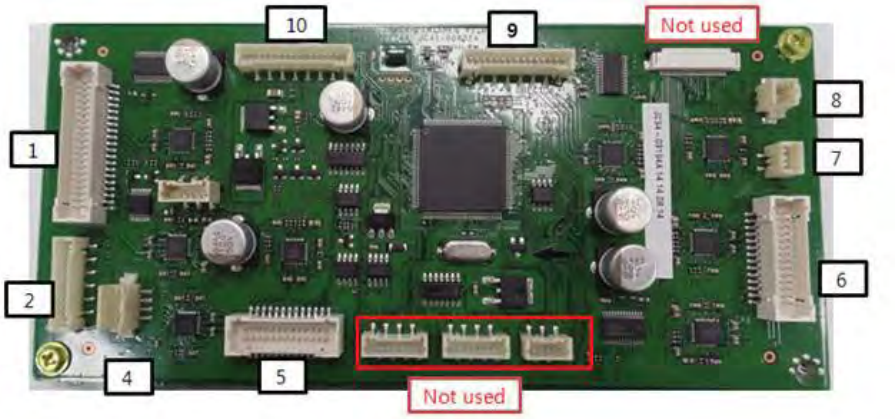


Callout	Part number	Part name
S1	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Entrance sensor
S2	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Shaft docking sensor
S3	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Dust box sensor
S4	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Sub stay sensor
S5	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler position sensor rear
S6	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple position sensor center 1
S7	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple position sensor center 2
S8	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Exit sensor
S9	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler position sensor front
S10	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	End defence sensor

Callout	Part number	Part name
S11	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject sensor
S12	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper support sensor
S13	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject 2 motor sensor
S14	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Alignment position sensor rear
S15	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper holder position sensor
S16	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tray home position sensor
S17	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Alignment position sensor front
S18	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Main paddle position sensor
S19	JC81-07403A	AS- sensor
S20	JC81-07403A	AS- sensor
S21	JC39-01610A	Switch front cover open
S22	JC39-02175A	Switch jam door open
M1	JC31-00169A	Entrance motor
M2	JC31-00009C	EJECTOR_1 motor
M3	Mabuchi	EJECTOR_2 motor
M4	JC31-00149A	Alignment motor front
M5	JC31-00149A	Alignment motor rear
M6	JC31-00149A	Paper support
M7	KIG	Tray motor
M8	JC31-00149A	Main paddle motor
M9	JC31-00169A	Exit motor
M10	JC31-00149A	Traverse motor
M11	TDS-10SL	Paper holder solenoid

PCA connections

Figure 1-80 PCA connections



Number	Connection
1	CN3: REAR joint I/F
2	CN1: REAR sensor
3	CN10: Traverse mid sensor
4	CN8: Debug
5	CN2: REAR I/F
6	CN7: FRONT I/F
7	CN6: Stacker switch
8	CN9: Solenoid
9	CN4: Ejector and supporter I/F
10	CN5: Main I/F

2 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacemnt

- Support portals and documentation resources
- How to search for printer documentation
- Order parts, accessories, and supplies
- How to use the parts list and diagrams
- ESD precautions
- Service approach
- Maintenance
- Main parts
- HP LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)
- HP LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)

Support portals and documentation resources

For additional service and support

HP service personnel, go to one of the following **Web-based Interactive Search Engines** (WISE) sites:

AMS

- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-en
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-es
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-pt

APJ

- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-en
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-ja
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-ko
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-zh-Hans
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-zh-Hant

EMEA

- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/emea-en

Channel partner resources

Channel partners, go to **HP Channel Services Network (GCSN)** at www.hp.com/partners/csn .

At these locations, find information on the following topics:

- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting

  To view a list of control panel message documents per printer in WISE, enter document ID c05048451, to locate CPMD list.

  Go to WISE and enter this document ID c05791539 for written instructions.

  – Refer to "Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview" on page 888 for more details.
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty and regulatory information

Channel partners, access training materials in the Partner First Learning Center at www.hpi-external.sabacloud.com.

To access HP PartSurfer information from any mobile device, go to http://partsurfermobile.hp.com/.

How to search for printer documentation

The CPMD, error codes, and other support documentation for each printer is found on the internal HP portals GCSN and WISE (formerly SAW). GCSN is available to HP channel partners and WISE is available to call agents, service technicians, and other HP internal users. The level of detail available will depend on your access credentials.

How to search WISE for printer documentation

These instructions are for HP internal use by call agents, service technicians, and other internal users. To learn how to find support content in WISE, watch the video here.

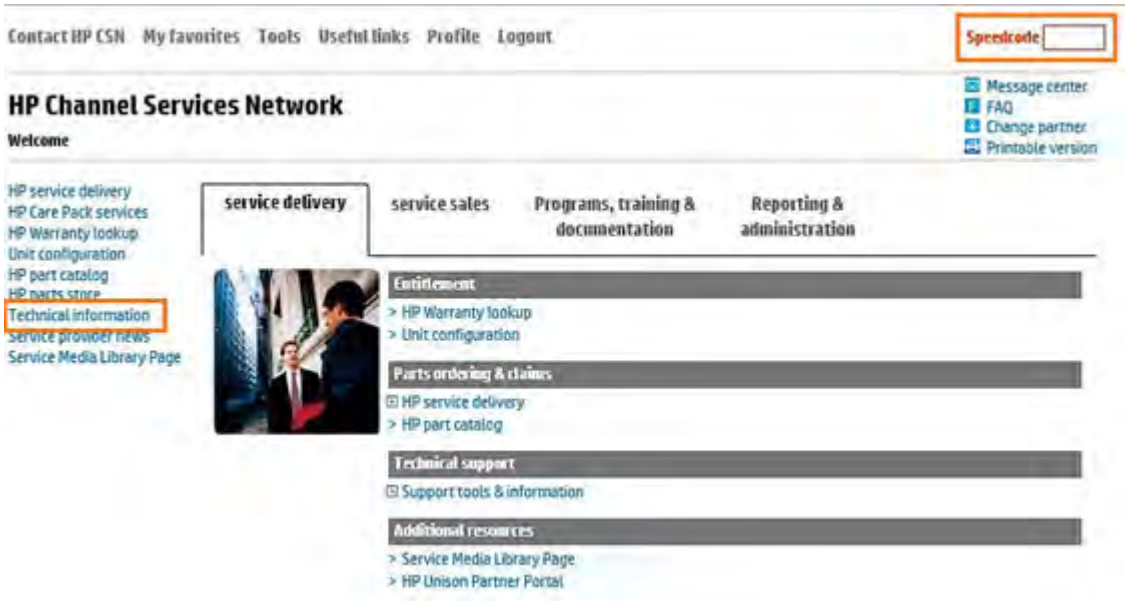
To view a list of control panel message documents per printer in **WISE**, enter document ID **c05048451**, to locate CPMD list.

Go to **WISE** and enter this document ID **c05791539** for written instructions.

How to search GCSN for printer documentation

These instructions are for internal use by HP Channel Partners. To learn how to find support content in GCSN, watch the video here or follow these steps:

1. On the Home screen in GCSN, open **Technical information** using one of the following two methods:
   - Type `TINF` in the **Speedcode** field found in the upper right corner and press `Enter`, or
   - On the Home page, click **Technical information** in the left pane.



2. Under **Product Search**, select the **Type**, **Category**, **Family**, and **Series** that match your product model (leave the **Model** field as blank or the default).

NOTE: Make sure to login to GCSN using your service-qualified credentials to access the most comprehensive content list available. To find out how to become service-qualified, contact your HP representative.

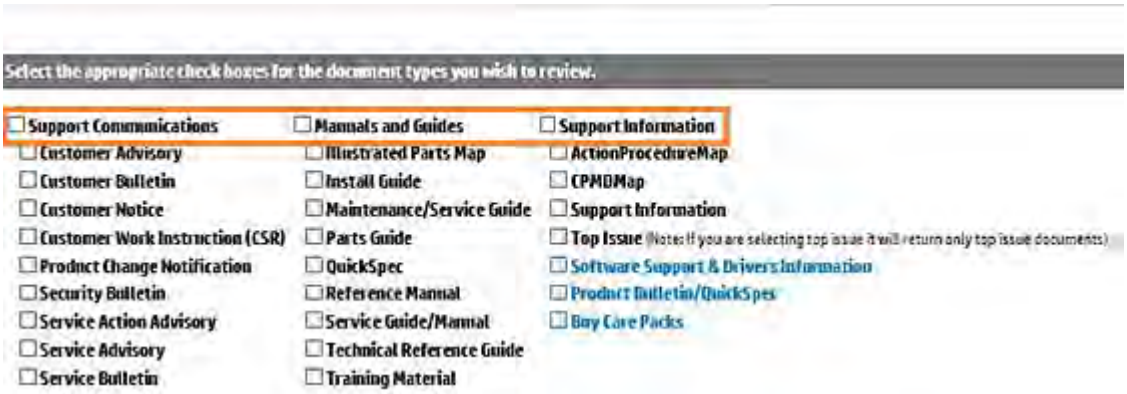
Figure 2-1 Sample product search criteria



3. Click **Add Favorites** and then click **Add** to add the printer to your Favorites list and allow you to bypass the **Product Search** fields next time for that particular model (Optional).



4. Clear all of the high-level check boxes.



5. Select the check boxes for the document types for which you want to search.

NOTE: Select only the high-level **Manuals and Guides** search option if you are not sure in which type of manual or guide the content might be listed.



6. Select **Submit**.

7. If needed, click **Back To selection Criteria** and narrow your search (the maximum allowed search result is 100 documents).

NOTE: Do not select the **Top Issue** option unless you only want to view top issues for that model. All other available content will be filtered out.

Technical information type	Select this checkbox
CPMD	**CPMD-Map**
List of all CPMDs per product	**Support Information**
Installation Guide or Hardware Install Guide	**Maintenance/Service Guide** or **Install Guide**
Service cost document	**Install Guide** or **Service Guide/Manual**
Service guide or Service manual	**Service Guide/Manual**
Self-solve or troubleshooting document	**Support Information**
User manual or User guide	**User Guide**
Warranty and Legal Guide	**Warranty Statement**

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

How to use the parts list and diagrams

The figures in this chapter show the major subassemblies in the printer and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. Each table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).

NOTE: In this manual, the abbreviation “PCA” stands for “printed circuit-board assembly.” Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

ESD precautions

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Service approach

Precautions when replacing parts

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the machine, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains 19 different screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCA

Static electricity might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
  - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
  - Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.
  - Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
  - Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches can break easily; release them carefully. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.



Before performing service

- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridge.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

After performing service

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.

5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Copy-quality test

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder, print a copy job, and then verify the results.
2. Place the configuration page on the flatbed glass, print a copy job, and then verify the results

Fax-quality test

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder.
2. Type a valid fax number, and send the fax job.
3. Verify that the send quality and the receive quality meet expectations.

Parts removal order

For procedures and/or steps that require identifying the right, left, or rear side of the printer, face the front of the printer for correct orientation.

Maintenance

Machine cleaning for maintenance

- Cleaning the document feeder white bar and contact image sensor (CIS) (LX/dn models)
- Cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS (GX/z models)
- Cleaning the scan glass
- Cleaning the transfer roller

Cleaning the document feeder white bar and contact image sensor (CIS) (LX/dn models)

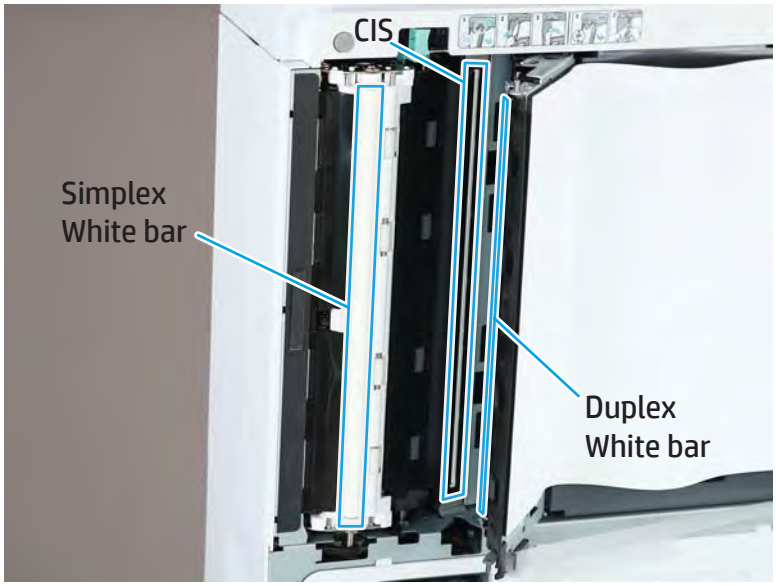
1. Open the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-2 Open document feeder unit



2. Clean the document feeder white bar and CIS using a lint-free cloth.

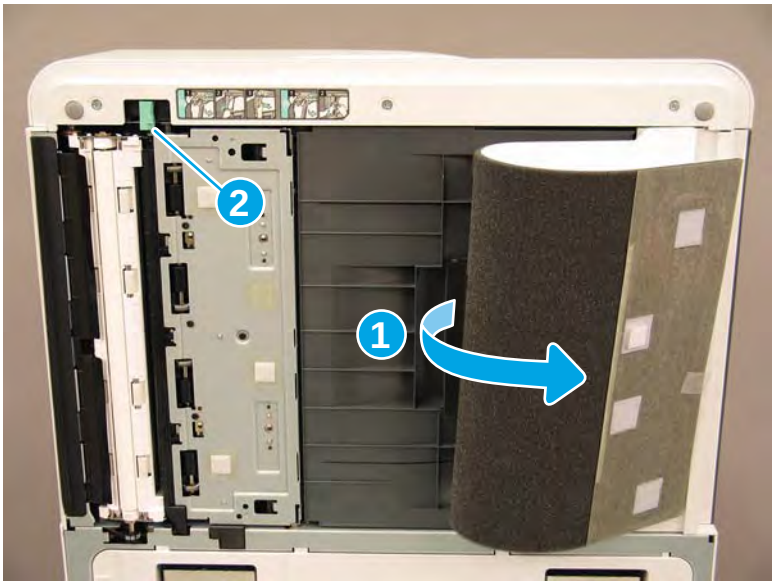
Figure 2-3 Clean document feeder white bar (LX/dn models)



Cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS (GX/z models)

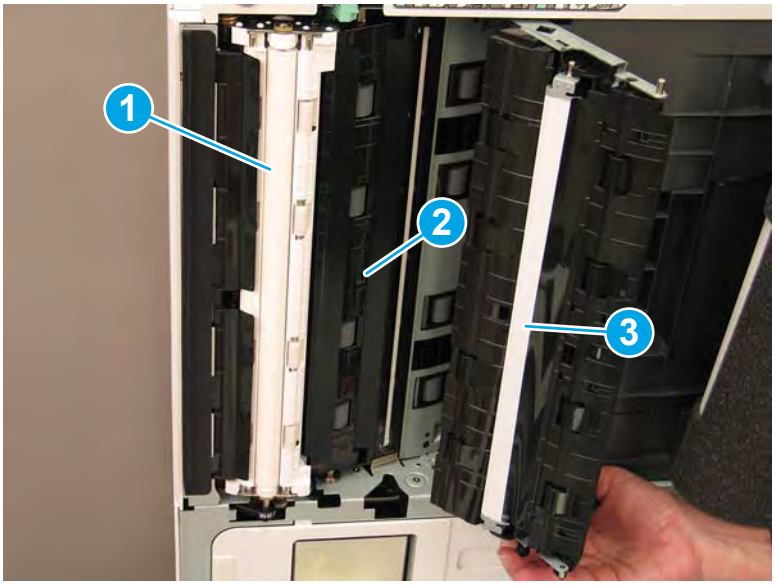
1. Open the ADF unit, peel back the white backing (callout 1), and then release the green tab (callout 2).

Figure 2-4 Peel back the white backing and release one tab (GX/z models)



2. Open the access door. Clean the simplex white bar (callout 1), the CIS (callout 2), and the duplex white bar (callout 3) using a soft, lint-free, clean cloth.

Figure 2-5 Clean flow document feeder white bar (GX/z models)



Cleaning the scan glass

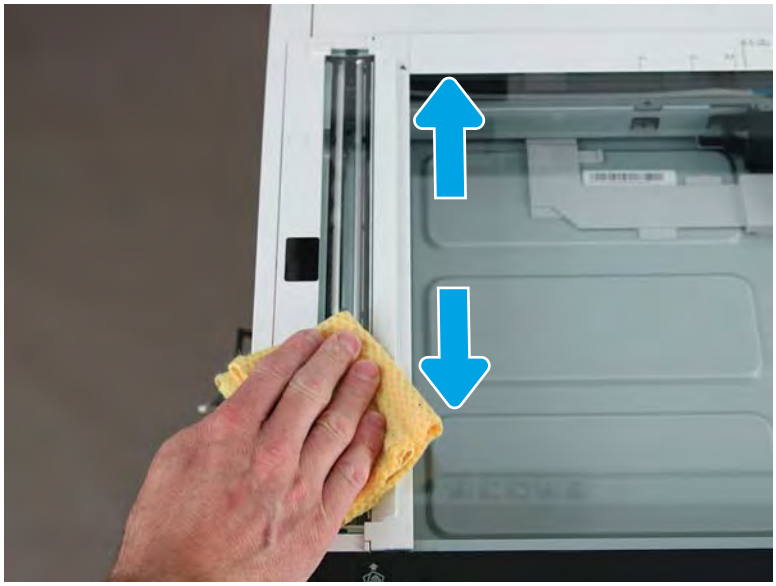
1. Open the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-6 Open document feeder unit



2. Clean the scanner glass using a lint-free cloth.

Figure 2-7 Clean scanner glass



Cleaning the transfer roller

1. Open the right door.

Figure 2-8 Open right door



2. Clean the transfer roller (A) using a lint-free cloth.

Figure 2-9 Transfer roller cleaning



Main parts

Main assembly

Figure 2-10 Main assembly

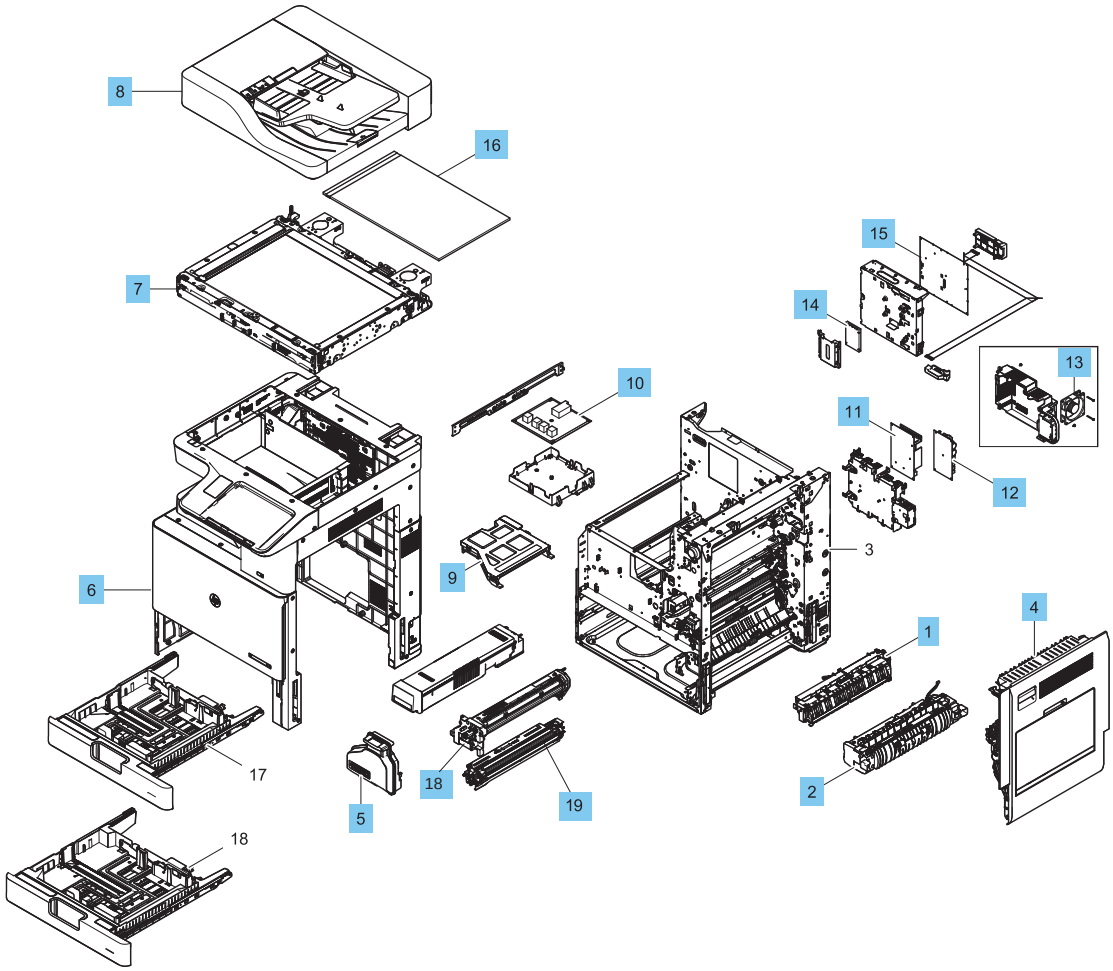


Table 2-1 Main assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Exit	JC90-01118B on page 159	1
2	Fuser, 220V	JC82-00481A on page 192	1
2	Fuser, 110V	JC82-00479A on page 192	1
4	Right Door	JC95-02080A on page 333	1
5	Toner Collection Unit	JC92-02471A on page 302	1
6	Cover, Top	JC95-02094A	1
7	Image Scanner Assembly	JC97-04907A on page 138	1
8	ADF LX whole unit	JC97-04954A on page 129	1
8	Flow/GX ADF whole unit	JC97-04955A on page 133	1
9	Laser scanner unit	JC97-04894A on page 181	1
10	HVPS, 24V	JC44-00237A on page 185	1
11	LVPS (SMPS) 110V, Type 5H	JC44-00249A	1
11	LVPS (SMPS) 110V, Type 4	JC44-00091D	1
11	LVPS (SMPS) 220V, Type 5H	JC44-00250A on page 166	1
11	LVPS (SMPS) 220V, Type 4	JC44-00249A on page 166	1
12	Fuser drive PCA 110V (fuser drive board)	JC44-00210D on page 162	1
12	Fuser drive PCA 220V (fuser drive board)	JC44-00211D on page 162	1
13	Fan, Type 8, LVPS	JC31-00162A on page 171	1
14	HDD 320GB - Main PCA HDD	5851-6712 on page 231	1
15	PCA, Main Board	JC82-00541B on page 175	1
16	White backing (LX)	JC63-05410A on page 123	1
16	White backing (GX)	JC63-05795A	1
19	Black developer unit	JC96-11669A on page 195	1
Not shown	Cable, Sata, Main HDD	JC39-01202A	1
Not shown	Cable, PWR, Main HDD	JC39-01943A	1
Not shown	PCA, Control Panel	JC82-00361A	1
Not shown	Control Panel	JC82-00362A	1
Not shown	Cover, Control Panel Rear	JC82-00373A	1
Not shown	Control Panel Cable	JC82-00382A	1
Not shown	Pulsar Control Panel	B5L47-60101 on page 236	1
Not shown	Keyboard blank for non Flow	B5L46-40002	1
Not shown	US English Keyboard Assy	B5L47-60102 on page 240	1
Not shown	UK English Keyboard Assy	B5L47-60103	1
Not shown	Bushing for Keyboard	B5L46-40029	1

Table 2-1 Main assembly (continued)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
Not shown	Wire Clip Formatter	6502-001131	1
Not shown	Inductor Unit - 220V	JC27-00014A	1
Not shown	Inductor Unit - 110V	JC27-00013A	1
Not shown	Tray Heater (110v)	Y1G22-67901	1
Not shown	Tray Heater (220v)	Y1G22-67902	1
Not shown	Lower Tray Connector	JC39-02187A	1
Not shown	Assy- Engine Side Crum Connector	JC93-00507A	1
Not shown	PCA Sada Riser	B5L29-60001	1
Not shown	HDD cradle	B5L46-40014	1
Not shown	eMMC card - 16gb	B5L32-60002	1
Not shown	Accelerator PCA	X3A62-60001	1
Not shown	Stand off	0380-5077	1
Not shown	Formatter Cage	JC63-05674A on page 224	1
Not shown	HIP Cover	B5L46-40021	1
Not shown	Island of Data Board	X3A92-60002	1
Not shown	Foreign Interface Harness (FIH)	B5L31-90902 on page 219	1
Not shown	Jetdirect Wireless Print Server with NFC Kit	J8030-61001 on page 212	1
Not shown	HP Black Managed LJ Imaging Drum	X3A65-67903 on page 203	1
Not shown	Photo interrupter (feed senor 1)	0604-001393 on page 148	1
Not shown	Photo interrupter (feed senor 2)	0604-001393 on page 153	1

ADF white backing (LX/dn bundles)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the white backing assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC63-05410A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- ADF White backing (LX / dn bundles)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing

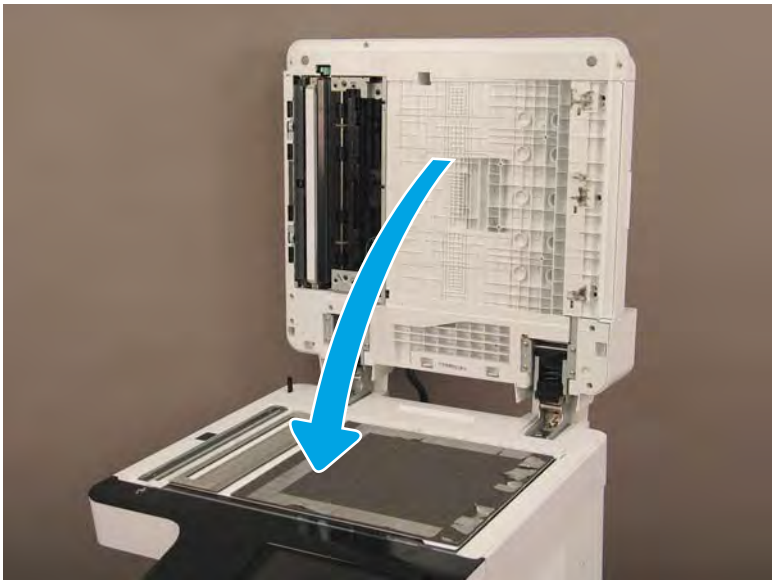
White backing

1. Open the document feeder cover.
2. Peel the white backing away to remove.

> **IMPORTANT:** Remove all the tape and foam from the bottom of the document feeder.

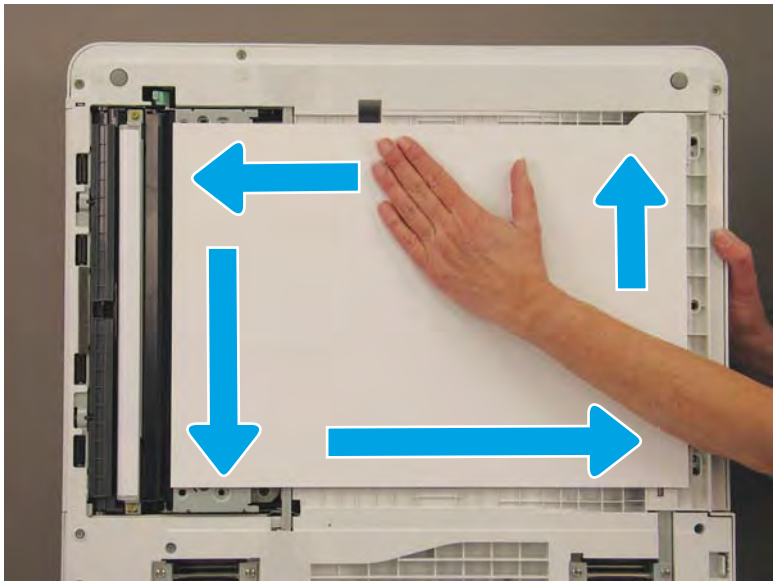
3. Position the new white backing on the scanner glass.
4. Peel the adhesive tape backing off the new white backing.
5. Close the document feeder cover to attach the white backing.

Figure 2-11 Close the document feeder cover



6. Open the cover again and smooth the white backing.

Figure 2-12 Smooth the white backing



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF white backing (GX/z bundles)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the white backing assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC63-05795A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- ADF White backing (GX / z bundles))

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

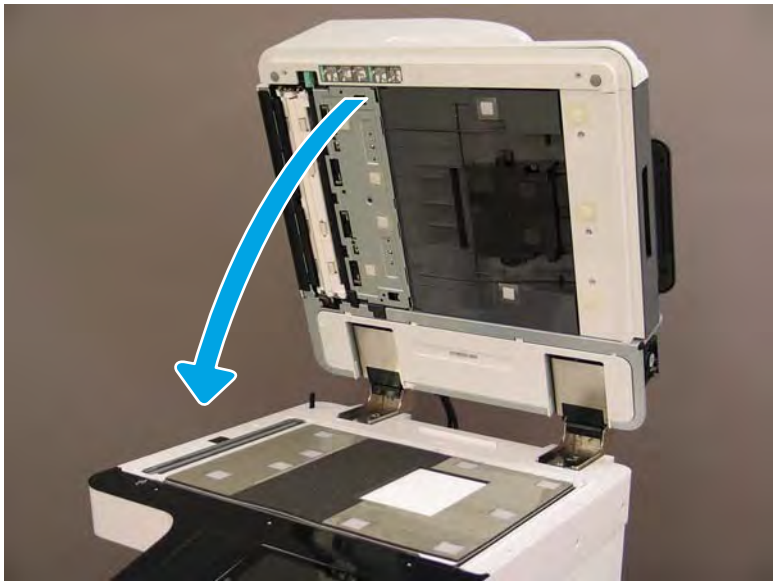
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing

White backing

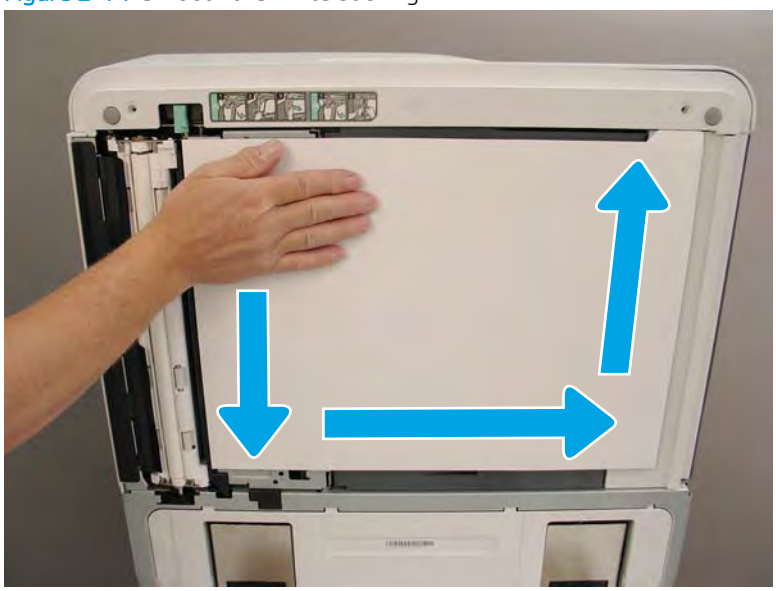
1. Open the document feeder cover.
2. Peel the white backing away to remove.
3. Position the new white backing on the scanner glass.
4. Replace any damaged or missing velcro tabs by positioning them on the new white backing.
5. Close the document feeder cover to attach the white backing.

Figure 2-13 Close the document feeder cover



6. Open the cover again and smooth the white backing.

Figure 2-14 Smooth the white backing



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF whole unit (LX/dn bundles)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder whole unit
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder whole unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04954A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Document feeder whole unit assembly (LX/dn models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

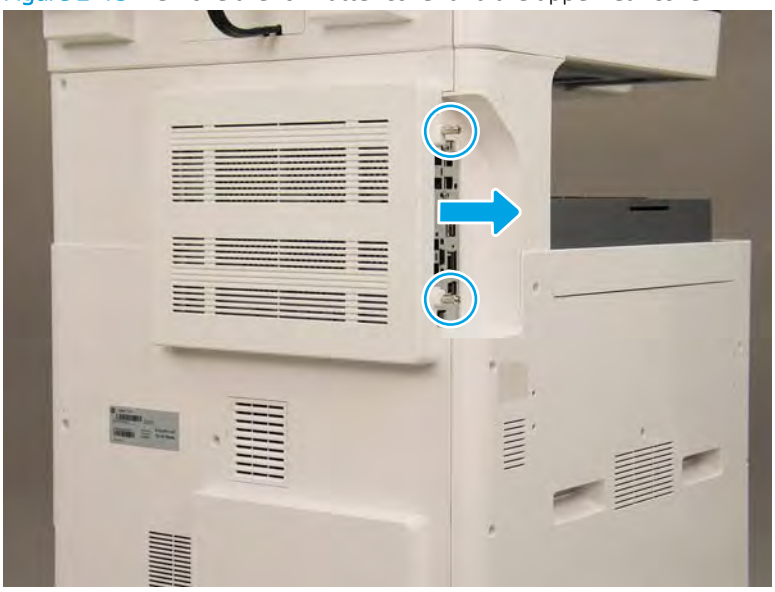
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder whole unit

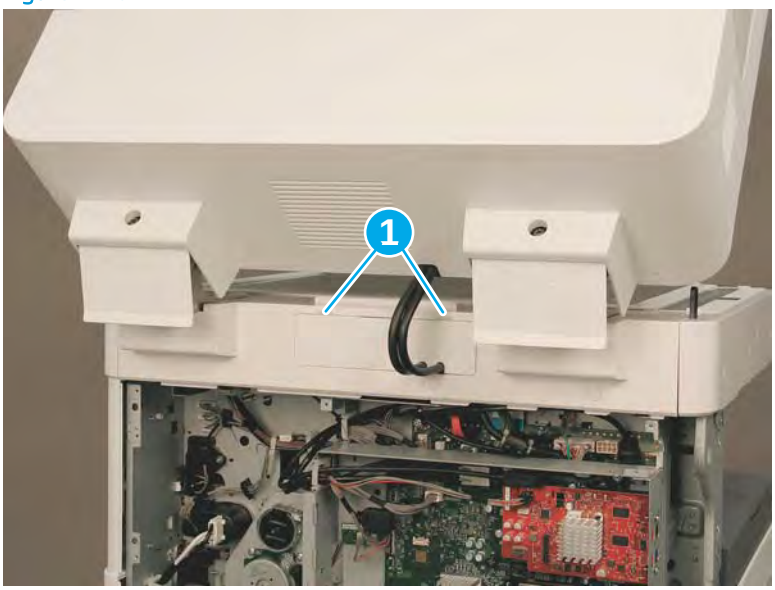
1. Remove the formatter cover and the upper rear cover.

Figure 2-15 Remove the formatter cover and the upper rear cover



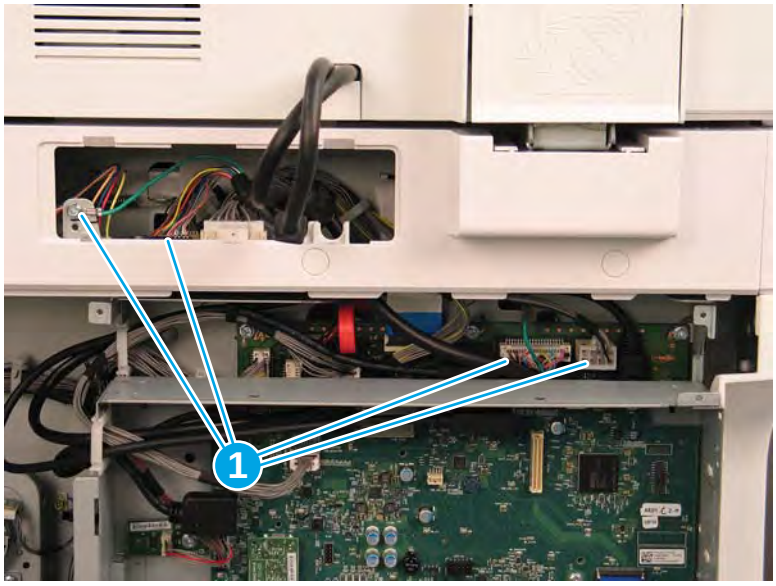
2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 2-16 Remove the document feeder connector cover



3. Remove the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

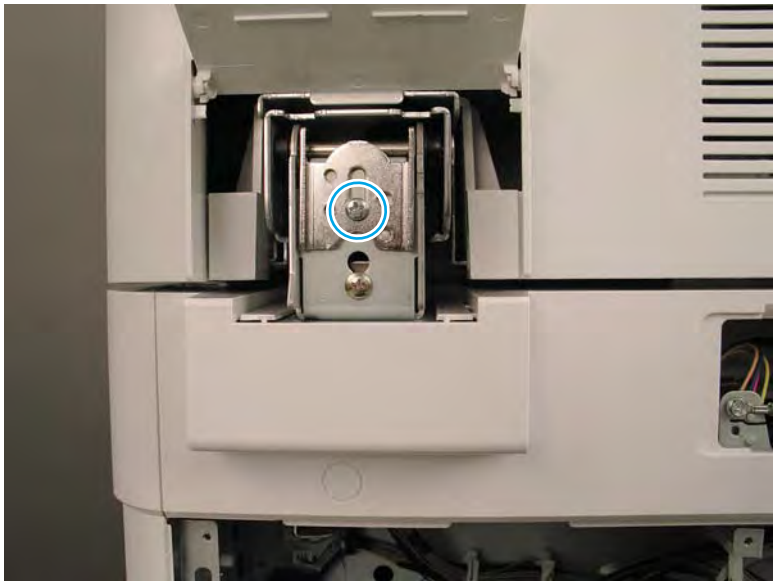
Figure 2-17 Remove the document feeder harness and ground wire



4. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the PCA - ADF HIC. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

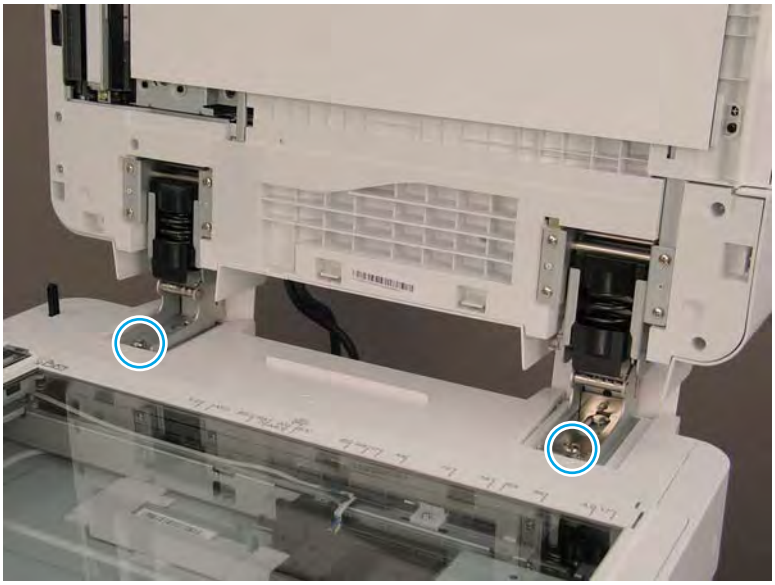
5. Release one screw on each hinge stop on the back of the document feeder.

Figure 2-18 Release the document feeder hinge screws



6. Remove two screws. Slide the assembly back, and then lift the document feeder to remove.

Figure 2-19 Lift and remove the document feeder



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF whole unit (GX/z bundles)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the ADF whole unit

- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the flow ADF whole unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04955A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- ADF whole unit assembly (GX/z models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the ADF whole unit

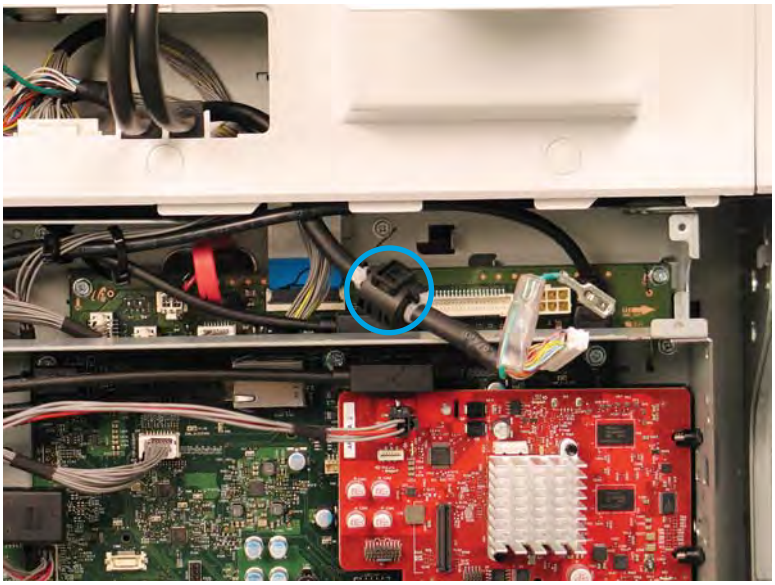
1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 2-20 Remove document feeder connector cover



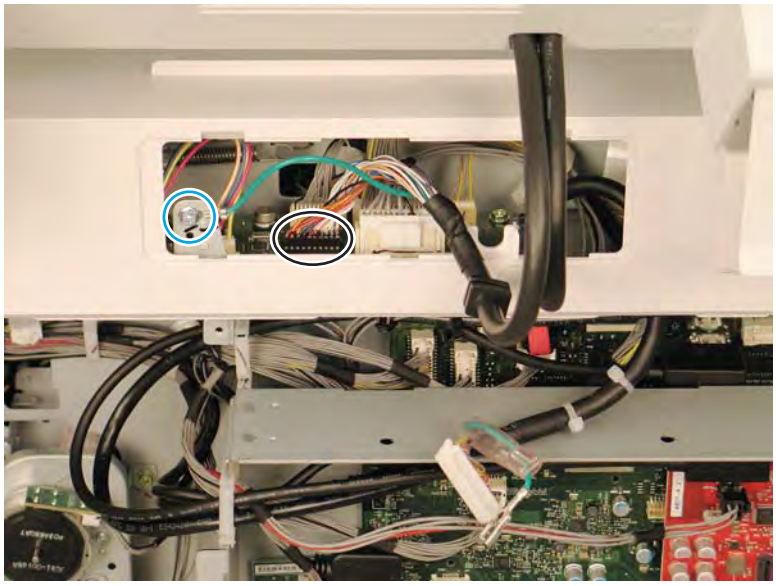
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 2-21 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scanner PCA. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

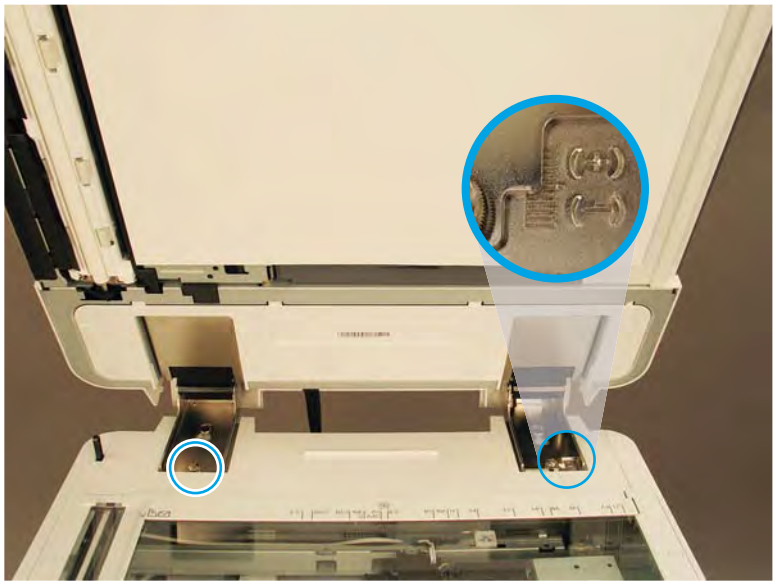
Figure 2-22 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

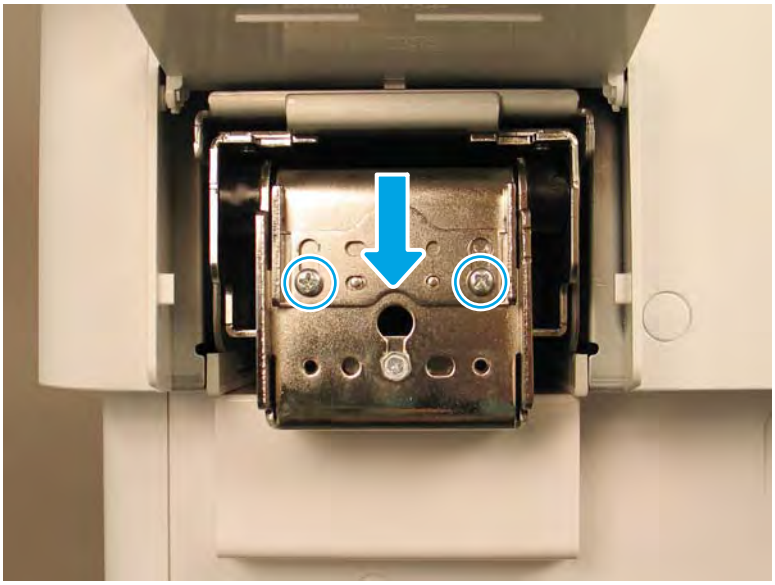
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 2-23 Alignment marks



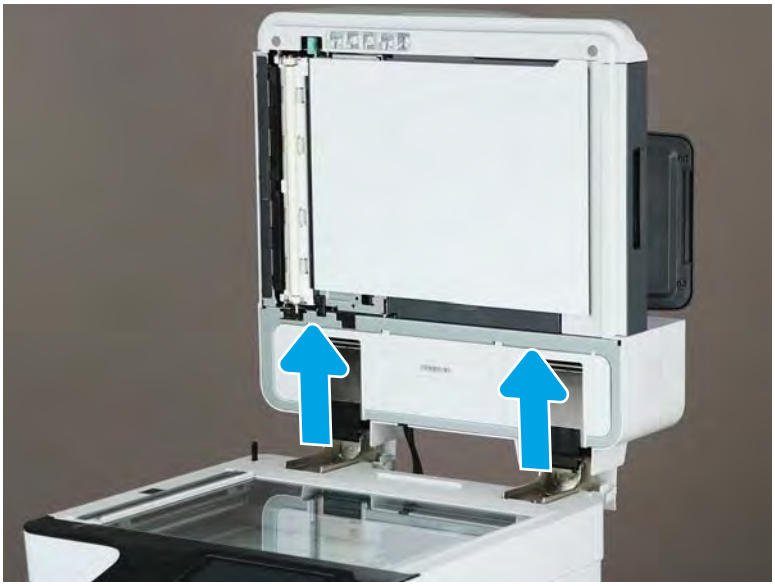
5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 2-24 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-25 Release the document feeder



NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Scanner whole unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scanner whole unit
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner whole unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04907A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Scanner whole unit part number

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the scanner whole unit

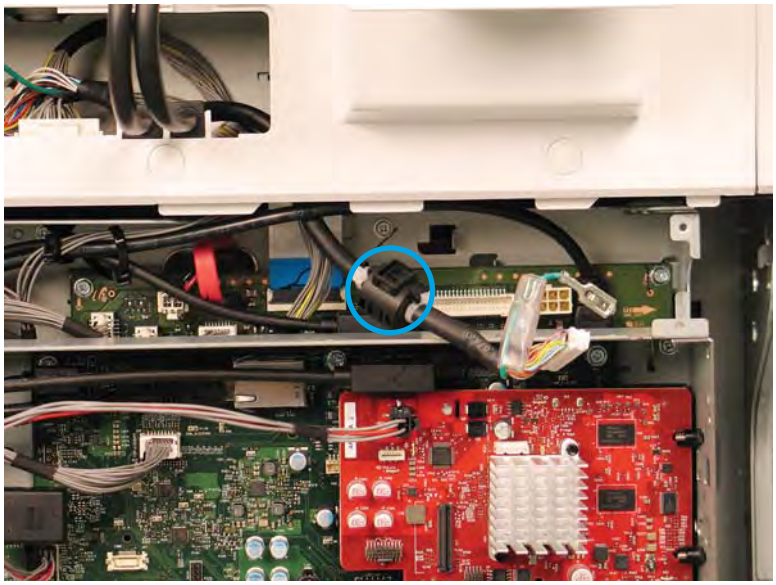
1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 2-26 Remove document feeder connector cover



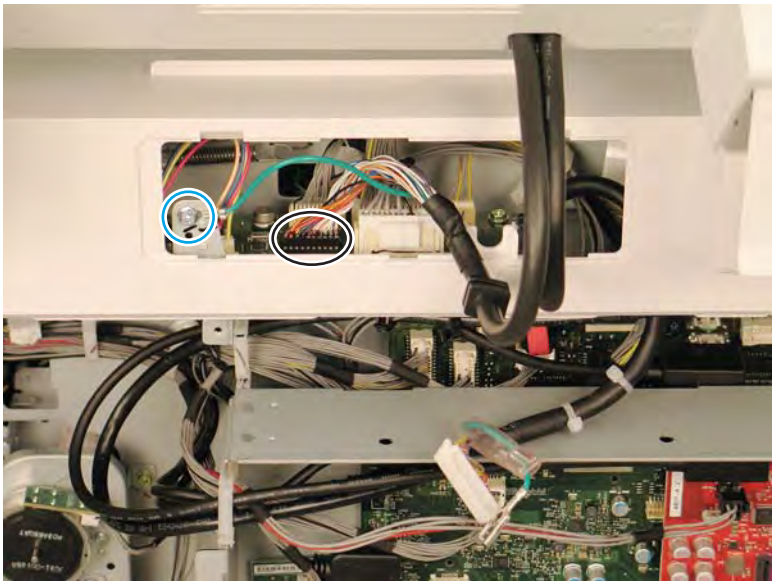
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 2-27 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the PCA - ADF HIC. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

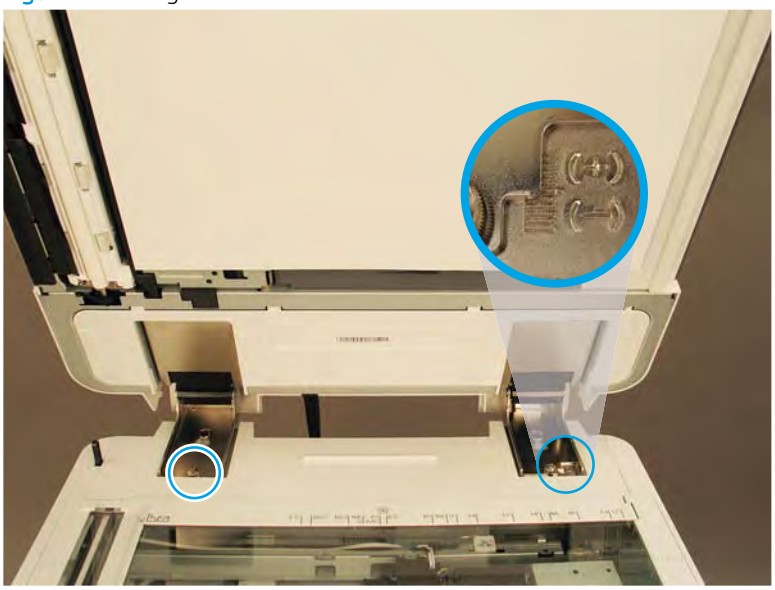
Figure 2-28 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

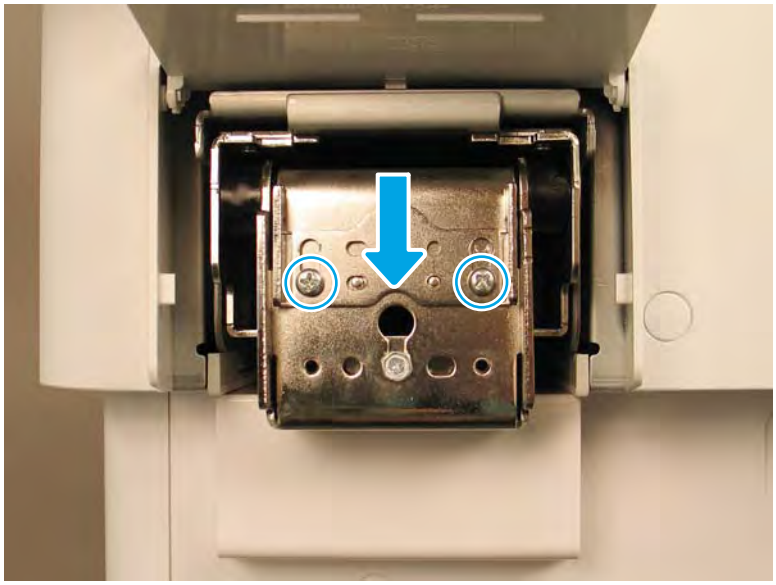
IMPORTANT: If installing a replacment document feeder, note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 2-29 Alignment marks



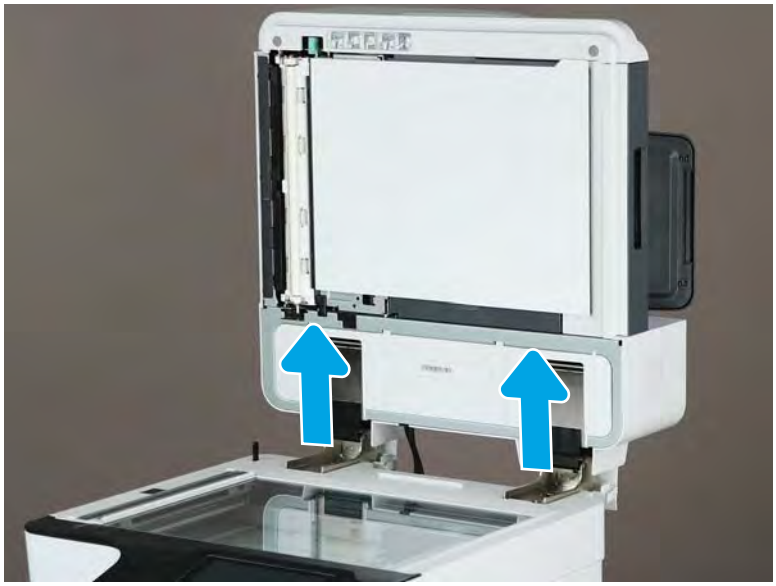
5. Loosen the two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 2-30 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-31 Release the document feeder



NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

7. Remove three screws.

Figure 2-32 Remove three screws



8. Place the control panel in the upright position.

9. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

10. Remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 2-33 Remove two screws



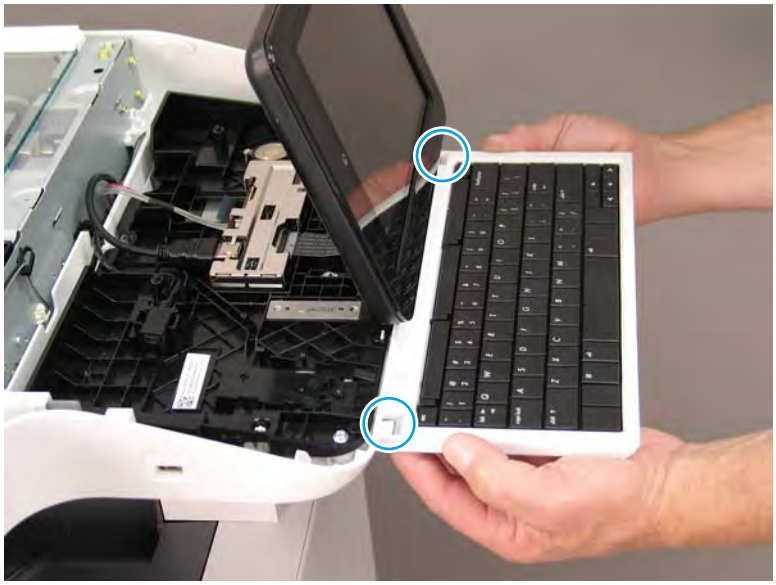
11. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, the HIP USB cable, and one HDMI connector.

12. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 2-34 Remove USB interconnect cable



13. Slide the keyboard out, and then depress two latches to remove the keyboard.

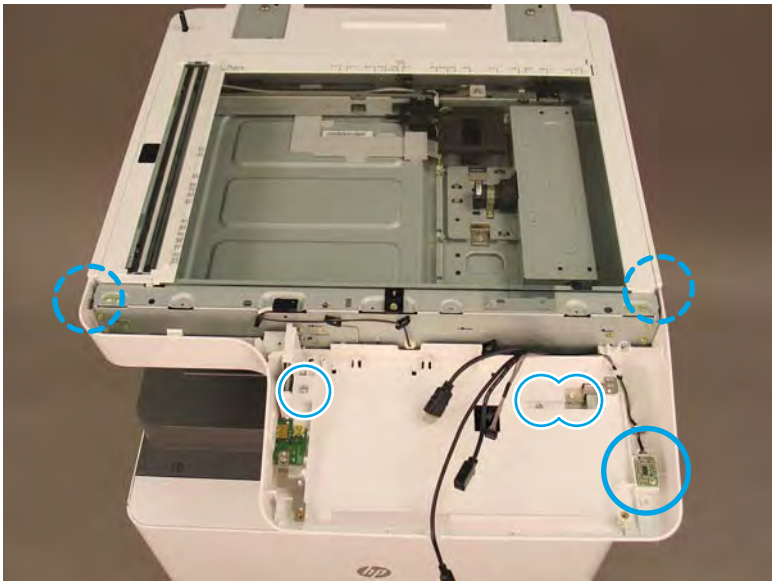


14. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.

Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear of the control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

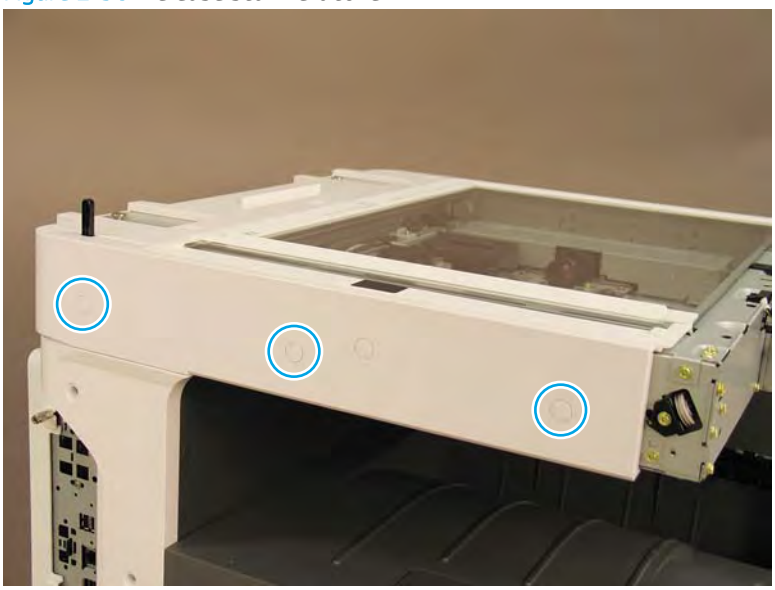
15. Remove six screw-caps and six screws. It might be necessary to use leverage near the left hinge and then pull the cover toward the back.

Figure 2-35 Remove screw-caps and screws and release scan-front cover



16. Remove three screw-caps and three screws. Release the scan-left cover.

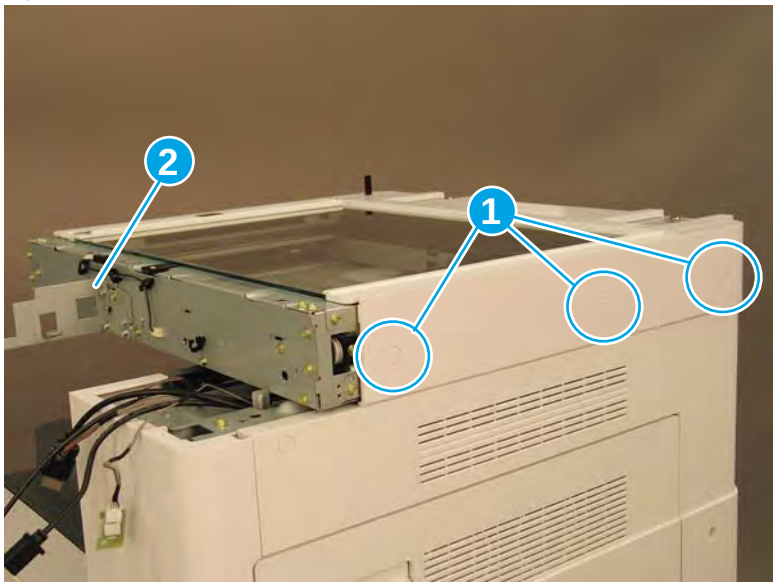
Figure 2-36 Release scan-left cover



17. Remove three screw-caps and three screws (callout 1). Release the scan-right cover.

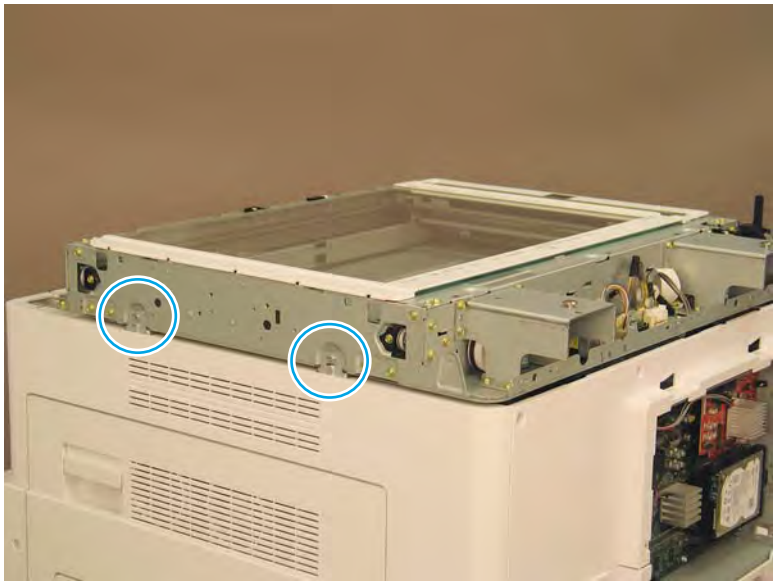
NOTE: At the front of the scanner, remove the bracket (callout 2) and install it on the replacement scanner whole unit.

Figure 2-37 Remove scan-right cover



18. Remove two screws.

Figure 2-38 Remove two screws



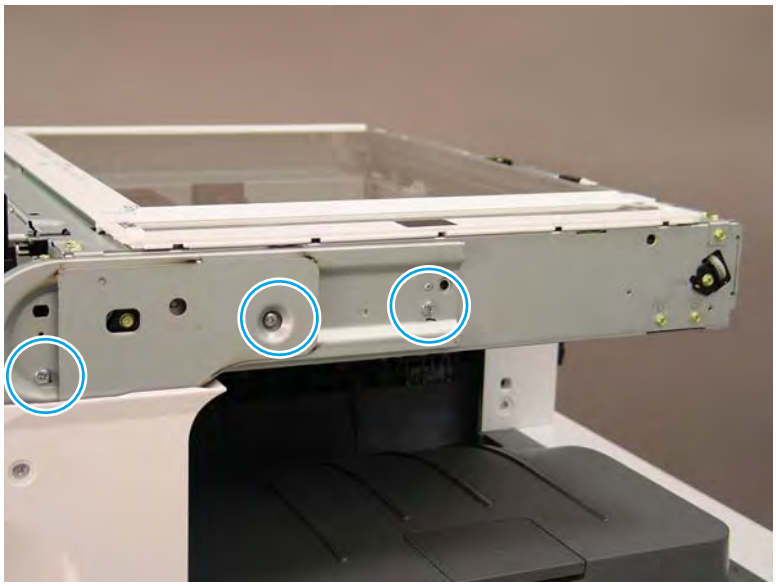
19. Disconnect the two scan cables and one FFC at the top of the main board.

Figure 2-39 Disconnect scan cables



20. Remove three screws. Lift the scanner straight up and off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-40 Remove three screws



NOTE: After reassembly, utilize the target to adjust the scanner location as necessary.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the scan bed by lowering the left side first and then lower the right. Align the screw holes on the right, and then install the screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the lower cover and ensure the cables are routed through the opening for the control panel and the bracket is properly aligned in the cover.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed sensor 1

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right door
- Step 2: Remove the feed sensor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the feed sensor 1 assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

0604-001393

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Feed sensor 1

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

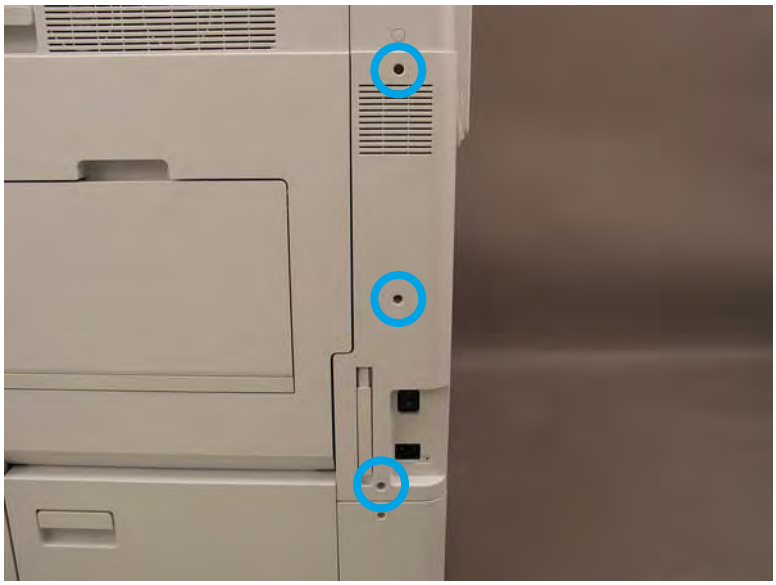
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the right door

NOTE: Remove second exit drive if installed.

1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).

Figure 2-41 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

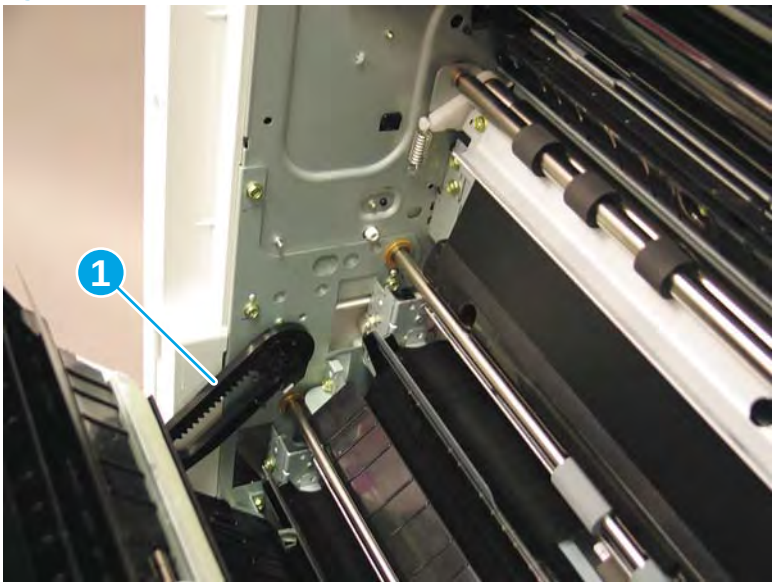
Figure 2-42 Disconnect right door connector



3. Release the right hinge (callout 1).

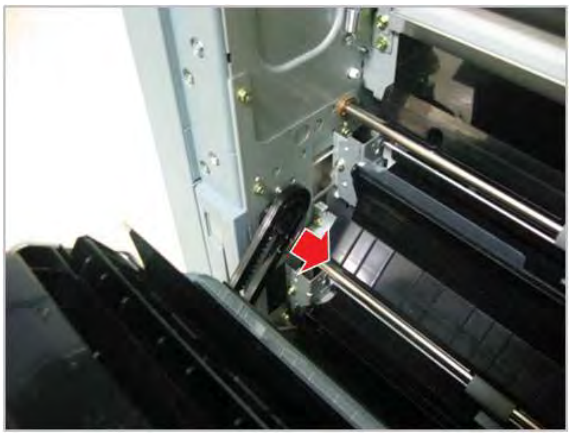
⚠ CAUTION: The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.

Figure 2-43 Release right hinge



4. Release the left dampener (callout 1).

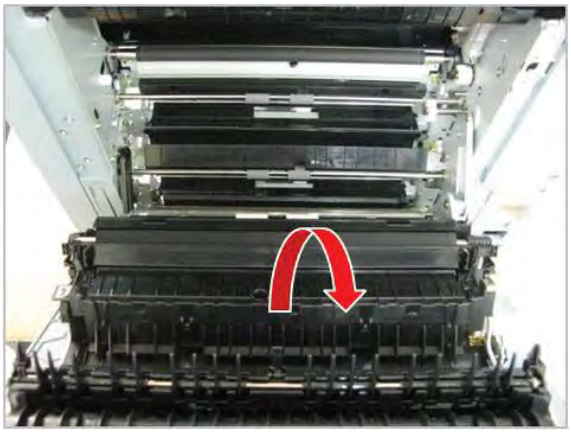
Figure 2-44 Release left dampener



5. Remove the right door.

NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.

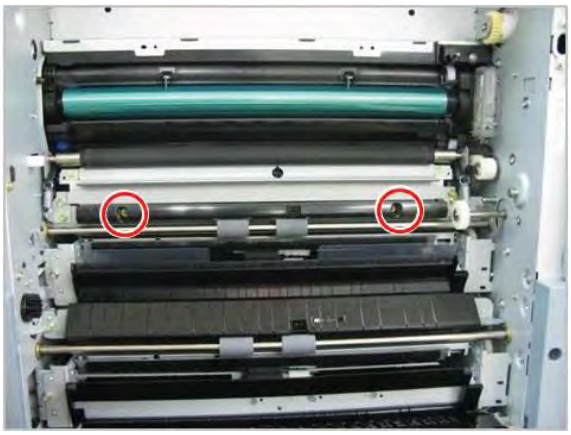
Figure 2-45 Remove right door



Step 2: Remove the feed sensor

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the sensor cover.

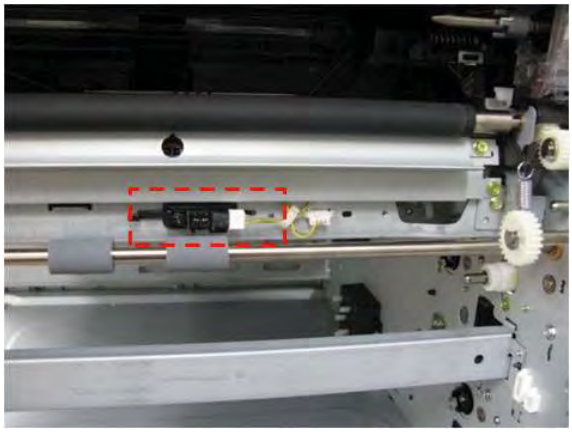
Figure 2-46 Remove sensor cover



2. Remove one screw. Release the sensor holder.

3. Disconnect the connector and release the cable from the cable restraint. Remove the feed sensor.

Figure 2-47 Remove feed sensor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed sensor 2

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right door
- Step 2: Remove the feed sensor 2
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the feed sensor 2 assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

0604-001393

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Feed sensor 2 assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

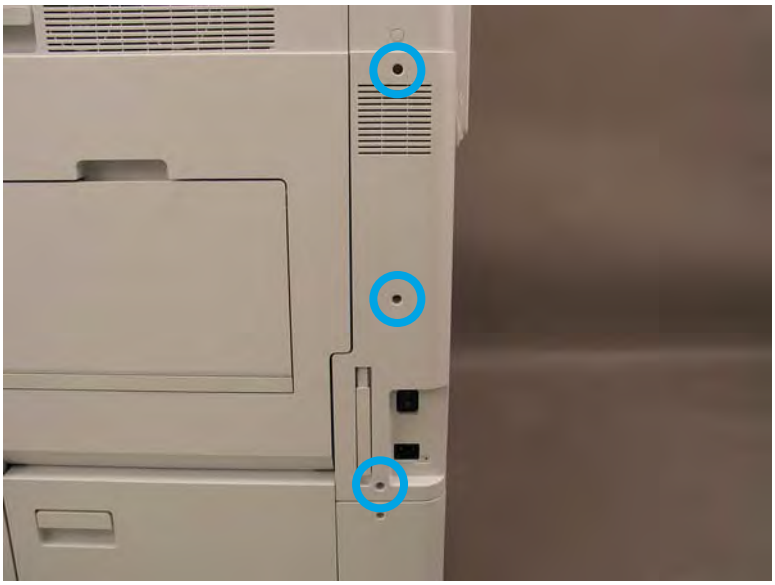
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the right door

NOTE: Remove second exit drive if installed.

1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).

Figure 2-48 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

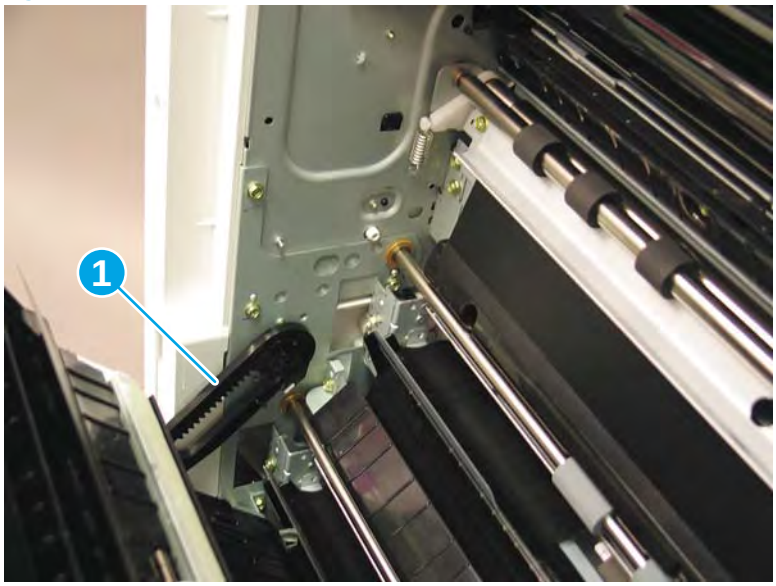
Figure 2-49 Disconnect right door connector



3. Release the right hinge (callout 1).

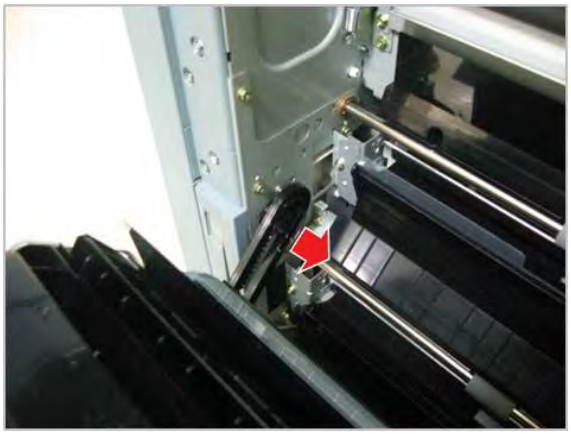
⚠ CAUTION: The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.

Figure 2-50 Release right hinge



4. Release the left dampener (callout 1).

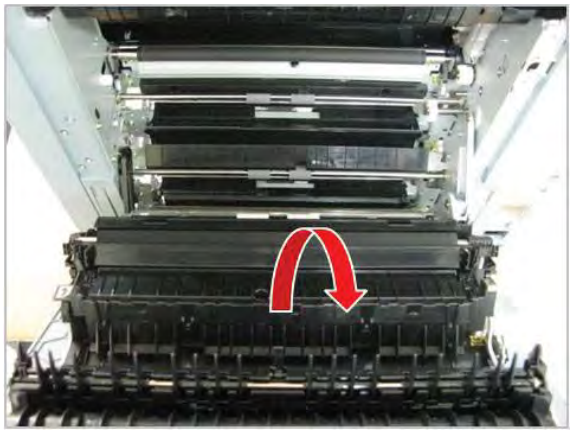
Figure 2-51 Release left dampener



5. Remove the right door.

NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.

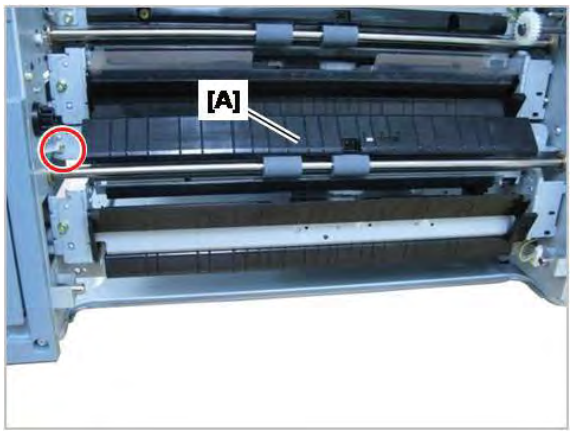
Figure 2-52 Remove right door



Step 2: Remove the feed sensor 2

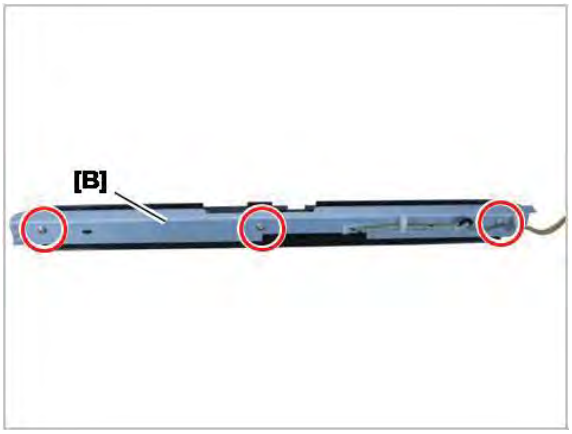
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the Feed Unit (A).

Figure 2-53 Remove screw and feed unit



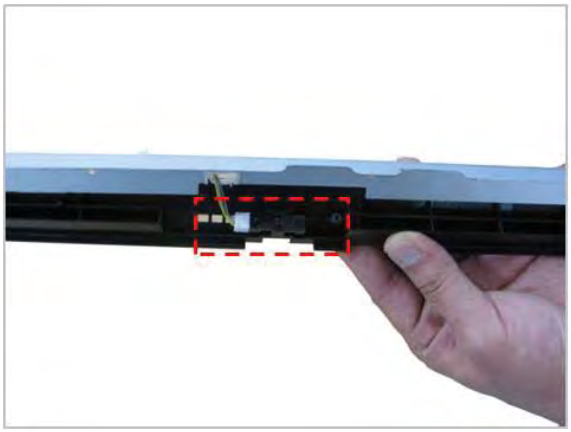
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket (B).

Figure 2-54 Remove screws and bracket



3. Disconnect the connector, and then remove the feed sensor 2.

Figure 2-55 Remove feed sensor 2



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Exit unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the exit unit
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the exit unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC90-01118B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Exit unit assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

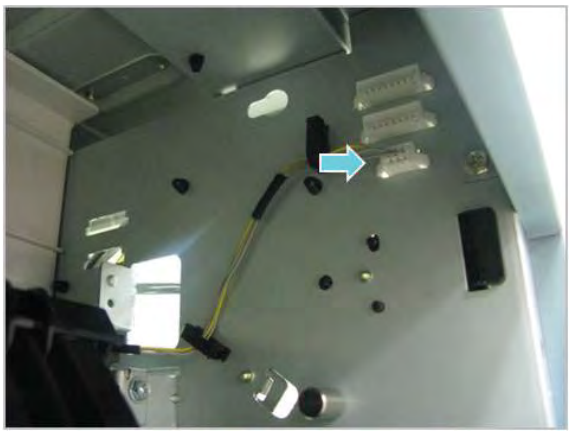
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the exit unit

NOTE: Remove second exit drive if installed.

1. Open the right door. Disconnect the exit unit connector and two cable restraints.

   Figure 2-56 Disconnect exit unit connector and cable restraints

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the exit unit.

   Figure 2-57 Remove screws and exit unit

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser drive assembly board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear bottom cover
- Step 2: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 3: Remove the fuser drive assembly board
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the fuser drive assembly board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

CAUTION: Wait five minutes after disconnecting the power cable before replacing the LVPS board. Not waiting long enough after disconnecting the power cable can cause electric shock.

JC44-00210D

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Fuser Drive Board 110V

JC44-00211D

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Fuser Drive Board 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

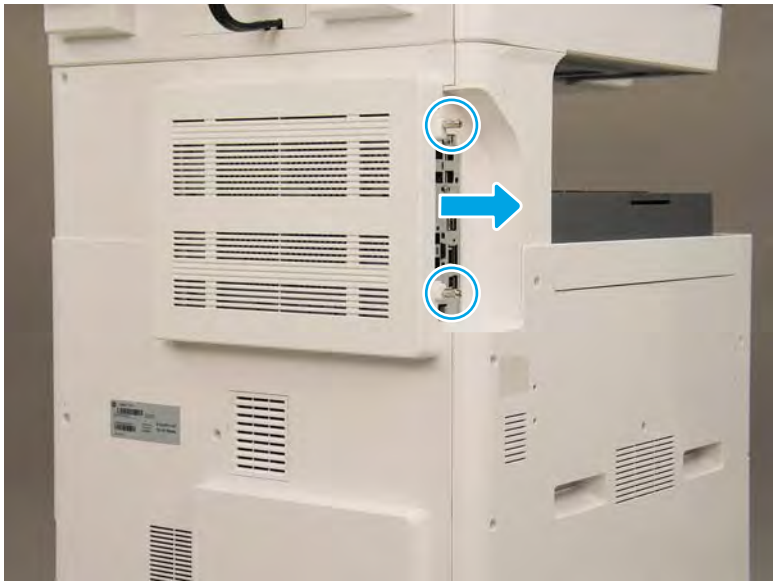
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear bottom cover

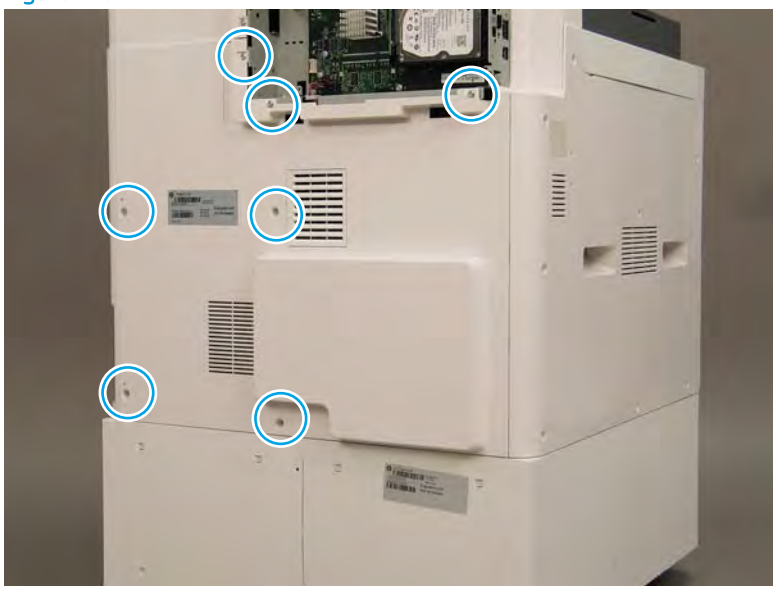
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-58 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

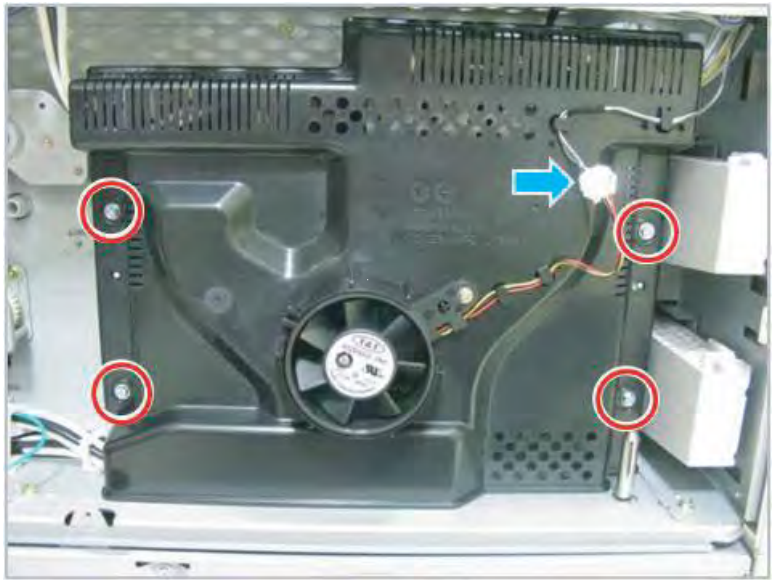
Figure 2-59 Remove the rear-bottom cover



Step 2: Remove the LVPS cover

- Remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS cover.

Figure 2-60 Remove the LVPS cover

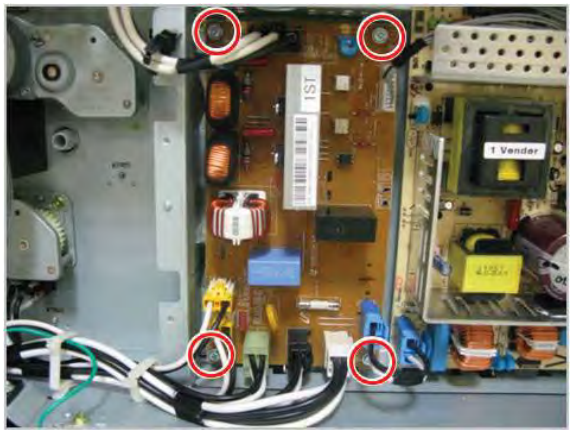


Step 3: Remove the fuser drive assembly board

▲ Disconnect seven connectors and cable restraints on the fuser-drive assembly board. Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser-drive assembly board.

NOTE: Several of the connectors have tabs that need to be pressed in order to release.

Figure 2-61 Remove the fuser-drive assembly board



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

LVPS Type 5H Board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear covers
- Step 2: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS Type 5H Board
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner LVPS board.

Click here for a video of this procedure

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

CAUTION: Wait five minutes after disconnecting the power cable before replacing the LVPS board. Not waiting long enough after disconnecting the power cable can cause electric shock.

JC44-00250A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- LVPS 220V Type 5H

JC44-00249A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- LVPS 110V Type 5H

JC44-00091D

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- LVPS 110V Type 4

JC44-00092D

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- LVPS 220V Type 4

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

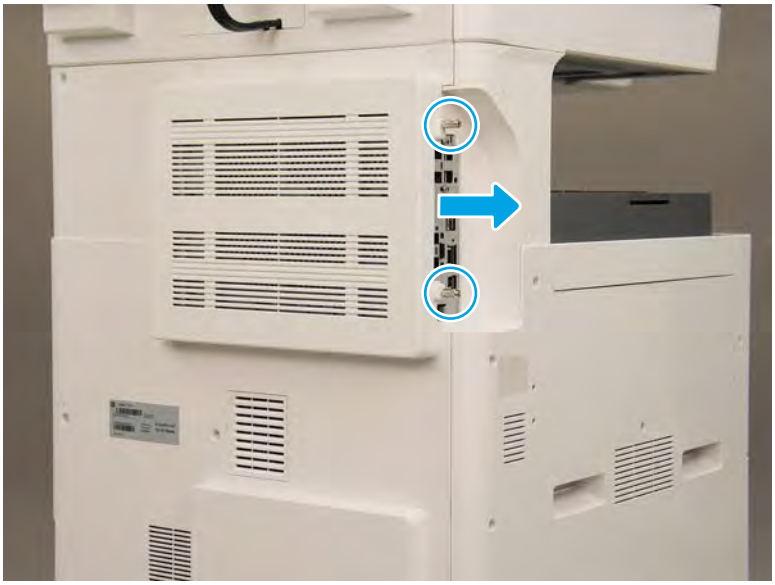
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear covers

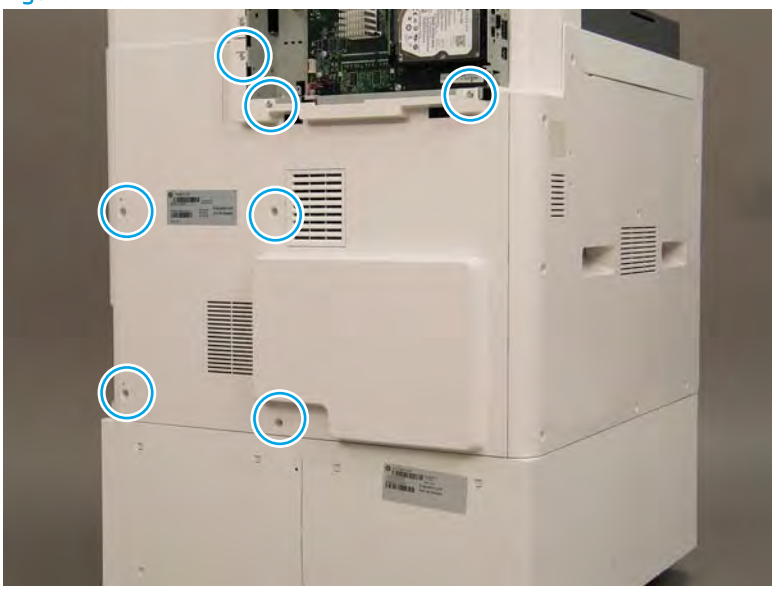
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-62 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

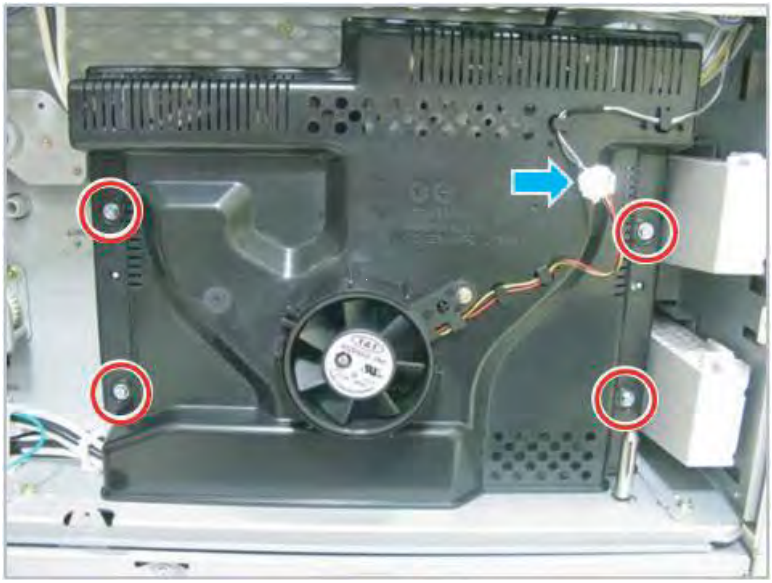
Figure 2-63 Remove the rear-bottom cover



Step 2: Remove the LVPS cover

- Remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS cover.

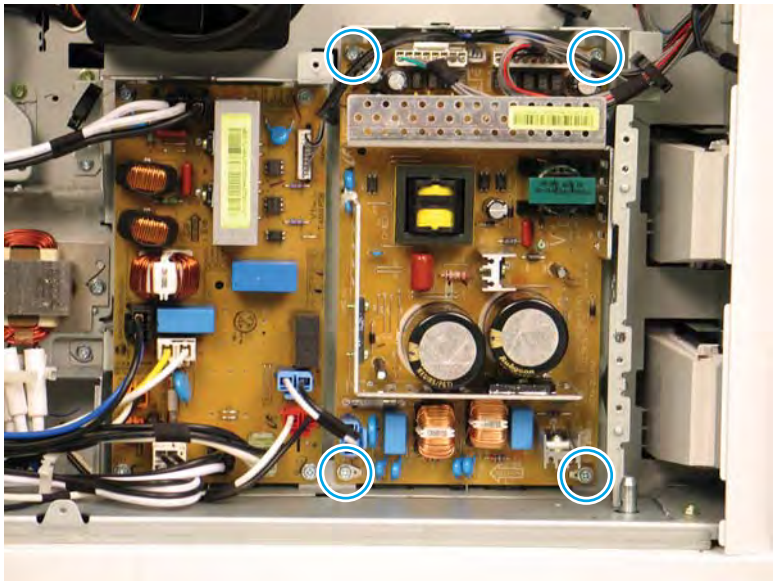
Figure 2-64 Remove the LVPS cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS Type 5H Board

▲ Disconnect four connectors, including one fuser-drive assembly connector and four other connectors, on the LVPS PCA (Type 5). Remove four screws, and then remove the scanner LVPS board (Type 5).

Figure 2-65 Remove the scanner LVPS (Type 5) board



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Developer fan

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear covers
- Step 2: Remove the developer fan
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the developer fan assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC31-00162A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Developer fan assembly (Fan Type 8)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

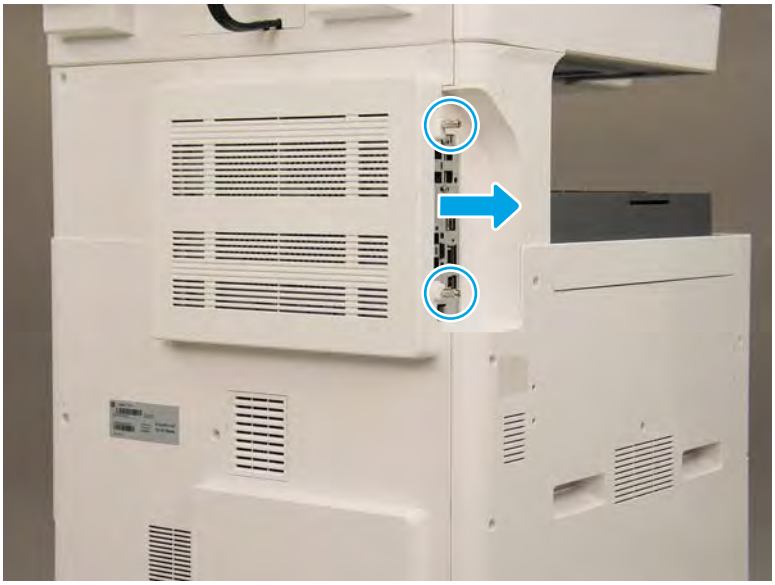
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear covers

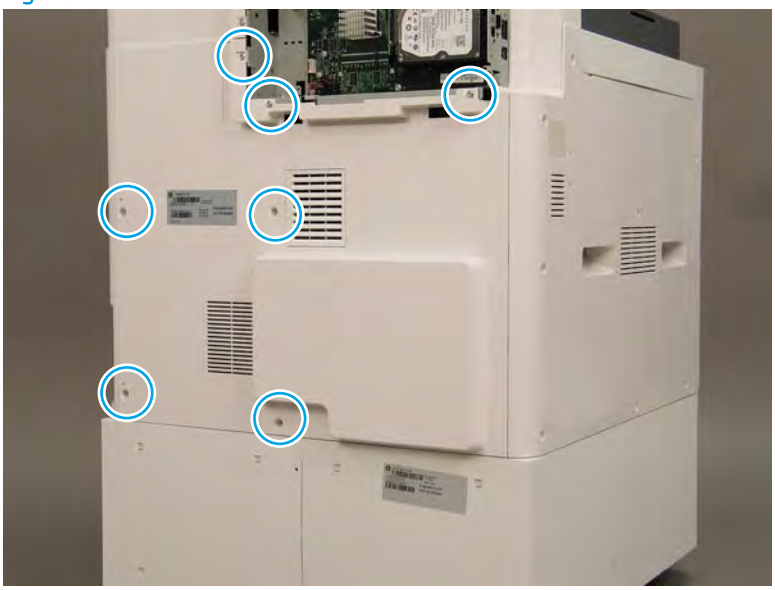
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-66 Remove the formatter cover



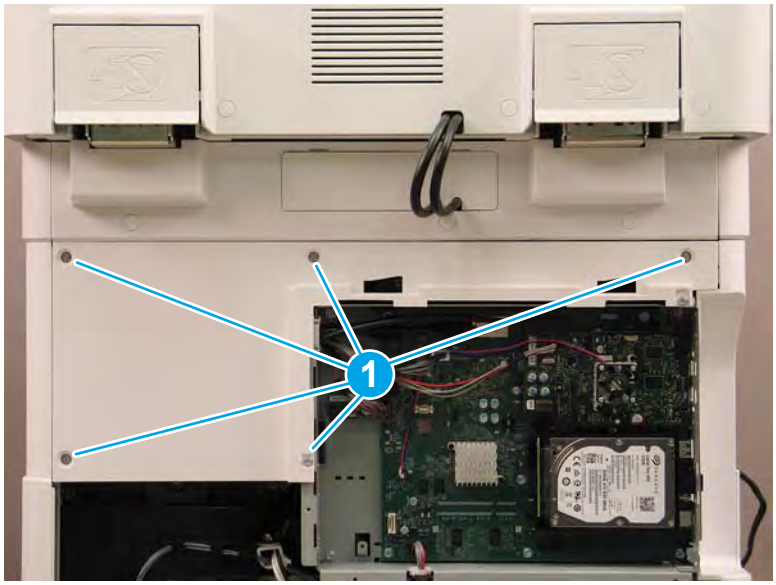
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

Figure 2-67 Remove the rear-bottom cover



3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

Figure 2-68 Remove the rear-top cover

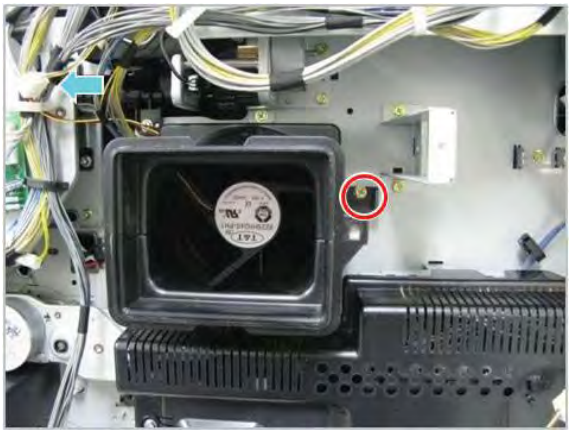


Step 2: Remove the developer fan

NOTE: The fan shown below might look slightly different than the one found in the printer. However, the removal steps are correct for this printer.

1. Release the cable restraint. Disconnect the in line connector and remove one screw. Remove the developer fan.

Figure 2-69 Remove developer fan



2. Remove one screw.
3. Separate the plastic housing.
4. Remove fan.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear covers
- Step 2: Remove the formatter cage
- Step 3: Remove the main board
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the main board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC82-00541B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Main Board PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

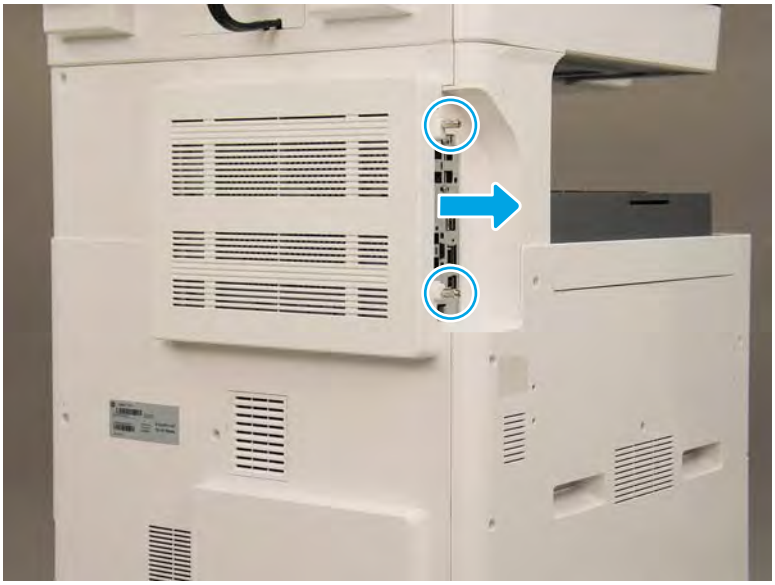
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear covers

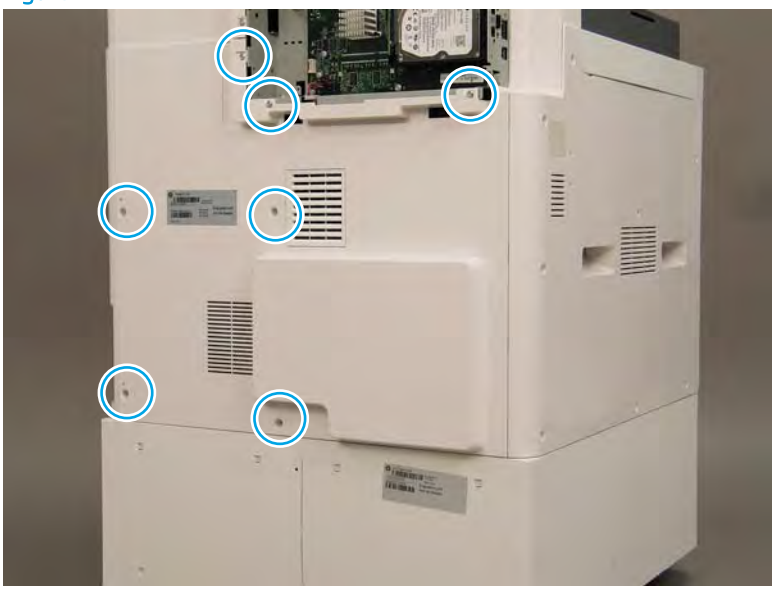
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-70 Remove the formatter cover



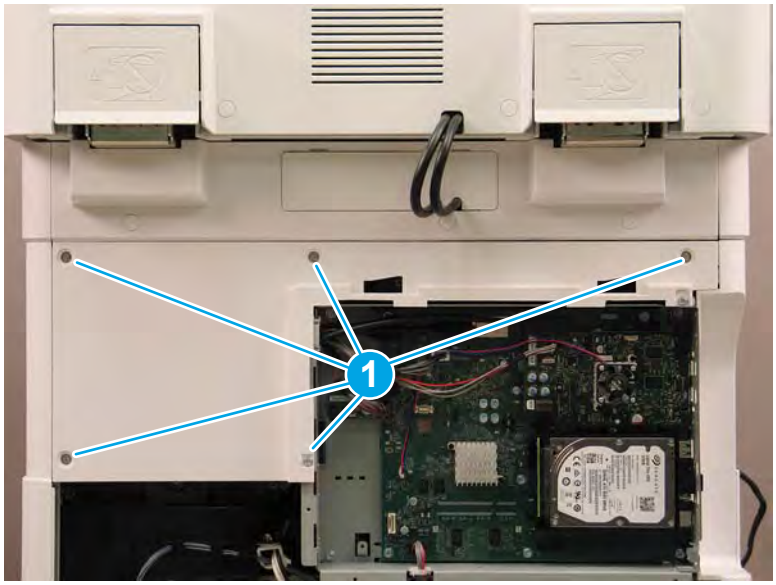
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

Figure 2-71 Remove the rear-bottom cover



3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

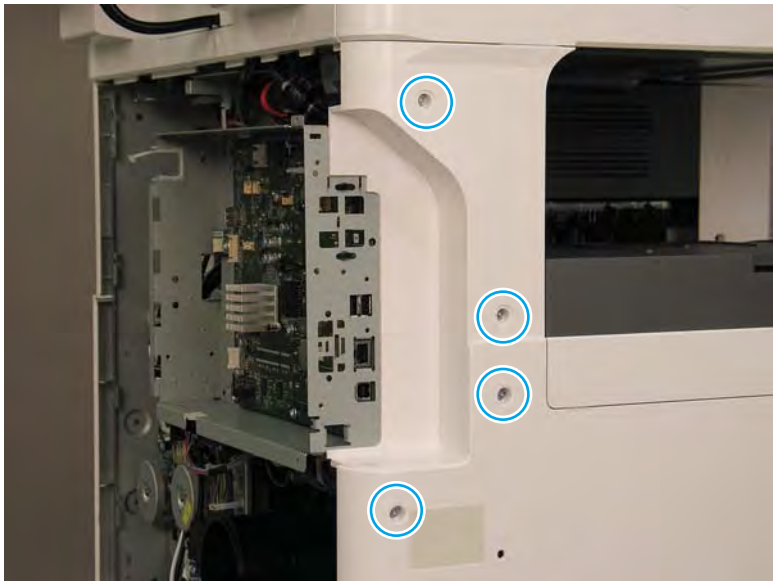
Figure 2-72 Remove the rear-top cover



Step 2: Remove the formatter cage

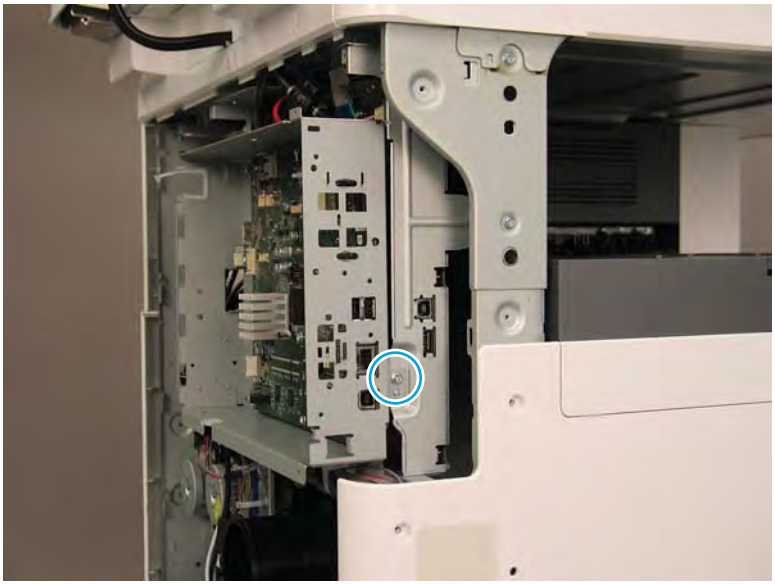
1. Disconnect ten connectors and two cable restraints.
2. Remove four screws and screw-caps, and then remove the left-upper cover.

Figure 2-73 Remove the left-upper cover



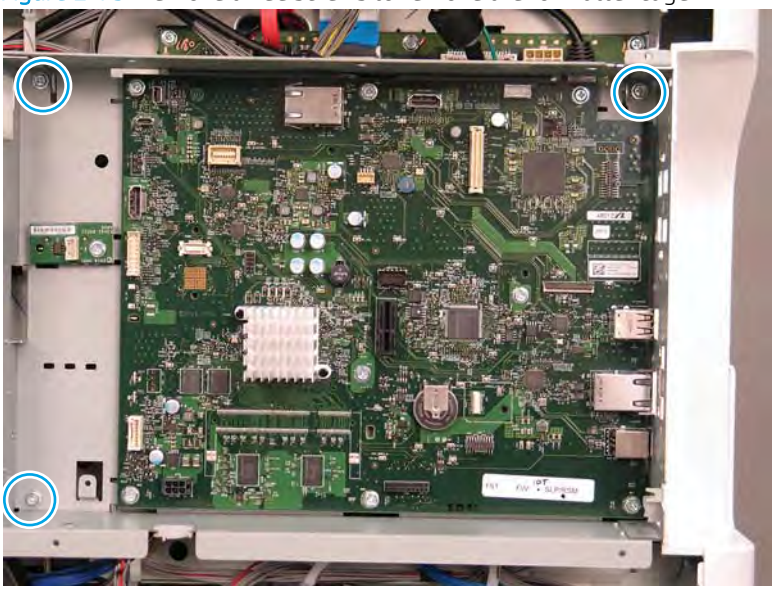
3. Remove one screw from the side of the formatter cage (beneath the left-upper cover location).

Figure 2-74 Remove the formatter cage side screw



4. Remove three screws from the formatter cage face, and then release one tab to remove the formatter cage.

Figure 2-75 Remove three screws to remove the formatter cage



Step 3: Remove the main board

1. Disconnect 19 connectors, a ground wire, and three FFCs on the main board.

Figure 2-76 Remove the main board connectors and screws



2. Remove nine screws, and then remove the main board.
3. Disconnect the MSOK from the removed main board, noting its orientation. Transfer the MSOK to the replacement main board and install it using the same orientation.

TIP: The main board is marked to show the correct orientation of the MSOK when installed.

Figure 2-77 MSOK installation orientation



Reinstallation tip: See the screen-printed icon on the main board to ensure that the MSOK is aligned correctly during reinstallation.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Laser scanner assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the left cover
- Step 2: Remove the laser scanner assembly
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the laser scanner assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC97-04894A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Laser scanner assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

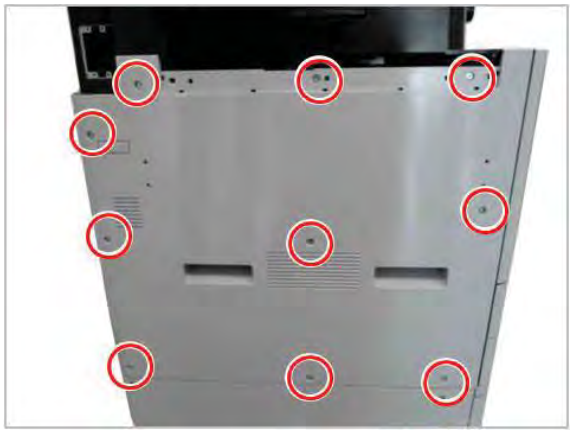
Step 1: Remove the left cover

- ▲ Remove the left trim cover, and then remove ten screws to remove the left cover.

Figure 2-78 Remove the left trim cover



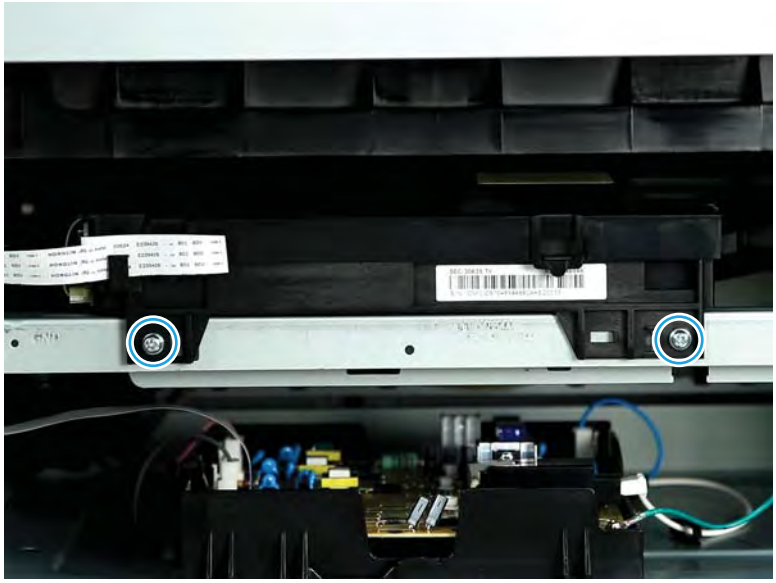
Figure 2-79 Remove the left cover



Step 2: Remove the laser scanner assembly

1. Remove two screws.

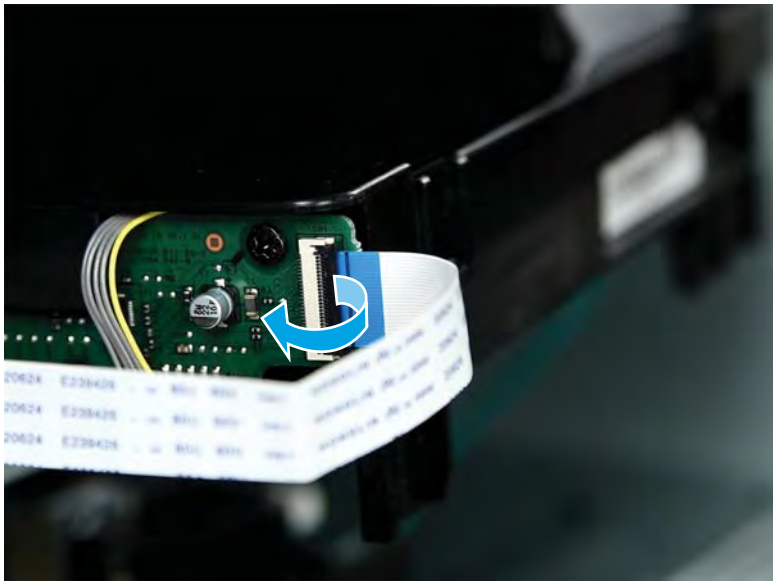
Figure 2-80 Remove the laser scanner assembly



2. Disconnect the laser scanner assembly harness at the left, and then partially remove the assembly from the chassis. Disconnect the FFC cable, and then remove the laser scanner assembly completely.

⚠ CAUTION: If the laser scanner assembly is removed too rough or fast, the harness can be damaged.

Figure 2-81 Disconnect the laser scanner assembly harness and FFC cable



3. Complete a laser scanner assembly adjustment after a new laser scanner assembly has been installed.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS) board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the left cover
- Step 2: Remove the hig-voltage power supply (HVPS)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the high voltage power supply (HVPS) board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC44-00237A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS) board

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

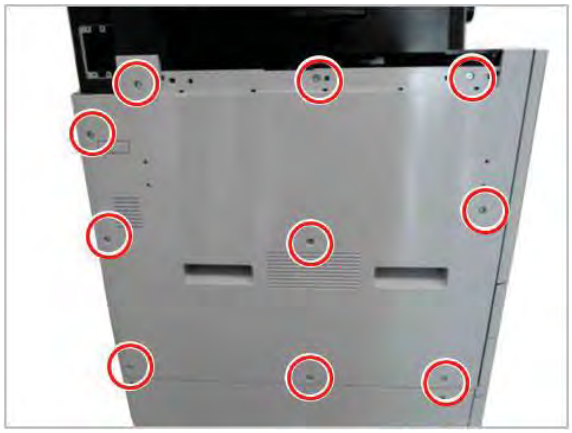
Step 1: Remove the left cover

▲ Remove the left trim cover, and then remove ten screws to remove the left cover.

Figure 2-82 Remove the left trim cover



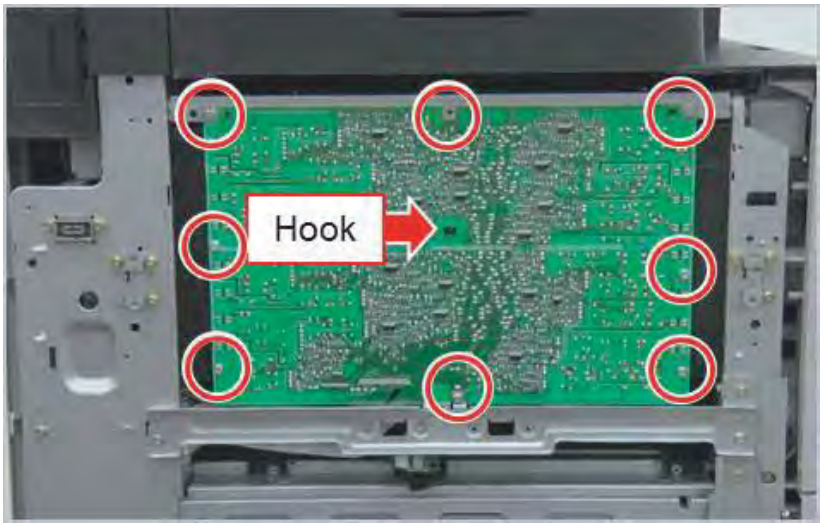
Figure 2-83 Remove the left cover



Step 2: Remove the hig-voltage power supply (HVPS)

1. Remove eight screws, and then release middle hook.

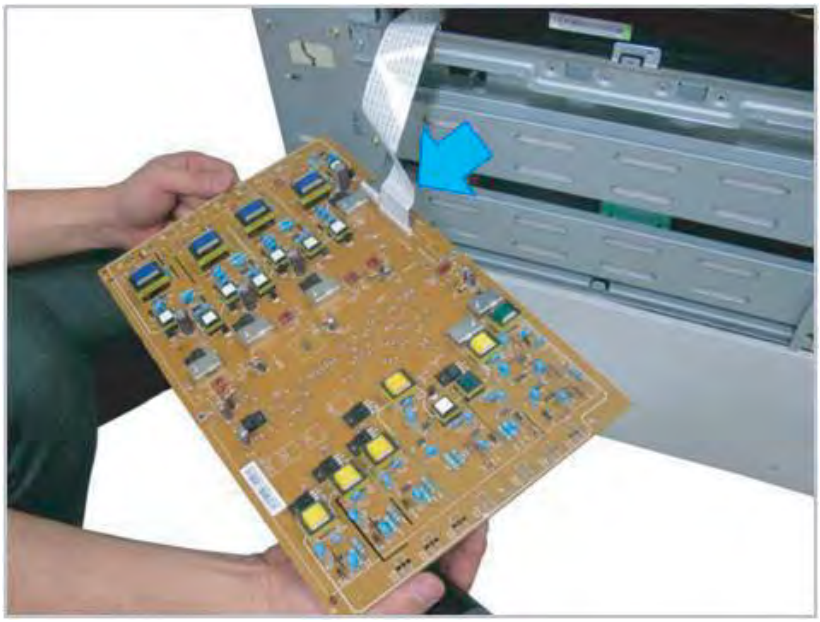
Figure 2-84 Remove the bracket



2. Unplug the connector and then remove the HVPS.

TIP: To easily disconnect the connectors, remove the LSU.

Figure 2-85 Remove the HVPS board



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right door
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the right door assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Right door assembly part number	
JC95-02080A	Right door assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

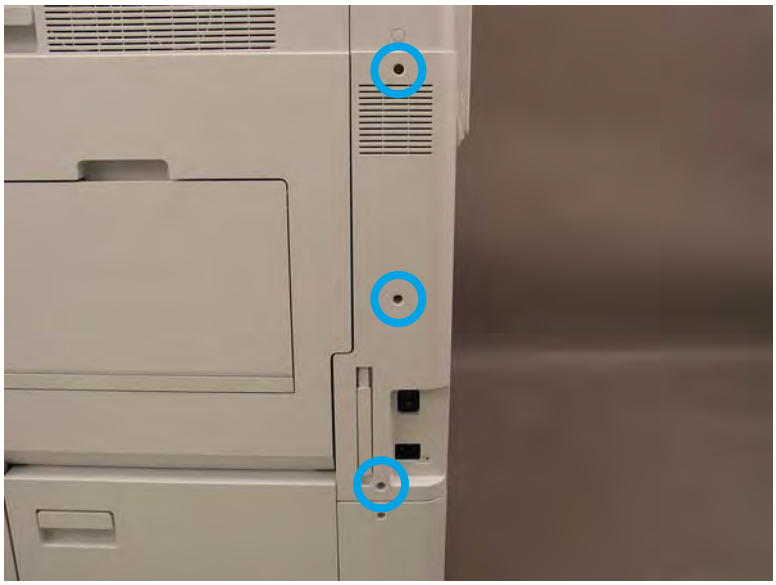
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the right door

NOTE: Remove second exit drive if installed.

1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).

Figure 2-86 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

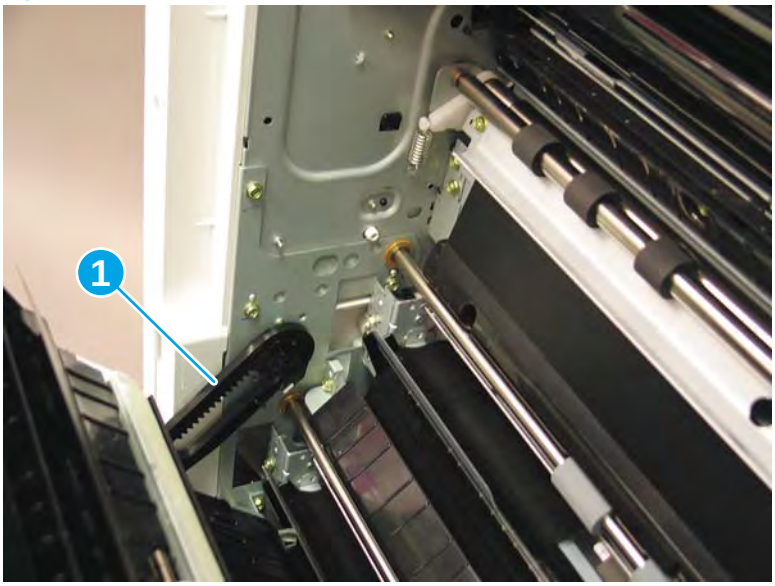
Figure 2-87 Disconnect right door connector



3. Release the right hinge (callout 1).

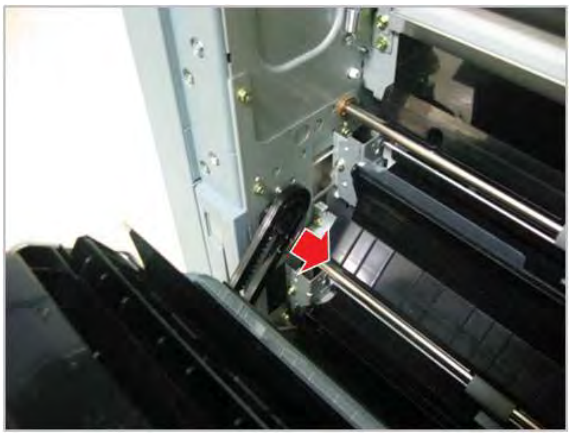
⚠ CAUTION: The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.

Figure 2-88 Release right hinge



4. Release the left dampener (callout 1).

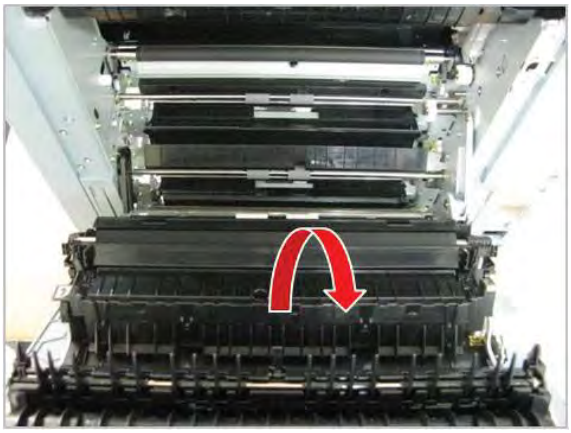
Figure 2-89 Release left dampener



5. Remove the right door.

NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.

Figure 2-90 Remove right door



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the formatter assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC82-00479A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- 110V Fuser Assembly

JC82-00481A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- 220V Fuser Assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

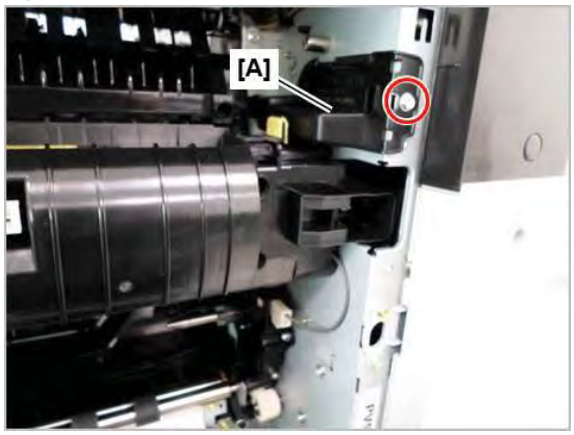
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the fuser unit

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover (A).

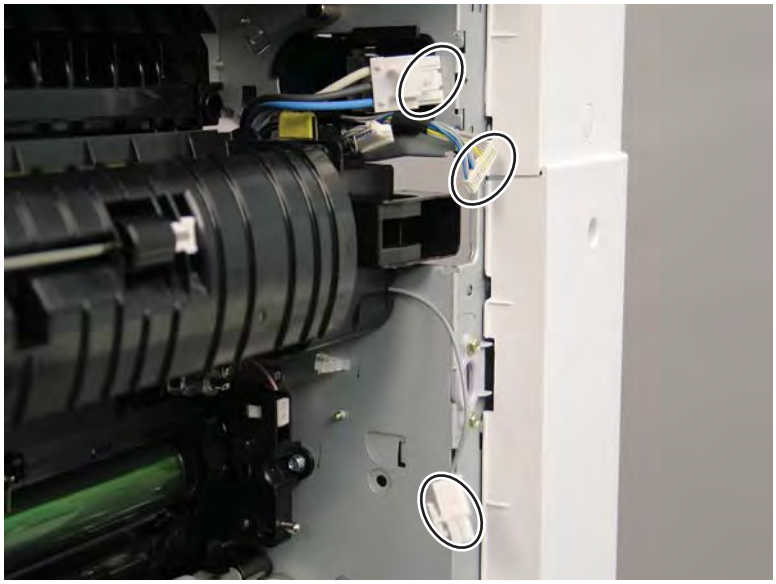
Figure 2-91 Remove one screw



3. Disconnect two bulkhead connectors at the top and one high voltage connector at the bottom.

IMPORTANT: Do not disconnect the inline connector.

Figure 2-92 Disconnect the connectors



4. Remove two screws, and then remove the fuser unit.

Figure 2-93 Remove two fuser unit screws



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Developer unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the TCU
- Step 2: Remove the developer unit
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the formatter assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC96-11669A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Developer Unit - Black

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

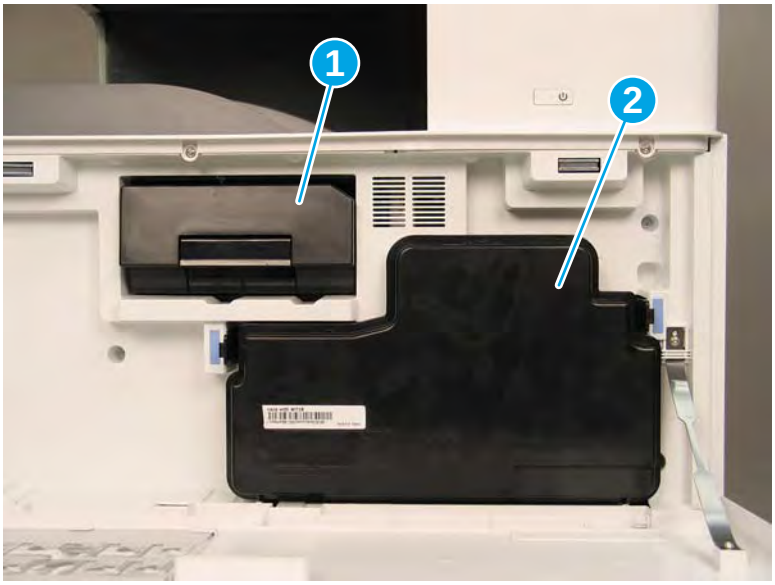
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the TCU

- Open the front door and remove the toner collection unit (callout A).

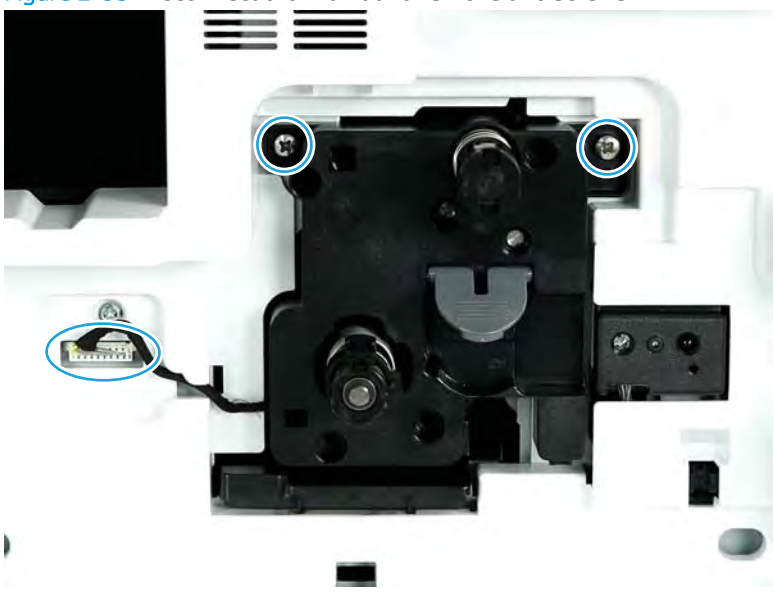
Figure 2-94 Remove the TCU



Step 2: Remove the developer unit

1. Disconnect the drum unit connector. Remove two screws.

Figure 2-95 Disconnect drum unit and remove two screws



2. Remove the drum unit by pulling the gray tab.

Figure 2-96 Remove drum unit



3. Disconnect the connector.

Figure 2-97 Disconnect connector



4. Remove six screws securing the rear cover.

Figure 2-98 Remove rear cover screws



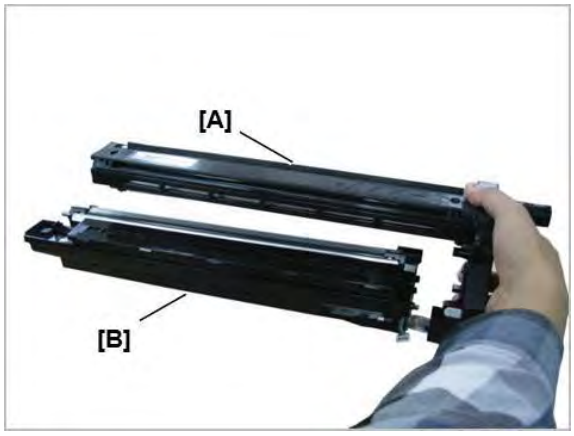
5. Remove the rear cover.

Figure 2-99 Remove rear cover



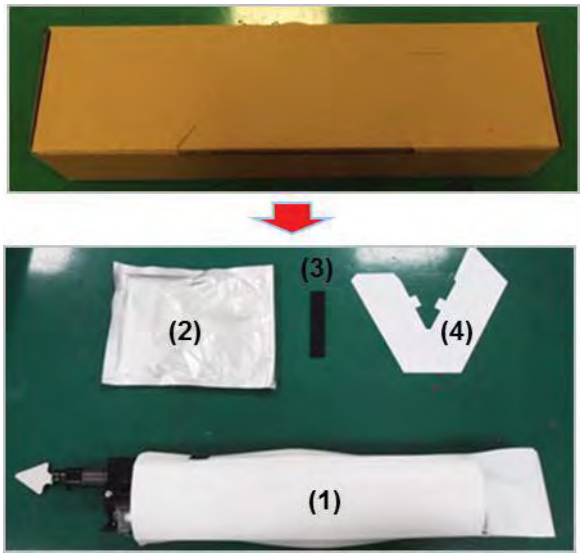
6. Separate the developer unit (B) from the drum unit (A). Remove the cable from the guide

Figure 2-100 Separate developer and drum units



7. Unpack the developer unit box and check the components (four items).

Figure 2-101 Unpack developer unit

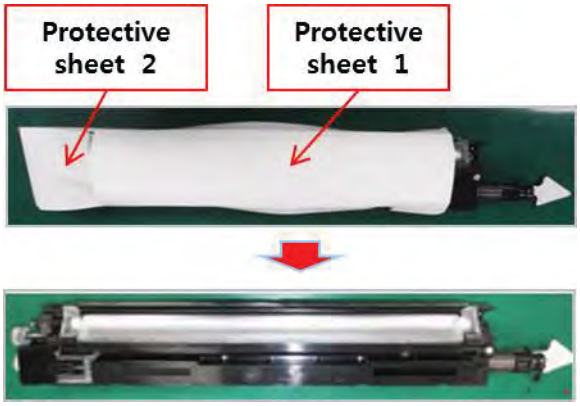


8. Remove two protective sheets.

NOTE:

- When removing the first protective sheet, make sure the magnetic roller is not contaminated.
- When removing the second protective sheet, make sure to avoid grease contamination.

Figure 2-102 Remove protective sheets



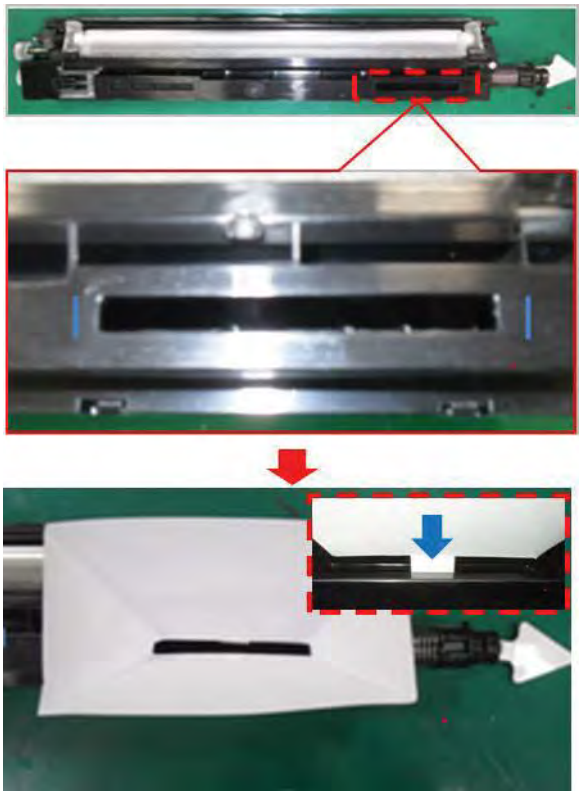
9. Fold the sheet into a funnel shape as shown in the following graphic.

Figure 2-103 Fold protective sheet



10. Insert the paper funnel into the developer unit hole.

Figure 2-104 Insert paper funnel into developer unit



11. Pour the developer powder into the funnel.

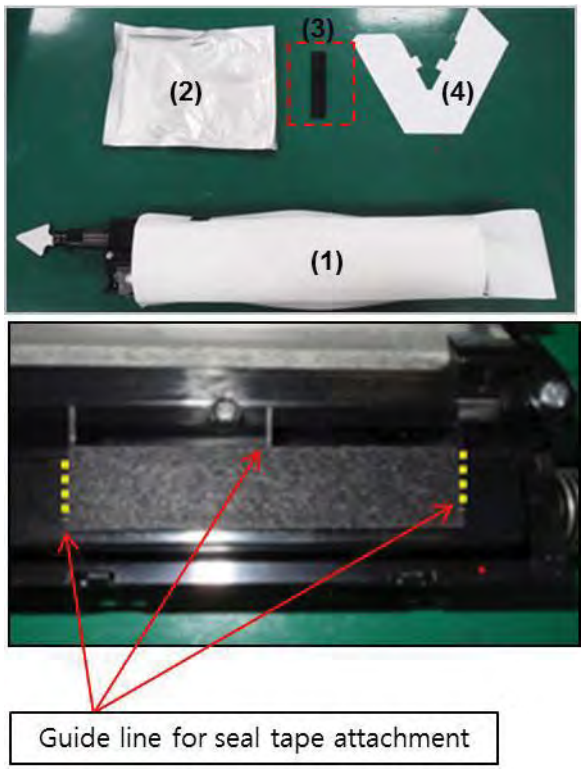
NOTE: When filling the developer, intermittently lean the developer unit to avoid overflow.

Figure 2-105 Fill developer unit with developer powder



12. After filling the developer, attach the seal tape to the developer unit hole.

Figure 2-106 Attach seal tape



13. Remove the arrow label horizontally.

CAUTION: Do not remove the arrow label in a downward direction. Do not lean or tip the unit, as the developer will leak.

Figure 2-107 Remove arrow label



14. Install the developer unit and drum unit in the reverse order of removal.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

After the replacement of the Developer unit, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:
From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.
Select the Service menu.
Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.
Select the Service Tools menu.
On the information tab select the Supply Status menu.
Select Field Replacement Unit.

Select Developer unit.
Select Reset. to clear the counter
After performing the reset, you must run the toner concentration initialization by selecting TC Init in the same menu screen.
Exit service mode by touching the home button.

Drum unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the TCU
- Step 2: Remove the drum unit
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the drum unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

X3A65-67903

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HP Black Managed LJ Imaging Drum

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

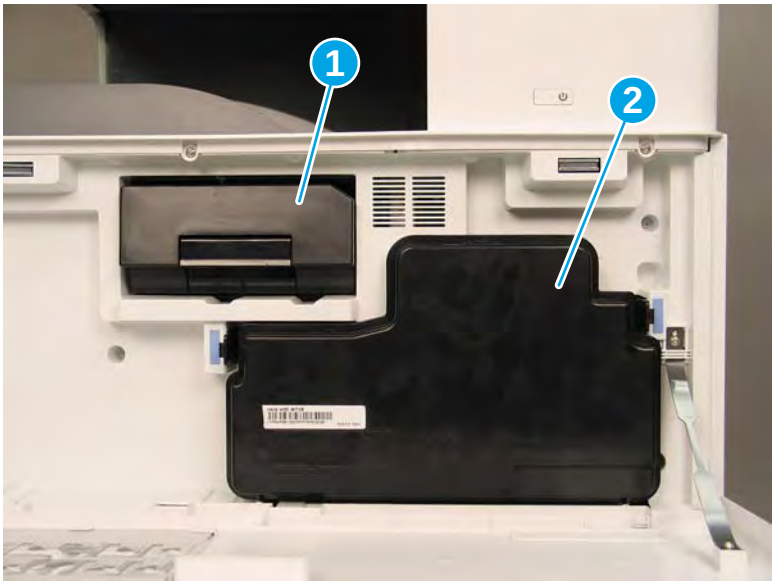
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the TCU

- Open the front door and remove the toner collection unit (callout A).

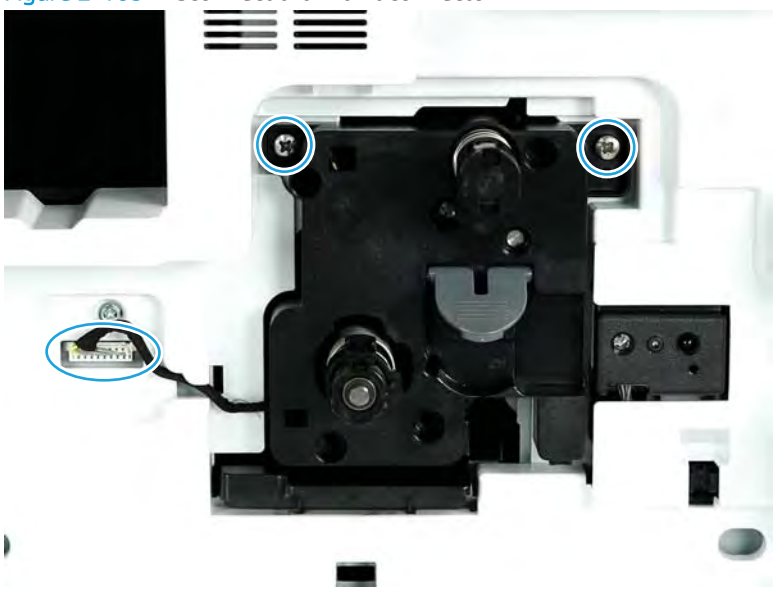
Figure 2-108 Remove the TCU



Step 2: Remove the drum unit

1. Disconnect the drum unit connector. Remove two screws.

Figure 2-109 Disconnect drum unit connector



2. Remove the drum unit.

Figure 2-110 Remove drum unit



3. Disconnect the connector.

Figure 2-111 Disconnect connector



4. Remove six screws securing the rear cover.

Figure 2-112 Remove rear cover screws



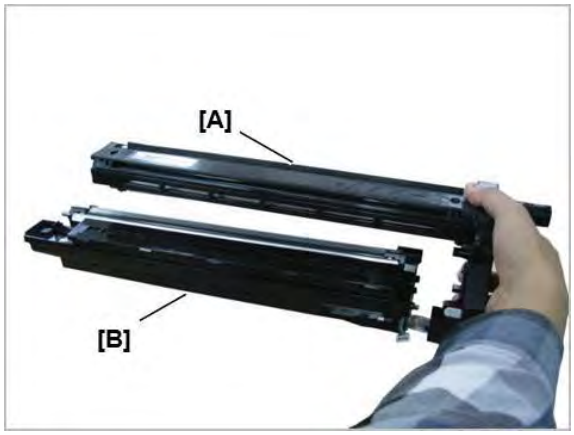
5. Remove the rear cover.

Figure 2-113 Remove rear cover



6. Separate the developer unit (B) from the drum unit (A). Remove the cable from its guide.

Figure 2-114 Separate developer and drum units



7. Replace with the new drum unit. Installation is the same steps as removal in reverse order.

NOTE: The replacement drum unit ships with a dummy rear cover for support. Do not use the dummy rear cover in the product. It is missing the gear necessary to drive the developing unit.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Accelerator board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the accelerator board
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the accelerator board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

X3A62-60001

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Accelerator PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

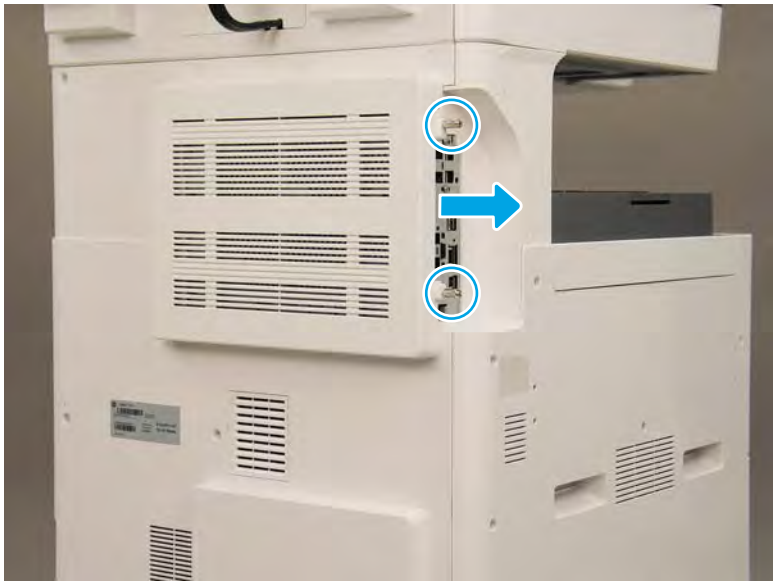
Post service test

Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-115 Remove the formatter cover



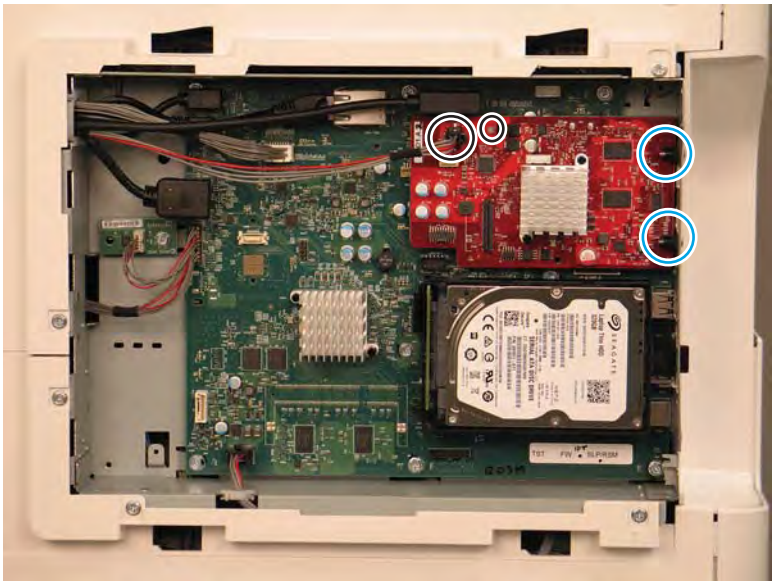
Step 2: Remove the accelerator board

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

- Loosen two screws, retained in plastic clips, on the outside of the formatter cage. Disconnect one connector, release the plastic locator pin, and then gently lift the accelerator board away from the formatter by the edges.

NOTE: A connector on the back of the accelerator board holds the board on the formatter.

IMPORTANT: Do not lift the accelerator board by the heat sink.



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

NFC Kit Installation

- Introduction
- Step 1: Unpack the NFC kit
- Step 2: Install the NFC kit
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to install the Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) accessory.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

J8030-61001

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Jetdirect Wireless Print Server with NFC Kit

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove this part.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

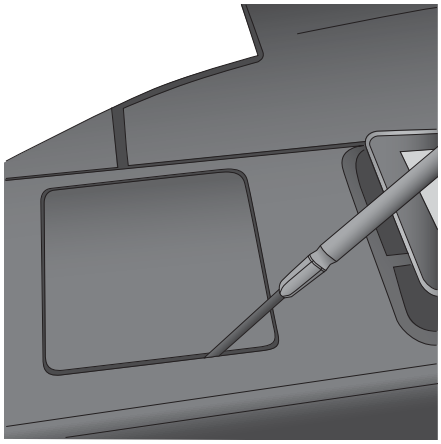
Make sure that the printer initializes to a **Ready** state.

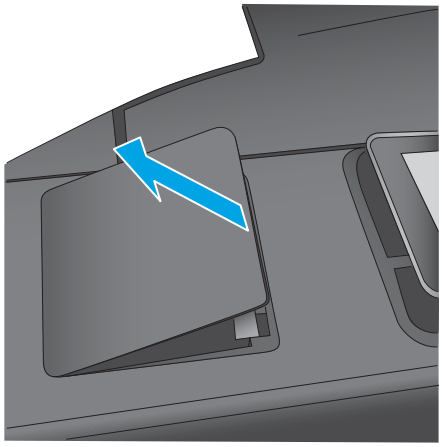
Connect a third party solution to the FIH, and then verify it correctly functions.

Step 1: Unpack the NFC kit

Step 2: Install the NFC kit

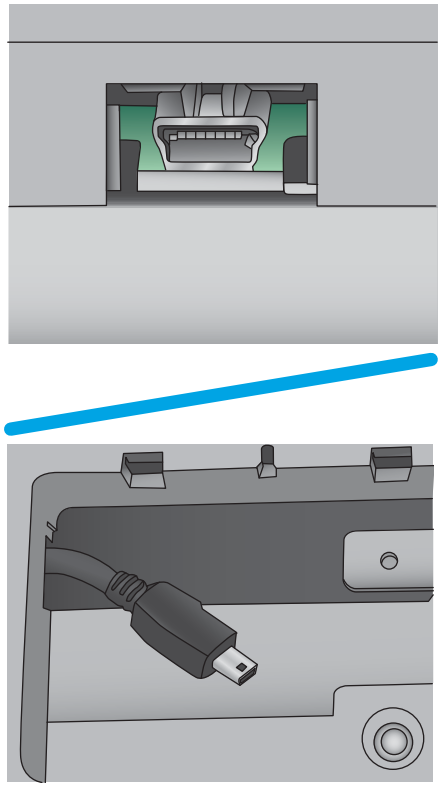
1. Turn off the power to the product.
2. Remove the HIP cover.



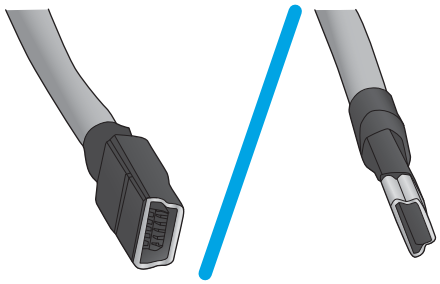


3. Identify the USB connector in the HIP and attach the appropriate USB cable:

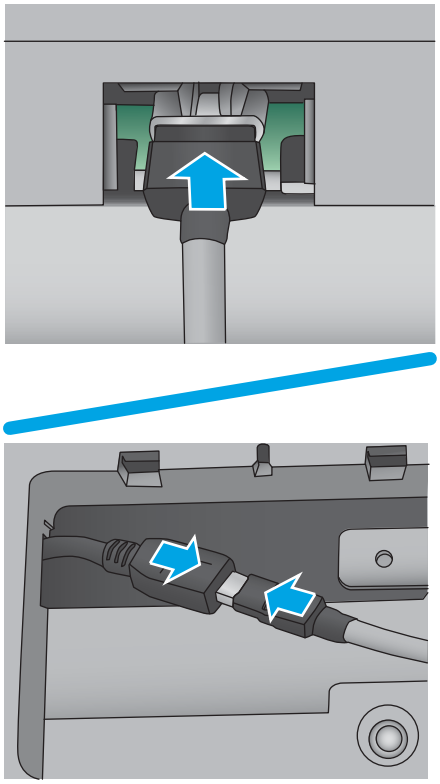
   a. Locate the USB connector that is along one of the short edges. A USB Mini B receptacle (callout 1.1) is the most common. However, on some models, a USB Mini B plug (callout 1.2) is used.



b. Select the appropriate cable from the two that are provided.



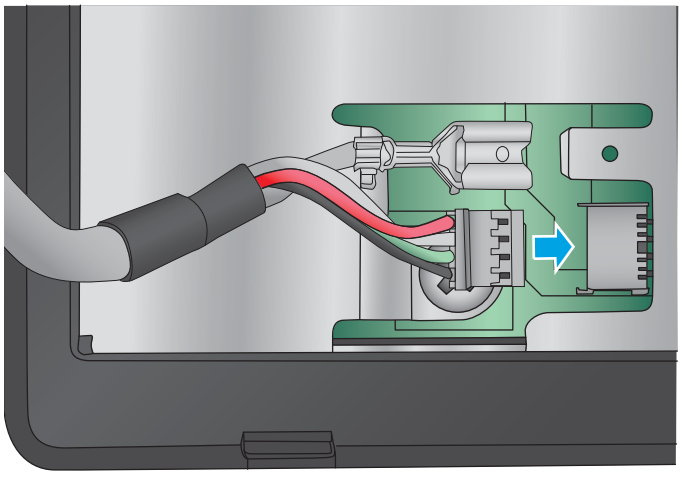
c. Plug the USB cable into the socket in the HIP. Note that the USB logo on the connector may face down on some models of printers/MFPs.



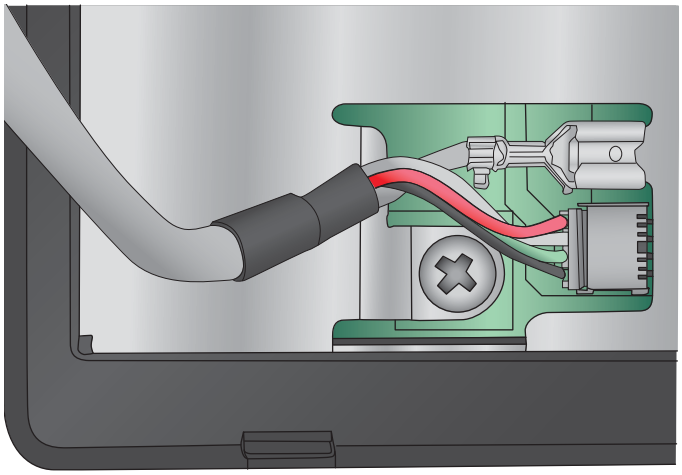
4. Attach the power and grounding ends of the USB cable:

NOTE: Before connecting the NFC accessory to the USB connector, verify that the product power is turned off.

a. Attach the white power connector of the cable into the corresponding receptacle on the underside of the NFC accessory with the contacts facing down.

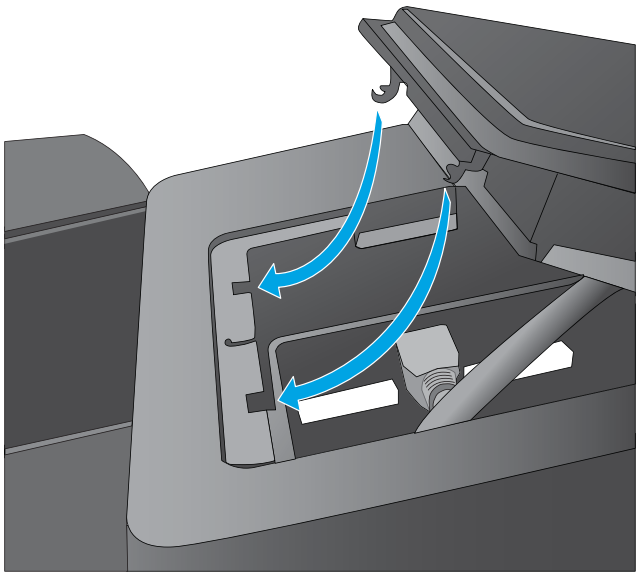


b. Attach the metal ground connector of the cable to the grounding tab on the underside of the

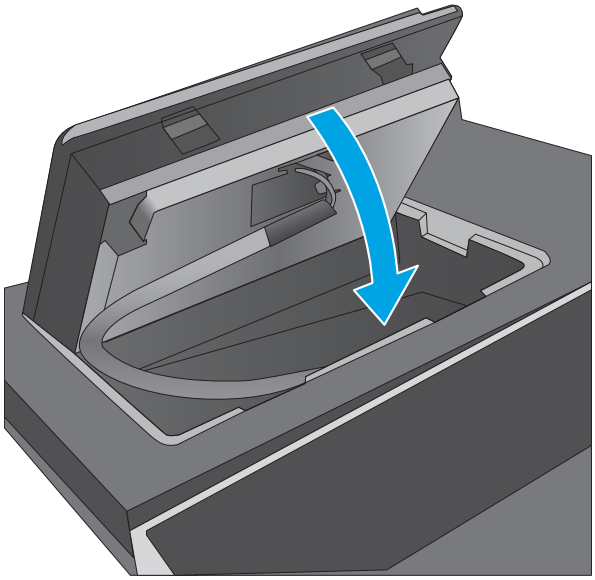


5. Insert the NFC accessory into the HIP recess.

   a. Insert the NFC accessory into the HIP recess using the hook-shaped clips first.



b. Gently push the NFC accessory onto the rounded clips so that it is held securely in place within the recess.





6. Turn ON the power to the product. The NFC accessory will light up to confirm the installation is correct. A wireless network icon will also appear on the control panel.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install accessory: HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution

- Introduction
- Step 1: Unpack the Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) accessory
- Step 2: Install the FIH accessory
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to install the Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) accessory.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

B5L31-90902

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Foreign Interface Harness (FIH)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove this part.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Make sure that the printer initializes to a **Ready** state.

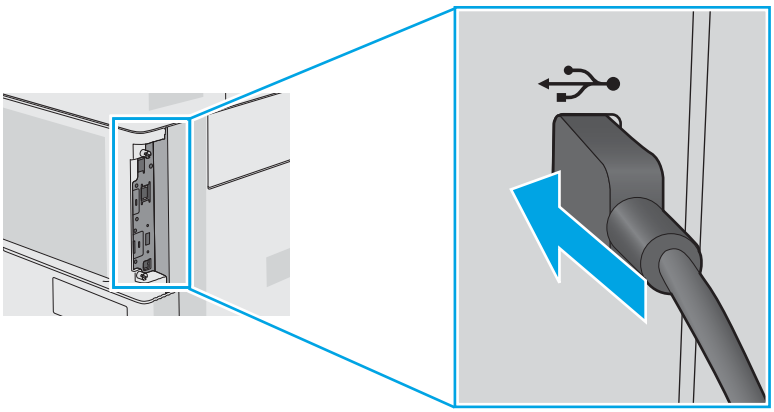
Connect a third party solution to the FIH, and then verify it correctly functions.

Step 1: Unpack the Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) accessory

Step 2: Install the FIH accessory

- Locate the USB connector on the printer formatter. Connect the FIH to this connector

Figure 2-116 Connect the FIH



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Hard-disk drive (320 GB formatter HDD)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (320 GB formatter HDD)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This procedure is for removing the HDD installed on the formatter.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

B5L29-67903	5851-6712
• 500 GB FIPS HDD	• Formatter HDD - 320 GB SED

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

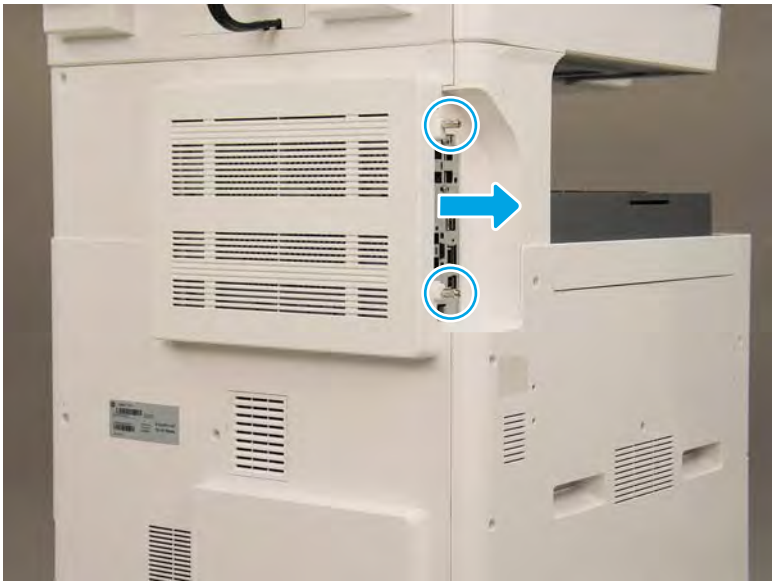
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-117 Remove the formatter cover

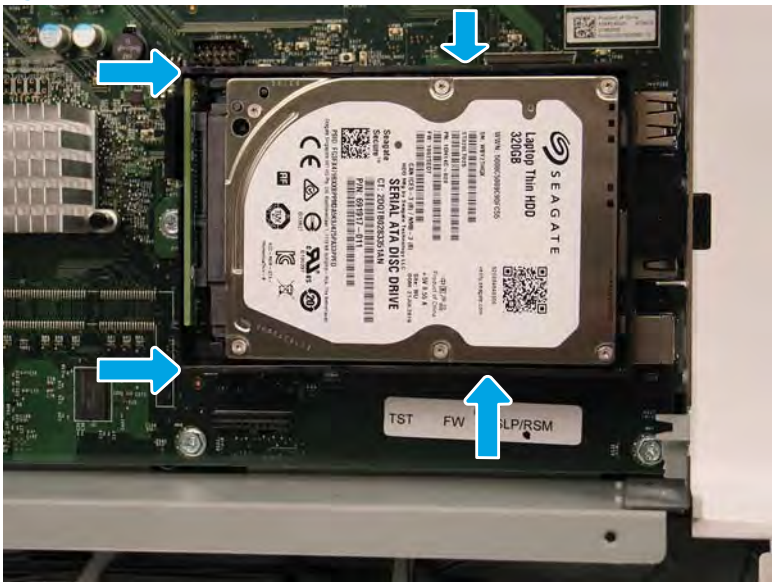


Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (320 GB formatter HDD)

- Release one retainer, and then remove the HDD.

IMPORTANT: The HDD and the IOD cannot be replaced at the same time.

Figure 2-118 Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Formatter and formatter cage

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear covers
- Step 2: Remove the accelerator board
- Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive
- Step 4: Remove the Island of data (IOD)
- Step 5: Remove the formater PCA
- Step 6: Remove the formatter cage
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the formatter assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC63-05674A	X3A92-60001
• Formatter Cage	• Formatter PCA

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

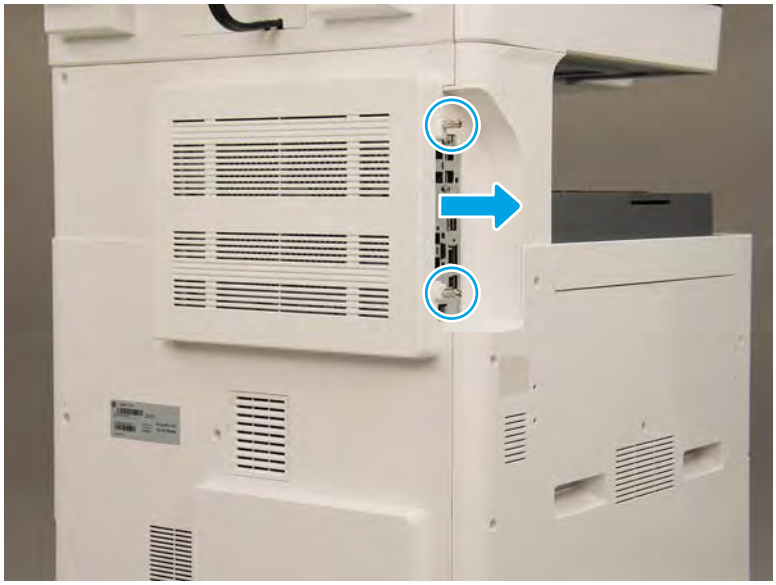
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear covers

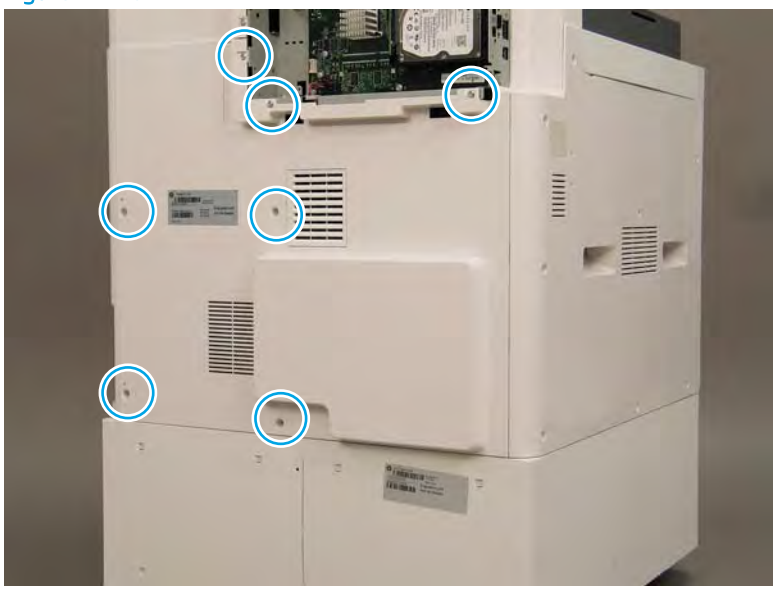
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-119 Remove the formatter cover



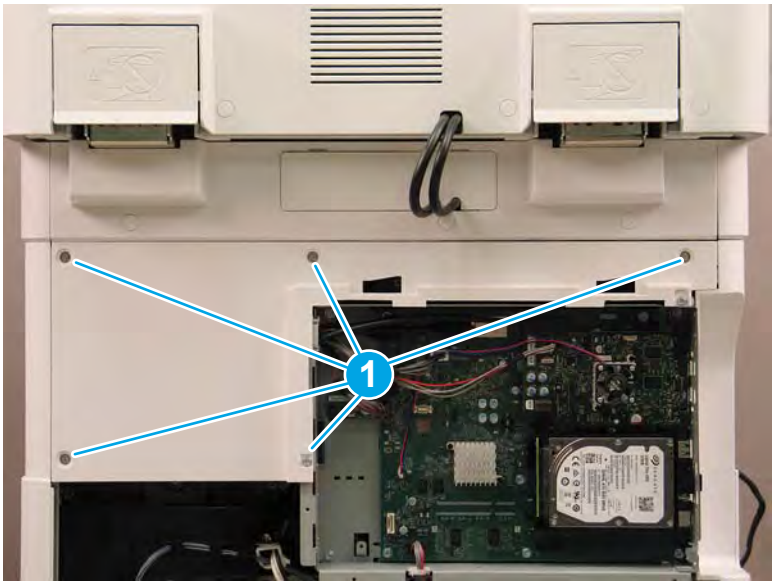
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

Figure 2-120 Remove the rear-bottom cover



3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

Figure 2-121 Remove the rear-top cover

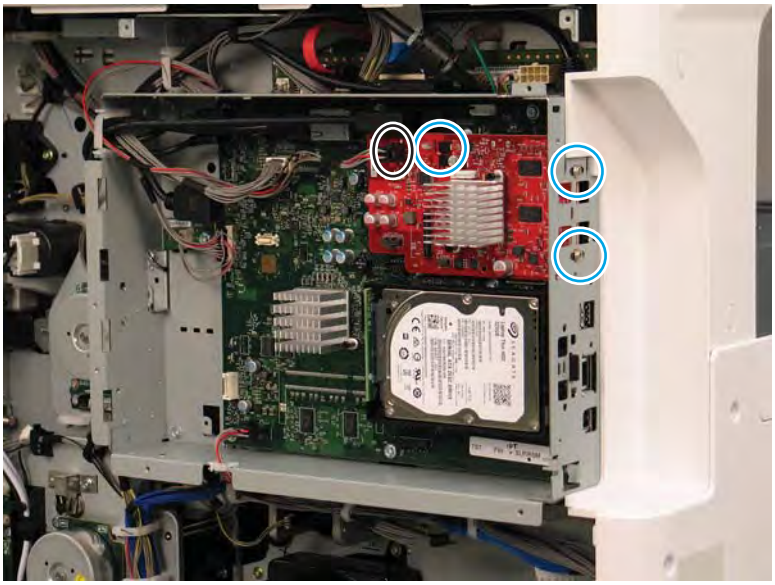


Step 2: Remove the accelerator board

1. Loosen two screws, retained in plastic clips, on the outside of the formatter cage.
2. Disconnect one connector, release the plastic locator pin, and then gently pry the accelerator board by the edges.

IMPORTANT: Do not lift the accelerator board by the heat sink.

Figure 2-122 Remove formatter screws

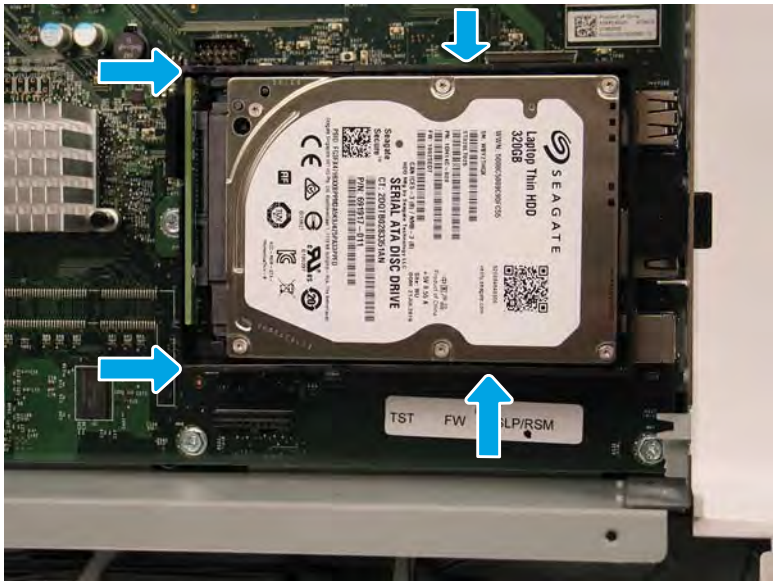


Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive

- Release one retainer, and then remove the HDD.

IMPORTANT: The HDD and the IOD cannot be replaced at the same time.

Figure 2-123 Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

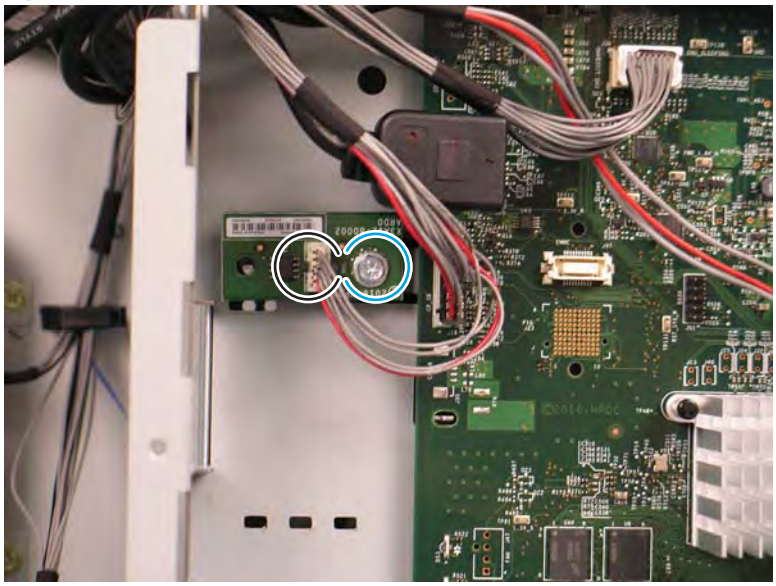


Step 4: Remove the Island of data (IOD)

- Disconnect one connector and remove one screw, and then remove the IOD.

IMPORTANT: The HDD and the IOD cannot be replaced at the same time.

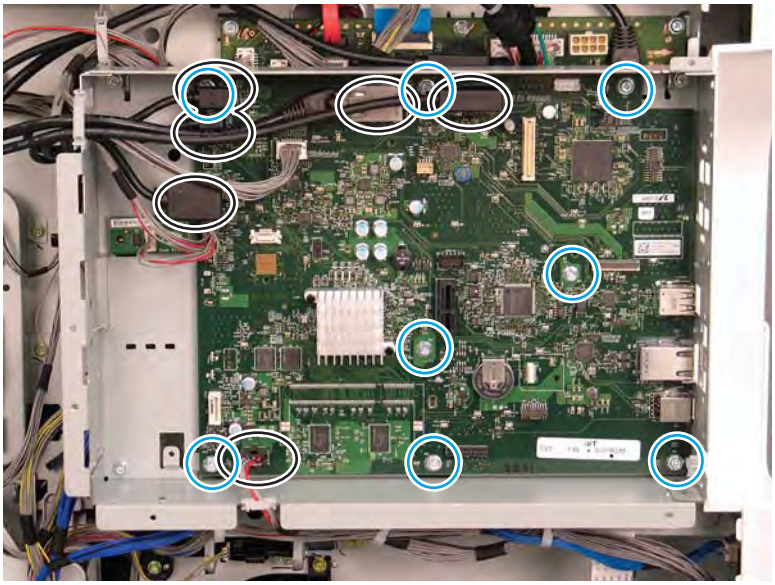
Figure 2-124 Remove the IOD



Step 5: Remove the formater PCA

- Disconnect seven connectors and eight screws, and then remove formatter PCA.

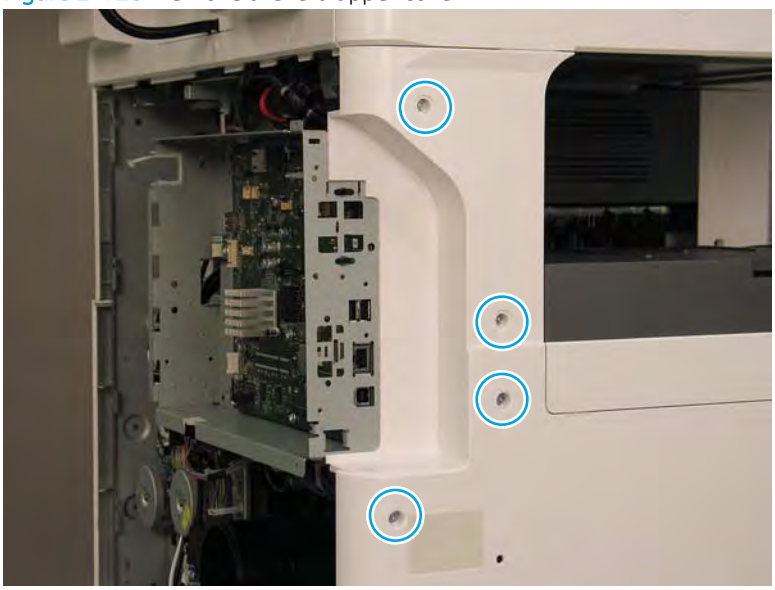
Figure 2-125 Remove the formatter connectors and screws



Step 6: Remove the formatter cage

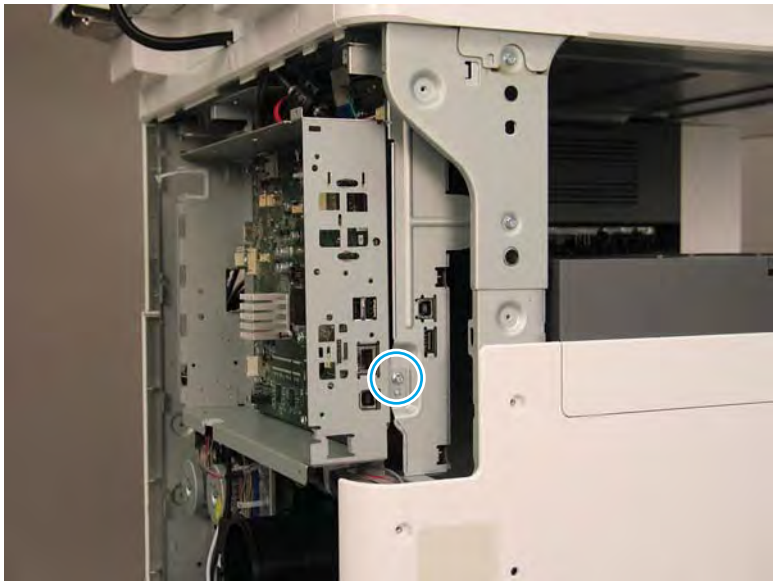
1. Disconnect ten connectors and two cable restraints.
2. Remove four screws and screw-caps, and then remove the left-upper cover.

Figure 2-126 Remove the left-upper cover



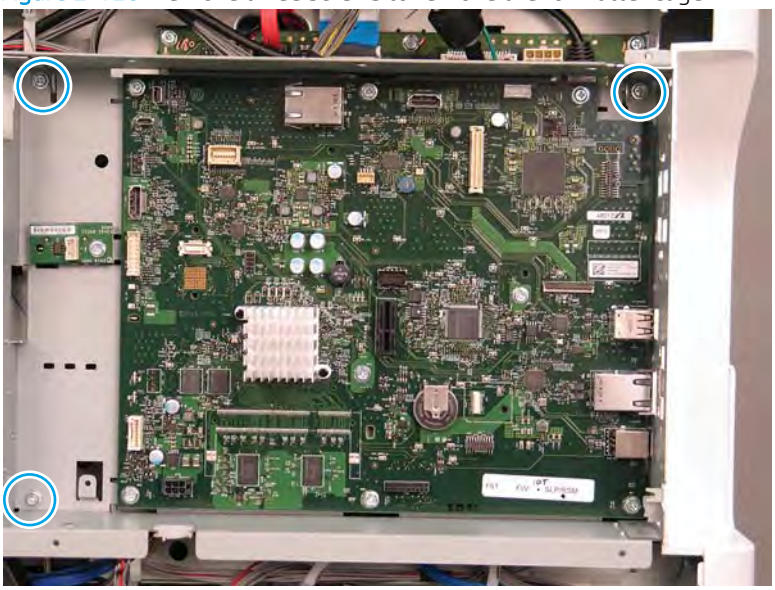
3. Remove one screw from the side of the formatter cage (beneath the left-upper cover location).

Figure 2-127 Remove the formatter cage side screw



4. Remove three screws from the formatter cage face, and then release one tab to remove the formatter cage.

Figure 2-128 Remove three screws to remove the formatter cage



Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HDD 320GB Main PCA HDD

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HDD 320GB Main PCA HDD
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the hard disk drive (HDD) assembly installed beneath the rear-ext cover and connected to the Main board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

5851-6712

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HDD 320GB - Main PCA HDD

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the HDD 320GB Main PCA HDD

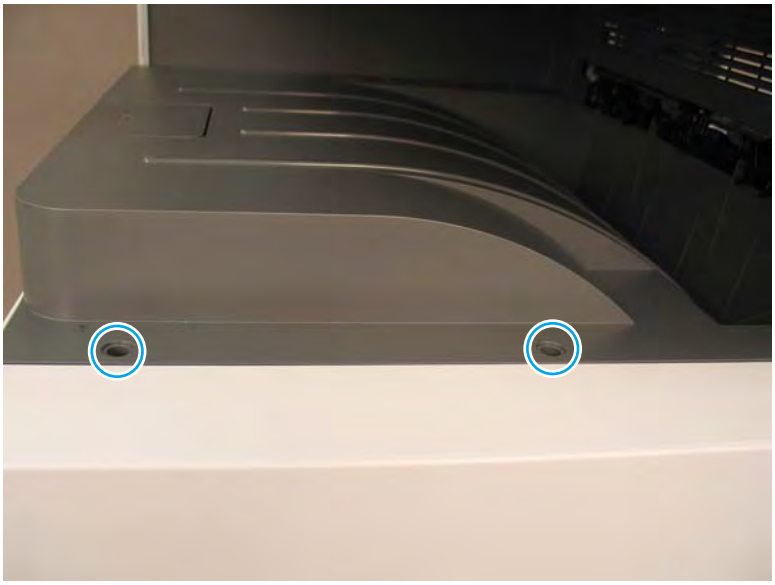
1. Remove the inner finisher or paper pass, if installed.
2. Remove two screw-caps and two screws from the power-switch cover.

Figure 2-129 Remove the power-switch cover



3. Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then remove the exit tray.

Figure 2-130 Remove screw-caps and screws



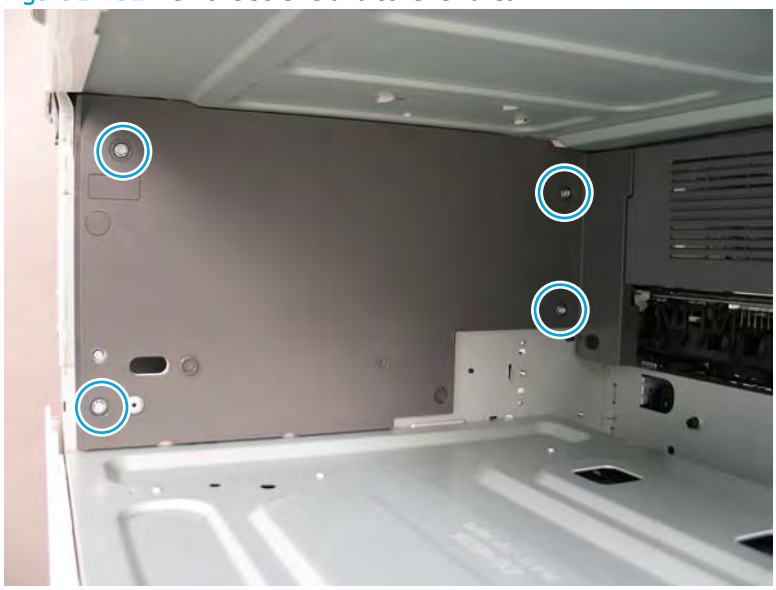
4. Remove one screw and cover exit right.

Figure 2-131 Remove the cover exit right



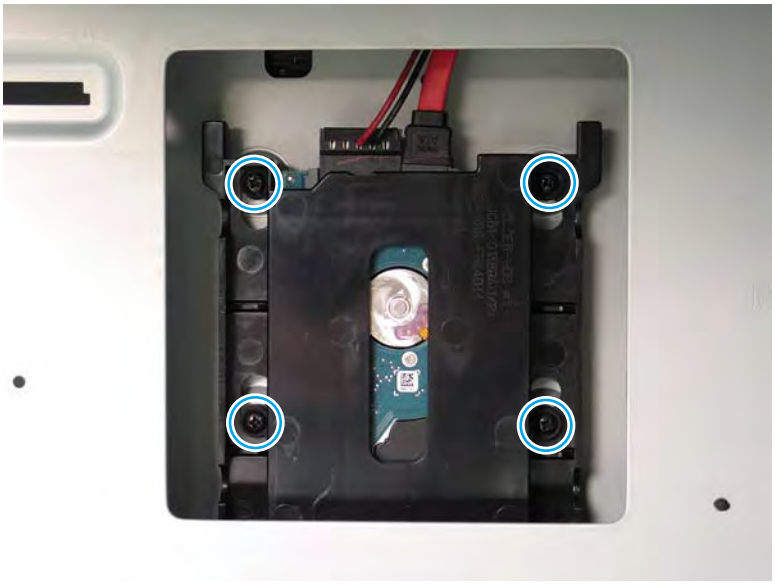
5. Remove four screws and three screw covers. Remove the cover exit rear by pulling from the right and rotating out.

Figure 2-132 Remove screws and cover exit rear



6. Remove four screws. Disconnect the cable and remove the main disk drive assembly.

Figure 2-133 Remove screws, disconnect cable and remove main disk drive assembly



7. Remove four screws, and then remove main disk drive from its bracket.
8. Install the new main disk drive assembly.

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling, make sure the plastic locator tabs on the rear exit cover are seated correctly.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Control panel

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel
- Step 2: Remove the control-panel
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the control panel assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

B5L47-60101

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Control panel assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.

   Figure 2-134 Remove the document feeder bezel

2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
3. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

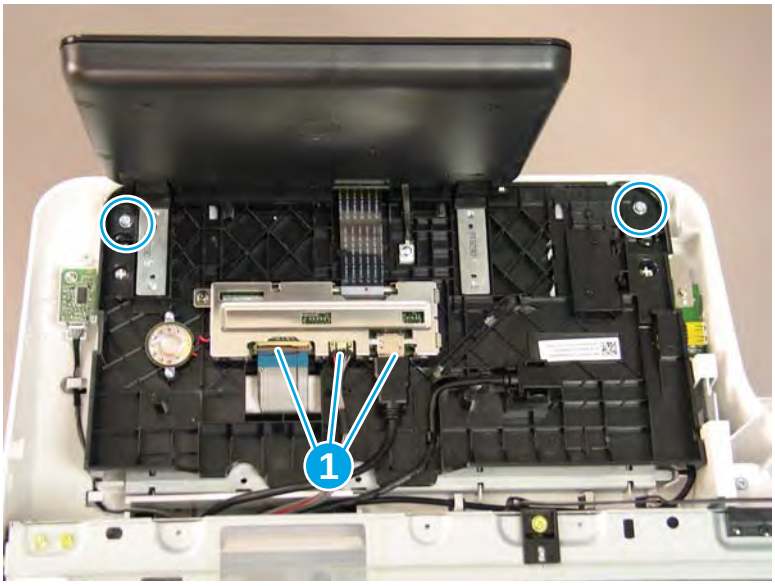
⚠ CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

Step 2: Remove the control-panel

1. Place the control panel in the upright position.

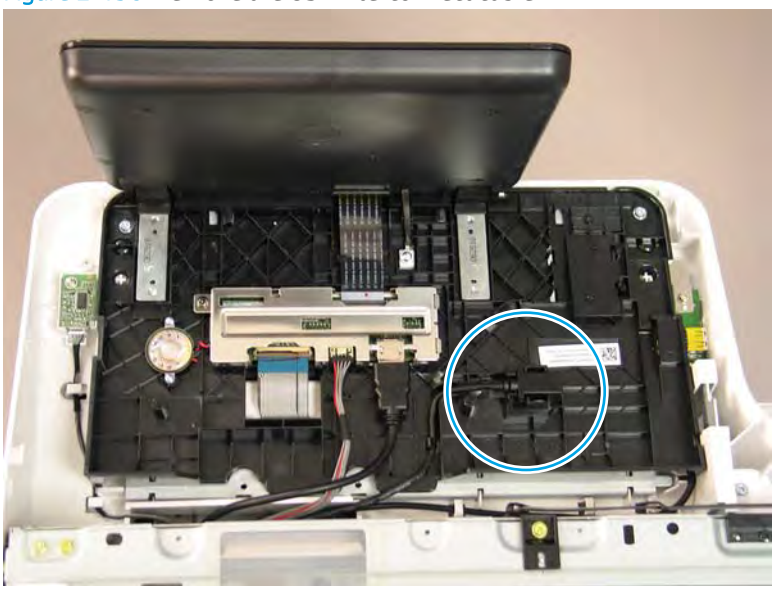
2. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, and one HDMI connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 2-135 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 2-136 Remove the USB interconnect cable



4. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.

Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear or control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Keyboard

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel
- Step 2: Remove the keyboard
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the keyboard assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

B5L47-60102

- US English Keyboard Assy

B5L47-60103

- UK English Keyboard Assy

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.

Figure 2-137 Remove the document feeder bezel



2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
3. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

Step 2: Remove the keyboard

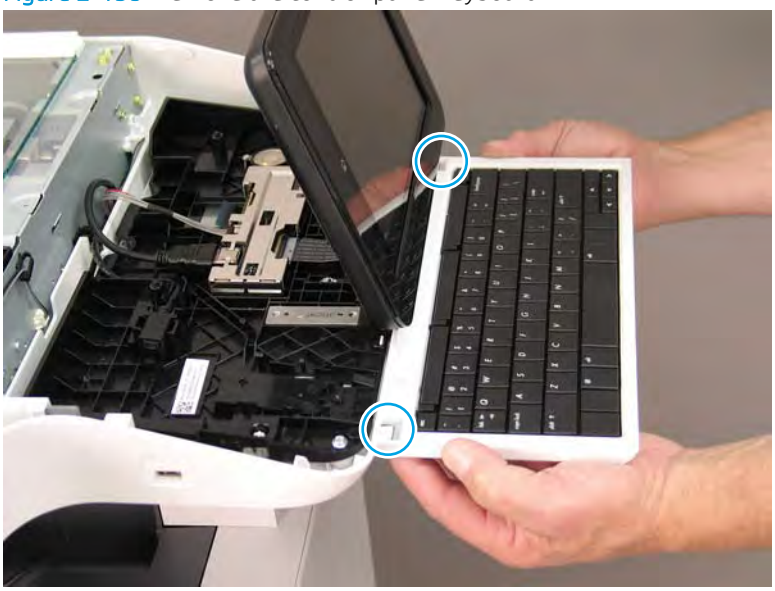
1. Disconnect one FFC.

Figure 2-138 Disconnect one FFC



2. Slide the keyboard out, and then depress two latches to remove the keyboard.

Figure 2-139 Remove the control-panel keyboard



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Upper and lower exit

Figure 2-140 Upper and lower exit

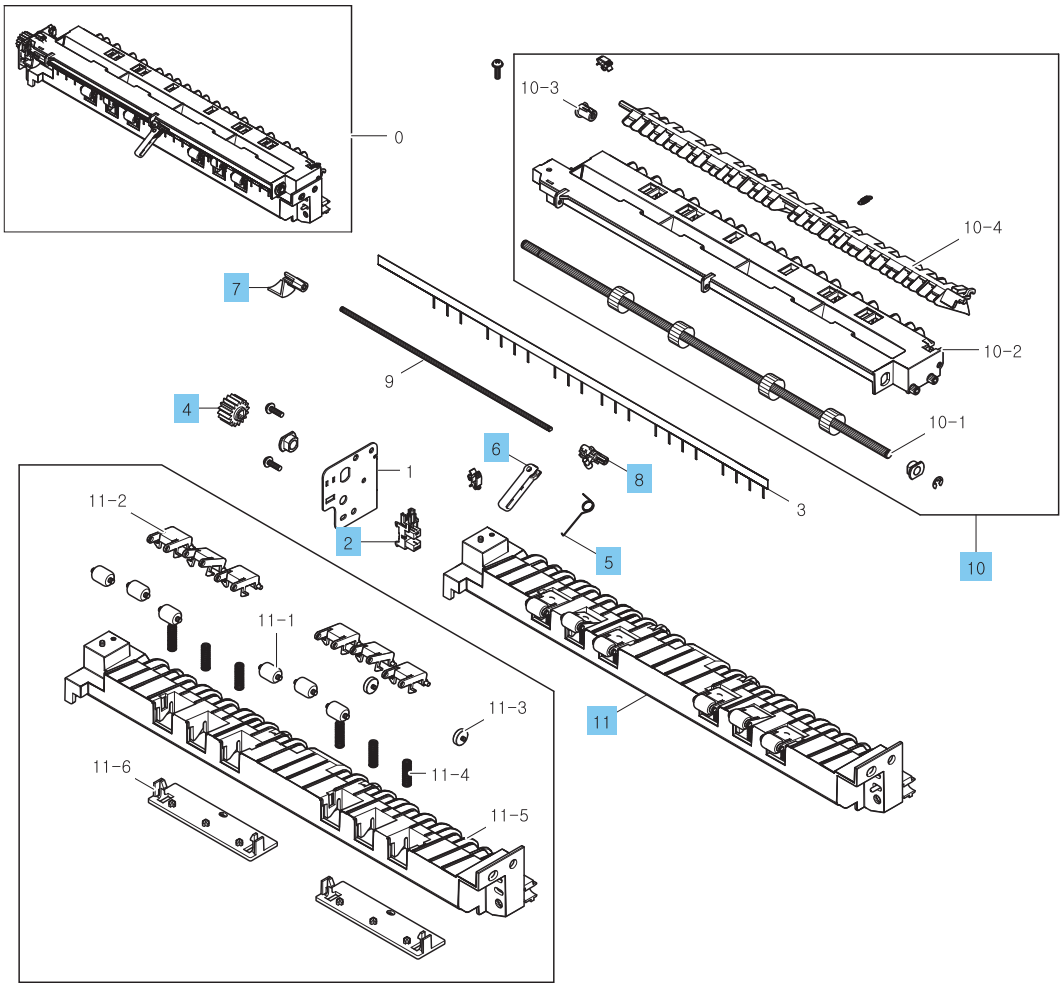


Table 2-2 Upper and lower exit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Photo interrupter (fuser out sensor)	0604-001393 on page 245	1
4	Gear, exit	JC66-02163A	1
5	Spring, TS	JC61-07185A	1
6	Actuator-bin full exit	JC66-04339A	1
7	Lever-actuator F_D full	JC66-02218A	1
8	Lever-act full exit	JC66-02278A	1
10	Exit guide, upper	JC90-01132A	1
11	Exit guide, lower	JC90-01133A	1

Fuser-out sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the fuser out sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the fuser-out sensor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

0604-001393

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Fuser-out sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

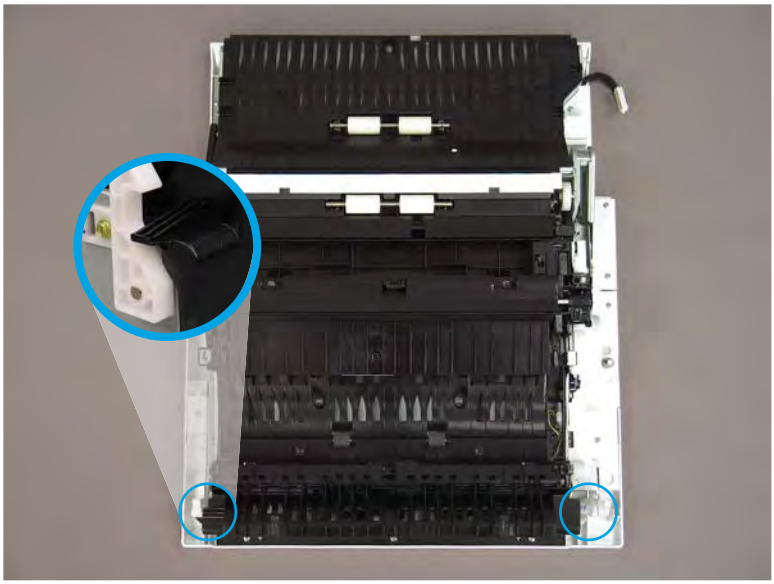
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the fuser out sensor

1. Remove two screws and two plastic guides. Lift up the right-door.

Figure 2-141 Lift right-door



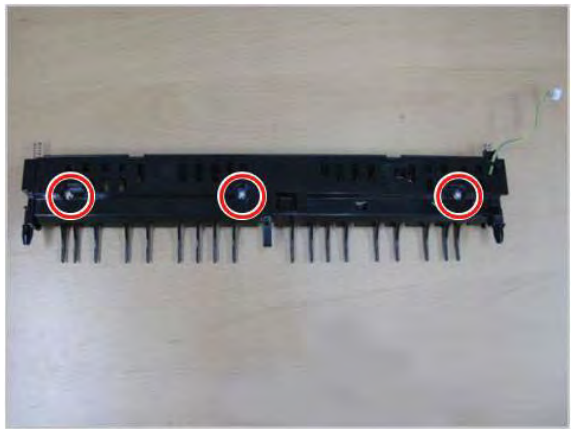
2. Disconnect the connector and remove the cable from the cable guide. Remove the right-door exit. Use caution as the springs are not retained.

Figure 2-142 Remove right-door exit



3. Separate the right-door exit after removing three plastic, self-tapping screws.

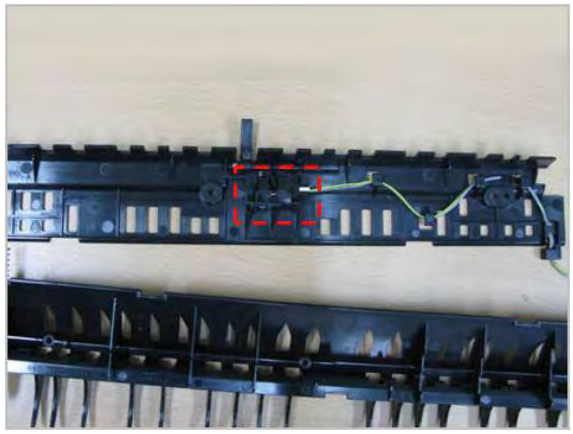
Figure 2-143 Remove screws and separate right-door exit



4. Disconnect the connector and remove the fuser-out sensor.

TIP: When removing the sensor lift the flag, compress the bottom tabs and push from hole, and then rotate and release the top tabs.

Figure 2-144 Disconnect connector and remove fuser-out sensor



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Cassette Tray 2

Figure 2-145 Cassette Tray 2

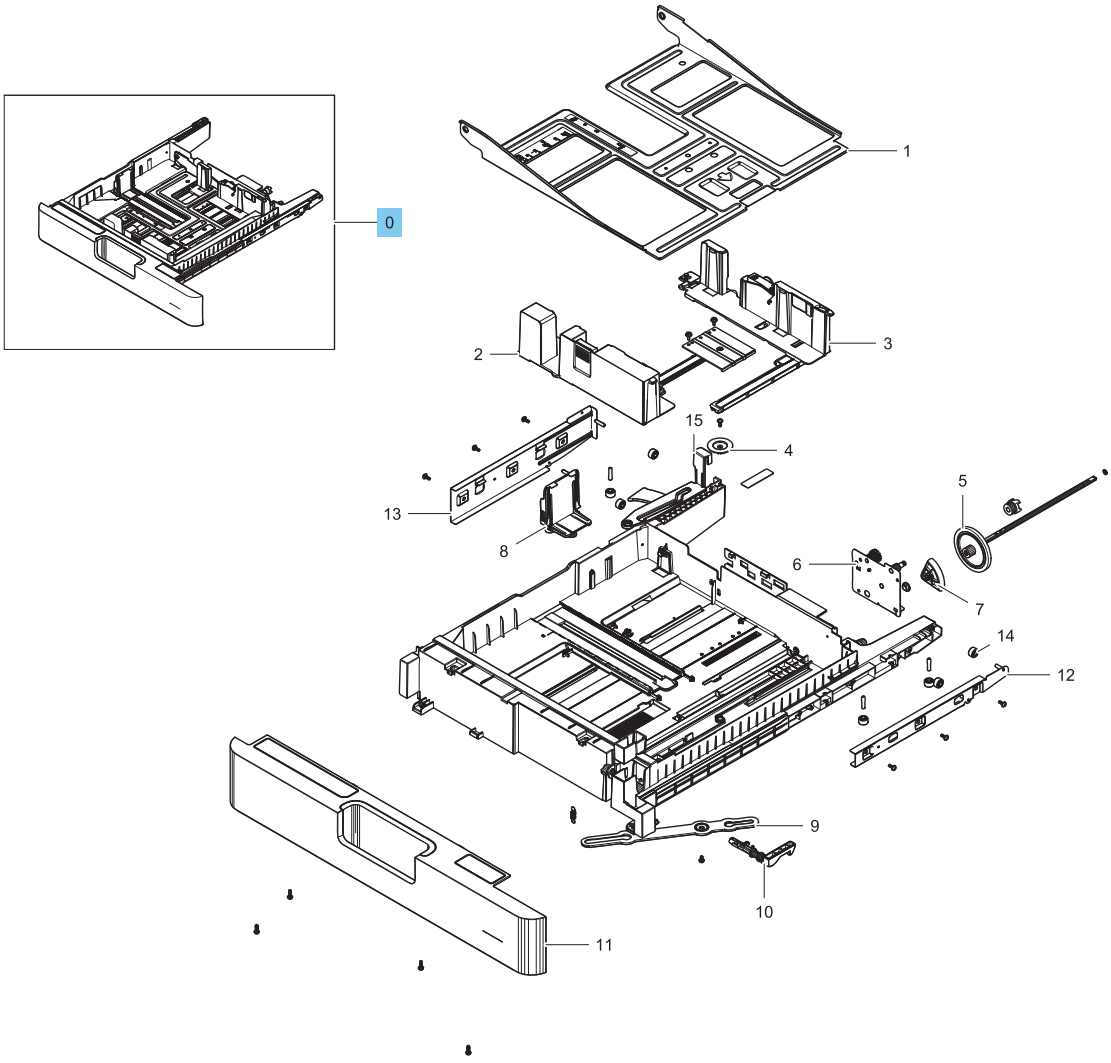


Table 2-3 Cassette Tray 2

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Cassette Tray 2	JC90-01619A	1

Cassette Tray 3

Figure 2-146 Cassette Tray 3

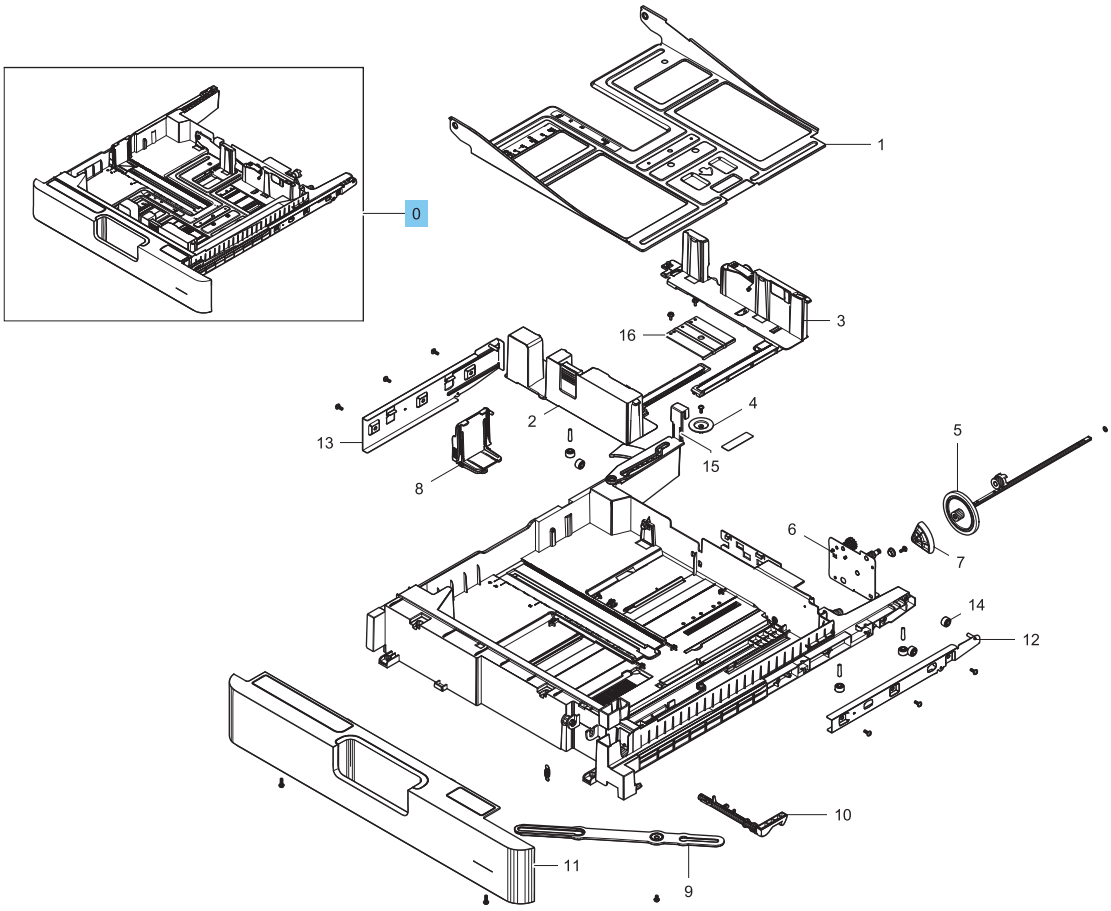


Table 2-4 Cassette Tray 3

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Cassette Tray 3	JC90-01620A	1

Main engine frame

Figure 2-147 Main engine frame

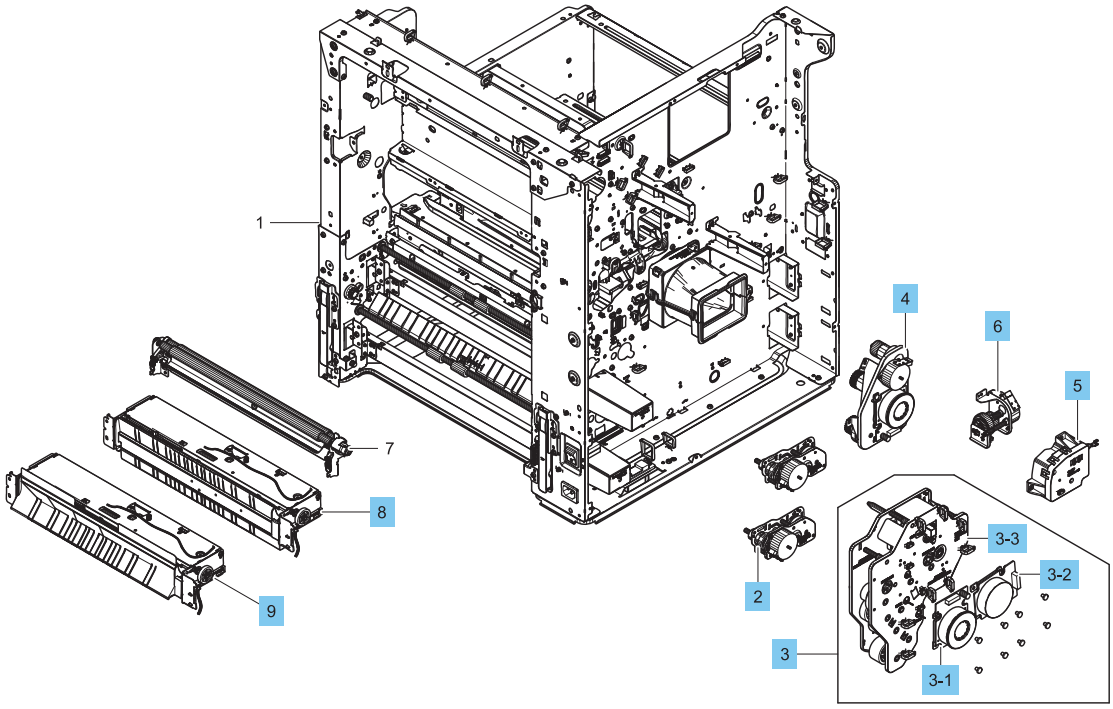


Table 2-5 Main engine frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Drive, pickup	JC93-00442A on page 264	2
3	Drive, main	JC93-00912B on page 267	1
3–1	Motor BLDC	JC31-00123B	1
3–2	Motor, BLDC	JC31-00123A	1
3–3	Drive, main sub	JC93-00911B	1
4	Drive, M fuser exit	JC93-00449A on page 271	1
5	Drive, M toner supply	JC93-00450B on page 255	1
6	Drive, duct	JC93-00451A on page 259	1
8	Frame, main pickup 2nd	JC93-01441A	1
9	Frame, main pickup 1st	JC93-00511A	1

Toner supply drive unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear covers
- Step 2: Remove the toner supply drive unit
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the toner supply drive unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-00450B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Toner supply drive unit assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

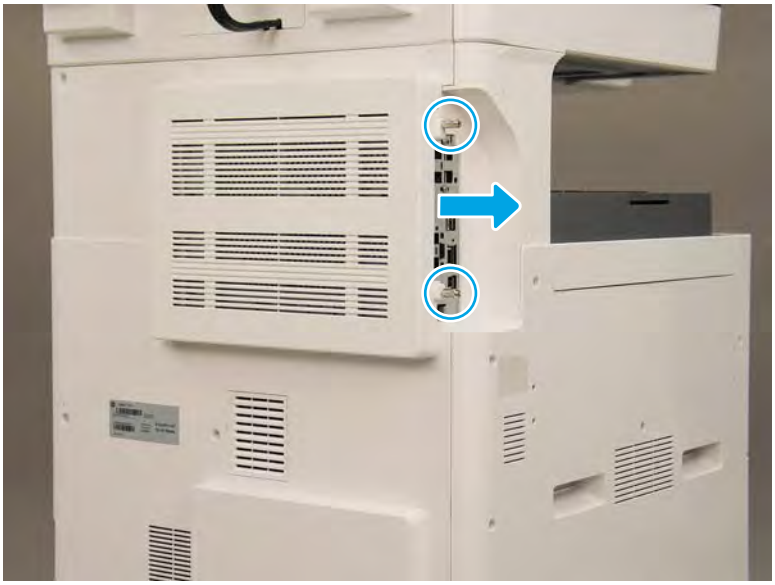
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear covers

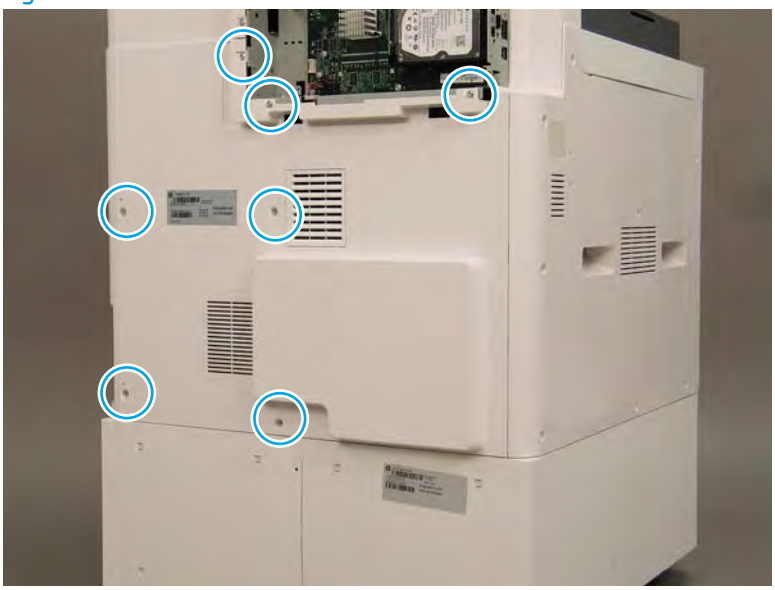
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-148 Remove the formatter cover



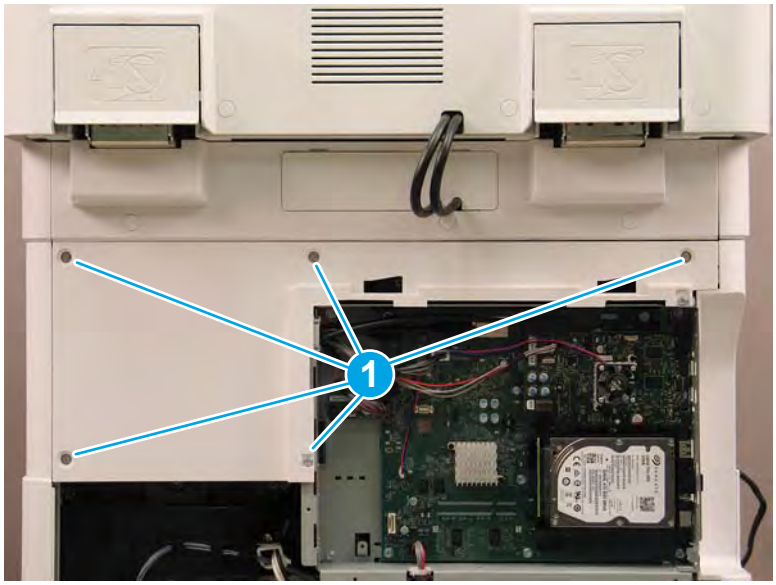
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

Figure 2-149 Remove the rear-bottom cover



3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

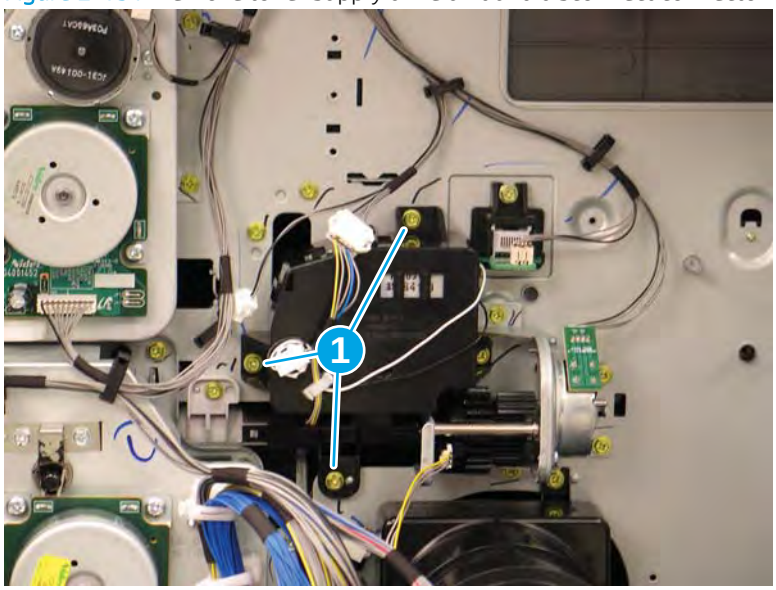
Figure 2-150 Remove the rear-top cover



Step 2: Remove the toner supply drive unit

1. Loosen the PCA cage by removing the two bottom screws. This enables access to the supply drive.
2. Release the cable restraint.
3. Disconnect the connector and remove three screws (callout 1). Remove the toner supply drive unit. Disconnect the second connector.

Figure 2-151 Remove toner supply drive unit and disconnect connector



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner duct drive unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear covers
- Step 2: Remove the toner duct drive unit
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the toner duct drive unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-00451A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Toner duct drive unit assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

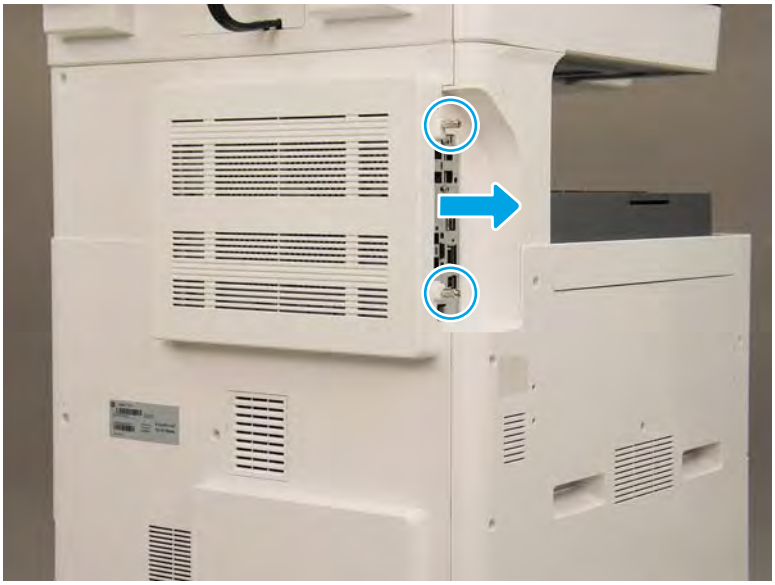
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear covers

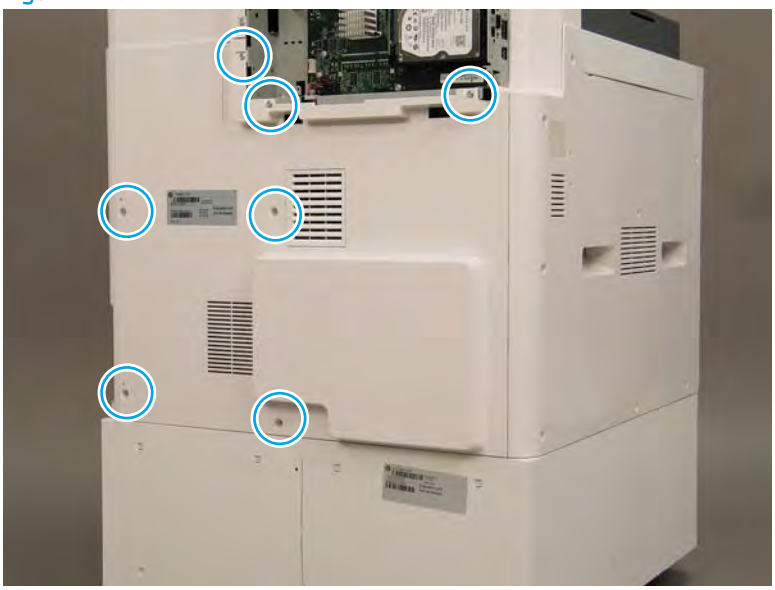
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-152 Remove the formatter cover



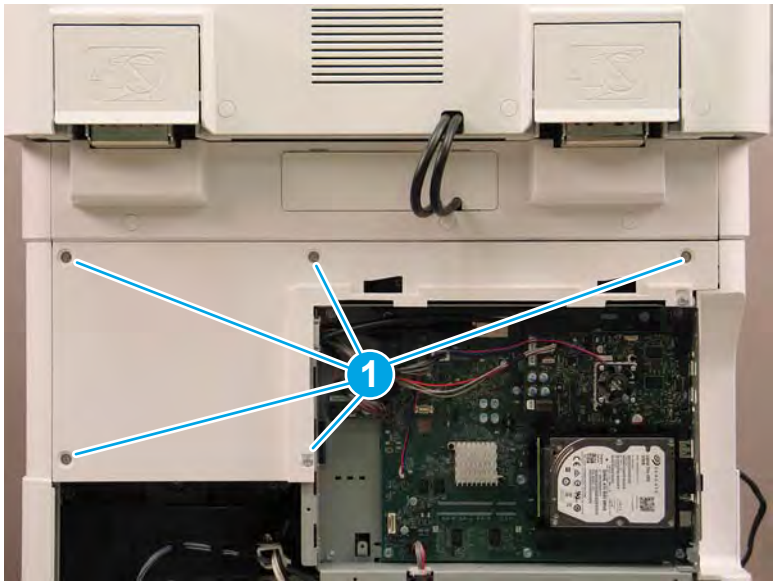
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

Figure 2-153 Remove the rear-bottom cover



3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

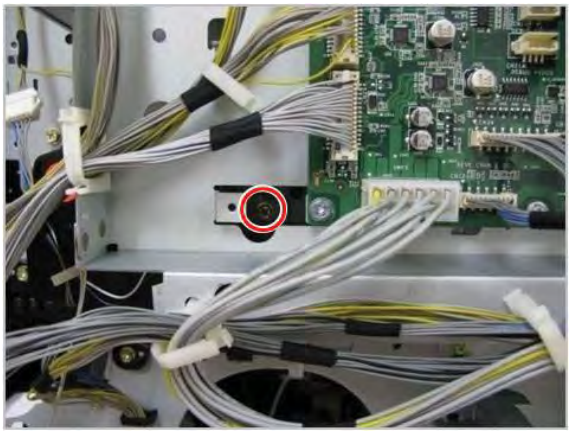
Figure 2-154 Remove the rear-top cover



Step 2: Remove the toner duct drive unit

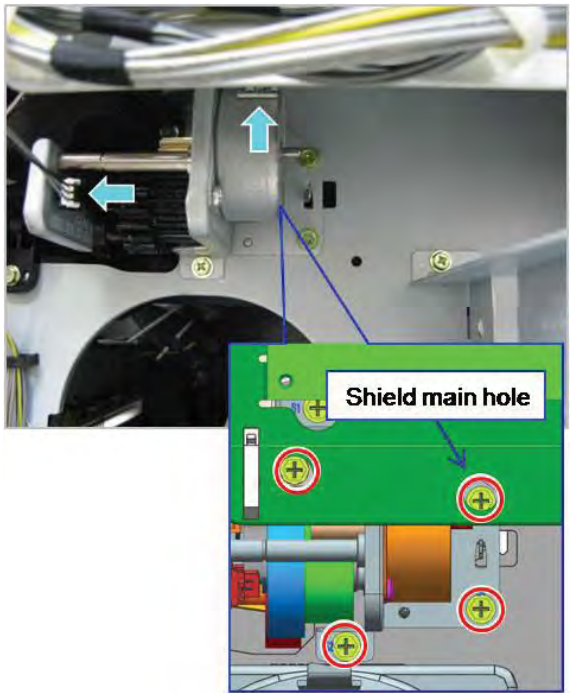
1. Loosen the PCA cage. Remove two screws on the lower edge of the cage to allow access to the duct drive.
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-155 Remove screw



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-156 Disconnect connector



4. Remove four screws. Loosen the PCA by removing nine screws, enabling access to the screw located behind the board. Remove the toner duct drive unit and disconnect the second connector.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup drive unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear covers
- Step 2: Remove the pickup drive unit
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the pickup drive unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-00442A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Pickup drive unit assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

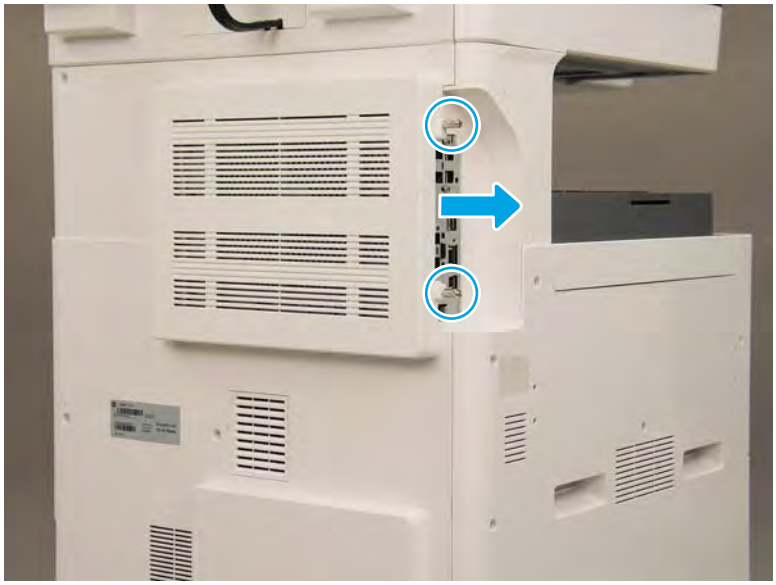
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear covers

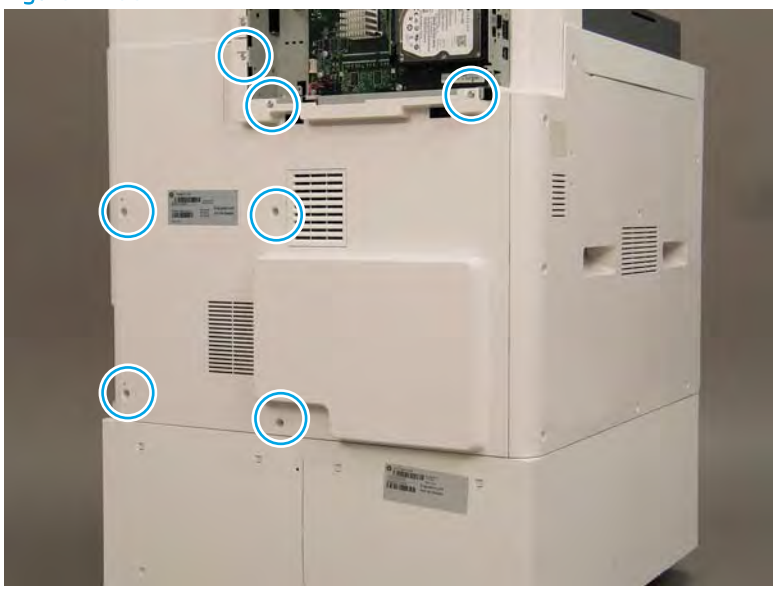
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-157 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

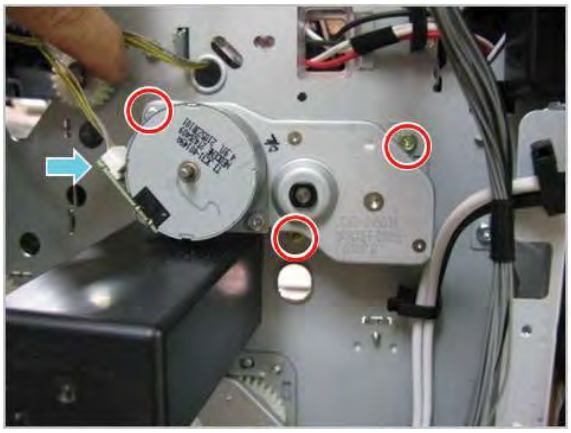
Figure 2-158 Remove the rear-bottom cover



Step 2: Remove the pickup drive unit

- Release the cable restraint. Disconnect the connector and remove three screws. Remove the pickup drive unit.

Figure 2-159 Remove screws and pickup drive unit



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main drive unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear covers
- Step 2: Remove the main drive unit
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the main drive unit assembly.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-00912B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Main drive unit assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

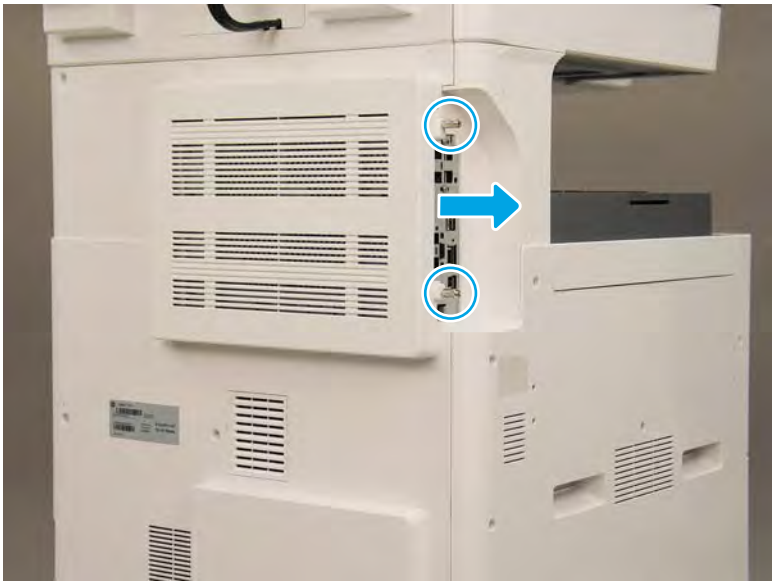
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear covers

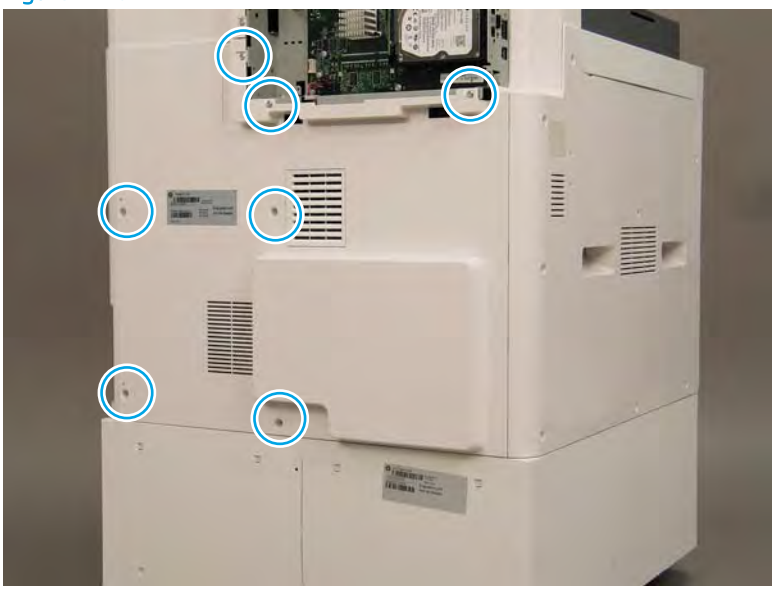
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-160 Remove the formatter cover



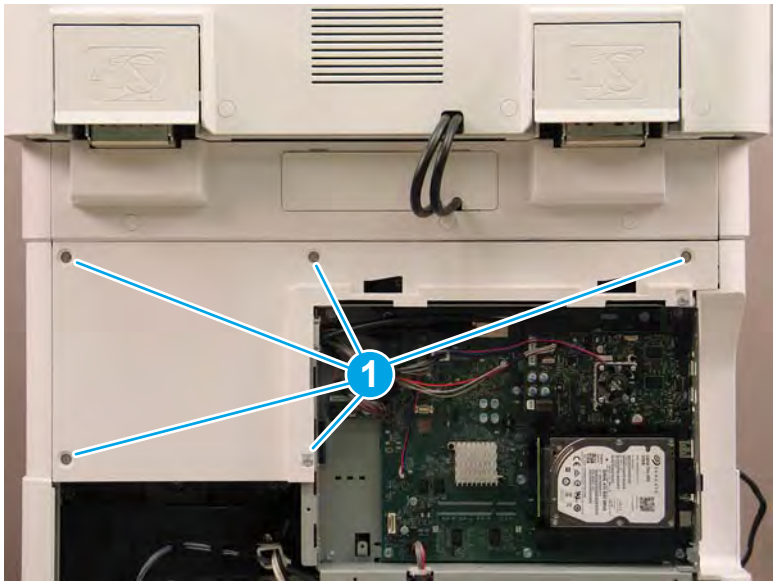
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

Figure 2-161 Remove the rear-bottom cover



3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

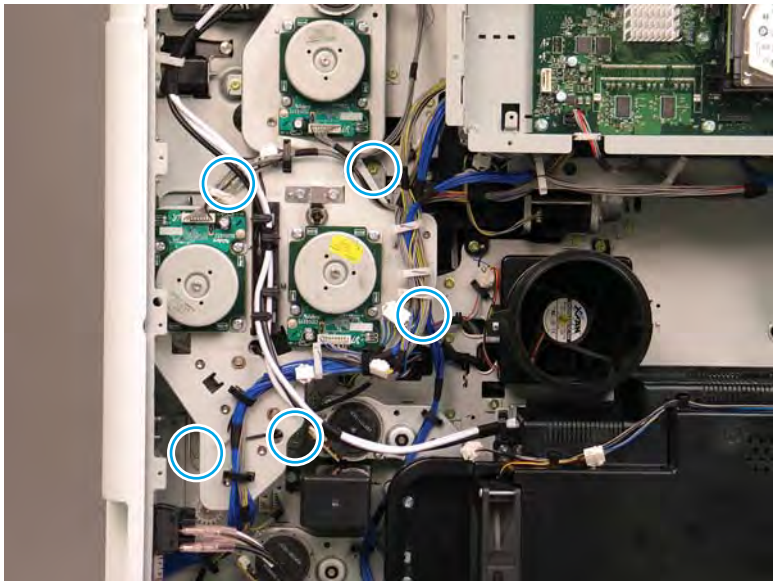
Figure 2-162 Remove the rear-top cover



Step 2: Remove the main drive unit

1. Open the right door.
2. Disconnect five connectors and release eleven cable restraints. Remove five screws and then remove the main drive unit.

Figure 2-163 Remove screws and main drive unit



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser/exit drive assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear covers
- Step 2: Remove the fuser/exit drive assembly
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the fuser/exit drive assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-00449A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Fuser/exit drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

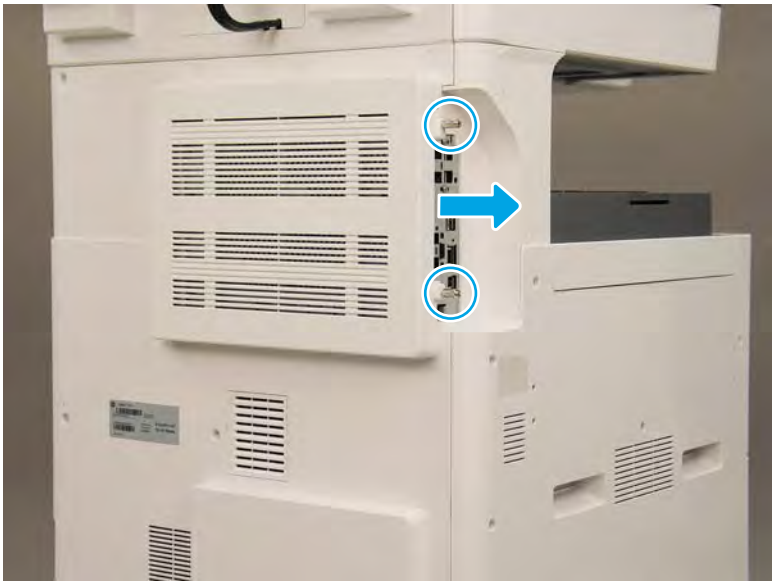
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear covers

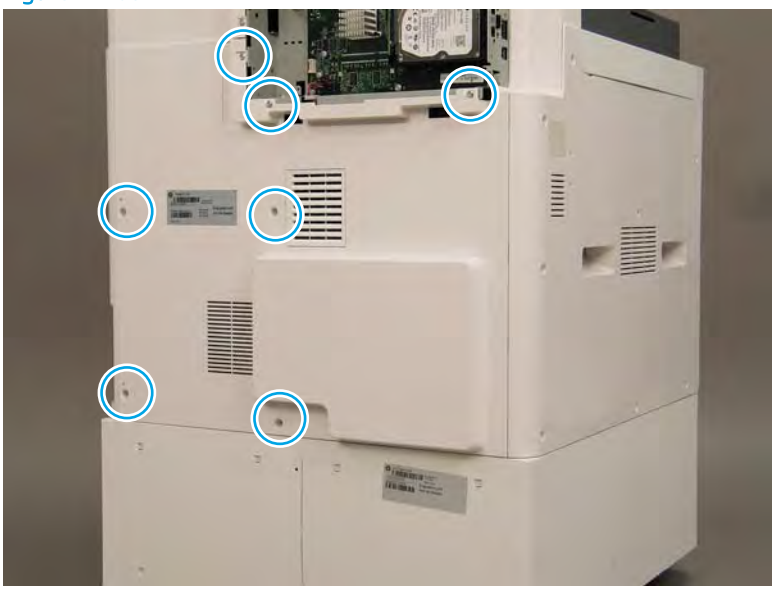
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-164 Remove the formatter cover



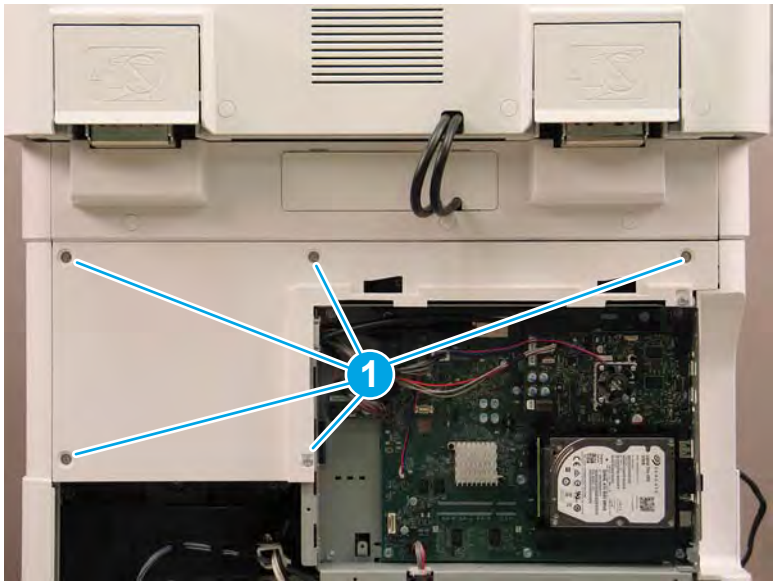
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

Figure 2-165 Remove the rear-bottom cover



3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

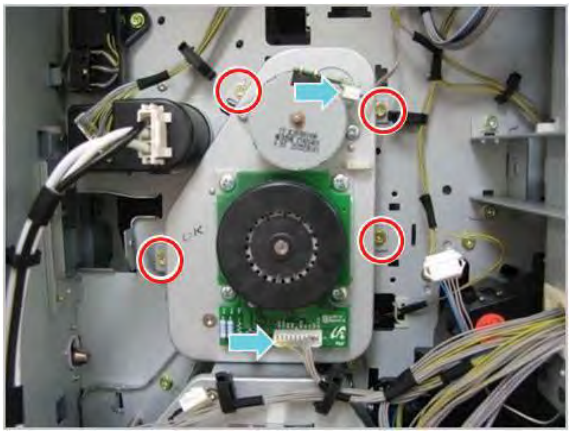
Figure 2-166 Remove the rear-top cover



Step 2: Remove the fuser/exit drive assembly

▲ Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws. Remove the fuser/exit drive unit.

Figure 2-167 Remove screws and fuser/exit drive unit



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser exit drive

Figure 2-168 Fuser exit drive

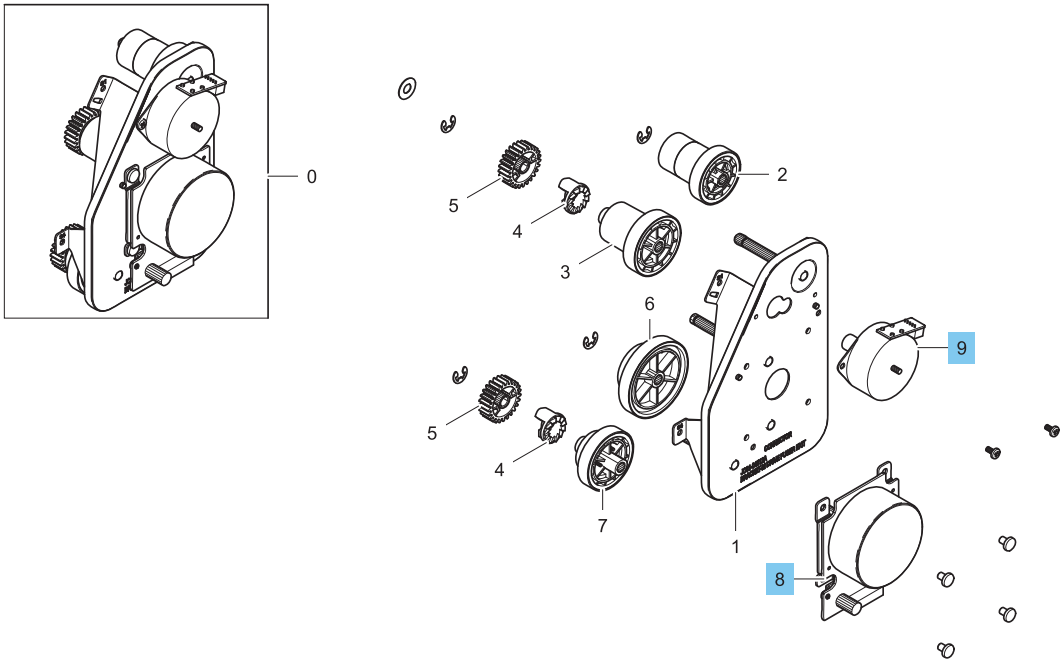


Table 2-6 Fuser exit drive

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
8	Motor BLDC	JC31-00123B	1
9	Drive, motor step	JC93-00452A on page 597	1

Registration sub-frame

Figure 2-169 Registration sub-frame

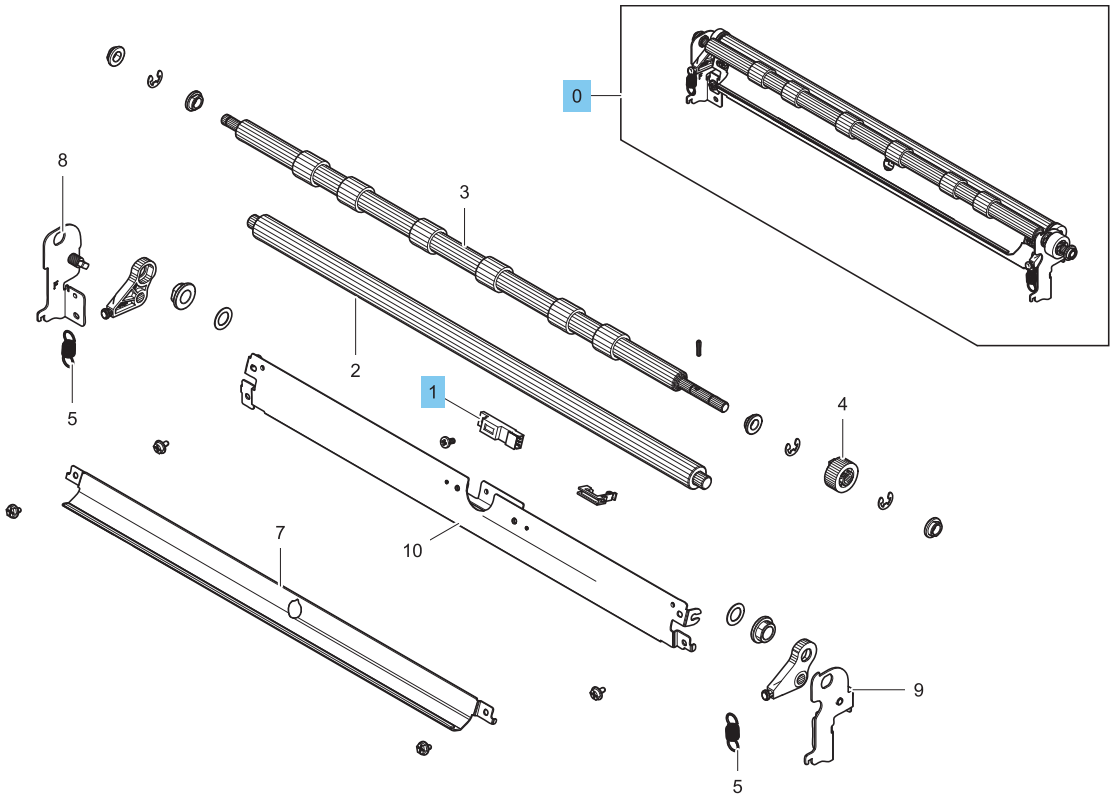


Table 2-7 Registration sub-frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Frame, sub registration	JC93-01371A on page 279	1
1	Photo interrupter	0604-001381 on page 1281	1

Registration unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right door
- Step 2: Remove the TCU
- Step 3: Remove the drum unit
- Step 4: Remove the registration unit
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the registration unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-01371A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Registration unit assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

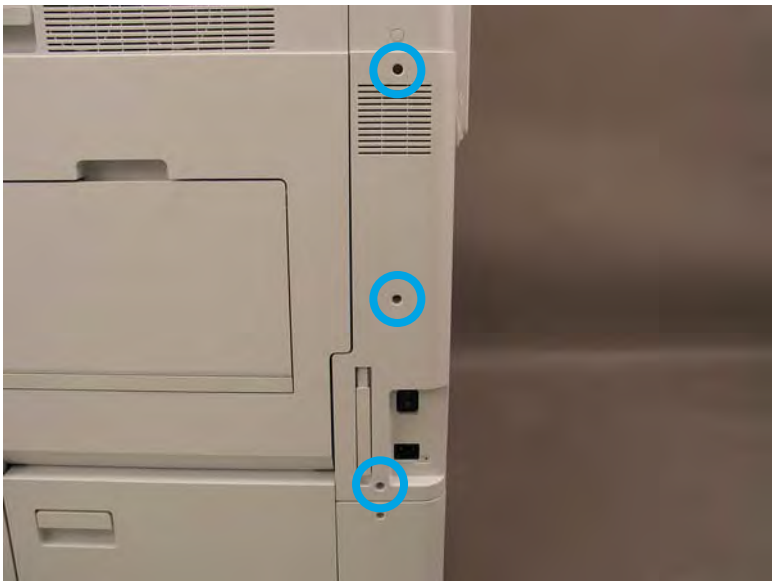
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the right door

NOTE: Remove second exit drive if installed.

1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).

Figure 2-170 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

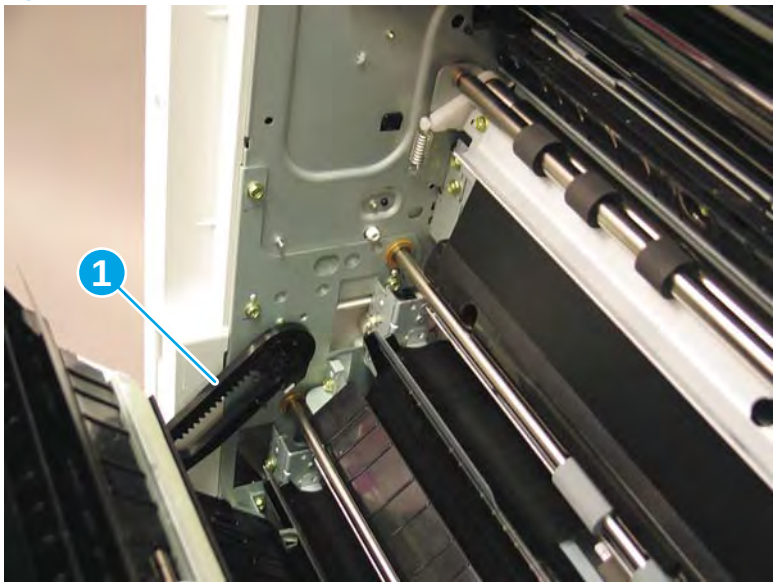
Figure 2-171 Disconnect right door connector



3. Release the right hinge (callout 1).

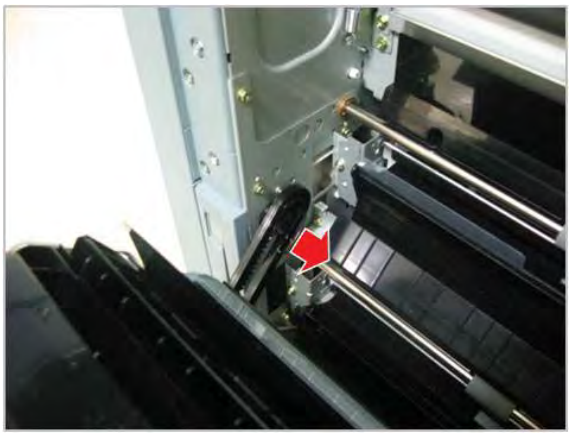
⚠ CAUTION: The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.

Figure 2-172 Release right hinge



4. Release the left dampener (callout 1).

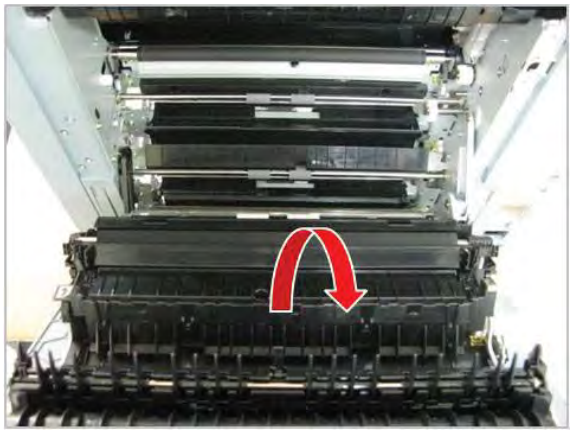
Figure 2-173 Release left dampener



5. Remove the right door.

NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.

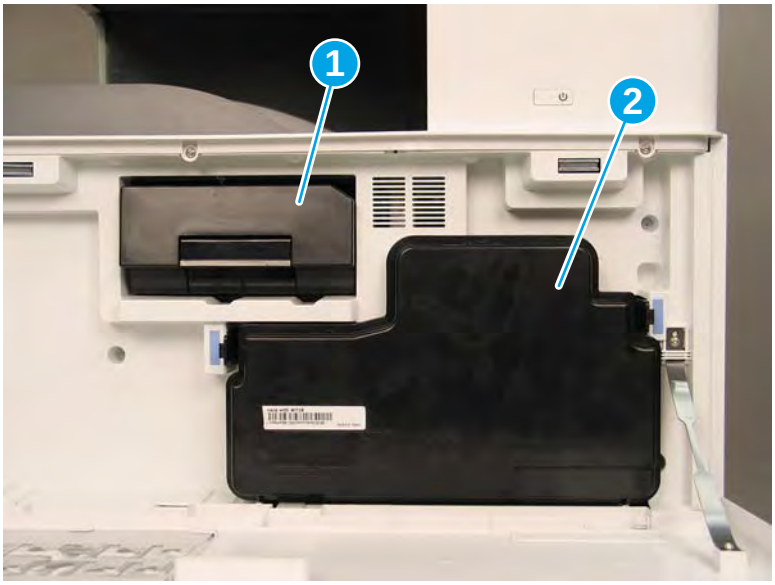
Figure 2-174 Remove right door



Step 2: Remove the TCU

▲ Open the front door and remove the toner collection unit (callout A).

Figure 2-175 Remove the TCU

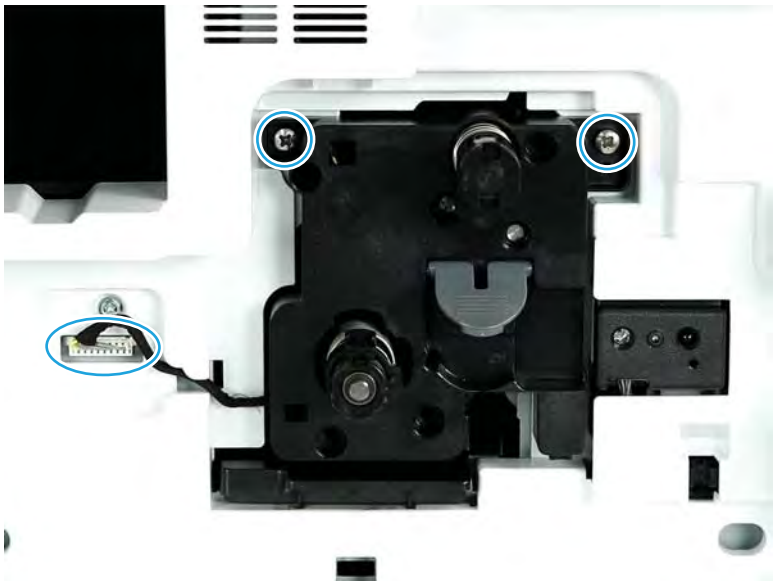


Step 3: Remove the drum unit

IMPORTANT: To avoid damaging to the drum unit, it must be removed to remove or install the registration unit.

1. Disconnect the drum unit connector. Remove two screws.

Figure 2-176 Disconnect drum unit connector



2. Remove the drum unit.

Figure 2-177 Remove drum unit

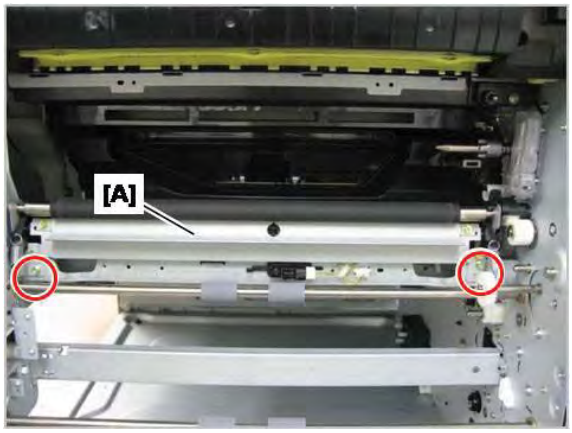


Step 4: Remove the registration unit

1. Remove the paper dust cleaner.

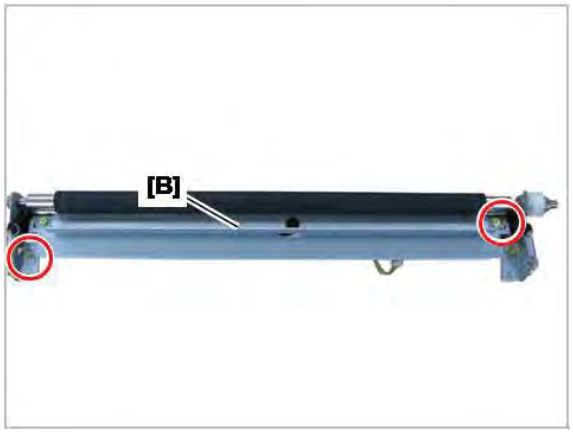
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the guide feed roller.

Figure 2-178 Remove screws and guide feed roller



3. Remove four screws, two to loosen the unit and two to remove the bracket (B).

Figure 2-179 Remove screws



NOTE: Reinstallation note: Make sure the notches on the sheet metal bracket seat fully in the grooves on the shaft.

4. Disconnect the connector. Remove the registration sensor.

Figure 2-180 Remove registration sensor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main frame pickup 1 and 2

Figure 2-181 Main frame pickup 1 and 2

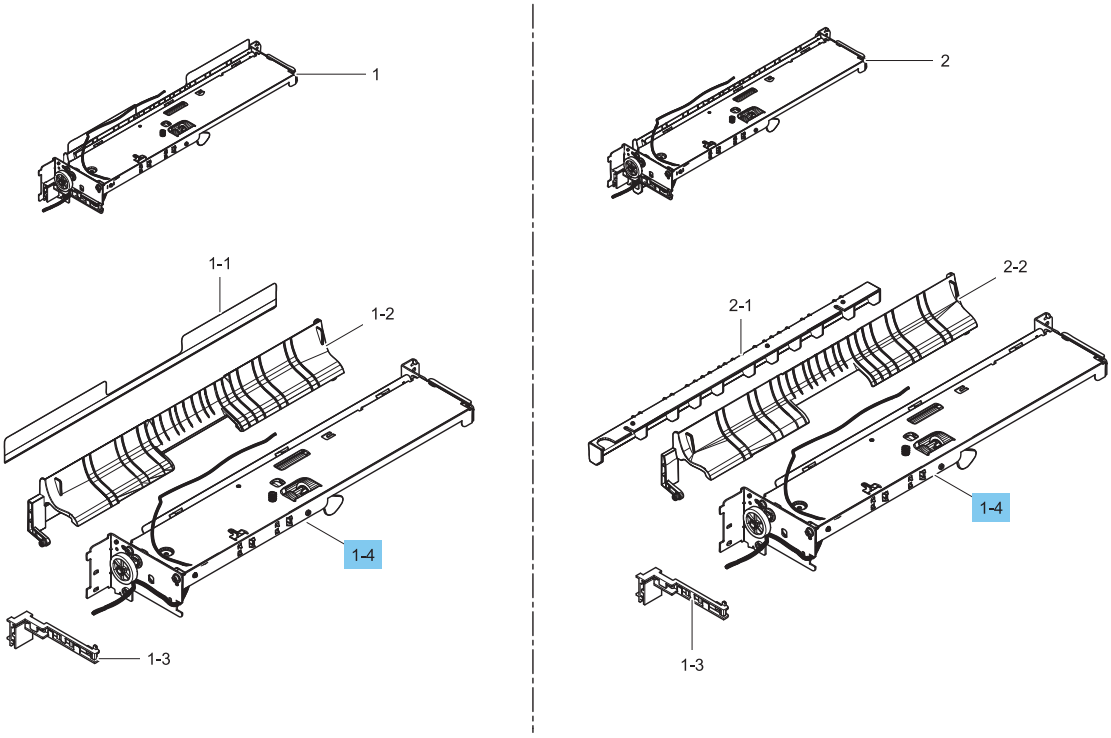


Table 2-8 Main frame pickup 1 and 2

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1–4	Main pickup frame	JC93-00510A on page 531	1

Main frame pickup

Figure 2-182 Main pickup frame

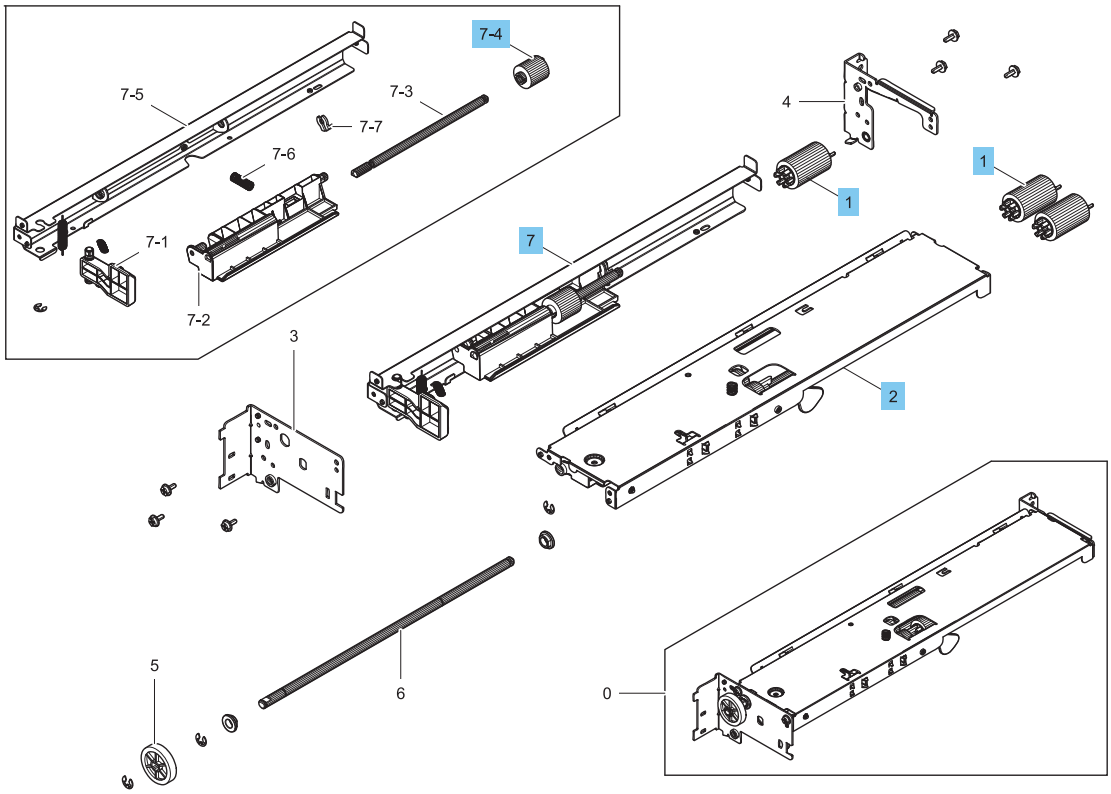


Table 2-9 Main pickup frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Trays 2-x rollers	JC93-00540A on page 290	3
2	Frame, main pickup upper	JC93-00511A	1
7	Frame, main pickup lower	JC93-01441A	1
7–4	Coupler, torque limiter	JC67–00455A	1

Trays 2-x main rollers

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right door
- Step 2: Remove the pick/feed/separation roller
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the pickup/reverse/feed roller.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

Click here for an additional video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-00540A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Trays 2-x Main rollers

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

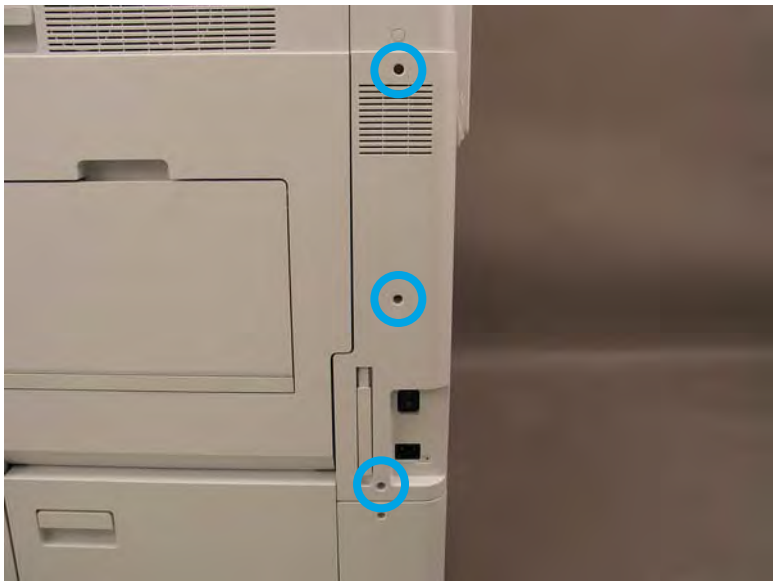
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the right door

NOTE: Remove second exit drive if installed.

1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).

Figure 2-183 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

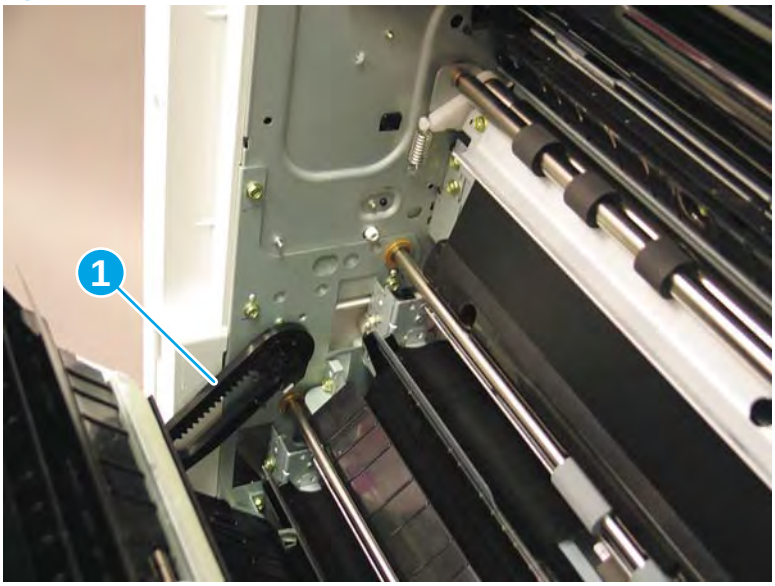
Figure 2-184 Disconnect right door connector



3. Release the right hinge (callout 1).

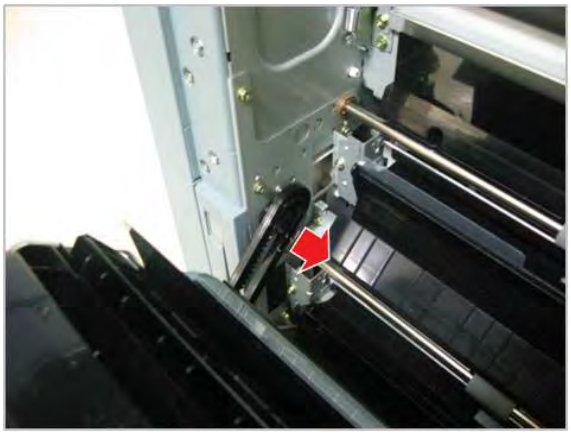
⚠ CAUTION: The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.

Figure 2-185 Release right hinge



4. Release the left dampener (callout 1).

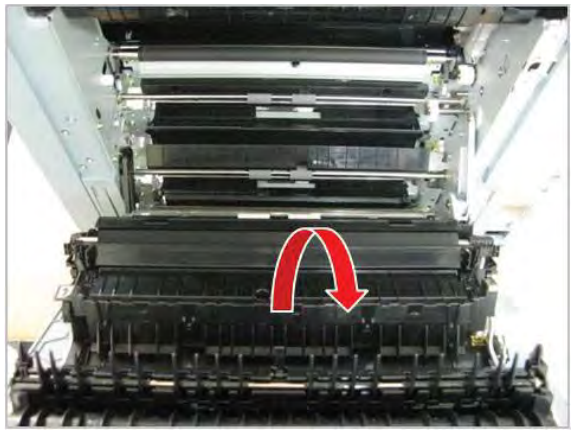
Figure 2-186 Release left dampener



5. Remove the right door.

NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.

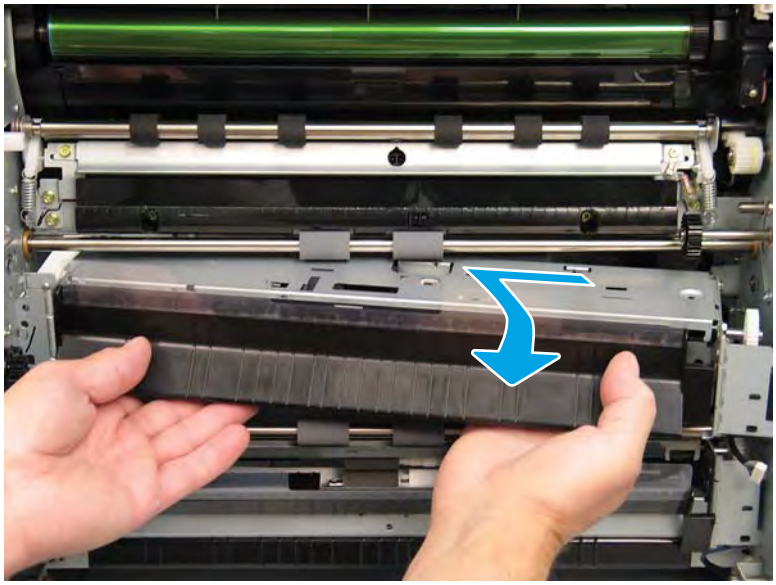
Figure 2-187 Remove right door



Step 2: Remove the pick/feed/separation roller

1. Remove one screw and disconnect one connector. Remove the pickup assembly.

Figure 2-188 Remove the pickup assembly



2. Release the small tab and remove the pick/feed/separation roller. Note the location of the clutches and gears.

Figure 2-189 Remove pick/feed/separation roller (1 of 2)

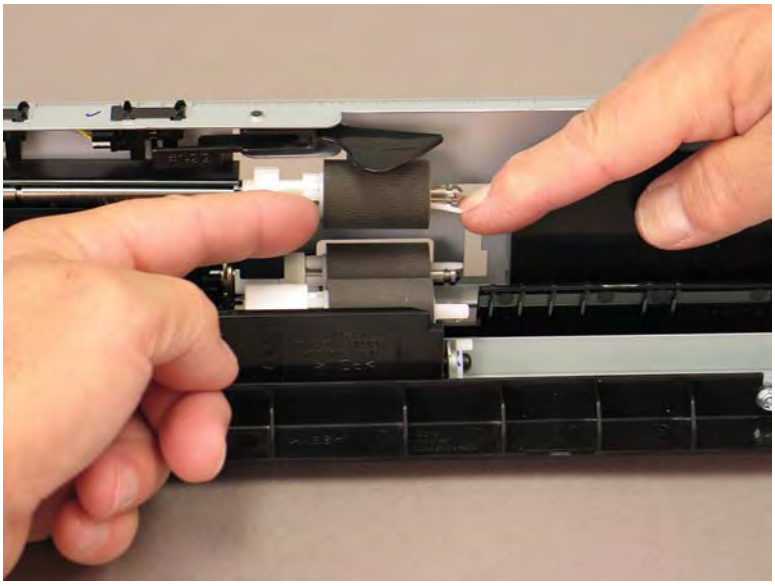
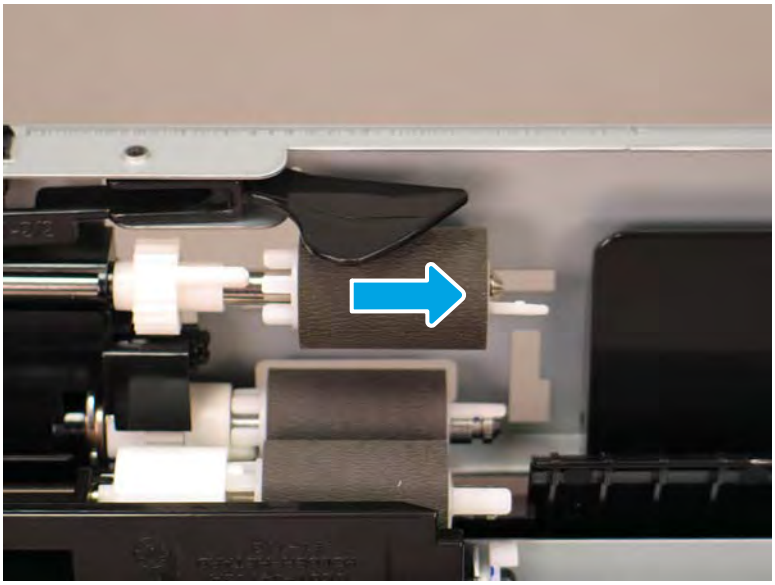


Figure 2-190 Remove pick/feed/separation roller (2 of 2)



NOTE: It is recommended to replace all three rollers at the same time.

3. Enter service mode. Select the “Field Replacement Unit” menu item for the pick/feed/separation roller (Information > Supply Status > Field Replacement Unit). Select “Reset” to reset the current count to “0”.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main frame pickup, upper

Figure 2-191 Main frame pickup, upper

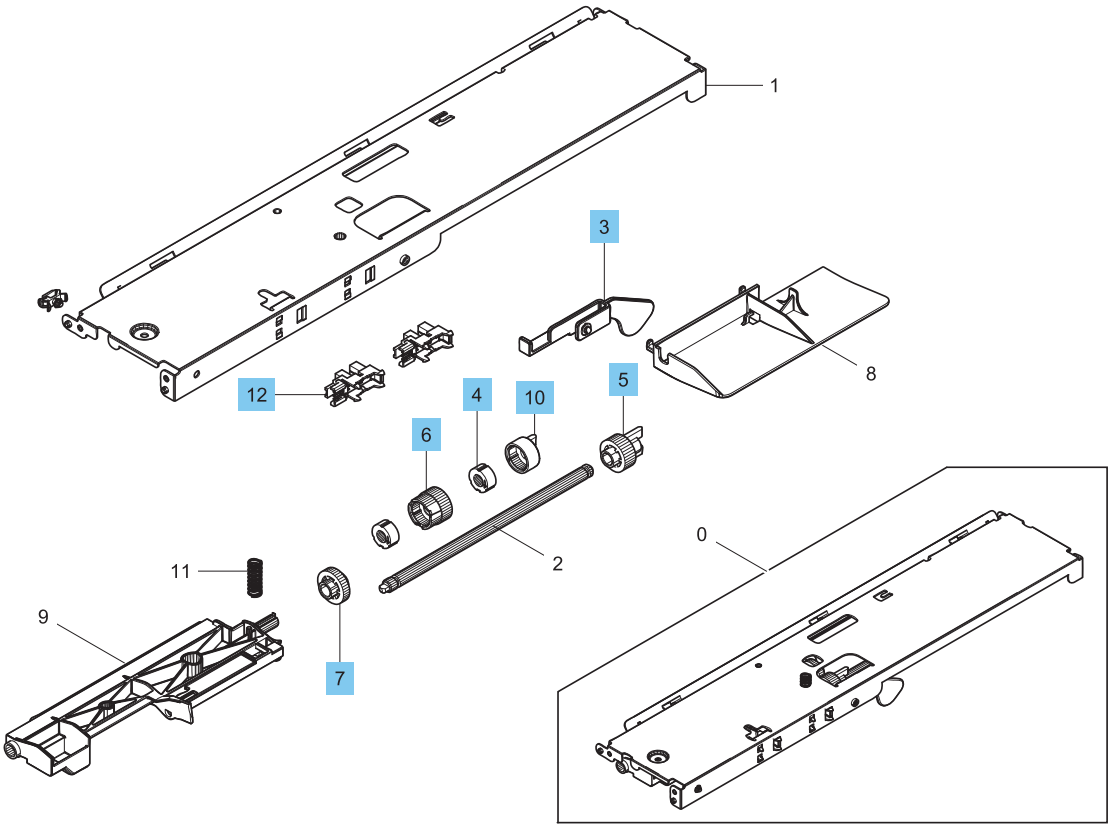


Table 2-10 Main frame pickup, upper

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Actuator, empty pickup	JC66-03199A	1
4	Clutch, P_one way	JC66-00977A	1
5	Gear, M_PU joint	JC66-00943A	1
6	Gear, M_one way	JC66-00941A	1
7	Gear, M_idle PU	JC66-00940A	1
10	Holder, M_idle one way	JC61-01288A	1
12	Photo interrupter	0604-001393 on page 356	1

Main frame

Figure 2-192 Main frame

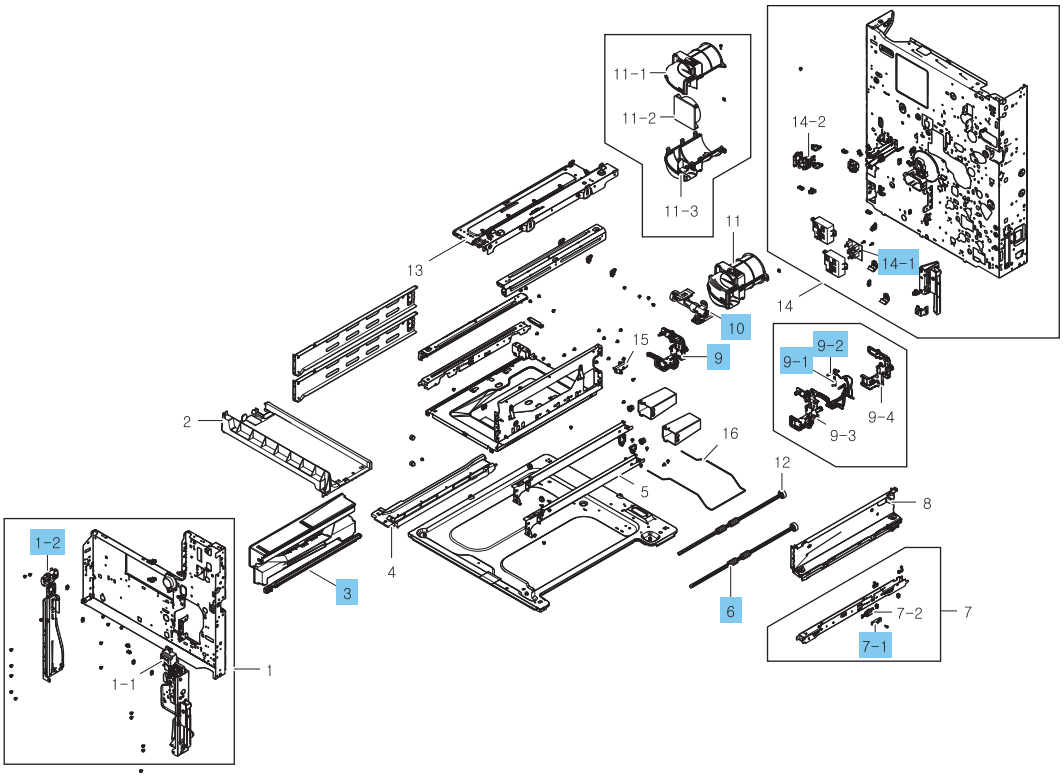


Table 2-11 Main frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1–2	Switch, front door open	JC93-00466A on page 316	1
3	Frame sub, clean registration	JC93-00078C	1
6	Roller idle, feed	JC66-03203A	2
7–1	Photo interrupter	0604-001381 on page 1281	1
9	Frame, HV package mono	JC93-00891A	1
9–1	PCA, eraser mono	JC92-02747A	1
9–2	MEA unit, terminal	JC97-01401A	1
10	Frame, duct	JC93-00917A on page 305	1
11–2	Fan Type 7 developer	JC31-00161A	1
14–1	PBA, paper size sensor	JC92-02622A on page 300	2
Not shown	Registration Stopper	JC61-04900A	1
Not shown	Switch, right door open	JC93-01467A on page 320	1
Not shown	Sensor, toner collection unit	JC92-02471A on page 302	1

Paper Size Sensor PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the Paper Size Sensor PCA
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Size Sensor PCA.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC92-02622A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Paper Size Sensor PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

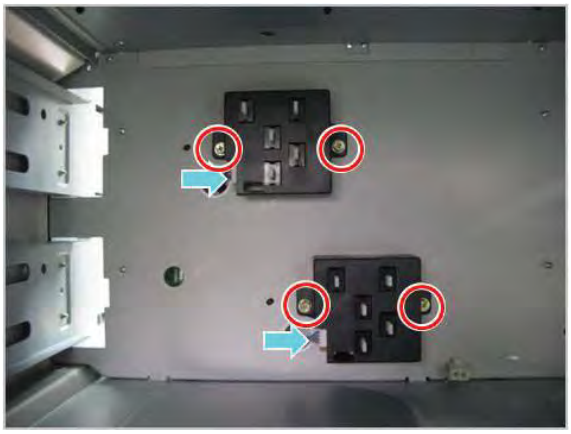
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the Paper Size Sensor PCA

▲ Do the following:

- Remove all trays to access the inside of the printer.
- Disconnect the connector. Remove two screws, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 2-193 Remove screws



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner collection unit sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the inner cover
- Step 2: Remove the TCU sensor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the toner collection unit sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC92-02471A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Toner collection unit sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

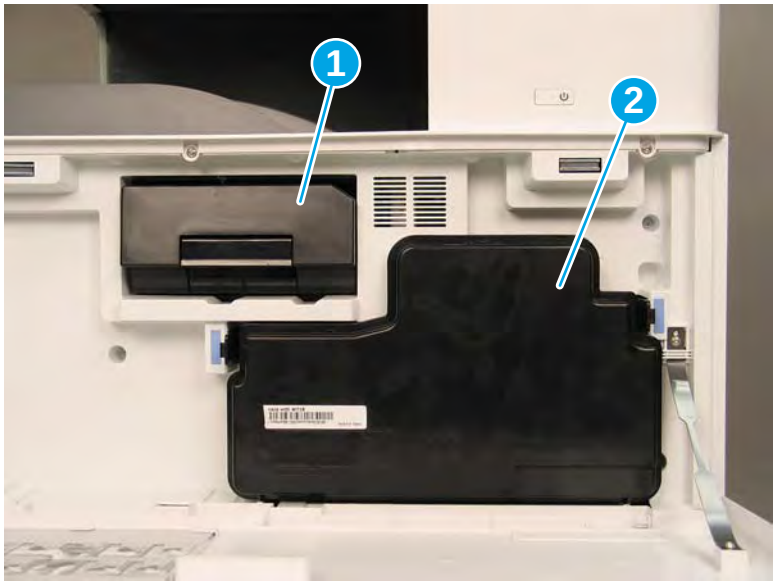
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the inner cover

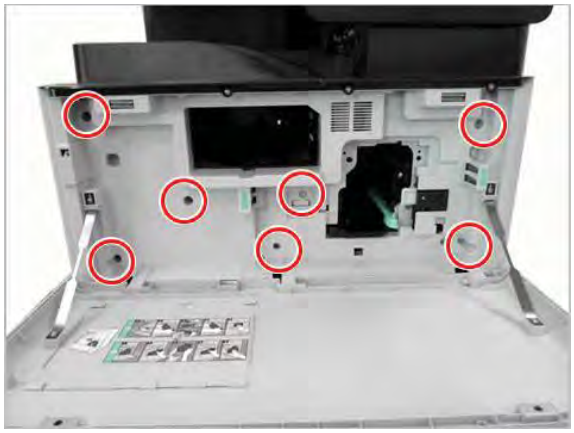
1. Open the front cover. Remove the toner cartridge (callout 1) and the TCU (callout 2).

Figure 2-194 Remove the toner cartridge and TCU



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the inner cover.

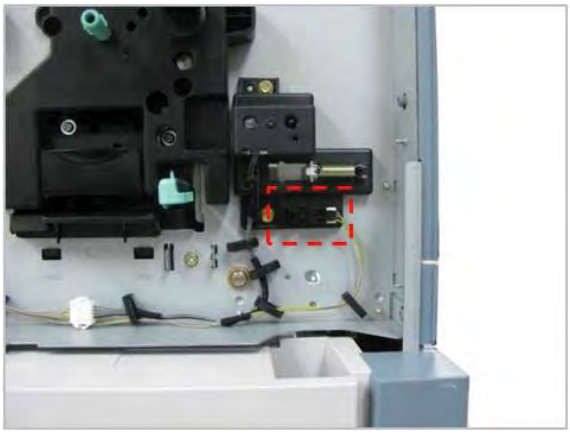
Figure 2-195 Remove the inner cover



Step 2: Remove the TCU sensor

▲ Disconnect the connector. Remove the sensor.

Figure 2-196 Disconnect connector and remove sensor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner duct

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit
- Step 2: Remove the rear covers
- Step 3: Remove the main drive unit
- Step 4: Remove the formater PCA
- Step 5: Remove the formatter cage
- Step 6: Remove the main board
- Step 7: Remove the main board cage
- Step 8: Remove the toner drive unit
- Step 9: Remove the toner duct
- Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the toner duct assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-00917A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Toner duct assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

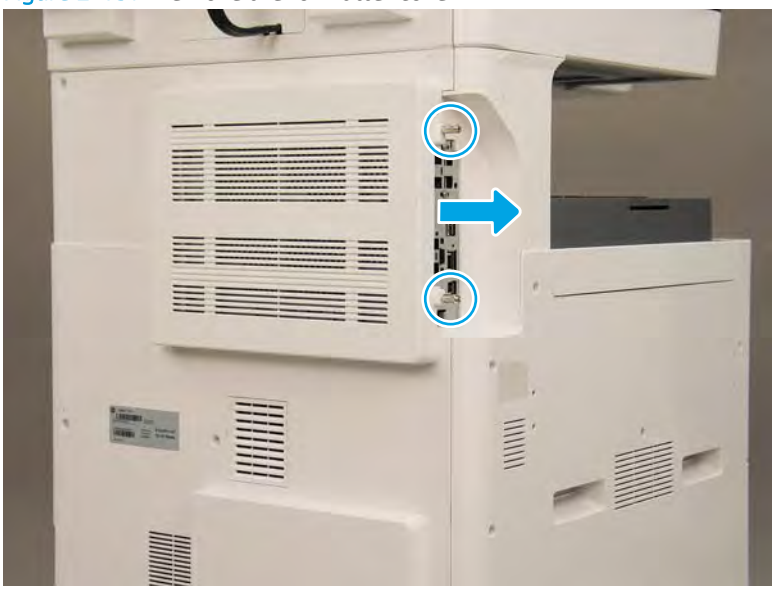
Step 1: Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit

- ▲ Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit.

Step 2: Remove the rear covers

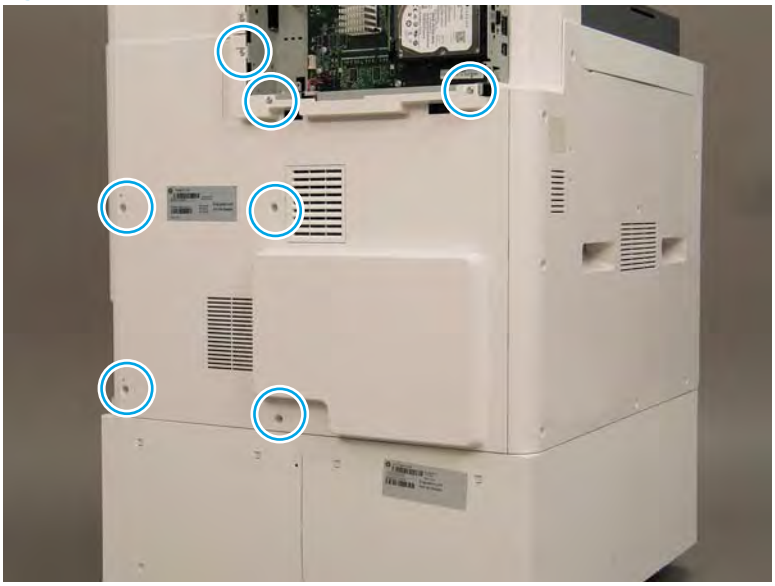
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-197 Remove the formatter cover



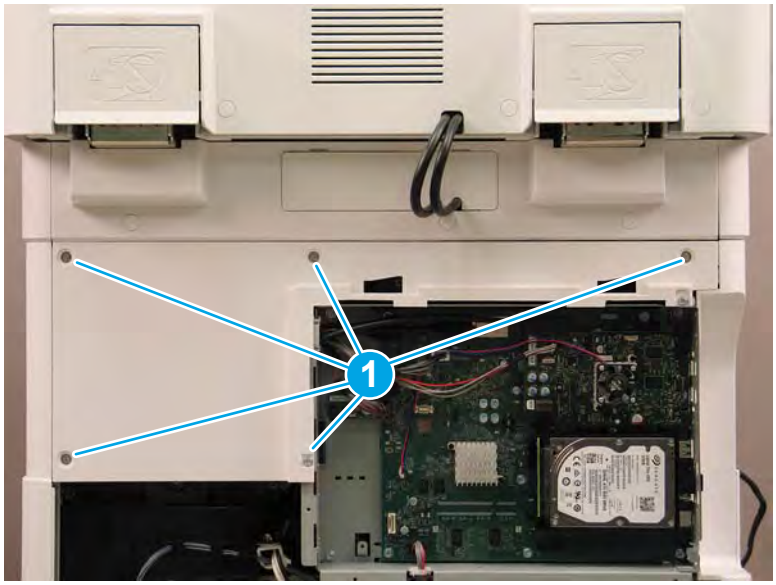
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

Figure 2-198 Remove the rear-bottom cover



3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

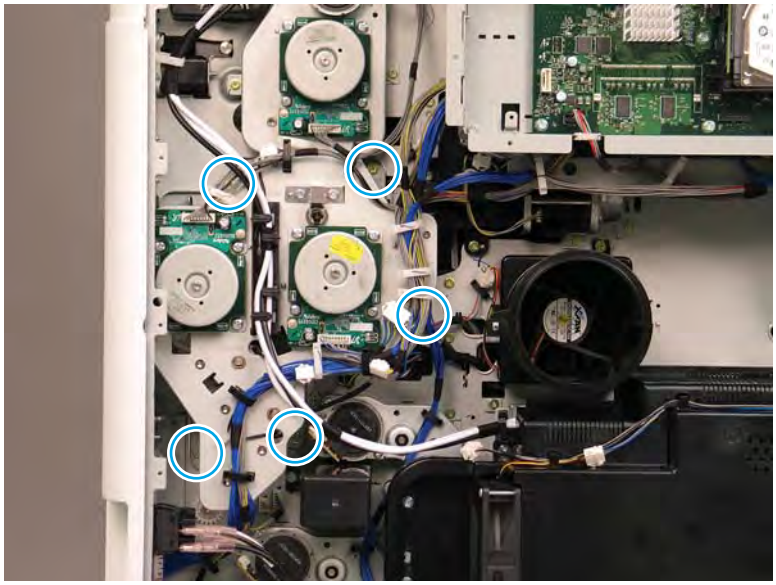
Figure 2-199 Remove the rear-top cover



Step 3: Remove the main drive unit

1. Open the right door.
2. Disconnect five connectors and release eleven cable restraints. Remove five screws and then remove the main drive unit.

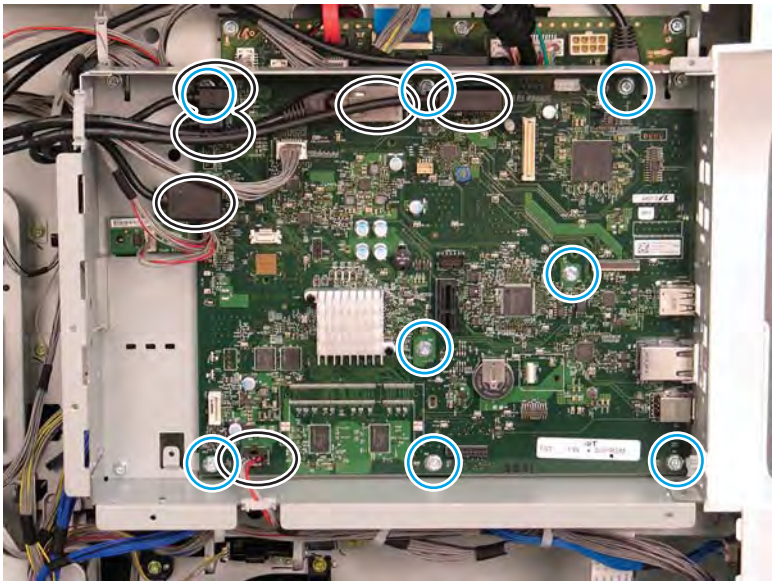
Figure 2-200 Remove screws and main drive unit



Step 4: Remove the formater PCA

- Disconnect seven connectors and eight screws, and then remove formatter PCA.

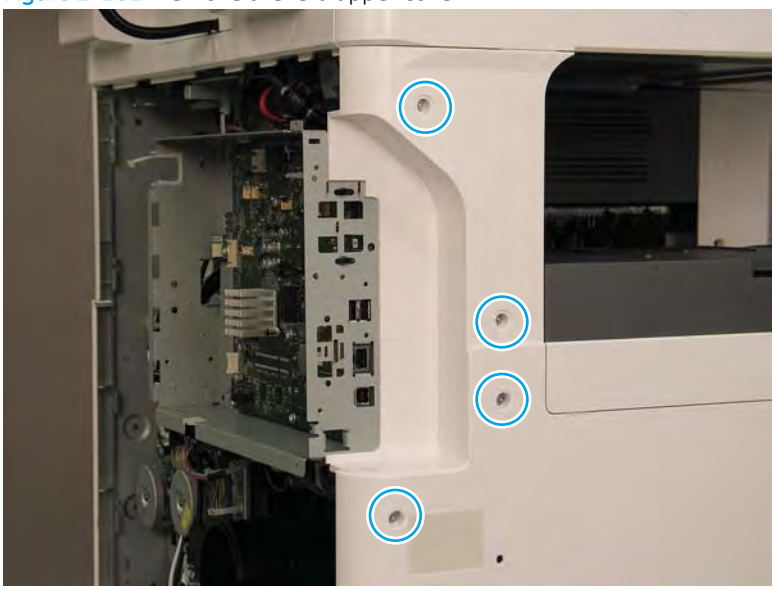
Figure 2-201 Remove the formatter connectors and screws



Step 5: Remove the formatter cage

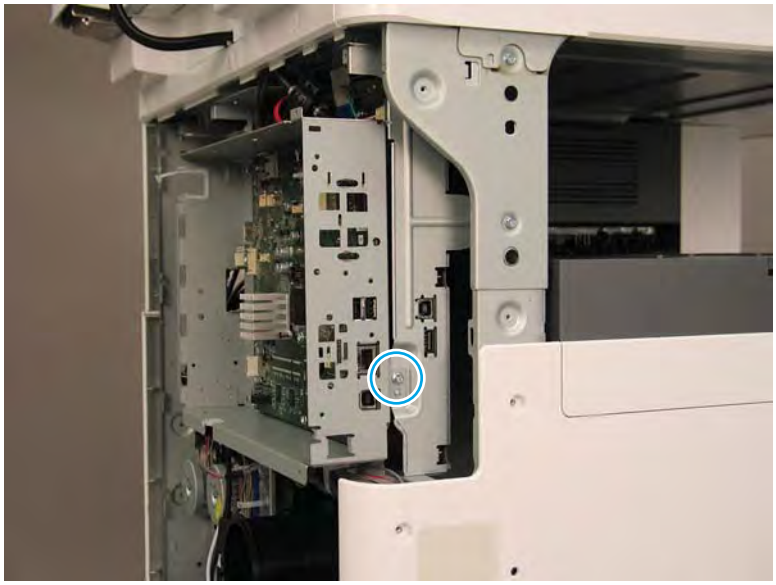
1. Disconnect ten connectors and two cable restraints.
2. Remove four screws and screw-caps, and then remove the left-upper cover.

Figure 2-202 Remove the left-upper cover



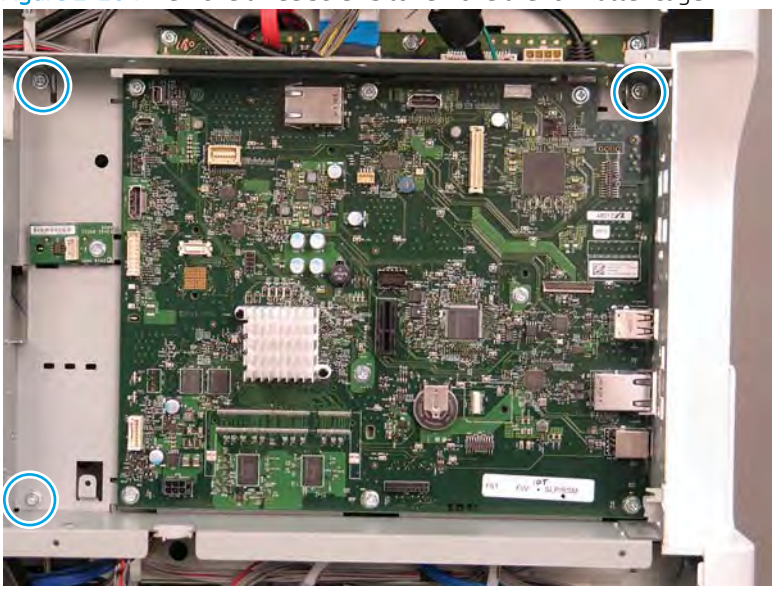
3. Remove one screw from the side of the formatter cage (beneath the left-upper cover location).

Figure 2-203 Remove the formatter cage side screw



4. Remove three screws from the formatter cage face, and then release one tab to remove the formatter cage.

Figure 2-204 Remove three screws to remove the formatter cage



Step 6: Remove the main board

1. Disconnect 19 connectors, a ground wire, and three FFCs on the main board.

Figure 2-205 Remove the main board connectors and screws



2. Remove nine screws, and then remove the main board.
3. Disconnect the MSOK from the removed main board, noting its orientation. Transfer the MSOK to the replacement main board and install it using the same orientation.

TIP: The main board is marked to show the correct orientation of the MSOK when installed.

Figure 2-206 MSOK installation orientation



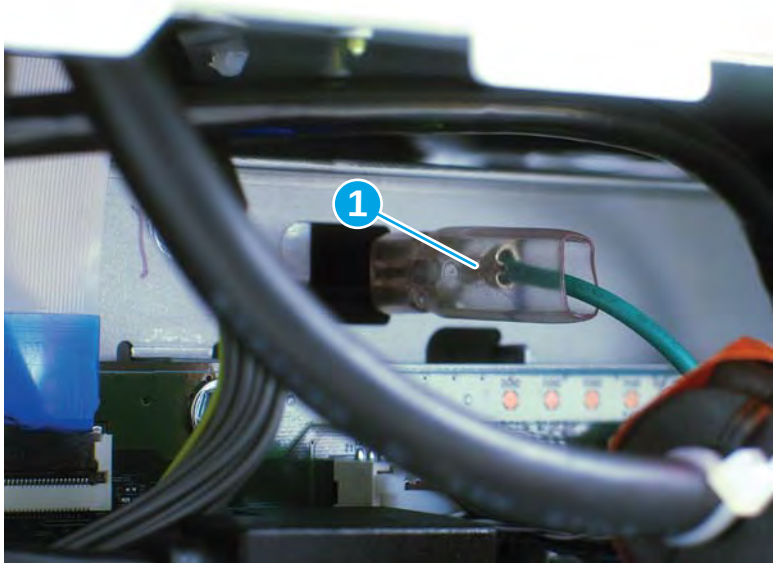
Reinstallation tip: See the screen-printed icon on the main board to ensure that the MSOK is aligned correctly during reinstallation.

Step 7: Remove the main board cage

1. Remove the FFC retainer at the bottom-right.

2. Pinch the ground strap (callout 1) to remove it from the top of the cage.

Figure 2-207 Remove the ground strap



3. Open seven cable retainers.
4. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-208 Remove the main board cage screws



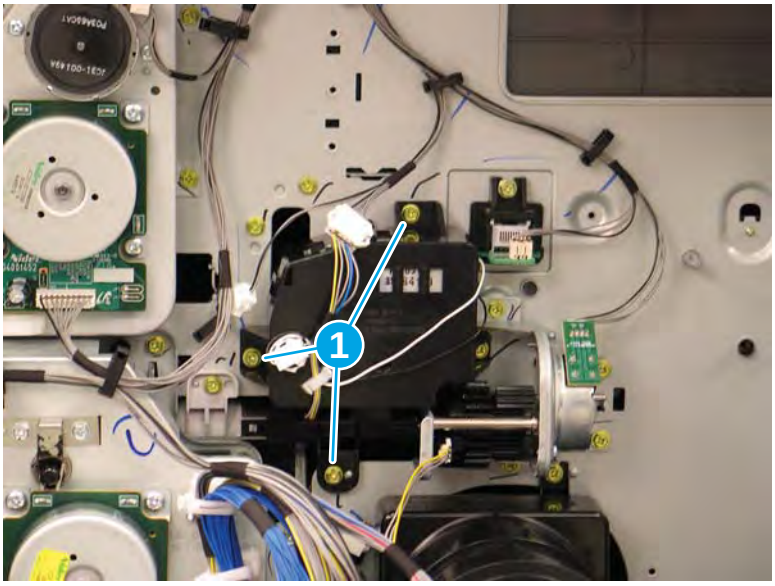
5. Lift the main board cage up slightly to release one bracket, and then pull out to remove.

Step 8: Remove the toner drive unit

1. Loosen the PCA cage by removing the two bottom screws. This enables access to the supply drive.
2. Release the cable restraint.

3. Disconnect the connector and remove three screws (callout 1). Remove the toner supply drive unit. Disconnect the second connector.

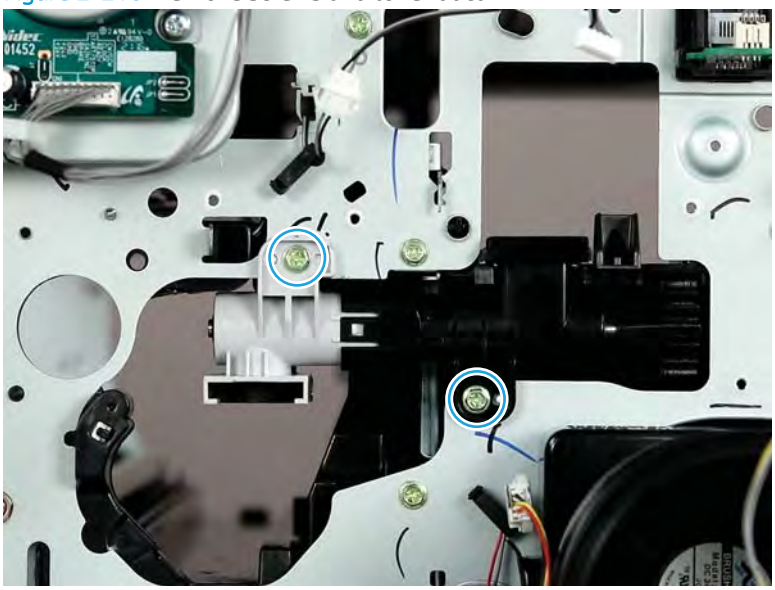
Figure 2-209 Remove toner supply drive unit and disconnect connector



Step 9: Remove the toner duct

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the toner duct.

Figure 2-210 Remove screws and toner duct



Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Transfer roller

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the transfer roller
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the transfer roller.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Transfer roller assembly part number	
JC82-00466A	Transfer roller assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the transfer roller

1. Open the right door.
2. Hold and release both sides of the transfer roller to remove.

Figure 2-211 Remove transfer roller



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front door open switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front door open switch
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the front door open switch assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-00466A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Front Door Switch Open

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the front door open switch

1. Open the right door.

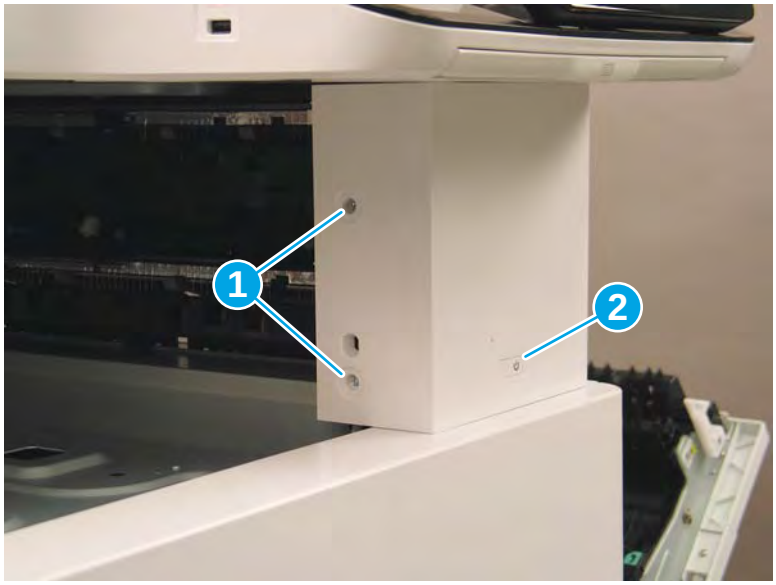
Figure 2-212 Open right door



2. Remove two screw-caps and two screws.

NOTE: Do not dislodge the power button (callout 2) when the cover is removed.

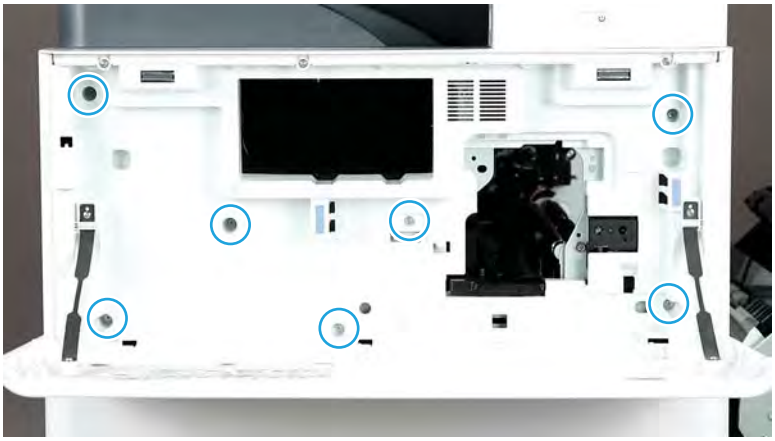
Figure 2-213 Remove screw-caps and screws



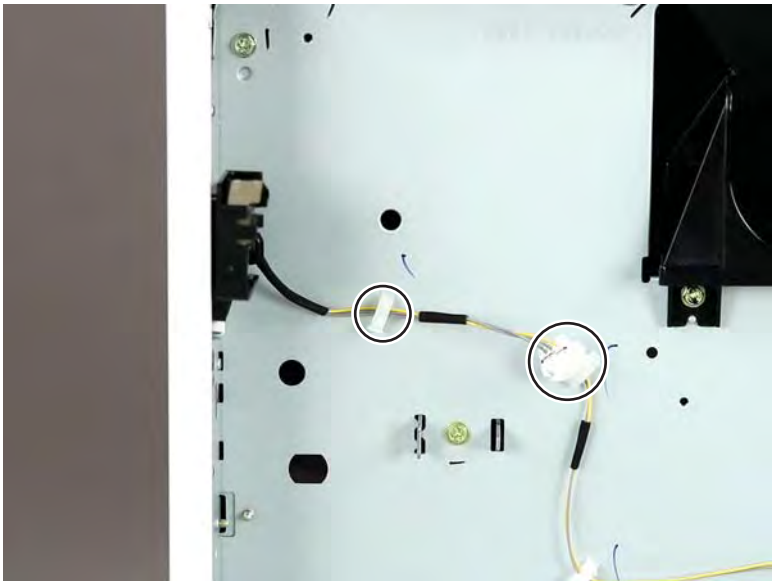
3. Open the front door. Remove the toner collection unit. Remove the toner cartridge.
4. Remove the imaging unit.

5. Remove eight screws. Release the front-inner cover.

Figure 2-214 Remove screws and front-inner cover



6. Disconnect one cable, and then release one cable stay.



7. Remove one screw, and then remove the door-open switch.



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door open switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right door open switch
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the right door open switch.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-01467A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Right door open switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

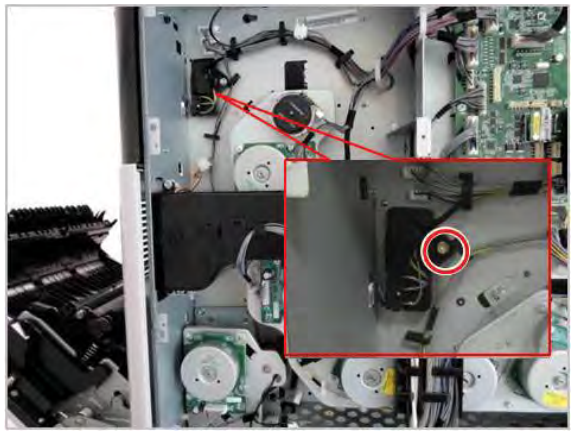
Post service test

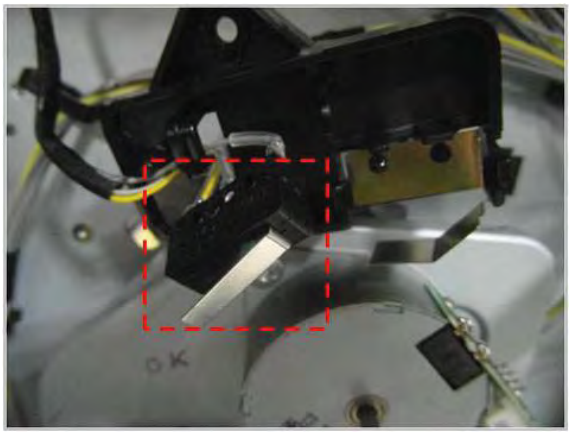
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the right door open switch

1. Remove the rear cover. Remove one screw securing the sensor.

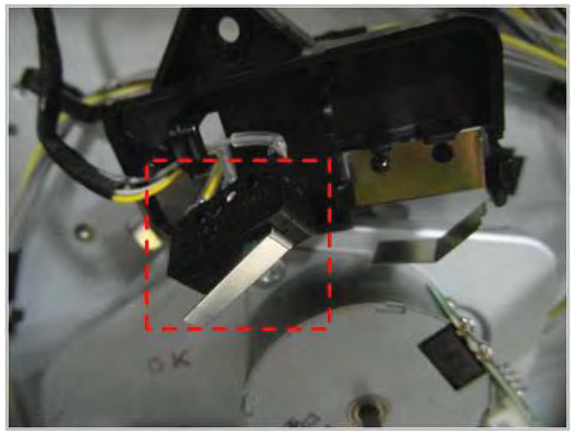
Figure 2-215 Remove rear cover and screw





2. Remove the micro-switch.

Figure 2-216 Remove micro-switch



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Cover

Figure 2-217 Cover

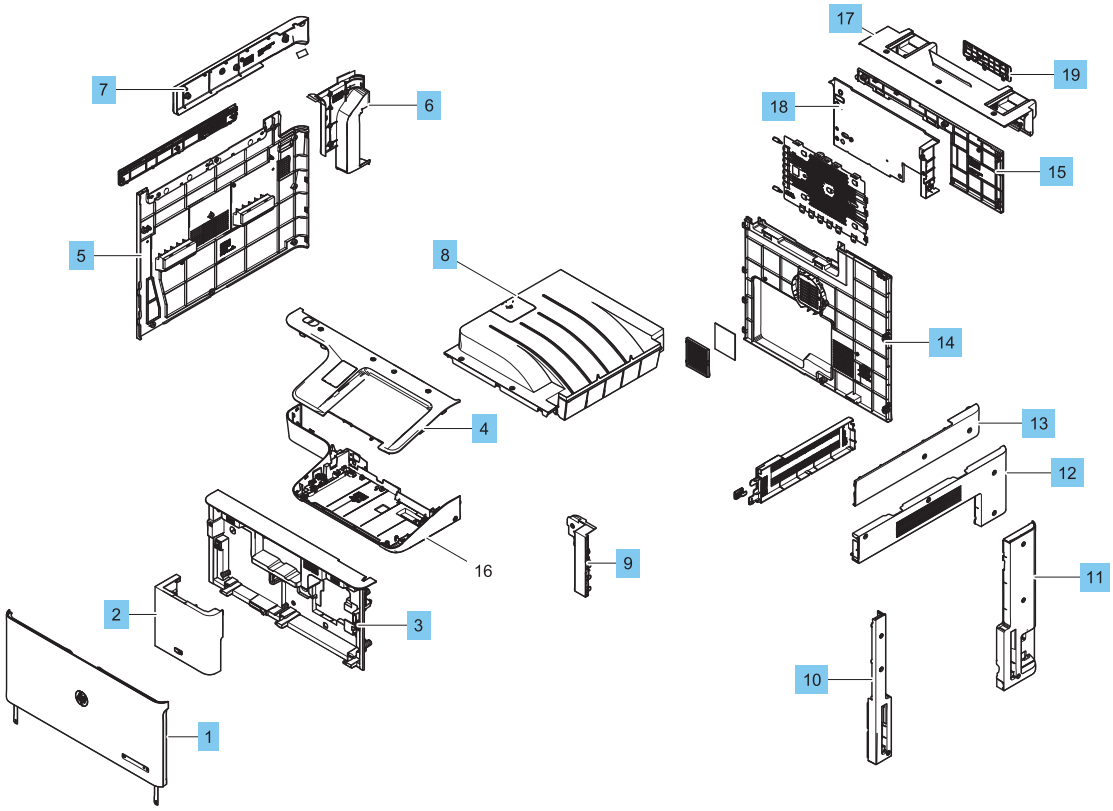


Table 2-12 Cover

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, front	JC95-02096A	1
2	Cover, middle right	JC95-02082A	1
3	Cover, inner	JC95-02097A	1
4	Cover, Control Panel Top	JC63-05647A	1
5	Cover, left	JC95-02095A on page 325	1
6	Cover, left upper	JC63-05623A	1
7	Cover, scanner left	JC63-05576A	1
8	Cover, exit	JC95-02087A	1
9	Cover, front lower	JC63-04536B	1
10	Cover, right front	JC63-04539B	1
11	Cover, right rear	JC63-04540B	1
12	Cover, right upper	JC63-04520B	1
13	Cover, scanner right	JC63-05575A	1
14	Cover, rear lower	JC63-05617A on page 328	1
15	Cover, rear upper	JC63-05618A on page 328	1
17	Cover, scanner rear	JC63-05577A	1
18	Cover, rear exit	JC95-02088A	1
19	Cover, rear dummy	JC63-04567B	1
Not shown	Strap, front cover	JC61-04626A	1
Not shown	PCA, Sub USB Host PCA,	JC41-00964A	1
Not shown	front power switch	JC92-02969A	1
Not shown	Cover, control panel Btm	JC63-05648A	1

Left cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the left cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the left cover assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC95-02095A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Left cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

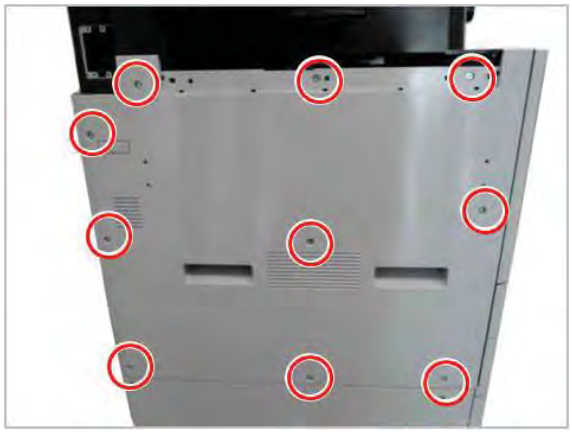
Step 1: Remove the left cover

▲ Remove the left trim cover, and then remove ten screws to remove the left cover.

Figure 2-218 Remove the left trim cover



Figure 2-219 Remove the left cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear covers

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear covers
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the rear covers.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC63-05566A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Rear-upper cover

JC63-05617A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Rear-lower cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

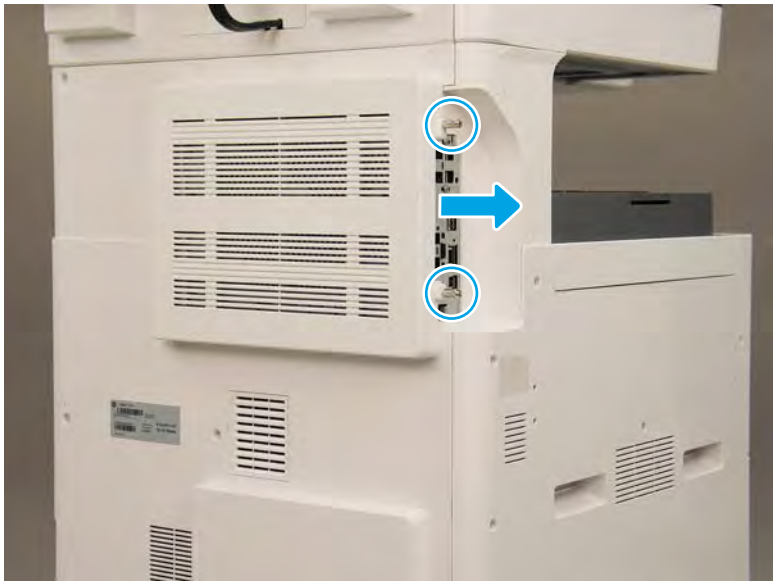
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear covers

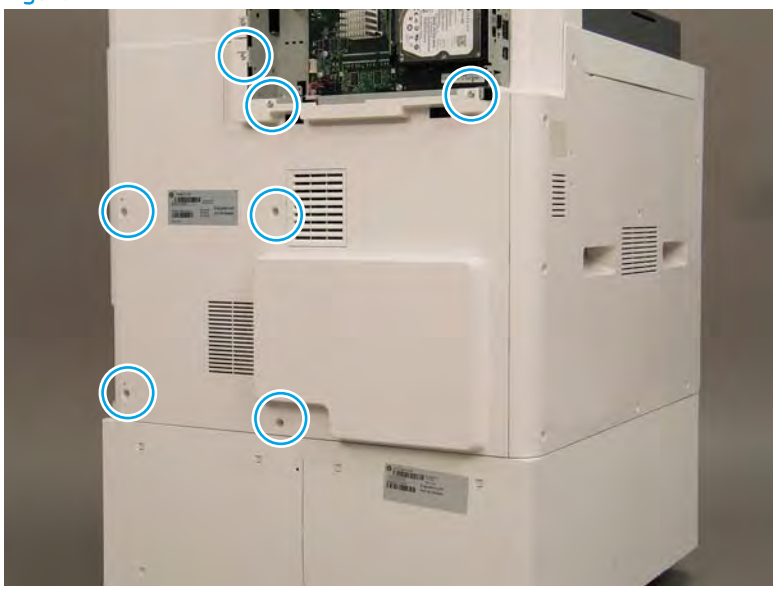
1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 2-220 Remove the formatter cover



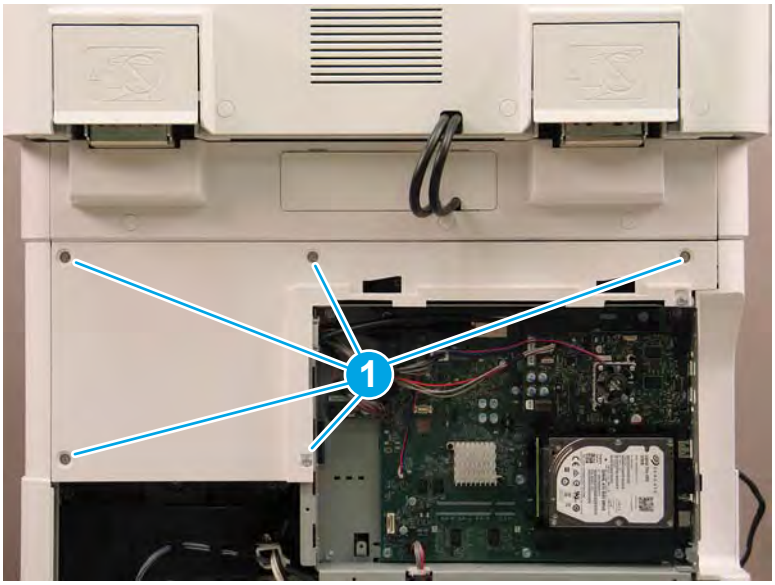
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

Figure 2-221 Remove the rear-bottom cover



3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

Figure 2-222 Remove the rear-top cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door

Figure 2-223 Right door

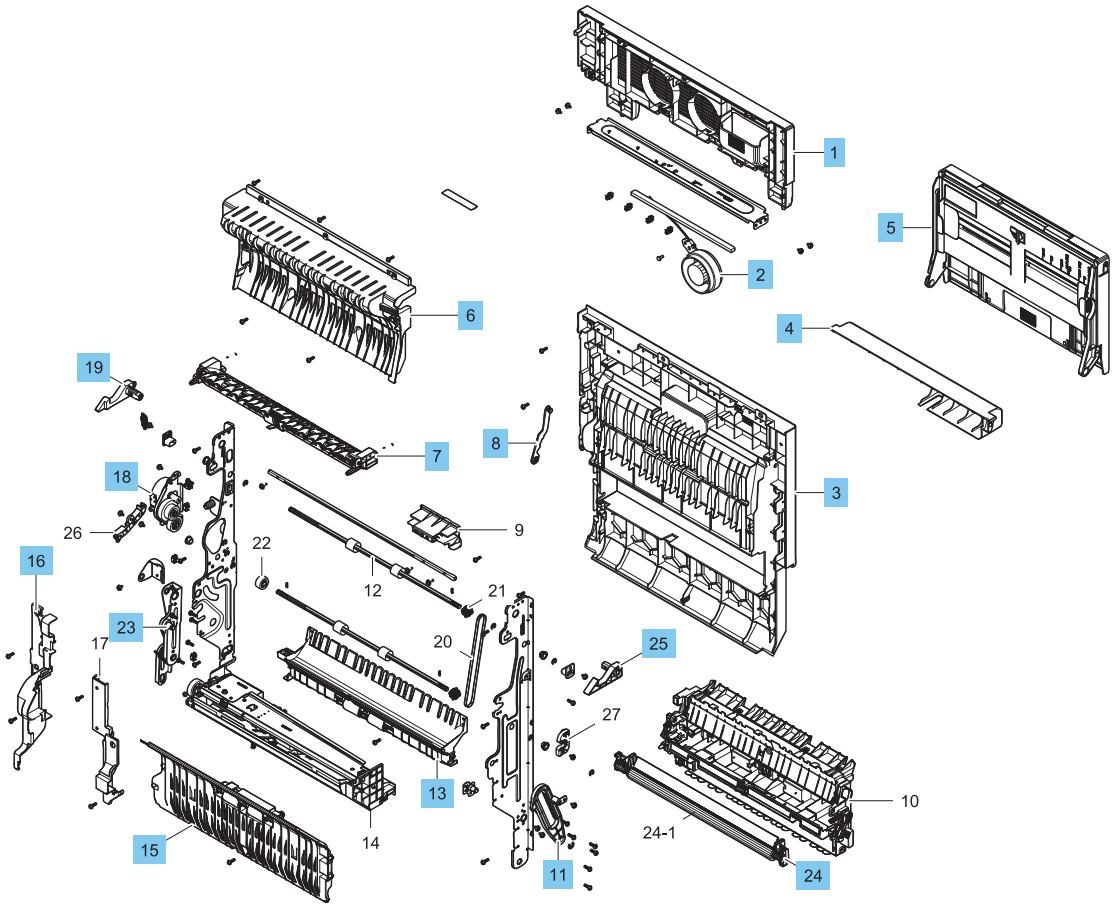


Table 2-13 Right door

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, upper side	JC63-04573B	1
2	Fan Type 6, Fuser	JC31-00160C	1
3	Cover, Right door	JC95-02105A	2
4	Cover, front Tray 1	JC63-03356C	1
5	Tray 1 Door	JC90-01668A on page 333	1
6	Guide, duplex upper	JC63-05587A	1
7	Right Door Exit	JC95-01509C	1
8	Link, side	JC63-04840B	1
11	Right Door Dampner	JC66-03235A	1
13	Right Door Duplex Lower	JC95-01519A on page 333	1
15	Right Door Take Away	JC95-01516A	1
16	Cover, harness	JC63-03361C	1
18	Motor Right Door Duplex	JC63-05638A	1
19	Right Rear Lock	JC64-00711A	1
23	Right door link rear	JC95-01518A	1
24	Transfer Roller Assy	JC82-00466A	1
25	Right Door Lock	JC64-00710A	1

Right Door, Tray 1 and Tray 1 assemblies

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right door
- Step 2: Remove the right door, Tray 1, and Tray 1 assemblies
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the right door, Tray 1, and Tray 1 assemblies.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

Click here for an additional video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC95-02080A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Right Door

JC90-01668A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Tray 1

JC95-01519A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Right Door Duplex Lower

JC33-00029B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Solenoid Tray 1

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

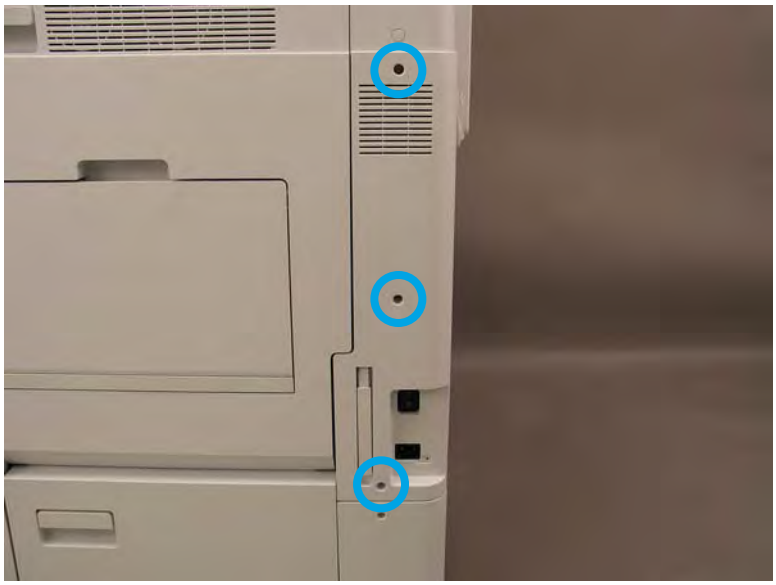
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the right door

NOTE: Remove second exit drive if installed.

1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).

Figure 2-224 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

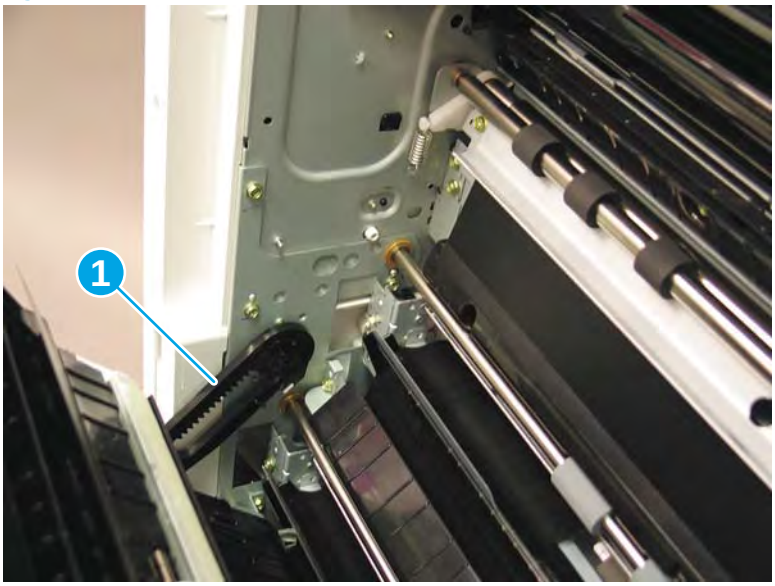
Figure 2-225 Disconnect right door connector



3. Release the right hinge (callout 1).

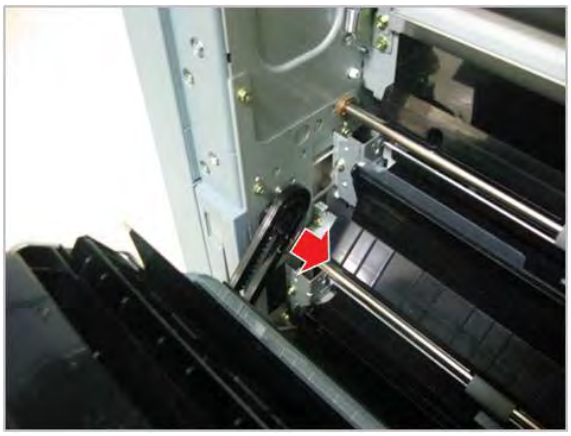
⚠ CAUTION: The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.

Figure 2-226 Release right hinge



4. Release the left dampener (callout 1).

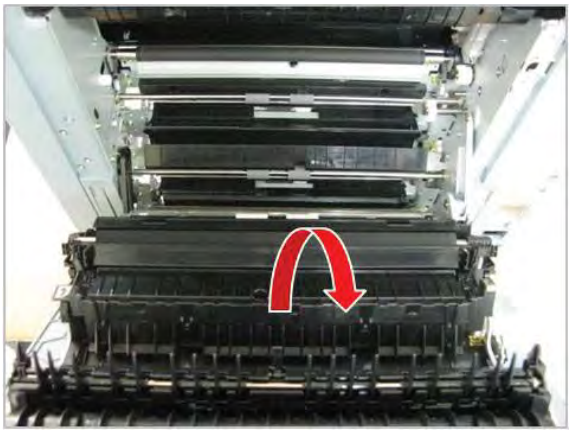
Figure 2-227 Release left dampener



5. Remove the right door.

NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.

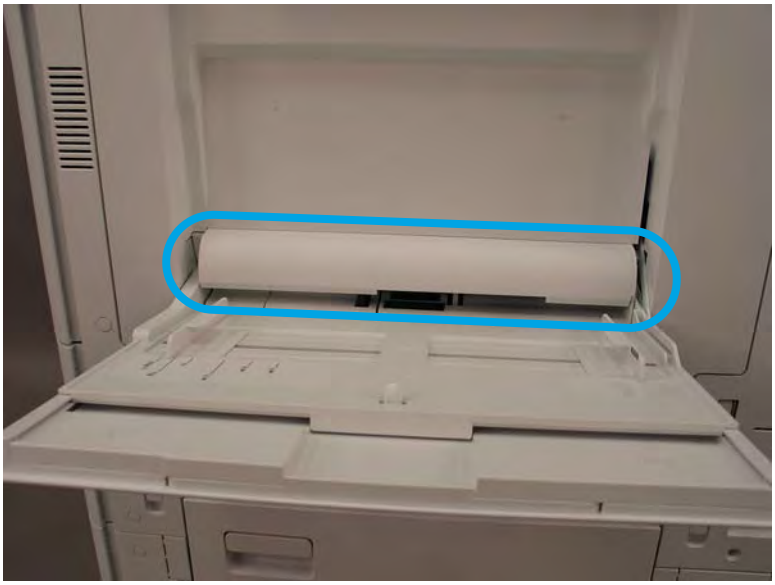
Figure 2-228 Remove right door



Step 2: Remove the right door, Tray 1, and Tray 1 assemblies

1. Open Tray 1 tray and remove the Tray 1 roller cover. Release tabs at back of the roller cover and rotate to release.

Figure 2-229 Remove Tray 1 (MP) front cover



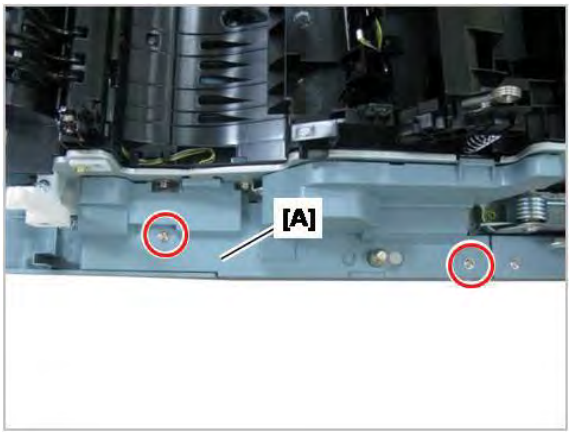
2. Open Tray 1 and release the hinge from the right, flexing the linker to remove.

Figure 2-230 Open Tray 1 (MP) and release link



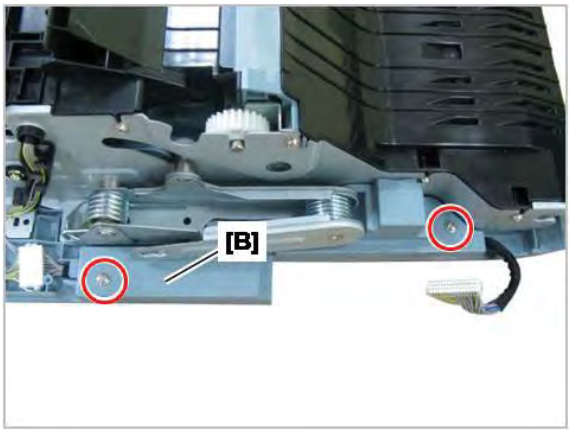
3. Remove two screws and then remove the cable cover.

Figure 2-231 Remove screws and cable cover



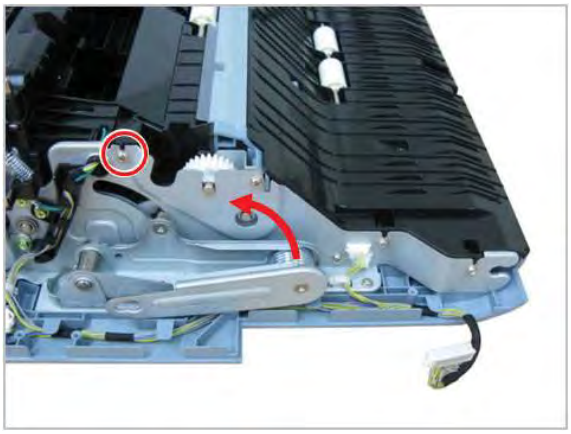
4. Remove three screws and then remove the cable cover lower.

Figure 2-232 Remove screws and cable cover lower



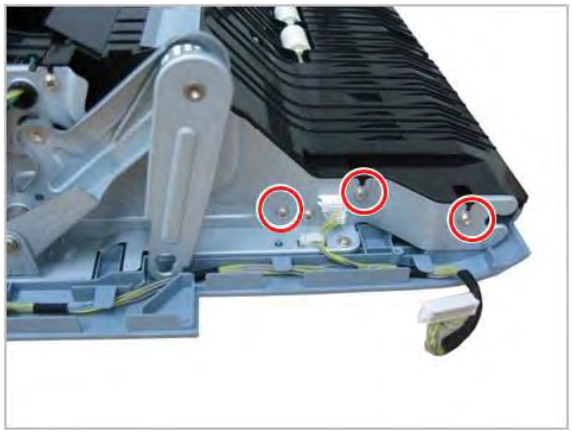
5. Remove one screw. Prop up the hinge on the door edge to keep it out of the way.

Figure 2-233 Remove screw and prop up hinge



6. Remove three screws.

Figure 2-234 Remove screws



7. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-235 Remove screw



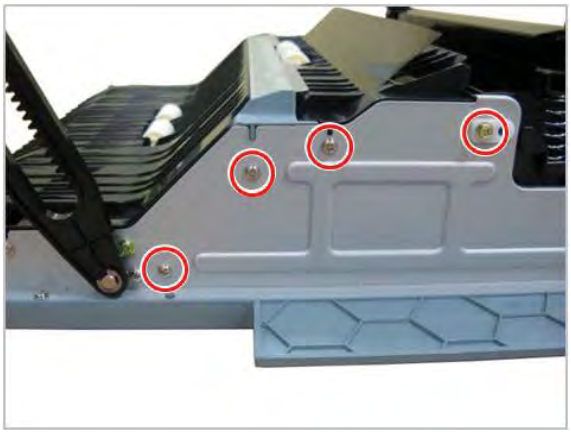
8. Remove two screws from the other side of the door.

Figure 2-236 Remove screws



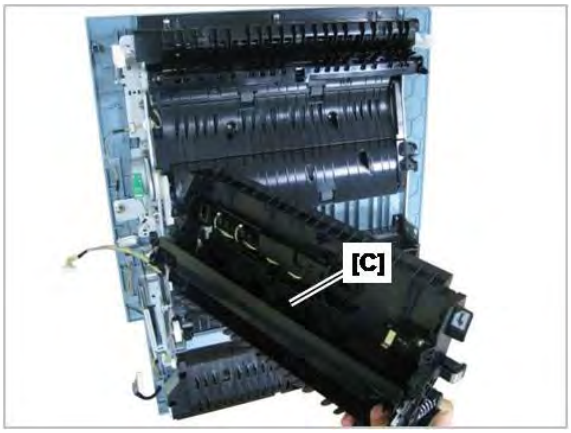
9. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-237 Remove screws



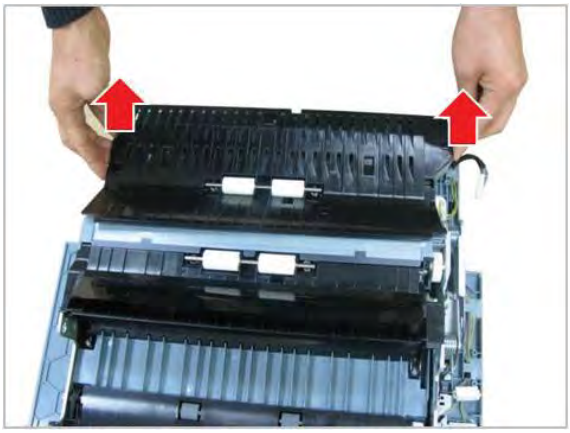
10. Swing out the guide feed (C) to the right. Remove the hinge pin from the front.

Figure 2-238 Remove hinge pin



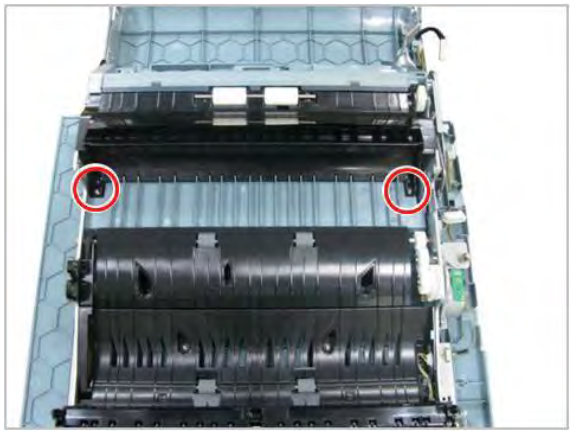
11. Gently lift up the right door.

Figure 2-239 Lift right door duplex lower



12. Remove two screws.

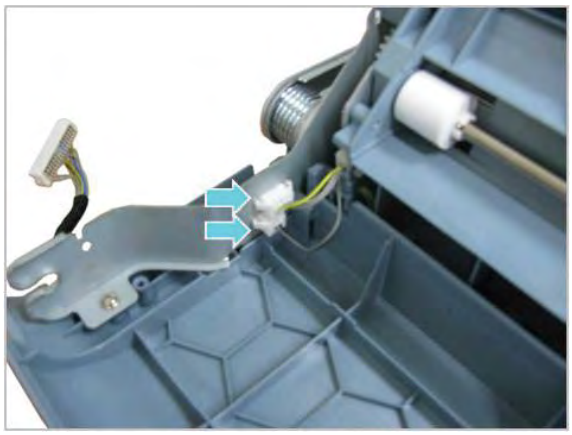
Figure 2-240 Remove screws



13. Disconnect three connectors near the hinge.

IMPORTANT: Make sure the connector couplers stay attached to the door.

Figure 2-241 Disconnect connectors



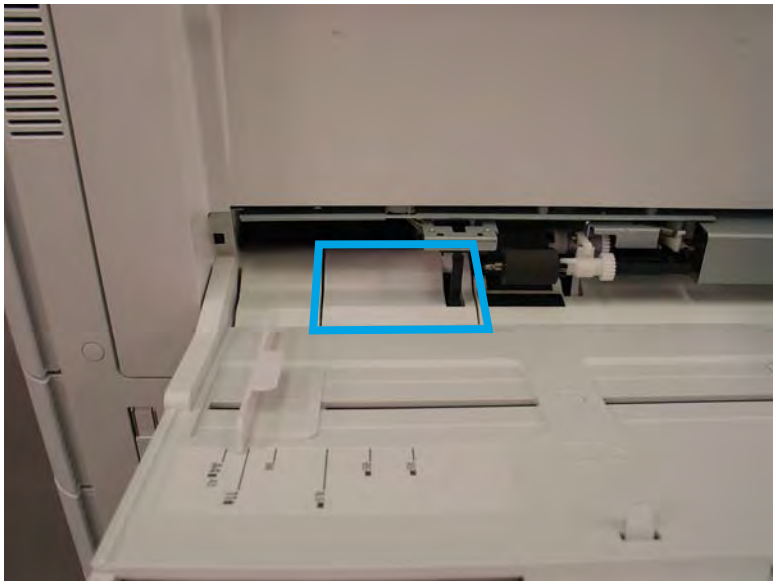
14. Remove one screw, and then remove the Tray 1 unit.

Figure 2-242 Remove screw and Tray 1 (MP) unit



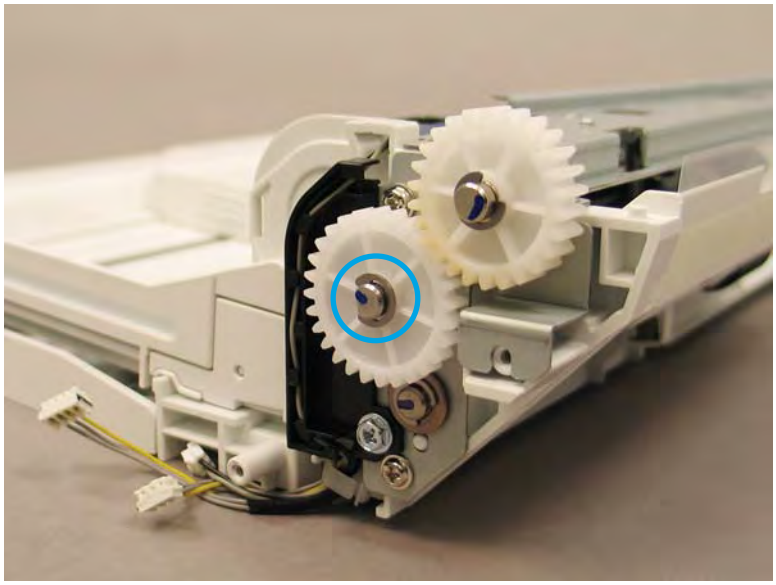
15. Remove the Tray 1 cover base.

Figure 2-243 Remove Tray 1 (MP) cover base



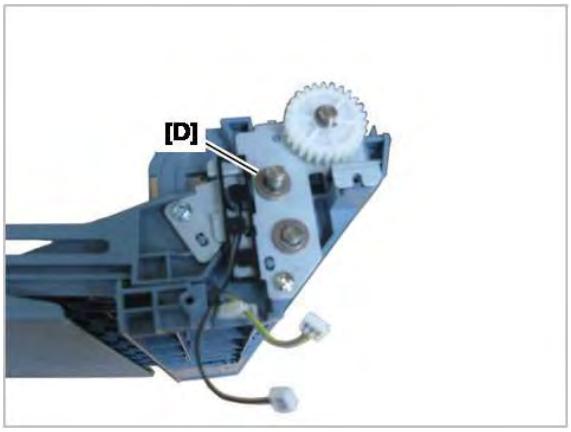
16. Remove the E-ring, and then remove the gear (C).

Figure 2-244 Remove e-ring and gear



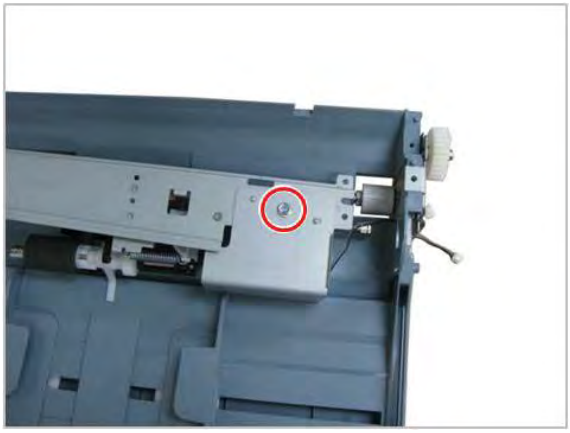
17. Remove the E-ring, and then remove the bushing (D).

Figure 2-245 Remove e-ring and bushing



18. Remove one screw, and then remove the Bracket-Solenoid.

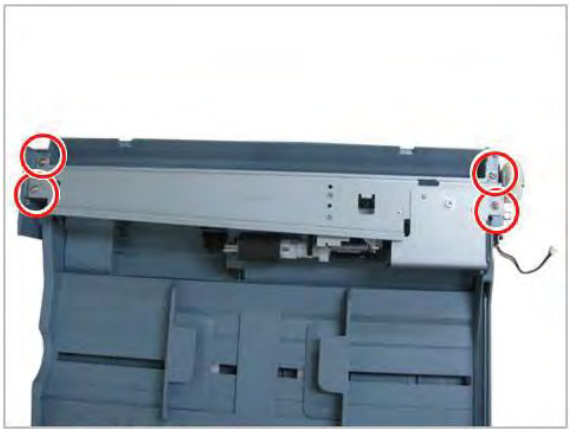
Figure 2-246 Remove screw and bracket-solenoid



NOTE: Reinstallation note: Route the cable before putting the cover back on during reinstallation.

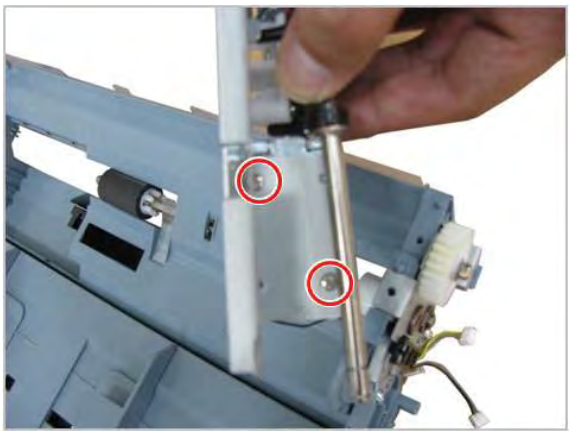
19. Remove four screws, and then release the Tray 1 bracket pickup. Release the cable from the cable harness.

Figure 2-247 Release MP bracket pickup and release cable from harness



20. Release the cable from the cable retainer, and release the cable from the cable harness. Remove two screws, and then remove the MP solenoid.

Figure 2-248 Release cable and remove MP solenoid



NOTE: Reinstallation note: When reinstalling, the paper stopper needs to be located in the appropriate slot in the housing.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tray 1

Figure 2-249 Tray 1

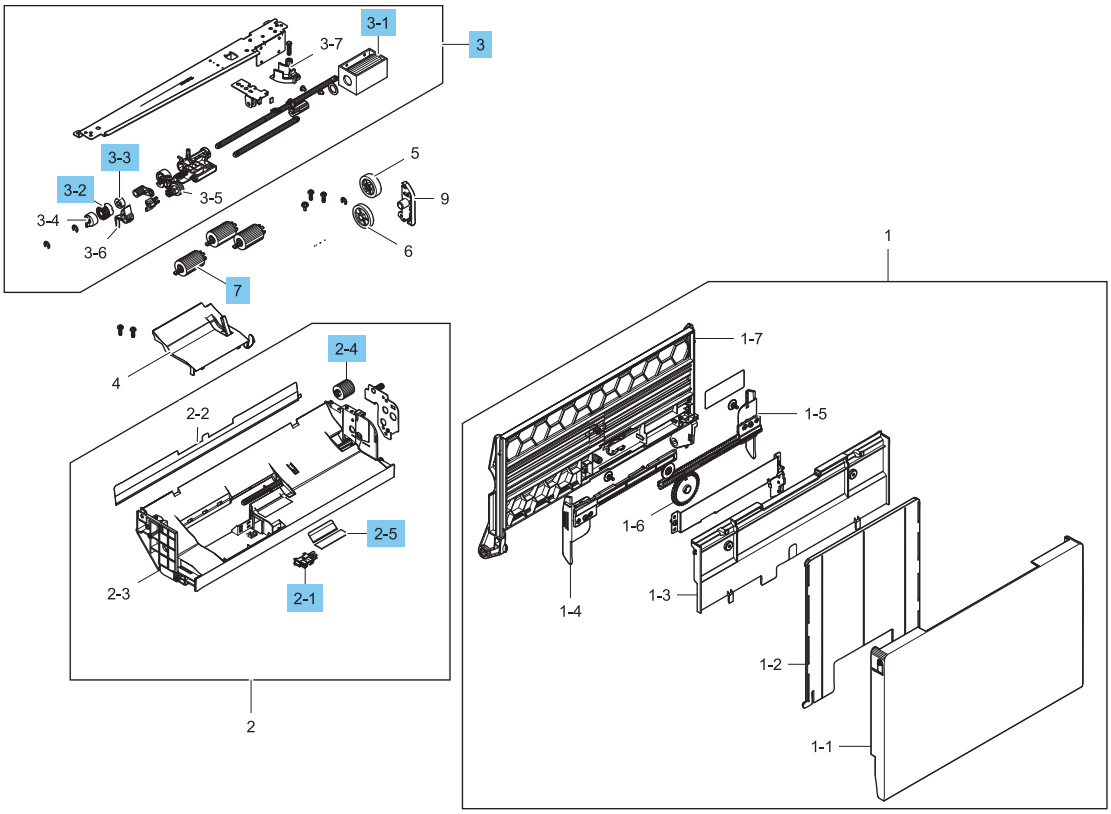


Table 2-14 Tray 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2–1	Photo interrupter	0604-001393 on page 356	1
2–4	Coupler, Torque Limiter	JC67-00455A	1
2–5	Seal, pad tray 1	JC62-01085A	1
3	Tray 1 bracket pickup	JC90-01125B	1
3–1	Solenoid, tray 1	JC33-00029B on page 333	1
3–2	Tray 1 One Way Clutch	JC90-00918A	1
3–3	Clutch, P_one way	JC66-00977A	2
7	Tray 1 roller (service)	JC93-00540B	3
7	Tray 1 roller (kit)	X3A92-67918	3

Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller assembly part number	
JC93-00540B	Tray 1 Main Rollers
X3A92-67918	Tray 1 roller kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

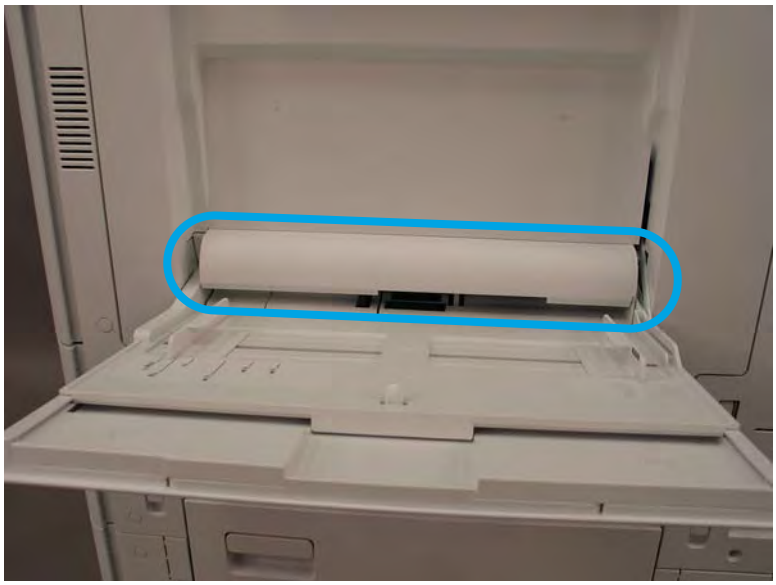
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller

1. Open Tray 1. Use a small flat blade screwdriver to release the tab on the right side of the cover.

NOTE: The plastic tabs on the edges of the cover might require extra pressure to remove.

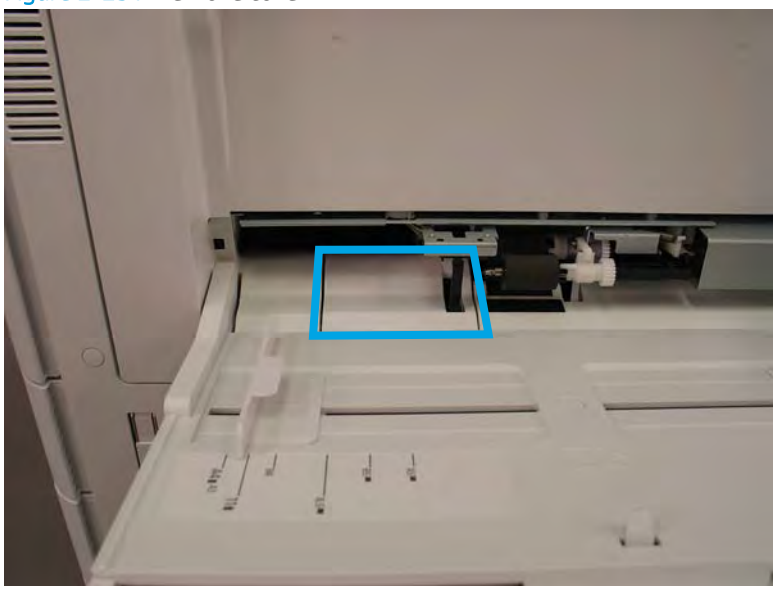
Figure 2-250 Remove the cover



2. Remove the cover shown using a small flat blade screwdriver to release the tab on the right side of the cover.

NOTE: The flag, it will need to be moved out of the way to remove cover.

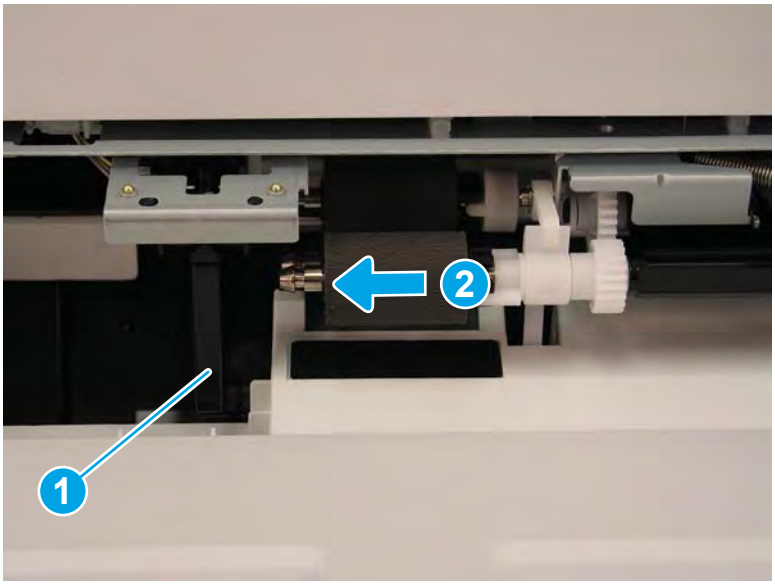
Figure 2-251 Remove cover



3. Release the small tab and remove the Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller (callout 2). The flag (callout 1) will need to be moved out of the way to release rollers. Use caution and remove slowly to avoid loosening the parts behind the rollers. If these parts come loose, they might fall into the printer and will be difficult to retrieve. Note the location of all components.

NOTE: It is recommended to replace all three rollers at the same time.

Figure 2-252 Remove the Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller



4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller

▲ After the replacement rollers are installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select Tray X Rollers.

viii. Select Tray 1 Roller Kit.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door exit

Figure 2-253 Right door exit

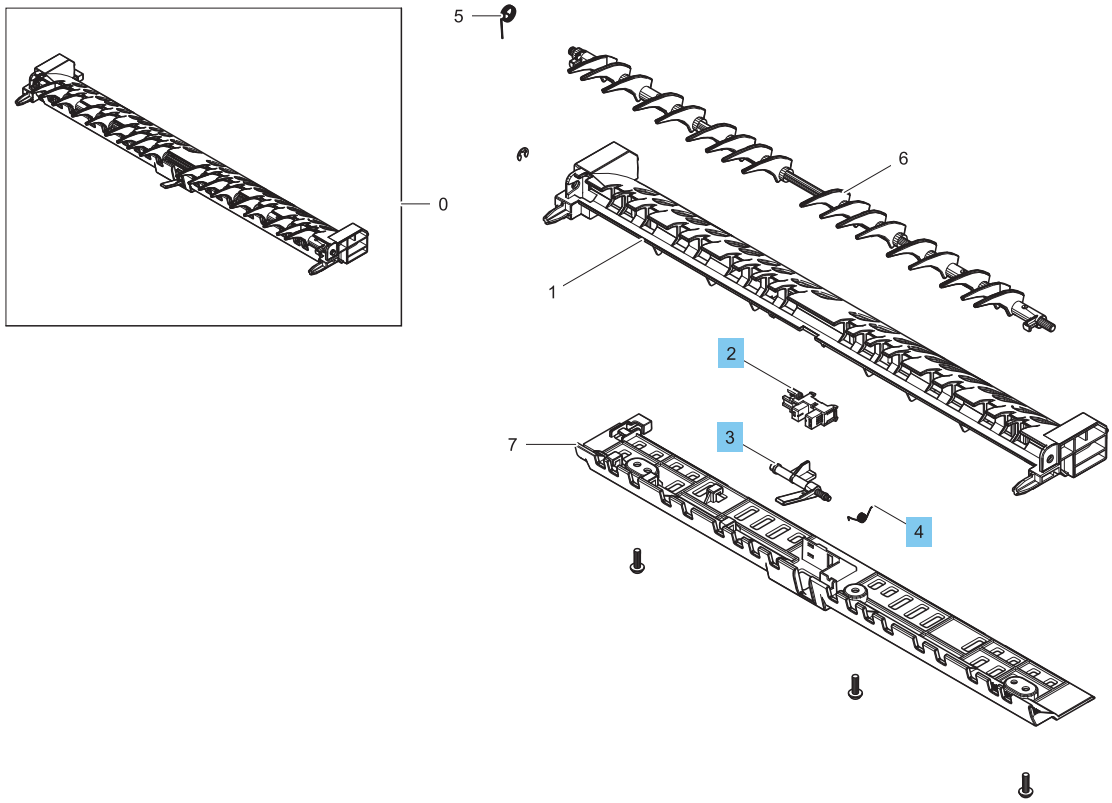


Table 2-15 Right door exit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Photo interrupter	0604-001393 on page 356	1
3	Actuator, fuser out	JC66-03307A	1
4	Spring, TS	6107-001737	1

Right door duplex

Figure 2-254 Right door duplex

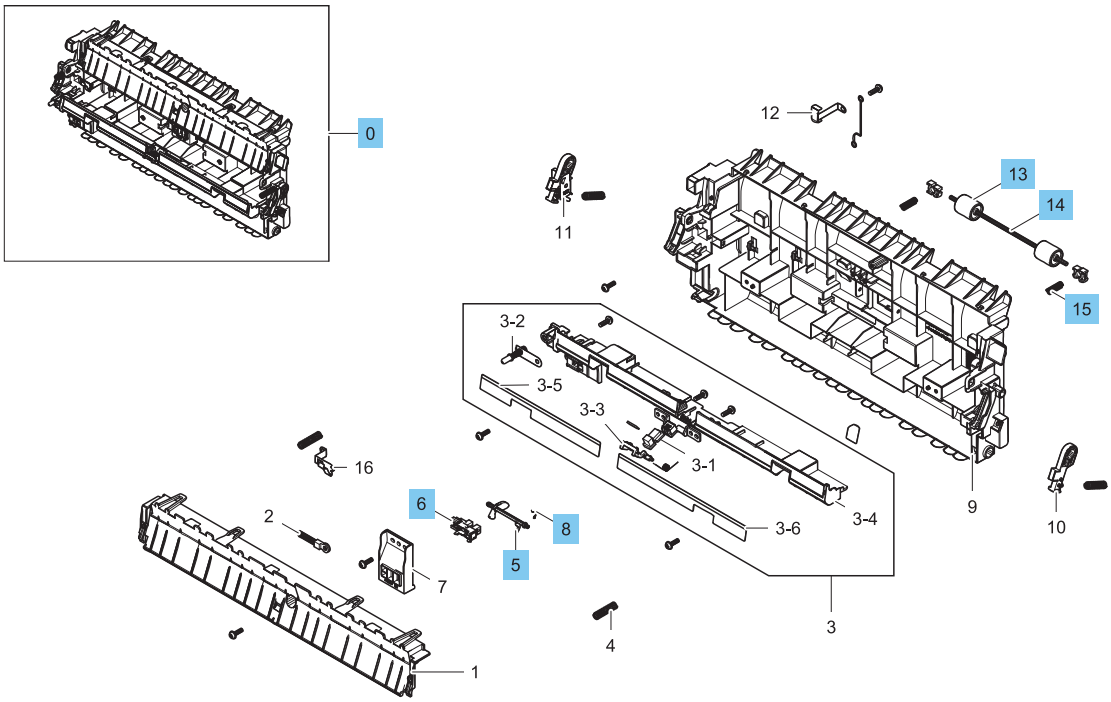


Table 2-16 Right door duplex

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Right Door Duplex	JC95-01924A	1
5	Actuator, duplex 2	JC66-02180A	1
6	Photo interrupter	0604-001393 on page 356	1
8	Spring, TS	6107-001737	1
13	Roller idle	JC66-02289B	2
14	Shaft, roller idle L	JC66-02354A	1
15	Spring, CS	6107-001731	2

Duplex sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the duplex sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the duplex sensor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

0604-001393

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Duplex sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the duplex sensor

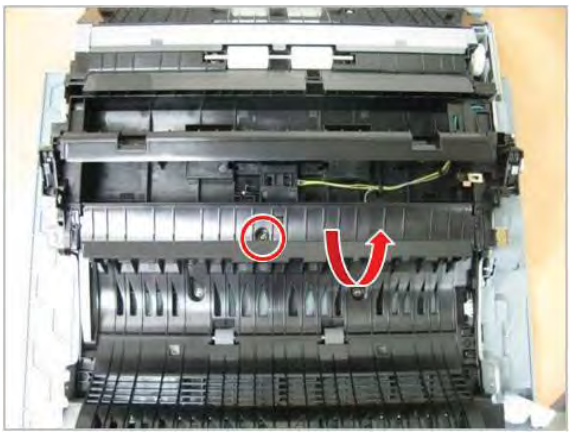
1. Remove the transfer roller assembly. Push the rear side to release the pin and lift up to release the sensor.

   Figure 2-255 Remove transfer roller assembly

2. Remove one self-tapping screw. Open the Guide-transfer roller Upper by releasing four plastic snaps.

   Figure 2-256 Open guide-transfer roller upper

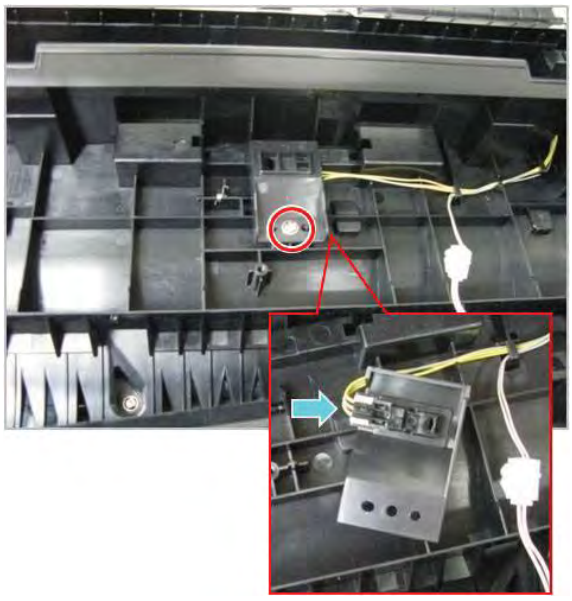
   

NOTE: Reinstallation notes:

- Make sure the top housing locates via the plastic locator pins on either side and snap into place.
- Make sure the plastic tabs are installed properly. Move the assembly into position from a 45° angle. Make sure the springs are located correctly and then snap into place.

3. Remove one screw. Turn over the Holder-DUP SNR. Disconnect the connector and remove the duplex sensor.

Figure 2-257 Disconnect connector and remove duplex sensor



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF (LX/dn models)

Figure 2-258 ADF (LX/dn models)

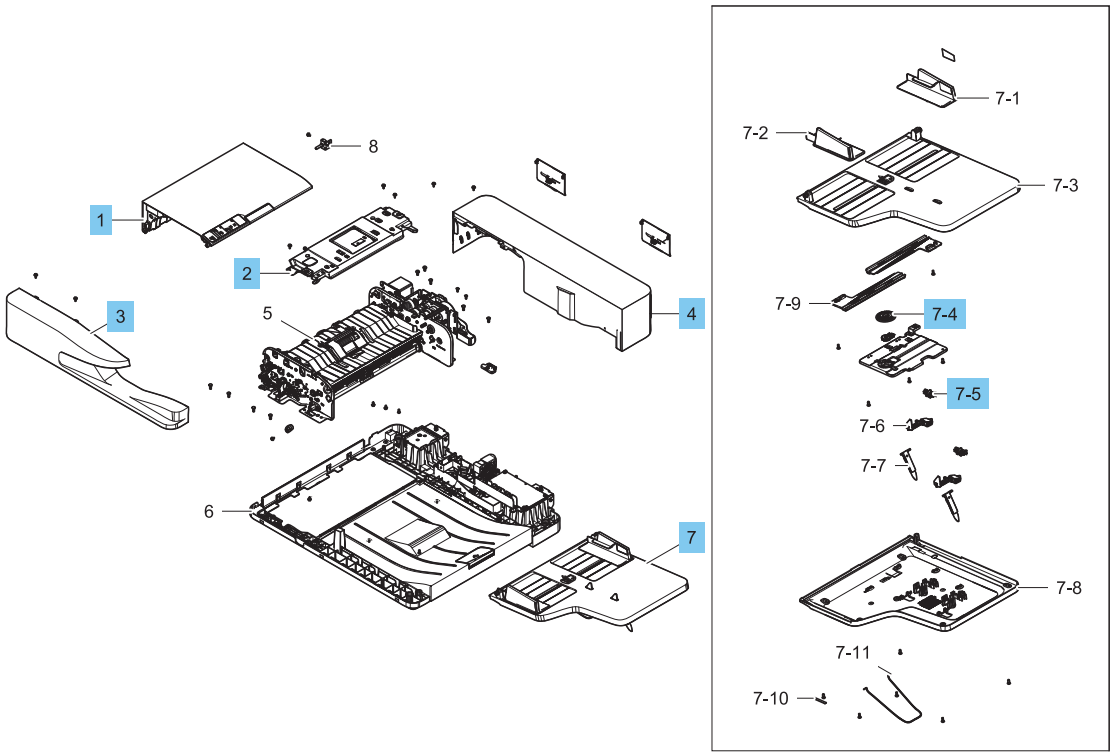


Table 2-17 ADF (LX/dn models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	ADF cover open (LX/dn)	JC97-04853A on page 361	1
2	ADF pickup (LX/dn)	JC97-04856A	1
3	ADF, front cover (LX/dn)	JC63-05563A	1
4	ADF, cover rear (LX/dn)	JC63-05561A	1
7	ADF stacker (LX/dn)	JC97-04859A on page 367	1
7-4	ADF pinion gear (LX/DN)	JC66-04079A	1
7-5	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	1

Document feeder (ADF) jam access cover (LX/dn models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover (LX/dn models)
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) jam access cover
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the jam access cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04853A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Jam access cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

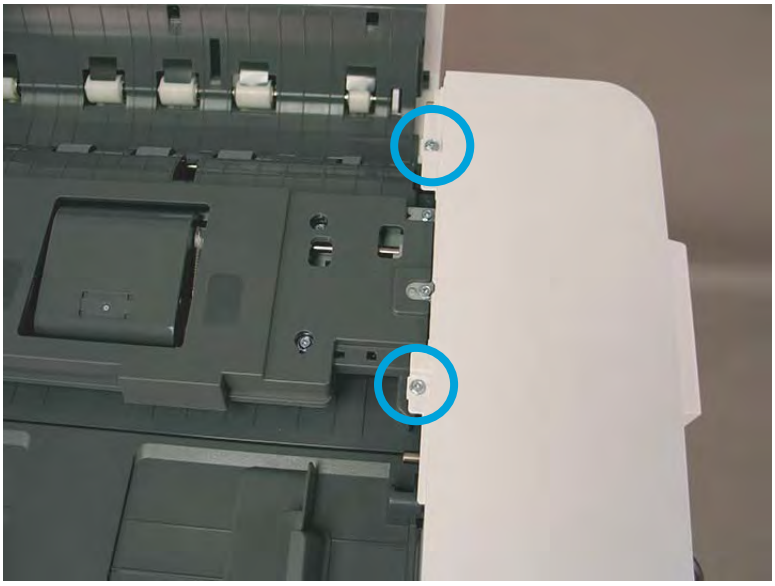
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover (LX/dn models)

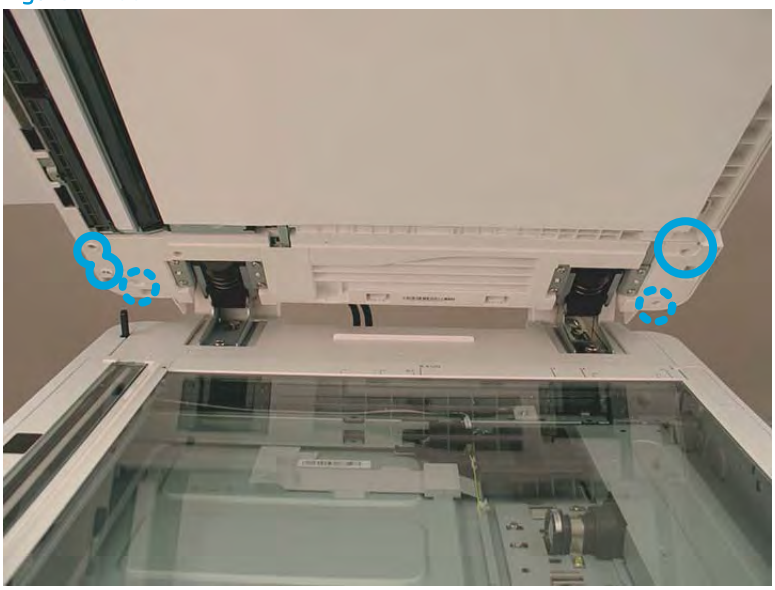
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-259 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-260 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



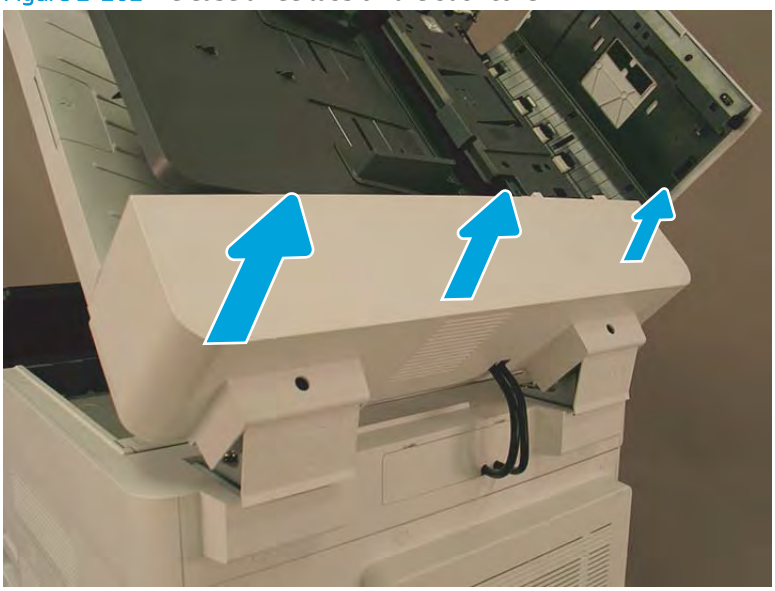
3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-261 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.

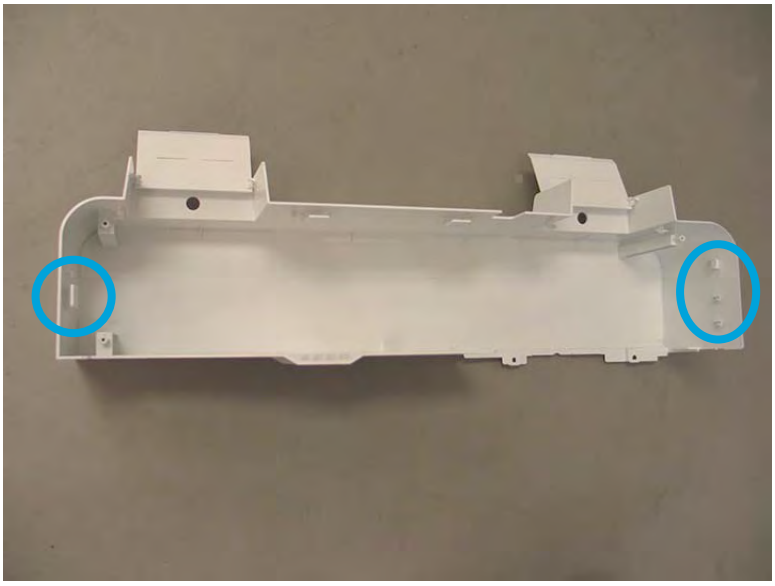


4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

Figure 2-262 Release three tabs on the back cover.



NOTE: The tabs on the underside of the cover.



5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

Figure 2-263 Remove back cover.

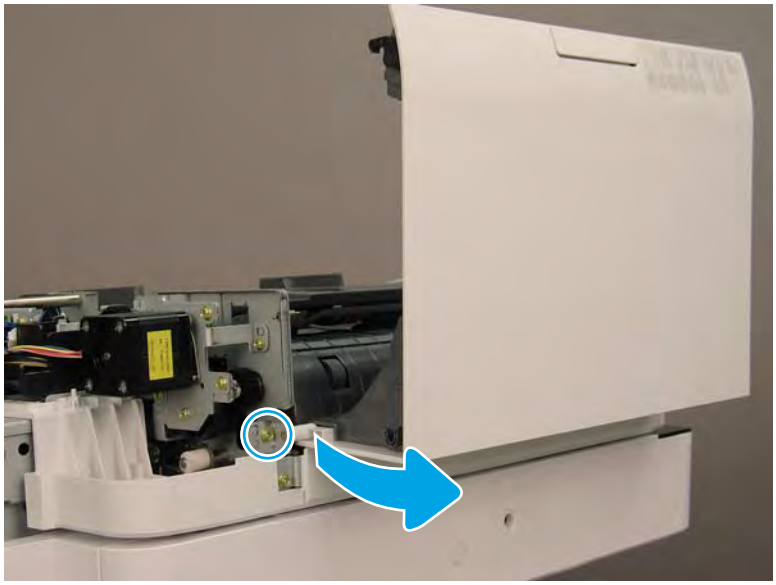


TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) jam access cover

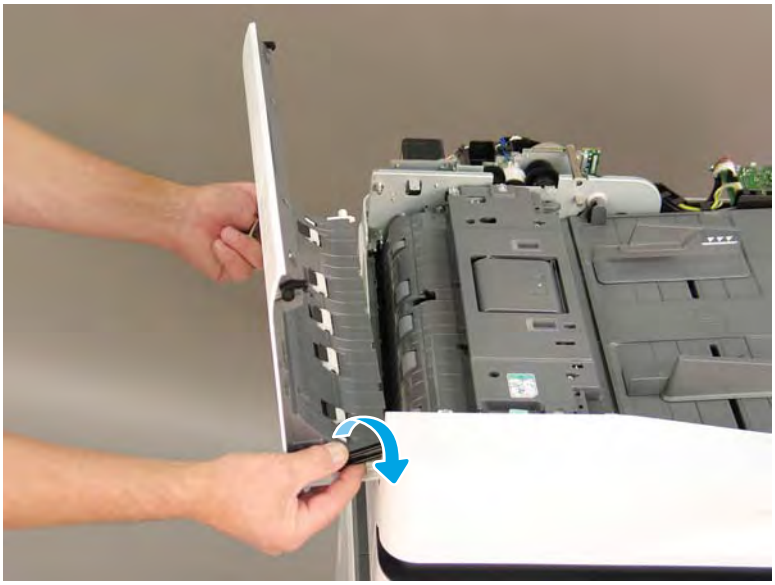
1. Open the jam access cover, and then remove one screw.

Figure 2-264 Remove the jam access cover screw



2. Remove the pivot pin, and then pivot the cover and release the hinge to remove the jam access cover.

Figure 2-265 Remove the jam access cover



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Document feeder (ADF) input tray (LX/dn models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover (LX/z models)
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder (ADF) input tray
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder input tray.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04859A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- ADF stacker (LX/dn models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

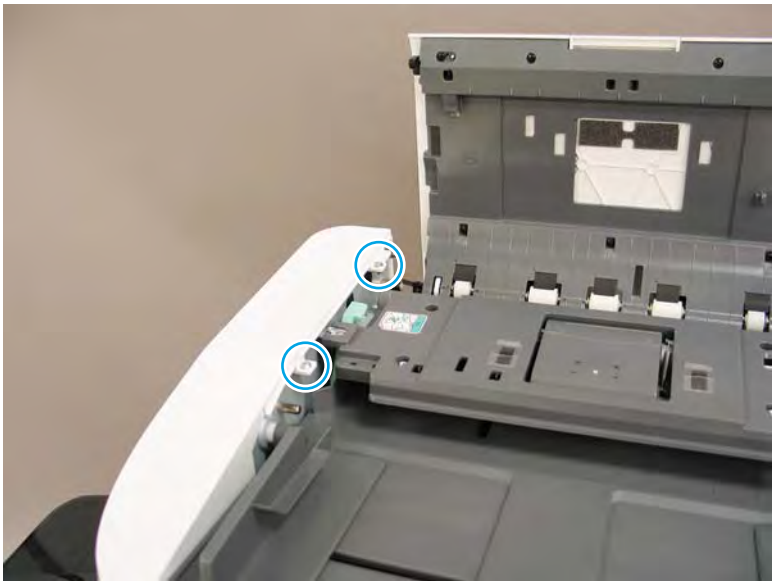
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover (LX/z models)

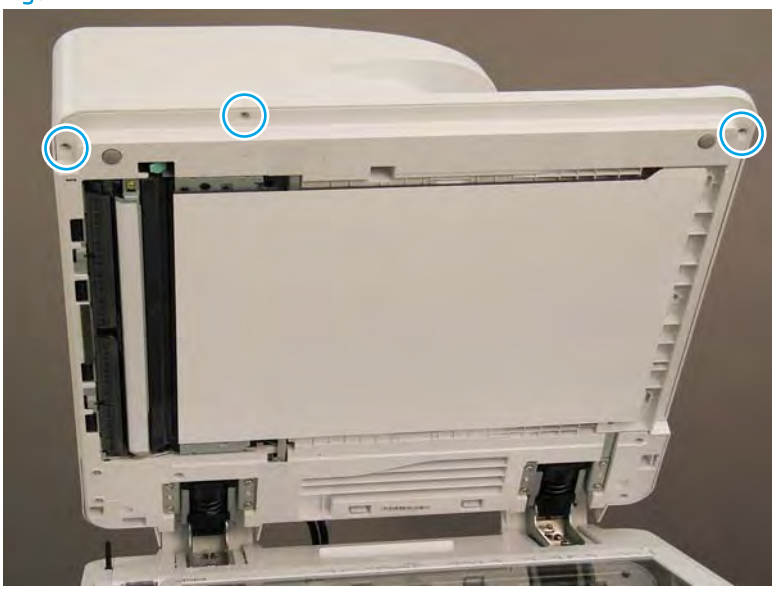
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 2-266 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

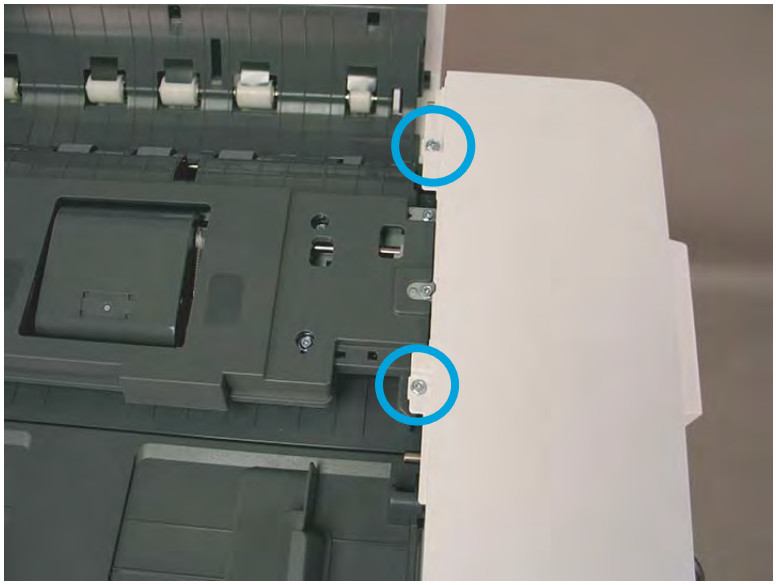
Figure 2-267 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

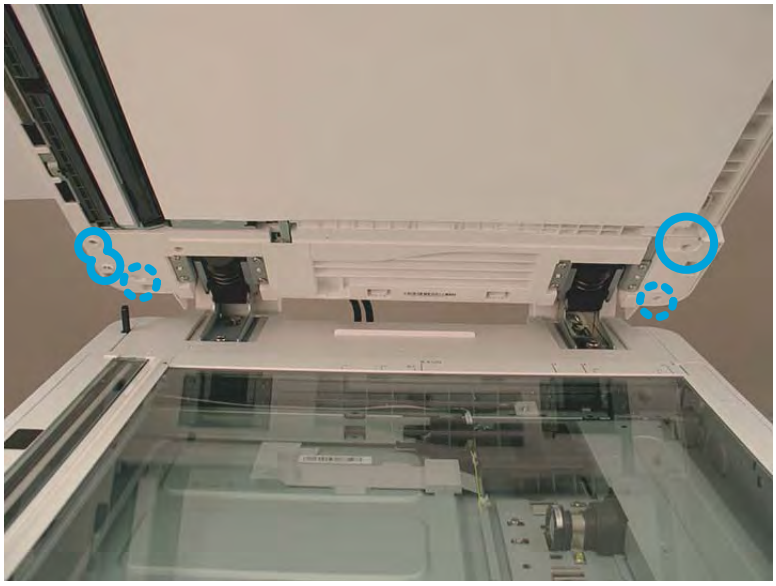
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-268 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-269 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



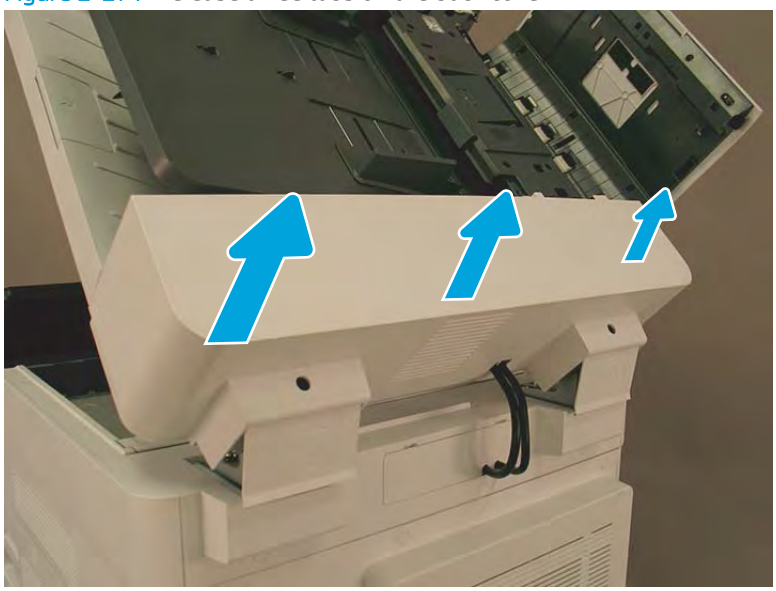
3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-270 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.

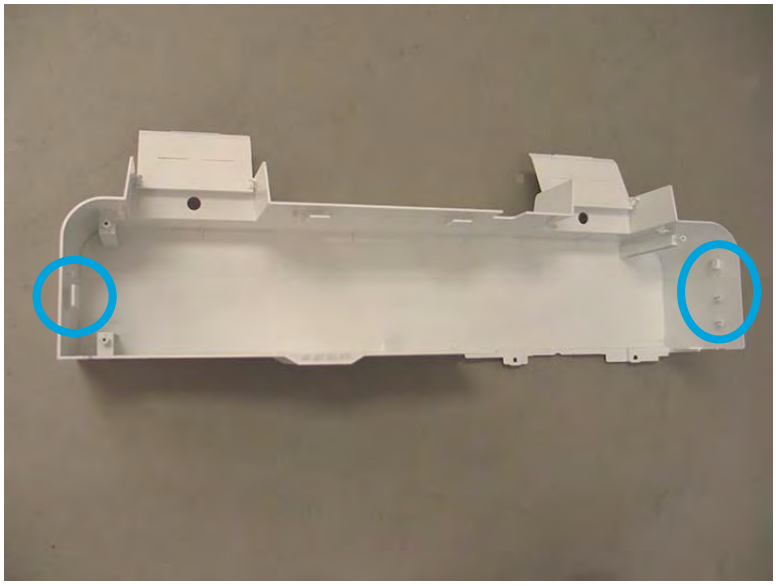


4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

Figure 2-271 Release three tabs on the back cover.



NOTE: The tabs on the underside of the cover.



5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

Figure 2-272 Remove back cover.

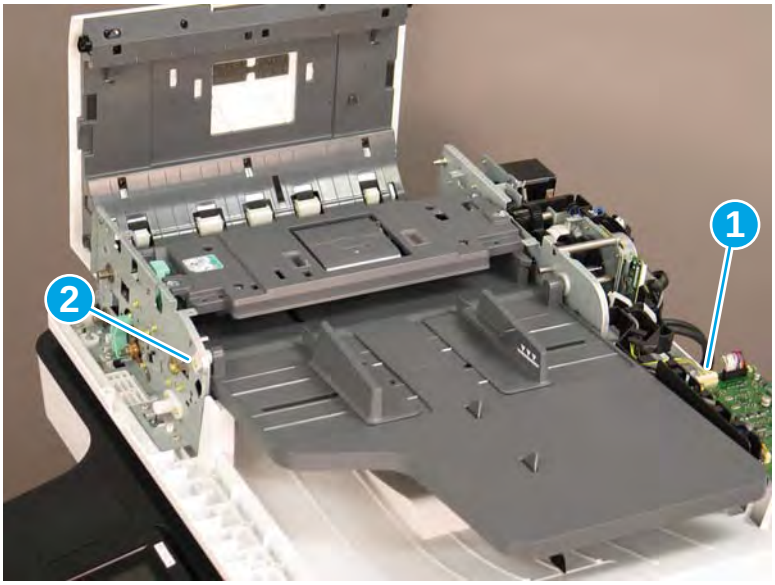


TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

Step 3: Remove the document feeder (ADF) input tray

1. Disconnect one connector on document feeder board (callout 1), remove one screw, and then remove the hinge pin (callout 2).

Figure 2-273 Remove the input tray connector, screw, and hinge pin



2. Remove the input tray. Carefully guide the cable out of the chassis while removing the tray.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Document feeder (ADF) contact image sensor (CIS) (LX/dn models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover
- Step 3: Remove the pick and feed roller assembly
- Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the CIS assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC97-04722A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Contact Image Sensor (CIS) (LX/dn models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

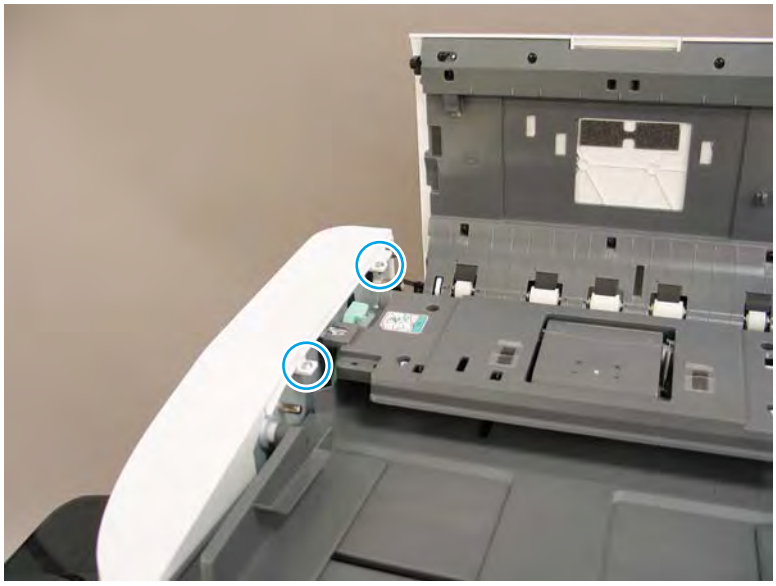
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover

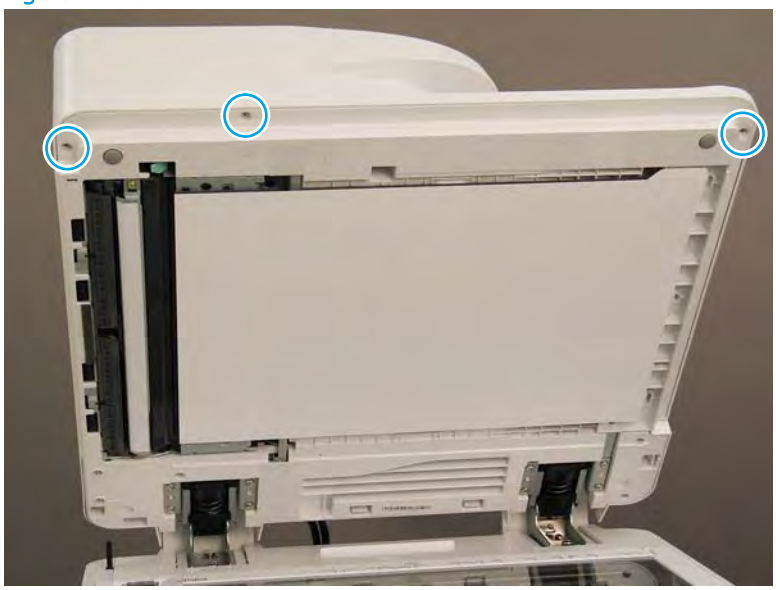
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 2-274 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

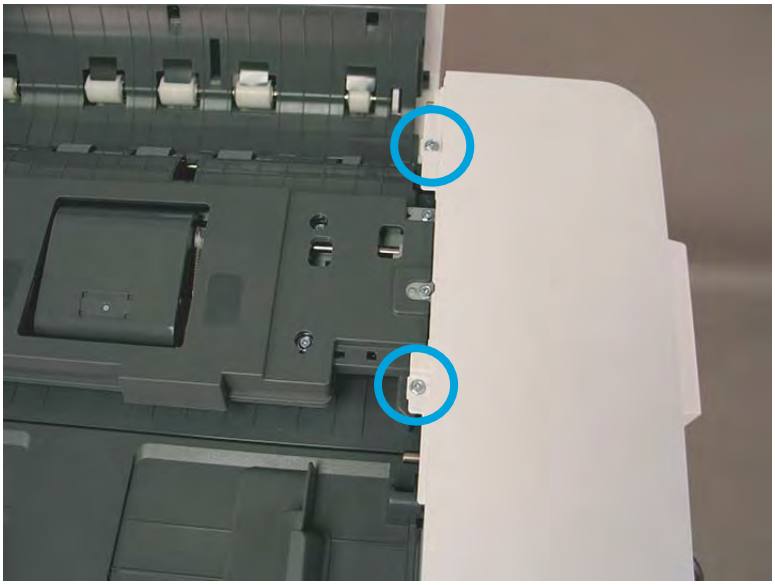
Figure 2-275 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

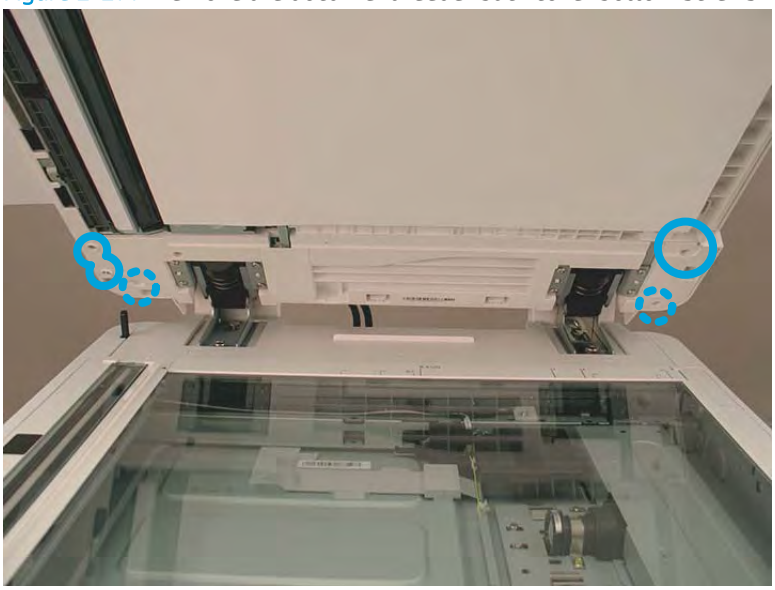
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-276 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-277 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



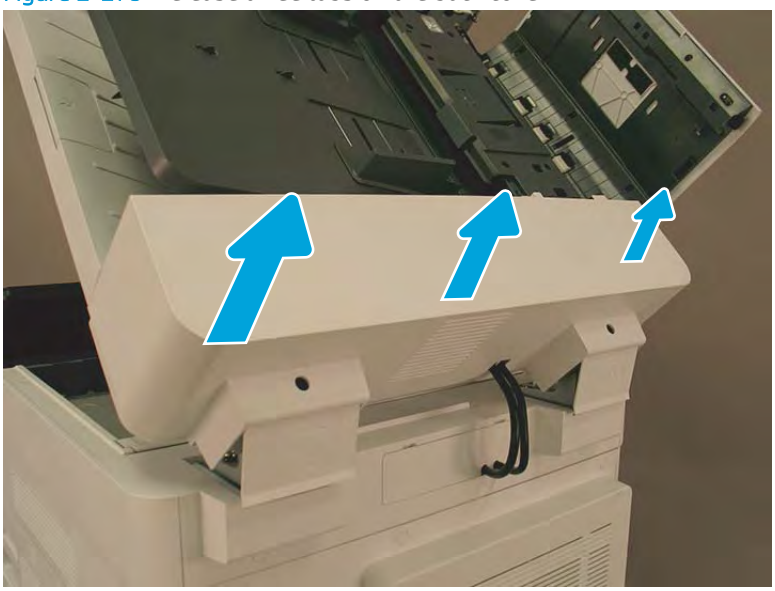
3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-278 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.

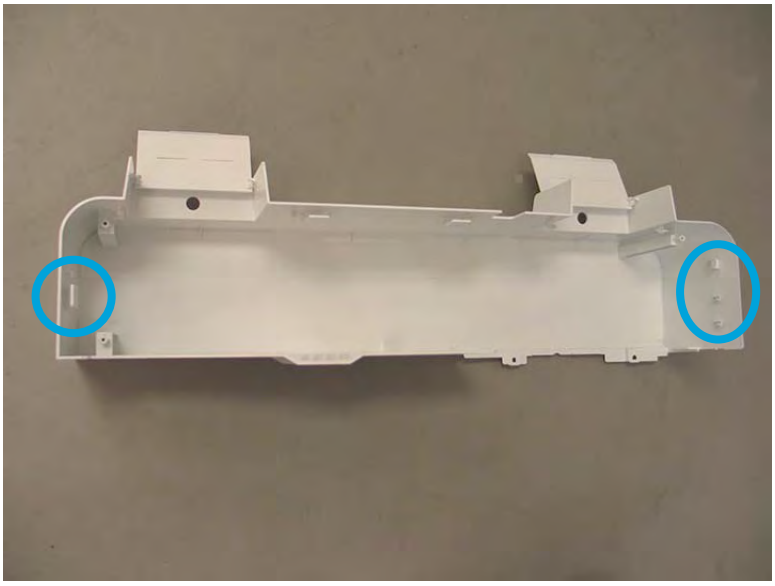


4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

Figure 2-279 Release three tabs on the back cover.



NOTE: The tabs on the underside of the cover.



5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

Figure 2-280 Remove back cover.



TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

Step 3: Remove the pick and feed roller assembly

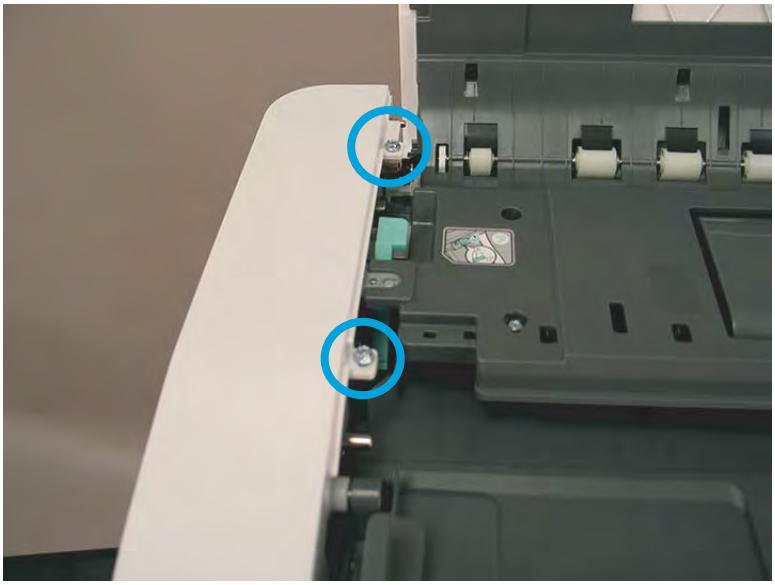
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-281 Remove four screws.



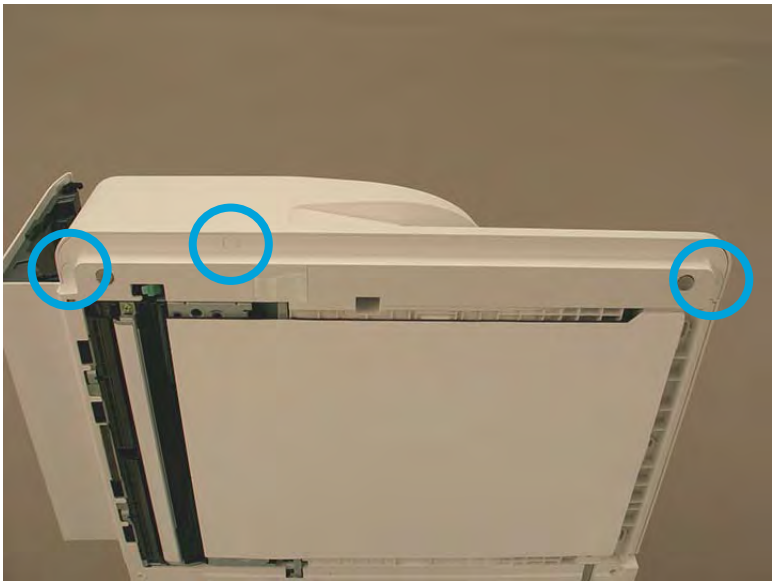
2. Remove two screws on the front cover.

Figure 2-282 Remove 2 screws on front cover.



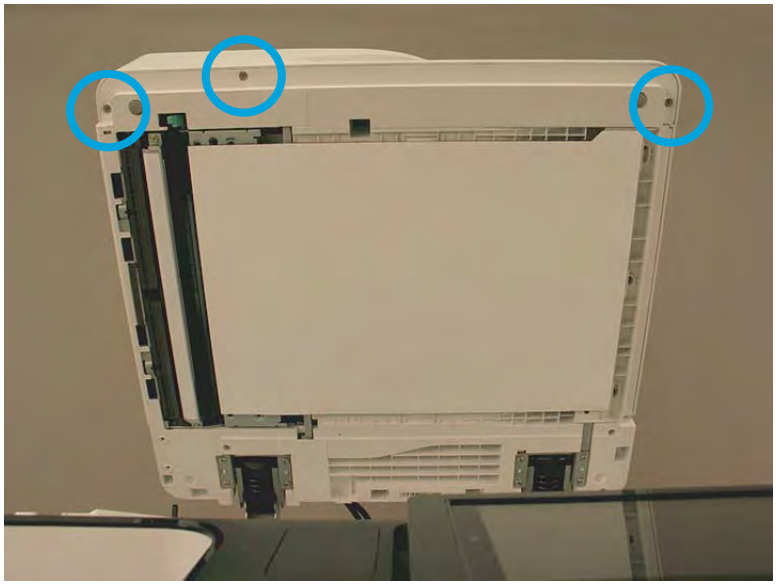
3. Open the ADF and then remove three screw caps.

Figure 2-283 Remove 2 screw caps.



4. Remove three screws and, then remove front cover.

Figure 2-284 Remove three screws and, then remove front cover.



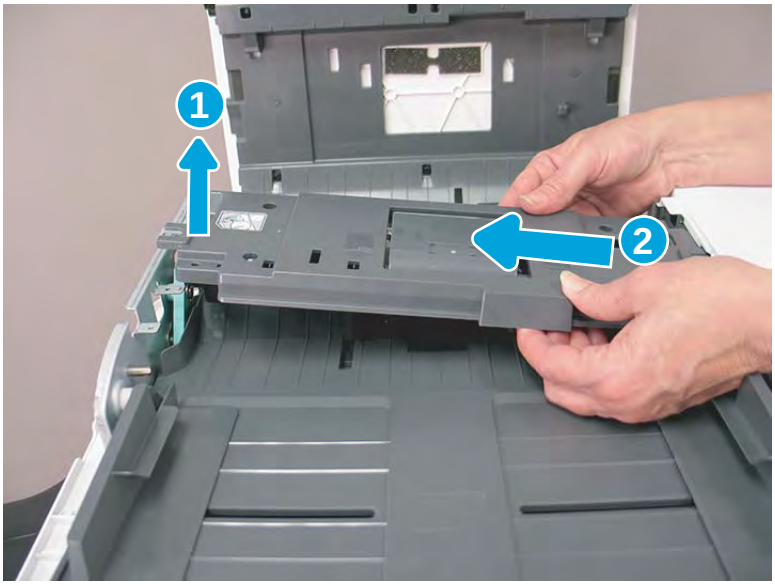
5. Rotate the pick/feed roller assembly to release the sheet metal tab from ADF frame.

Figure 2-285 Rotate pick/feed roller assembly to release sheet metal tab from ADF frame.



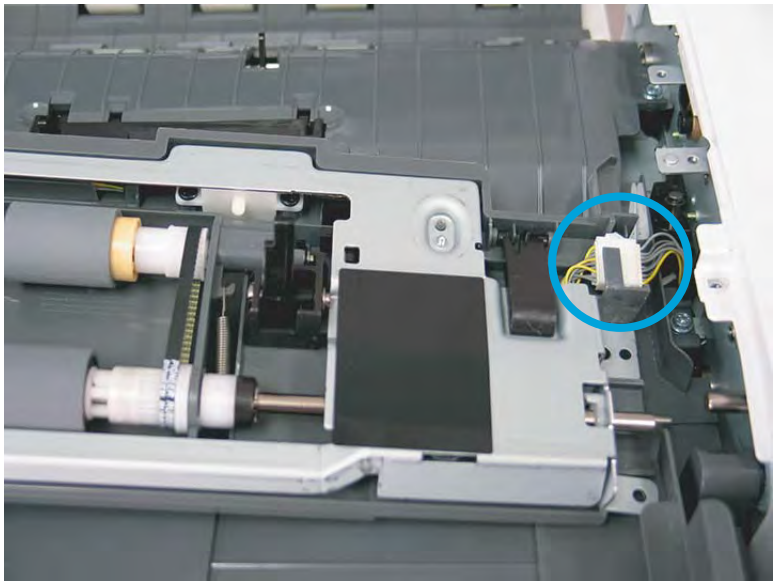
6. To remove the pick/feed roller assembly lift up on the front side (callout 1) and, then slide towards the front (callout 2) to release the pick/feed roller assy.

Figure 2-286 Release the pick/feed roller assembly.



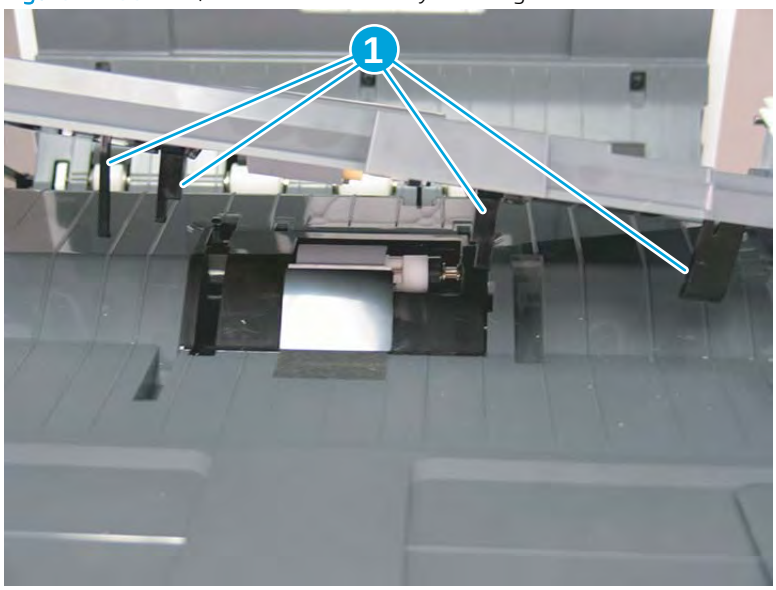
7. Rrotate the roller assembly over, and then disconnect one connectors. Remove the document feeder pick roller assembly.

Figure 2-287 Remove the document feeder pick roller assembly



TIP: Note the four flags (callout 1) on the bottom of the pick/feed roller assembly. When reinstalling, hold up the flags while reinstall to allow for proper installation.

Figure 2-288 Pick/Feed roller assembly four flags.

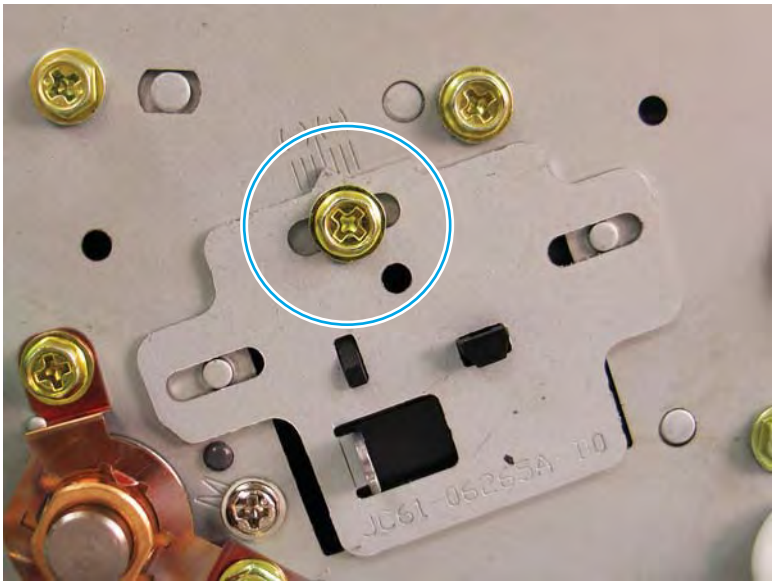


Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly

1. Remove one screw, and then remove the CIS front alignment cover.

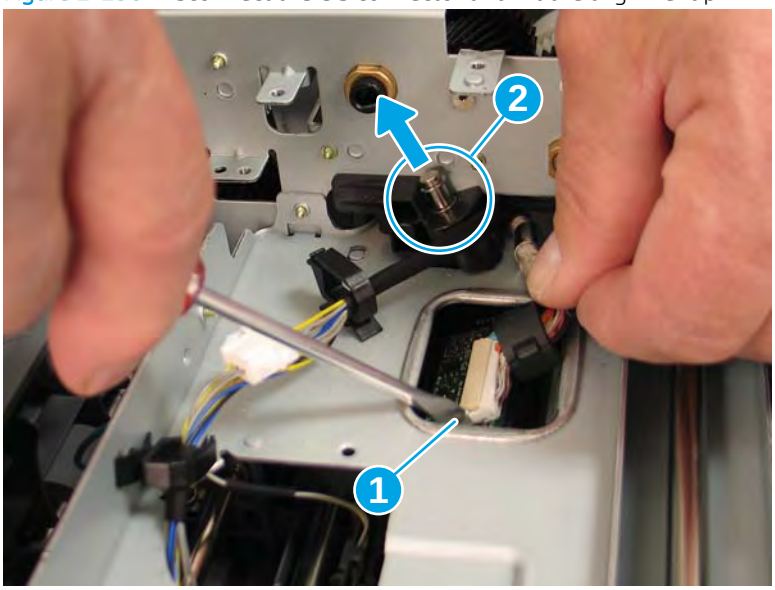
Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the CIS front alignment cover for reinstallation; the cover must reinstalled with the same orientation.

Figure 2-289 Remove the CIS front alignment cover screws



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then lift the alignment pin to release the CIS assembly (callout 2).

Figure 2-290 Disconnect the CIS connector and lift the alignment pin



3. Remove the CIS assembly from the chassis.

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Document feeder (ADF) main motor (LX/dn models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover
- Step 2: Remove the main motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the main motor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC31-00163A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Main motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

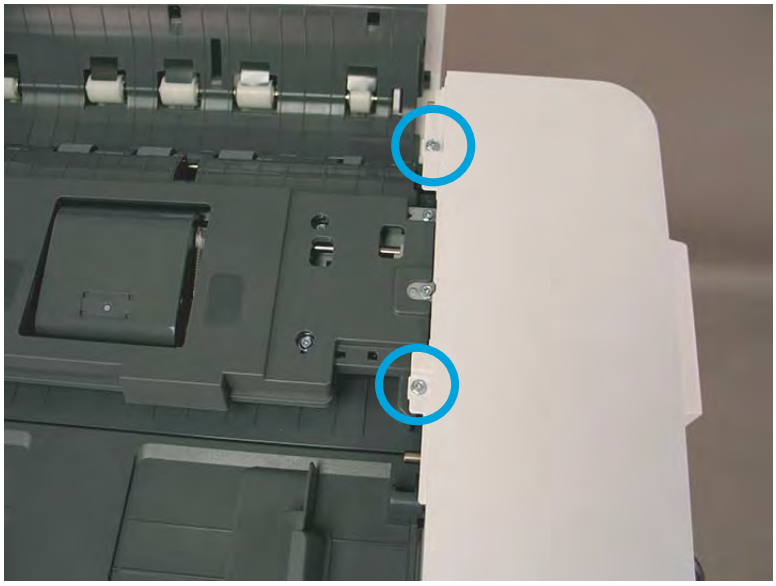
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

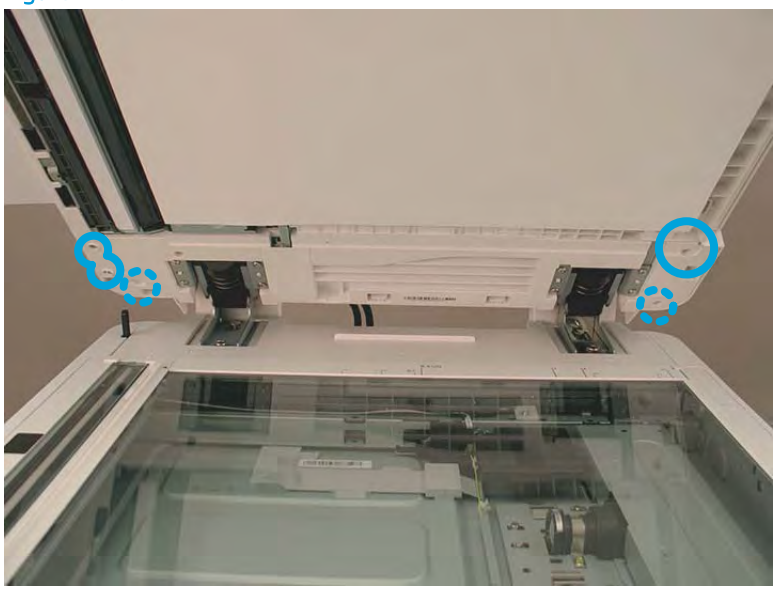
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-291 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-292 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



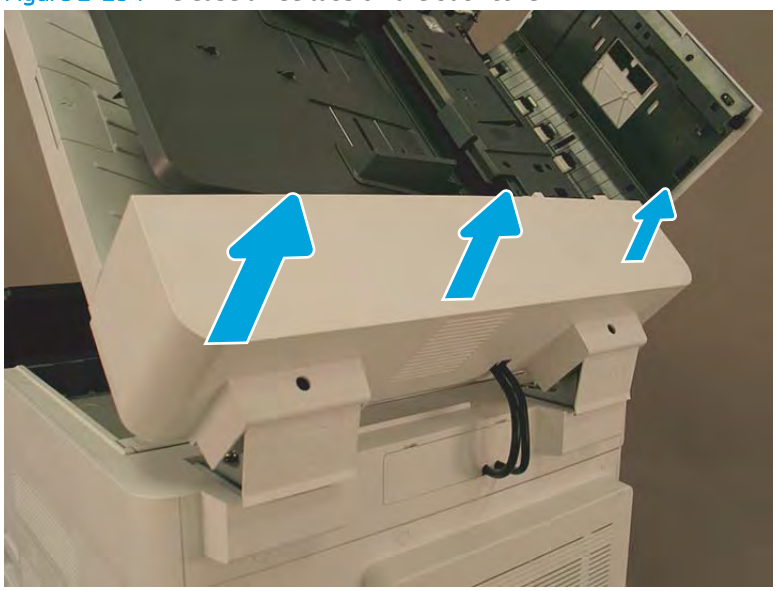
3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-293 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.

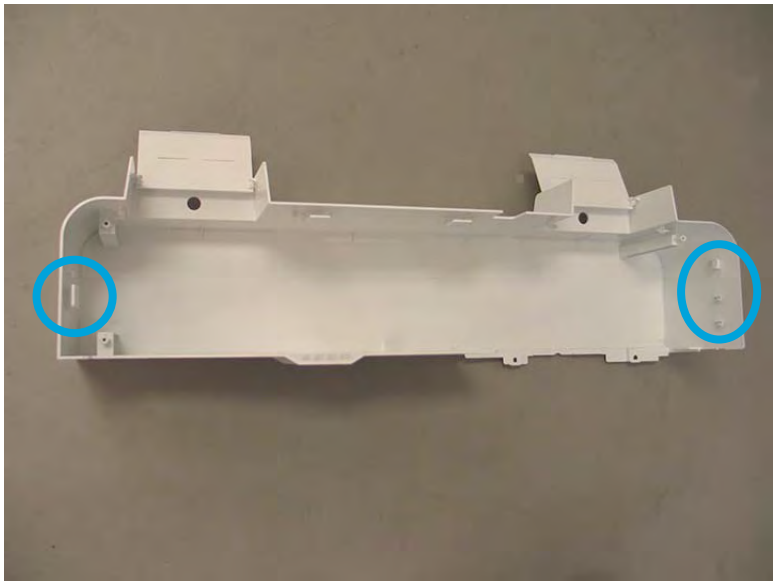


4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

Figure 2-294 Release three tabs on the back cover.



NOTE: The tabs on the underside of the cover.



5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

Figure 2-295 Remove back cover.

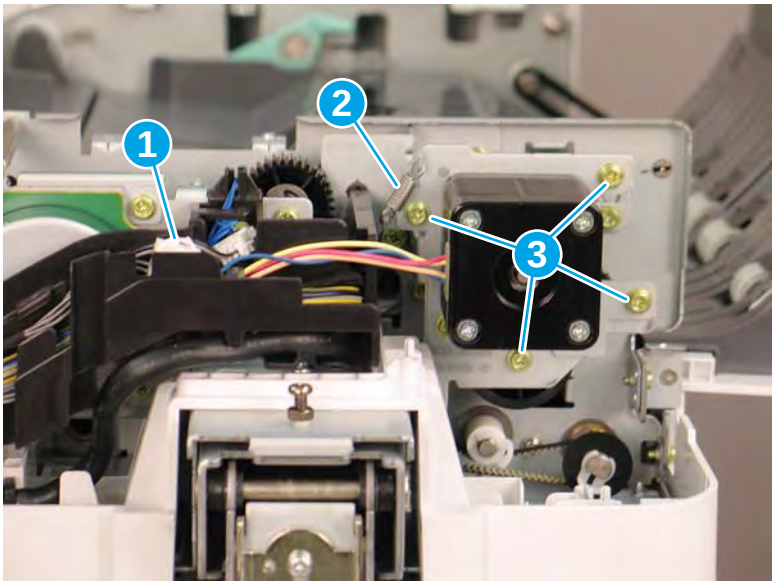


TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

Step 2: Remove the main motor

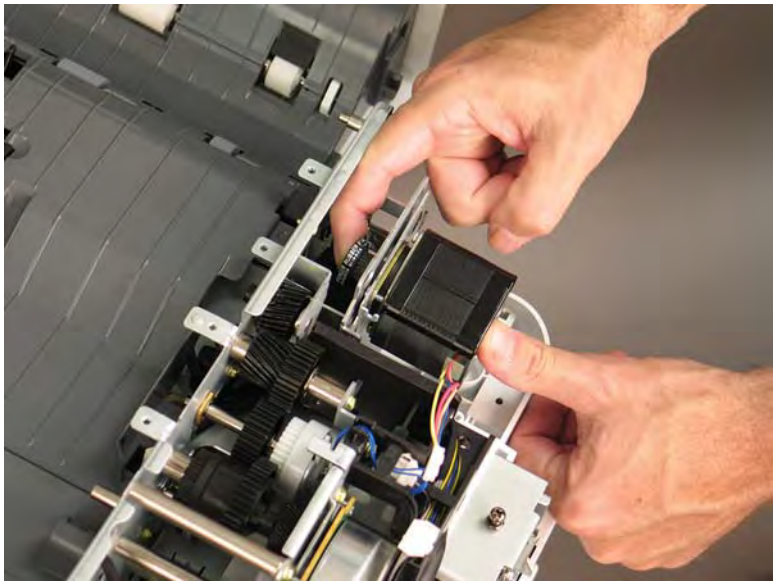
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove the tension spring (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-296 Remove the main motor connector, spring, and screws



2. Carefully lift the motor out while releasing the gear belt.

Figure 2-297 Main motor and gear belt



Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Loosely install the motor mount screws.

c. Install the tension spring.

d. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)

Figure 2-298 ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)

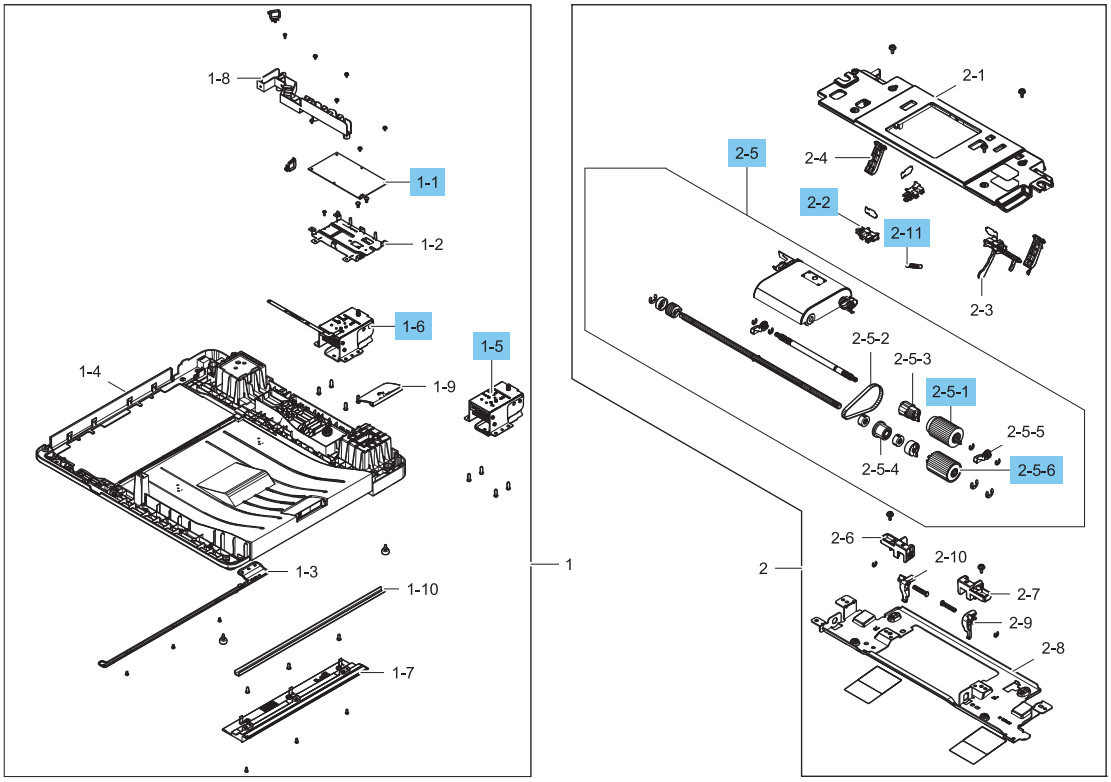


Table 2-18 ADF exterior and pickup (LX/dn models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	LX/dn PCA	JC92-02962A on page 400	1
1-5	LX/dn, hinge r	JC97-04528A	1
1-6	LX/dn, hinge l	JC97-04527A	1
2-2	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	1
2-5	Pick Roller Assy - LX/dn	JC97-04857A on page 395	1
2-5-1	LX/dn pick roller	JC97-04099A	1
2-5-6	LX feed roller	JC97-04860A	1
2-11	LX/dn - Spring	6107-003581	1

Document feeder (ADF) pick/feed roller assembly (LX/dn model)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) (LX/dn models) pick and feed roller assembly
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

Two document feeder types are available for this product. Products with “z” bundles are equipped with “Flow” document feeders. Products with “dn” bundles are equipped with the standard document feeder.

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04857A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Pick feed roller assy (LX/nd models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

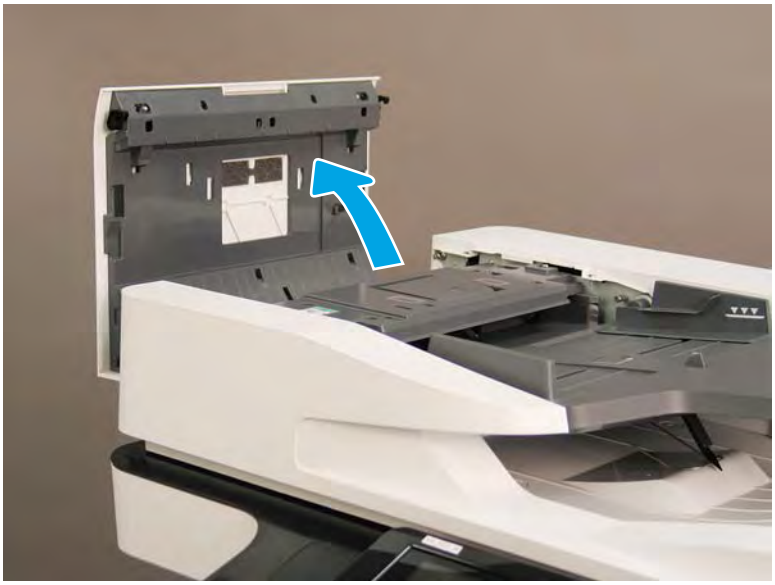
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) (LX/dn models) pick and feed roller assembly

1. Open the document feeder cover.

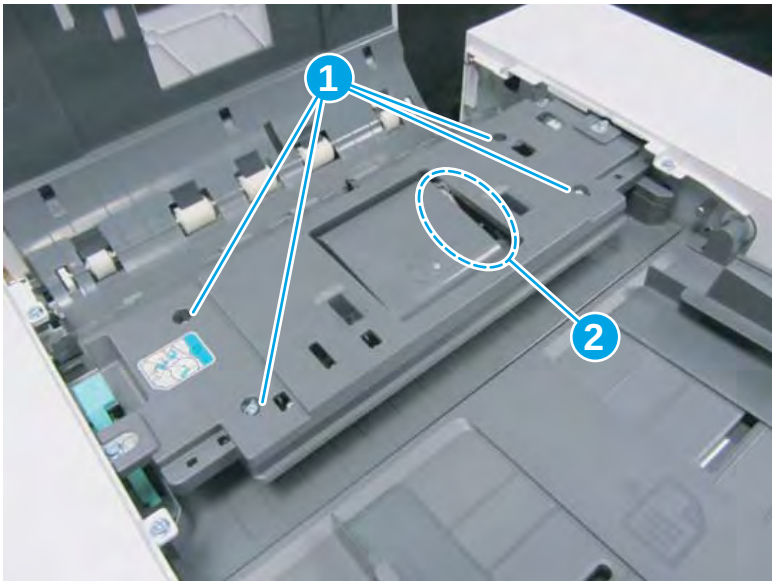
Figure 2-299 Open the document feeder cover



2. Remove four screws in the document feeder pick roller assembly cover.

NOTE: Remove one spring (callout 2; not shown)

Figure 2-300 Remove the document feeder cover screws



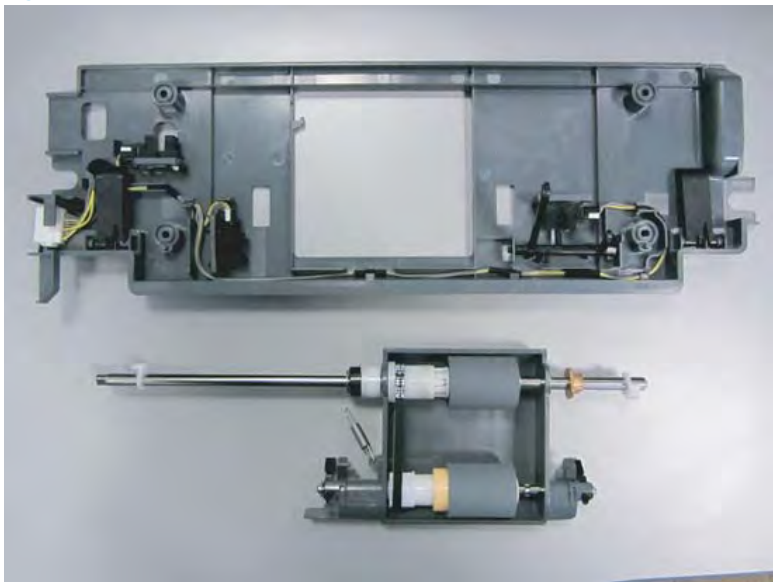
3. Rotate the document feeder pickup cover up, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-301 Turn the cover over and disconnect connector



4. NOTE: The figure below shows the roller cover and the roller assembly when removed.

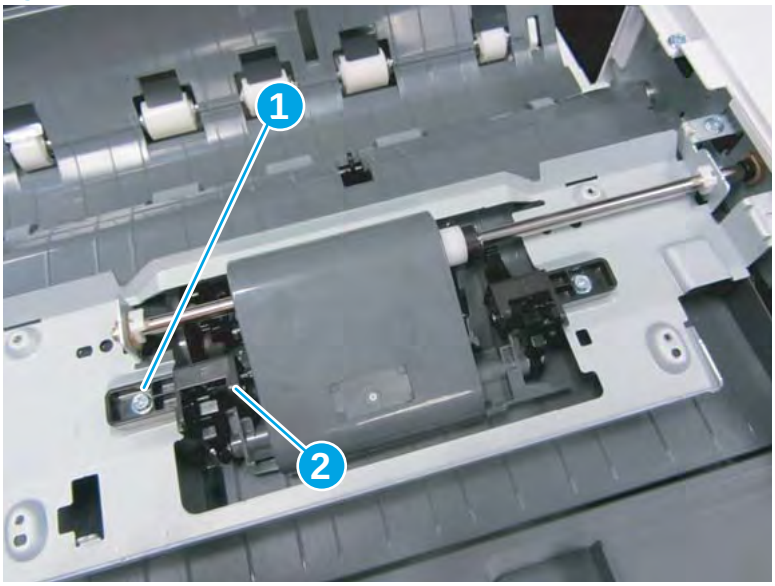
Figure 2-302 Document feeder pick roller cover and roller assembly



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sensor flag bracket (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: When the roller assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the sensor flags (on both sides of the assembly) are correctly isntalled and move freely.

Figure 2-303 Remove one screw and the sensor flag bracket

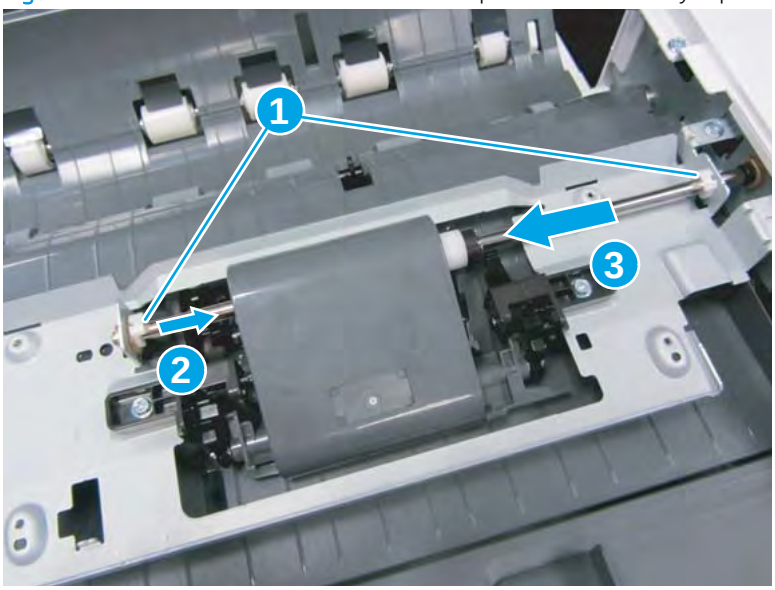


6. Release two plastic clips (callout 1), slide bushing toward roller assembly (callout 2), and then slide the shaft towards front of printer to release it (callout 3). Remove the roller assembly.

CAUTION: Do not damage the sensor flags when handling the roller assembly.

NOTE: The bushing is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the roller assembly.

Figure 2-304 Remove the document feeder pick roller assembly clips.



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Document feeder (ADF) PCA (LX/dn models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) PCA
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder PCA.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC92-02962A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Document feeder PCA assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

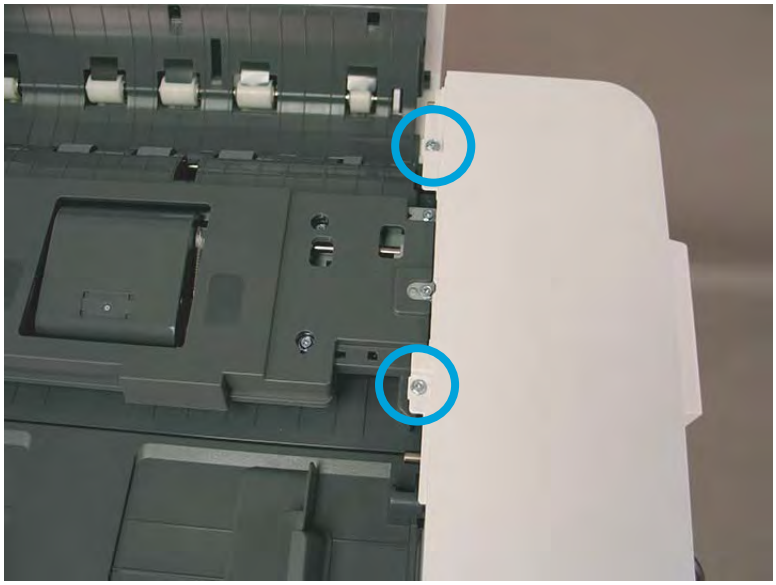
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

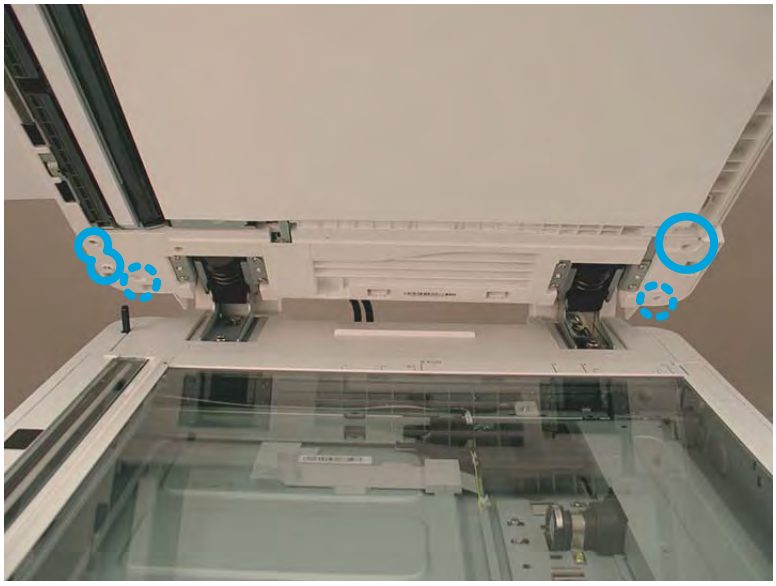
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-305 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-306 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



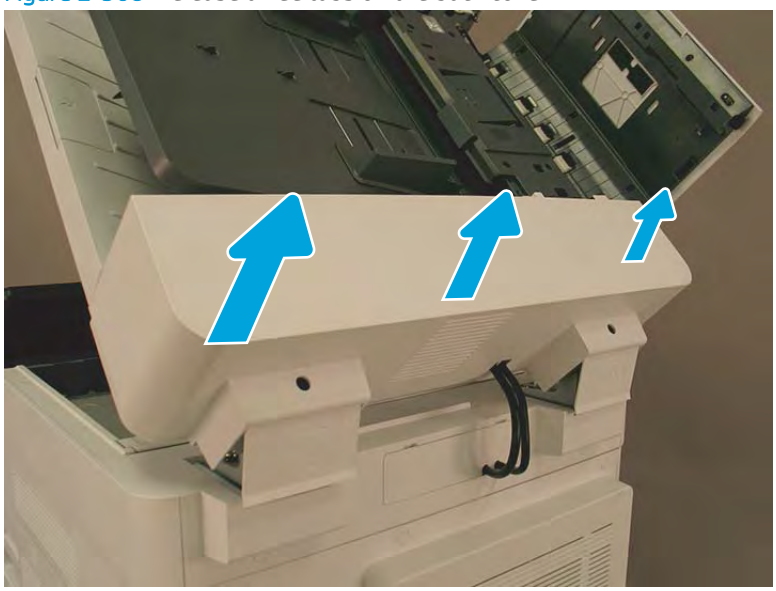
3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-307 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.

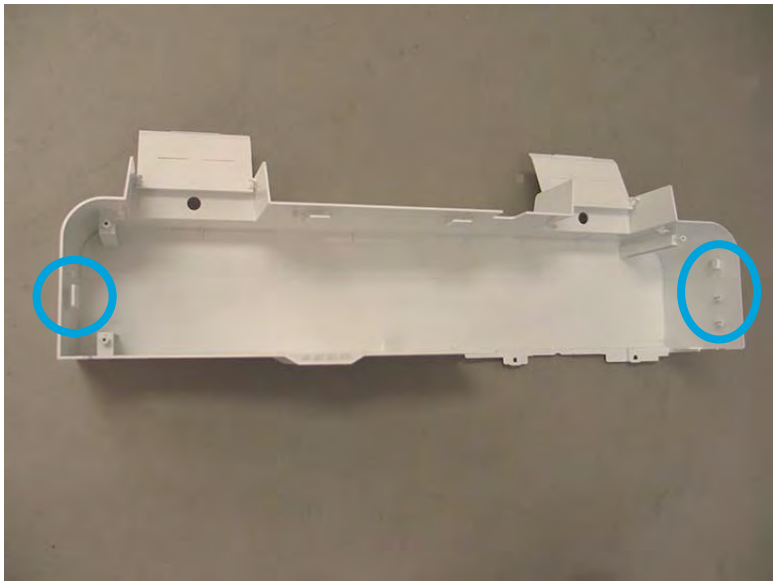


4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

Figure 2-308 Release three tabs on the back cover.



NOTE: The tabs on the underside of the cover.



5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

Figure 2-309 Remove back cover.

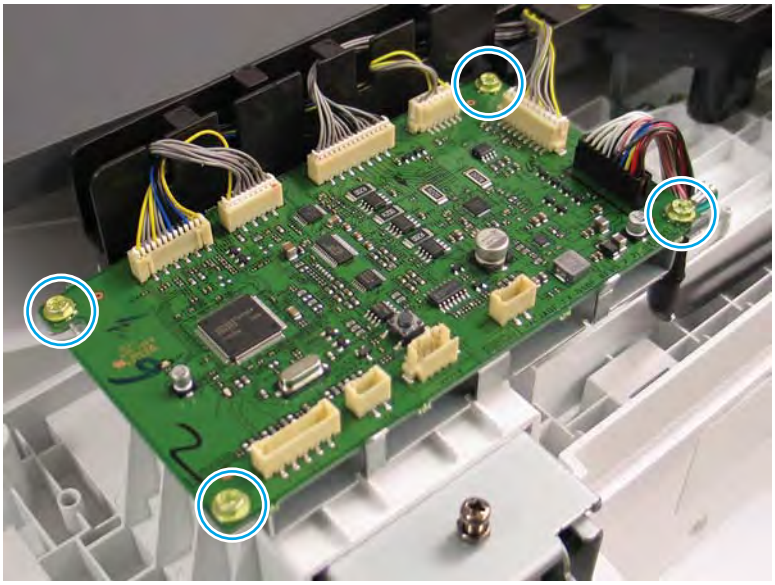


TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) PCA

1. Disconnect six connectors and the ground wire from PCA, and then remove four screws.

Figure 2-310 Document feeder PCA



2. Remove the document feeder PCA.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)

Figure 2-311 ADF main frame (LX/dn models)

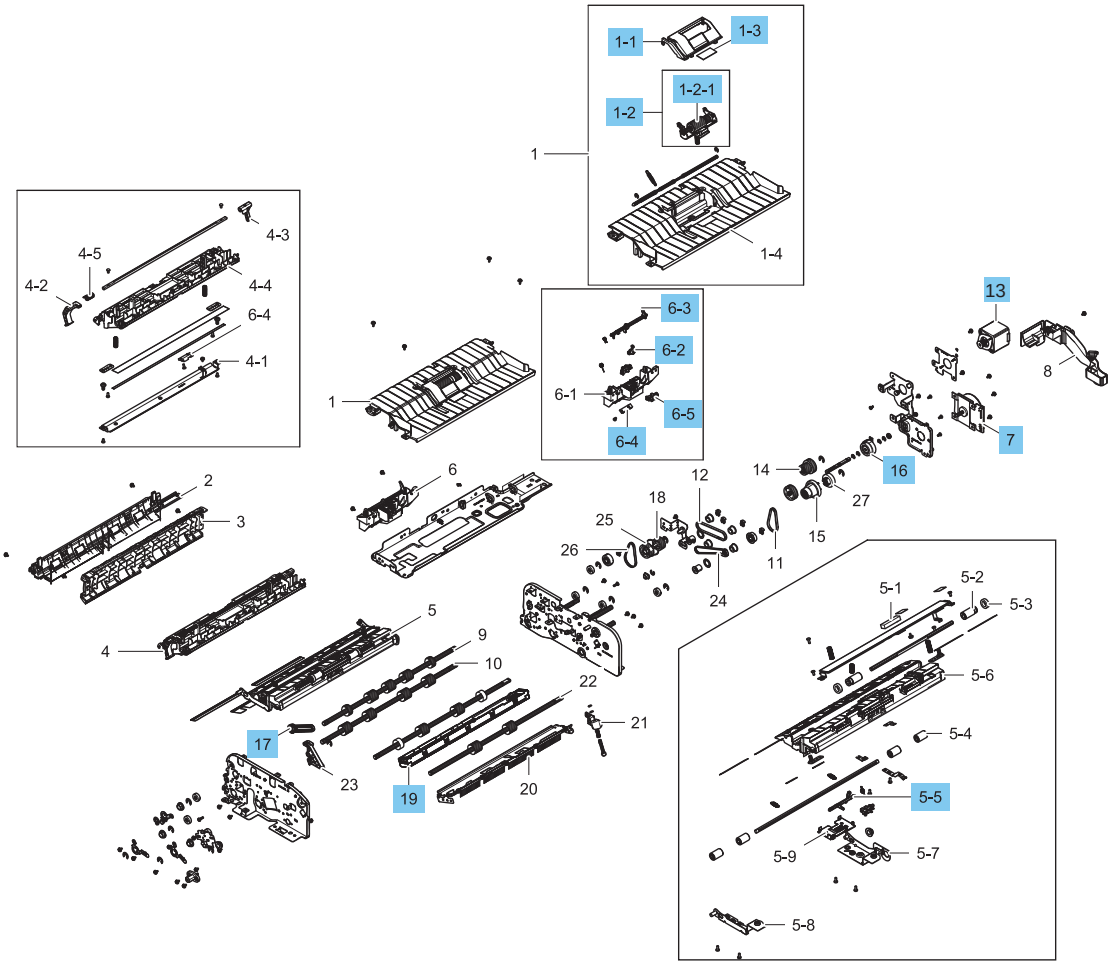


Table 2-19 ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	LX/dn separation housing	JC97-04586A	1
1-2	ADF separation roller	JC97-04852A on page 408	1
1-2-1	ADF separation sub roller	JC97-04861A	1
1-3	Friction pad	JC69-01326A	1
5-5	Actuator, output	JC66-04104A	1
6-2	Actuator, feed out	JC66-04105A	1
6-3	Actuator, registration	JC66-04103A	1
6-4	Photo interrupter	0604-001381	1
6-5	Photo interrupter	0604–001393	1
7	Motor, bldc type 1	JC31-00156A on page 415	1
13	Motor - Step main	JC31-00163A	1
16	LX/dn - Motor feed DC	JC47-00038A	1
17	LX/dn - Link Cover Open	JC66-04100A	1
19	LX/dn - Contact Image Sensor	JC97-04722A	1

Document feeder separation roller assembly (LX/dn models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the LX document feeder pickup/reverse/feed roller assembly
- Step 2: Remove the LX document feeder separation roller
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder separation roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04852A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- ADF Separation roller assembly (LX/dn models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

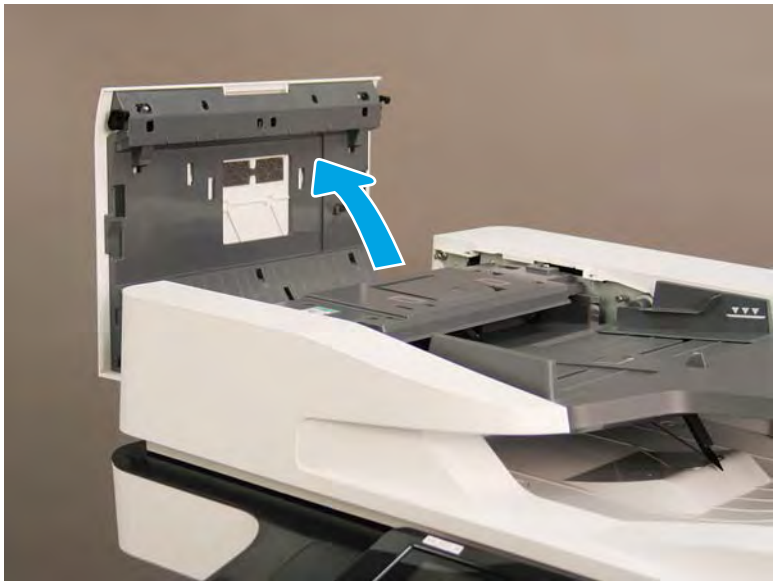
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the LX document feeder pickup/reverse/feed roller assembly

1. Open the document feeder cover.

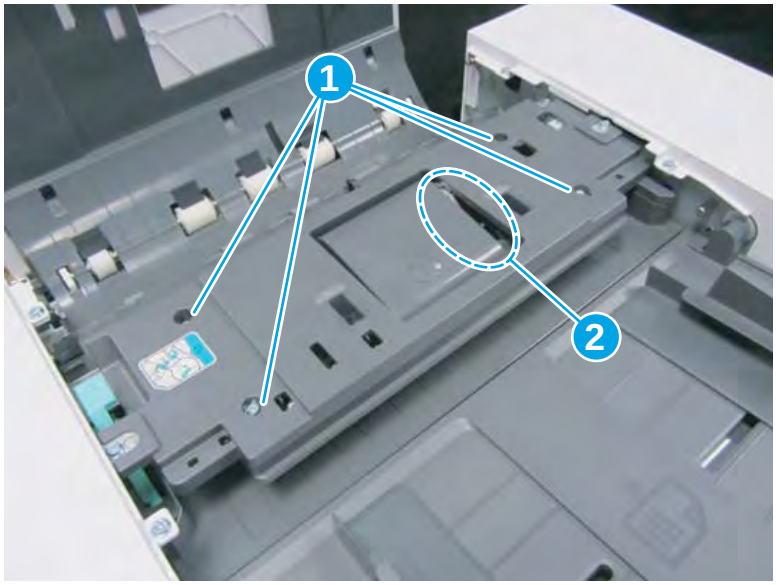
Figure 2-312 Open the document feeder cover



2. Remove four screws in the document feeder pick roller assembly cover.

NOTE: Remove one spring (callout 2; not shown)

Figure 2-313 Remove the document feeder cover screws



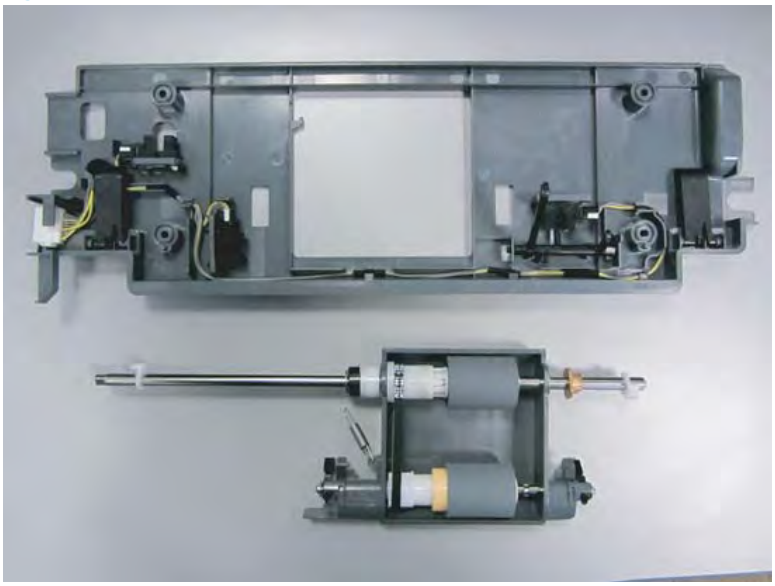
3. Rotate the document feeder pickup cover up, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-314 Turn the cover over and disconnect connector



4. NOTE: The figure below shows the roller cover and the roller assembly when removed.

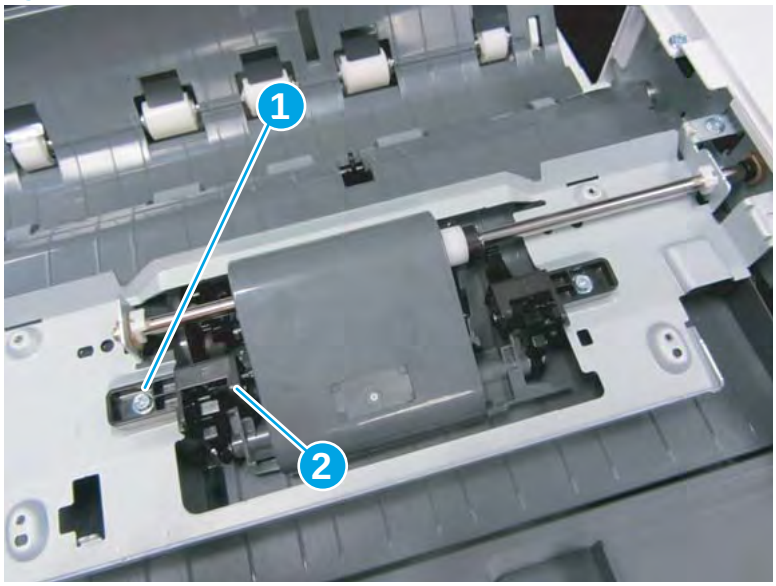
Figure 2-315 Document feeder pick roller cover and roller assembly



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sensor flag bracket (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: When the roller assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the sensor flags (on both sides of the assembly) are correctly isntalled and move freely.

Figure 2-316 Remove one screw and the sensor flag bracket

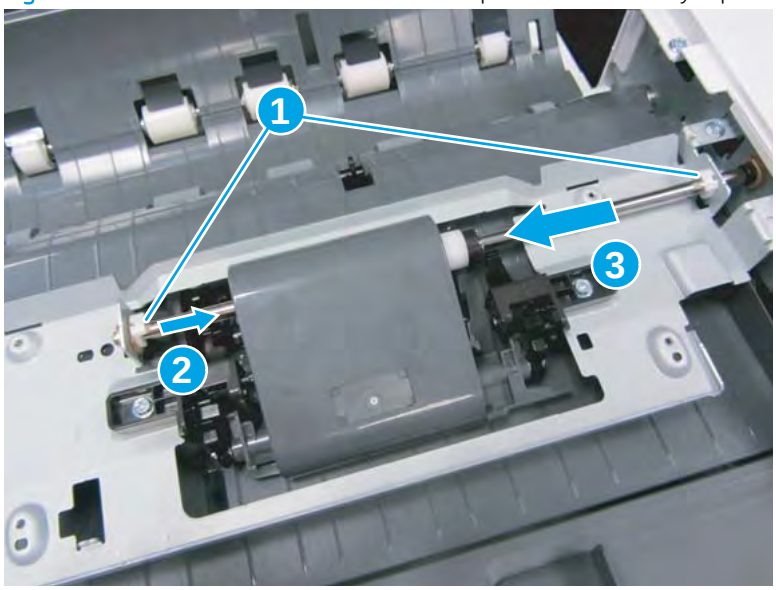


6. Release two plastic clips (callout 1), slide bushing toward roller assembly (callout 2), and then slide the shaft towards front of printer to release it (callout 3). Remove the roller assembly.

CAUTION: Do not damage the sensor flags when handling the roller assembly.

NOTE: The bushing is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the roller assembly.

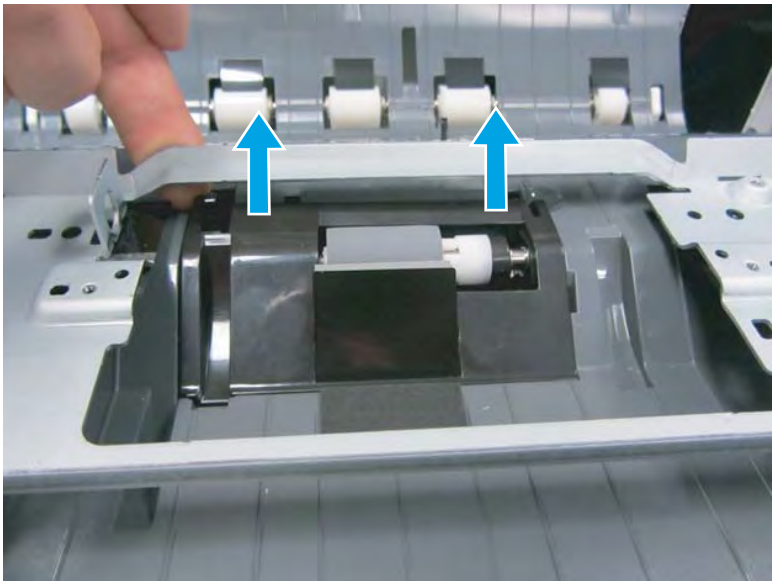
Figure 2-317 Remove the document feeder pick roller assembly clips.



Step 2: Remove the LX document feeder separation roller

1. Rotate the separation roller cover up to release it, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-318 Remove the separation roller cover



2. NOTE: The figure below shows the roller cover and the roller assembly when removed.

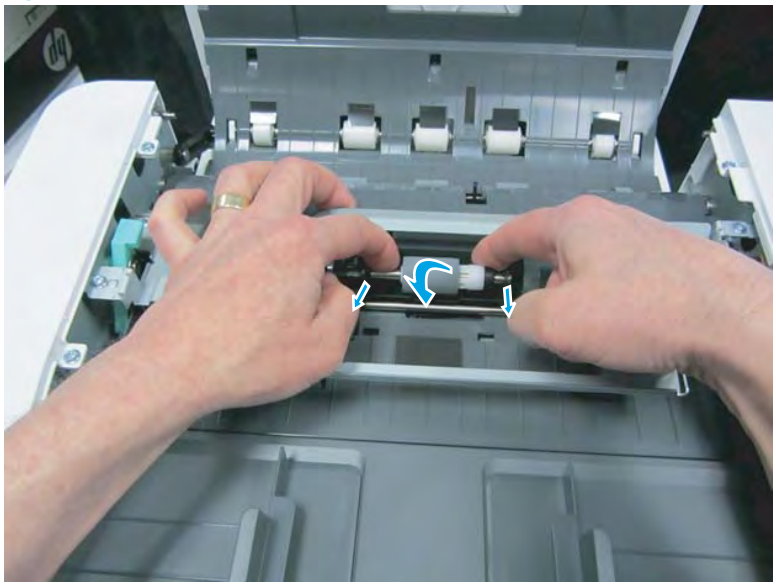
Figure 2-319 Document feeder separation roller cover and roller assembly



3. Release two claws, and then remove the separation roller assembly.

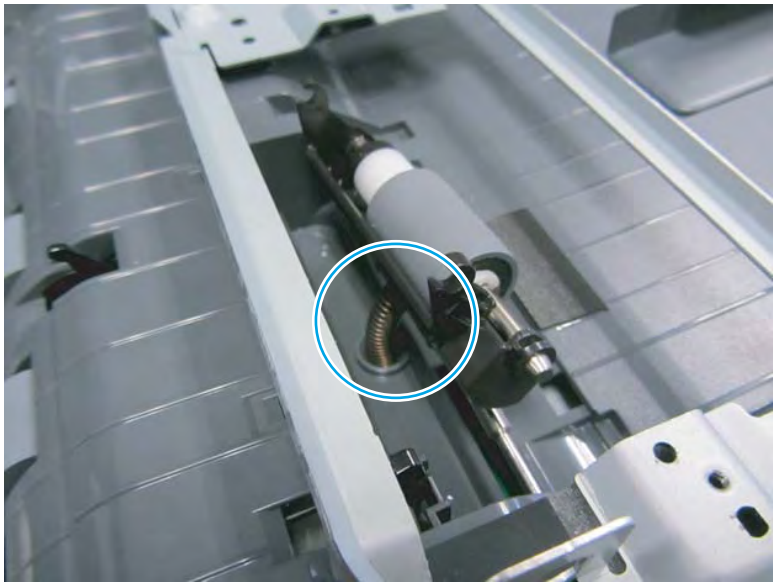
NOTE: The separation roller assembly spring under the roller is not captive.

Figure 2-320 Remove the separation roller assembly



4. When the assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the spring is correctly seated in the holder.

Figure 2-321 Separation roller assembly spring



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Document feeder feed motor (LX/dn models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 2: Remove the feed motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the feed motor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC31-00156A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Feed motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

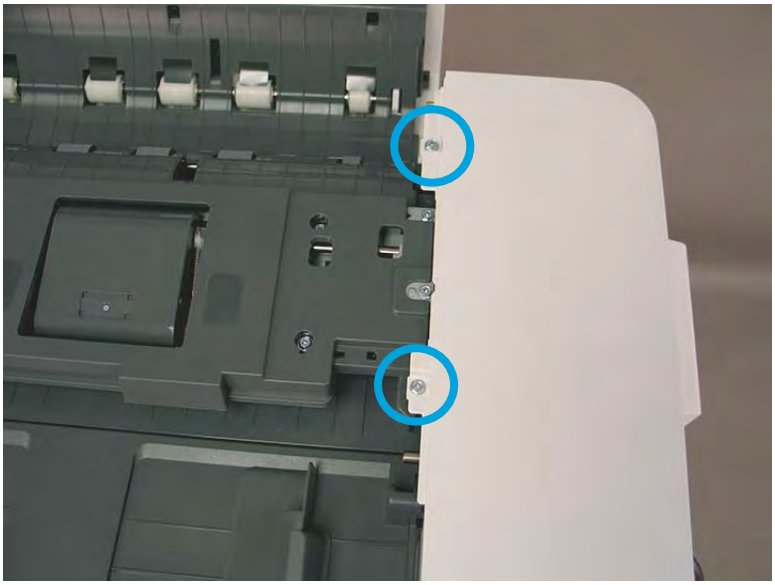
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

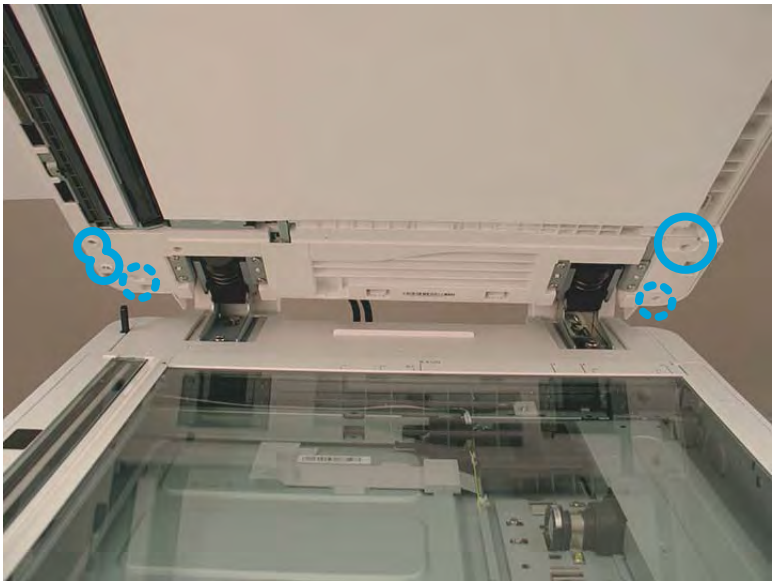
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-322 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-323 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



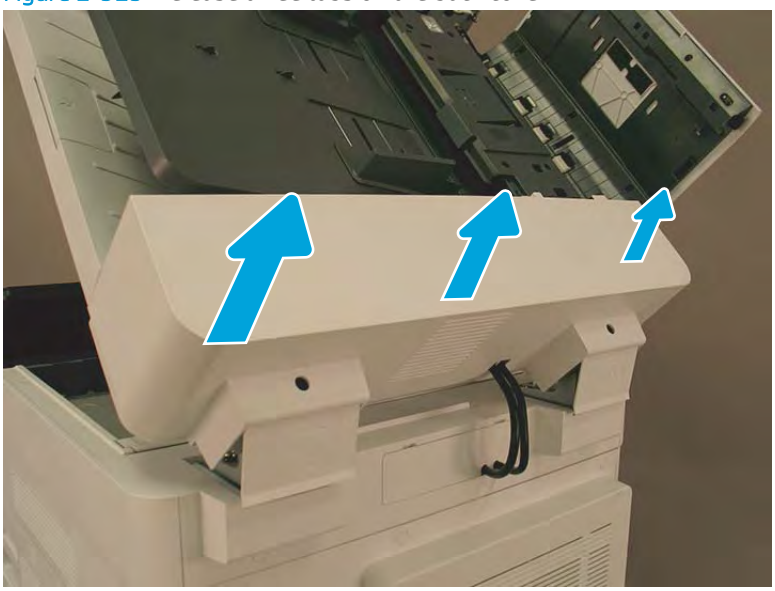
3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-324 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.

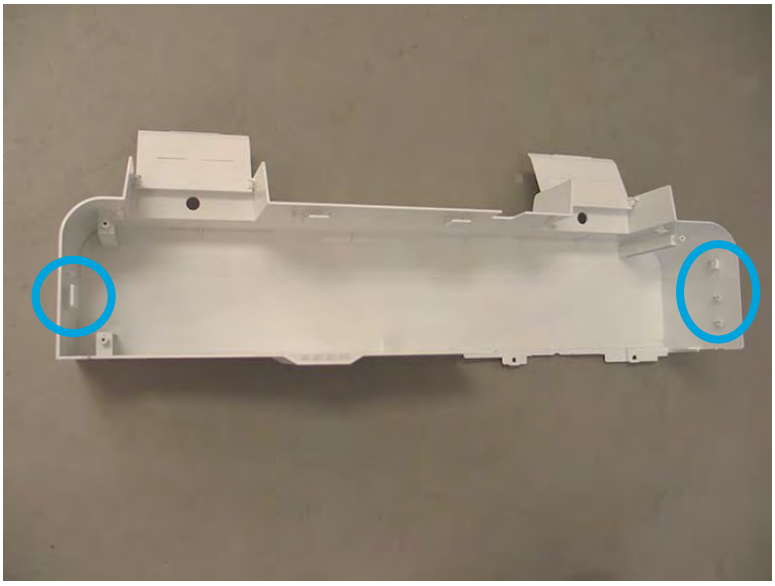


4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

Figure 2-325 Release three tabs on the back cover.



NOTE: The tabs on the underside of the cover.



5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

Figure 2-326 Remove back cover.

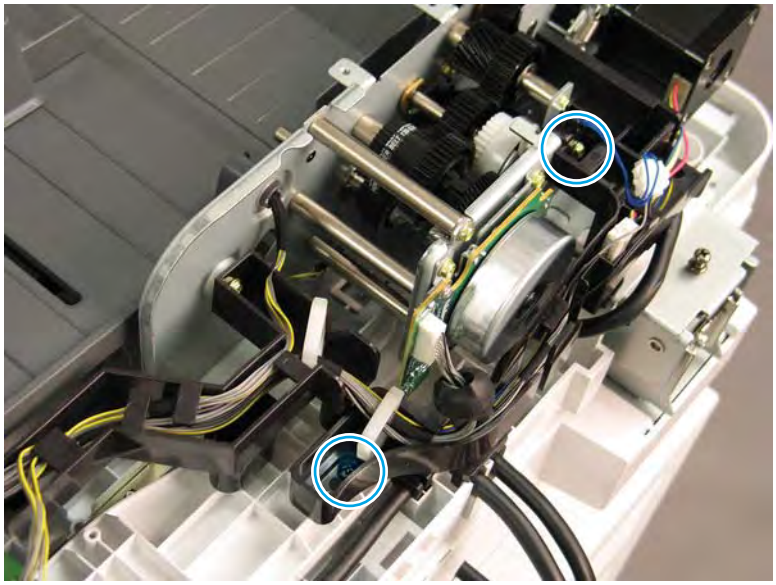


TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

Step 2: Remove the feed motor

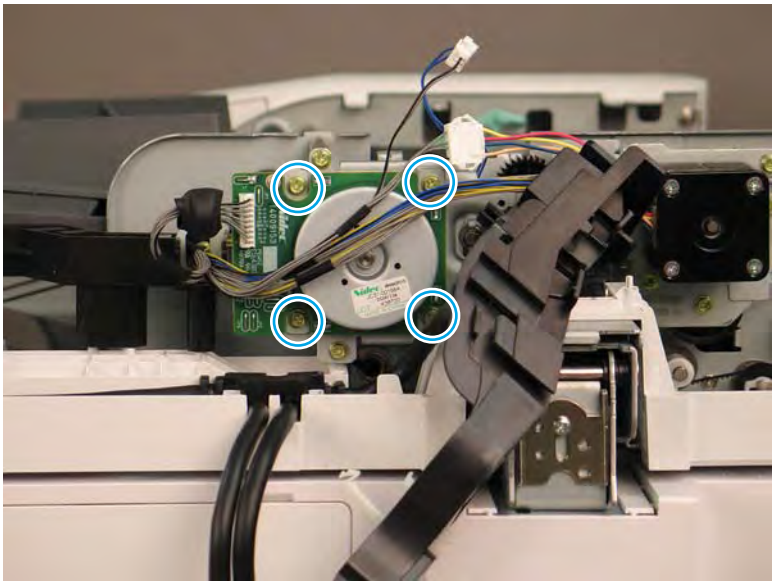
1. Loosen the cables in the cable guide, remove two screws and then move the cable guide out of the way.

Figure 2-327 Feed motor cable guide



2. Disconnect one connector, remove four screws, and then carefully lift the motor out to remove.

Figure 2-328 Remove the feed motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF (GX/z models)

Figure 2-329 ADF (GX/z models)

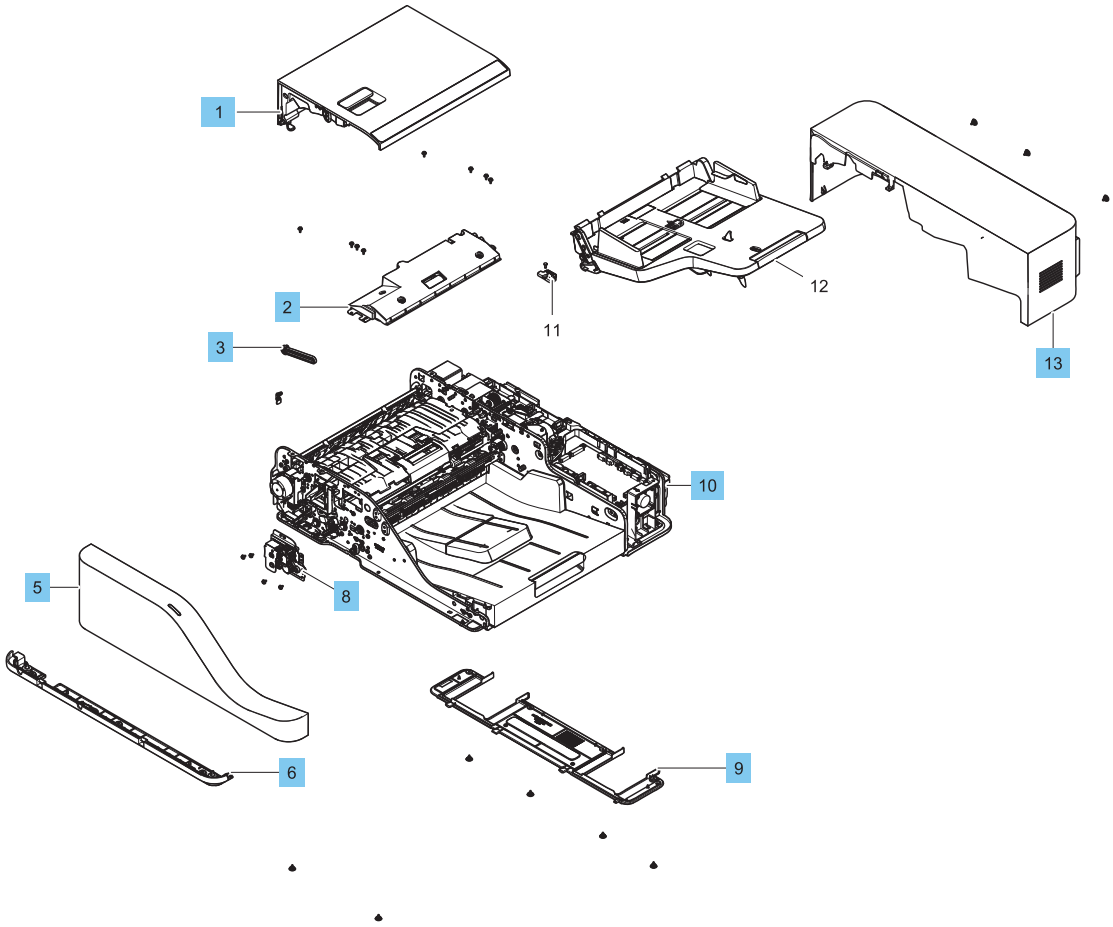


Table 2-20 ADF (GX/z models only)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	GX/z ADF open cover	JC97-04869A	1
2	GX/z ADF pickup upper	JC37-04872A	1
3	GX/z ADF cover hinge	JC66-02270A	1
5	GX/z ADF front cover	JC97-04881A	1
6	GX/z ADF dummy front	JC97-04879A	1
8	GX/z ADF damper	JC97-04692A	1
12	GX/z ADF Stacker	JC97-04658B	1
10	GX/z ADF main frame	JC97-04882A	1

Document feeder input tray (GX/z models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the dampening unit
- Step 4: Remove the pick and feed unit
- Step 5: Remove the input tray
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the input tray assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04658B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Input tray assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

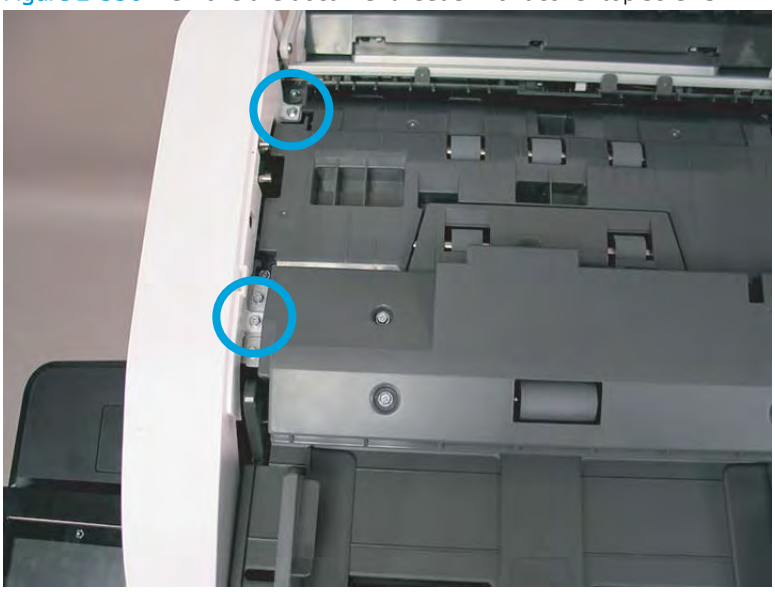
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

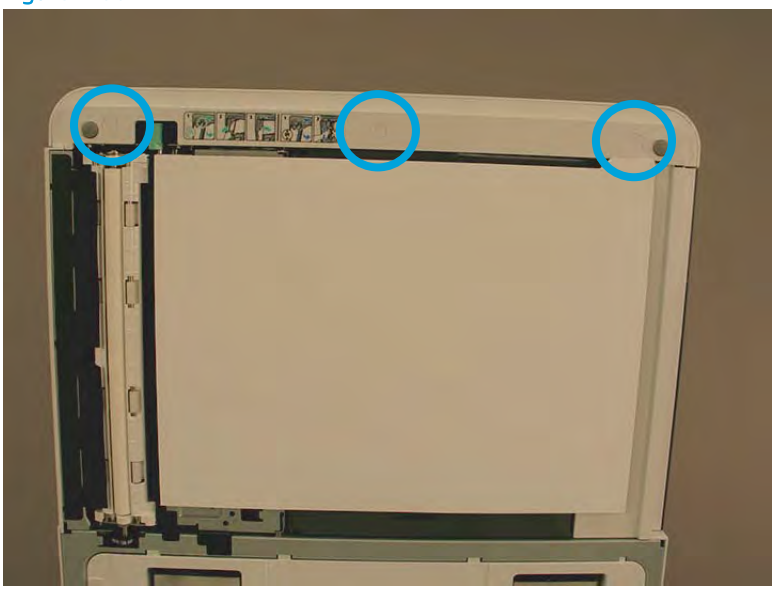
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 2-330 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

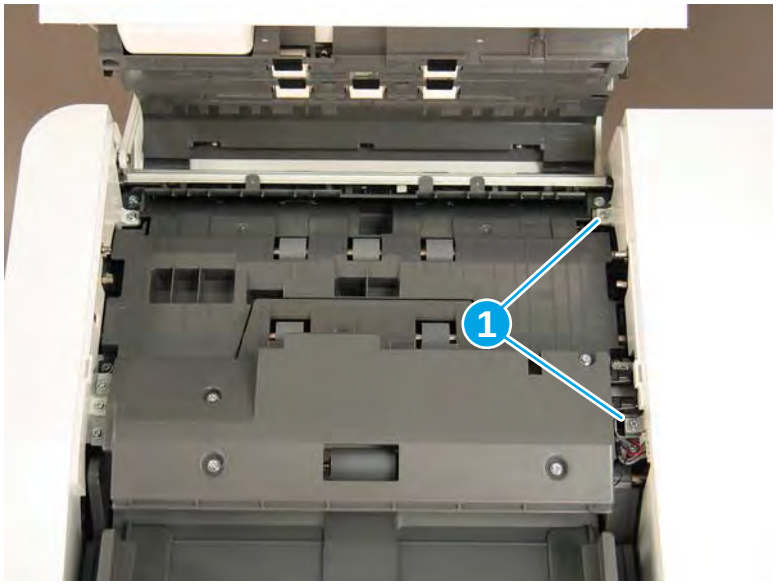
Figure 2-331 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

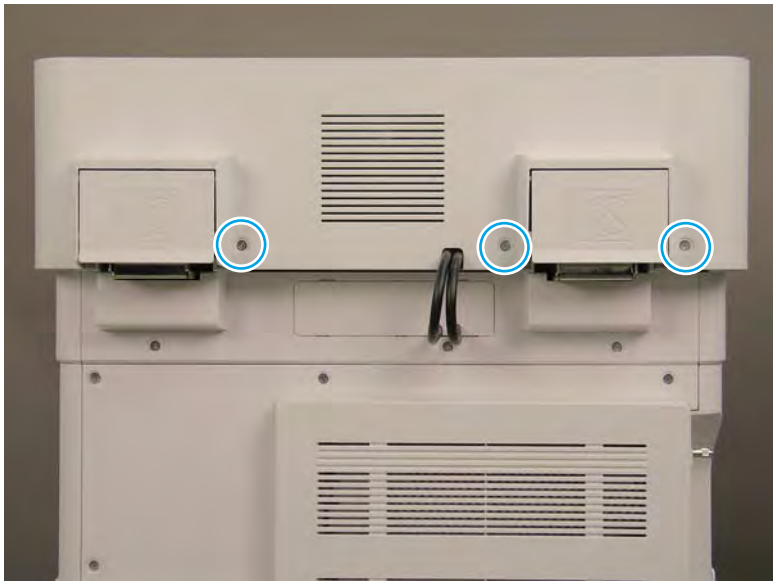
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-332 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

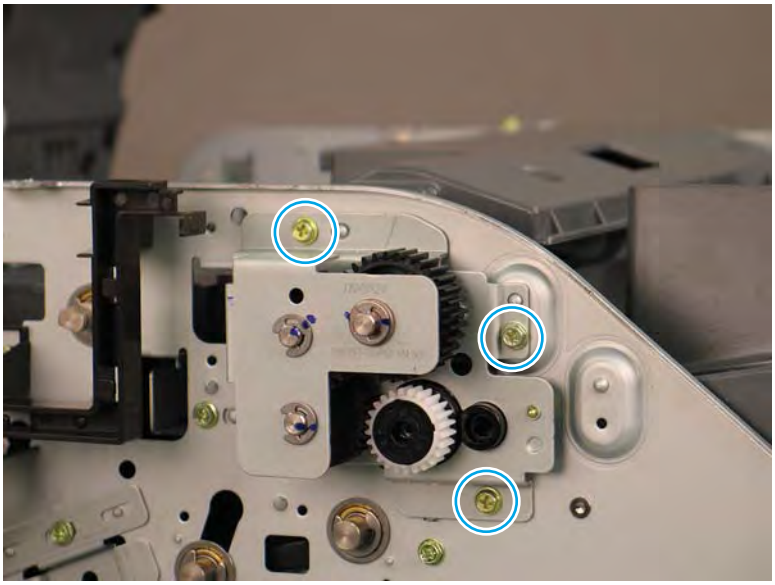
Figure 2-333 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 3: Remove the dampening unit

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the damping unit.

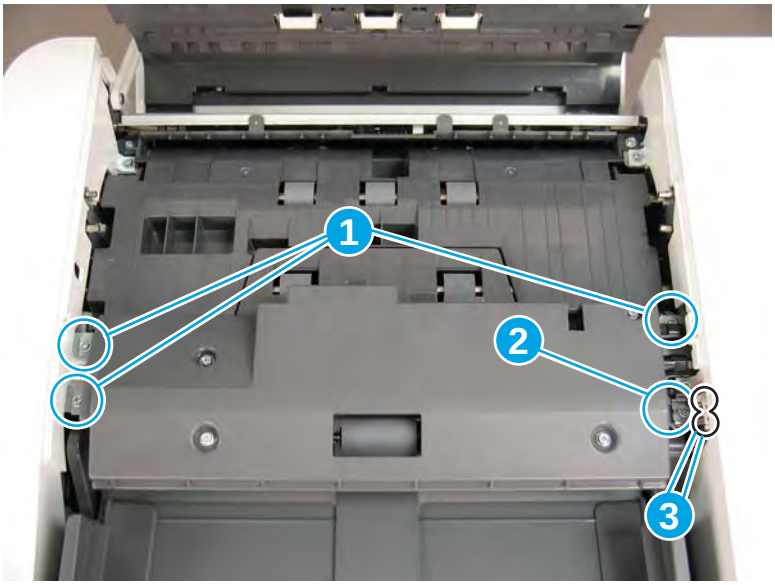
Figure 2-334 Remove the document feeder damping unit



Step 4: Remove the pick and feed unit

- ▲ Remove four screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout 3), and then remove the pick feed roller assembly.

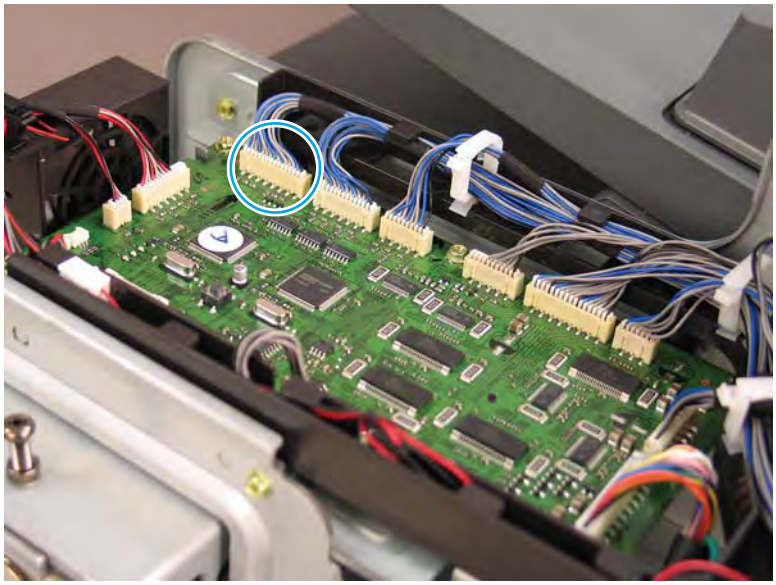
Figure 2-335 Remove four screws, two connectors and one ground wire.



Step 5: Remove the input tray

1. Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector, and then remove cable from guide.

Figure 2-336 Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector



2. Lift the tray from the front, and pivot the tray outward to remove.

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Document feeder contact image sensor (CIS) (GX/z models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder pick and feed assembly
- Step 4: Remove the paper path cover
- Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the CIS assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

0609-001558

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- CIS assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

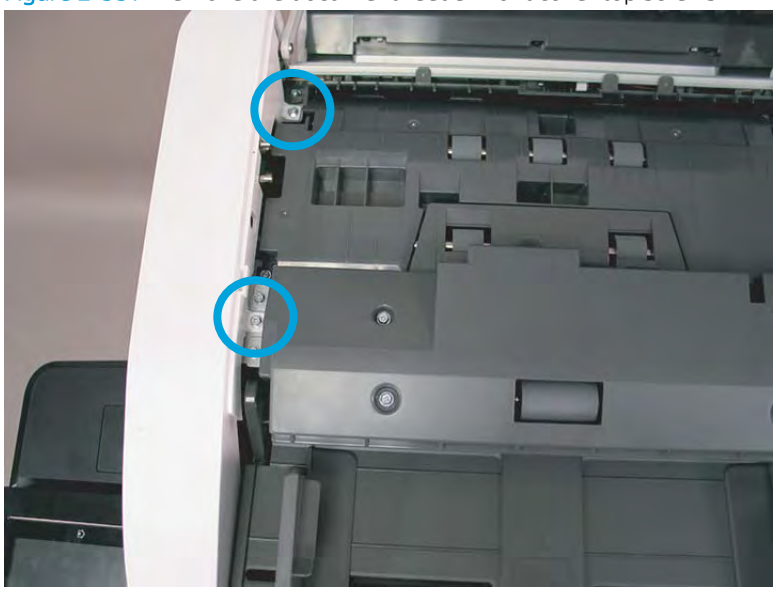
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

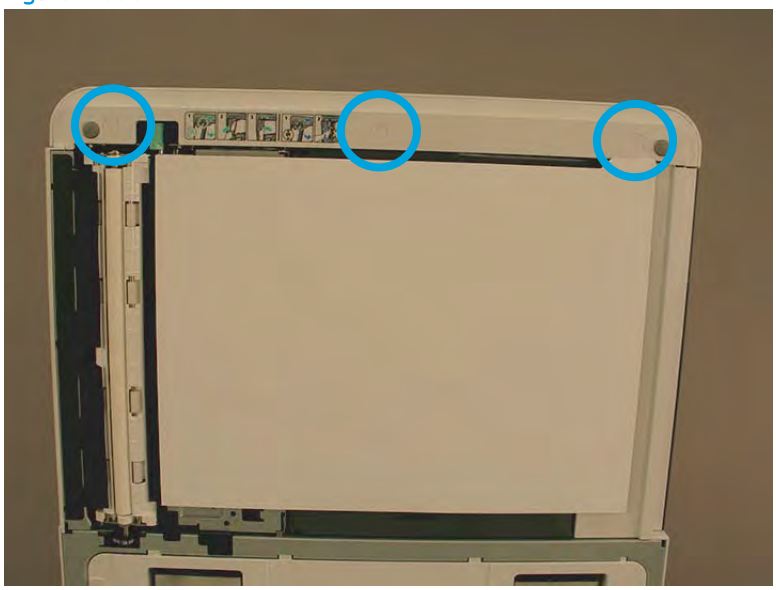
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-337 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

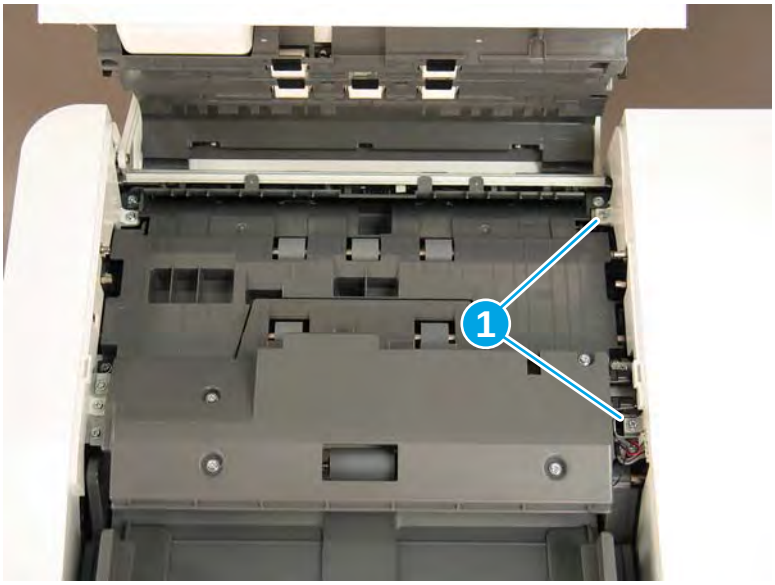
   Figure 2-338 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

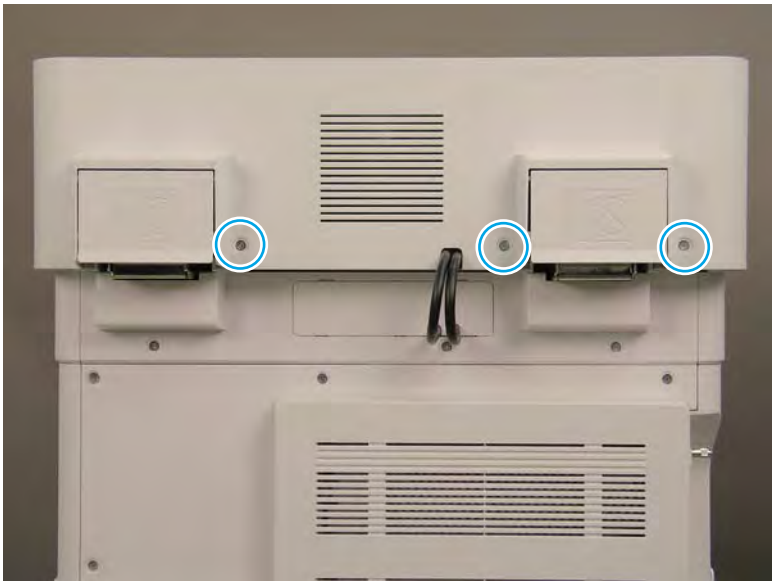
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-339 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

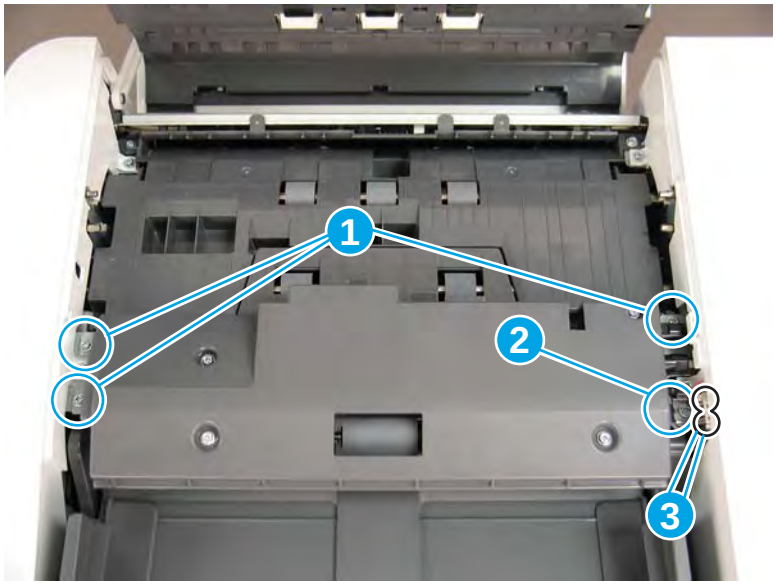
Figure 2-340 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 3: Remove the document feeder pick and feed assembly

▲ Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2, including one ground wire), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

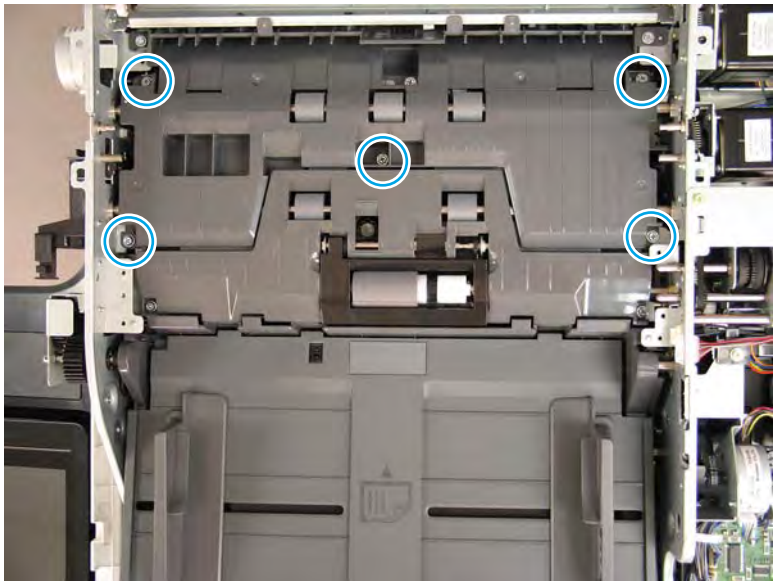
Figure 2-341 Remove the pickup roller assembly



Step 4: Remove the paper path cover

▲ Remove five screws, and then remove the paper path cover.

Figure 2-342 Remove the document feeder paper path cover

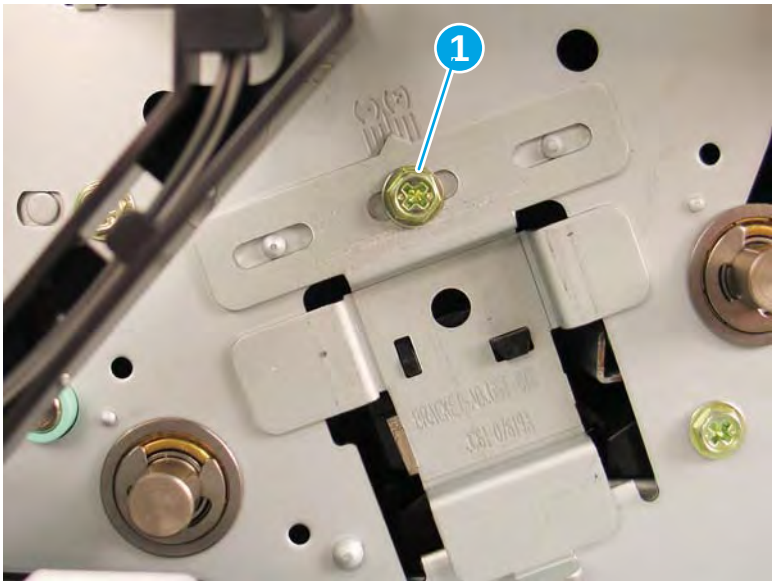


Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly

1. Remove one screw, and then remove the CIS front alignment cover.

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the CIS front alignment cover for reinstallation; the cover must reinstalled with the same orientation.

Figure 2-343 Remove the CIS front alignment cover screws

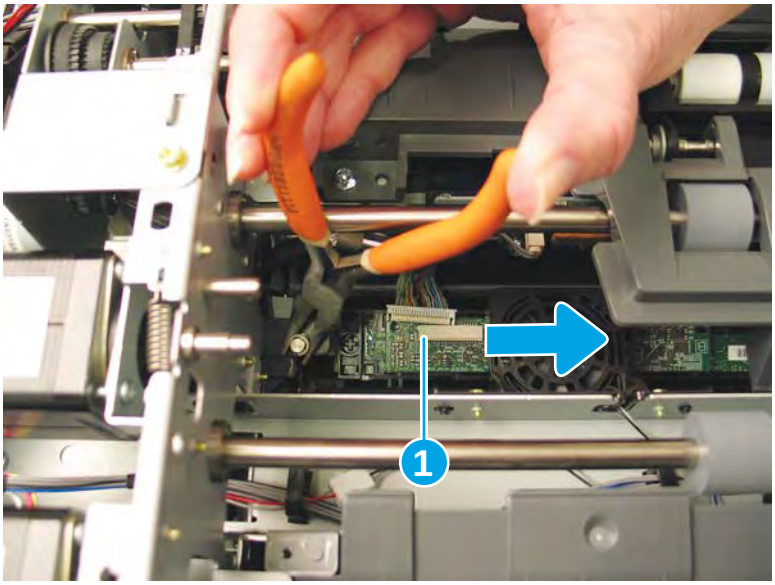


2. Do the following:

   a. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

   b. Use a pair of needle nose pliers to pull up on the metal pin, and then slide the CIS as shown below to remove it.

Figure 2-344 Remove the CIS



3. Remove the CIS assembly from the chassis.

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF open cover (GX/z models)

Figure 2-345 ADF open cover (GX/z models)

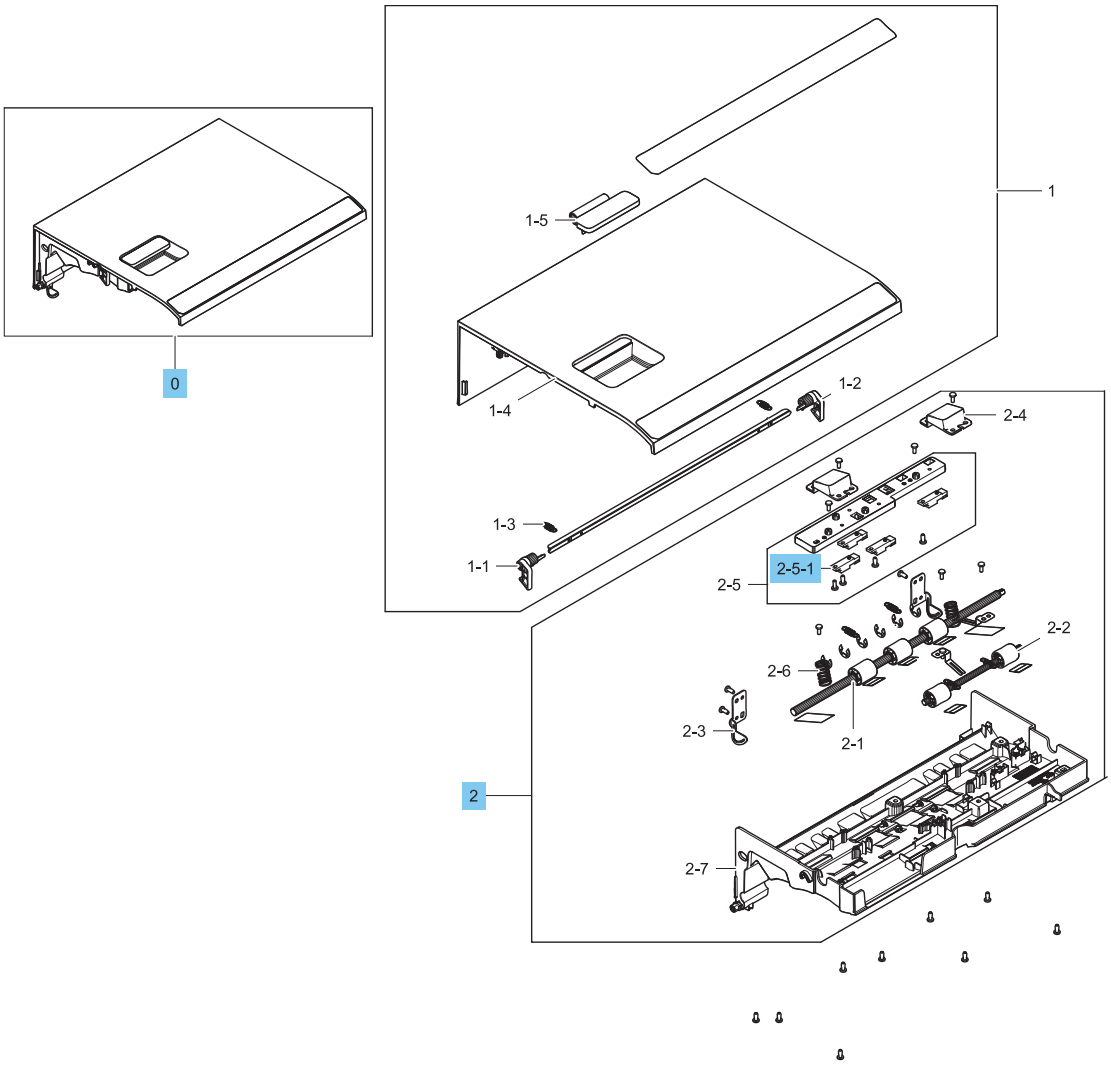


Table 2-21 ADF open cover (GX/z models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	GX/z ADF open cover	JC97-04869A on page 436	1
2	GX/z ADF open cover, lower	JC97-04696B	1
2-5-1	Photo interrupter	0604-001381	4

ADF open cover (GX/z models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder open cover
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the open cover assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video for this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04869A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Jam access cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

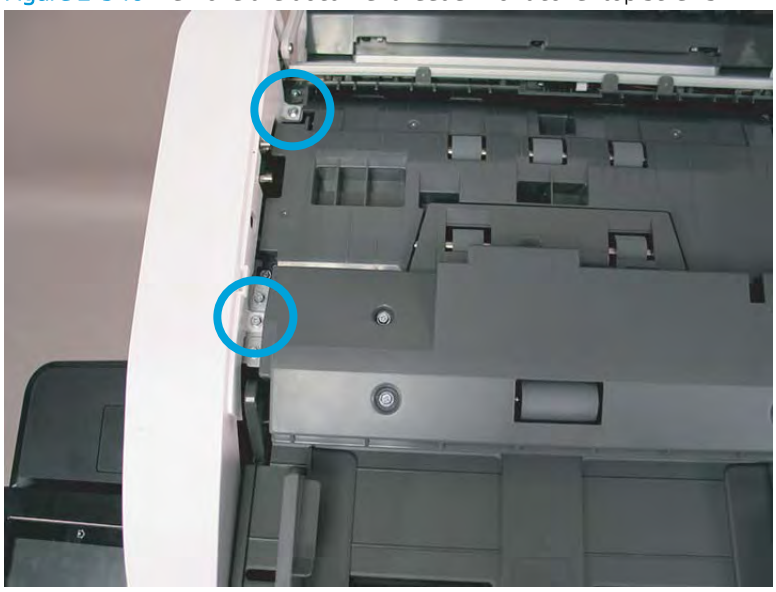
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

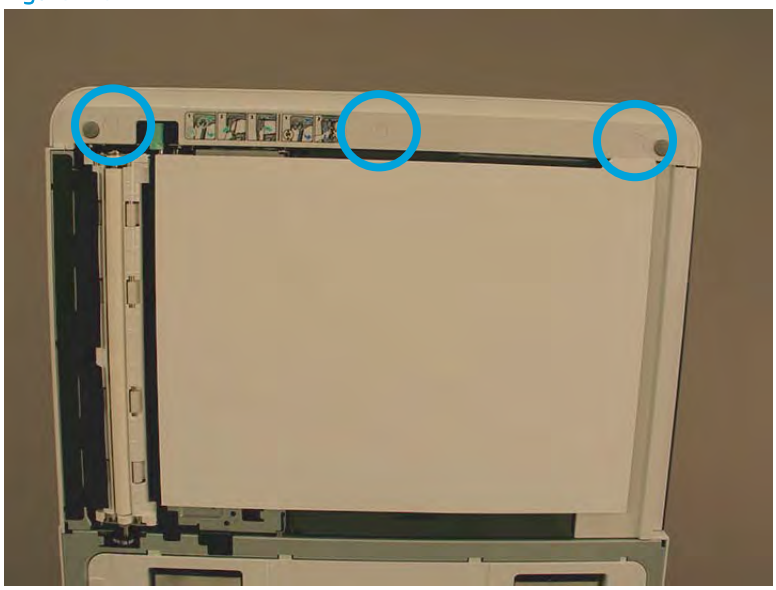
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 2-346 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

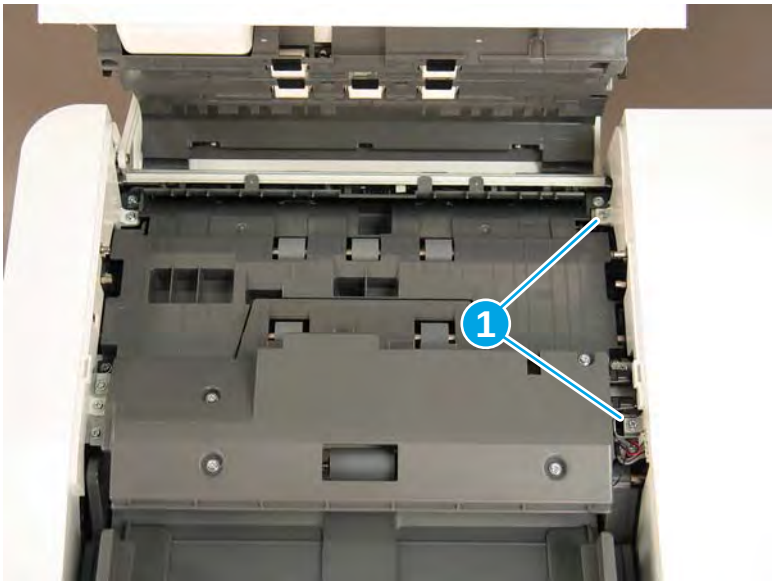
Figure 2-347 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

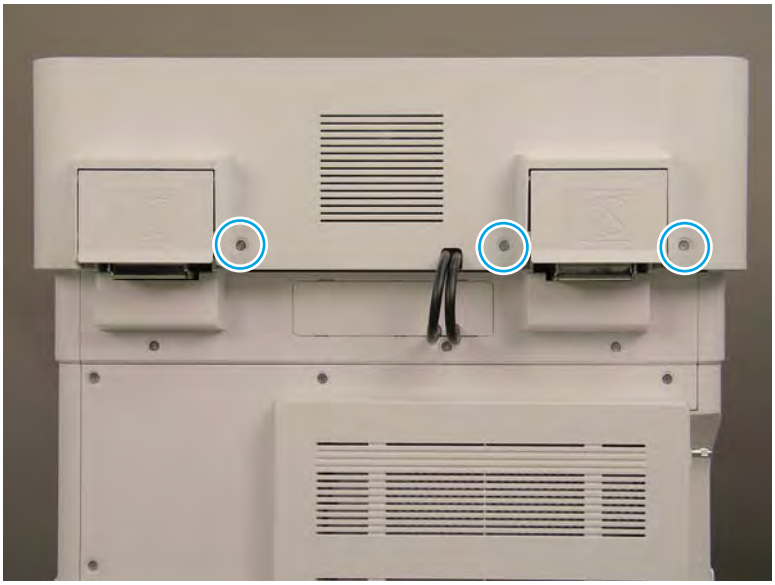
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-348 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

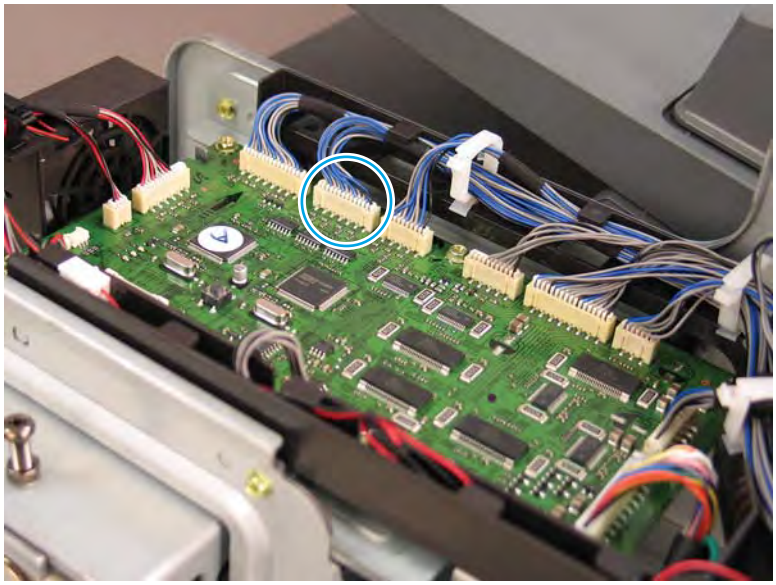
Figure 2-349 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 3: Remove the document feeder open cover

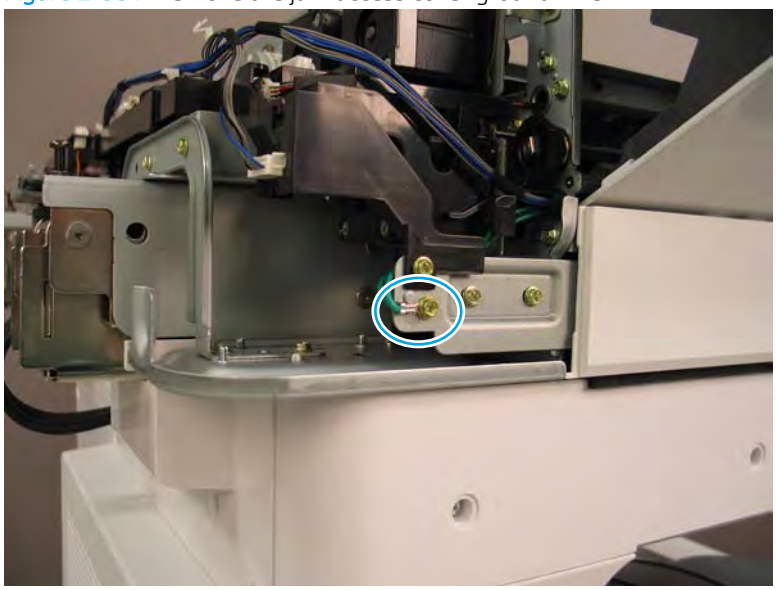
1. Disconnect connector at document feeder PCA and route cable out.

Figure 2-350 Disconnect one connector



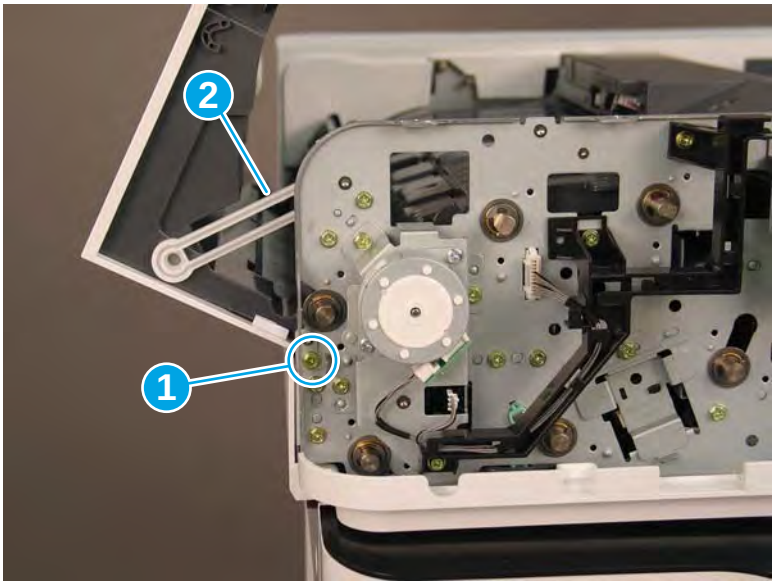
2. Disconnect the ground wire.

Figure 2-351 Remove the jam access cover ground wire



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove hinge (pivot) pin, and then remove door arm support (callout 2)

Figure 2-352 Remove the jam access cover door arm support



4. Remove the open cover.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF upper pick (GX/z models)

Figure 2-353 ADF upper pickup (GX/z models)

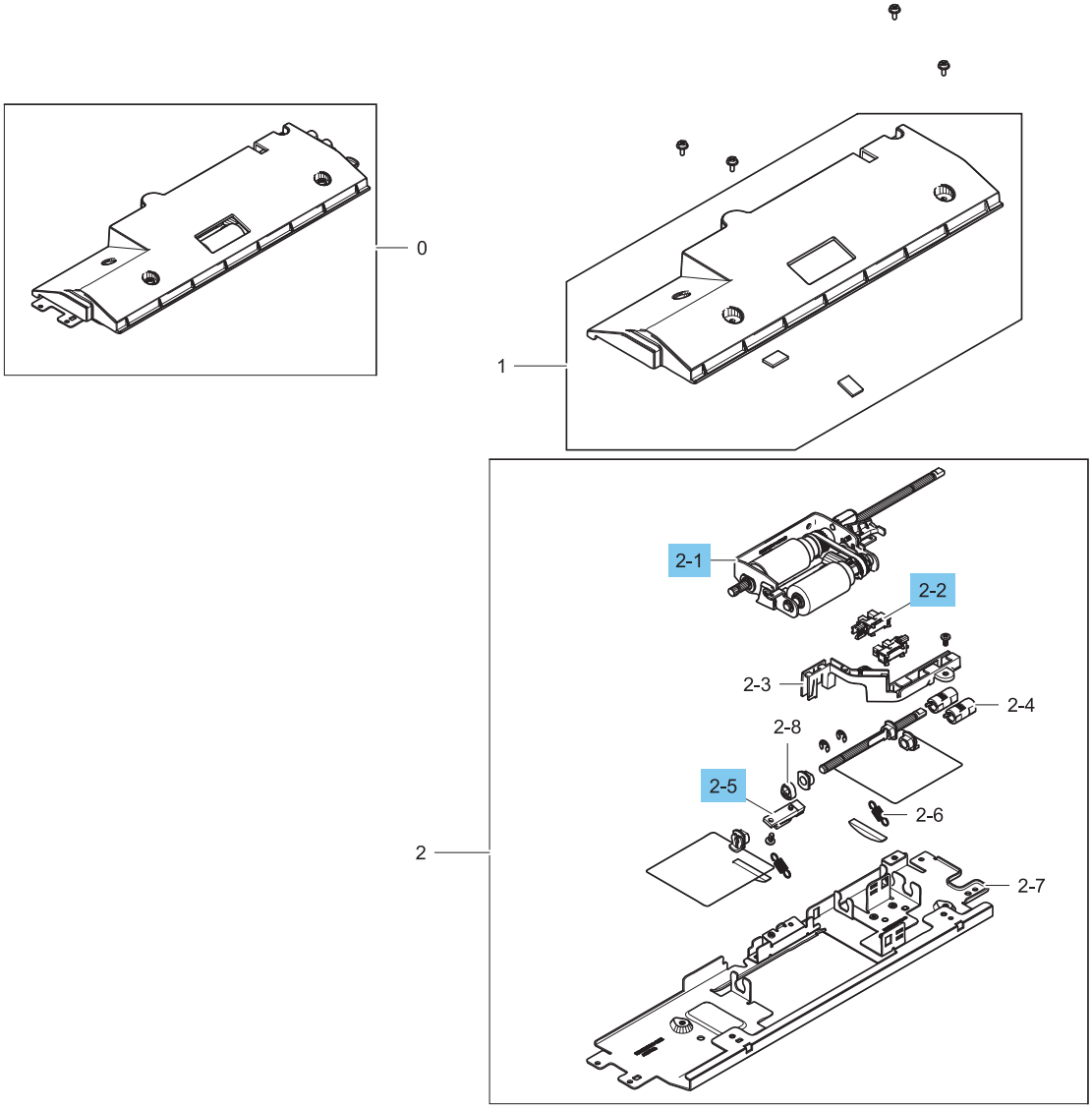


Table 2-22 ADF upper pickup (GX/z models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2-1	GX/z ADF, sub-pickup	JC97-04650A on page 443	1
2-2	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	1
2-5	Photo interrupter	0604-001381	1
Not shown	Document feeder separtation roller assembly (GX/z models)	JC97-04915A on page 447	1

Flow document feeder pick roller assembly (GX/z models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the flow document feeder pick/reverse/feed rollers
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

Two document feeder types are available for this product. Products with “z” bundles are equipped with “Flow” document feeders. Products with “dn” bundles are equipped with the standard document feeder.

This document provides the procedures to remove the flow document feeder pickup roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04650A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Pick roller assembly (GX/z models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

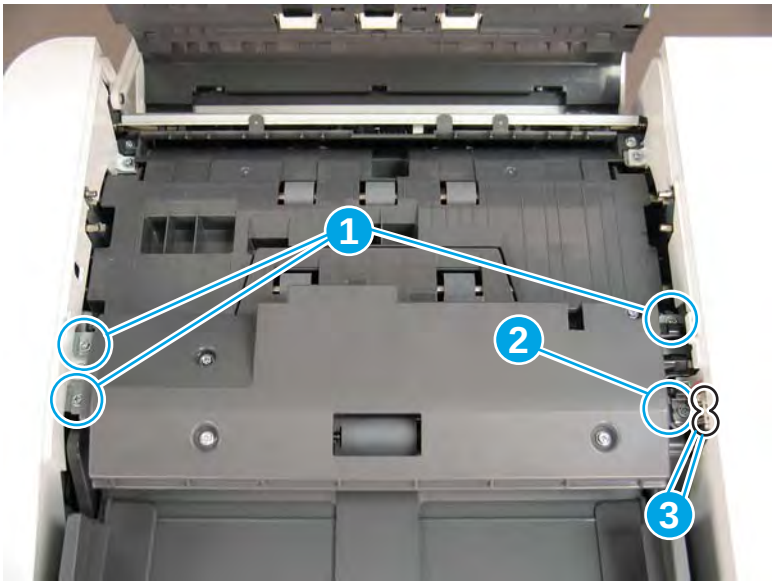
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the flow document feeder pick/reverse/feed rollers

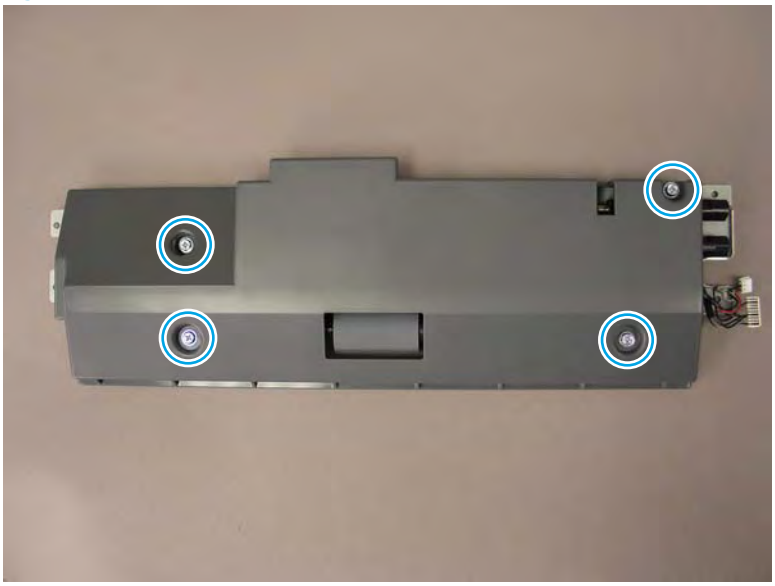
1. Open the document feeder top cover.
2. Remove the pick feed roller assembly.
   - Remove four screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout 3), and then remove the pick feed roller assembly.

Figure 2-354 Remove four screws, two connectors, one ground wire, and then pick feed roller assembly.



3. Remove Remove the pick feed rollers:
   - Remove four screws and then remove the roller assembly cover.

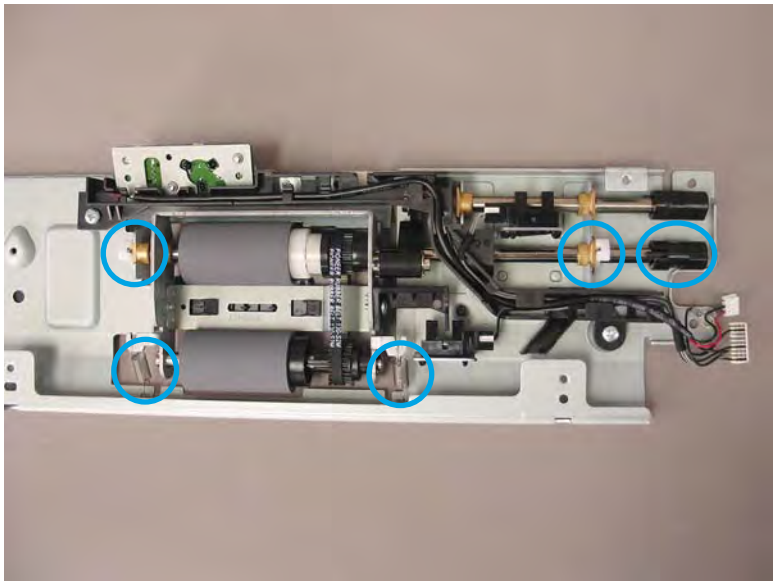
Figure 2-355 Remove 2 screws on front cover.



- Remove two plastic clips and two bushings, disconnect two springs, and then remove the shaft coupler.

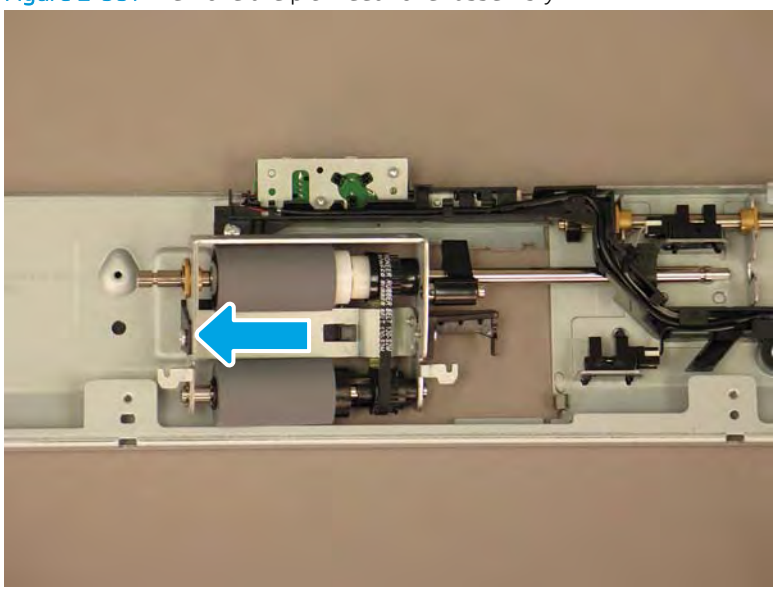
NOTE: The shaft is engaged in the coupler.

Figure 2-356 Remove the pickup roller components.



- Slide the roller shaft and then remove the pick feed roller assembly.

Figure 2-357 Remove the pick feed roller assembly.



4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

▲ After the replacement roller is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter.

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop down menu, and then enter the service access code.

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit..

vii. Select ADF Pickup Roller.

viii. Select ADF Pickup Roller.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF separation roller assembly (GX/z models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder pick/feed roller assembly (GX/z models)
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder separation roller
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

Two document feeder types are available for this product. Products with “z” bundles are equipped with “Flow” document feeders. Products with “dn” bundles are equipped with the standard document feeder.

This document provides the procedures to remove the flow document feeder separation roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video for this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04915A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Separation roller assembly (GX/z models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

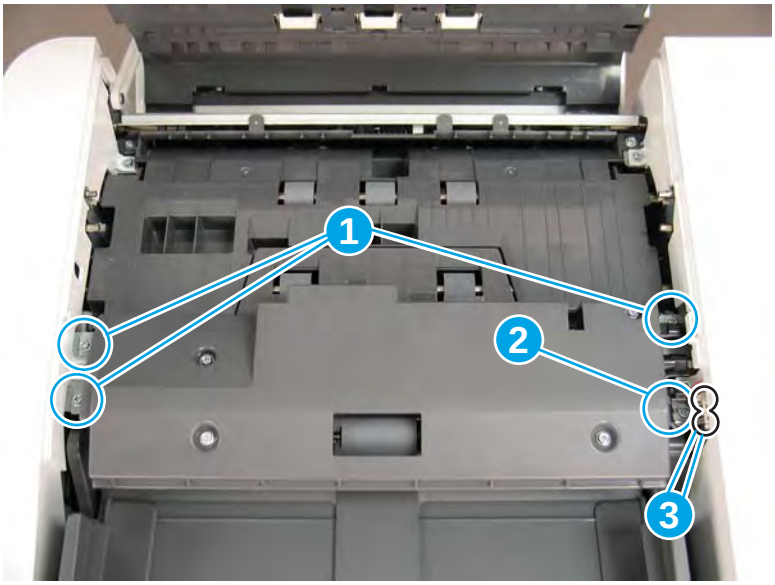
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder pick/feed roller assembly (GX/z models)

▲ Remove four screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout 3), and then remove the pick feed roller assembly.

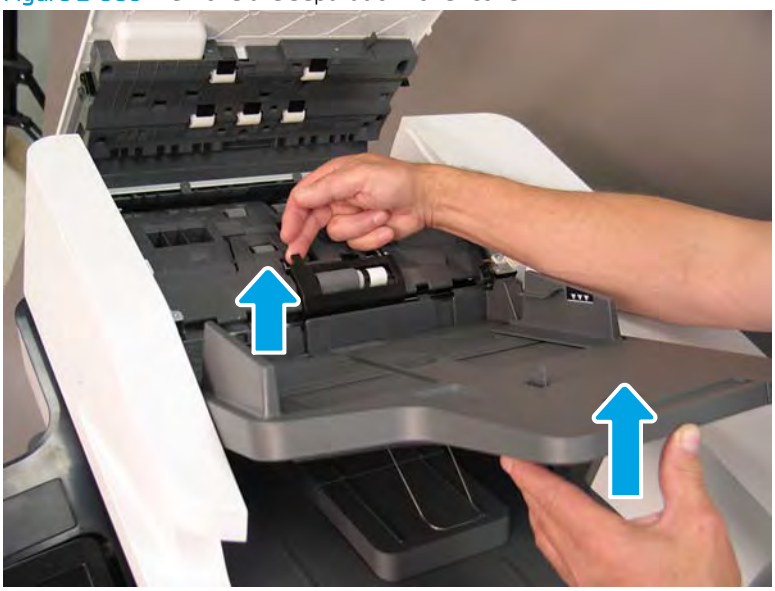
Figure 2-358 Remove four screws, two connectors and one ground wire.



Step 2: Remove the document feeder separation roller

1. Slightly lift the input tray, and then remove the separation roller cover.

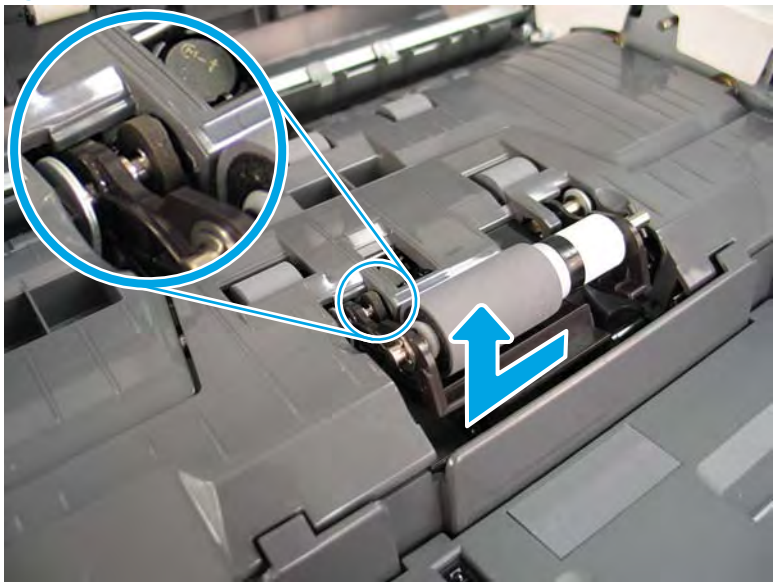
Figure 2-359 Remove the separation roller cover



2. Remove one plastic clip.

NOTE: The shaft is engaged in the coupler.

Figure 2-360 Remove one plastic clip

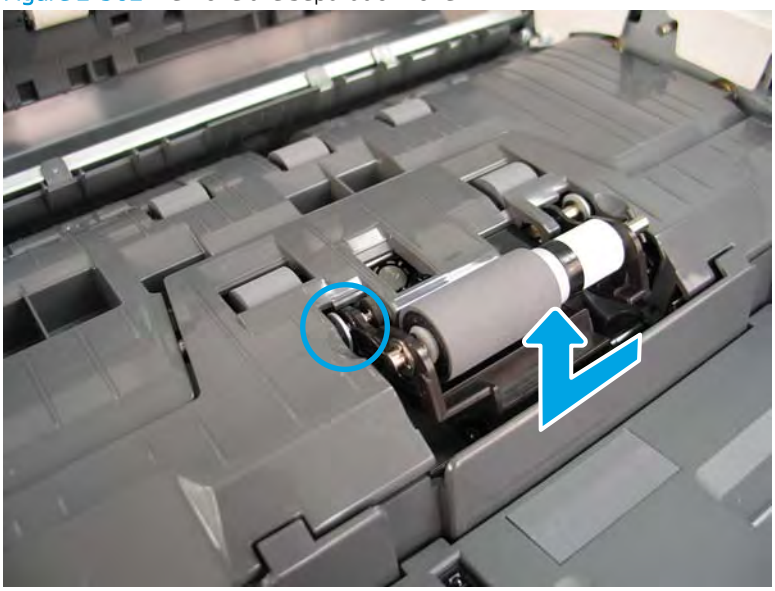


3. Slide the roller assembly to the front, and then pull up to release the claws from the shaft.

Figure 2-361 Remove the separation roller



Figure 2-362 Remove the separation roller



NOTE: Ensure the sponge washer (circled above) is retained during the removal of the roller assembly–it may fall off.

Reinstallation tip: Position the spring and shaft before attaching the claws to the shaft.

4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Flow ADF separation roller

▲ After the replacement roller is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select ADF Separation (Reverse) Roller.

viii. Select ADF Separation Roller.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF stacker (GX/z models)

Figure 2-363 ADF stacker (GX/z models)

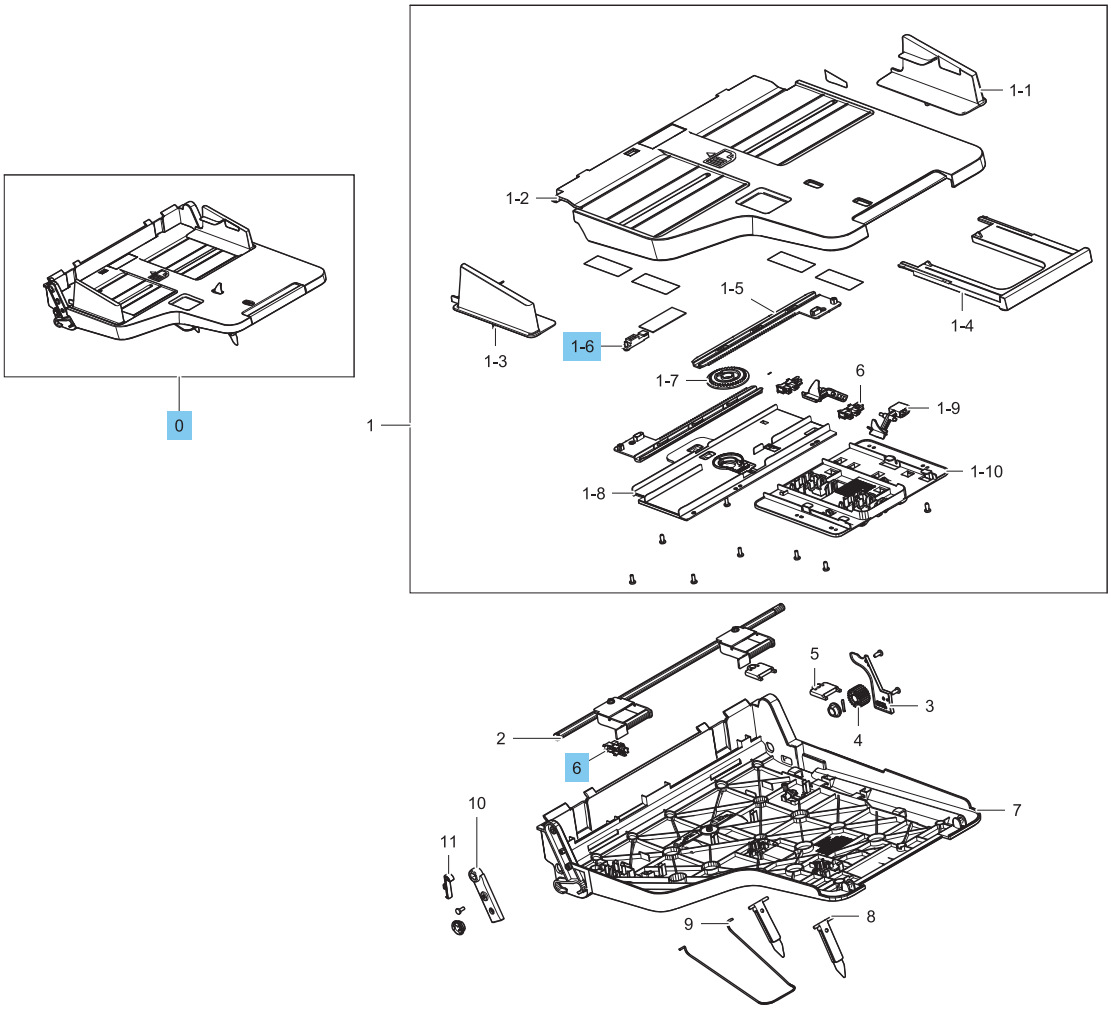


Table 2-23 Flow ADF stacker (GX/z models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	GX/z Flow ADF stacker	JC97-04658B	1
1-6	Photo interrupter	0604-001381	1
6	Photo interrupter	0604-01393	1
Not shown	Flow ADF - stacker upper CM	JC82-00693A	1

ADF main frame (GX/z models)

Figure 2-364 ADF main frame (GX/z models)

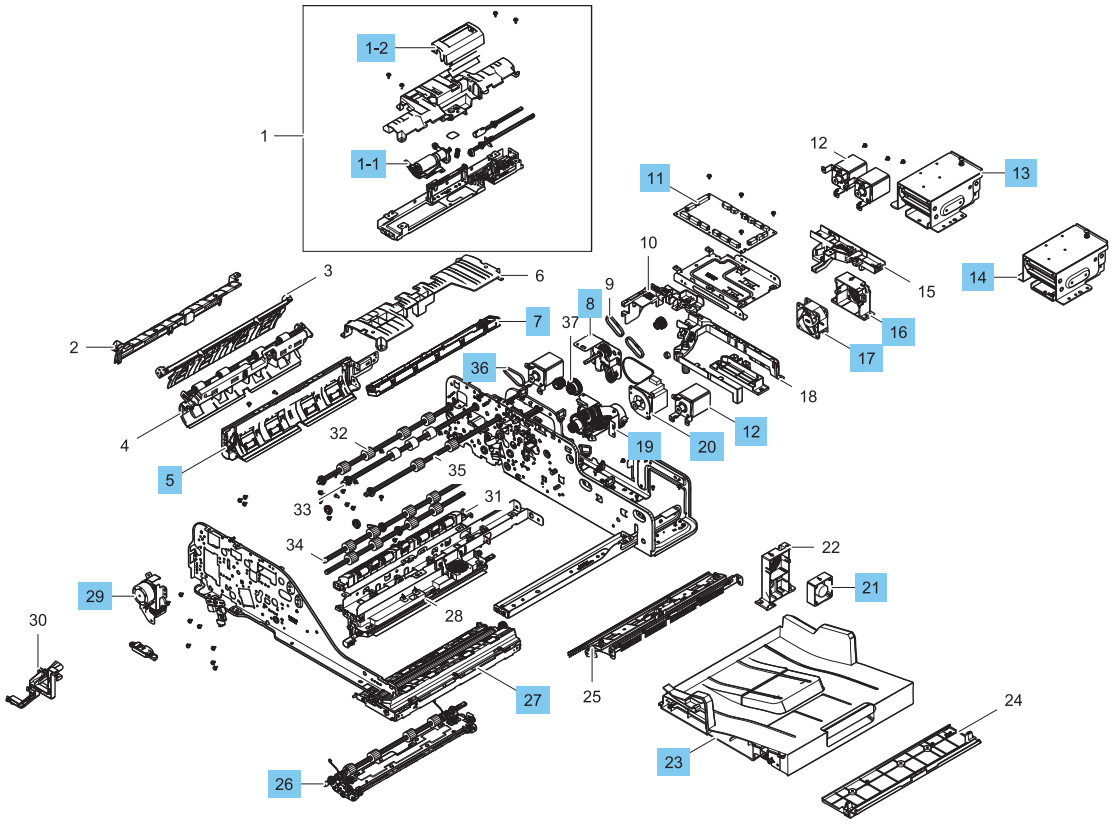


Table 2-24 ADF main frame (GX/z models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	GX Separation Roller Assy	JC97-04915A	1
1-2	GX ADF - Separation Roller Cover	JC97-04652A	1
5	GX ADF scan in lower	JC97-04656A	1
7	GX Contact image sensor	0609-001558	1
8	GX ADF, pickup release drive	JC97-04681A on page 460	1
11	GX ADF, PCA	JC92-02964A on page 482	1
12	GX ADF, feed drive motor	JC97-04680A on page 460	4
13	GX ADF, hinge L	JC97-04640A	1
14	GX ADF, hinge R	JC97-04641A	1
16	GX Fan motor housing	JC61-07694A	1
17	Fan, ADF CIS	JC31-00168A on page 473	1
19	GX ADF, lift drive	JC97-04679A on page 460	1
20	GX Step motor, ip	JC31-00177A on page 456	1
21	Fan type 4, ADF PCA (GX)	JC31-00146A on page 470	1
23	GX ADF - Input Tray	JC97-04668B	1
26	GX ADF, white simplex roller	JC97-04687A	1
27	GX ADF scan out	JC97-04830A	1
29	GX ADF - Motor Drive Release Scan	JC97-04682A	1
36	Timing belt, gear	6602-001730	3
Not shown	PCA - ADF HIC (GX only)	JC92-02964A on page 476	1
Not shown	PCA - ADF Receiver (GX only)	JC92-02967A on page 476	1
Not shown	PCA - ADF Transmitter (GX only)	JC92-02966A on page 476	1

Document feeder front motor (GX/z models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder front motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the front motor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video for this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC31-00177A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Front motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

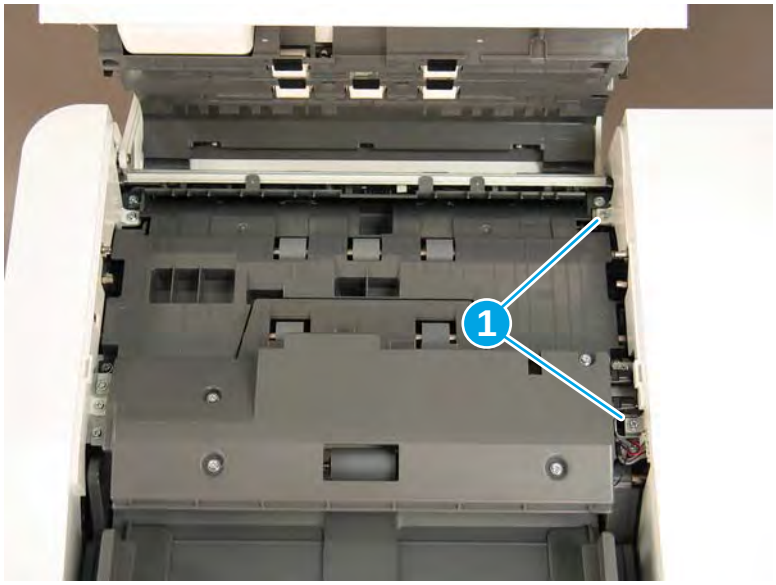
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

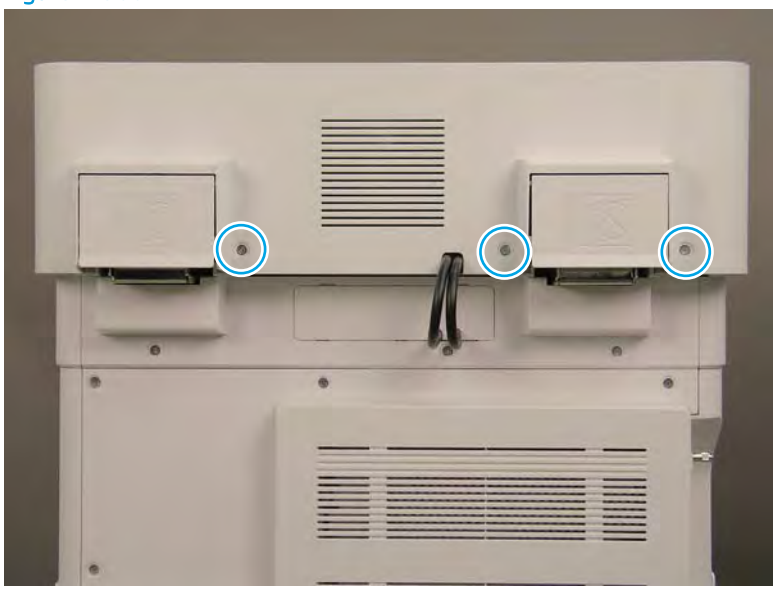
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-365 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

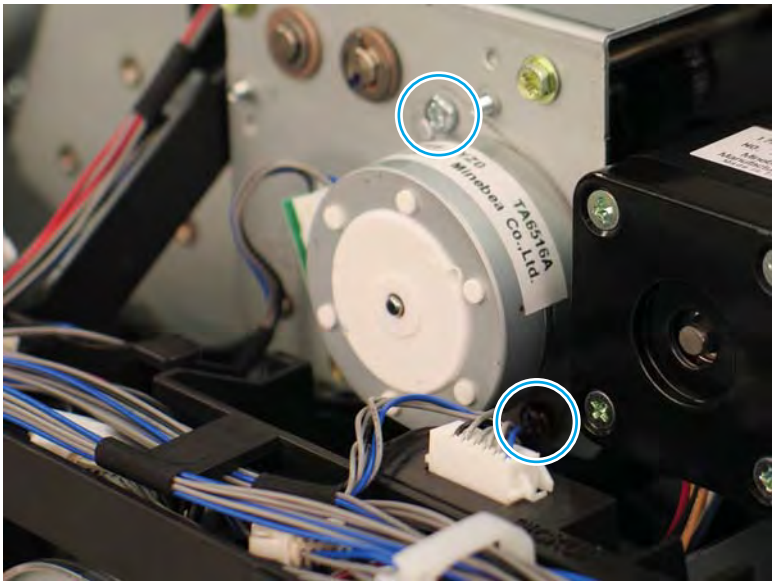
Figure 2-366 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder front motor

- Remove two screws and disconnect one connector, and then remove the motor.

Figure 2-367 Remove the document feeder front motor



Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Loosely install the motor mount screws.

c. Install the tension spring.

d. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Document feeder rear motors (GX/z models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Identify the document feeder motors
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2
- Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors
- Step 5: Remove the exit motor
- Step 6: Remove the document feeder feed motor
- Step 7: Remove the REGI motor
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the rear motor assemblies.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04679A	JC97-04681A	JC97-04680A	JC97-04680A	JC97-04680A	JC97-04680A	JC31-00177A
• Motor 1-Flow ADF drive	• Motor 2-Flow ADF drive release pickup	• Pickup motor	• Pre-REGI motor	• Exit motor	• Feed motor	• REDI t motor

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Identify the document feeder motors

Use the figure below to locate the motor.

Figure 2-368 Document feeder motors

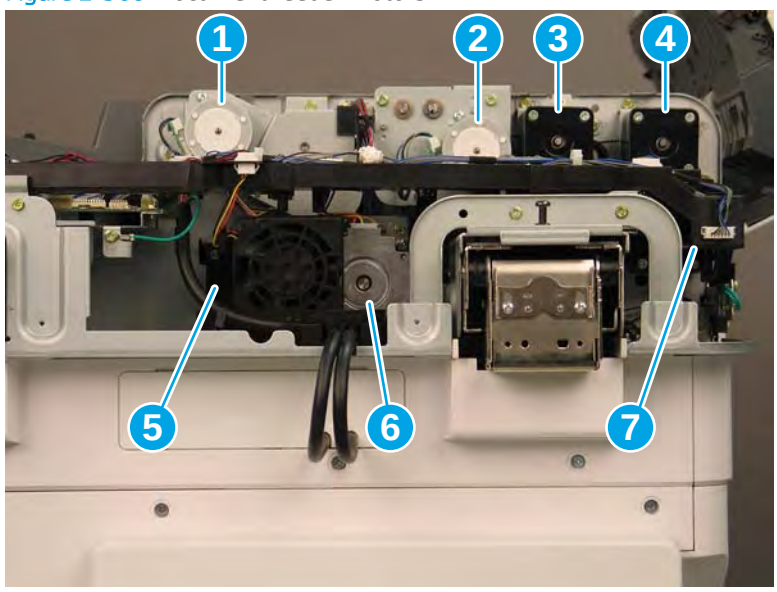


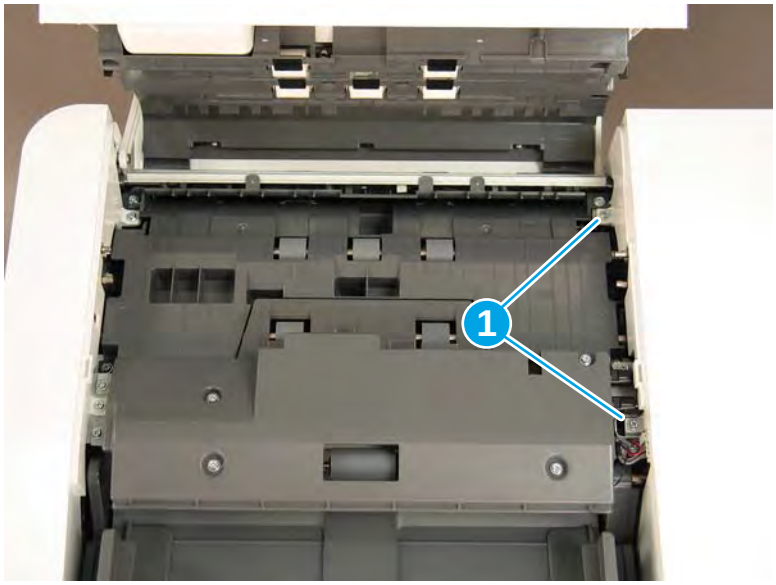
Table 2-25 Document feeder motors

Callout	Description
1	Motor 1 Go to Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2 on page 464.
2	Motor 2 Go to Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2 on page 464.
3	Pickup motor Go to Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors on page 465.
4	Pre_REGI motor Go to Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors on page 465.
5	Exit motor Go to Step 5: Remove the exit motor on page 467.
6	Feed motor Go to Step 6: Remove the document feeder feed motor on page 468.
7	REGI motor Go to Step 7: Remove the REGI motor on page 469.

Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

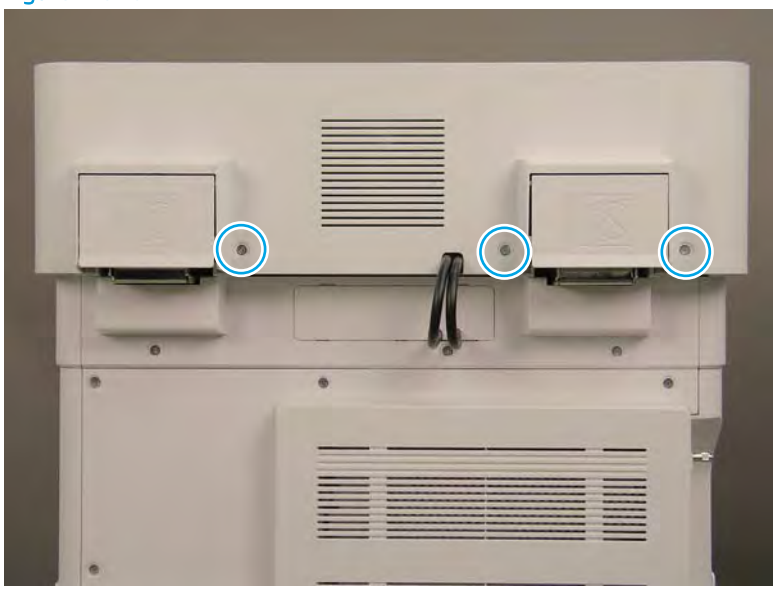
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-369 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-370 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

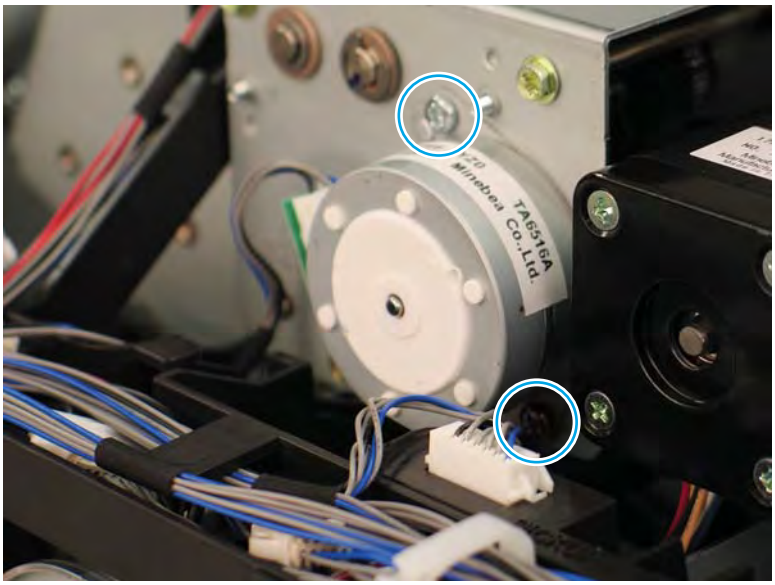


Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2

▲ Remove two screws and one connector, and then remove the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

Figure 2-371 Remove the motor

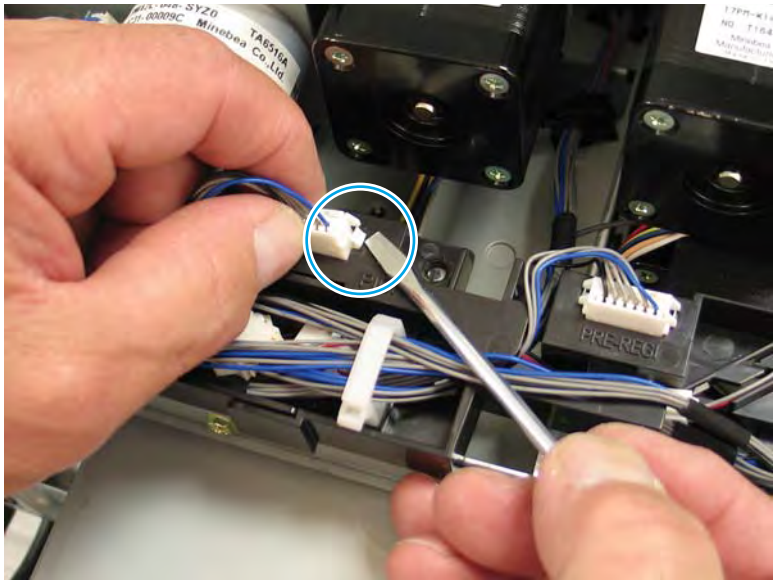


Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors

1. Loosen the cable guide
2. Disconnect one connector from the motor.

TIP: Remove the connector harness from the cable retainer, and then disconnect the connector.

Figure 2-372 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove one spring (callout 1), and then loosen (but do not remove) three screws. Slide the motor off the screws to remove.

Figure 2-373 Pickup motor

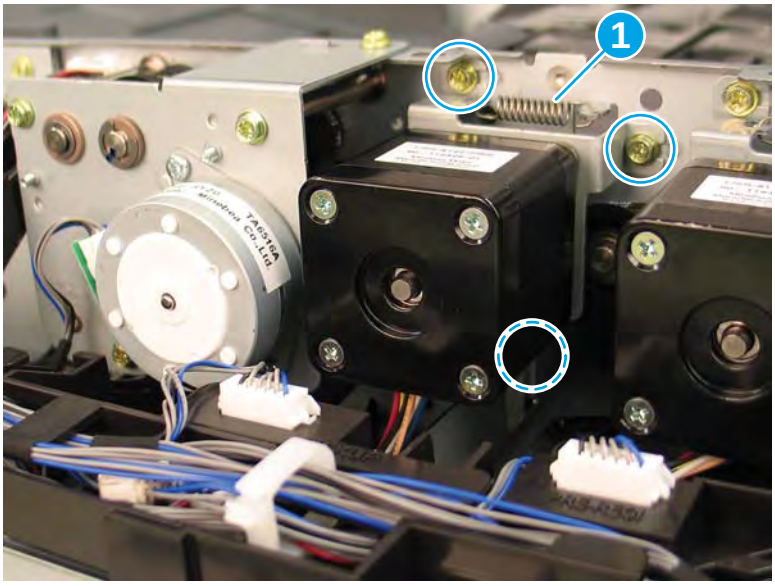
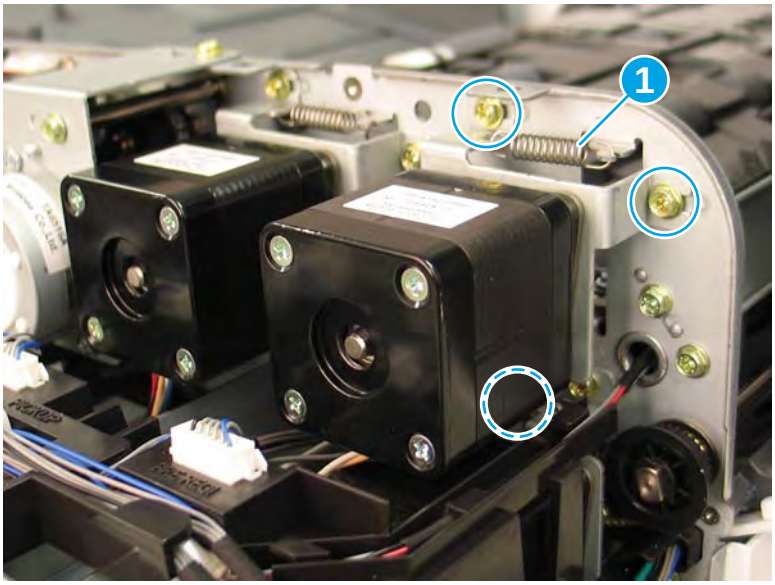


Figure 2-374 Pre-REGI motor



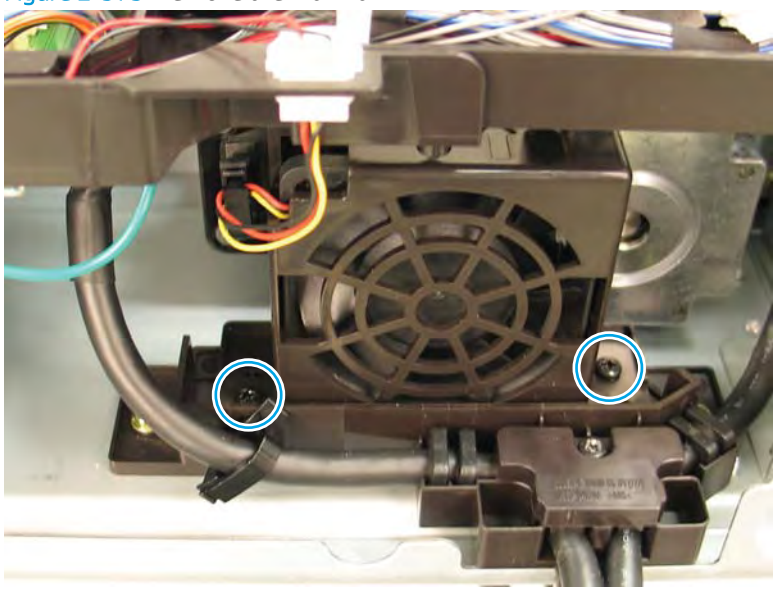
4. To reinstall the motor, do the following:

   - Reinstall the motor on the motor mounting screws, and then lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.
   - Install the tension spring.
   - Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Step 5: Remove the exit motor

1. Remove two screws and one connector, and then remove the main fan.

Figure 2-375 Remove the main fan



2. Remove the spring (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), loosen three screws, and then remove the exit motor.

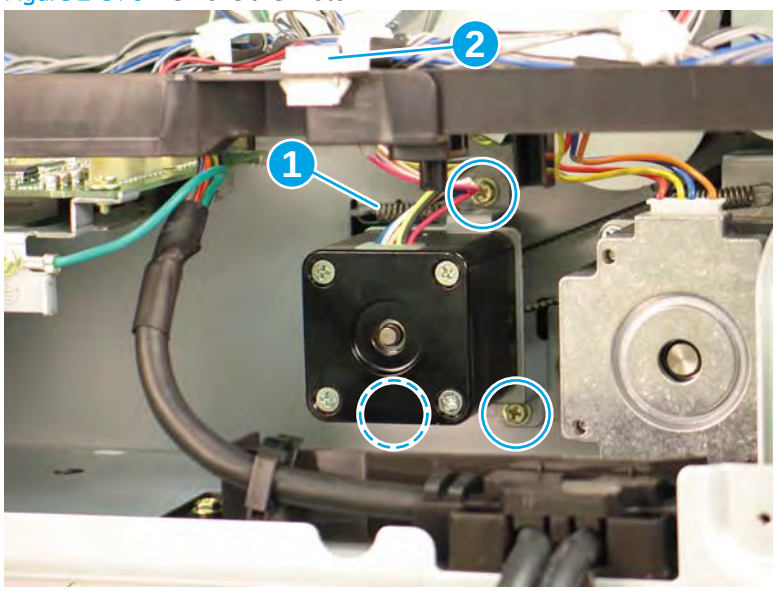
Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Install the tension spring.

c. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

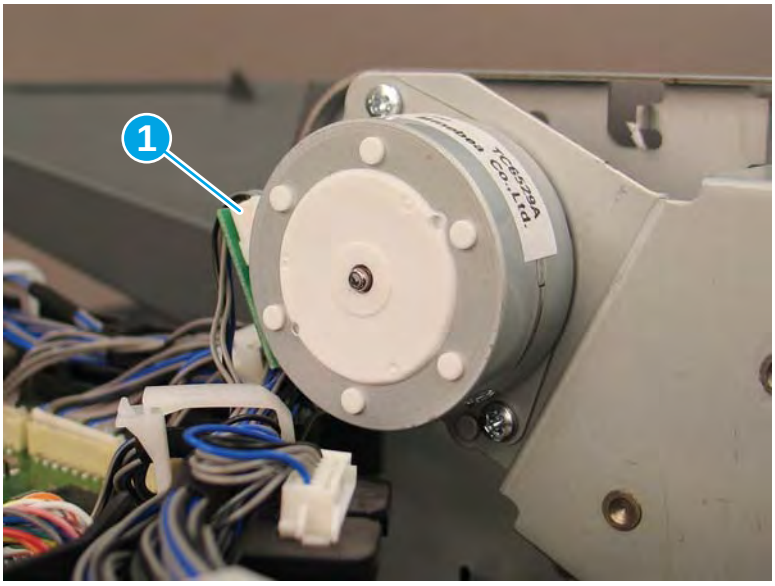
Figure 2-376 Remove the motor



Step 6: Remove the document feeder feed motor

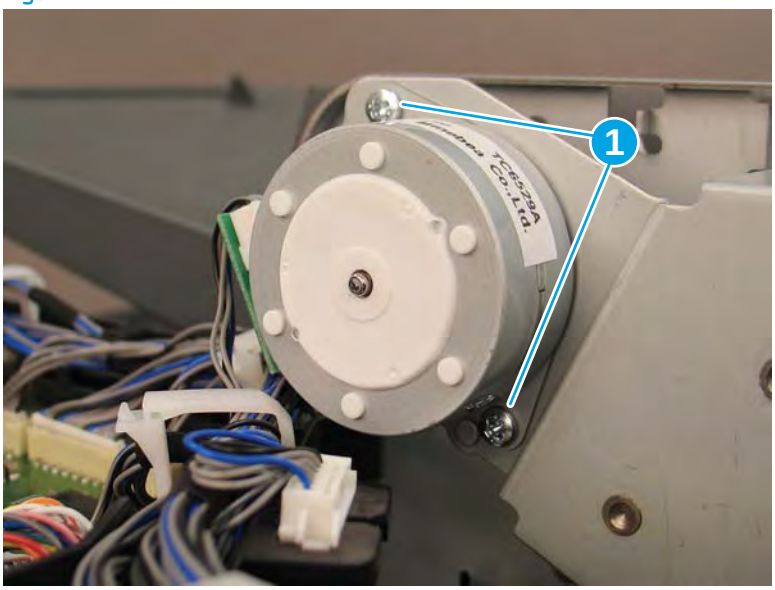
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-377 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws, and then remove motor.

Figure 2-378 Remove the motor



Step 7: Remove the REGI motor

1. Remove the rear cover
2. Remove the Pre-REGI motor
3. Disconnect one connector from the motor.

TIP: Remove the connector harness from the cable retainer, and then disconnect the connector.

4. Remove one spring, loosen (do not remove) 3 screws, and then slide the motor off the screws to remove.

Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Install the tension spring.

c. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Document feeder PCA fan (GX/z models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder PCA fan
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder PCA fan assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC31-00146A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Document feeder PCA fan assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

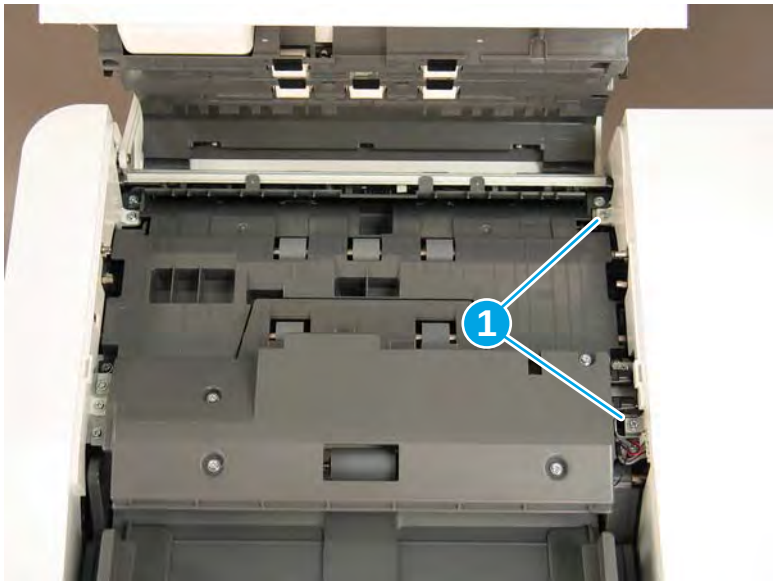
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

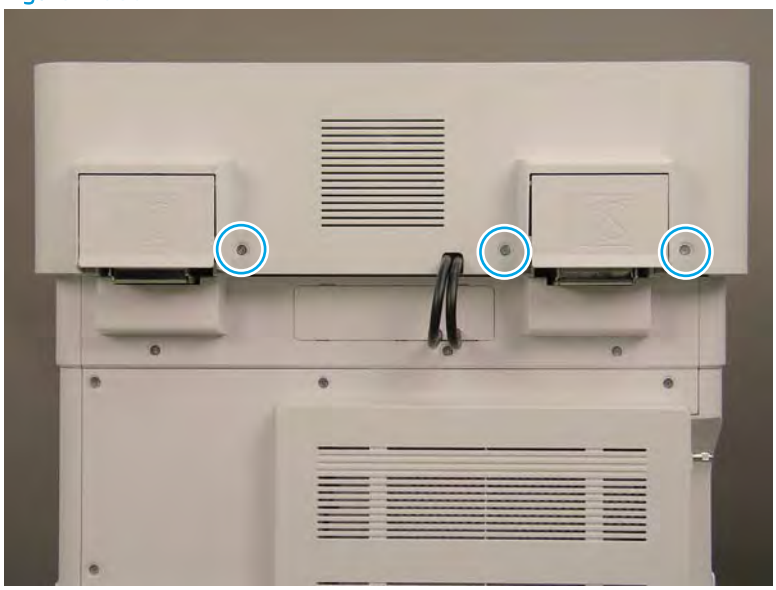
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-379 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

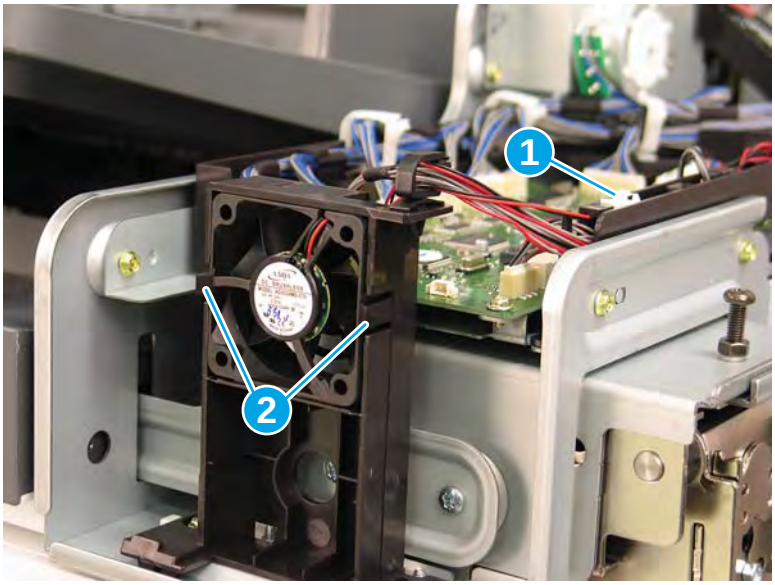
Figure 2-380 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder PCA fan

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and then release two tabs (callout 2) to remove the fan.

Figure 2-381 Remove the document feeder PCA fan connector



Reinstallation tip: Install the fan with the correct orientation when reinstalling.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Document feeder contact image sensor (CIS) fan (GX/z models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder CIS fan
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the CIS fan assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for a HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC31-00168A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- CIS fan

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

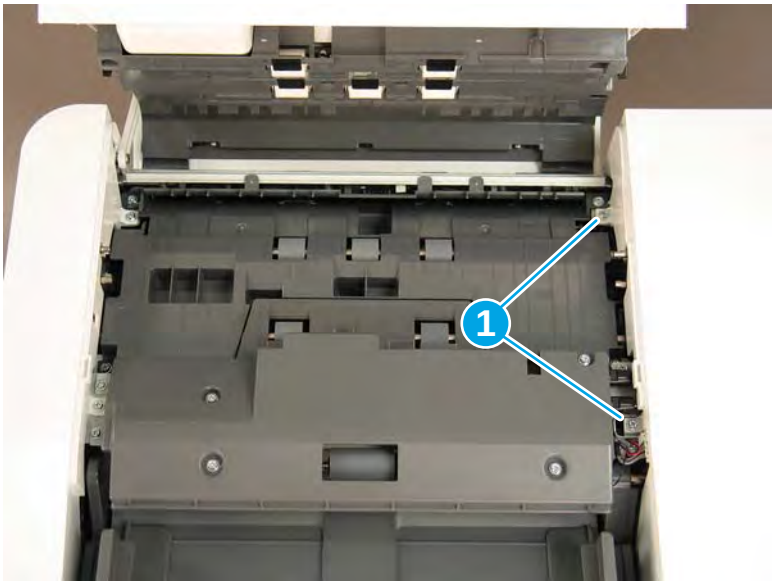
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

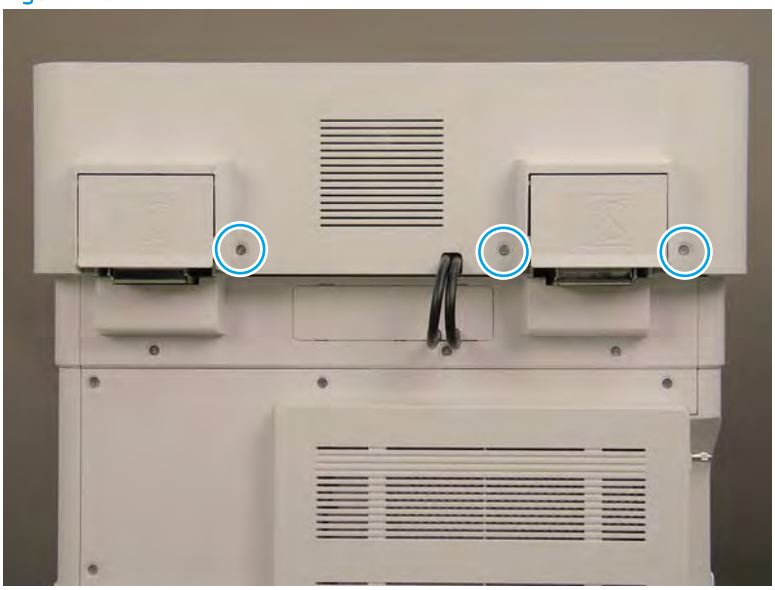
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-382 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

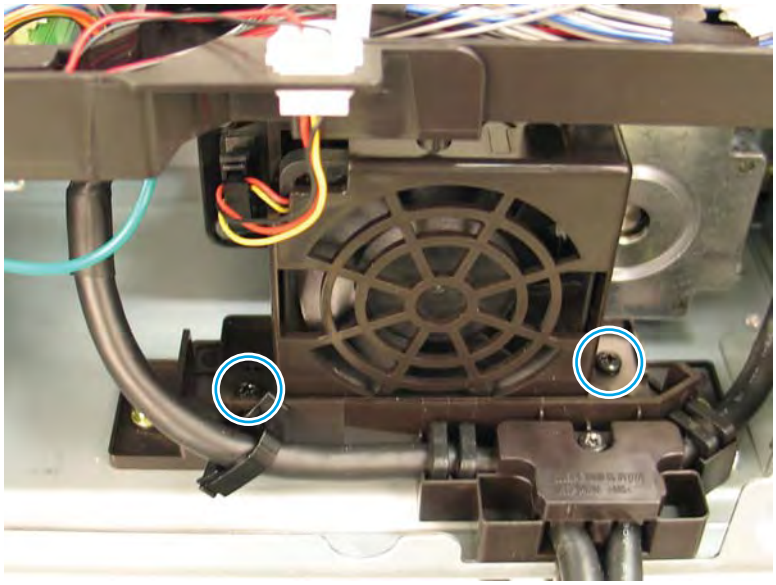
Figure 2-383 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder CIS fan

- Remove one connector, and then remove two mounting screws to remove the fan.

Figure 2-384 Remove the document feeder PCA fan



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Document feeder with ultrasonic sensor PCA (GX/z models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly
- Step 4: Remove the document feeder paper path cover
- Step 5: Remove the document feeder ultrasonic sensor with PCA
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC92-02964A	JC92-02967A	JC92-02966A
• PCA- ADF HIC (GX only)	• PCA- ADF Receiver (GX only)	• PCA- ADF Transmitter (GX only)

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

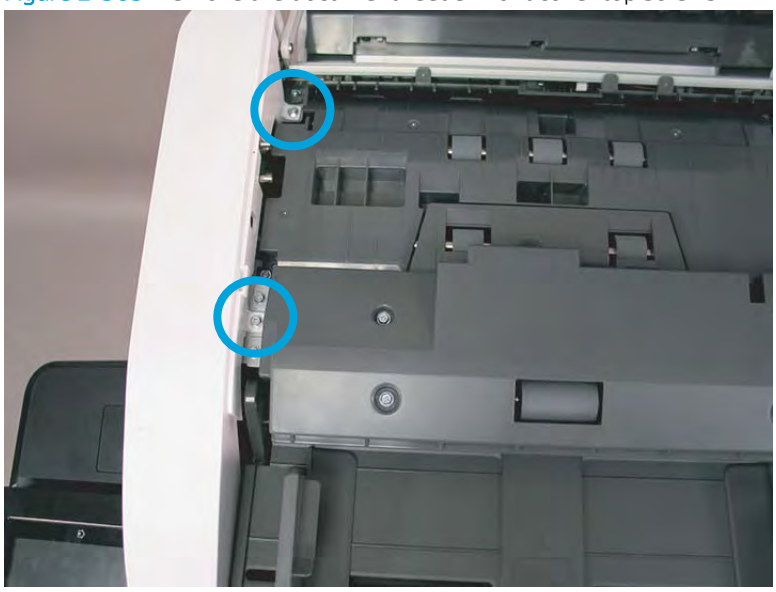
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

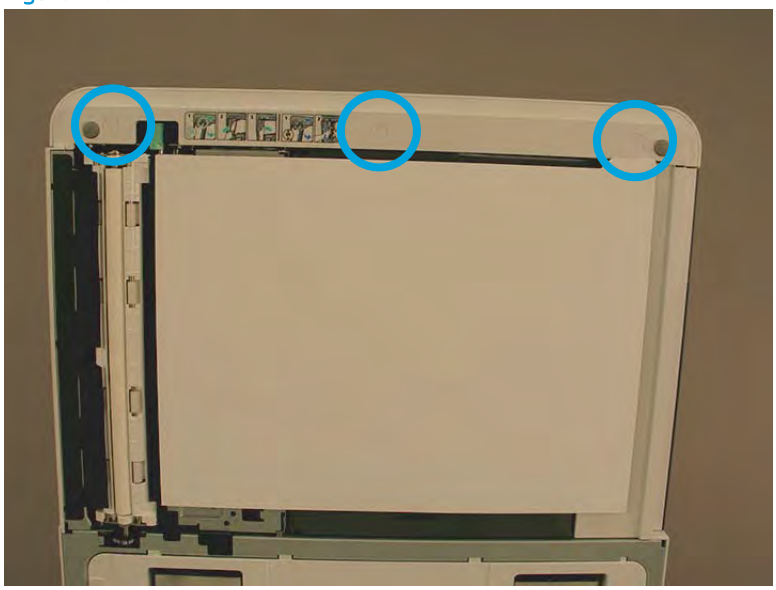
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 2-385 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

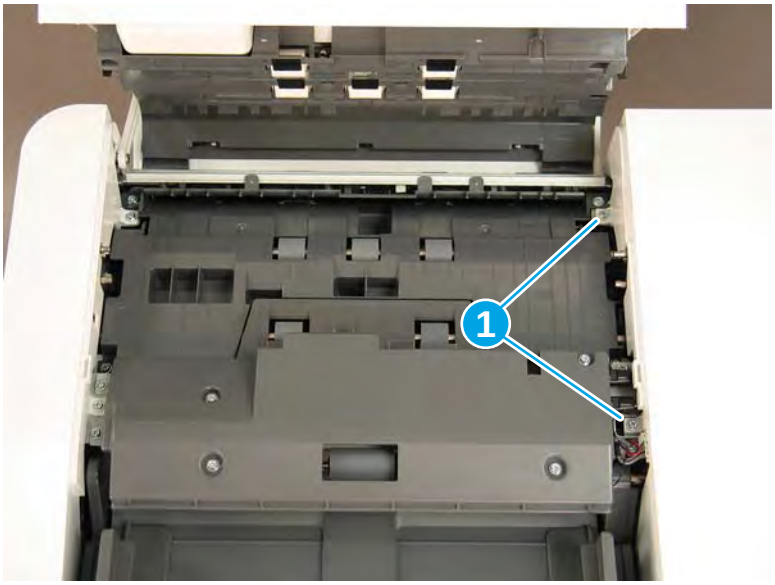
Figure 2-386 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

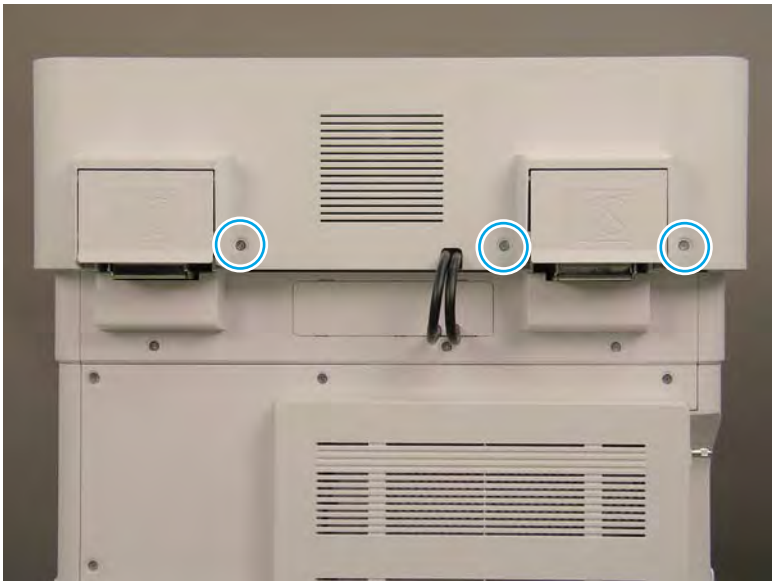
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-387 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

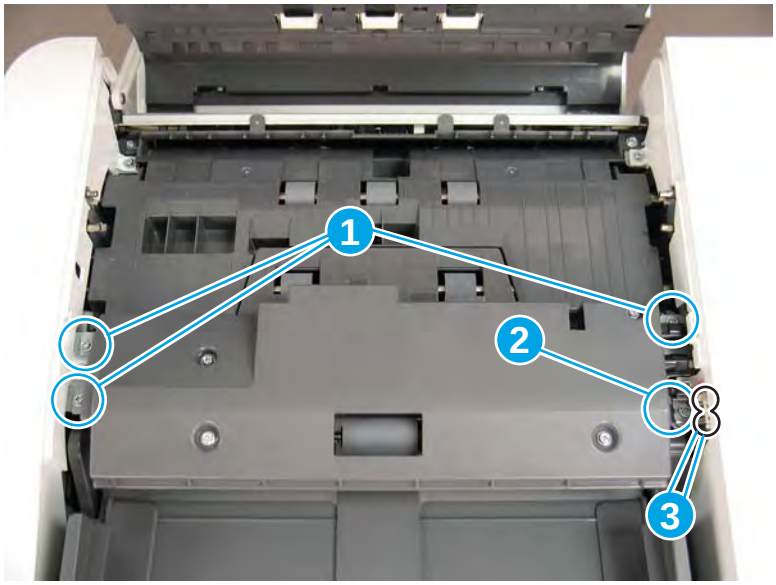
Figure 2-388 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly

▲ Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2, including one ground wire), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

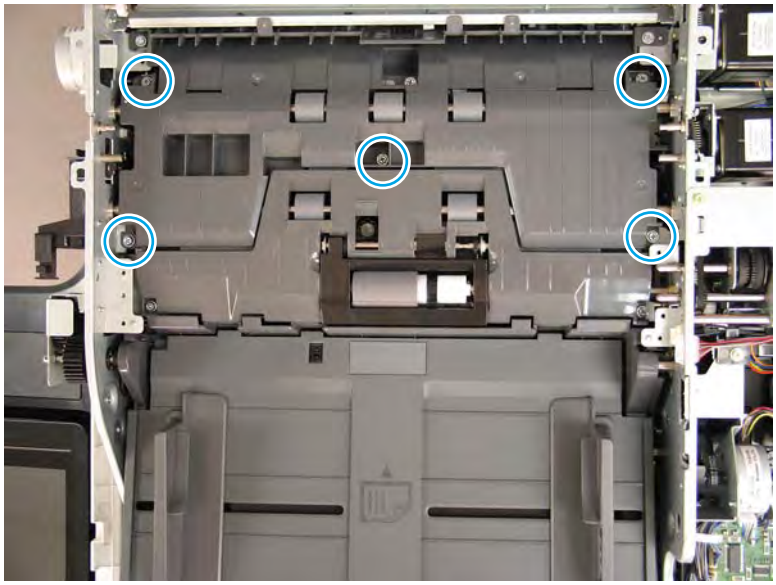
Figure 2-389 Remove the pickup roller assembly



Step 4: Remove the document feeder paper path cover

▲ Remove five screws, and then remove the paper path cover.

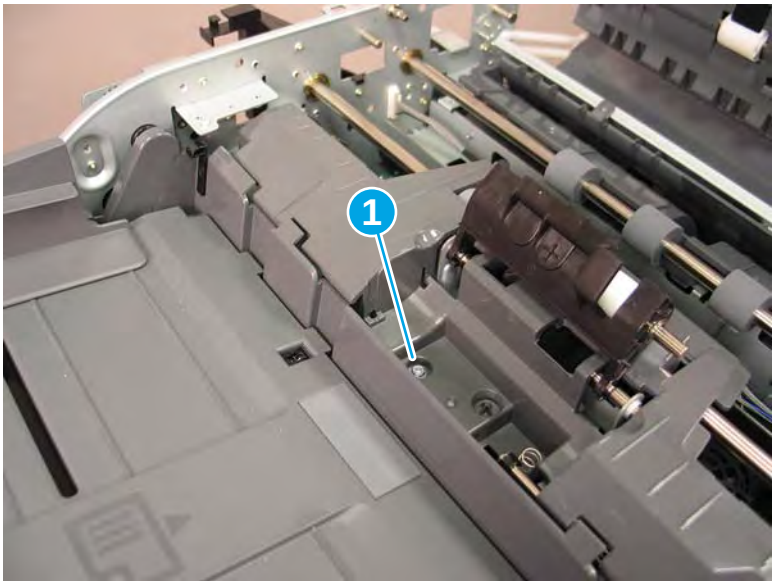
Figure 2-390 Remove the document feeder paper path cover



Step 5: Remove the document feeder ultrasonic sensor with PCA

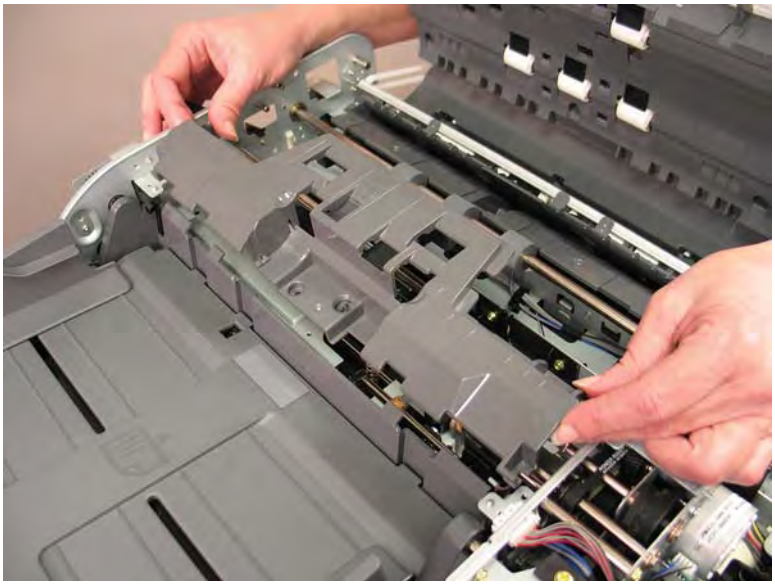
1. Remove the separation roller, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 2-391 Remove one screw



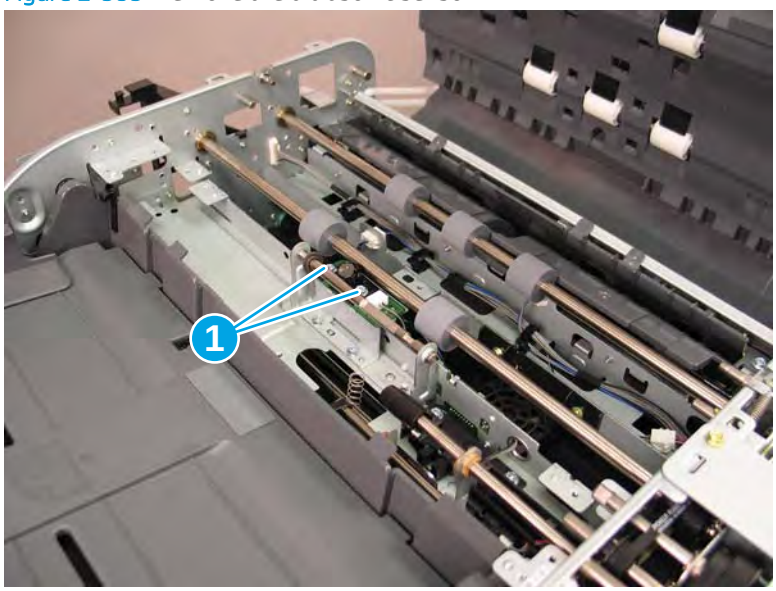
2. Remove the pick/feed cover.

Figure 2-392 Remove the pick/feed cover



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the ultrasonic sensor.

Figure 2-393 Remove the ultrasonic sensor



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA - ADF HIC (GX/z models)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the PCA - ADF HIC (GX only)
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the PCA - ADF HIC (GX only).

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC92-02964A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- PCA - ADF HIC (GX only)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the PCA - ADF HIC (GX only)

▲ Disconnect all harnesses. Remove four screws, and then release the PCA - ADF HIC.

NOTE: There are two empty connectors.

Figure 2-394 Remove screws and release PCA - ADF HIC



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Image scanner

Figure 2-395 Flow image scanner

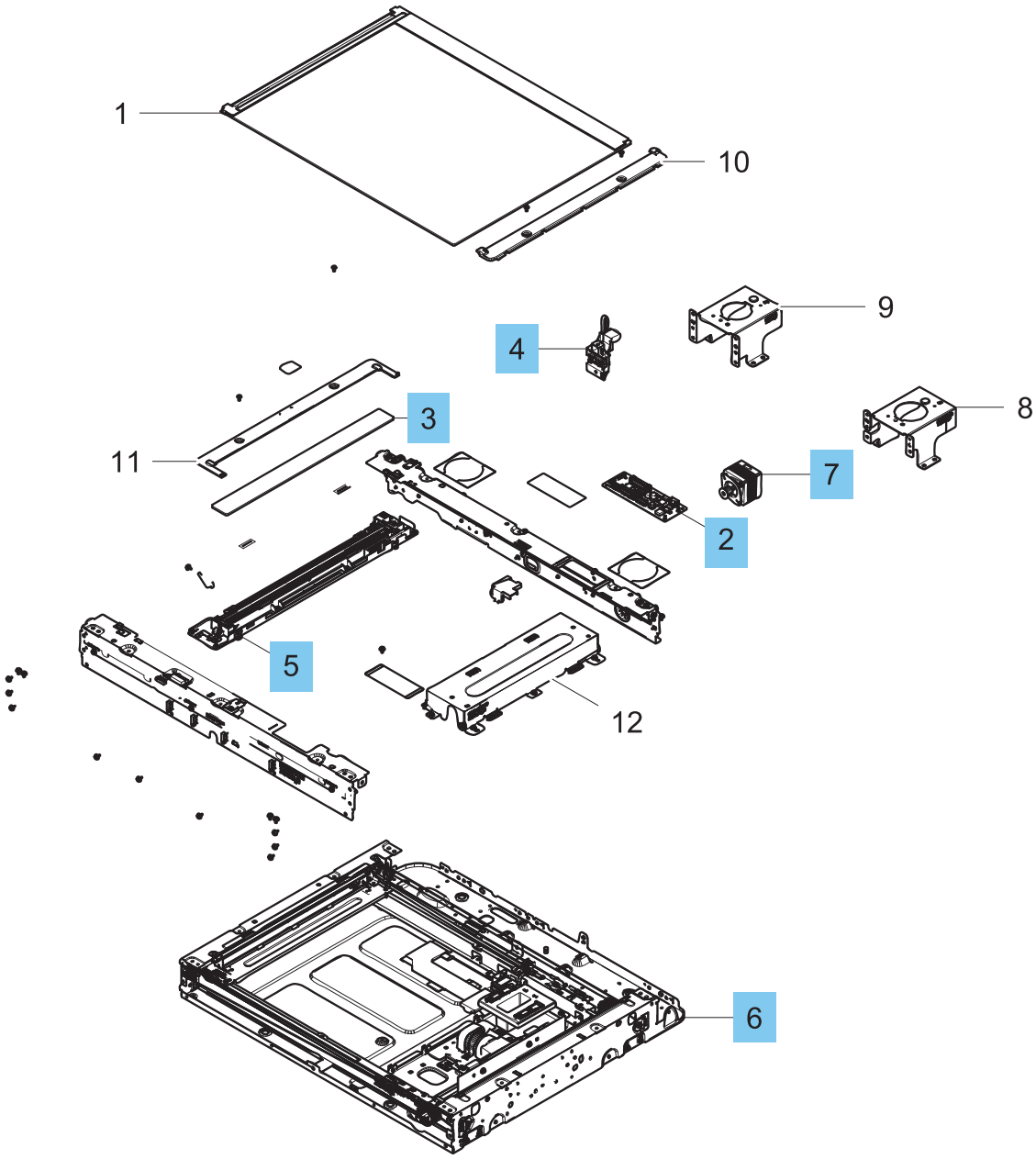


Table 2-26 Image scanner

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	PCA - Scan Joint	JC92-02781A	1
3	SSA Tempered Glass	JC01-00101A	1
4	Image scanner open sensor	JC97-04516A	1
5	Scanner - FR Lamp	JC97-04521A	1
6	Image scanner, lower	JC97-04515A	1
7	Step motor, ip	JC31-00158A	1

Image scanner assembly

Figure 2-396 ADF image scanner

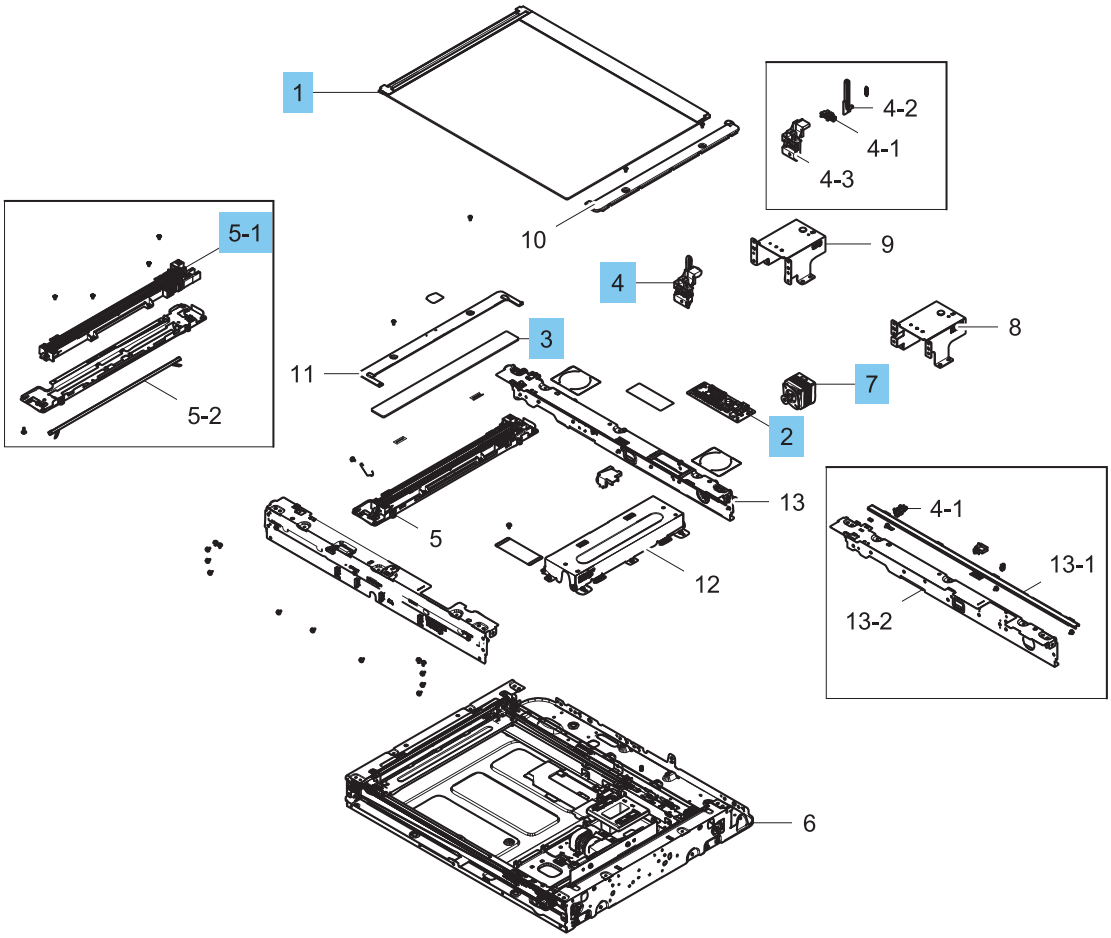


Table 2-27 ADF image scanner

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Image scanner scan glass	JC97-04522B on page 488	1
2	PCA scanner	JC92-02781A	1
3	Tempered scan glass	JC01-00101A	1
4	Scanner assembly-DDC and lens	JC97-04516A	1
5-1	Image scanner lamp	JC97-04521A on page 490	1
7	Step motor, ip	JC31-00158A	1

Scan glass

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scanner glass
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner glass.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04522B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Scanner glass part number

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

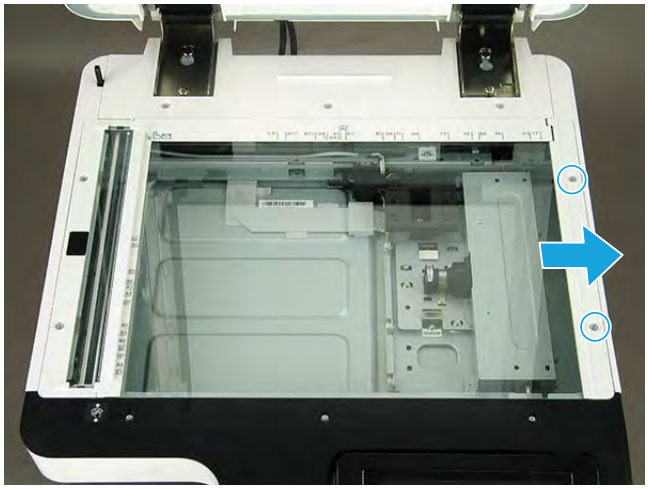
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the scanner glass

- Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scanner glass to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-397 Remove scanner glass



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Scanner LED lamp module

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scanner glass
- Step 2: Remove the scanner LED lamp module
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the LED lamp module assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP Color Laserjet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04521A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- LED lamp module assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

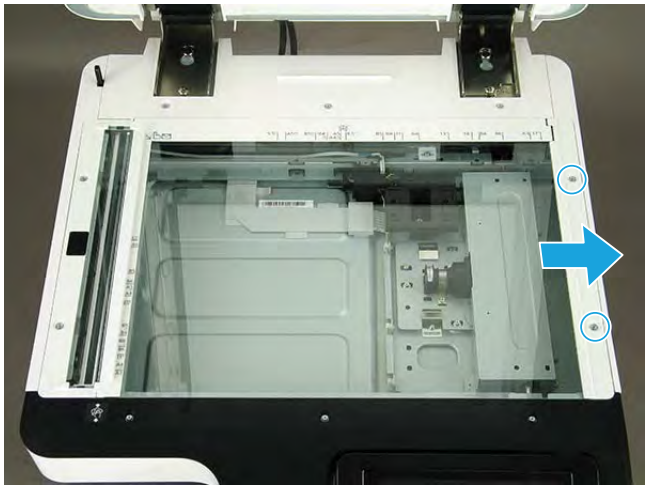
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the scanner glass

▲ Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scanner glass to the right to remove it.

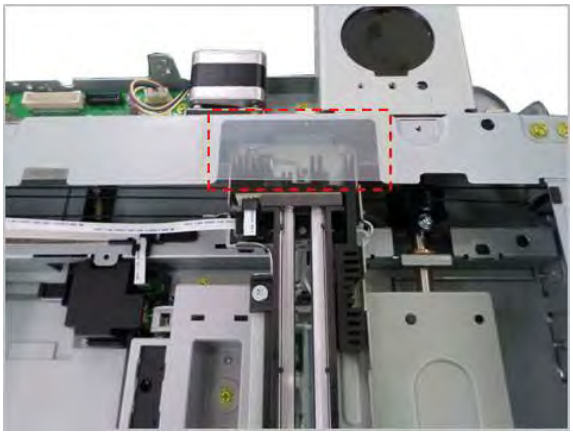
Figure 2-398 Remove scanner glass



Step 2: Remove the scanner LED lamp module

1. Remove the transparent tape.

Figure 2-399 Remove transparent tape



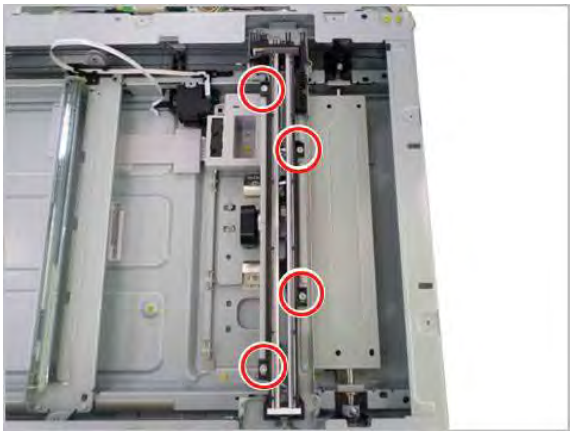
2. Disconnect the flat cable.

Figure 2-400 Disconnect cable



3. Remove four screws. Release the LED lamp module.

Figure 2-401 Remove screws and release LED lamp module



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)

Figure 2-402 ADF image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)

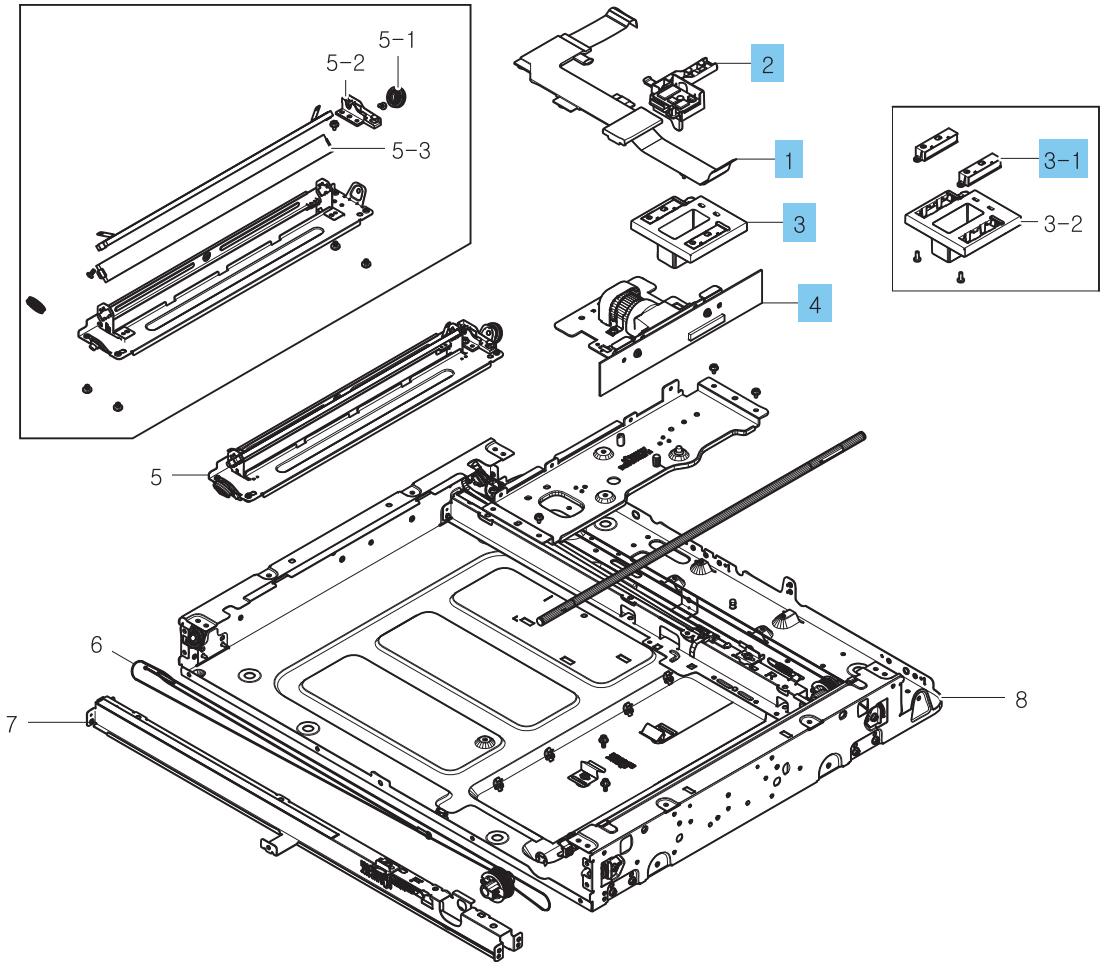


Table 2-28 ADF image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Image scanner, ffc ccd	JC97-04509A	1
2	Image scanner guide harness	JC97-04512A	1
3	Image scanner, aps	JC97-04507A on page 499	1
3-1	Photo interrupter	0604-001453	2
4	Image scanner lens	JC97-04523B on page 496	1

Scanner assembly – CCD and lens

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scanner glass
- Step 2: Remove the scanner imaging unit
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner assembly and lens.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP Color LaserJet MFP

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP LaserJet MFP.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04523B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Scanner assembly - CCD and lens

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

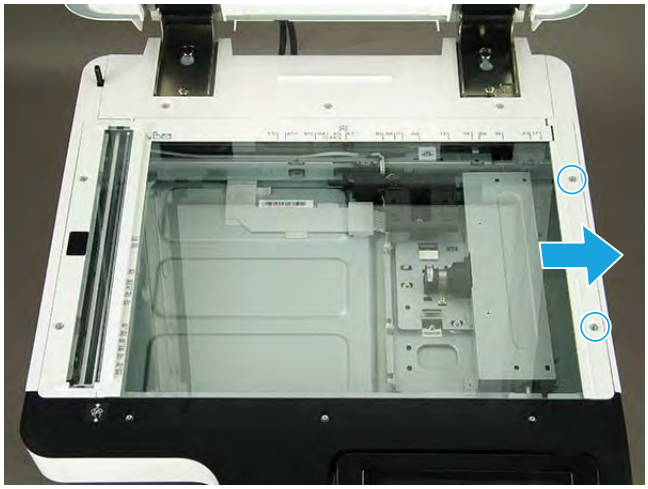
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the scanner glass

▲ Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scanner glass to the right to remove it.

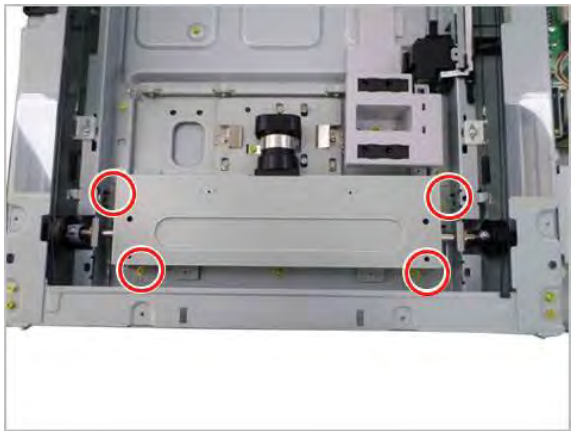
Figure 2-403 Remove scanner glass



Step 2: Remove the scanner imaging unit

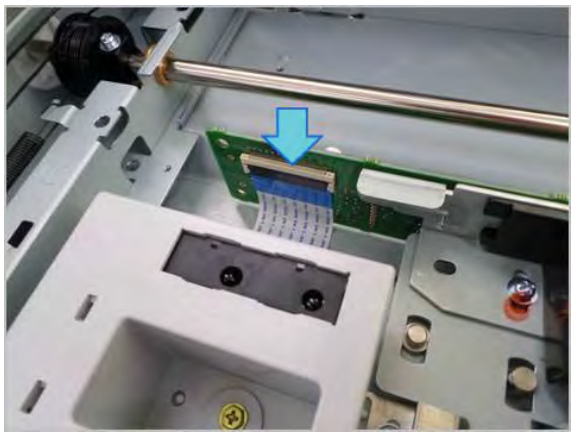
1. Remove four screws, and then release the imaging unit cover.

Figure 2-404 Remove screws and release imaging unit cover



2. Disconnect the flat cable.

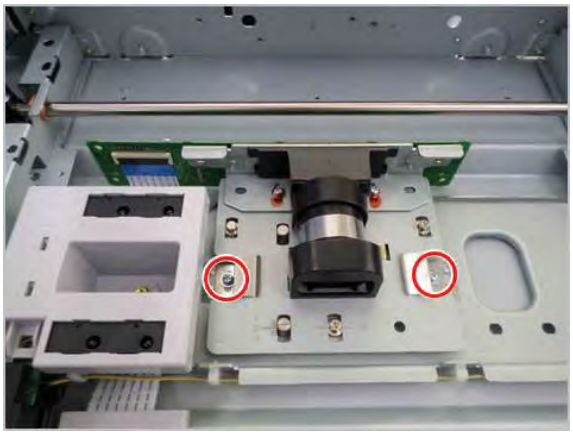
Figure 2-405 Disconnect flat cable



3. Remove two screws and release the scanner imaging unit.

CAUTION: Do not remove or adjust the other two screws shown as they require factory setting only.

Figure 2-406 Remove screws and release scanner imaging unit



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Scanner APS sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scanner glass
- Step 2: Remove the scanner APS sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the APS sensor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP Color LaserJet MFP

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP LaserJet MFP.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04507A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- APS sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

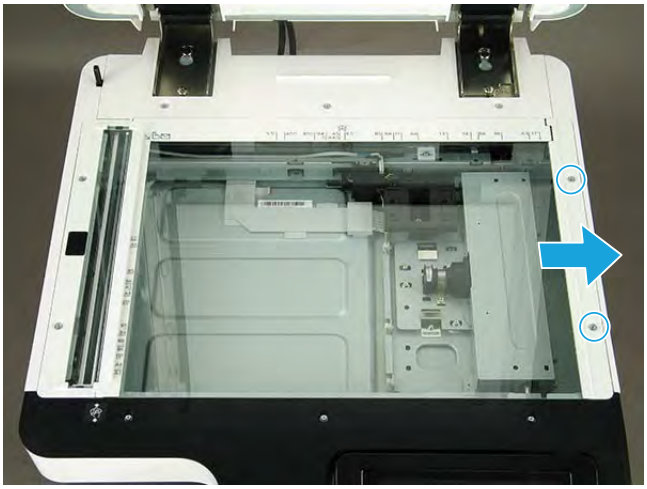
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the scanner glass

- Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scanner glass to the right to remove it.

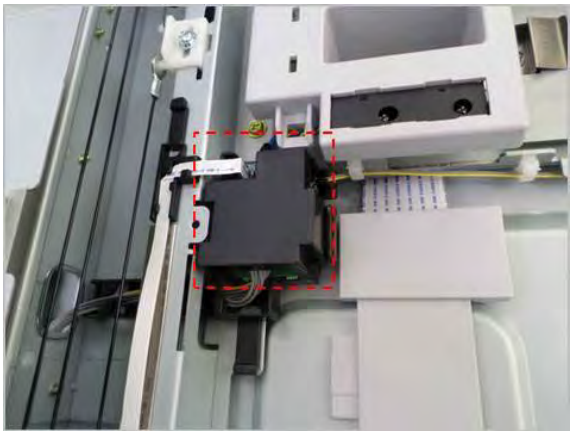
Figure 2-407 Remove scanner glass



Step 2: Remove the scanner APS sensor

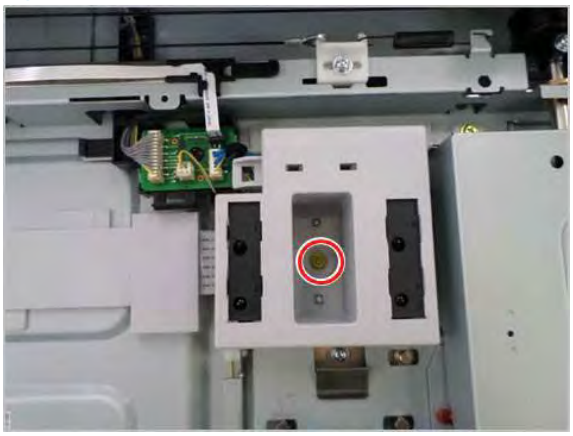
1. Remove the joint board cover.

Figure 2-408 Remove joint board cover



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-409 Remove screw



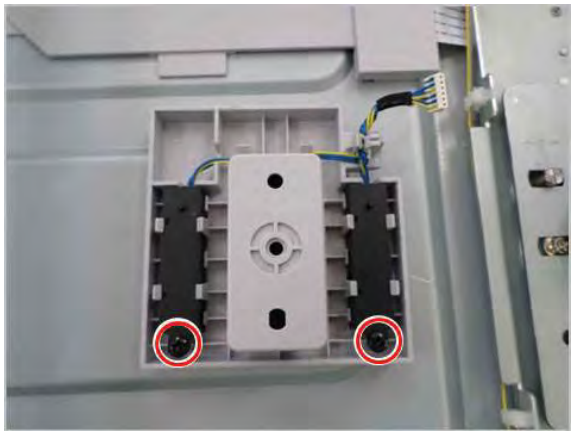
3. Disconnect the harness.

Figure 2-410 Disconnect harness



4. Remove two screws. Release the APS sensor.

Figure 2-411 Remove screws and release APS sensor



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)

Figure 2-412 image scanner, lower (GX/z models)

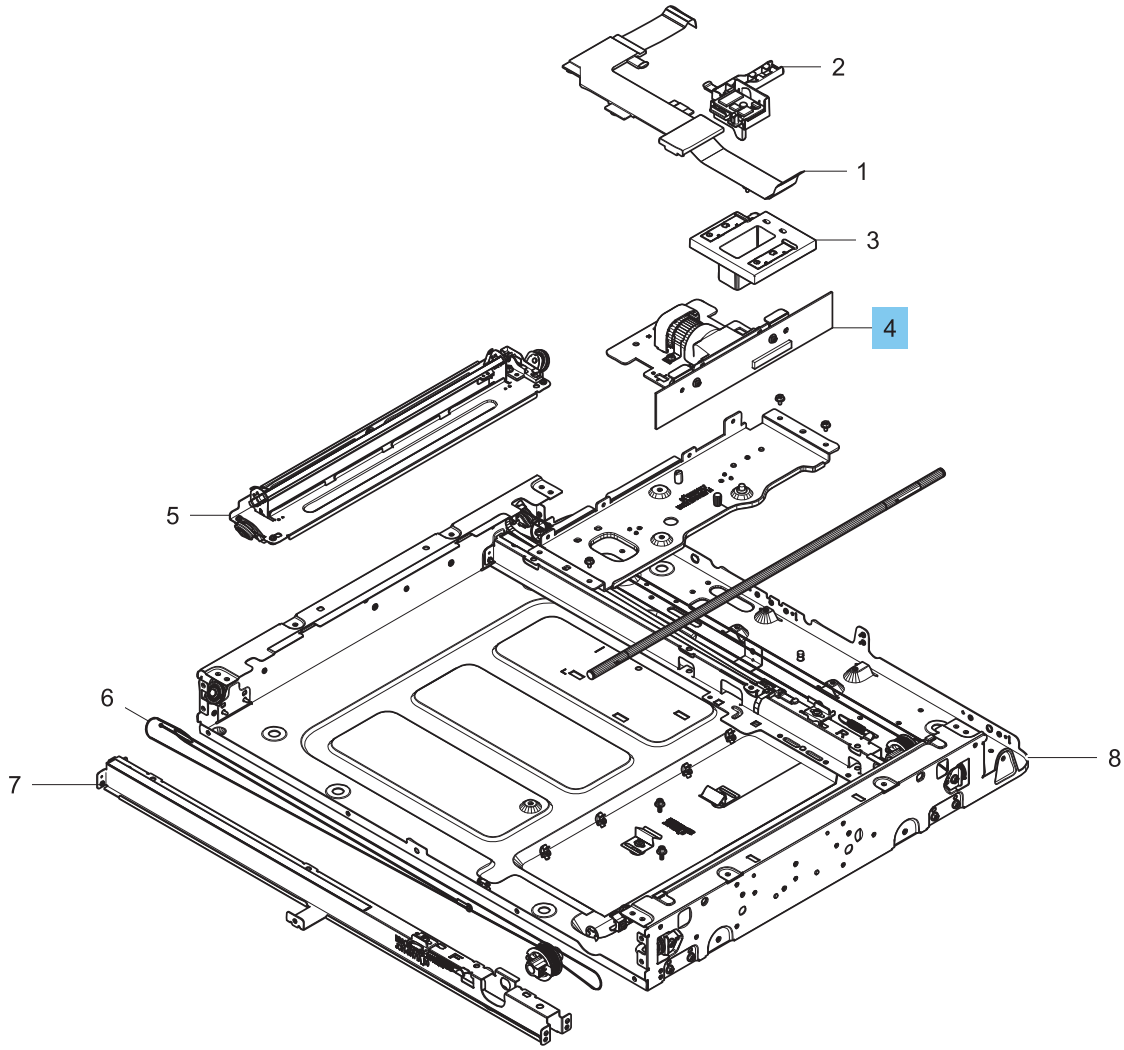


Table 2-29 Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
4	Scanner lamp	JC97-04523B	1

Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scan in lower assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04656B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Scan in lower assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

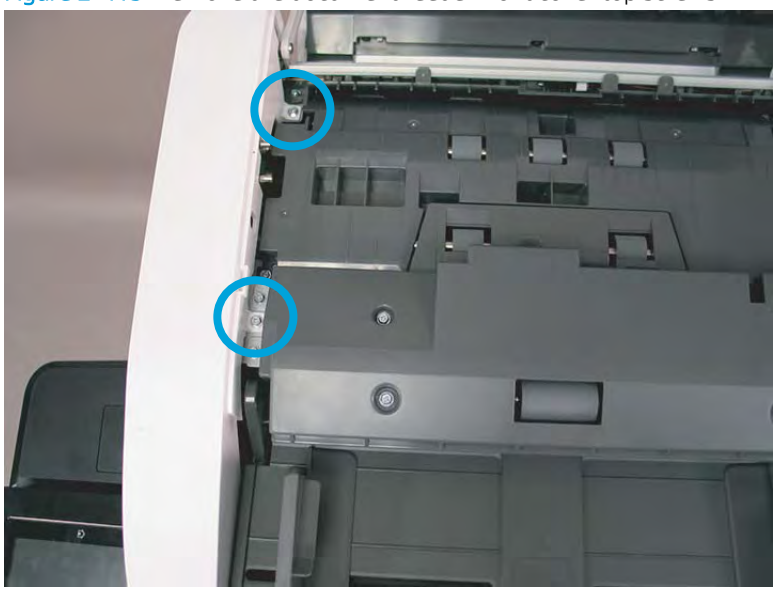
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

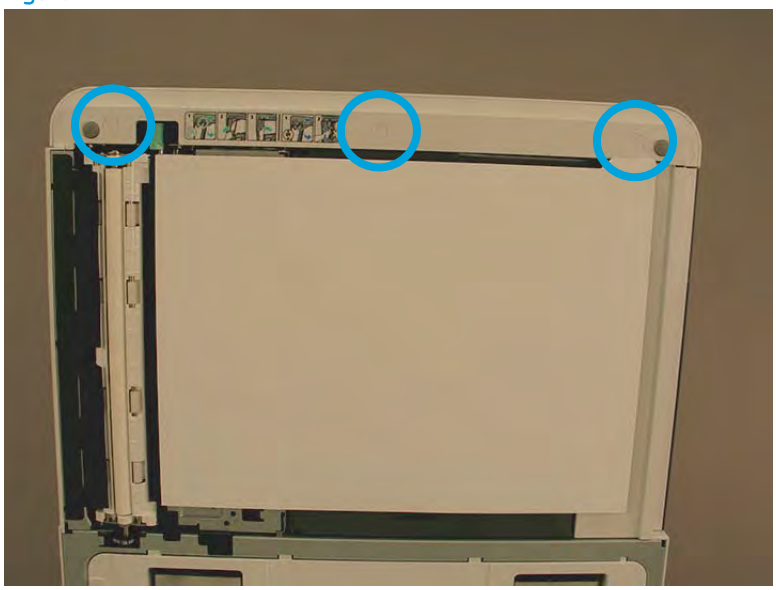
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-413 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

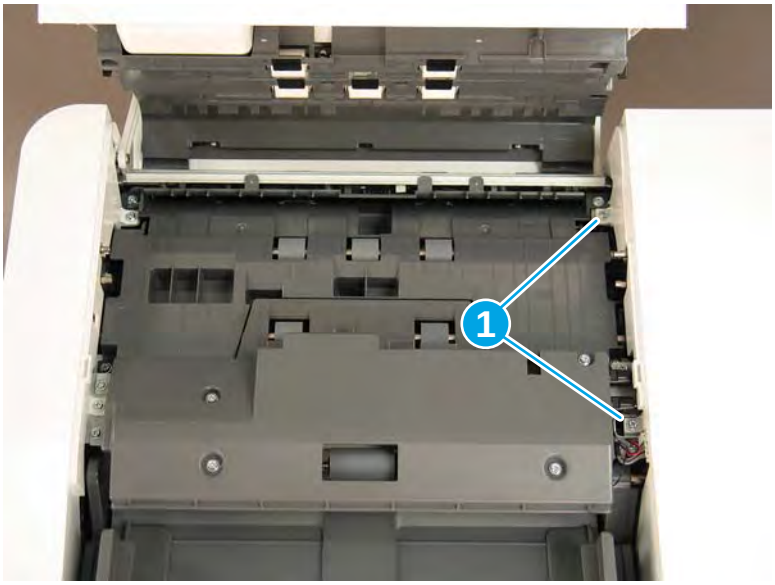
   Figure 2-414 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

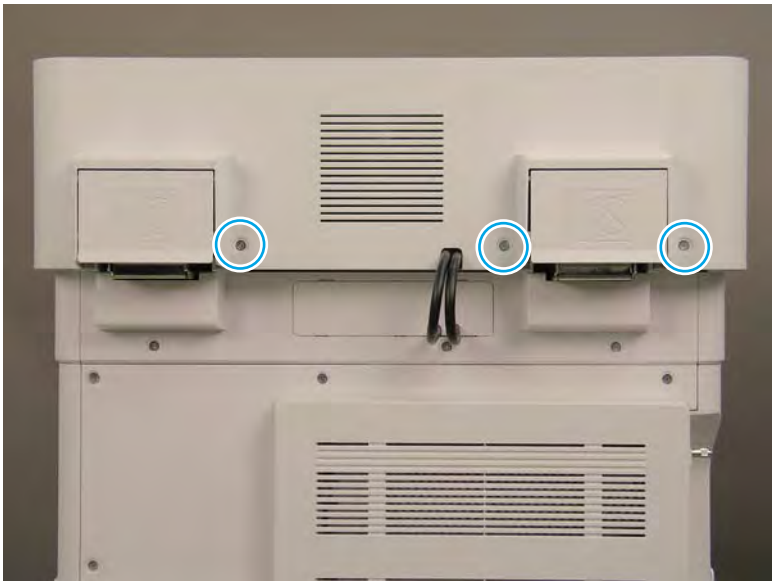
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-415 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

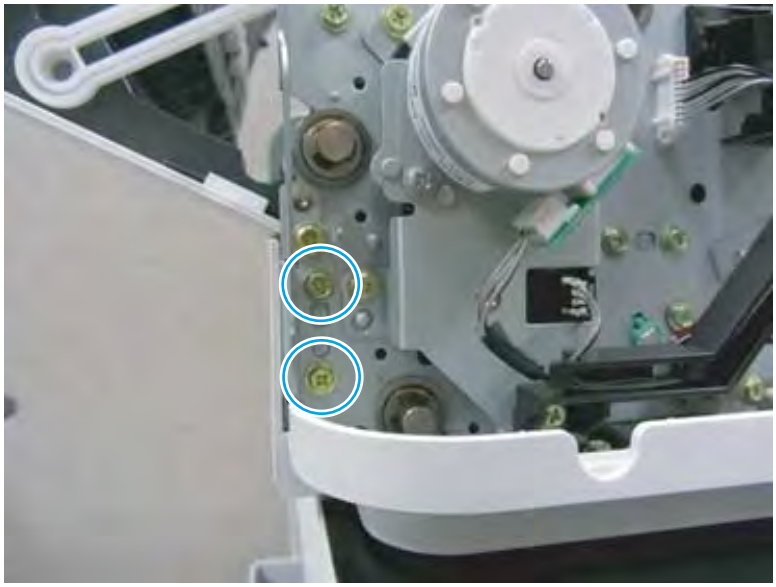
Figure 2-416 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 3: Remove the scan in lower assembly

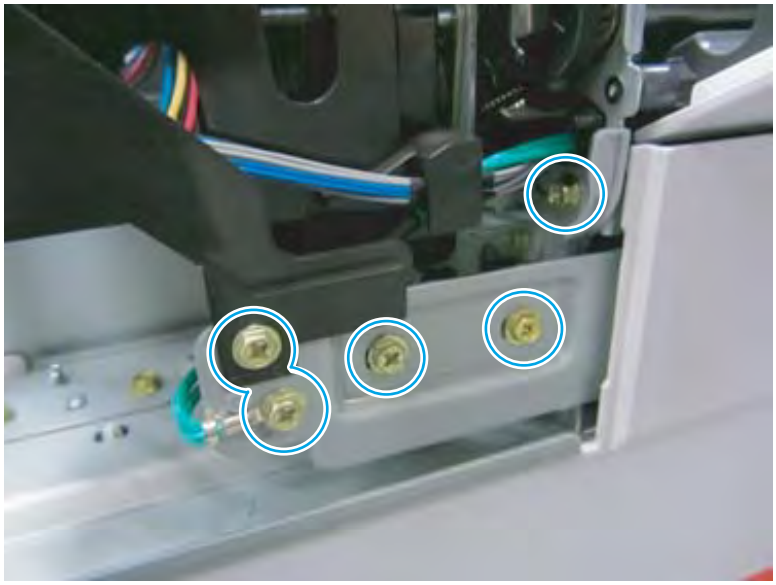
1. Remove two screws (ADF front).

Figure 2-417 Remove two screws



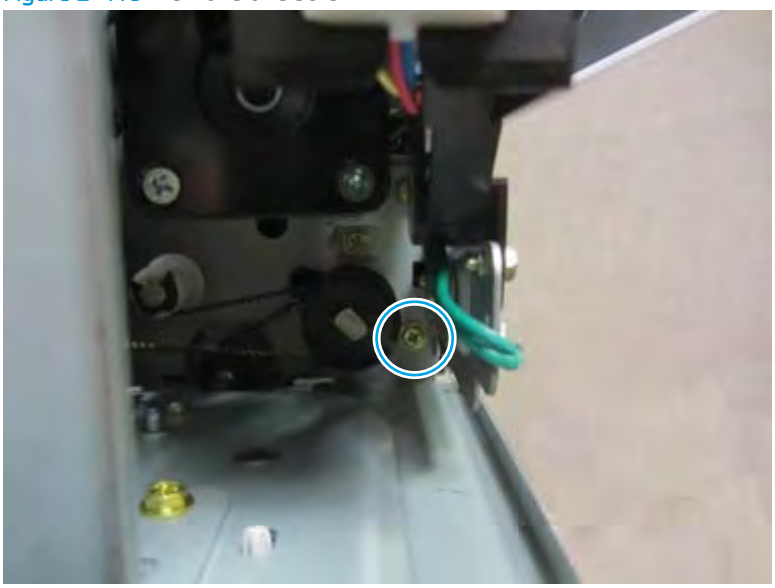
2. Remove five screws (ADF back; four sheet-metal and one ground).

Figure 2-418 Remove five screws



3. Remove one screw (ADF back).

Figure 2-419 Remove one screw



4. At the front corner, carefully pry the scan in lower assembly away from the ADF frame.

IMPORTANT: Locate the dimples in the scan in lower assembly. Separate the dimples from the ADF frame.

NOTE: When installing a replacement scan in lower assembly, do not crease or wrinkle the attached Mylar.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 2-420 Pry the scan in lower assembly away from the ADF



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HP LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)

DCF main

Figure 2-421 DCF main

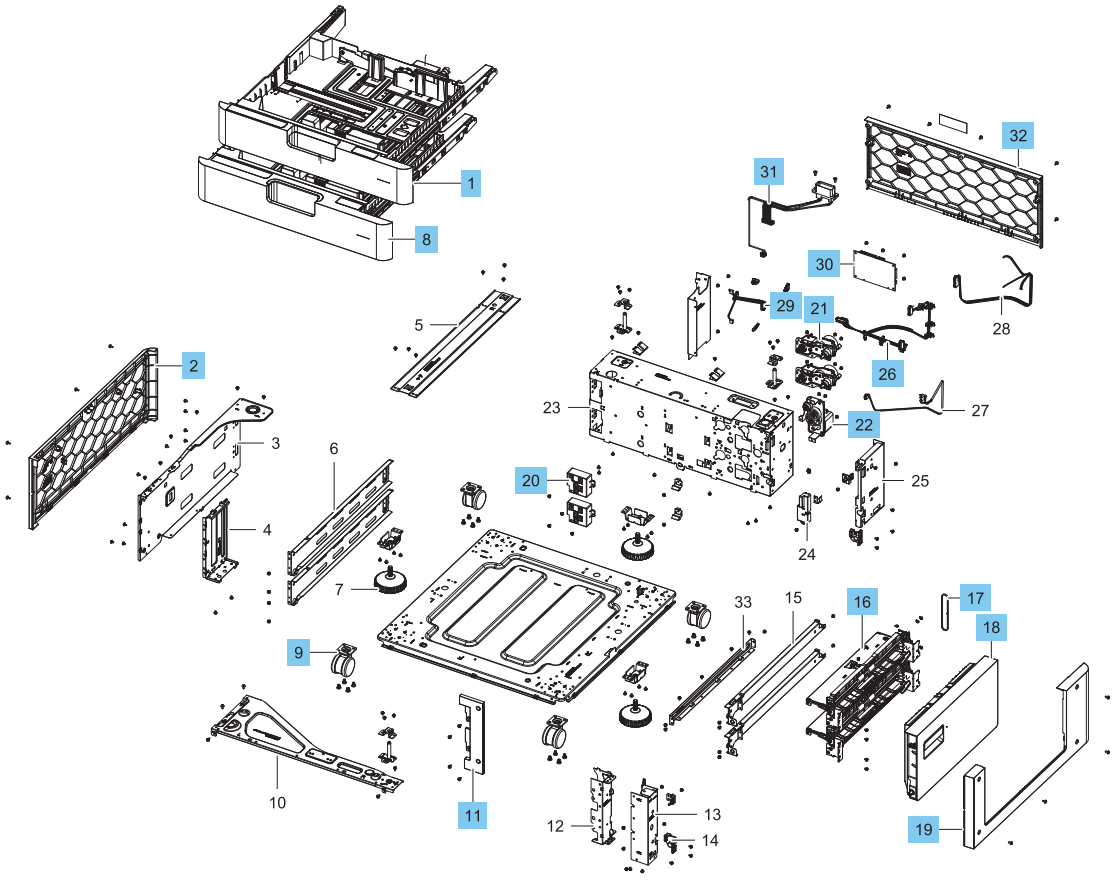


Table 2-30 DCF main

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cassette, four	JC90-01666A	1
2	DCF, left cover	JC63-04607B	1
8	Cassette five	JC90-01664A	1
9	Caster wheel	6109-001138	4
11	DCF, front cover	JC63-04606B	1
16	Main pickup	JC93-00513A	2
17	Timing belt, gear	6602-003185	1
18	Right Door	JC90-01285A on page 514	1
19	DCF, right cover	JC63-04605B	1
20	Rear auto-size holder	JC93-00018A	2
21	Drive assembly - main, (DCF pickup motor)	JC93-00442B	1
22	Drive Feed Assy (DCF motor)	JC93-00447A	1
26	Drive Feed Assy	JC39-01692A	1
29	Cable, DCR Size Sensor	JC39-01695A	1
30	PCA - MX4 DCF	JC92-02978A on page 517	1
31	IF Cable	JC39-01690A	1
32	DCF, rear cover	JC63-04604B on page 512	1
Not shown	PCA Paper Size Sensor	JC92-02622A	1
Not shown	PCA, dual cassette feeder (DCF)	JC92-02978A on page 517	1

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC63-04604B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover

▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 2-422 Remove the DCF rear cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the DCF right door
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC90-01285A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- DCF right door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

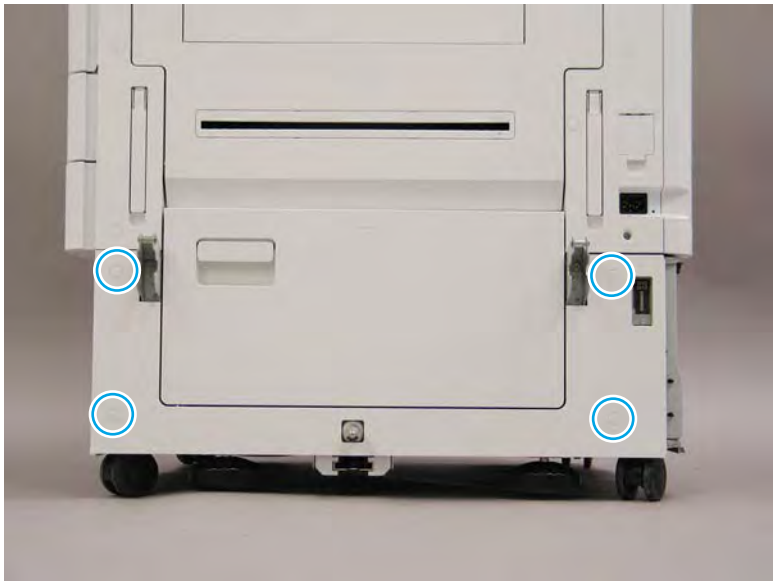
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the DCF right door

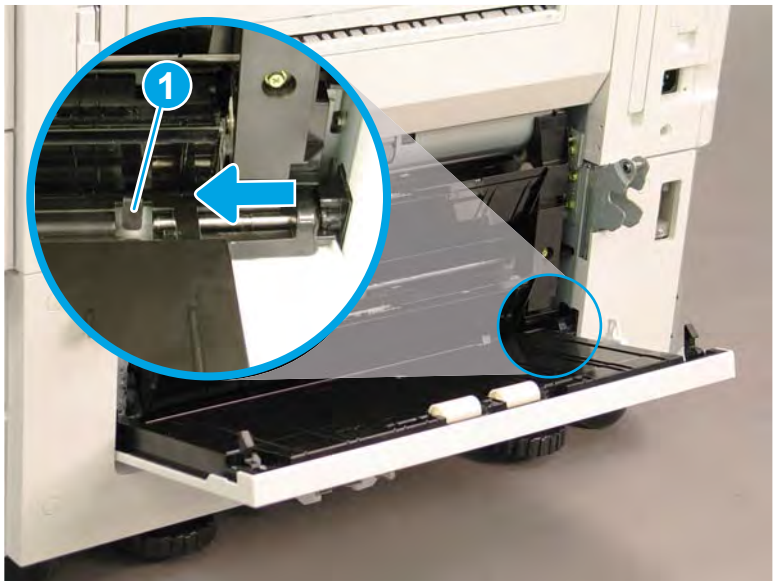
1. Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the lower right cover.

Figure 2-423 Remove the lower right cover



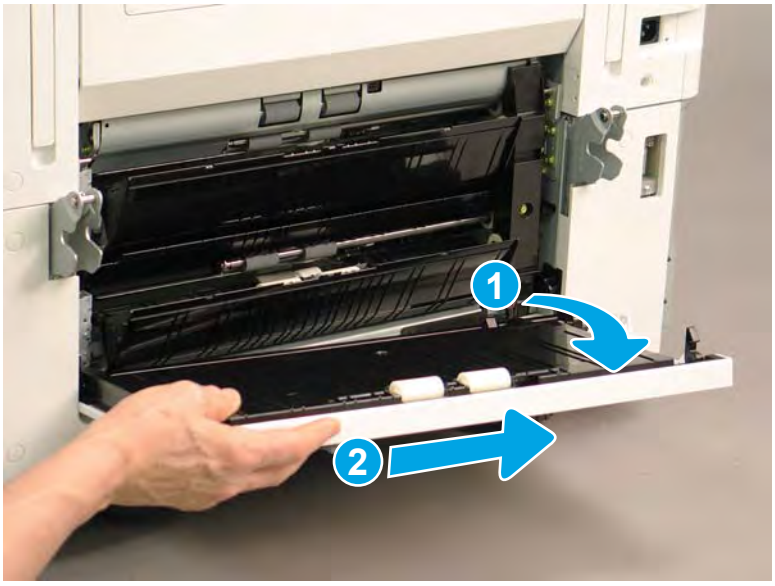
2. Open the DCF right door and slide the hinge pin to the left. Make sure that the pin slides under the tab (callout 1).

Figure 2-424 Slide the hinge pin



3. Rotate the right edge of the door away from the feeder (callout 1), and then slide the door to the right to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 2-425 Remove the DCF right door



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the Dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the DCF PCA
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC92-02978A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the Dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

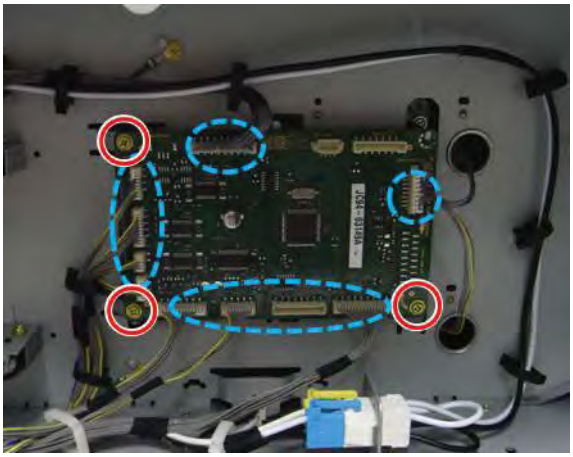
Figure 2-426 Remove the DCF rear cover



Step 2: Remove the DCF PCA

- Disconnect eight connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the DCF PCA.

Figure 2-427 Remove the DCF PCA



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the DCF motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC93-00447A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- DCF motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover

▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

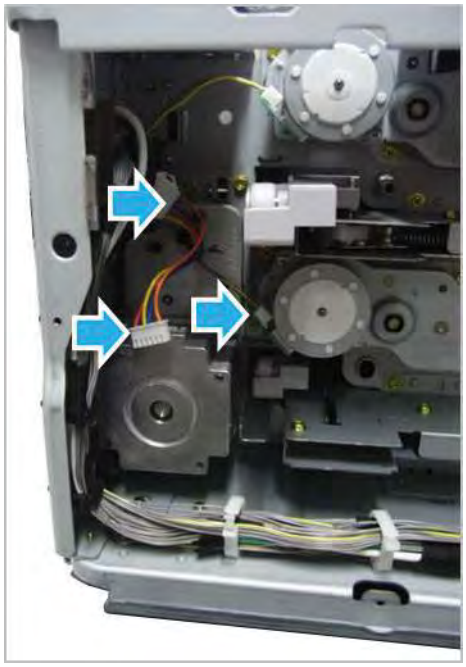
Figure 2-428 Remove the DCF rear cover



Step 2: Remove the DCF motor

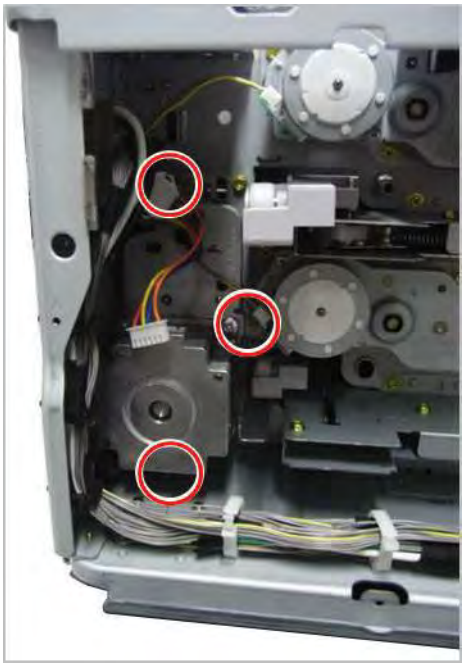
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then open one retainer.

Figure 2-429 Disconnect two connectors and open one retainer



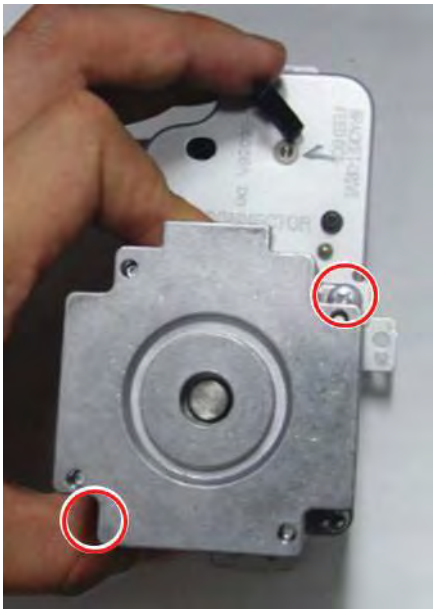
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive unit.

Figure 2-430 Remove the feed drive unit



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed motor.

Figure 2-431 Remove the feed motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the DCF pickup motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF pickup motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC93-00442B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- DCF pickup motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover

▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

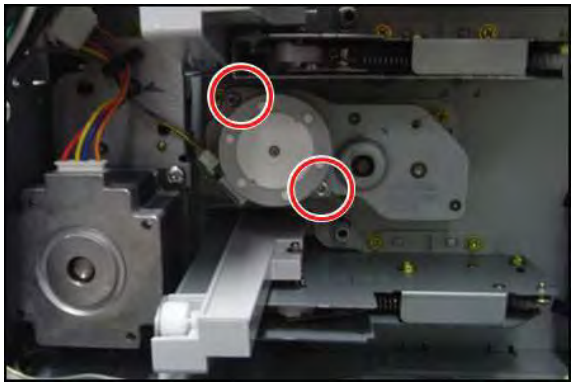
Figure 2-432 Remove the DCF rear cover



Step 2: Remove the DCF pickup motor

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. remove two screws, and then remove the DCF pickup motor.

Figure 2-433 Remove the DCF pickup motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

DCF main frame pickup 1

Figure 2-434 DCF main frame pickup 1

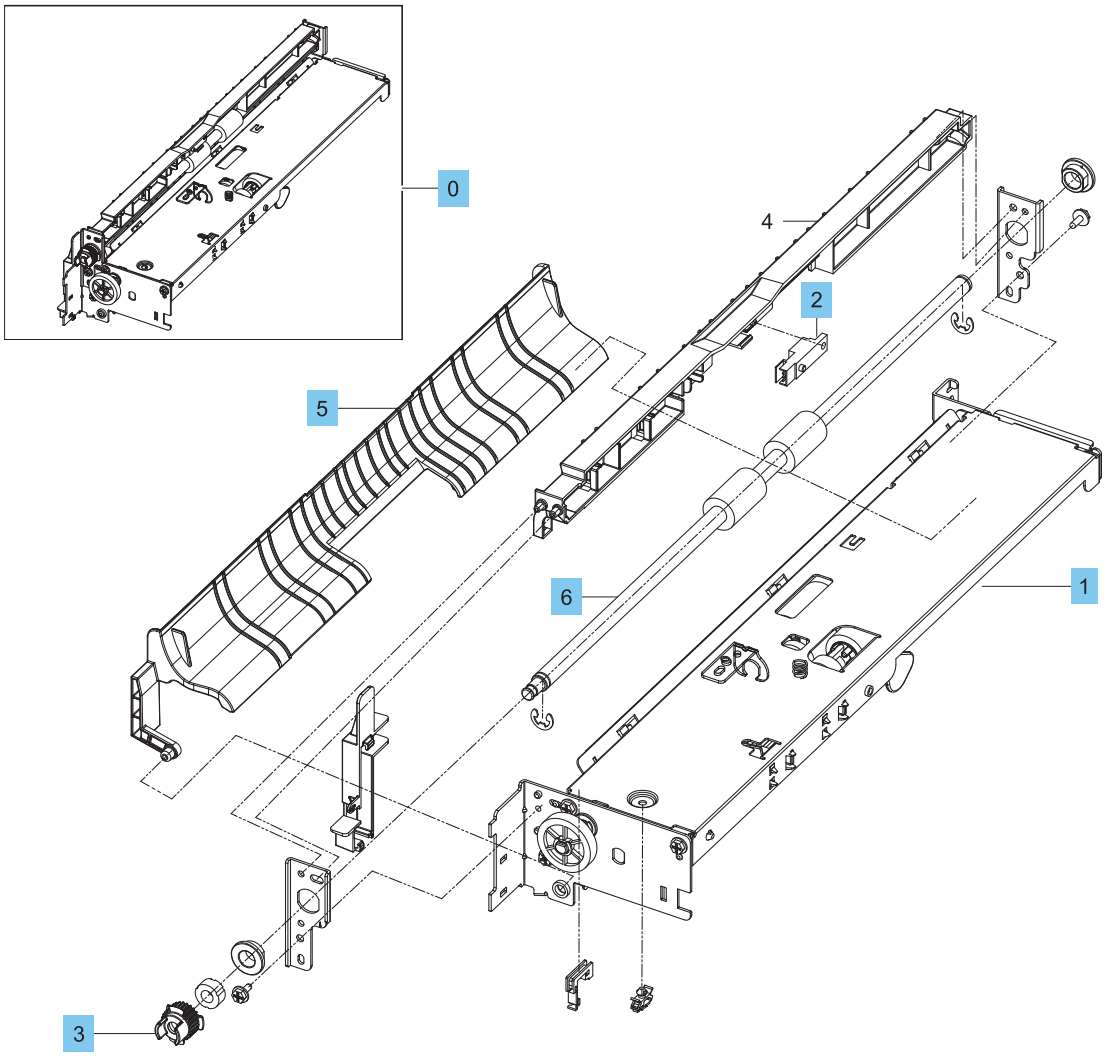


Table 2-31 DCF main frame pickup 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	DCF, main pickup	JC93-00513A	2
1	Main Pickup Sub Assy	JC93-00510A	2
2	Photo interrupter	0640-001381	2
3	Feed pulley	JC66-03288A	2
5	Second pickup guide	JC61-04717A	2
6	Idle feed roller	JC66-03287A	2

DCF main frame pickup

Figure 2-435 DCF main frame pickup

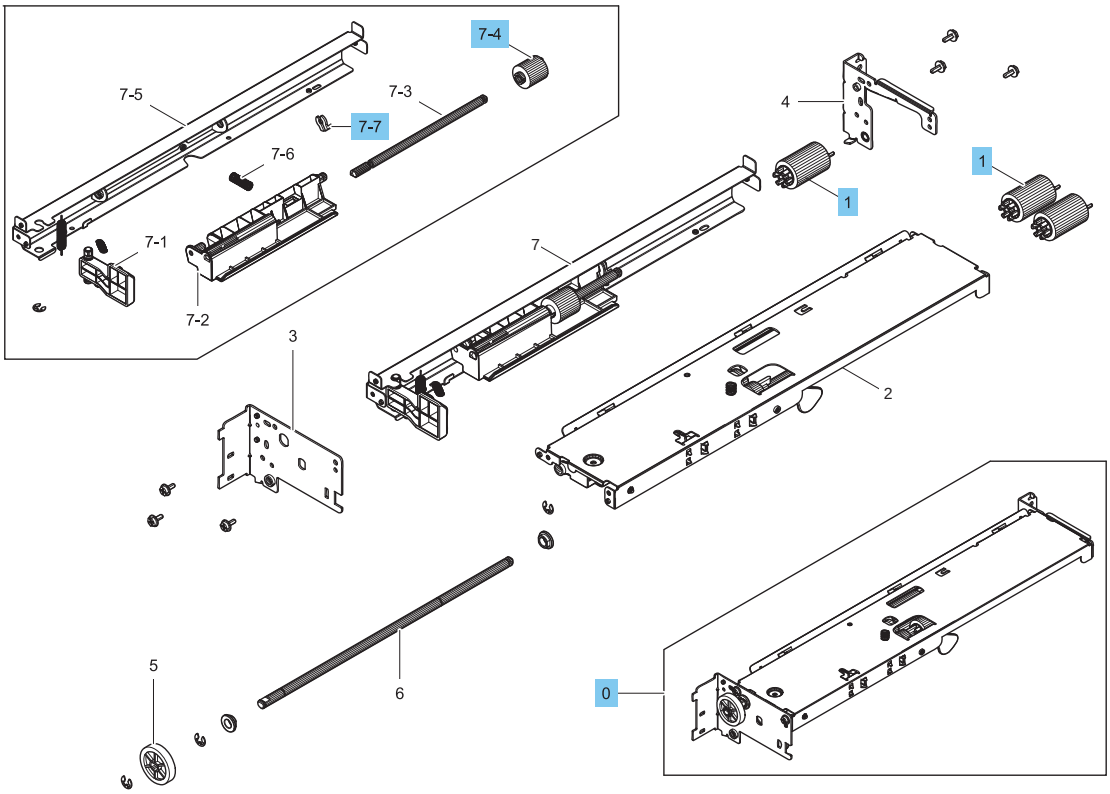


Table 2-32 DCF main frame pickup

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Main Pickup lower and upper	JC93-00510A on page 531	2
1	Tray 2–x rollers	JC93-00540A	6
7-4	Coupler, torque limiter	JC67-00455A	2
7-7	Fixer, e-ring	JC61-01367A	2

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC93-00510A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

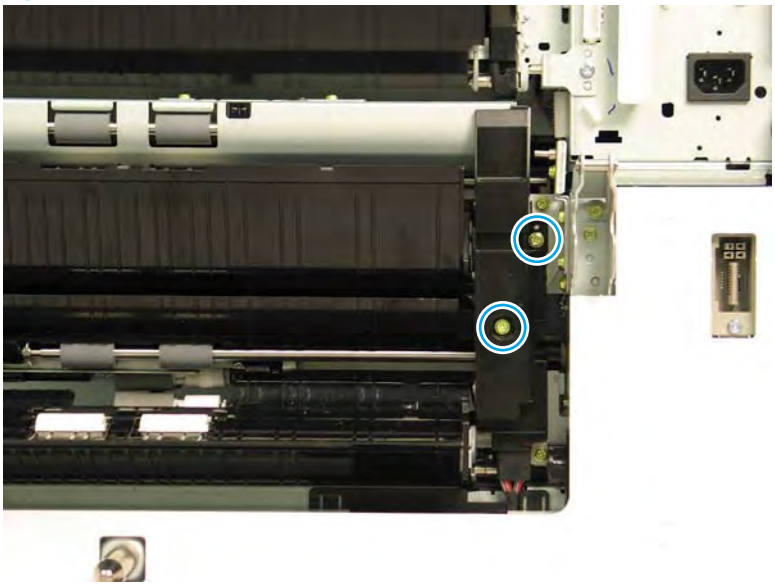
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units

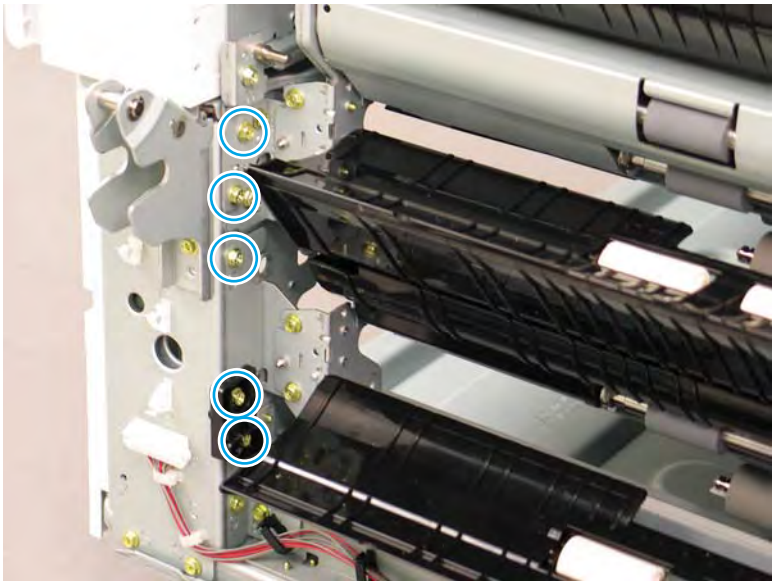
1. Remove the DCF right door.
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the cable cover.

Figure 2-436 Remove two screws and the cable cover



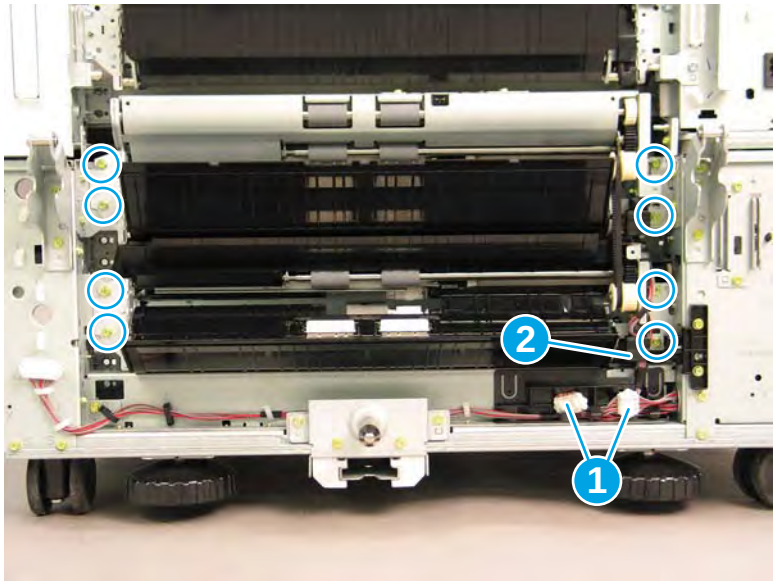
3. At the front of the printer, remove five screws, and then remove two brackets.

Figure 2-437 Remove five screws and two brackets



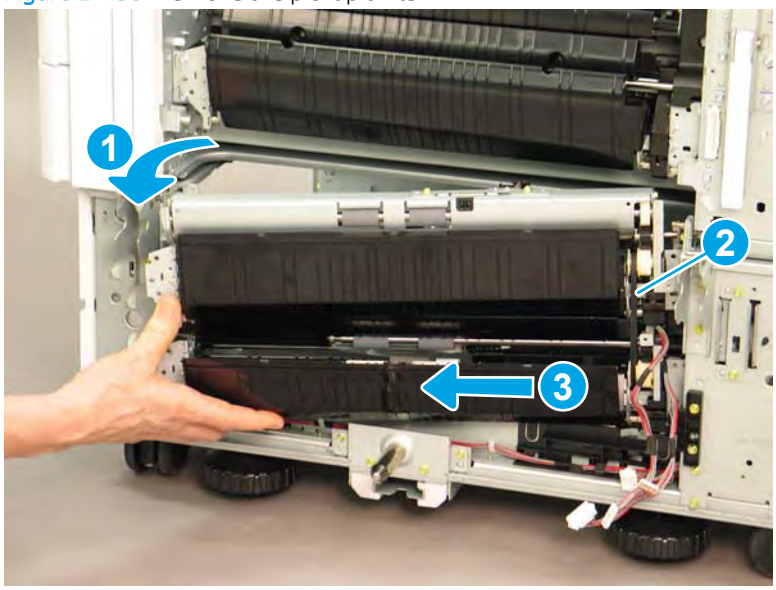
4. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the wire harness from the cable guide (callout 2). Remove eight screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-438 Disconnect two connectors and remove eight screws



5. Rotate both pickup units away from the feeder on the left (callout 1). Release the belt (callout 2) that connects the two units. Slide the pickup units to the left (callout 3) to remove them.

Figure 2-439 Remove the pickup units



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

DCF main frame pickup, upper

Figure 2-440 DCF main frame pickup, upper

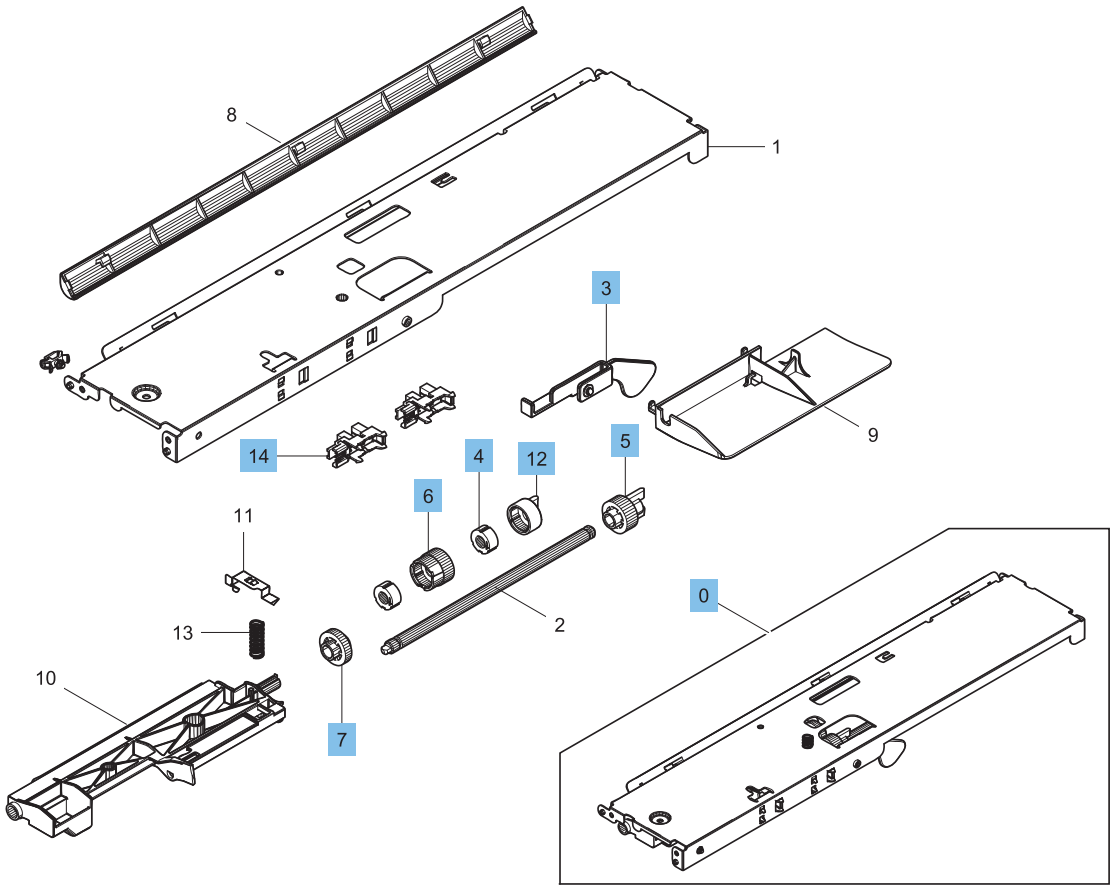


Table 2-33 DCF main frame pickup, upper

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Main frame pickup, upper	JC93-00504A	2
3	Actuator, empty pickup	JC66-03199A	2
4	Clutch one way	JC66-00977A	4
5	Gear-m, joint	JC66-00943A	2
6	Gear-m, one way	JC66-00941A	2
7	Gear-m, idle	JC66-00940A	2
12	Holder-m, idle one way	JC61-01288A	2
14	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	4

HP LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)

HCI main

Figure 2-441 HCI main

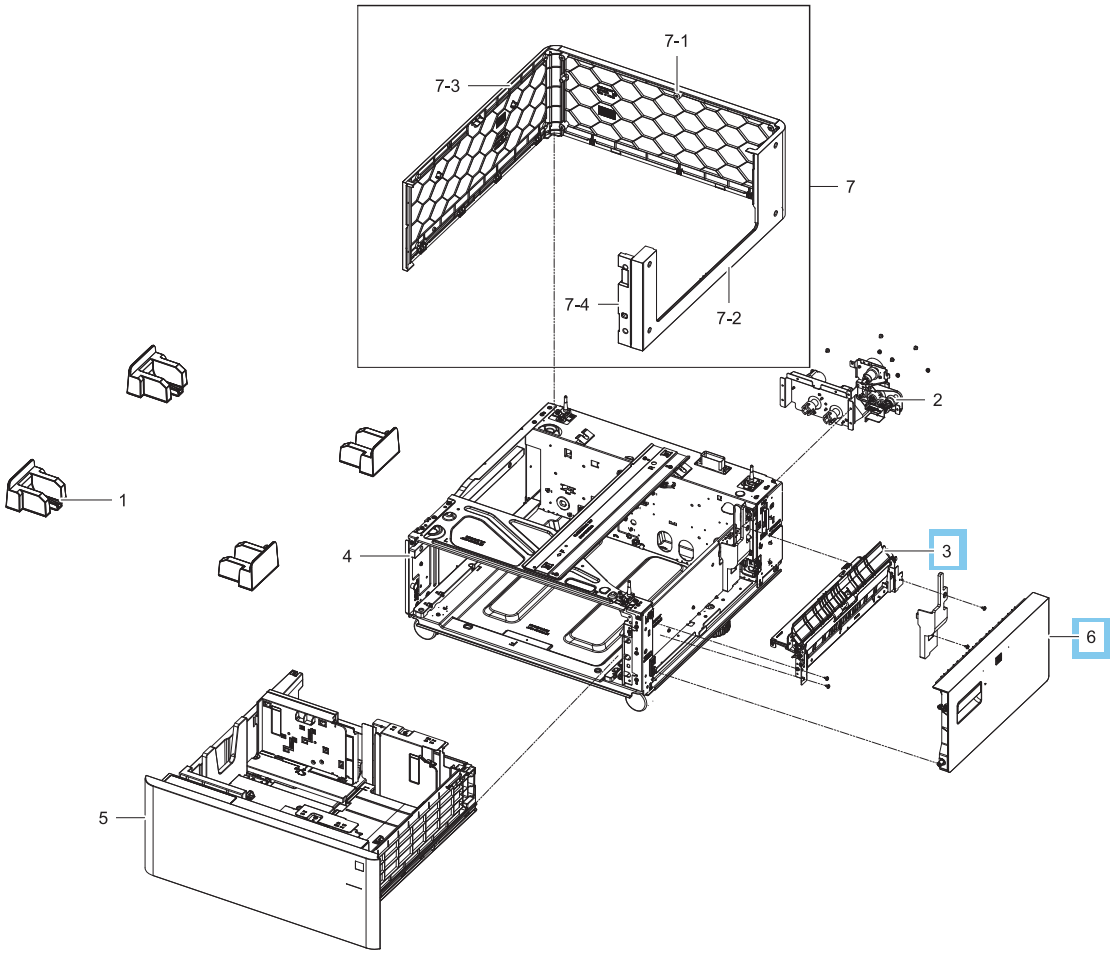


Table 2-34 HCI main

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Sub-pickup (HCI)	JC90-01727A on page 539	1
6	Takeaway (HCI) (right door)	JC90-01734A on page 549	1

HCI sub - pickup

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed
- Step 3: Remove the HCI right door
- Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly -sub pulley
- Step 5: Remove the HCI belt - timing gear
- Step 6: Remove the HCI sub - pickup
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI sub - pickup.

Click here to see a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC90-01727A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HCI sub - pickup

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

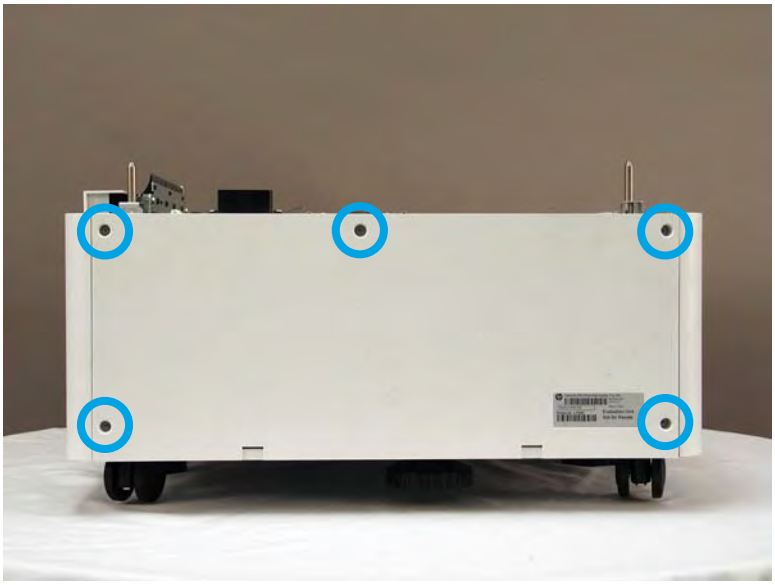
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

▲ Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

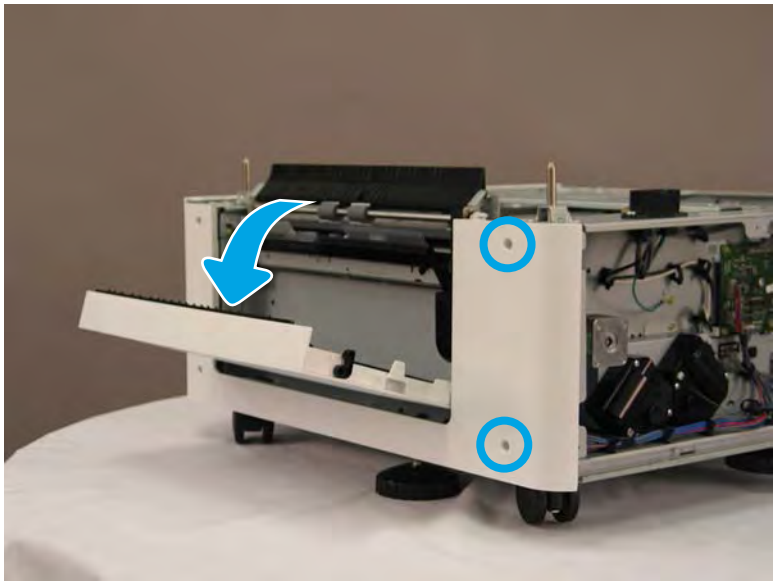
Figure 2-442 Remove the HCI rear cover



Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

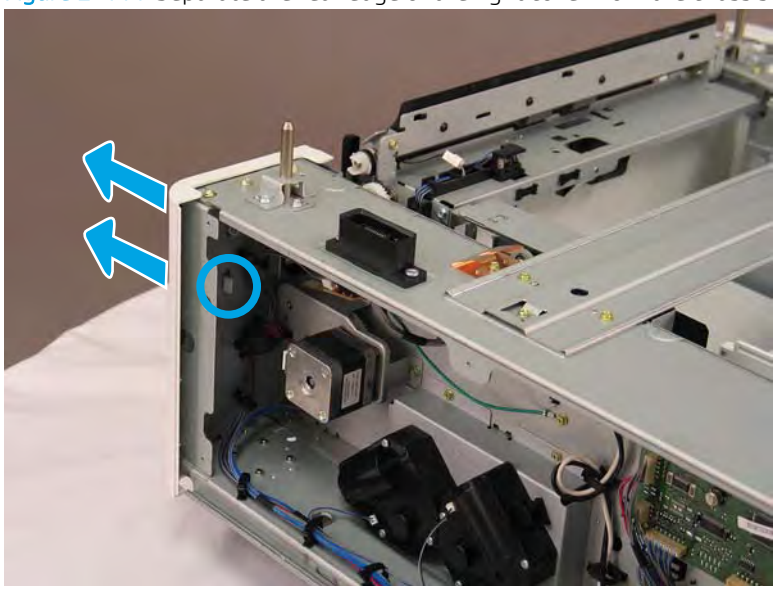
1. Open the right door, and then remove two screws

Figure 2-443 Remove two screws



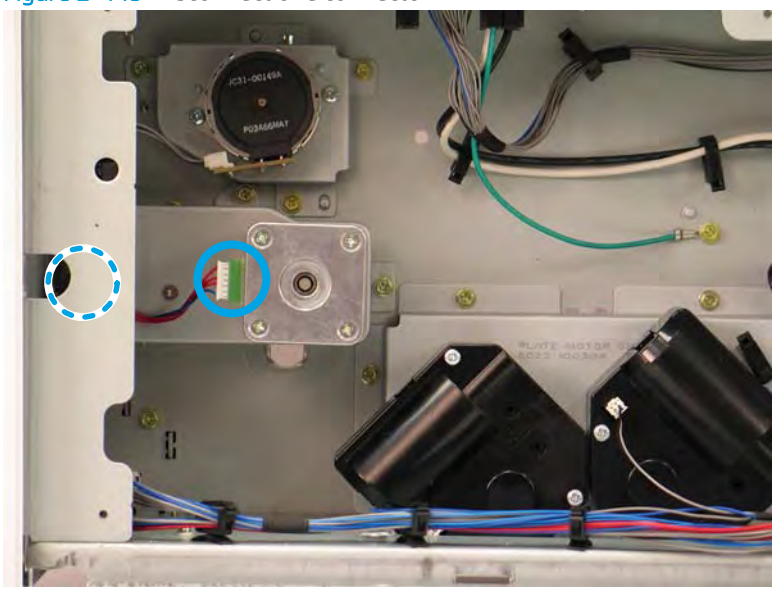
2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-444 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Disconnect one connector, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

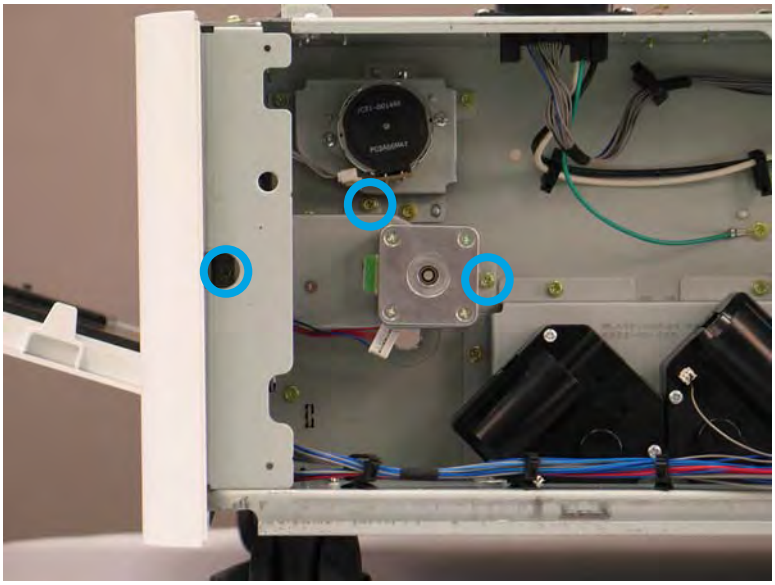
Figure 2-445 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove three screws, and then remove the HCI drive assembly - feed.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-446 Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

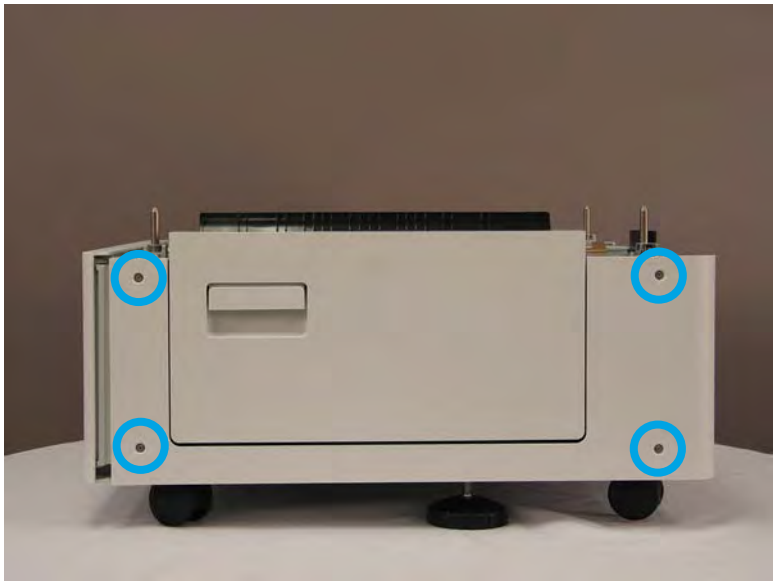


Step 3: Remove the HCI right door

1. Remove four screw caps (if installed), and then remove four screws.

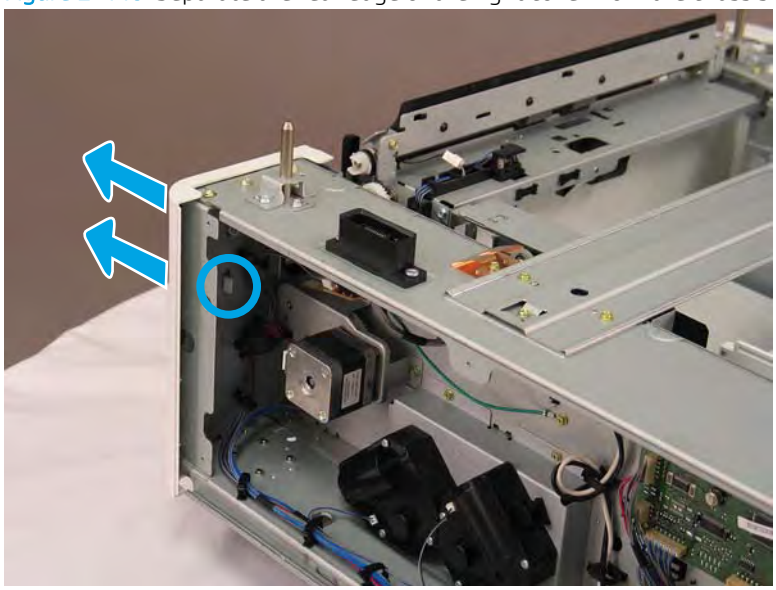
NOTE: If the feed drive assembly is removed, there are only two screws that secure this cover.

Figure 2-447 Remove four screws



2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

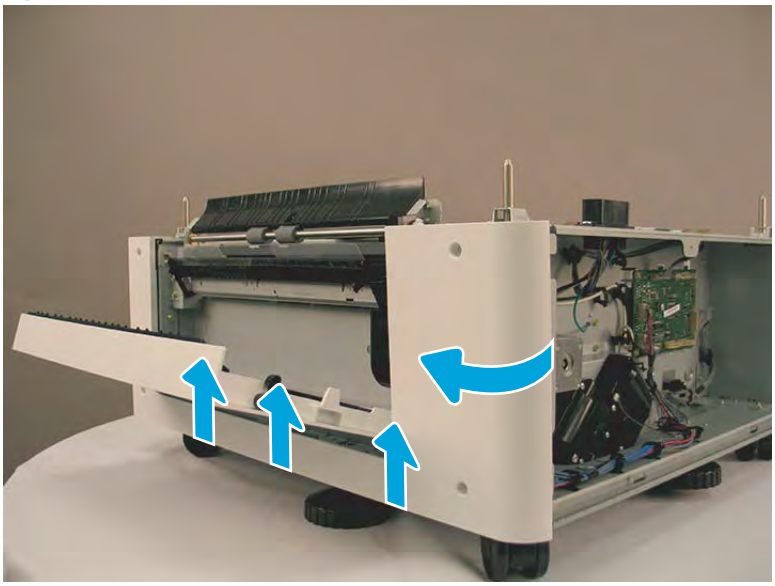
Figure 2-448 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Lift up on the cover while rotating it away from the chassis to release three bosses.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to fully remove the cover. Stop as shown below. Fully removing the cover at this step will damage the remaining tab and boss on the cover.

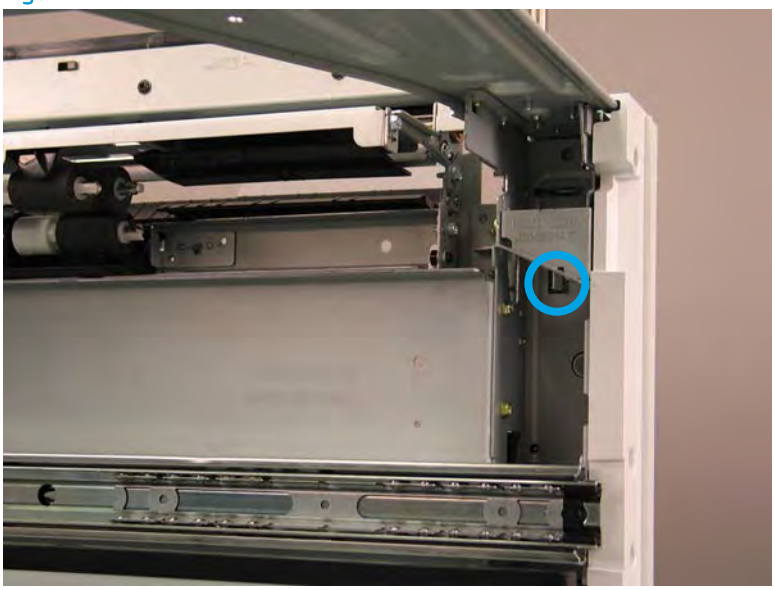
Figure 2-449 Release three bosses



4. If the tray was not removed prior to servicing the HCI, remove it now.

   Look in the tray cavity and locate the right cover front tab. Release this tab.

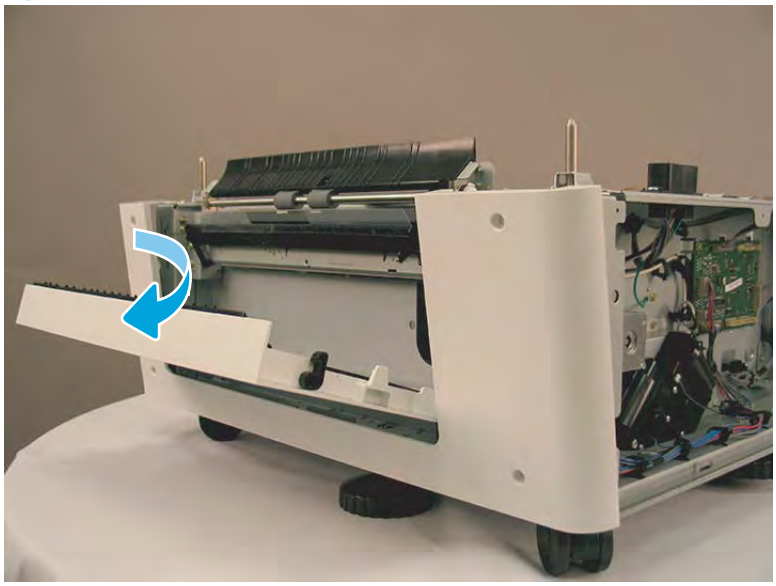
Figure 2-450 Release one tab



5. Remove the HCI right cover.

NOTE: The HCI right door will not stay in the latched potion when this cover is removed.

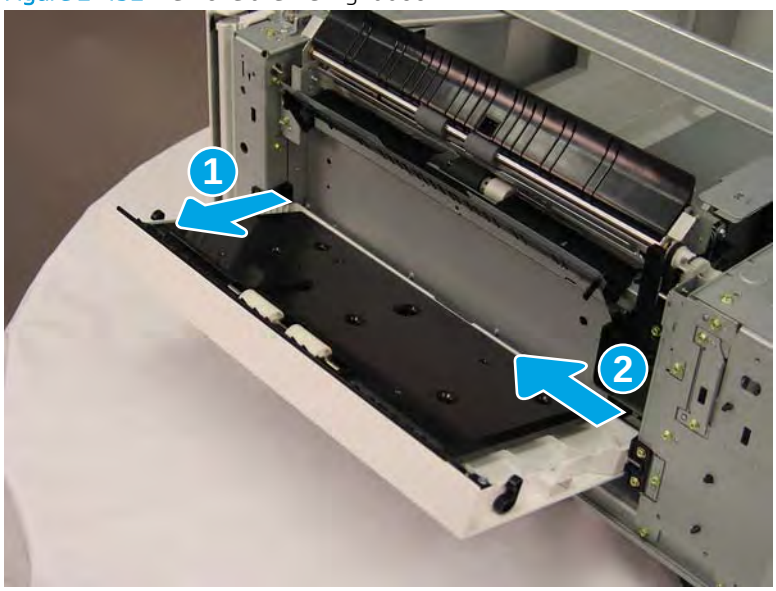
Figure 2-451 Remove the HCI right cover



6. Rotate the right door front hinge pin out of the holder, and then slide the right door towards the front of the HCI to release the rear hinge pin and remove the door.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

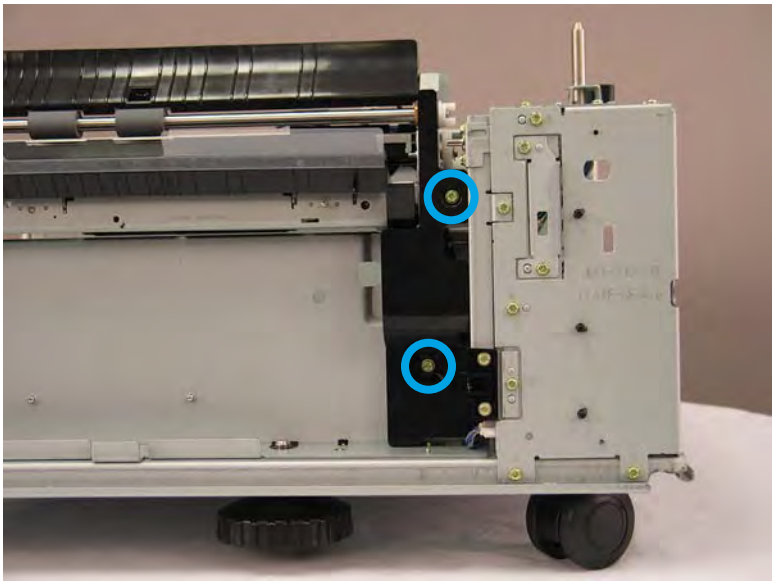
Figure 2-452 Remove the HCI right door



Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly -sub pulley

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the black-plastic cover.

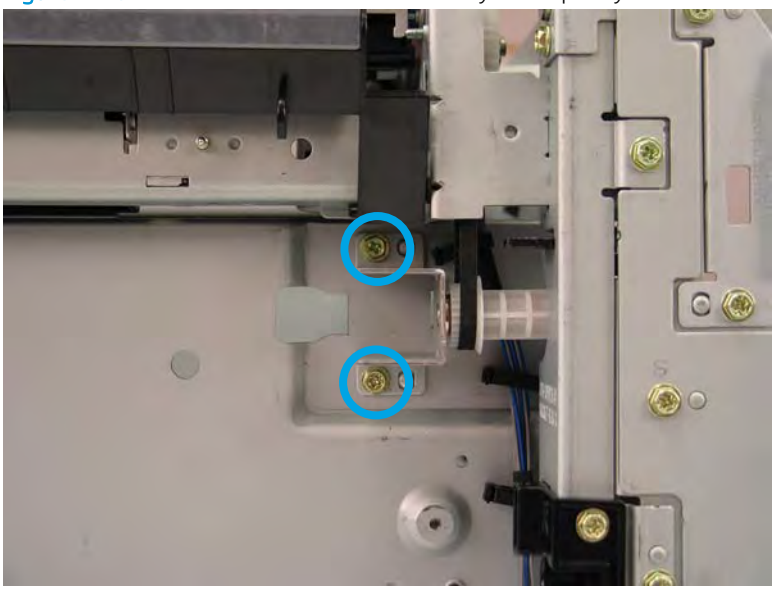
Figure 2-453 Remove one cover



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the drive assembly - sub-pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-454 Remove the HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley

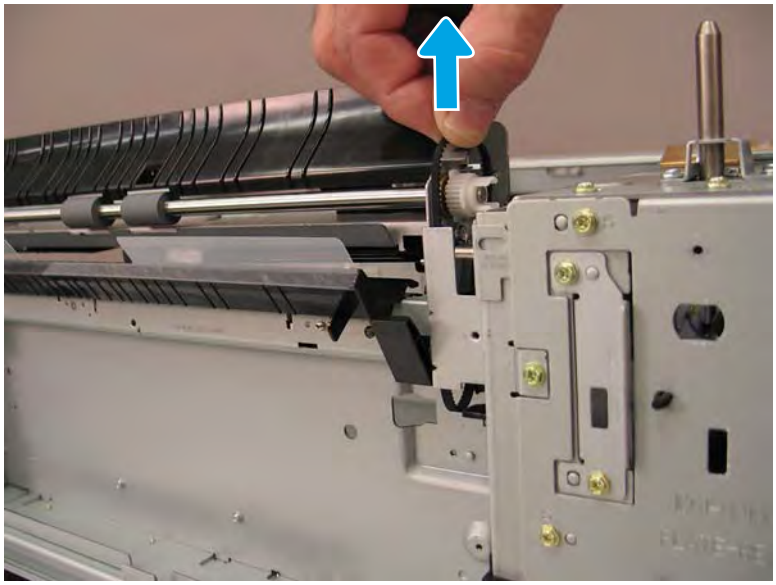


Step 5: Remove the HCI belt - timing gear

▲ Remove the belt from the drive gear, and then remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

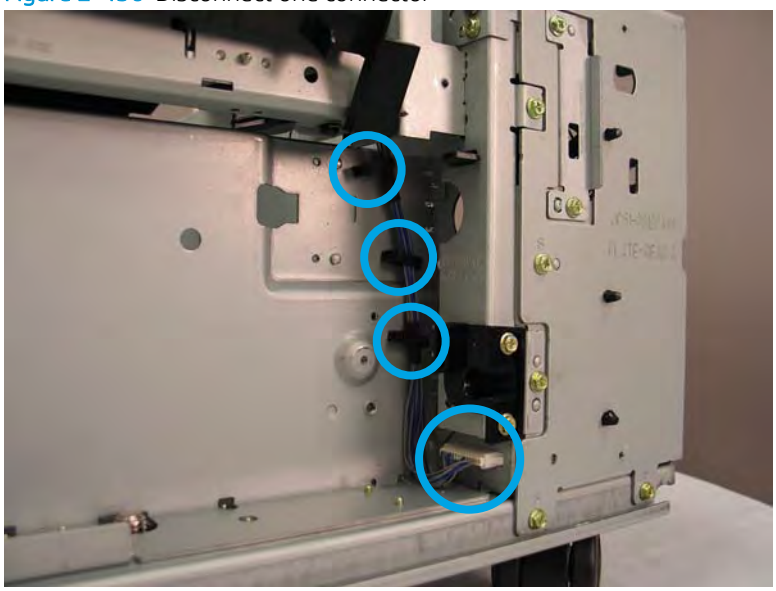
Figure 2-455 Remove the belt - timing gear



Step 6: Remove the HCI sub - pickup

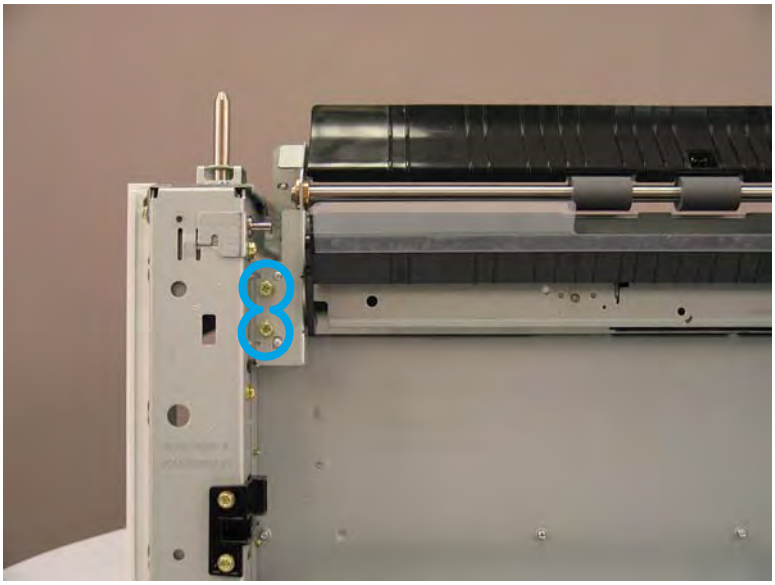
1. Disconnect one connector, and then release three retainers.

Figure 2-456 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws.

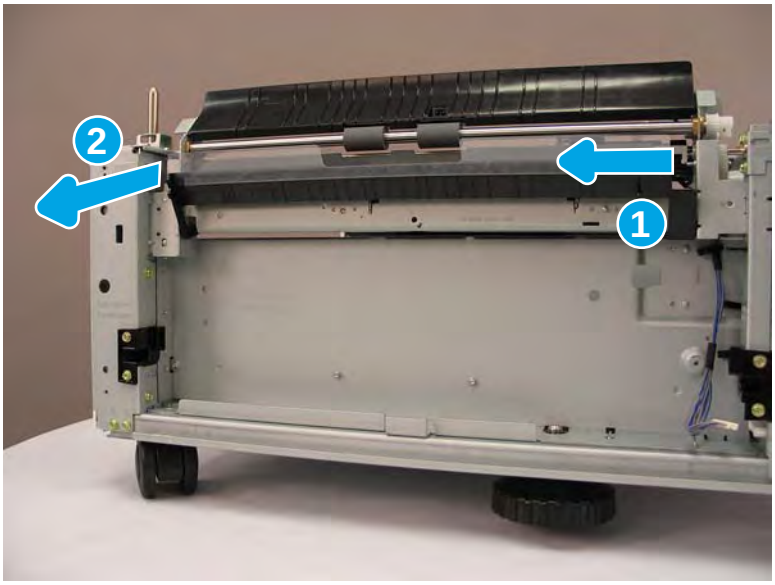
Figure 2-457 Remove two screws



3. Rotate the front end of the sub - pickup away from the HCI, and then slide it toward the front to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-458 Remove the sub - pickup



Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI right door

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the HCI right door
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI right door.

Click here to see a video of this procedure

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC90-01734A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HCI right door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

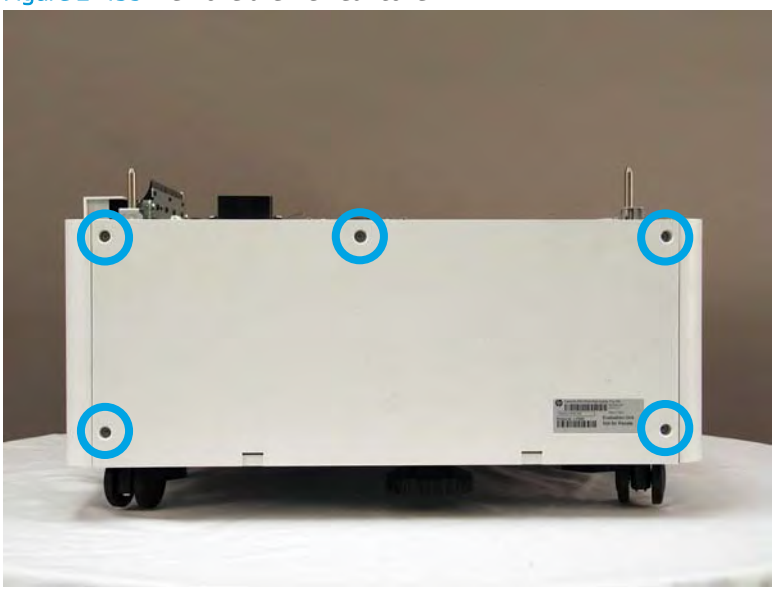
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

▲ Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-459 Remove the HCI rear cover

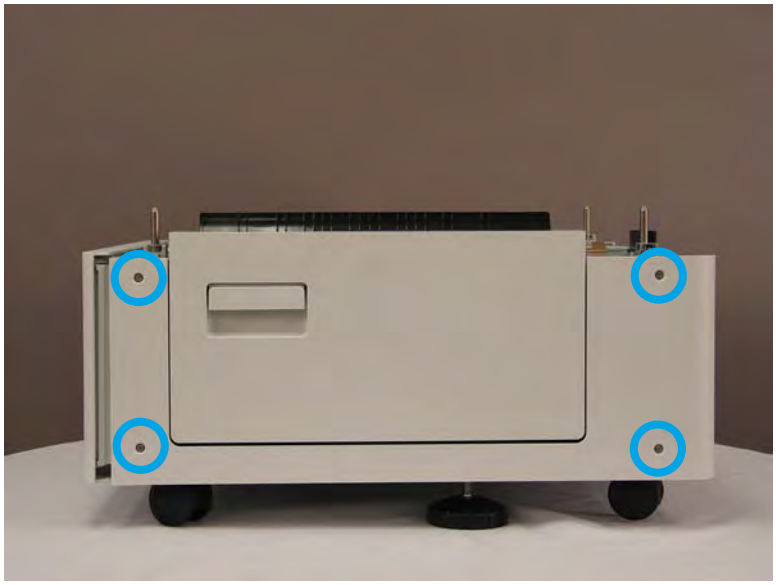


Step 2: Remove the HCI right door

1. Remove four screw caps (if installed), and then remove four screws.

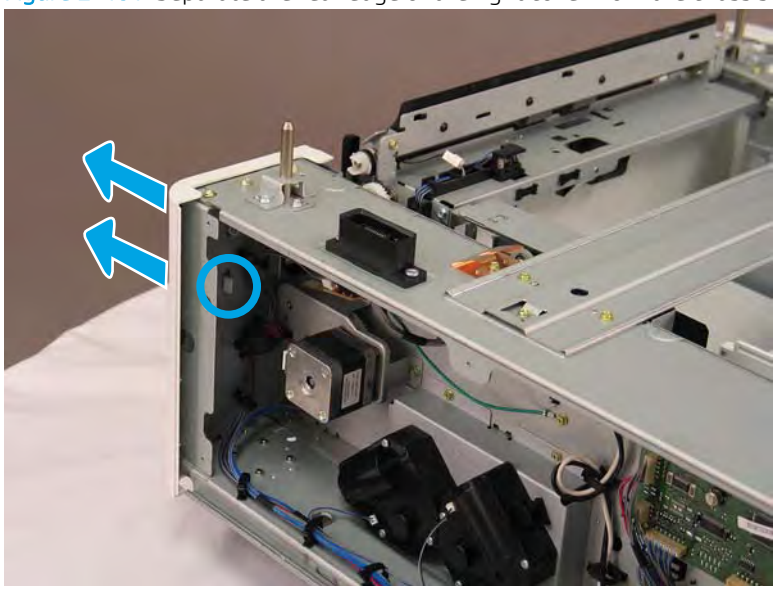
NOTE: If the feed drive assembly is removed, there are only two screws that secure this cover.

Figure 2-460 Remove four screws



2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

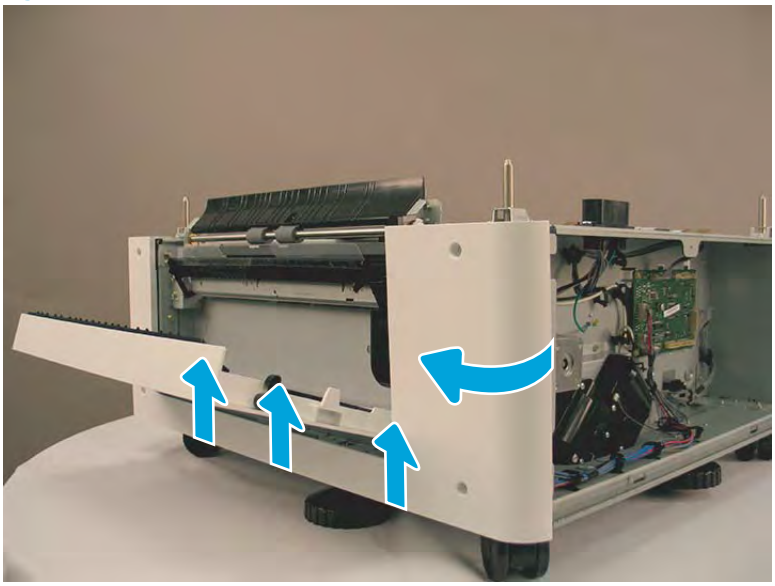
Figure 2-461 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Lift up on the cover while rotating it away from the chassis to release three bosses.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to fully remove the cover. Stop as shown below. Fully removing the cover at this step will damage the remaining tab and boss on the cover.

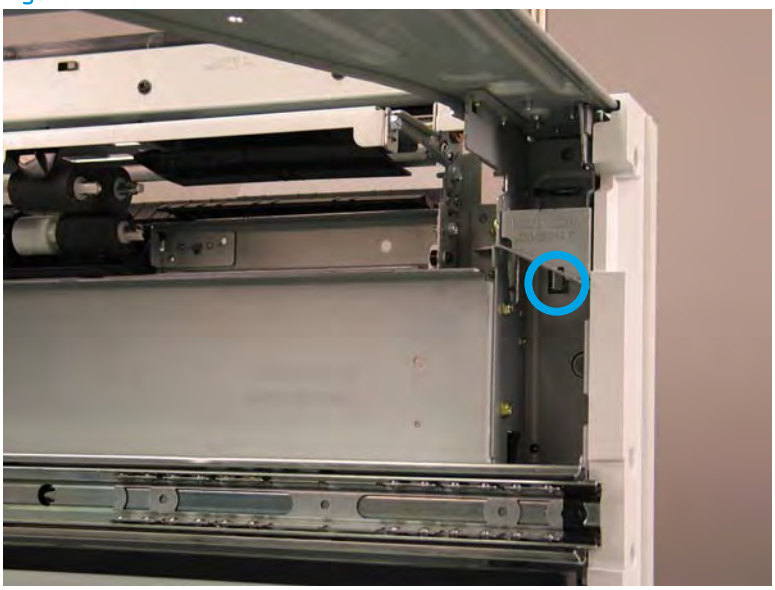
Figure 2-462 Release three bosses



4. If the tray was not removed prior to servicing the HCI, remove it now.

   Look in the tray cavity and locate the right cover front tab. Release this tab.

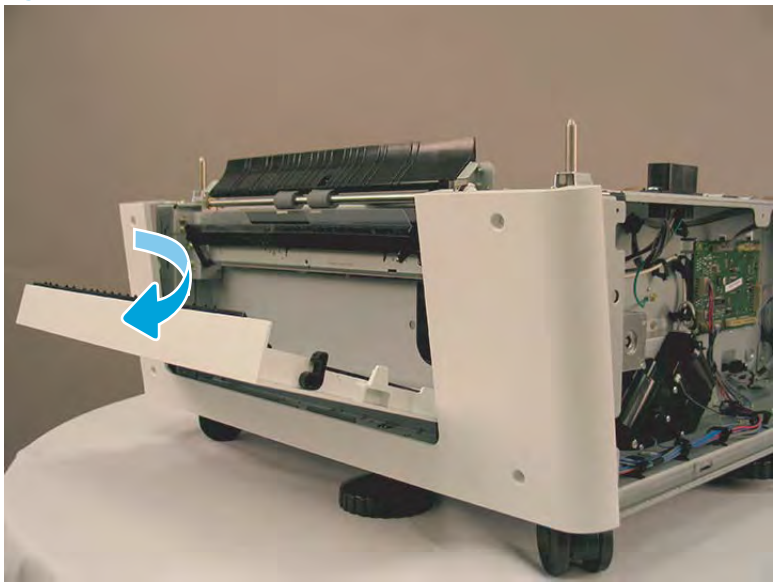
Figure 2-463 Release one tab



5. Remove the HCI right cover.

NOTE: The HCI right door will not stay in the latched potion when this cover is removed.

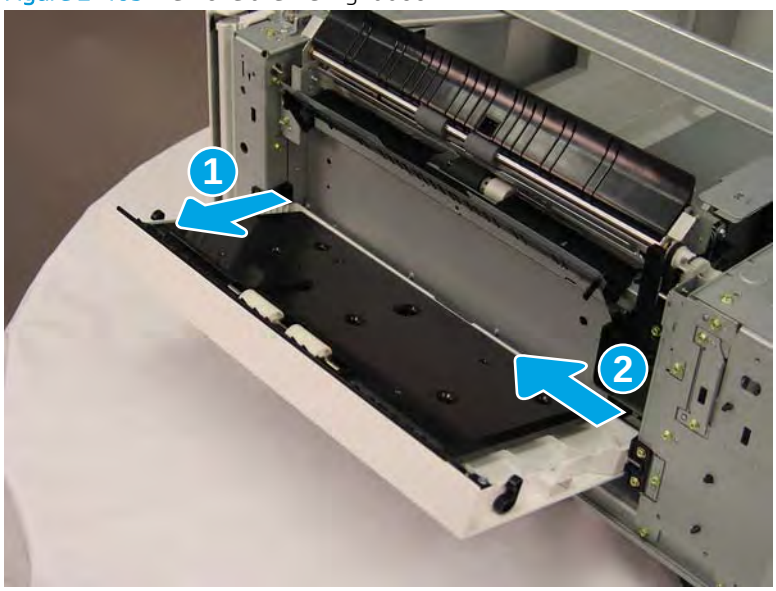
Figure 2-464 Remove the HCI right cover



6. Rotate the right door front hinge pin out of the holder, and then slide the right door towards the front of the HCI to release the rear hinge pin and remove the door.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-465 Remove the HCI right door



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI sub - frame

Figure 2-466 HCI sub - frame

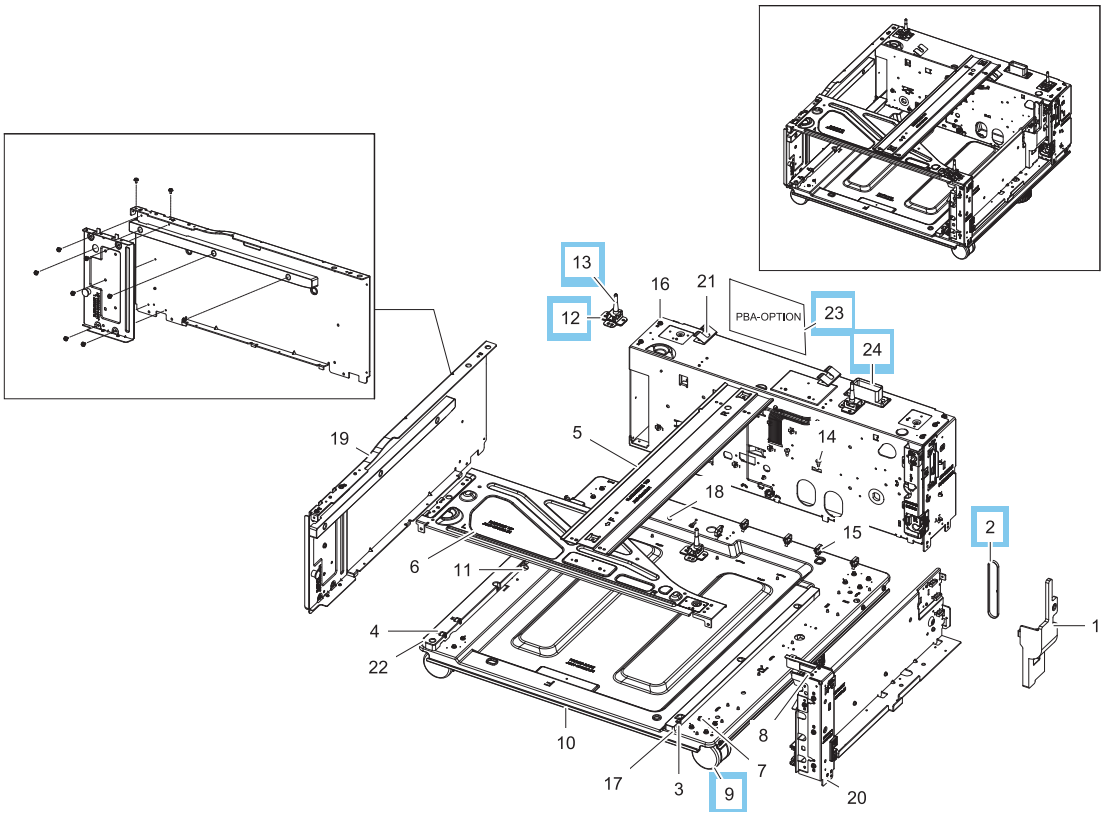


Table 2-35 HCI sub - frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Belt timing gear (HCI)	6602-003185 on page 556	1
9	Caster wheel (HCI)	6109-001138 on page 571	4
12	Plate guide post upper (HCI)	JC61-04660A on page 573	3
13	Plate guide post (HCI)	JC61-04659A on page 573	3
23	Printed circuit assembly (HCI)	JC92-02738G on page 565	1
24	Main electrical connector (HCI)	JC39-02600A on page 568	3

HCI belt - timing gear

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed
- Step 3: Remove the HCI right door
- Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly - sub pulley
- Step 5: Remove the HCI belt - timing gear
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI belt - timing gear.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

6602-003185

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HCI belt - timing gear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

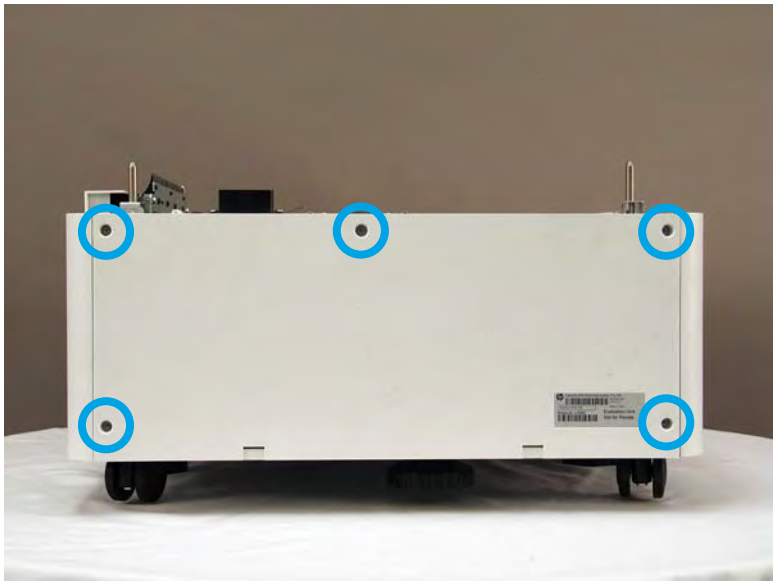
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

▲ Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

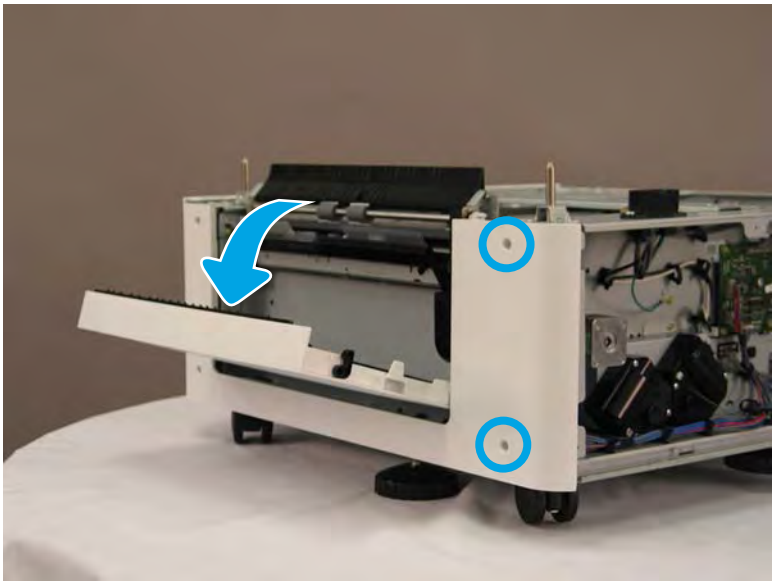
Figure 2-467 Remove the HCI rear cover



Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

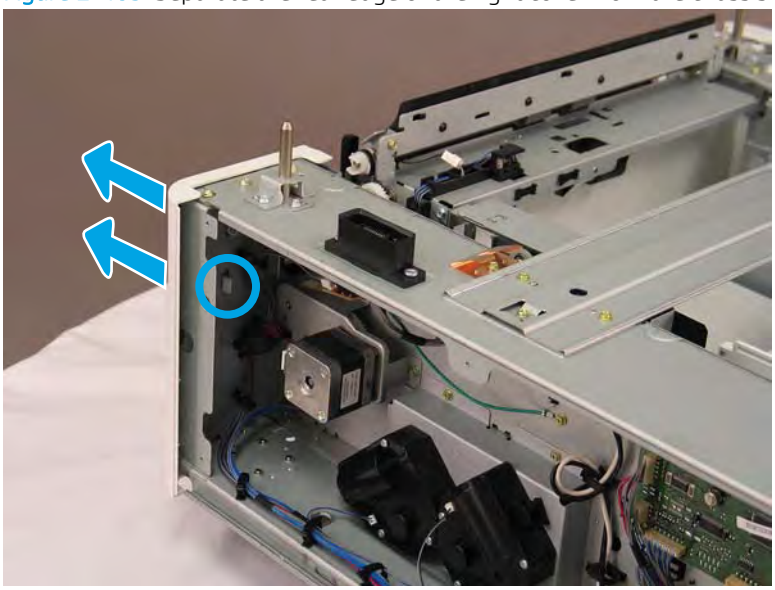
1. Open the right door, and then remove two screws

Figure 2-468 Remove two screws



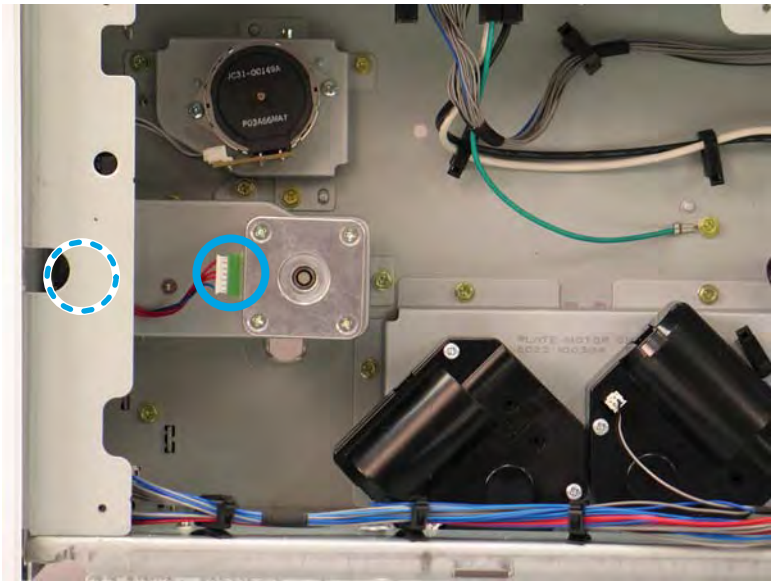
2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-469 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Disconnect one connector, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

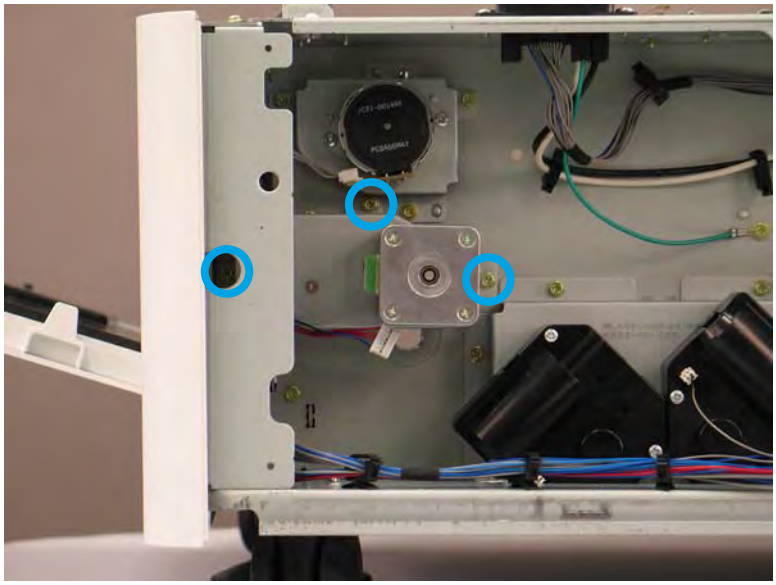
Figure 2-470 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove three screws, and then remove the HCI drive assembly - feed.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-471 Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

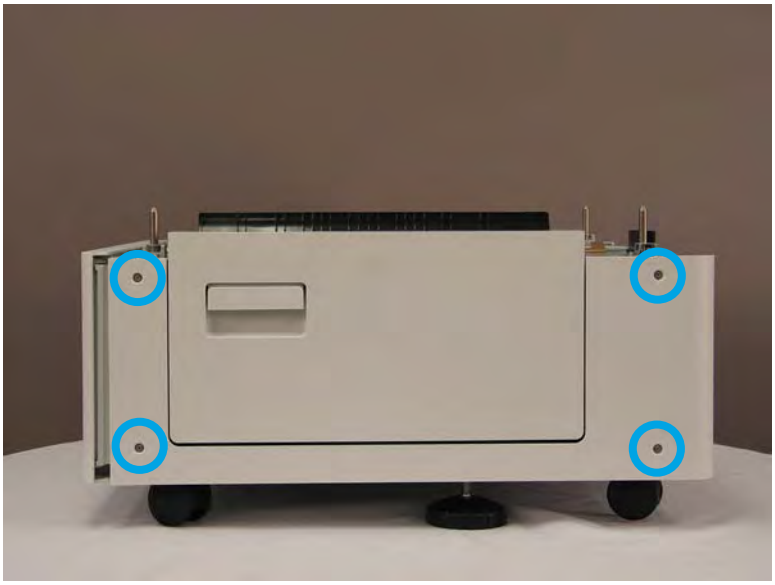


Step 3: Remove the HCI right door

1. Remove four screw caps (if installed), and then remove four screws.

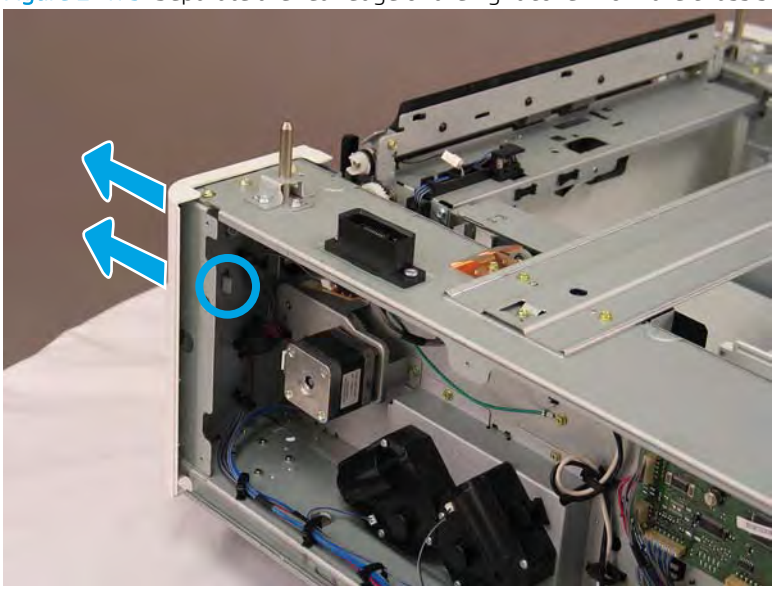
NOTE: If the feed drive assembly is removed, there are only two screws that secure this cover.

Figure 2-472 Remove four screws



2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

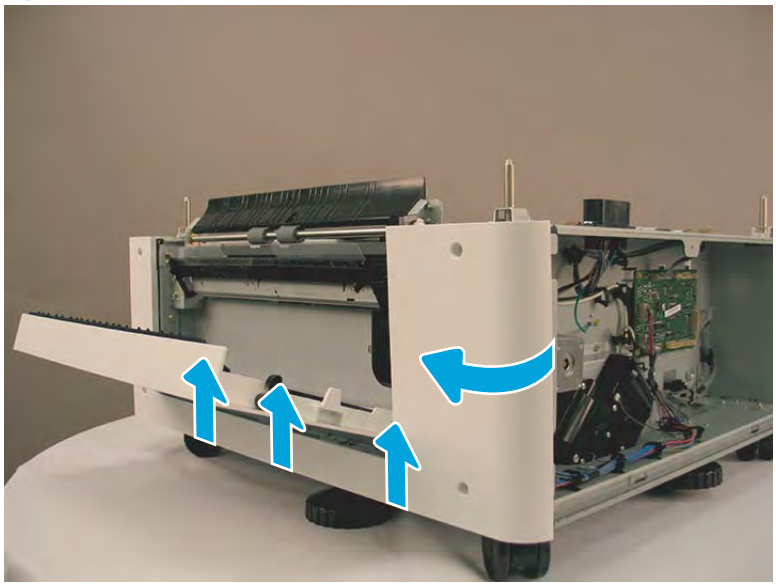
Figure 2-473 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Lift up on the cover while rotating it away from the chassis to release three bosses.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to fully remove the cover. Stop as shown below. Fully removing the cover at this step will damage the remaining tab and boss on the cover.

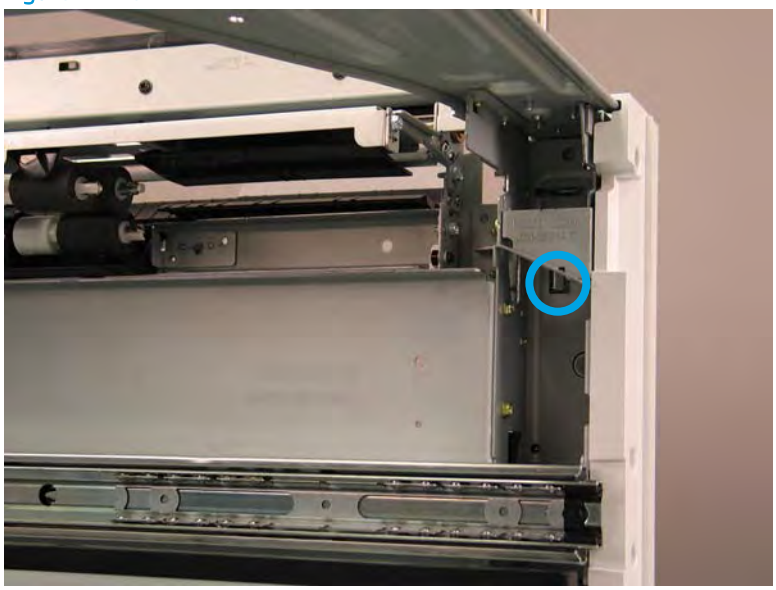
Figure 2-474 Release three bosses



4. If the tray was not removed prior to servicing the HCI, remove it now.

   Look in the tray cavity and locate the right cover front tab. Release this tab.

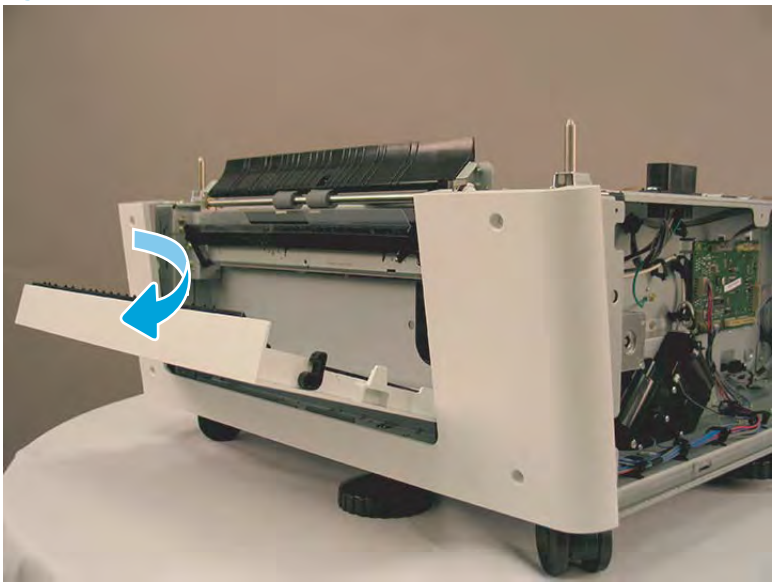
Figure 2-475 Release one tab



5. Remove the HCI right cover.

NOTE: The HCI right door will not stay in the latched potion when this cover is removed.

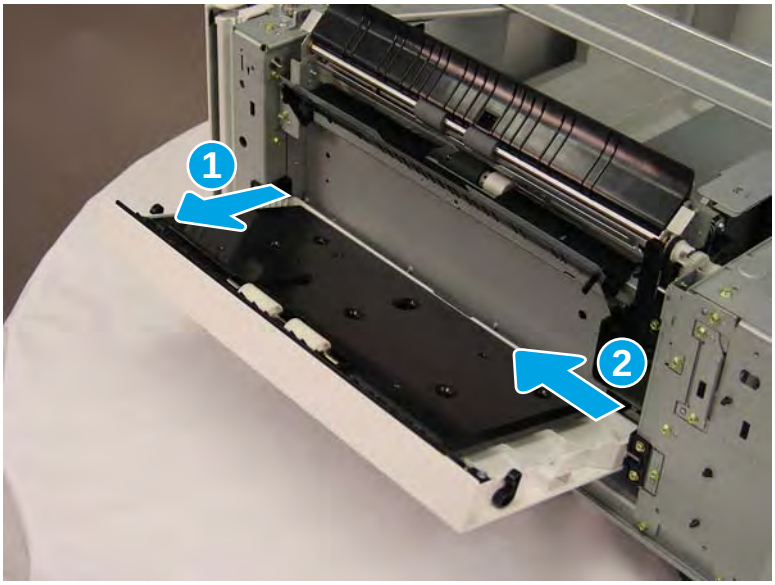
Figure 2-476 Remove the HCI right cover



6. Rotate the right door front hinge pin out of the holder, and then slide the right door towards the front of the HCI to release the rear hinge pin and remove the door.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

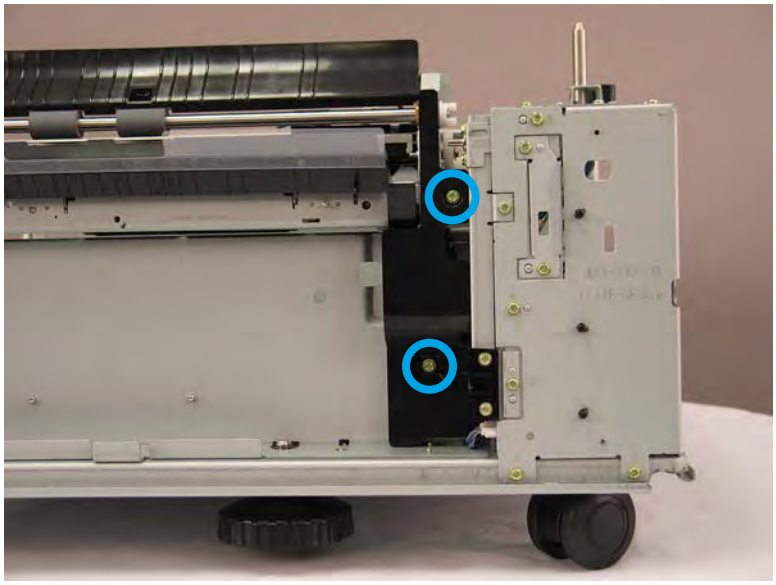
Figure 2-477 Remove the HCI right door



Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly - sub pulley

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the black-plastic cover.

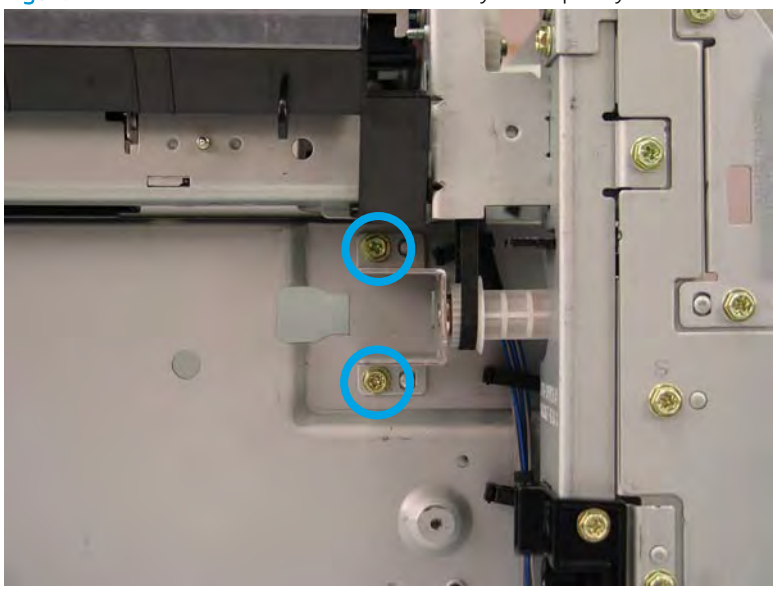
Figure 2-478 Remove one cover



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the drive assembly - sub-pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-479 Remove the HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley

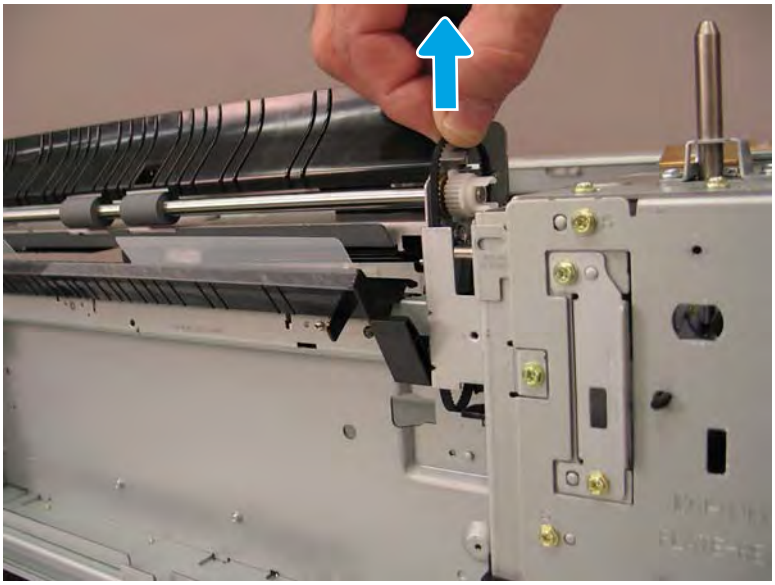


Step 5: Remove the HCI belt - timing gear

▲ Remove the belt from the drive gear, and then remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-480 Remove the belt - timing gear



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the HCI PCA
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI PCA.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC92-02738G

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HCI PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

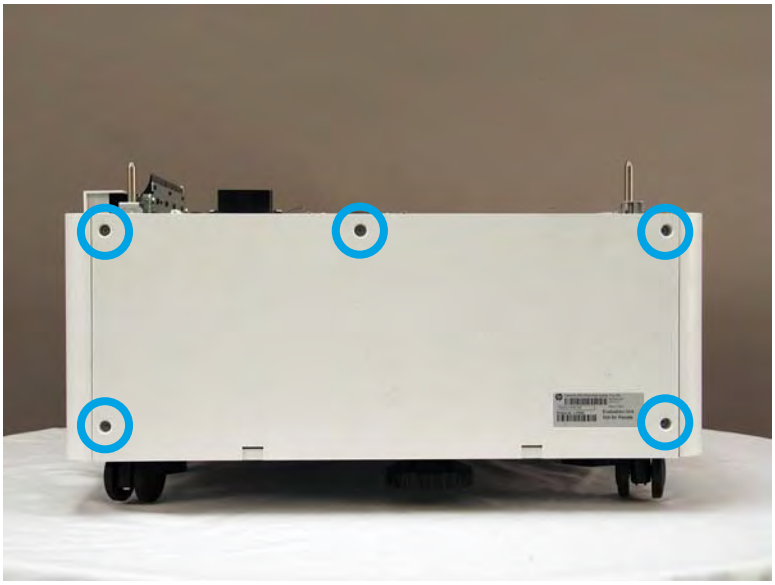
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

▲ Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-481 Remove the HCI rear cover

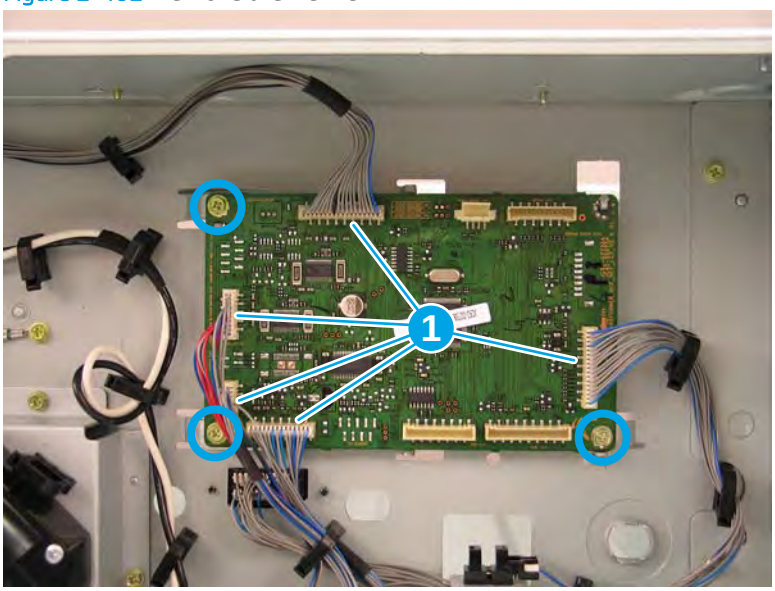


Step 2: Remove the HCI PCA

▲ Disconnect five connectors (callout 1), remove three screws, and then remove the HCI PCA.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-482 Remove the HCI PCA



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI main electrical connector

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the main electrical connector
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI main electrical connector.

click here to see a video of this procedure

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC39-02600A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HCI main electrical connector

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

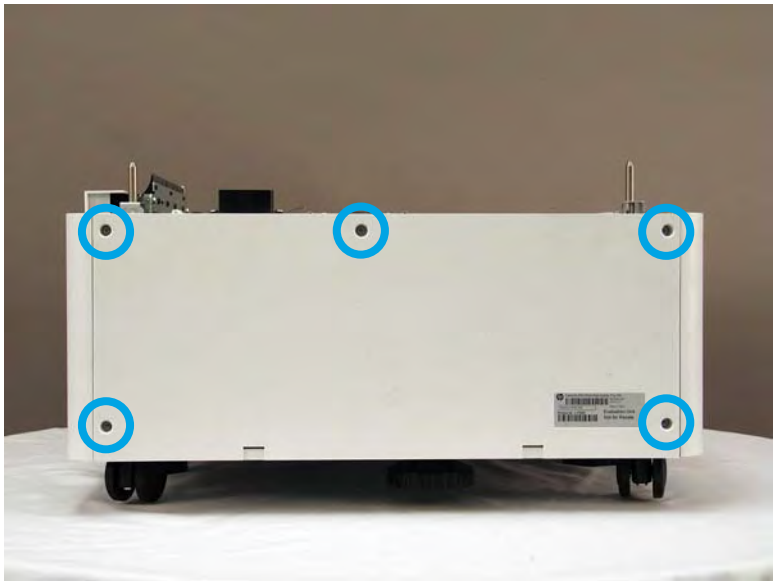
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

▲ Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-483 Remove the HCI rear cover



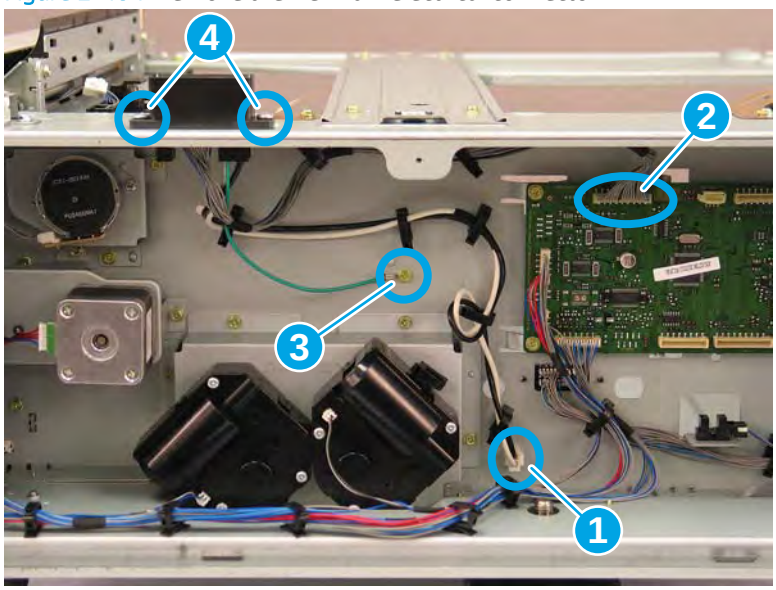
Step 2: Remove the main electrical connector

▲ Do the following:

- Squeeze two tabs and release one connector (callout 1; black and white wire harness) from the chassis, and then release five retainers.
- Disconnect one connector (callout 2; on the HCI PCA), and then release two retainers.
- Remove one ground screw (callout 3; green wire).
- Remove two shoulder screws (callout 4); main electrical connector), and then remove the main connector.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-484 Remove the HCI main electrical connector



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI caster wheel

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI caster wheel
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI caster wheel.

Click here for a video of this procedure

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

6109-001138

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HCI caster wheel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

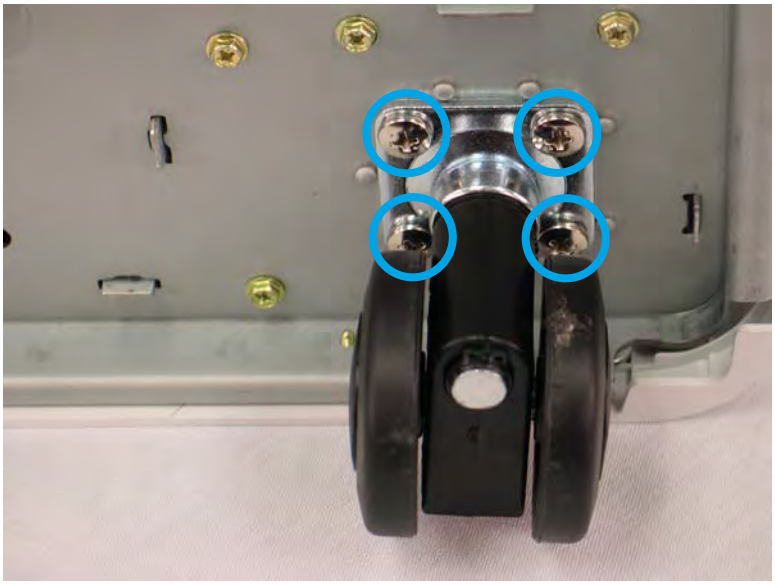
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the HCI caster wheel

- Carefully position the HCI on its side, remove four screws, and then remove the HCI caster wheel.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-485 Remove the HCI caster wheel



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI guide post and guide post plate

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI guide post upper and guide post plates
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI guide post upper and guide post plates.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC61-04660A	JC61-04659A
• HCI guide post	• Plate - HCI guide post

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

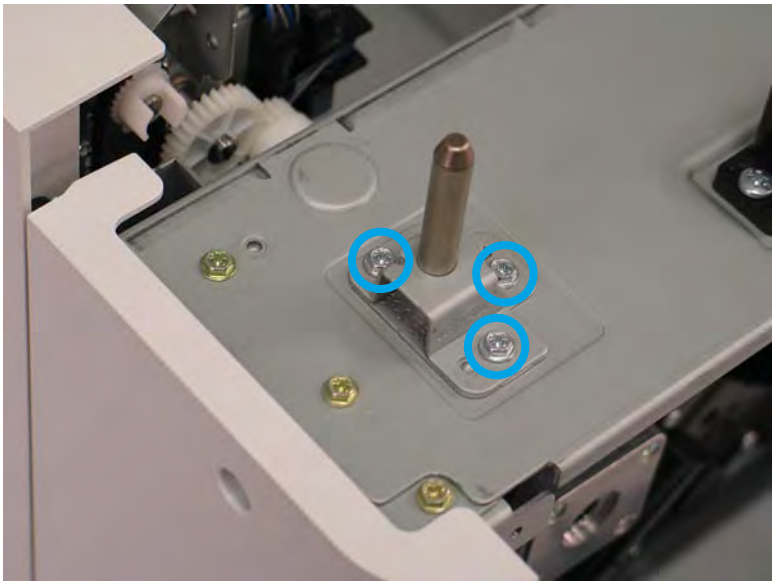
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the HCI guide post upper and guide post plates

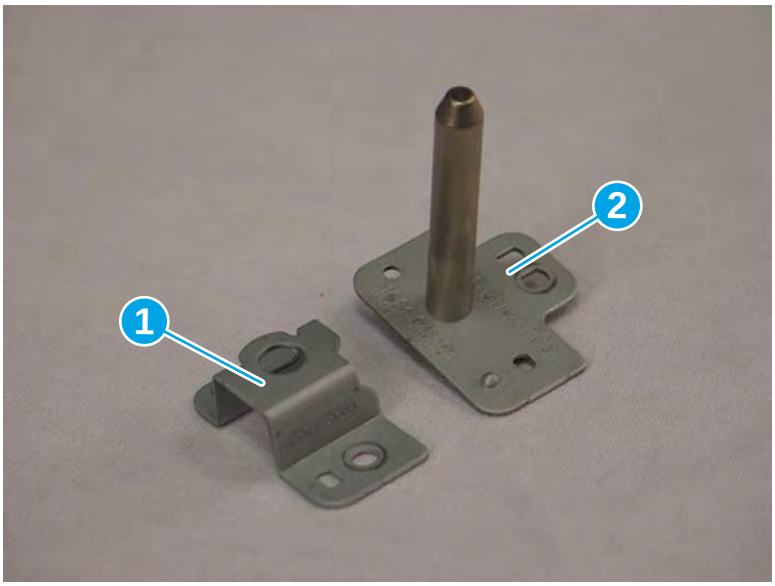
1. Remove four screws, and then remove the HCI guide post upper and guide post plates.

Figure 2-486 Remove the HCI guide post upper and guide post plates



2. Separate the guide post upper (callout 1) and guide post (callout 2) plates.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI sub - pickup upper/lower

Figure 2-487 HCI sub - pickup upper/lower

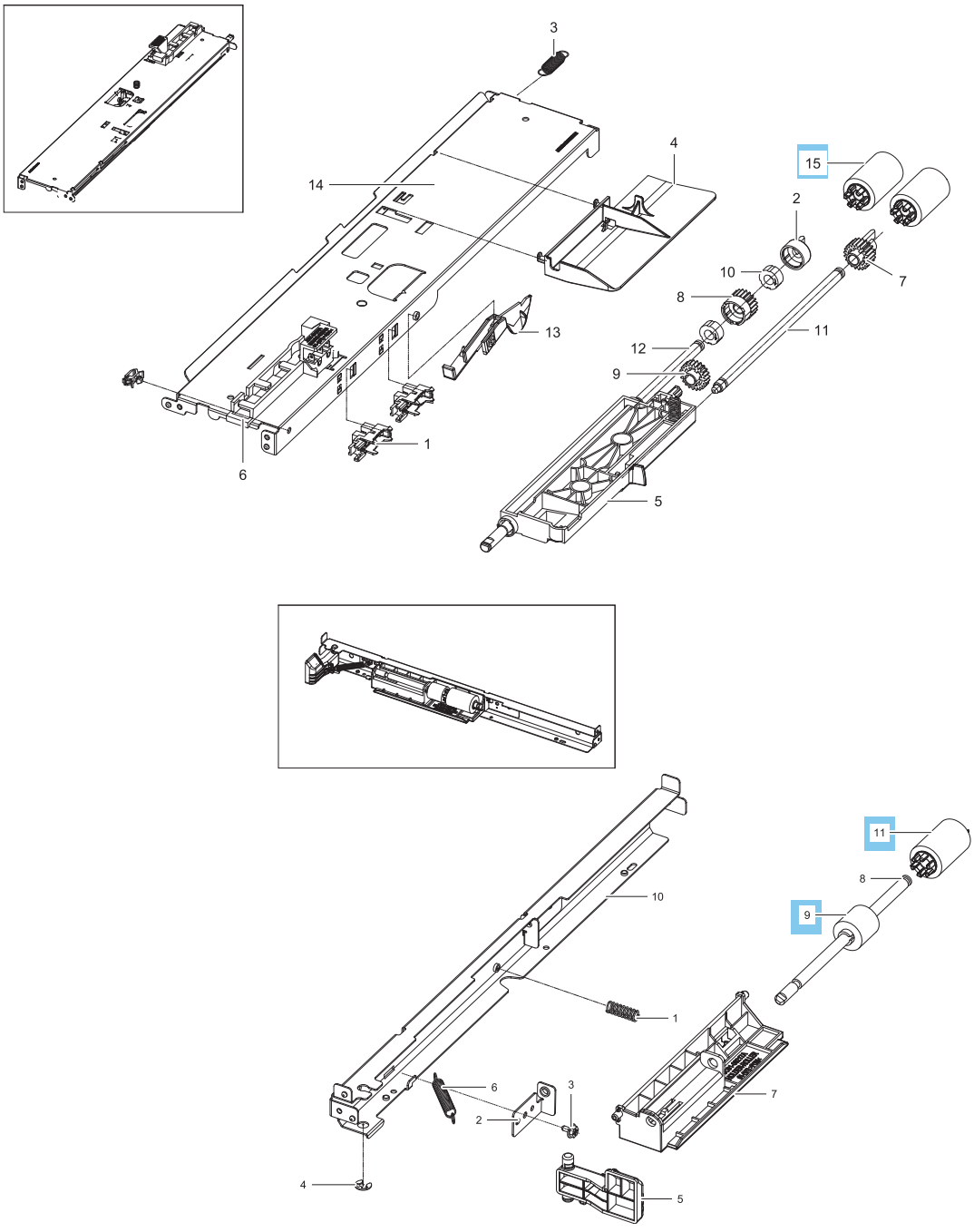


Table 2-36 HCI sub - pickup upper/lower

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
9	HCI kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray 2-z rollers (coupler torque limiter) (HCI)	JC67–00455A on page 578	1
11	HCI kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray 2-x rollers (separation) (HCI)	JC93–00504A on page 578	2
15	HCI kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray 2-z rollers (pick/feed) (HCI)	JC93–00540A on page 578	1

HCI kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray rollers

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI tray
- Step 2: Remove the HCI LaserJet E7 tray rollers
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI LaserJet E7 tray 2-x rollers.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC67–00455A	JC93–00504A	JC93–00540A
• HCI kit — HP LaserJet E7 tray 2–z rollers (coupler torque limiter) (HCI)	• HCI kit — HP LaserJet E7 tray 2–z rollers (separation) (HCI)	• HCI kit — HP LaserJet E7 tray 2–z rollers (pick/feed) (HCI)

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

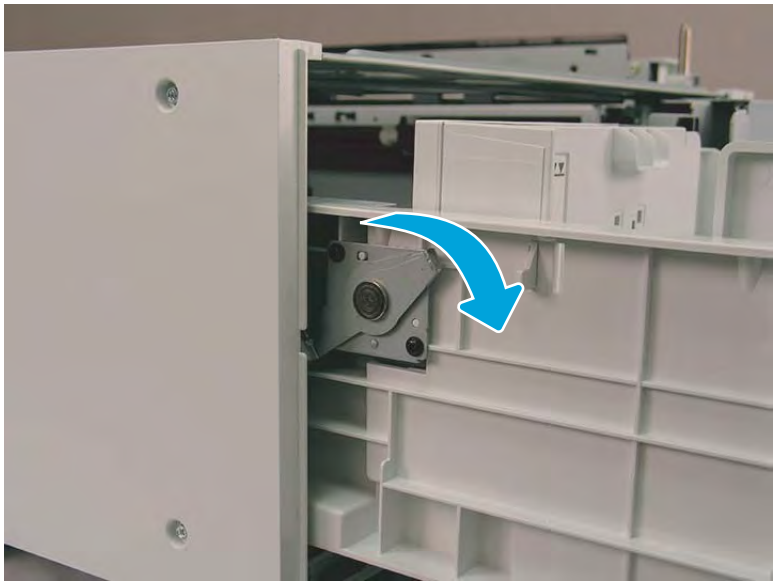
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI tray

1. Pull the tray fully out of the HCI, and then at the left side of the tray release the hook lever on the tray.

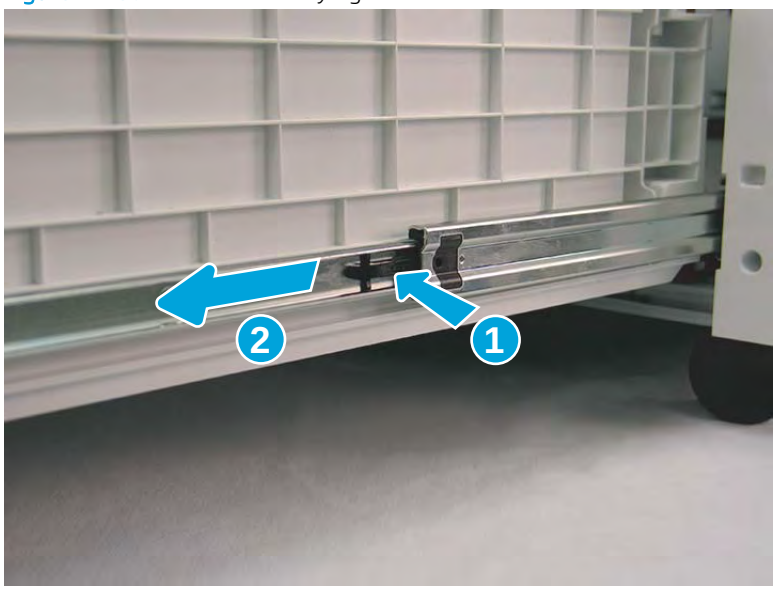
TIP: Slightly pull out on the left side of the tray so that the hook lever remains unlatched.

Figure 2-488 Release the tray left side hook lever



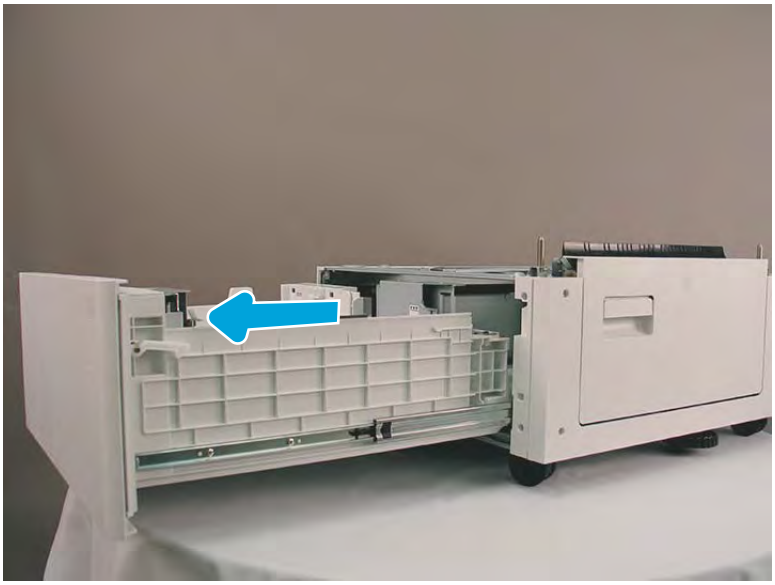
2. At the right side of the tray push in on the slide lock (callout 1) to release it, and then pull the tray away from the HCI (callout 2).

Figure 2-489 Release the tray right-side slide lock



3. Continue to slide the tray away from the HCI to remove it.

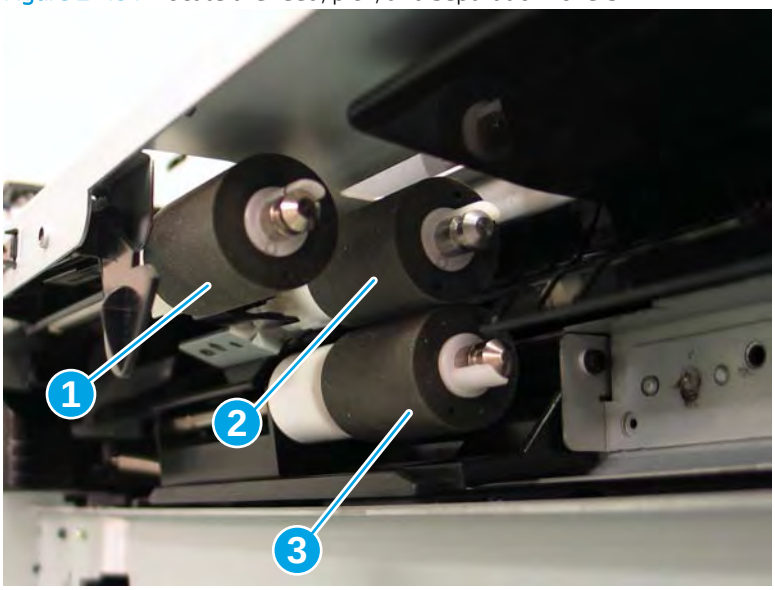
Figure 2-490 Remove the tray



Step 2: Remove the HCI LaserJet E7 tray rollers

1. Look up into the tray cavity, and locate the feed (callout 1), pick (callout 2), and separation (callout 3) rollers.

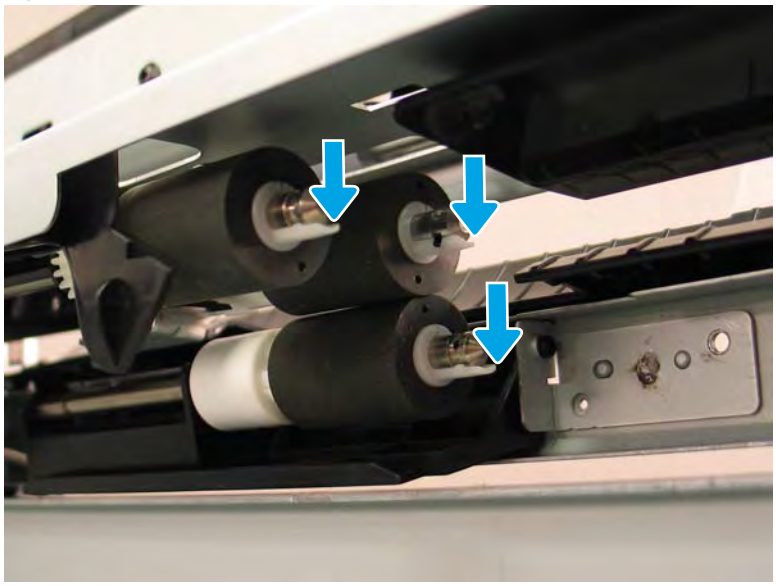
Figure 2-491 Locate the feed, pick, and separation rollers



2. Release one tab (for each roller), and then slide the roller off of the shaft.

NOTE: Open the right door before attempting to remove the rollers.

Figure 2-492 Remove the rollers

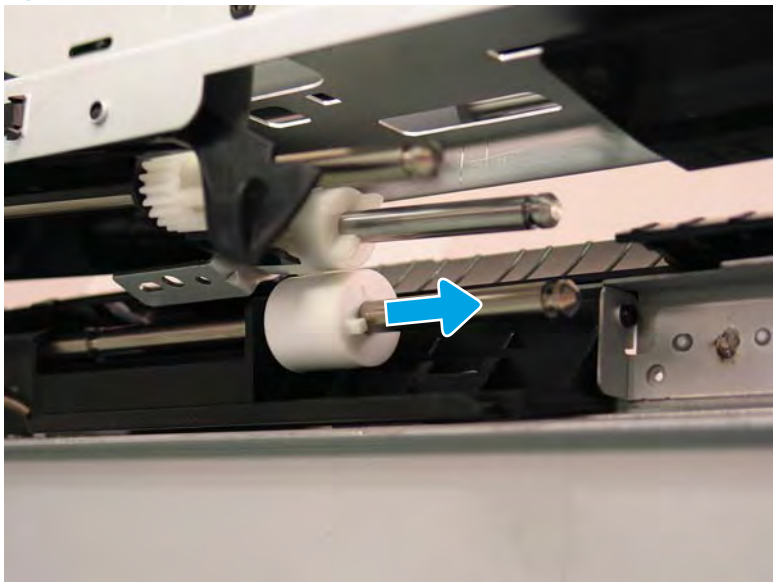


3. Slide the coupler (torque limiter) off of the separation roller shaft.

Reinstallation tip: When the coupler (torque limiter) is installed, make sure it is fully seated on the separation roller shaft. If it is not fully seated, the separation roller will not correctly install on the shaft.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-493 Remove the coupler (torque limiter)



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI drive

Figure 2-494 HCI drive

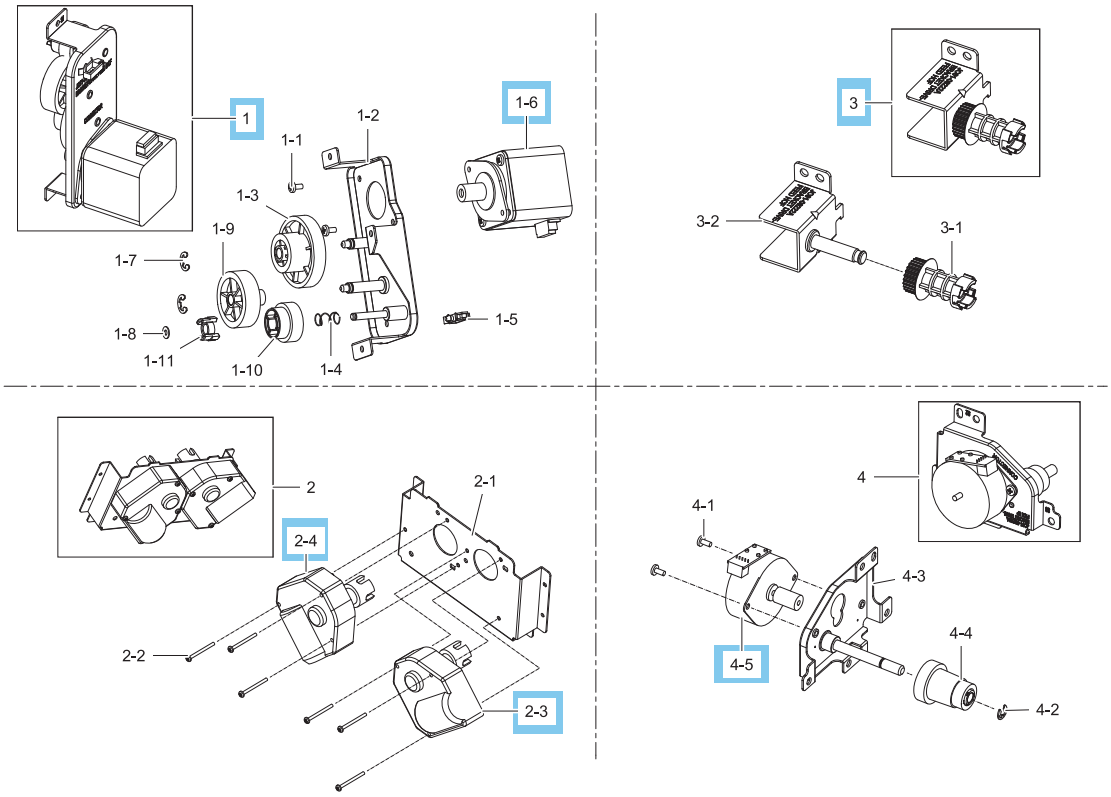


Table 2-37 HCI drive

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Drive assembly - feed (HCI)	JC93-00447A on page 584	1
1-6	Motor - feed (HCI)	JC31-00033B on page 589	1
2-3	Motor - lifter drive right (HCI)	JC31-00109A on page 594	1
2-3	Motor - lifter drive left (HCI)	JC31-00125A on page 594	1
3	Drive assembly- sub-pulley (HCI)	JC93-01465A on page 599	1
4-5	Motor - step drive (HCI)	JC93-00452A on page 597	1

HCI drive assembly - feed

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI drive assembly - feed.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-00447A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HCI drive assembly - feed

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

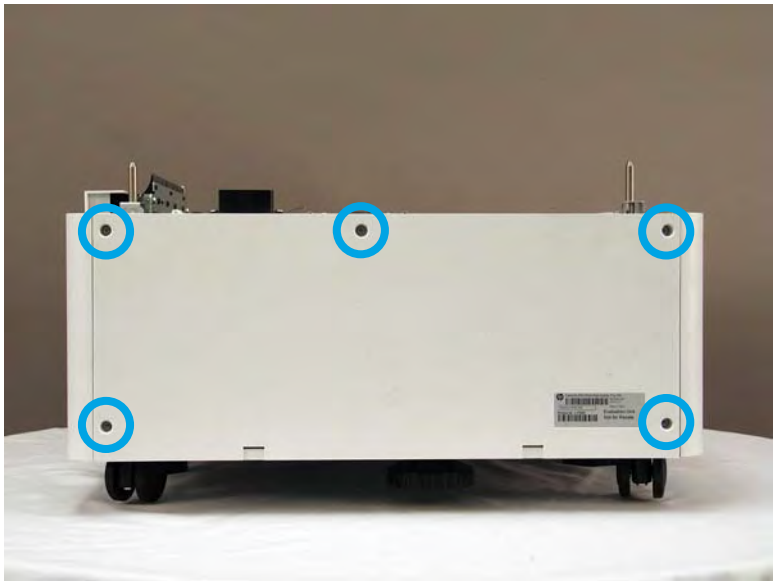
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

▲ Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

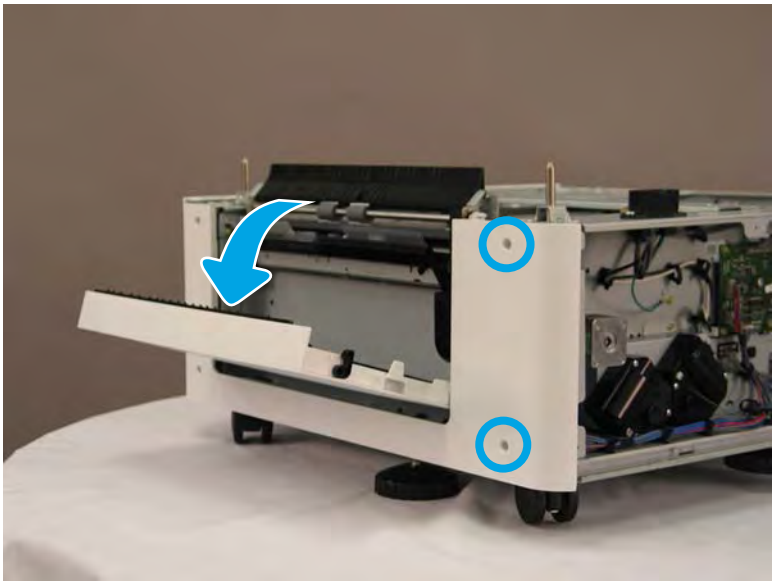
Figure 2-495 Remove the HCI rear cover



Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

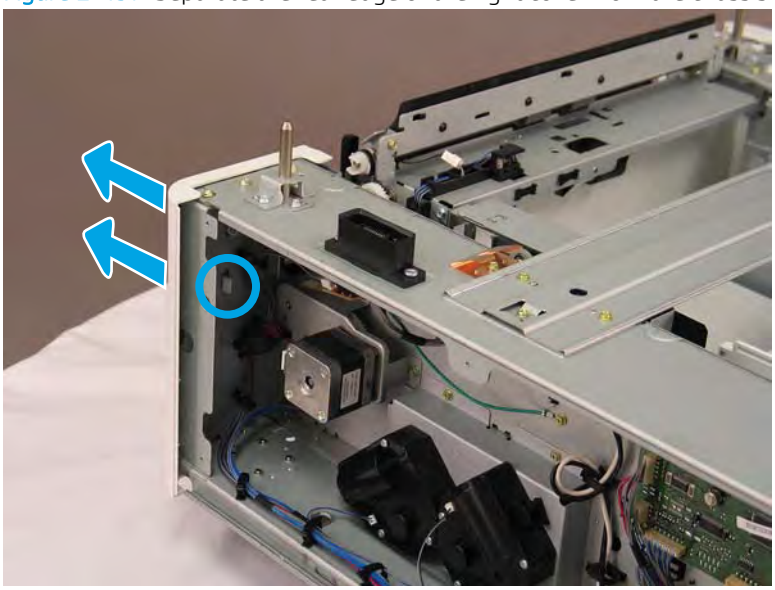
1. Open the right door, and then remove two screws

Figure 2-496 Remove two screws



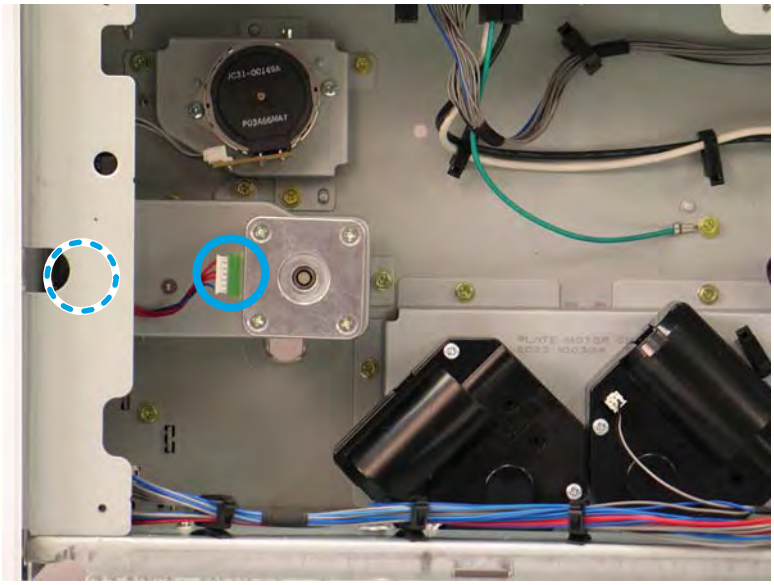
2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-497 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Disconnect one connector, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

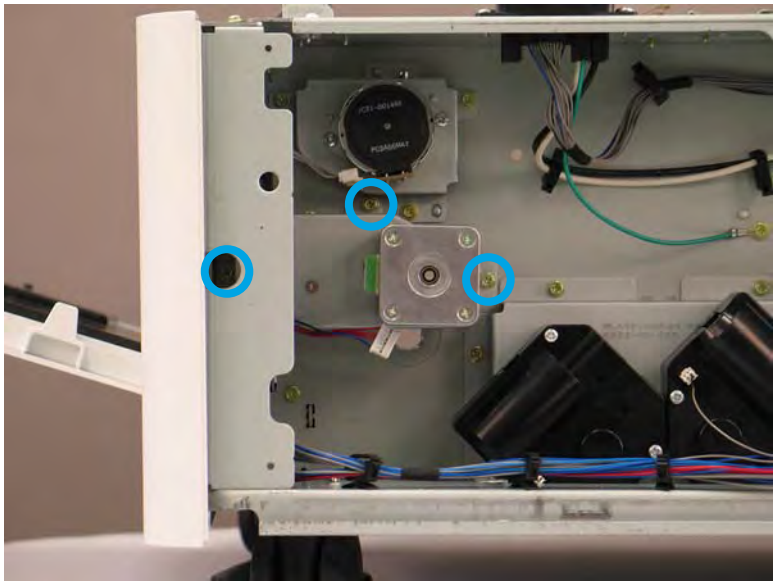
Figure 2-498 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove three screws, and then remove the HCI drive assembly - feed.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-499 Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI motor - feed drive

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed
- Step 4: Remove the HCI motor - feed drive
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI motor - feed drive.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC31-00033B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HCI motor - feed drive

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

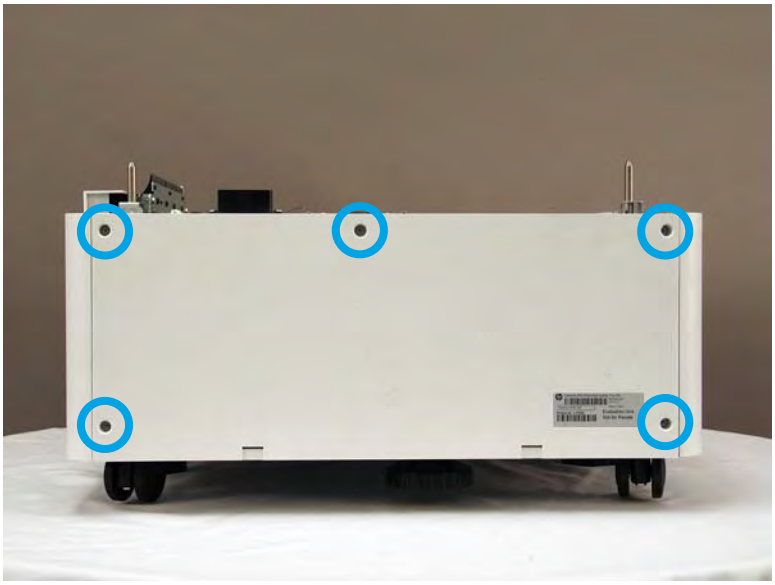
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

- Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

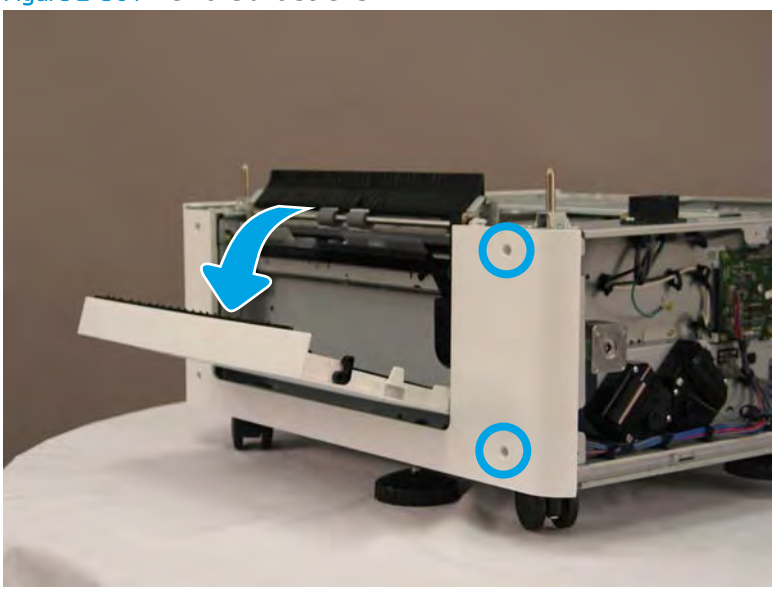
Figure 2-500 Remove the HCI rear cover



Step 3: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

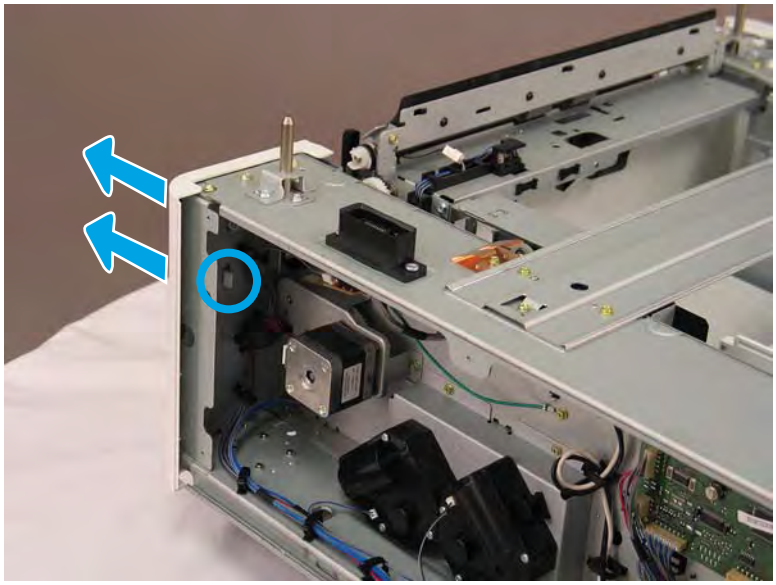
1. Open the right door, and then remove two screws

Figure 2-501 Remove two screws



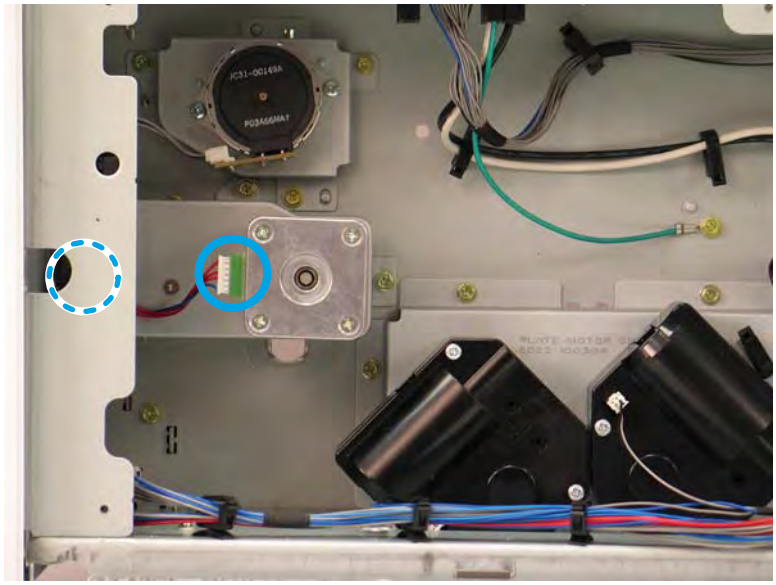
2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-502 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Disconnect one connector, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

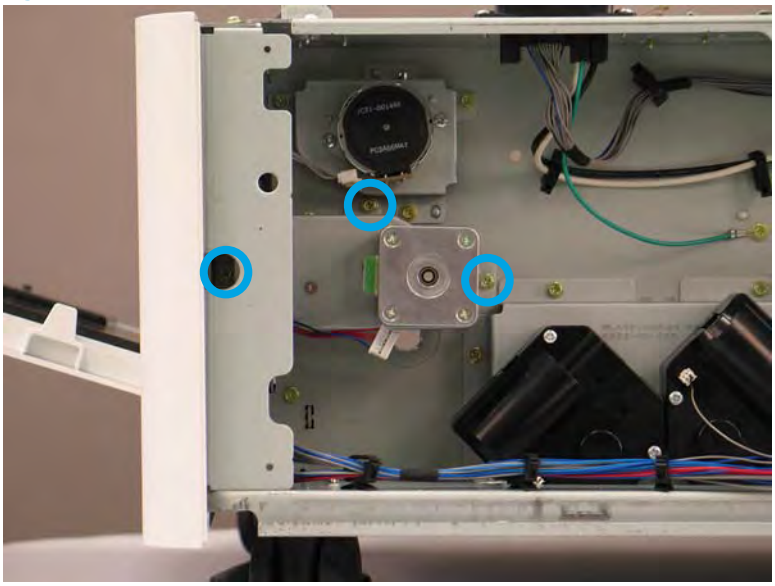
Figure 2-503 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove three screws, and then remove the HCI drive assembly - feed.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-504 Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

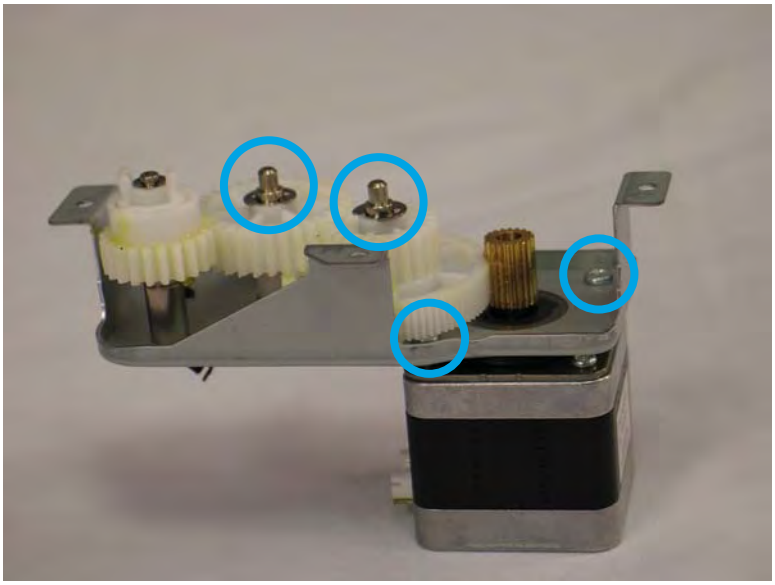


Step 4: Remove the HCI motor - feed drive

▲ Remove two e-rings, remove two gears, and then remove two screws to separate the HCI motor - feed drive.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-505 Remove the HCI motor - feed drive



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the HCI motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left.

Click here for a video of this procedure

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC31-00109A	JC31-00125A
• HCI motor - lift drive right	• HCI motor - lift drive left

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

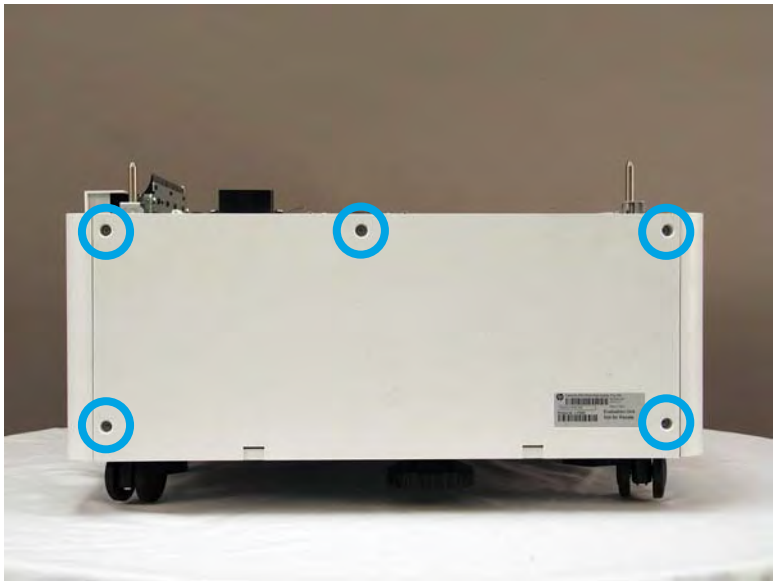
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

▲ Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-506 Remove the HCI rear cover

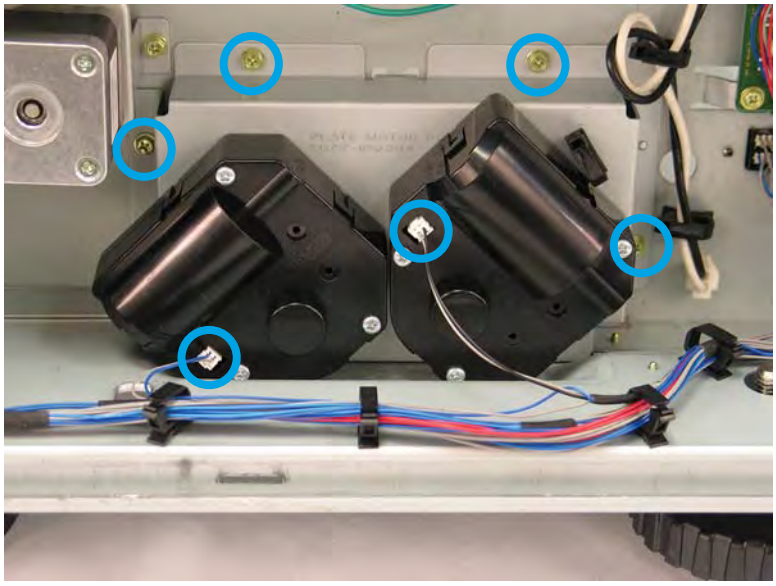


Step 2: Remove the HCI motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left

1. Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and the remove the HCI motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left.

NOTE: It might take some force to release the assembly from the chassis.

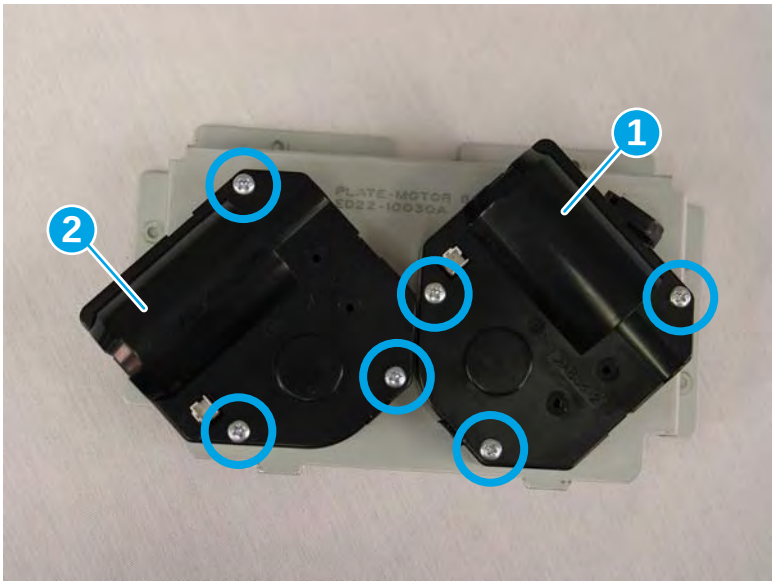
Figure 2-507 Remove the HCI motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left



2. Do one or both of the following:
   - To remove the **right-lift drive motor** (callout 1): remove three screws.
   - To remove the **left-lift drive motor** (callout 2): remove three screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-508 Remove the HCI tray right- and left-lift drive motors



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI motor - step drive

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the HCI motor - step drive
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI motor - step drive.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-00452A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HCI motor - step drive

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

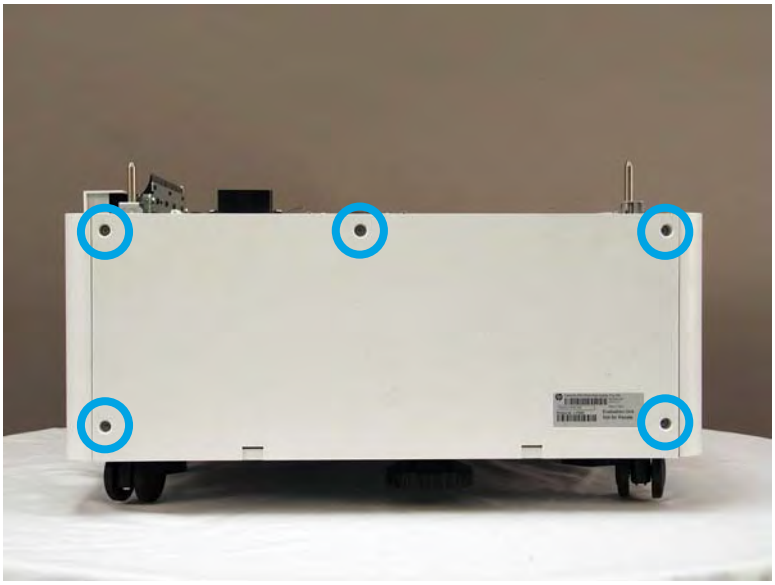
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

▲ Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-509 Remove the HCI rear cover



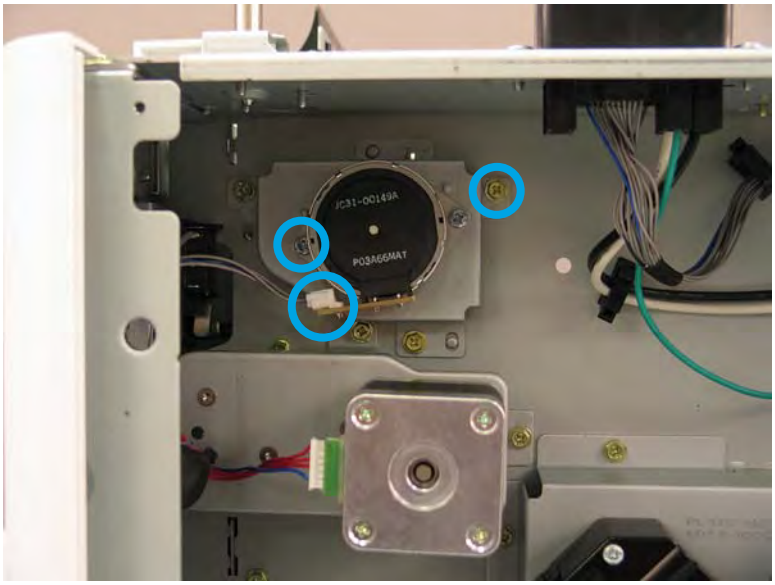
Step 2: Remove the HCI motor - step drive

▲ Disconnect the one connector, remove two screws, and remove the HCI motor - step drive.

TIP: It might be easier to disconnect the connector after the motor is removed from the bracket.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-510 Remove the HCI motor - step drive



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed
- Step 3: Remove the HCI right door
- Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC93-01465A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

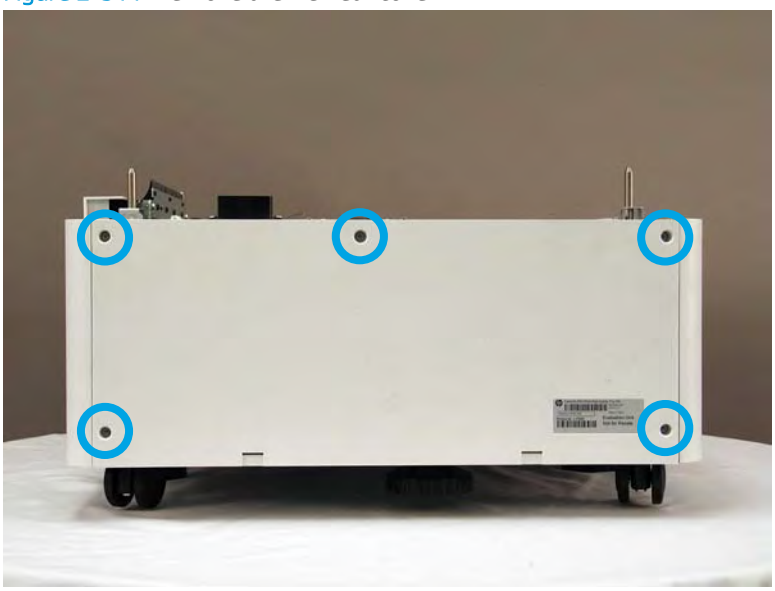
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

▲ Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

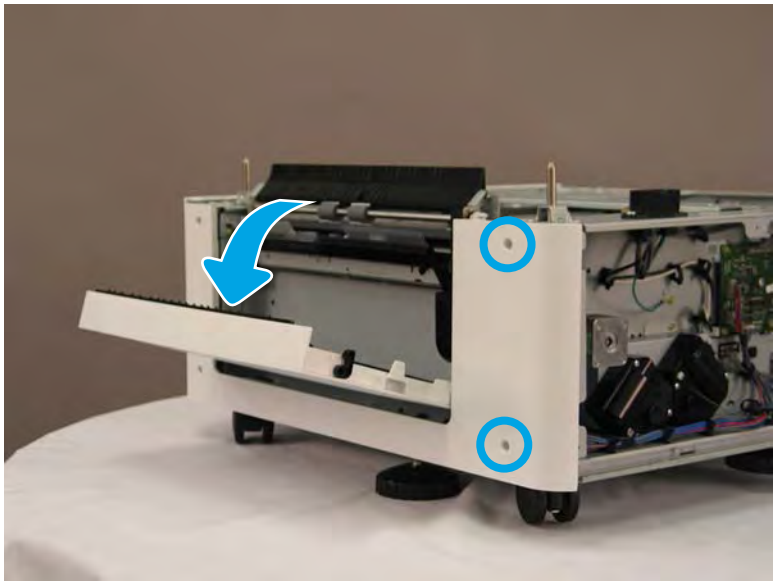
Figure 2-511 Remove the HCI rear cover



Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

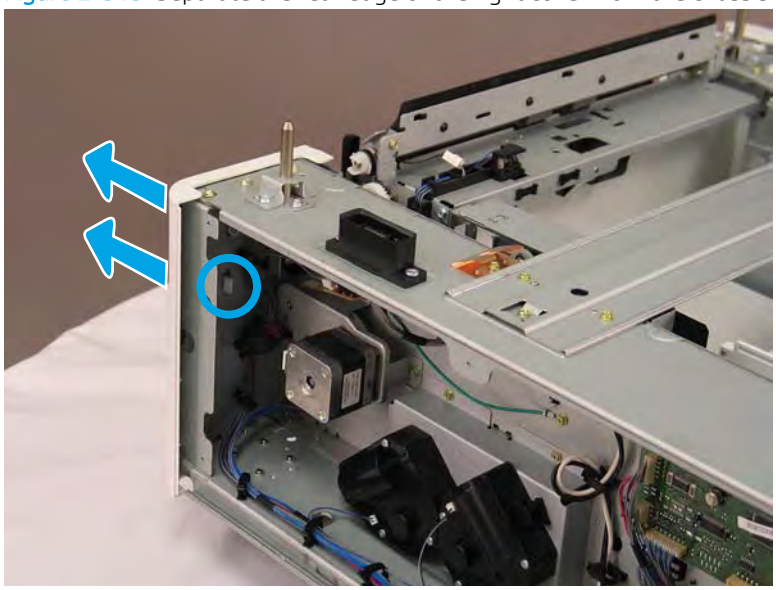
1. Open the right door, and then remove two screws

Figure 2-512 Remove two screws



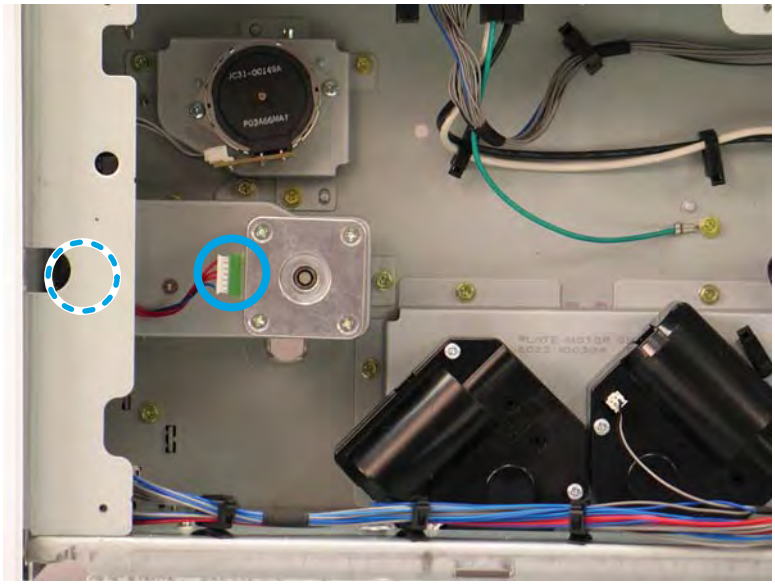
2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-513 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Disconnect one connector, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

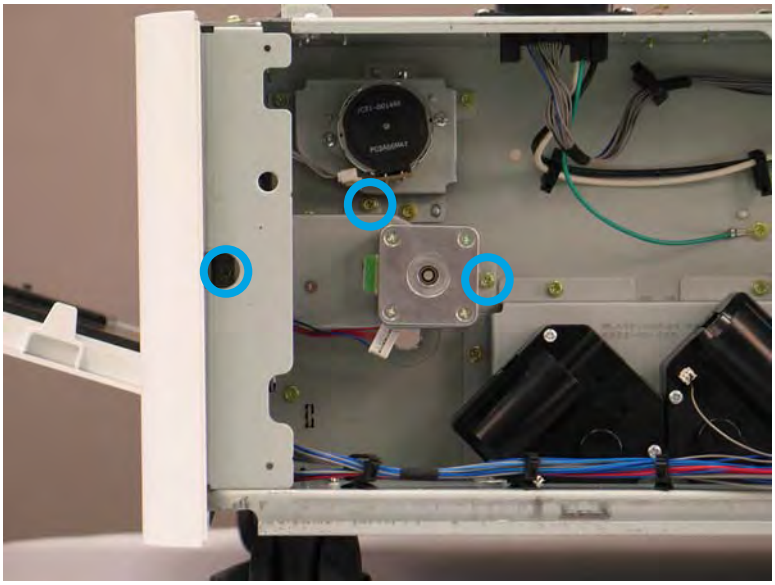
Figure 2-514 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove three screws, and then remove the HCI drive assembly - feed.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-515 Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

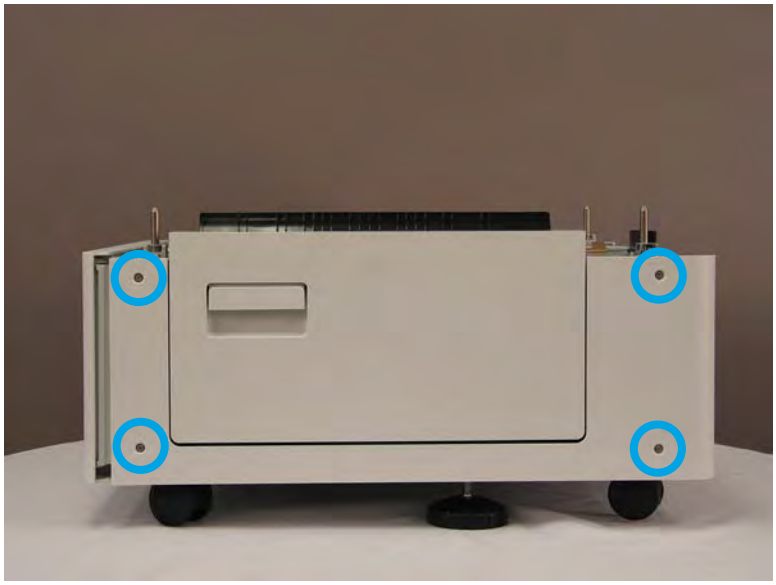


Step 3: Remove the HCI right door

1. Remove four screw caps (if installed), and then remove four screws.

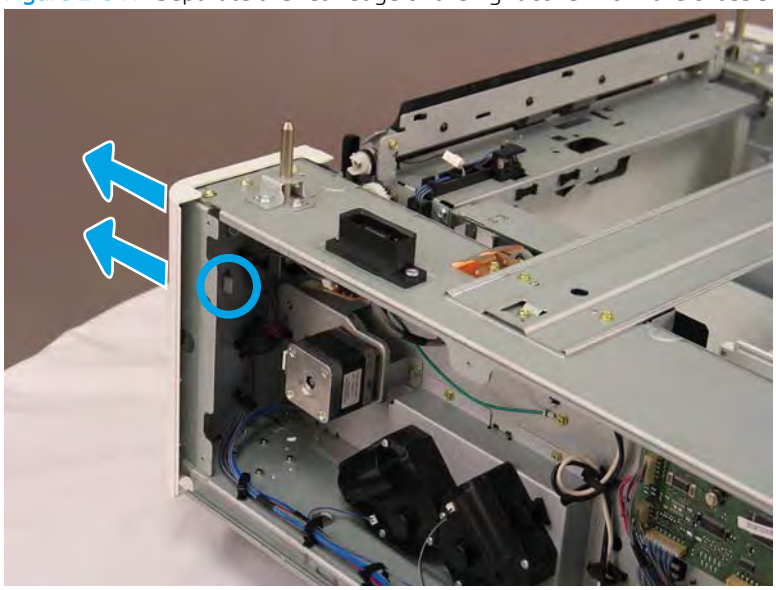
NOTE: If the feed drive assembly is removed, there are only two screws that secure this cover.

Figure 2-516 Remove four screws



2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

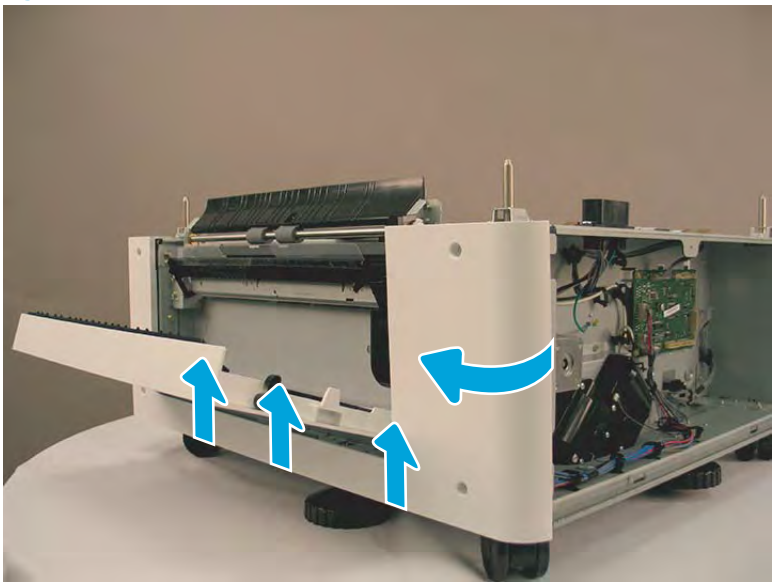
Figure 2-517 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Lift up on the cover while rotating it away from the chassis to release three bosses.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to fully remove the cover. Stop as shown below. Fully removing the cover at this step will damage the remaining tab and boss on the cover.

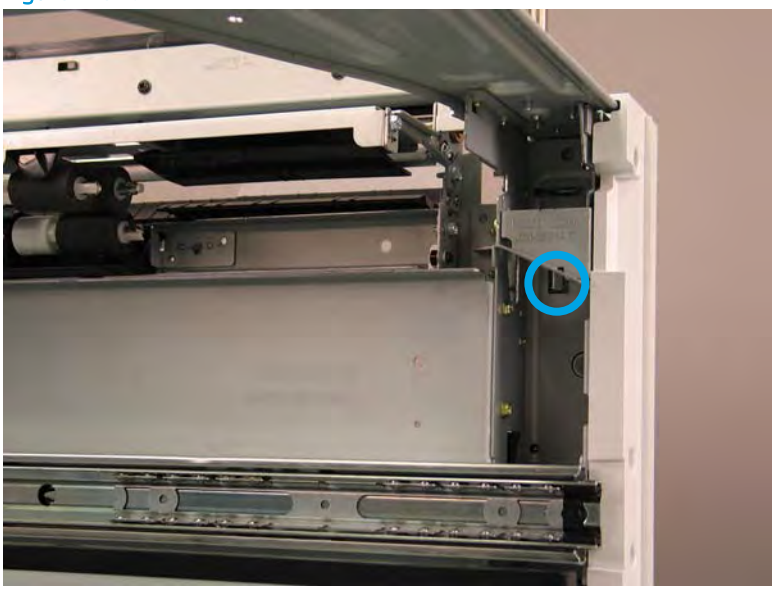
Figure 2-518 Release three bosses



4. If the tray was not removed prior to servicing the HCI, remove it now.

   Look in the tray cavity and locate the right cover front tab. Release this tab.

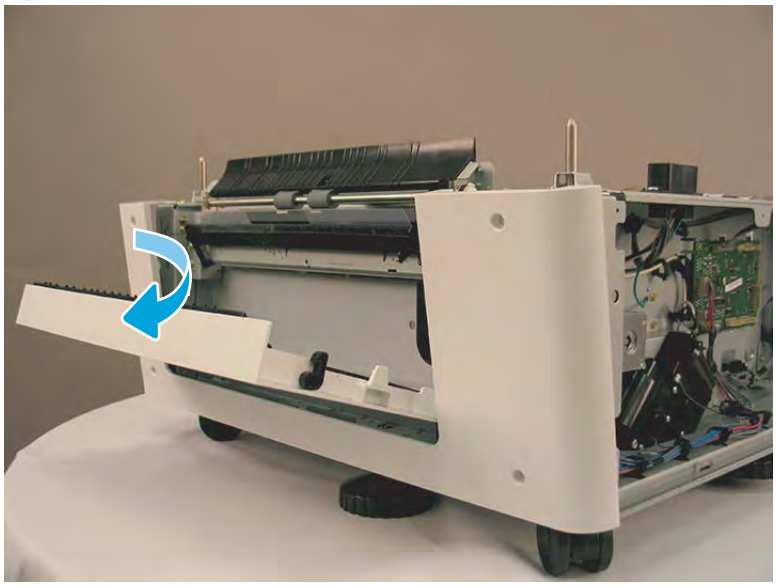
Figure 2-519 Release one tab



5. Remove the HCI right cover.

NOTE: The HCI right door will not stay in the latched potion when this cover is removed.

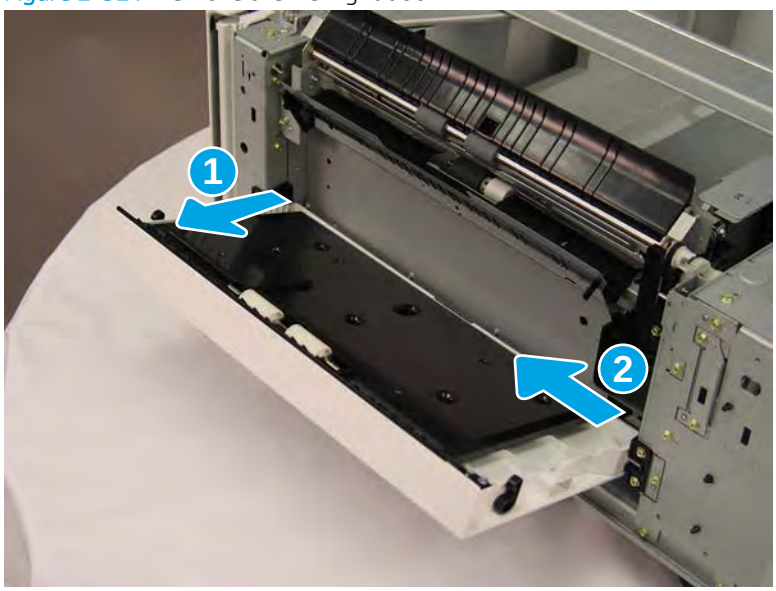
Figure 2-520 Remove the HCI right cover



6. Rotate the right door front hinge pin out of the holder, and then slide the right door towards the front of the HCI to release the rear hinge pin and remove the door.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

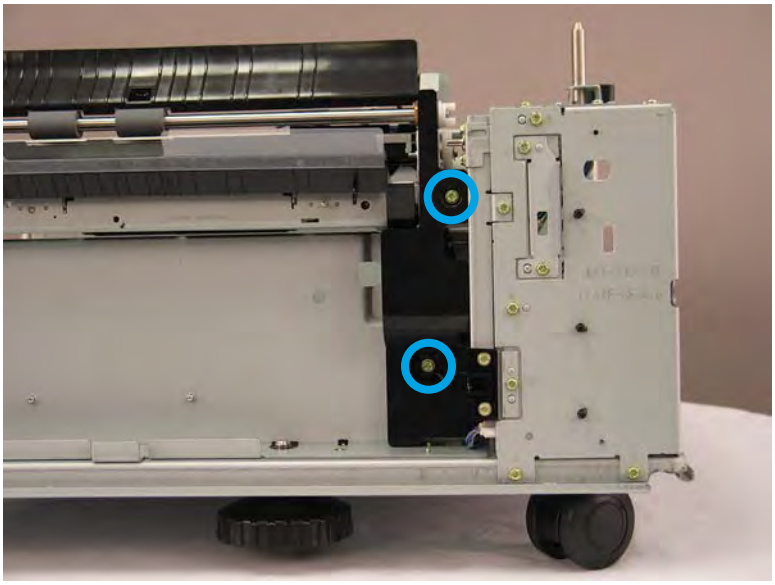
Figure 2-521 Remove the HCI right door



Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the black-plastic cover.

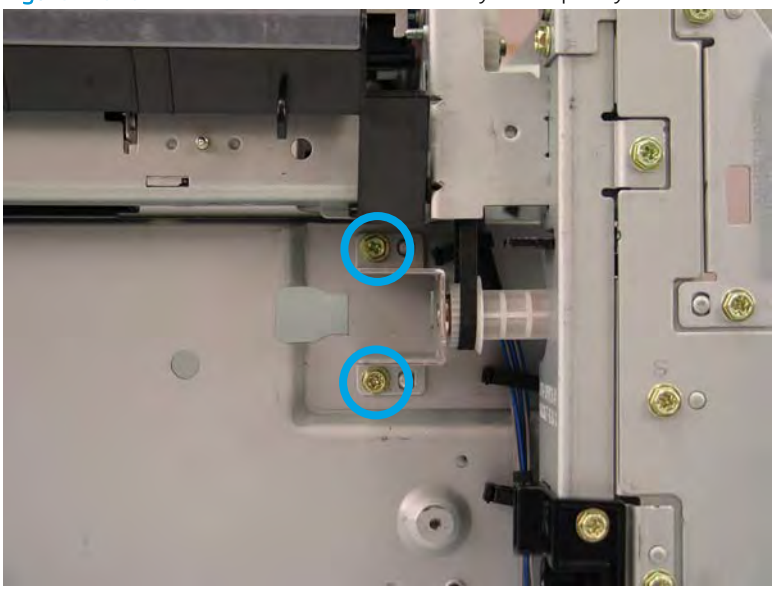
Figure 2-522 Remove one cover



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the drive assembly - sub-pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-523 Remove the HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI sub - cassette

Figure 2-524 HCI sub - cassette

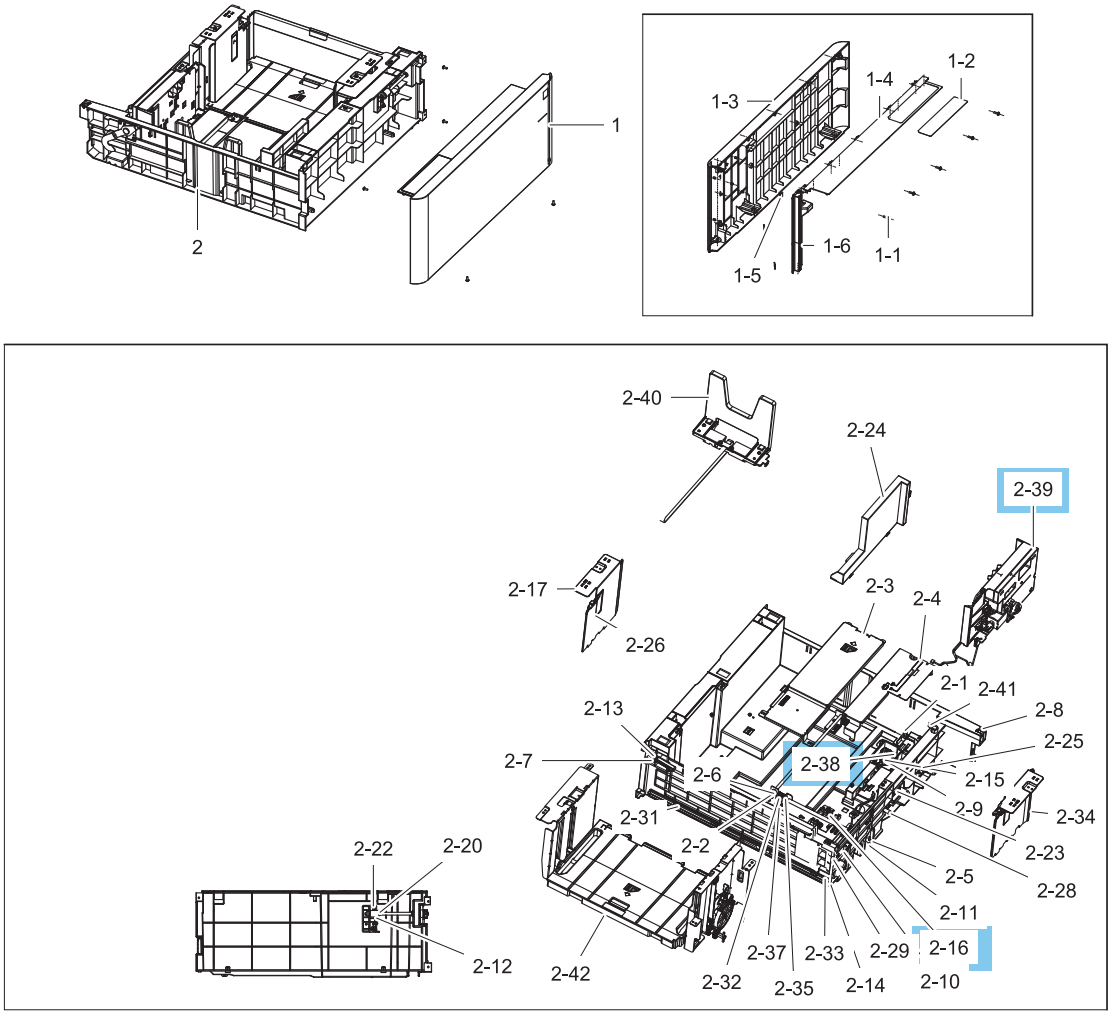


Table 2-38 HCI sub - cassette

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2-16	Bracket sensor (HCI)	JC81-07468A on page 617	1
2-38	Photo interrupter (HCI)	0604-001393 on page 617	1
2-39	Sub-paper side right (HCI)	JC90-01723A on page 610	1

HCI sub-paper side right

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI tray
- Step 2: Remove the HCI sub-paper side right
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI sub-paper side right.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

JC90-01723A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- HCI sub-paper side right

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

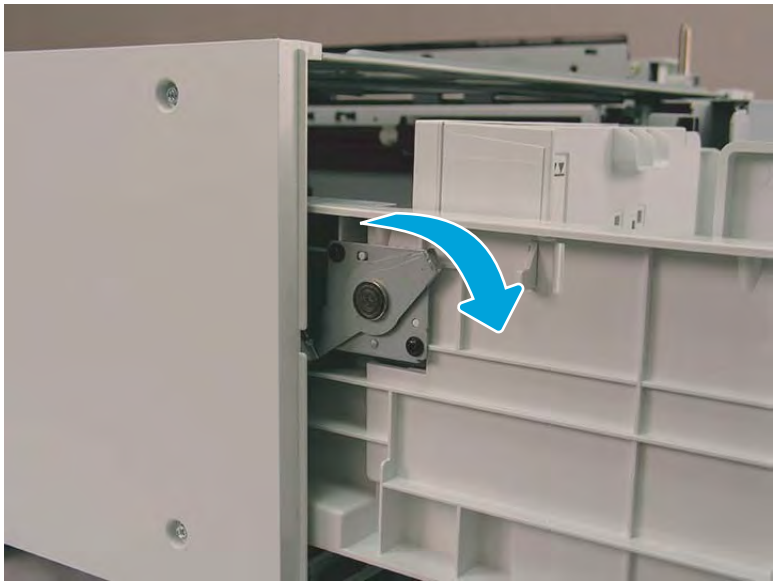
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI tray

1. Pull the tray fully out of the HCI, and then at the left side of the tray release the hook lever on the tray.

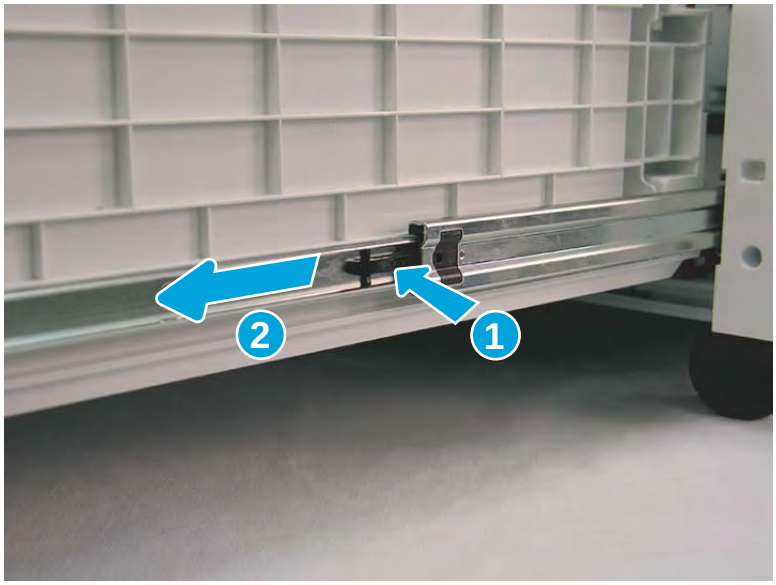
TIP: Slightly pull out on the left side of the tray so that the hook lever remains unlatched.

Figure 2-525 Release the tray left side hook lever



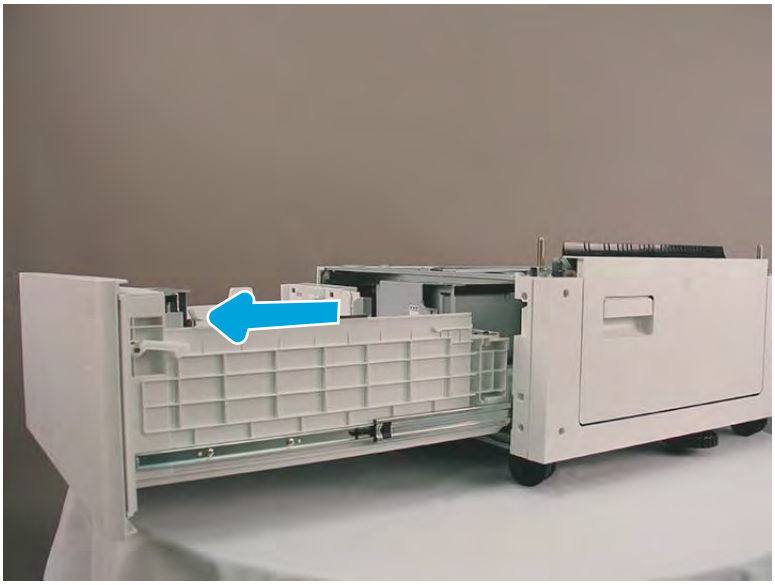
2. At the right side of the tray push in on the slide lock (callout 1) to release it, and then pull the tray away from the HCI (callout 2).

Figure 2-526 Release the tray right-side slide lock



3. Continue to slide the tray away from the HCI to remove it.

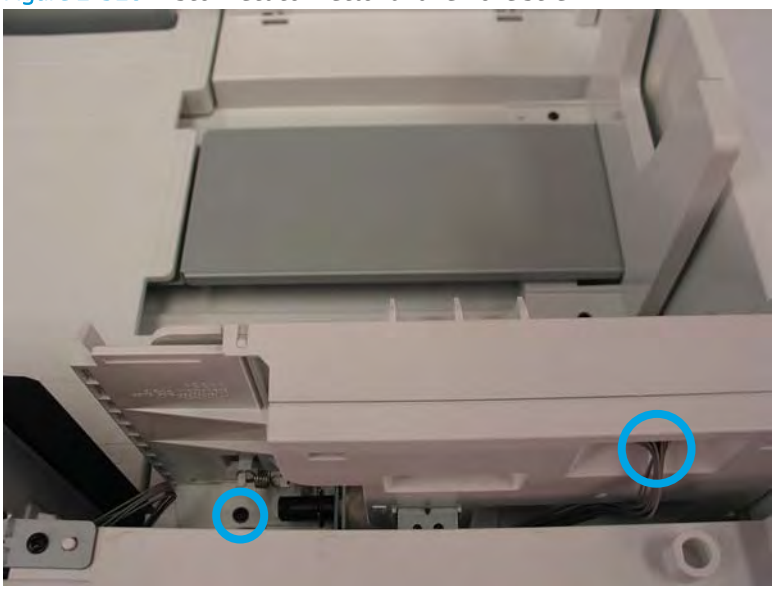
Figure 2-527 Remove the tray



Step 2: Remove the HCI sub-paper side right

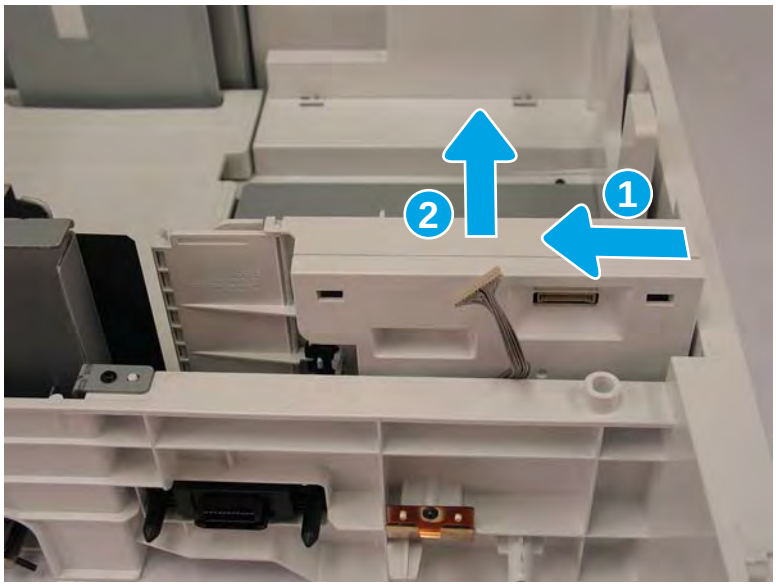
1. Look into the tray, disconnect one connector, and then remove one screw.

Figure 2-528 Disconnect connector and remove screw



2. Slide the sub-paper side right assembly to the left to release it, and then slightly lit it up.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the tray by a wire harness and ground wire.



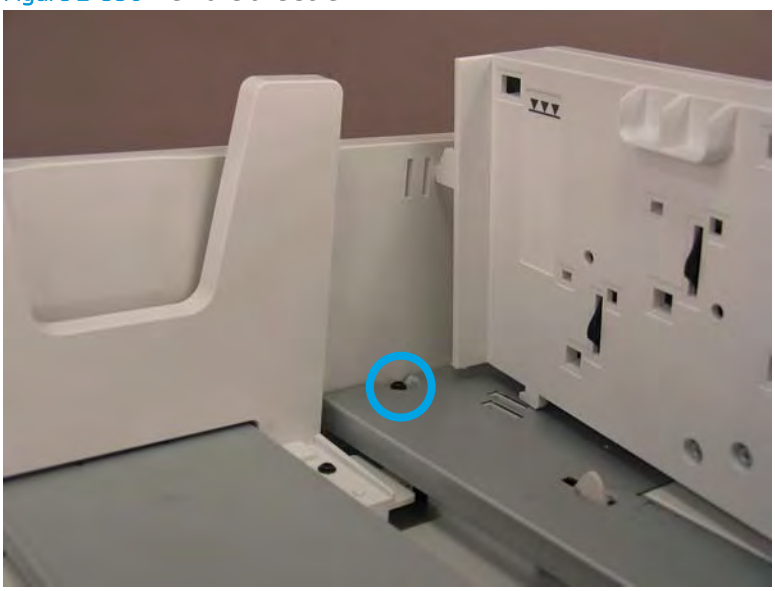
3. Remove one screw, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

Figure 2-529 Remove one screw and release the wire harness



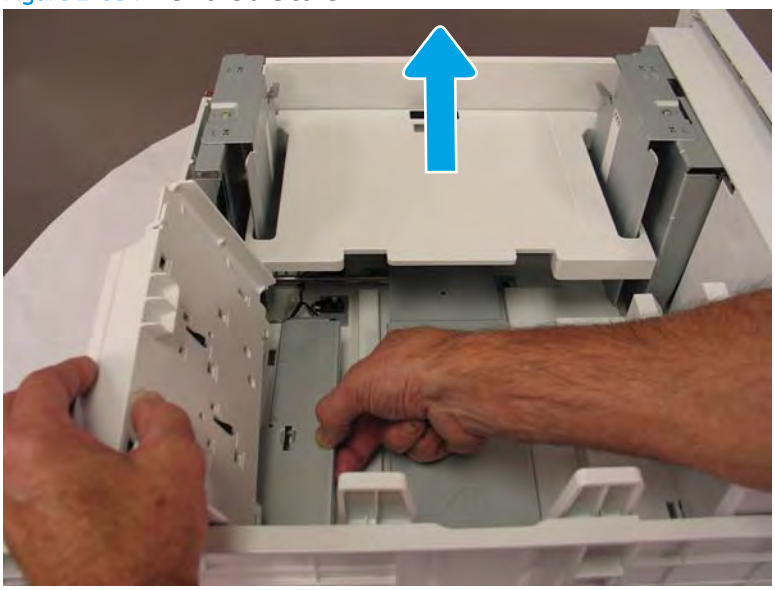
4. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-530 Remove one screw



5. Raise the paper shelf, hold the sub-paper side right assembly up and out of the way, and then remove the sheet-metal cover.

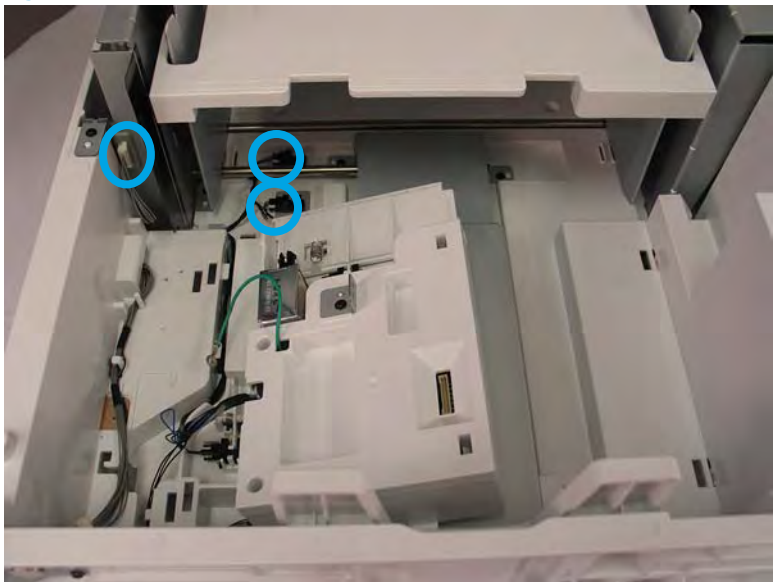
Figure 2-531 Remove the cover



6. Disconnect three connectors, and then release the wire harness from the retainers.

TIP: Fully raise the paper shelf to access two connectors.

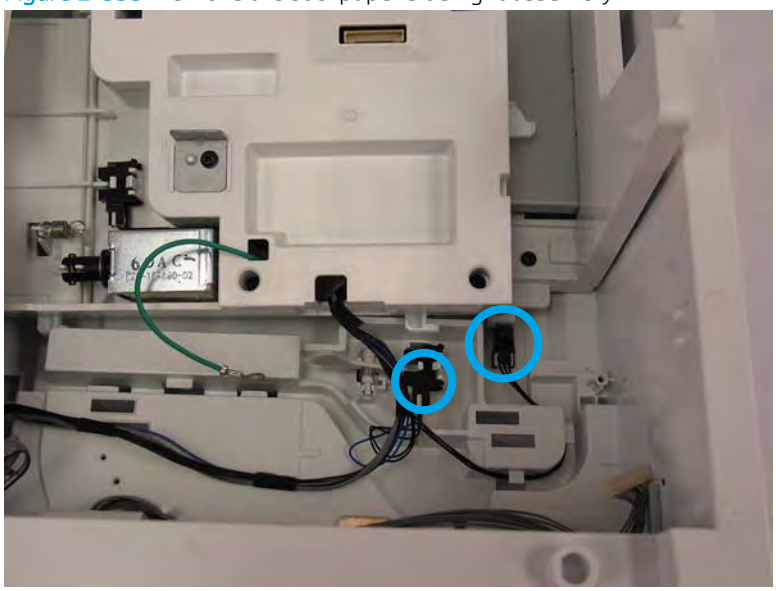
Figure 2-532 Disconnect three connectors



7. Disconnect two connectors, release the wire harnesses from the guides, and then remove the sub-paper side right assembly.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-533 Remove the sub-paper side right assembly



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI photo interrupter and sensor bracket

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the HCI tray
- Step 2: Remove the HCI photo interrupter and sensor bracket
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI photo interrupter and sensor bracket.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

0604-001393	JC81-07468A
• HCI photo interrupter	• HCI sensor bracket

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

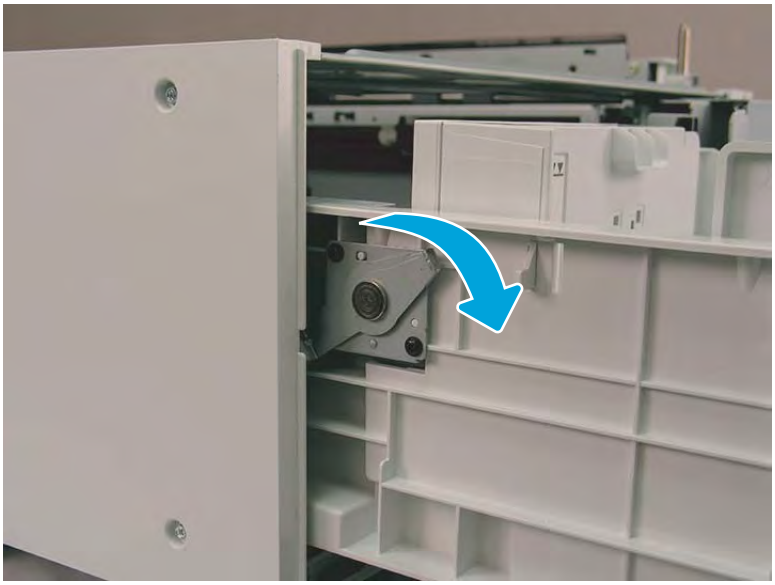
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the HCI tray

1. Pull the tray fully out of the HCI, and then at the left side of the tray release the hook lever on the tray.

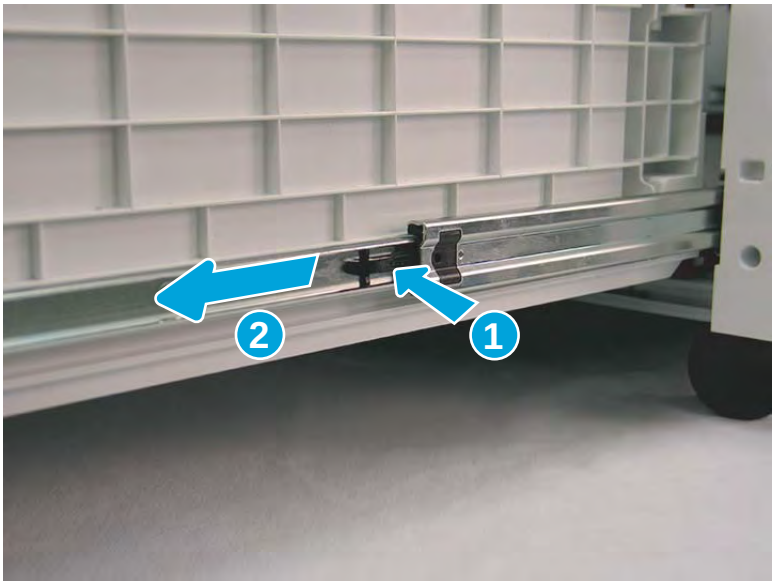
TIP: Slightly pull out on the left side of the tray so that the hook lever remains unlatched.

Figure 2-534 Release the tray left side hook lever



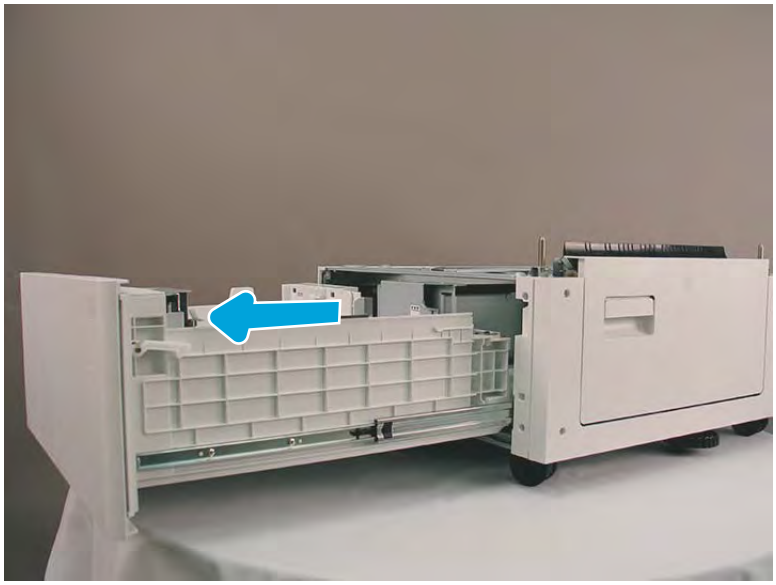
2. At the right side of the tray push in on the slide lock (callout 1) to release it, and then pull the tray away from the HCI (callout 2).

Figure 2-535 Release the tray right-side slide lock



3. Continue to slide the tray away from the HCI to remove it.

Figure 2-536 Remove the tray



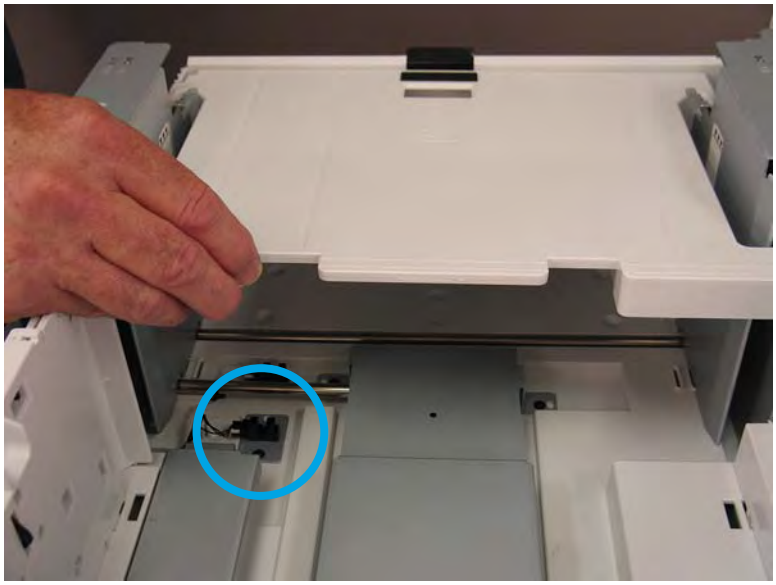
Step 2: Remove the HCI photo interrupter and sensor bracket

▲ Raise the paper shelf, disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the HCI photo interrupter and sensor bracket.

NOTE: It might be easier to disconnect the connector after the screw is removed.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-537 Remove the HCI photo interrupter and sensor bracket



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

3 Problem solving

- Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview
- Troubleshooting process
- Tools for troubleshooting
- Clear paper jams
- Service mode (tech mode)
- Print quality troubleshooting guide
- Adjusting the flow ADF/ADF skew

Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview

Error codes

Error codes and control-panel messages display on the printer control panel to indicate the current printer status or situations that might require action. Error codes are numerical, or alphanumerical, and have a set structure with six characters (example: 13.WX.YZ).

- The first two characters are numeric and represent the system component that is causing the error. For example, in error code `10.22.15`, **10** = **Supplies** for HP LaserJets.
- The remaining four characters (WX, Y, and Z values) further define the error.

HP LaserJet and HP PageWide Enterprise error codes are documented in the control panel message document (CPMD) for each printer.

The CPMD is a comprehensive list of error codes, diagnostic and troubleshooting steps to clear or resolve the error, and other helpful information such as service mode pins and part numbers.

The CPMD is continually updated and republished with the latest information for the following error codes.

Table 3-1 ERROR CODES: The first two characters

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
10.WX.YZ	Supplies (LaserJet)	Supply error or supply memory error.
11.WX.YZ	Real-time clock	Internal error with the clock on the formatter.
13.WX.YZ	Jam (LaserJet)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
15.WX.YZ	Jam (PageWide)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
17.WX.YZ	Supplies (PageWide)	Supply error or supply memory error.
20.WX.YZ	Printer memory	Insufficient memory or buffering error.
21.WX.YZ	Page	Page complexity causing a decompression error when trying to process job.
30.WX.YZ	Scanner	Flatbed scanner error occurring inside the unit.
31.WX.YZ	Document feeder	Document feeder, scanner, or jam error.
32.WX.YZ	Backup, restore, or reset	Backup, restore, or reset notification or error.
33.WX.YZ	Security	Backup, Disk, EFI BIOS, Firmware integrity (SureStart), or error.
40.WX.YZ	Input/Output (I/O)	Partition manager, secure erase, or USB accessory error.
41.WX.YZ	Fuser, Laser scanner, or Paper path	Miscellaneous error including general and misprint or mismatch errors typically involving (but not limited to) the fuser, the laser scanner, or the paper path.
42.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving the Event Log, Shell, System Manager, or other component.

Table 3-1 ERROR CODES: The first two characters (continued)

44.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving a digital sending component.
45.WX.YZ	OXPd/Web Kit (PageWide)	Informational notifications involving the OXPd Web Kit (communications log).
46.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	Engine communication error.
47.WX.YZ	Firmware	Job parser or printer calibration error.
48.WX.YZ	Firmware	PJA job accounting, job management, or job pipeline error.
49.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware communication error.
50.WX.YZ	Fuser (LaserJet)	Fuser error.
51.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner beam error.
52.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner startup error.
54.WX.YZ	Sensor	Sensor error (not jam related).
55.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller communication error.
56.WX.YZ	Paper handling (LaserJet)	Paper input/output or accessory error.
57.WX.YZ	Fan	Fan error.
58.WX.YZ	Sensor	Engine sensor failure.
59.WX.YZ	Motor (LaserJet)	Motor error.
60.WX.YZ	Tray motor error (LaserJet)	Tray lifting or pick up error.
61.WX.YZ	Engine (PageWide and LaserJet)	Print engine error with the 8–bit data package.
62.WX.YZ	System (LaserJet)	LaserJet internal system error.
	Print bar (PageWide)	PageWide print system error.
63.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	General engine error (electrical, communication, etc.).
65.WX.YZ	Connector	Output accessory connection error.
66.WX.YZ	Output accessory	Output accessory error.
67.WX.YZ	Input accessory	Input accessory connection error
69.WX.YZ	Duplexer	Duplexer error.
70.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller firmware error.
80.WX.YZ	Managed device	Embedded Jetdirect error.
81.WX.YZ	Near Field Communication (NFC)	Wireless, Bluetooth or internal EIO error.
82.WX.YZ	Memory (hard disk, EMMC, etc.)	Disk hardware error.
90.WX.YZ	Internal diagnostics	Internal test of systems (i.e. disk, CPB, display) or interconnection error.
98.WX.YZ	Hard disk	Hard disk partition error.
99.WX.YZ	Firmware installer	Remote Firmware Upgrade (RFU), firmware install (engine or accessory), or disk error.

How to search for printer documentation

The CPMD, error codes, and other support documentation for each printer is found on the internal HP portals GCSN and WISE (formerly SAW). GCSN is available to HP channel partners and WISE is available to call agents, service technicians, and other HP internal users. The level of detail available will depend on your access credentials.

How to search WISE for printer documentation

These instructions are for HP internal use by call agents, service technicians, and other internal users. To learn how to find support content in WISE, watch the video here.

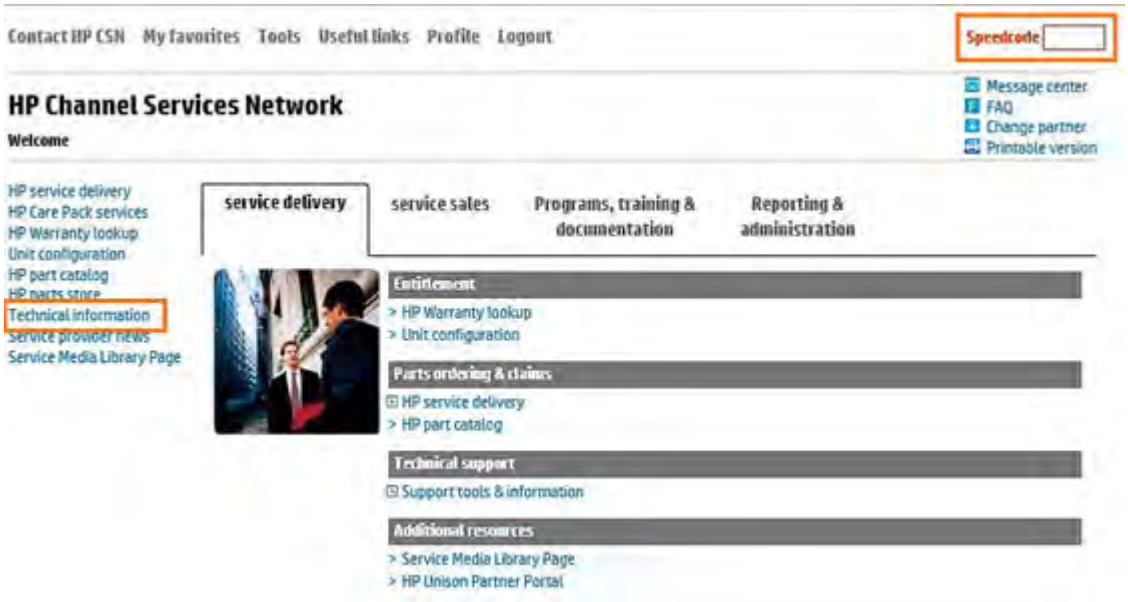
To view a list of control panel message documents per printer in **WISE**, enter document ID **c05048451**, to locate CPMD list.

Go to **WISE** and enter this document ID **c05791539** for written instructions.

How to search GCSN for printer documentation

These instructions are for internal use by HP Channel Partners. To learn how to find support content in GCSN, watch the video here or follow these steps:

1. On the Home screen in GCSN, open **Technical information** using one of the following two methods:
   - Type `TINF` in the **Speedcode** field found in the upper right corner and press `Enter`, or
   - On the Home page, click **Technical information** in the left pane.



2. Under **Product Search**, select the **Type**, **Category**, **Family**, and **Series** that match your product model (leave the **Model** field as blank or the default).

NOTE: Make sure to login to GCSN using your service-qualified credentials to access the most comprehensive content list available. To find out how to become service-qualified, contact your HP representative.

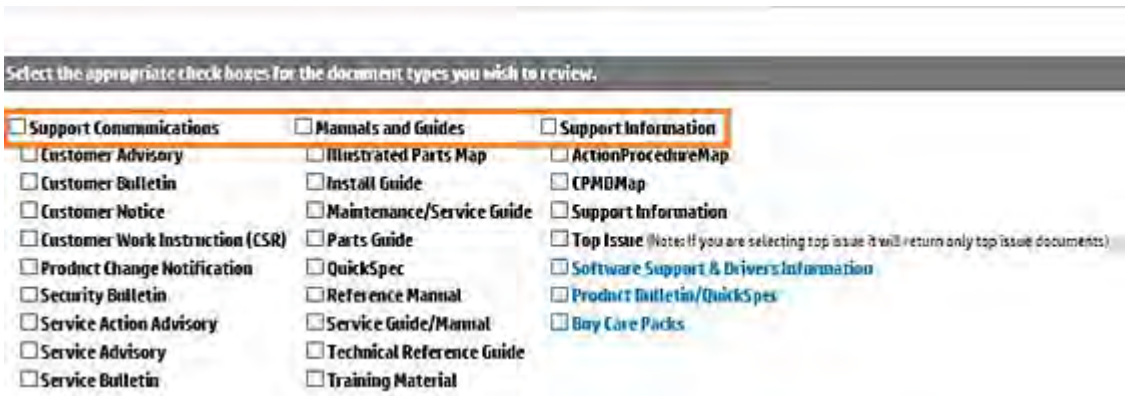
Figure 3-1 Sample product search criteria



3. Click **Add Favorites** and then click **Add** to add the printer to your Favorites list and allow you to bypass the **Product Search** fields next time for that particular model (Optional).



4. Clear all of the high-level check boxes.



5. Select the check boxes for the document types for which you want to search.

NOTE: Select only the high-level **Manuals and Guides** search option if you are not sure in which type of manual or guide the content might be listed.



6. Select **Submit**.

7. If needed, click **Back To selection Criteria** and narrow your search (the maximum allowed search result is 100 documents).

NOTE: Do not select the **Top Issue** option unless you only want to view top issues for that model. All other available content will be filtered out.

Technical information type	Select this checkbox
CPMD	**CPMD-Map**
List of all CPMDs per product	**Support Information**
Installation Guide or Hardware Install Guide	**Maintenance/Service Guide** or **Install Guide**
Service cost document	**Install Guide** or **Service Guide/Manual**
Service guide or Service manual	**Service Guide/Manual**
Self-solve or troubleshooting document	**Support Information**
User manual or User guide	**User Guide**
Warranty and Legal Guide	**Warranty Statement**

Troubleshooting process

Determine the problem source

When the printer malfunctions or encounters an unexpected situation, the printer control panel alerts you to the situation. This section contains a pre-troubleshooting checklist to filter out many possible causes of the problem. A troubleshooting flowchart helps you diagnose the root cause of the problem. The remainder of this chapter provides steps for correcting problems.

- Use the troubleshooting flowchart to pinpoint the root cause of hardware malfunctions. The flowchart guides you to the section of this chapter that contains steps for correcting the malfunction.

Before beginning any troubleshooting procedure, check the following issues:

- Are supply items within their rated life?
- Are supply items Genuine HP supplies?
- Does the configuration page reveal any configuration errors?

NOTE: The customer or service provider is responsible for checking supplies and for using supplies that are in good condition.

Power subsystem

Power-on checks

The basic printer functions should start up when the printer is connected into an electrical outlet and the power switch is pushed to the *on* position. If the printer does not start, use the information in this section to isolate and solve the problem.

If the control-panel display remains blank, random patterns display, or asterisks remain on the control-panel display, perform power-on checks to find the cause of the problem.

Power-on troubleshooting overview

During normal operation, a cooling fan begins to spin briefly after the printer power is turned on. Place your hand over the vents at the rear of the printer, next to the formatter, or on the on the rear of the scanner. If the fan is operating, you will feel air passing out of the printer. You can lean close to the printer and hear the fan operating.

A fan begins to blow on the right door (fuser), and then the control panel goes through a series of set up functions. The main motor turns on (unless the left door or cartridge access door is open, a jam condition is sensed, or the paper-path sensors are damaged). You might be able to visually and audibly determine if the main motor is turned on.

If the fan and main motor are operating correctly, the next troubleshooting step is to isolate print engine, formatter, and control panel problems.

If the control panel is blank 1 minute after turning on the printer, check the following items:

1. Make sure that the printer is connected directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip) that delivers the correct voltage.
2. Make sure that the power switch is in the *on* position, and then verify that the LED is on.
3. Make sure that the fan runs briefly, which indicates that the power supply is operational.

4. Depress the button on the back of the control panel to test the control panel functionality.
5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness is connected.
6. Remove any external solutions, and then try to turn the printer on again.

Troubleshooting a blank display, black display, no display, or no power situation

Customers usually report that the control-panel display is not showing anything. It is very important to collect as much information as possible from the customer about the issue to help resolve it.

Following are some printer behaviors the customer might encounter:

- The control panel is completely blank (no LEDs or back light).
- The control Panel is blank, but there might be LEDs illuminated.
- The control Panel is blank (LEDs are on or flashing) and the back light is on (but no text visible).

Following are some possible causes of a blank control-panel display:

- No power to the printer.
- The control panel contrast setting is not correctly adjusted.
- The formatter connector(s) are not fully seated into the connector(s) on the DC controller, or the connectors are not fully seated on the formatter.
- A faulty component is installed on the formatter (for example a memory DIMM, fax PCA, network PCA, USB device, or other component).
- The formatter is defective.
- The control panel connector is not fully seated, or the control panel is defective.
- The DC controller is defective.

Following are some questions to ask the customer:

- Was the printer newly install or has the printer been properly functioning?
  - For a new install, investigate to see if there was any shipping damage to the printer.
  - Did the customer notice any damage to the shipping box or any visible damage to the printer?
- What happened just prior to the control panel going blank?
  - Was the printer serviced recently, a power outage occurred?
  - Has a lightning storm recently occurred?
  - Did the customer recently add a memory DIMM or install a third-party component?
- Make sure to get a complete description of the failure.
  - Is the control-panel display completely blank (might be faint text and no back light)?
  - Is the control-panel display back light on?
  - Has a print job been sent to the printer? The customer might report that their print jobs seemed to print but when they go to the printer the control-panel display is blank.

Recommended actions

If the control-panel display is completely blank (no LEDs illuminated or no back light) check to see if the printer is getting power. Listen for fans or any printer initialization sounds when the power is turned on.

If there are no signs of power, then perform the following:

1. Make sure that the printer is plugged directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip or interruptible power supply) that delivers the correct voltage.

   TIP: Try using a different power cable if possible.

2. Turn the printer power on, and make sure that the fan(s) run briefly (this indicates that the power supply is operational).
3. Check if the yellow LED on formatter is flashing. If so, there is a communication issue between the formatter and the control panel.
4. Turn the printer power off.
5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness (and/or flat cable) is properly connected (and fully seated), and then turn the printer power on again.
6. Check control panel diagnostics by pressing the button on the back of the control panel to run different diagnostic tests.
7. Verify the status LEDs are illuminated, but the control-panel display is blank. If applicable: Check if the contrast setting is adjusted to very low. If so, try turning the contrast knob to see if the control-panel display becomes visible.
8. From a host computer, send a print job to the printer.

   NOTE: If the print job correctly prints, then the problem is most likely to a defective control panel.

9. Turn the printer power off, and then make sure that the memory DIMM is installed in the correct slot and is fully seated.

   NOTE: For some printers, there may be more than one memory DIMM installed. Some printers have third-party solutions/applications or fonts that use memory.

10. Remove all of the components/accessories installed on the formatter (for example, hard drive, solid-state drive, memory DIMM(s), fax PCA, network PCA, USB devices, or other devices).

    - Make sure that the formatter is fully seated.

      IMPORTANT: This is important because the formatter or a component on the formatter might be defective or shorted, which causes the printer to lose power.

11. Reinstall the formatter. Make sure that it makes a good connection and is fully seated.

    Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are correctly connected and fully seated.

12. Turn the printer power on, and then check the control-panel display.
13. If the printer control panel is properly working, replace each removed component (one at a time) to determine which one is causing the problem.

⚠ CAUTION: Turn the printer power off, and then on again, after replacing a component on the formatter.

14. If the control-panel display is still blank after performing the above troubleshooting steps, and the control panel diagnostics do not function, replace the control panel. If the control panel diagnostics are functioning, then replace the formatter.

Control panel checks

Control panel diagnostic flowcharts

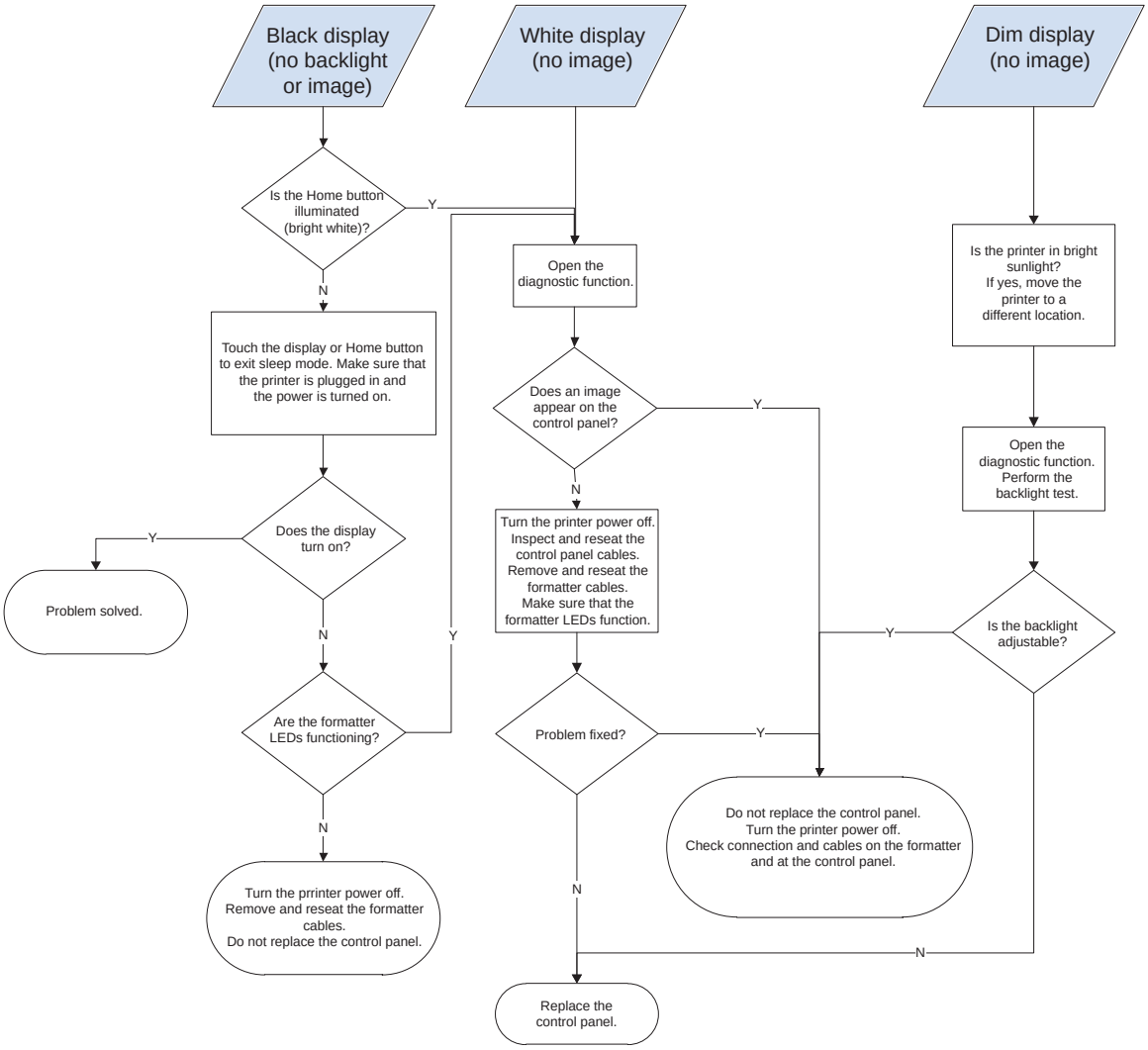
Use the flowcharts in this section to troubleshoot the following control panel problems.

- Touchscreen is blank, white, or dim (no image).
- Touchscreen is slow to respond or requires multiple presses to respond.
- Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.
- No control panel sound.
- Home button is unresponsive.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

Touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image)

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

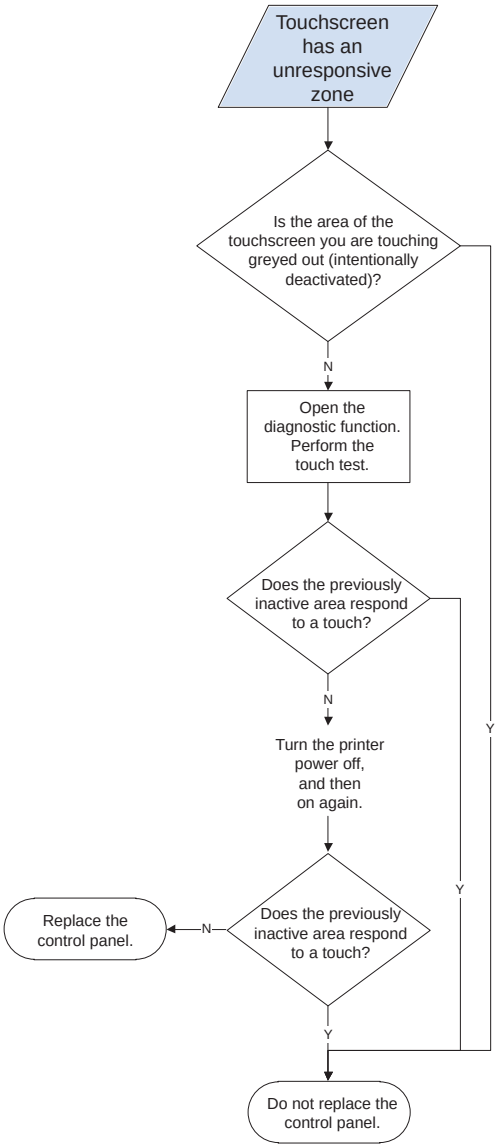
Figure 3-2 Touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image)



Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

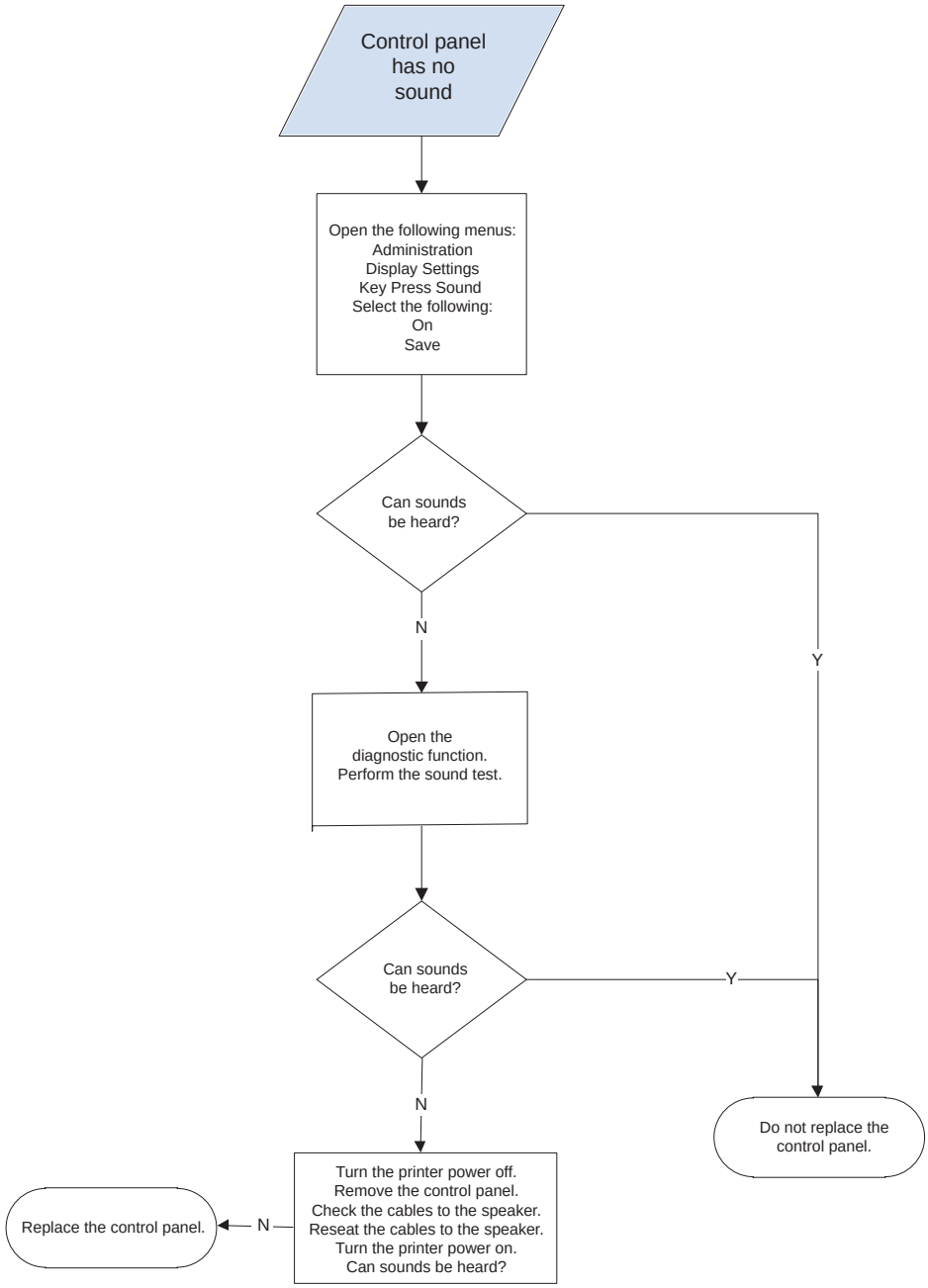
Figure 3-3 Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone



No control panel sound

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

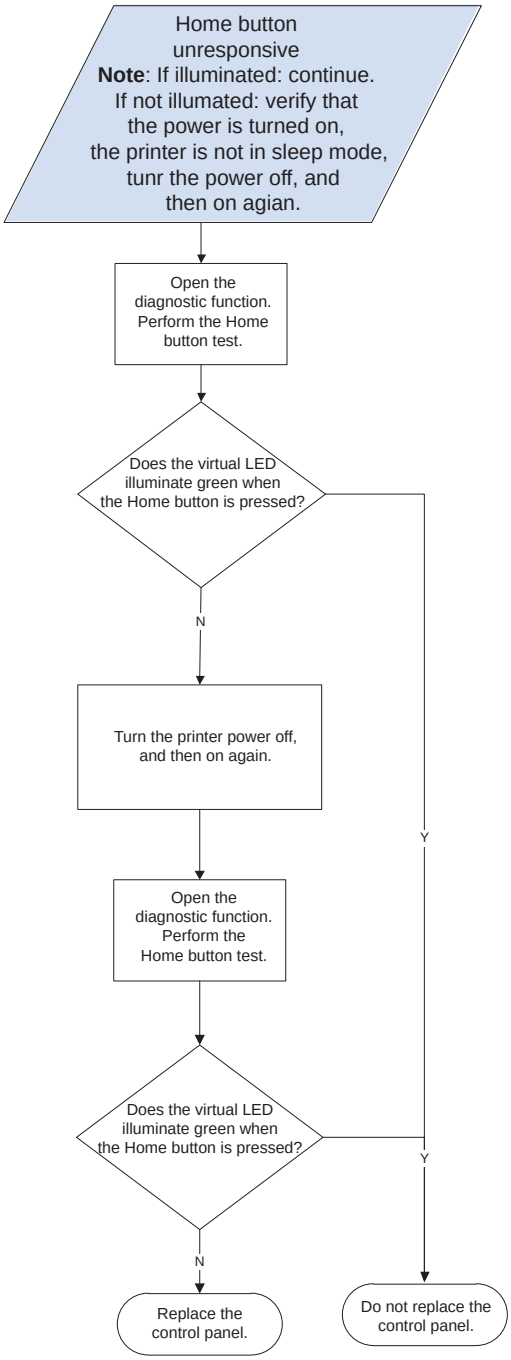
Figure 3-4 No control panel sound



Home button is unresponsive

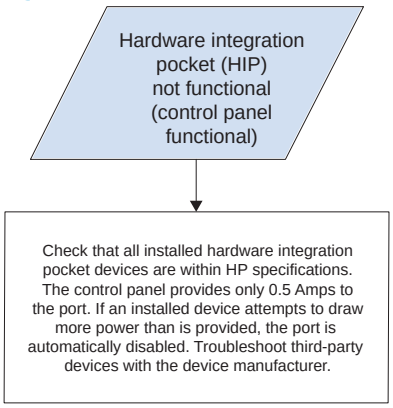
NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 3-5 Home button is unresponsive



Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)

Figure 3-6 Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)



Individual component diagnostics

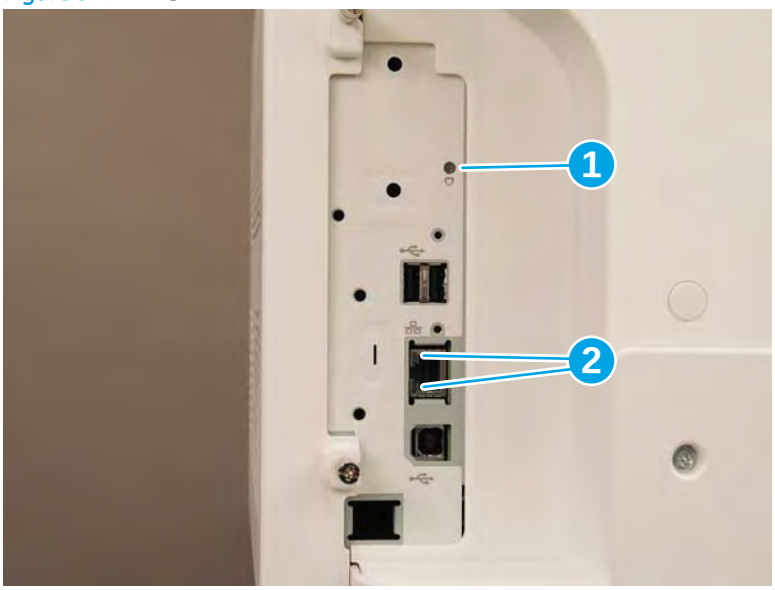
Tools for troubleshooting: LED diagnostics

LED, engine, and individual diagnostics can identify and troubleshoot printer problems.

Understand lights on the formatter

Three LEDs on the formatter indicate that the printer is functioning correctly.

Figure 3-7 LEDs



1	Heartbeat LED
2	HP Jetdirect LEDs

HP Jetdirect LEDs

The embedded HP Jetdirect print server has two LEDs. The yellow LED indicates network activity, and the green LED indicates the link status. A blinking yellow LED indicates network traffic. If the green LED is off, a link has failed.

For link failures, check all the network cable connections. In addition, try to manually configure the link settings on the embedded print server by using the printer control-panel menus.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select **Settings**.
2. Open the following menus:
   - **Networking**
   - **Ethernet**
   - **Link Speed**
3. Select the appropriate link speed, and then select **OK**.

Tools for troubleshooting: Engine diagnostics

The printer contains extensive internal engine diagnostics that help in troubleshooting print quality, paper path, noise, assembly, and timing issues.

Defeating interlocks

Different tests can be used to isolate different types of issues. For assembly or noise isolation, run the diagnostic test when the toner cartridge door or right door is open.

Defeating the door interlocks allows observation of the paper pick operation (and view the page enter registration).

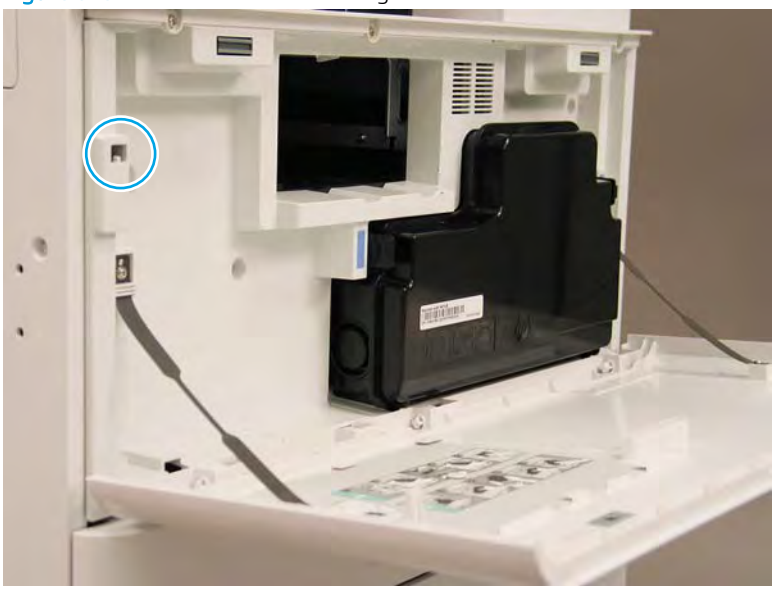
⚠ **WARNING!** Be careful when performing printer diagnostics to avoid risk of injury. Only trained service personnel should open and run the diagnostics with a door open. Never touch any of the power supplies when the printer is turned on.

Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock

1. Open the toner cartridge door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the cartridge door logic switches.

Figure 3-8 Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock



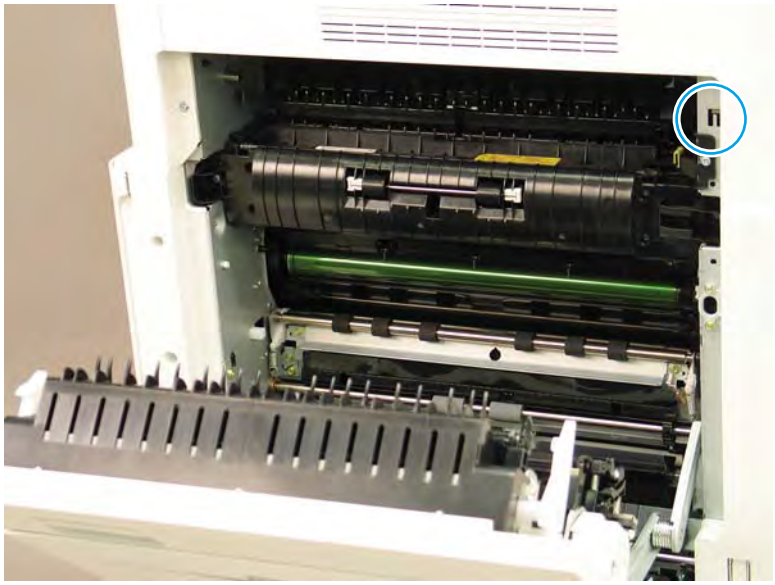
Defeat the front door interlock

1. Open the front door.

2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the front door logic switches.

Figure 3-9 Defeat the front door interlock



Tools for troubleshooting

Use the procedure below to test various printer mechanical and electromechanical assemblies.

Individual component diagnostics (special-mode test)

This test activates individual parts independently to isolate problems.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

NOTE: The cartridge door interlocks must be defeated to run the component tests.

Access the individual component diagnostics from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Select one of the following tests:
   - Continuous Scan
   - Run Fax Test
3. Select the component test options for the test.

Tools for troubleshooting

Problem-solving checklist

Follow these steps when trying to solve a problem with the printer.

- Step 1: Check that the printer power is on
- Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages
- Step 3: Test print functionality
- Step 4: Test copy functionality
- Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality
- Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality
- Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer
- Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality
- Factors that affect printer performance

Step 1: Check that the printer power is on

1. Make sure that the printer is plugged in and turned on. The power button should be lit with a white light. If it is not, press the power button. If the power button does not light up, check the following conditions.
   - Make sure that the power cable is connected to the printer and the outlet.
   - Check the power source by connecting the power cable to a different outlet.
2. If the printer motors do not rotate, make sure that the toner cartridges are installed and that the doors are all closed. The control panel displays messages to indicate these problems.

Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages

The control panel should indicate ready status. If an error message appears, resolve the error.

Print a supplies status page to ensure that the supplies are not at or over end of life.

NOTE: HP long-life consumable and maintenance kit life specifications are estimations. Actual individual life or yield during normal use will vary depending on usage, environment, media, and other factors. Estimated life is not an implied warranty.

Step 3: Test print functionality

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Reports menu, touch the Configuration/Status Pages menu, select the Configuration Page item, and then touch the Print button to print the report.
3. If the report does not print, make sure that paper is loaded in the tray, and check the control panel to see if paper is jammed inside the printer.

NOTE: Make sure that the paper in the tray meets specifications for this printer.

Step 4: Test copy functionality

1. Place the configuration page into the ADF and make a copy. If paper does not feed smoothly through the ADF, you might need to clean the ADF rollers and separation pad. Make sure that the paper meets specifications for this printer.
2. Place the configuration page onto the scanner glass and make a copy.
3. If the print quality on the copied pages is not acceptable, clean the scanner glass and the small glass strip.

Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Troubleshooting menu, and then open the Diagnostics Tools menu. Touch the Run Fax Test button to test the fax functionality.
3. Touch the Fax on the printer control panel, and then touch the Start Fax button.

Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Support Tools button.
2. Touch the Troubleshooting menu, and then open the Diagnostics Tests menu. Touch the Run Fax Test button to test the fax functionality.
3. Use another fax machine to send a fax to the printer.
4. Review and reset the printer fax settings.

Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer

1. Use a word-processing program to send a print job to the printer.
2. If the job does not print, make sure that you selected the correct printer driver.
3. Uninstall and then reinstall the printer software.

Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality

1. Load a .PDF document or .JPEG photo onto a USB flash drive, and insert it in the USB port near the control panel.
2. The USB Flash Drive menu opens. Try printing the document or photo.
3. If no documents are listed, try a different type of USB flash drive.

Factors that affect printer performance

Several factors affect the time it takes to print a job:

- The software program that you are using and its settings
- The use of special paper (such as heavy paper or custom-size paper)
- Printer processing and download time
- The complexity and size of graphics

- The speed of the computer you are using
- The USB or network connection
- Whether the printer is printing in color or in monochrome
- The type of USB drive, if you are using one
- Environmental factors, such as low temperature or high humidity

Print menu map

To more easily navigate individual settings, print a report of the complete Reports menu.

Print the menu map from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
3. Select the Settings Menu Map option.
4. Touch the Print button to print the report.

TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Print current settings pages

Printing the current settings page provides a map of the user configurable settings that might be helpful in the troubleshooting process.

Print the current settings page from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
3. Select the Current Settings Page option.
4. Touch the Print button to print the report.

TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Print event log

Printing the event log might be helpful in the troubleshooting process. For more information, see the Interpret control-panel messages and event log entries section in the printer troubleshooting manual.

Print the event log from the Reports menu from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Troubleshooting
   - Event Log
3. The event log displays on the screen. To print it, touch the Print button.

Print the event log from the Service menu from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Service menu.
3. Enter the following service access code for the printer:

- 04072517

4. Touch the Event Log item.

Clear the event log from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Service menu.
3. On the sign-in screen, select the Service Access Code option from the drop-down list.
4. Enter the following service access code for the printer:
   - 04072517
5. Select the trash icon to clear the event log.

Pre-boot menu options

The Pre-boot menus are available prior to the printer initializing.

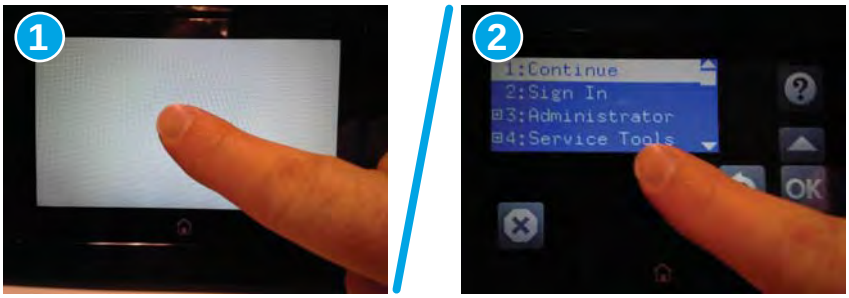
CAUTION: The Format Disk option (printers with a hard-disk drive only) performs a disk initialization for the entire disk. The operating system, firmware files, and third party files (among other files) will be completely lost. HP does not recommend this action.

TIP: The Pre-boot menu can be remotely accessed by using a telnet network protocol to establish an administration connection to the printer. See Remote Admin on page 655.

Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

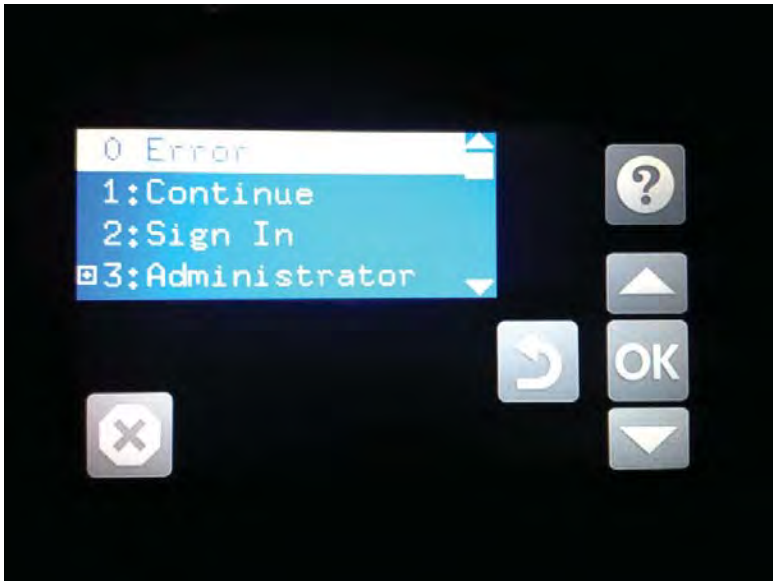
1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 3-10 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. On the Pre-boot menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.

Figure 3-11 Pre-boot menu



	Use this button to see more information about a selected item.
	Use this button to scroll up through menu items.
	Use this button to select a highlighted menu item.
	Use this button to scroll down through menu items.
	Use this button to go back to the previous menu.
	Not used.
	Use this button to exit a diagnostic test.

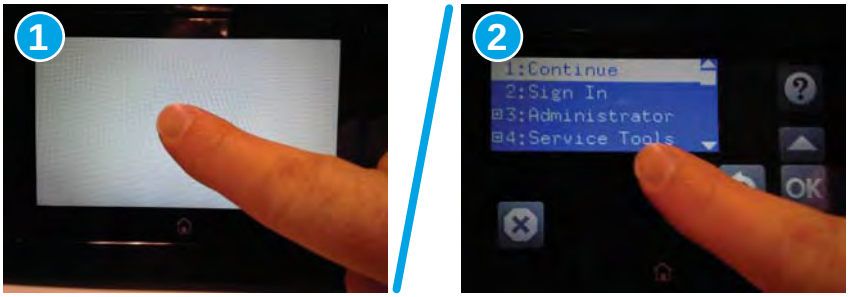
3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to navigate the Pre-boot menu.
4. Touch the OK button to select a menu item.

Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 3-12 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. Use the ▼ button to highlight the +3:Administrator item, and then touch the OK button.
3. Use the ▼ button to highlight the +8:Startup Options item, and then touch the OK button.
4. Use the ▼ button to highlight the 2 Cold Reset item, and then touch the OK button to select it.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then touch the OK button.

NOTE: The printer will initialize.

NOTE: Some of the pre-boot options in the following tables are not supported by the current version of the printer firmware and are included for information only. Future versions of firmware will support these options.

Table 3-2 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Continue				Selecting the Continue item exits the Pre-boot menu and continues the normal boot process. If a selection is not made in the initial menu within 30 seconds, the printer returns to a normal boot (the same as selecting Continue). If the user navigates to another menu, the timeout does not apply.
Sign In				Enter the administrator PIN or service PIN if one is required to open the Pre-boot menu.
Administrator				This item navigates to the Administrator submenus. If authentication is required (and the user is not already signed in) the Sign In prompt displays. The user is required to sign in.

Table 3-2 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
	Download	Network USB USB Thumbdrive		This item initiates a Pre-boot firmware download process. A USB Thumbdrive option will work on all FutureSmart printers. USB or Network connections are not currently supported.
	Format Disk			This item reinitializes the disk and cleans all disk partitions. **CAUTION:** Selecting the Format Disk item removes **all** data. A delete confirmation prompt is **not** provided. The system is **not** bootable after this action and a **99.09.67** error displays on the control panel. A firmware download must be performed to return the system to a bootable state.
	Partial Clean			This item reinitializes the disk (removing all data except the firmware repository where the master firmware bundle is downloaded and saved). **CAUTION:** Selecting the Partial Clean item removes **all** data except the firmware repository. A delete confirmation prompt is **not** provided. **CAUTION:** This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost). This allows a user to reformat the disk by removing the firmware image from the active directory without having to download new firmware code (printer remains bootable).
	Change Password			Select this item to set or change the administrator password.
	Clear Password			Select the Clear Password item to remove a password from the Administrator menu. Before the password is actually cleared, a message will be shown asking to confirm that the password should be cleared. Press the OK button to confirm the action. When the confirmation prompt displays, press the OK button to clear the password.

Table 3-3 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Manage Disk	Clear disk		Select the Clear disk item to enable using an external device for job storage. Job storage is normally enabled only for the Boot device. This will be grayed out unless the **99.09.68** error is displayed.

Table 3-3 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Lock Disk		Select the Lock Disk item to lock (mate) a new secure disk to this printer. The secure disk already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer. Use this function to have more than one encrypted disk accessible by the printer when using them interchangeably. The data stored on the secure disk locked to this printer always remains accessible to this printer.
		Leave Unlocked		Select the Leave Unlocked item to use a new secure disk in an unlocked mode for a single service event. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer and uses the old disk's encryption password with the new disk. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer remains accessible to this printer.
		Clear Disk Pwd		Select the Clear Disk Pwd item to continue using the non-secure disk and clear the password associated with the yet-to-be installed secure disk. CAUTION: Data on the missing secure disk will be permanently inaccessible.
		Retain Password		Select the Retain Password item to use the non-secure disk for this session only, and then search for the missing secure disk in future sessions.
		Boot Device	Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command is a one-pass overwrite, which erases the entire disk including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all data on the disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. It erases the encryption key. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 3-4 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Manage Disk (continued)	Internal Device		Select the Internal Device item to erase the internal device or get a status about the internal device.

Table 3-4 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow the user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The HP High Performance Secure Hard Disk is erased.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.
		External Device		Select the External Device item to erase the external device or get status about the external device.
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 3-5 Pre-boot menu options (4 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [DHCP]		The network can be configured to obtain the network settings from a DHCP server or as static. Use this item for automatic IP address acquisition from the DHCP server.
		IP Mode [STATIC]		Use this item to manually assign the network addresses.
			IP Address	Use this item to manually enter the IP addresses.
			Subnet Mask	Use this item to manually enter the subnet mask.
			Default Gateway	Use this item to manually enter the default gateway.
			Save	Select the Save item to save the manual settings.

Table 3-6 Pre-boot menu options (5 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Startup Options			Select the Startup Options item to specify options that can be set for the next time the printer is turned on and initializes to the **Ready** state.
		Show Revision		**Not currently functional**: Select the Show Revision item to allow the printer to initialize and show the firmware version when the printer reaches the **Ready** state. Once the printer power is turned on the next time, the Show Revision item is unchecked so that the firmware revision is not shown.
		Cold Reset		Select the Cold Reset item to clear the IP address and all customer settings. (This item also returns all settings to factory defaults.) **NOTE:** Items in the Service menu are not reset.
		Skip Disk Load		Select the Skip Disk Load item to disable installed third-party applications.
		Skip Cal		Select the Skip Cal item to skip the printer calibration for the very next power-initialization cycle only.
		Lock Service		**CAUTION:** Select the Lock Service item to lock the Service menu access (both in the Pre-boot menu and the Device Maintenance menu). Service personnel must have the administrator remove the Lock Service setting before they can open the Service menu.
		Skip FSCK		Select the Skip FSCK item to disable Chkdisk/ScanVolume during startup.
Administrator (continued)	Startup Options (continued)	First Power		**Not currently functional**: This item allows the printer to initialize as if it is the first time it has been turned on. For example, the user is prompted to configure first-time settings like date/time, language, and other settings. Select this item so that it is enabled for the next time the printer power is turned on. When the printer power is turned on the next time, this item is unchecked so that the pre-configured settings are used during configuration, and the first-time setting prompt is not used.
		Embedded Jetdirect Off		Select the Embedded Jetdirect Off item to disable the embedded HP Jetdirect. By default this item is unchecked so that HP Jetdirect is always enabled.
		WiFi Accessory		Select the WiFi Accessory item to enable the wireless accessory.

Table 3-7 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Diagnostics			Diagnostic items are useful to diagnose hardware components and their interface connections. Use these items to troubleshoot specific hardware components, and the interface between them and other components.
		Memory	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Memory diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief memory test. **NOTE:** This test requires about four minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended memory test. **NOTE:** This test requires about twenty minutes to execute.
		Disk	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Disk diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief firmware self-test. **NOTE:** This test requires about two or three minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended firmware self-test. **NOTE:** This test requires about sixty minutes to execute.
			Optimized	Use the Optimized item to select a test that checks the active sectors on the disk. **NOTE:** This test requires about thirty minutes to execute.
			Raw	Use the Raw item to select a test that checks every sector on the disk. **NOTE:** This test requires about fifty minutes to execute.
			Smart	Use the Smart item to select a very brief test that checks the drive self-monitoring analysis and reporting technology (SMART) status—the drive detects and reports reliability indicators to help anticipate disk failures (SMART status).
		CPB		Use the CPB item to verify the integrity of the copy processor board (CPB) and the formatter PCA connections.

Table 3-7 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Interconnect		Use the Interconnect item to verify the integrity of the interconnect PCA (ICB) and its connections.
		Run Selected		Select the Run Selected item to execute a selected test. NOTE: If more than one test is selected, they are executed in sequence.

Table 3-8 Pre-boot menu options (7 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Remote Admin	Start Telnet		The Remote Admin item allows a service technician to access to the printer Pre-boot menu remotely, and to navigate the menu selections from a remote location. IMPORTANT: A Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. This person will also need to provide a randomly generated PIN to the remote service technician. NOTE: For more information about using the Remote Admin function, see Remote Admin on page 655.
		Stop Telnet		
		Refresh IP		
	System Triage	Copy Logs		If the device will not boot to the **Ready** state, or the diagnostic log feature found in the Troubleshooting menu is not accessible, then use the System Triage item to copy the diagnostic logs to a USB flash drive at the next printer start up. The files can then be sent to HP to help diagnose the problem.
	Change Svc PWD			Use this item to change the Service menu personal identification number (PIN).
	Reset Svc PWD			If the Service menu personal identification number (PIN) has been changed. Use this item to reset it to the original PIN.
Service Tools	Reset Password			Use this item to reset the Pre-boot administrator password.
	Subsystems			For manufacturing use only. Do not change these values.
Developer Tools	Netexec			

Remote Admin

The Remote Admin feature allows remote access the printer Pre-boot menu (BIOS environment). The printer functions as a telnet server which uses the telnet networking protocol to transmit text data. Any computer (with telnet installed and enabled) can function as the telnet client to remotely display and interact with the Pre-boot menu.

IMPORTANT: While the Remote Admin function allows remote access the Pre-boot menu, for security reasons the Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.

This section describes the following Remote Admin items.

- Required software and network connection
- Connect a remote connection
- Disconnect a remote connection

Required software and network connection

Before using the Remote Admin feature, make sure that the telnet network protocol is installed, and enabled, on the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: This section describes enabling and configuring the telnet feature for computers using a Windows® operating system.

HP recommends that the telnet client computer be a Windows based system, however, there are other operating systems that support the telnet network protocol. For information about enabling and configuring the telnet network protocol for other operating systems, see the owner's manual for that operating system.

Telnet client

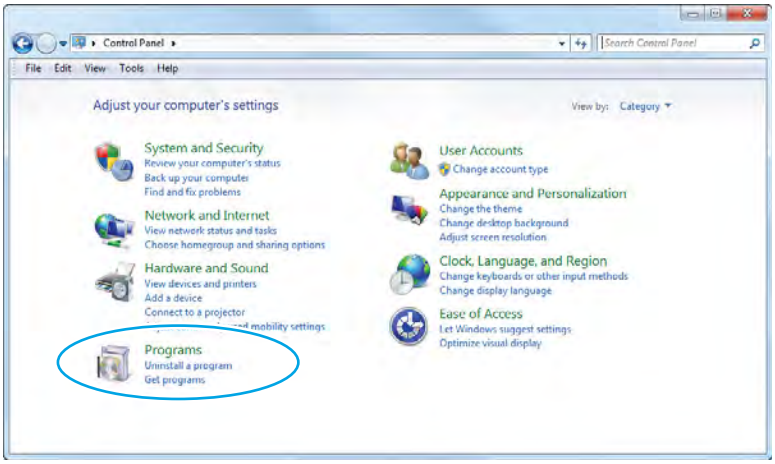
Enable the Windows telnet client

All computers using the Windows operating system have the telnet client installed, however, the telnet client function might not be enabled by default.

NOTE: The figures and menus in this section are for the Windows 7 Enterprise® operating system. Screens and menu selections might vary slightly for other operating systems.

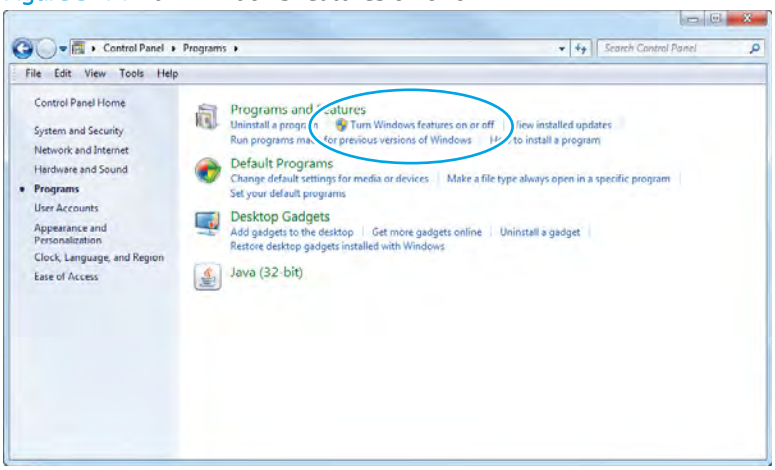
1. Use the **Start** menu to open the **Control Panel**, and then click the **Programs** item to select it.

Figure 3-13 Open the Control Panel



2. Click the **Turn Windows features on or off** item to select it.

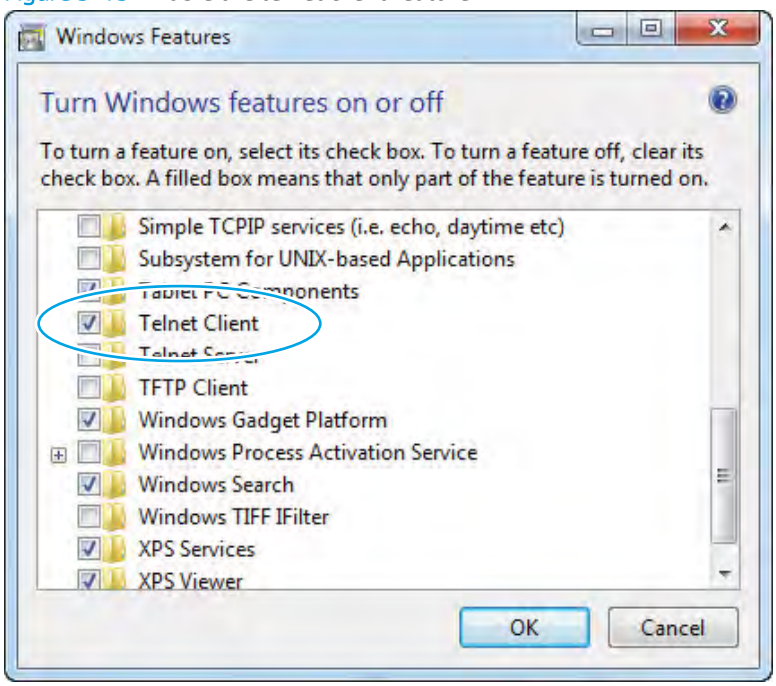
Figure 3-14 Turn Windows features on or off



3. In the **Windows Features** box, scroll down to **Telnet Client**. If the check box is not checked, click the box to select it, and then click the **OK** button.

TIP: If the check box is already checked then the telnet client function is already enabled. Click the **Cancel** button.

Figure 3-15 Enable the telnet client feature



Network connection

The remote telnet client computer must have direct network access to the printer for the Remote Admin function to operate. This means that the telnet client computer must be on the same network as the printer. The Remote Admin function cannot be accessed through a network firewall or other remote access network security programs.

If a private network is not accessible, ask the network administrator to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to the network.

Connect a remote connection

Start the telnet server function at the printer

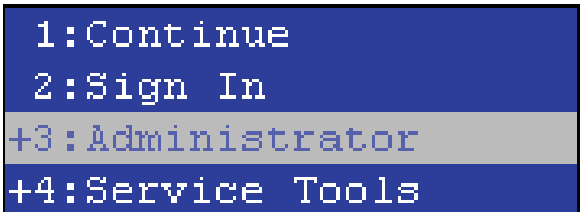
For security reasons the Remote Admin feature must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. The following steps must be performed by a person that is physically present at the printer.

NOTE: This person might need to sign in with an administrator or service password depending on how the printer is configured.

1. Turn the printer on.
2. The HP logo displays on the printer control panel. When a "1/8" with an underscore displays, touch the middle of the screen to open the Pre-boot menu.

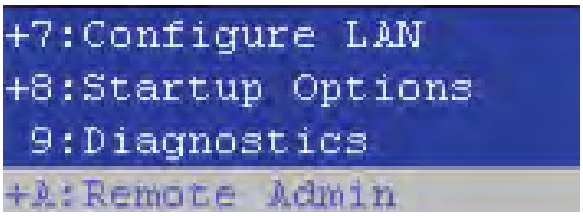
3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+3:Administrator** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-16 Select the +3:Administrator item



4. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-17 Select the +A:Remote Admin item



5. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **1:Start Telnet** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-18 Select the 1:Start Telnet item



6. Do one of the following

- If a connecting message displays briefly, go to step 7.

  Figure 3-19 Telnet connecting message

- If an error message displays, use the steps below to identify the problem.

Figure 3-20 Telnet error message



a. The printer network cable is not correctly connected.

b. The BIOS LAN settings are incorrect.

   - The printer should be configured to use a static IP address, but is configured to use DHCP instead.
   - The printer is configured to use a static IP address, but the IP address is incorrect.

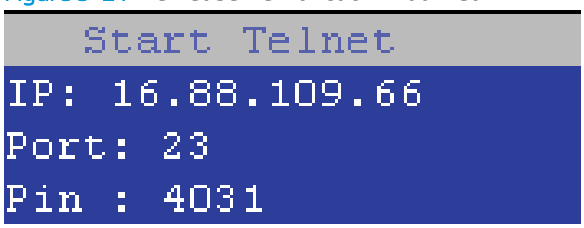
c. The printer is correctly configured to use DHCP, but the DHCP server is not turned on or is malfunctioning.

7. When the printer telnet server function is initialized, the following screen appears. Use the information on this screen to connect the remote telnet client computer to the printer.

NOTE: The printer is now ready to receive remote telnet client commands.

- **IP**: The static or dynamically allocated IP address for the printer.
- **Port**: The standard telnet port (23).
- **Pin**: A randomly generated 4-digit personal identification number (PIN).

Figure 3-21 Telnet server function initialized

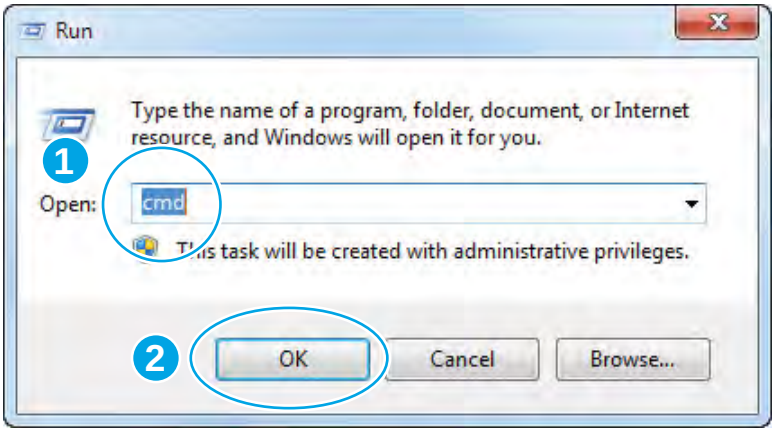


Start the telnet client function at the remote computer

The following steps establish a Remote Admin connection from a remote computer to the printer.

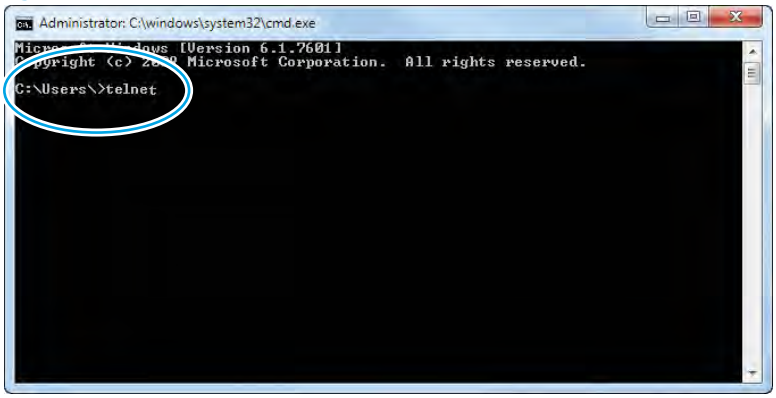
1. From the **Start** menu click **Run** to open a dialog box, type `cmd` in the **Open** field, and then click the **OK** button to open a Windows command window.

Figure 3-22 Open a command window



2. From any displayed directory, type `telnet` at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 3-23 Start a telnet session

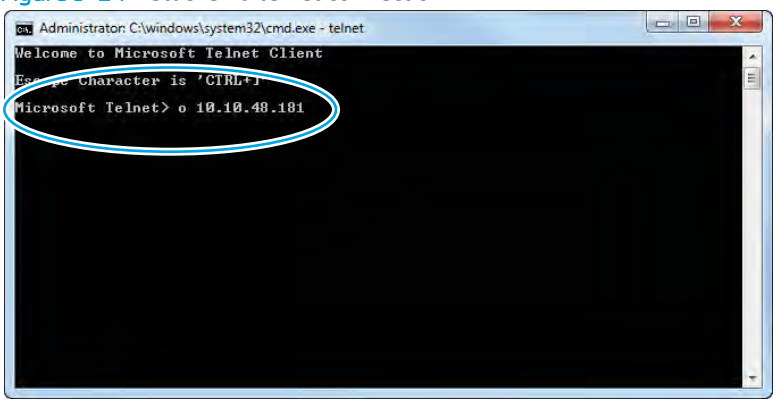


3. Type `o <IP ADDRESS>` at the telnet prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

NOTE: For `<IP ADDRESS>`, substitute the IP address that was displayed in step 7 in Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 657.

TIP: If the telnet connection fails to establish a connection, the printer is probably behind a firewall or on a different network that the remote telnet client computer. See Network connection on page 657.

Figure 3-24 Establish a telnet connection



4. Type the PIN that was displayed in step 7 in Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 657 at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

IMPORTANT: Make sure to type the PIN correctly. After five incorrect PIN entries, the printer terminates the Remote Admin connection. The Remote Admin feature must be re-initiated at the printer. See Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 657.

Figure 3-25 Enter the PIN

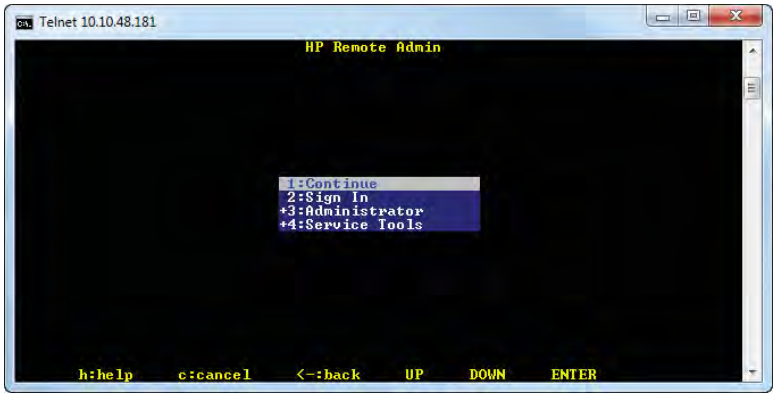


5. The following screen displays when the correct PIN is entered and the Remote Admin connection is successful. For information about the Pre-boot menu and options, see Pre-boot menu options on page 646.

NOTE: Because a Remote Admin connection is an unsecure telnet network protocol connection, the following Pre-boot menu items are disabled for the remote telnet client computer.

- The **+3:Administrator** menu **4:Change Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **5:Clear Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **6:Disk Manage** item.

Figure 3-26 Remote Admin window



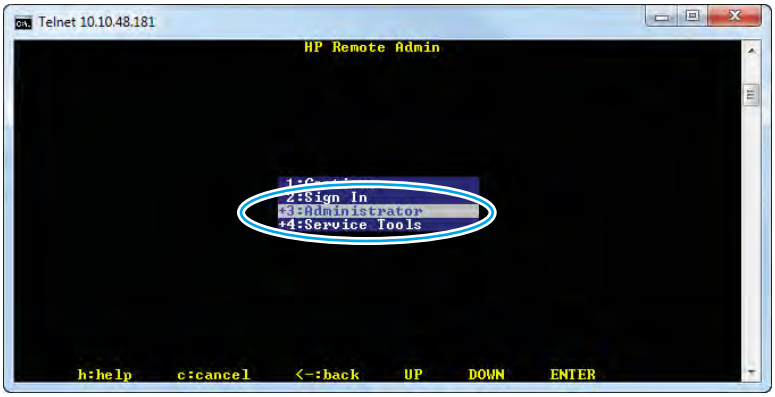
Disconnect a remote connection

The Remote Admin connection can be terminated from the printer control panel or the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: The following procedure describes terminating a Remote Admin connection from the remote telnet client computer.

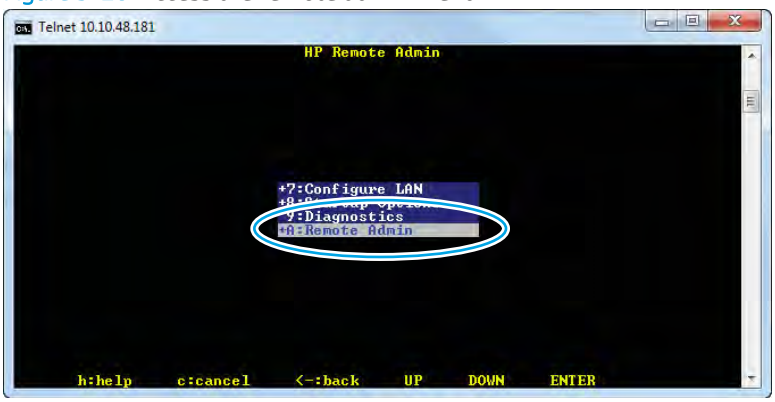
1. From the Pre-boot main menu, use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+3:Administrator** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 3-27 Access the administrator menu



2. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 3-28 Access the remote admin menu

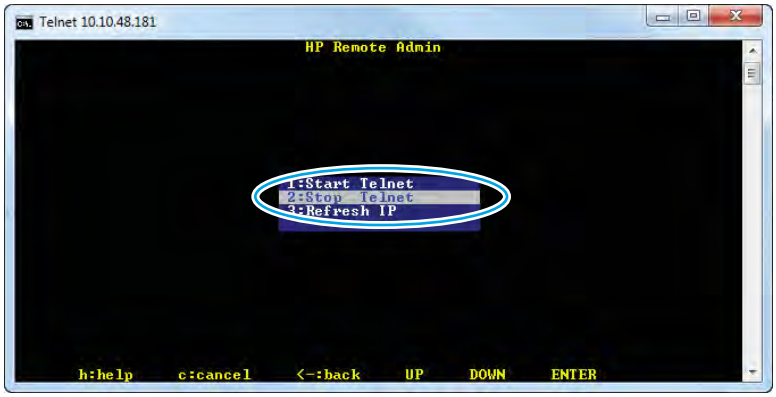


3. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **2:Stop Telnet** item, and then press the **Enter** key. The Remote Admin connection between the printer and the remote telnet client computer terminates.

IMPORTANT: The printer remains in the Pre-boot menu. Have the person that is physically present at the printer do the following:

- Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the OK button. The printer will continue to initialize.

Figure 3-29 Terminate the telnet connection



Control panel menus

You can perform basic printer setup by using the Settings menu. Use the HP Embedded Web Server for more advanced printer setup. To open the HP Embedded Web Server, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address bar of a web browser.

- Reports menu
- Settings menu
- Copy menu (MFP only)
- Scan menu (MFP only)
- Fax menu (fax models only)
- Print menu
- Supplies menu
- Trays menu
- Troubleshooting menu
- Maintenance menu

Reports menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select Reports.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-9 Reports menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	Settings Menu Map	Print View	Shows a map of the entire control panel system and the selected values for each setting.
	Current Settings Page	Print View	Shows a summary of the current settings for the printer. This might be helpful if you plan to make changes and need a record of the present configuration.

Table 3-9 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
	Configuration Page	Print View	Shows the printer settings and installed accessories.
	How to Connect Page	Print View	Shows the network information typically needed to connect the printer to a network.
	Supplies Status Page	Print View	Shows the approximate remaining life for the supplies; reports statistics on total number of pages and jobs processed, serial number, page counts, and maintenance information. HP provides approximations of the remaining life for the supplies as a customer convenience. The actual remaining supply levels might be different from the approximations provided.
	Usage Page	Print View	Shows a count of all paper sizes that have passed through the printer; lists whether they were simplex, duplex, monochrome, or color; and reports the page count.
	File Directory	Print View	Shows the file name and folder name for files that are stored in the printer memory.
	Web Services Status Page	Print View	Shows the detected Web Services for the printer.
	Color Usage Job Log	Print View	Shows color jobs completed by the printer.
Fax Reports (MFP fax models only)	Fax Activity Log	Print View	Contains a list of the faxes that have been sent from or received by this printer.
	Billing Codes Report	Print View	Provides a list of billing codes that have been used for outgoing faxes. This report shows how many sent faxes were billed to each code.
	Blocked Fax List	Print View	A list of phone numbers that are blocked from sending faxes to this printer.
	Speed Dial List	Print View	Shows the speed dials that have been set up for this printer.
	Fax Call Report	Print View	A detailed report of the last fax operation, either sent or received.
Other Pages	Demonstration Page	Print	Prints a demonstration page.

Table 3-9 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
	RGB samples	Print	Prints color samples for different RGB values. Use the samples as a guide for matching printed colors.
	CMYK samples	Print	Prints color samples for different CMYK values. Use the samples as a guide for matching printed colors.
	PCL Font List	Print	Prints the available PCL fonts.
	PS Font List	Print	Prints the available PS fonts.

Settings menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Settings menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-10 Settings menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
General	Date/Time Settings	Date/Time Format	Date Format		DD/MMM/YYYY MMM/DD/YYYY YYYY/MMM/DD	Use the Date/Time Settings menu to specify the date and time and to configure date/time settings.
			Time Format		12 hour (AM/PM) 24 hours	Select the format that the printer uses to show the date and time, for example 12-hour format or 24-hour format.
		Date/Time	Date		Select the time zone from a list.	Select the time zone, date, and time that the printer uses.
			Time		Select the date from a pop-up calendar.	
			Time Zone		Select the time from a pop-up keypad.	
	Energy Settings	Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.		+ (Add) Edit Delete	Use to configure the printer to automatically wake up or go to sleep at specific times on specific days. Using this feature saves energy. **NOTE:** You must configure the date and time settings before you can use this feature.
			New event	Event Type		Select whether to add or edit a Wake event or a Sleep event, and then select the time and the days for the wake or sleep event.
				Time		Set the wake or sleep event time parameters.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Event Days	Select days of the week from a list.	Set the wake or sleep event day parameters.
		Sleep Settings	Auto Off After Sleep Sleep After Inactivity HP Auto Off/Auto On Shut Down		Range: 1 to 110 minutes Default = 0 minutes	Set the number of minutes after which the printer enters Sleep or Auto Off mode. Touch the existing number to open the virtual keypad, and then increase or decrease the number of minutes.
			Wake/Auto On to These Events		All Events* Network port Power button only	
	Display Settings	Display Brightness	Automatic* Manual		The Manual setting uses a slider to manually control the display brightness.	Use to specify the intensity of the LCD control panel display.
		System Sound			On* Off	Use to specify whether you hear a sound when you touch the screen or press buttons on the control panel.
		Language Settings	Language		Select from a list of languages that the printer supports.	Use to select a different language for control panel messages and specify the default keyboard layout. When you select a new language, the keyboard layout automatically changes to match the factory default for the selected language.
			Keyboard Layout M681z/M682z only		Each language has a default keyboard layout. To change it, select from a list of layouts.	Select the default keyboard layout that matches the language you want to use.
		Information Screen			Show connection information* Hide connection information	Use this menu item to display or hide connection information on the Home screen.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		DisplayDate and Time M681/M682 only			Show Date and Time* Hide Date and Time	Select whether to display or hide the date and time on the control panel Home screen.
		Inactivity Timeout			Range: 10-300 seconds Default = 60 seconds	Specifies the amount of time that elapses between any activity on the control panel and when the printer resets to the default settings. When the timeout expires, the control panel display returns to the Home menu, and any user signed in to the printer is signed out.
		Clearable Warnings			On Job*	Use this feature to set the period that a clearable warning displays on the control panel. If the On setting is selected, clearable warnings appear until the Clearable Warnings button is pressed. If the Job setting is selected, clearable warnings stay on the display during the job that generated the warning and disappear from the display when the next job starts.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Continuable Events			Auto-continue (10 seconds)* Touch OK to continue	Use this option to configure the printer behavior when the printer encounters certain errors. If the Auto-continue (10 seconds) option is selected, the job will continue after 10 seconds. If the Touch OK to continue option is selected, the job will stop and require the user to touch the OK button before continuing.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Jam Recovery				Auto* Off On	This printer provides a jam recovery feature that reprints jammed pages. Select one of the following options: Auto: The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting. Off: The printer does not attempt to reprint jammed pages. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance is optimal. NOTE: When using this option, if the printer runs out of paper and the job is being printed on both sides, some pages can be lost. On: The printer always reprints jammed pages. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed. This might cause a decrease in overall performance.
	Auto Recovery				Enabled Disabled*	The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Hold Off Print Job				Enabled* Disabled	Enable this feature if you want to prevent print jobs from starting while a user is initiating a copy job from the control panel. Held print jobs start printing after the copy job is finished, provided that no other copy job is in the print queue.
	Restore Factory Settings				Restore Cancel	Use to restore all printer settings to their factory defaults.
Copy/Print	Copy Settings	Image Preview				Display a preview of the image before printing it.
	Enable Device USB				Enabled Disabled*	Enables the printer to open a file from a USB drive.
	Manage Stored Jobs	Job Sort Order			Job Name* Date	This option allows you list the jobs either alphabetically or chronologically.
		Retain Temporary Jobs After Reboot			Do not retain Personal jobs only All temporary jobs	Sets which temporary jobs will be retained in the event of a printer reboot.
		Temporary Job Storage Limit			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Job Storage Limit feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Temporary Stored Job Retention			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
		Standard Stored Job Retention			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of standard jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
	Default Print Options	Number of Copies		Range: 1-32000 Default = 1	Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy function or the Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen.	
		Paper Selection		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Configures the default paper size used for print jobs.	
		Default Custom Paper Size	X Dimension	Range: 3-8.5 inches Default = 8.5 inches	Configures the default paper size that is used when the user selects **Custom** as the paper size for a print job.	
			Y Dimension	Range: 5-14 inches Default = 14 inches		
			Use Inches	Enabled* Disabled		

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Output Sides		1-sided*	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides, and whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides. For example, select the 1-sided original, 2-sided output option when the original is printed on one side, but you want to make two-sided copies.	
				2-sided		
		Staple			None	Sets the position of the staple on the page.
					Top left	
					Top right	
					Top left or right	
		Output Bin			Automatically select	
					Standard bin	
					Upper bin	
					Middle bin	
		Resolution			FastRes1200	Sets the resolution for sent documents. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might automatically change to a valid value.
					1200x1200dpi	

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	PCL and PostScript Settings	Courier Font			Regular* Dark	Select which version of the Courier font you want to use. The factory default setting is Regular, which uses an average stroke width. The Dark setting can be used if a heavier Courier font is needed.
		Wide A4			Enabled Disabled*	Changes the printable area of A4-size paper. If you enable this option, eighty 10-pitch characters can be printed on a single line of A4 paper.
		Print PS Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Use this feature to select whether a PostScript (PS) error page is printed when the printer encounters a PS error.
		Print PDF Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Selects whether a PDF error page is printed when the printer encounters a PDF error.
		Personality			Auto* PCL PS PDF	Configures the default print language or personality for the printer. Normally you should not change the printer language. If you change the setting to a specific printer language, the printer does not automatically switch from one language to another unless specific software commands are sent to it.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		PCL	Font Settings	Font Source	Internal Disk resident	Selects the font source for the user-soft default font. The list of available options varies depending on the installed printer options.
				Font Number	Range: 0-110 Default = 0	Specifies the font number for the user-soft default font using the source that is specified in the Font Source menu. The printer assigns a number to each font and lists it on the PCL font list. The font number displays in the Font # column of the printout.
				Font Pitch	Range: 0.44-99.99 Default = 10	If the Font Source option and the Font Number setting indicate a contour font, then use this feature to select a default pitch (for a fixed-spaced font).
			PCL Settings	Form Length	Range: 5-128 Default = 60	Controls the PCL print-command options. PCL is a set of printer commands that HP developed to provide access to printer features. Use the Form Length feature to select the user-soft default vertical form length.
				Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	Select the orientation that is most often used for copy or scan originals. Select the Portrait option if the short edge is at the top or select the Landscape option if the long edge is at the top.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Symbol Set	Select from a list of symbol sets.	Select any one of several available symbol sets from the control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. The factory default value for this option is PC-8. Either PC-8 or PC-850 are recommended for line-draw characters.
				Append CR to LF	No* Yes	Configure whether a carriage return (CR) is appended to each line feed (LF) encountered in backwards-compatible PCL jobs (pure text, no job control). Select Yes to append the carriage return. The default setting is No. Some environments, such as UNIX, indicate a new line by using only the line-feed control code. This option allows the user to append the required carriage return to each line feed.
				Suppress Blank Pages	No* Yes	This option is for users who are generating their own PCL, which could include extra form feeds that would cause blank pages to be printed. When the Yes option is selected, form feeds are ignored if the page is blank.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Media Source Mapping	Standard* Classic	Use to select and maintain input trays by number when you are not using the printer driver, or when the software program has no option for tray selection. The following options are available: Standard: Tray numbering is based on newer HP LaserJet models. Classic: Tray numbering is based on HP LaserJet 4 and older models.
	Print Quality	Adjust Color	Tonal Range	Highlights Midtones Shadows		
			Cyan Magenta Yellow Black			
		Image Registration	Tray	Tray 1 Tray 2 Tray 3 Tray 4 Tray 5 Depends upon number of trays installed		Specify tray to be adjusted

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Front-side Horizontal Shift Front-side Vertical Shift Back-side Horizizontal Shift Back-side Vertical Shift		-5.00 mm to 5.00 mm	Shift the margin alignment to center the image on the page from top to bottom and from left to right. You can also align the image on the front with the image printed on the back. The direction that is perpendicular to the way the paper passes through the printer is referred to as X. This is also known as the scan direction. X1 is the scan direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. X2 is the scan direction for the first side of a two-sided page. The direction that the paper feeds through the printer is referred to as Y. Y1 is the feed direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. Y2 is the feed direction for the first side of a two-sided page. Use the Adjust Tray <X> menu to adjust the registration settings for each tray. Before adjusting these values, print a registration test page. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary. You can adjust values for X1 Shift, X2 Shift, Y1 Shift, and Y2 Shift.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Print Test Page		Use the Print Test Page option to print a page to test the image registration. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary.
		Auto Sense Behavior	Tray 1		Sense every page	
					Sense first page	
					Sense transparency ony	
			All Other Trays		Sense first page	
					Sense transparency only	
		Adjust paper types			Select from a list of paper types	
					Reset Paper Types	
		Optimize			Normal Paper	
					Heavy paper	
					Envelope control	
					Tray 1	
					Background	
					Background 1	
					Uniformity Control	
					Tracking Control	
					Registration	
					Transfer Control	
					Moisture Control	
					Reset Optimize	
		Edge Control			Off	
					Light	
					Normal	
					Maximum	

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Manage Trays	Use Requested Tray			Exclusively* First	Controls how the printer handles jobs that have specified a specific input tray. Two options are available: Exclusively: The printer never selects a different tray when the user has indicated that a specific tray should be used, even if that tray is empty. First: The printer pulls from another tray if the specified tray is empty, even though the user specifically indicated a tray for the job.
		Manually Feed Prompt			Always* Unless loaded	Indicate whether a prompt should appear when the type or size for a job does not match the specified tray and the printer pulls from the multipurpose tray instead. Two options are available: Always: A prompt always displays before using the multipurpose tray. Unless loaded: A message displays only if the multipurpose tray is empty.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Size/Type Prompt			Display* Do not display	Controls whether the tray configuration message displays whenever a tray is closed. Two options are available: Display: Shows the tray configuration message when a tray is closed. The user is able to configure the tray settings directly from this message. Do not display: Prevents the tray configuration message from automatically appearing.
		Use Another Tray			Enabled* Disabled	Use to turn on or off the control panel prompt to select another tray when the specified tray is empty. Two options are available: Enabled: When this option is selected, the user is prompted either to add paper to the selected tray or to choose a different tray. Disabled: When this option is selected, the user is not given the option of selecting a different tray. The printer prompts the user to add paper to the tray that was initially selected.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Alternative Letterhead Mode			Disabled* Enabled	Use to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all print jobs, whether you are printing to one side of the sheet or to both sides of the sheet. When this option is selected, load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. See the user documentation that came with the printer for instructions about loading letterhead for printing on both sides. When this option is selected, the printer speed slows to the speed required for printing on both sides.
		Duplex Blank Pages			Auto* Yes	Controls how the printer handles two-sided jobs (duplexing). Two options are available: Auto: Enables Smart Duplexing, which instructs the printer not to process blank pages. Yes: Disables Smart Duplexing and forces the duplexer to flip the sheet of paper even if it is printed on only one side. This might be preferable for certain jobs that use paper types such as letterhead or prepunched paper.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Override A4/Letter			Yes* No	Prints on letter-size paper when an A4 job is sent but no A4-size paper is loaded in the printer (or to print on A4 paper when a letter-size job is sent but no letter-size paper is loaded). This option will also override A3 with ledger-size paper and ledger with A3-size paper.
Scan/Digital Send	E-mail Settings Network Folder Settings SharePoint Settings Scan to USB Drive Settings **NOTE:** The same options are available for each of these features, except where noted.	E-mail Setup **NOTE:** Email Settings only				Use to configure settings that apply to sending documents through email or saving documents to a folder on the network or on a USB multi-drive. The E-mail Setup Wizard feature configures the printer to send scanned images as email attachments. To open the printer HP Embedded Web Server and set up the email notification server, enter the printer IP address into a Web browser.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser. Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer. Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in. Require preview Previews are required for all users. Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Default File Name				The printer is shipped with a factory default file name of [Untitled] for any scanned files that are sent or saved. Use this feature to specify a different default file name. If you are saving a file to a network folder or USB storage printer and a file with the default file name already exists, a number is appended to the file name, for example, [Untitled]001.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Document File Type			Select from a list of file types.	PDF provides the best overall image and text quality. JPEG is a good choice for most graphics. Most computers have a browser that can view .JPEG files. This file type produces one file per page. TIFF is a standard file format that many graphics programs support. This file type produces one file per page. MTIFF: stands for multi-page TIFF. This file type saves multiple scanned pages in a single file. XPS (XML Paper Specification) creates an XML file that preserves the original formatting of the document and supports color graphics and embedded fonts. **NOTE:** OCR file types are not supported on this printer unless attached to DSS.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Optimize Text/ Picture			Manually Adjust* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Output Quality			High (large file) Medium* Low (small file)	Use to select the quality for the output. Higher-quality images require a larger file size than lower-quality images. Larger files take more time to send, and some recipients might have trouble receiving larger files.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Original Sides			1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
			Orientation		Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			2-Sided Format		Book-style Flip-style	Book-style: The back side of the original is printed right-side-up, and the back side of the copy is printed the same way. Use this option for originals and copies that are bound along the left edge. Flip-style: The back side of the original is printed upside-down, and the back side of the copy is printed the same way. Use this option for originals and copies that are to be bound along the top edge.
		Resolution			400 dpi 300 dpi 200 dpi 150 dpi* 75 dpi	Sets the resolution for sent documents. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might automatically change to a valid value.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Content Orientation	Orientation		Auto Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
			2-Sided Format		Book-style* Flip-style	Use to configure the default style for 2-sided print jobs. If the Book-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed the right way up. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the left edge. If the Flip-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed upside-down. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the top edge.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Color/Black			Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size			Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Notification			Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Include Thumbnail			NOTE: When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
			Notification E-mail address			E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.
		Image Adjustment		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
				Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
				Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
				Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
				Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Job Build			Job Build off* Job Build on	Use to combine several original documents into one job. Also use to scan an original document that has more pages than the document feeder can accommodate at one time. The printer temporarily saves all the scanned images. After you have scanned all the pages for the job, touch Finish to finish the job.
		Cropping Options			Do not crop* Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Erase Edges			Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Multi-feed Detection			Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Blank Page Suppression			Disabled* Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
		Create Multiple Files			Disabled* Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.
	Digital Sending Software Setup	Allow Use of a DSS Server Allow Transfer to New DSS server			Disabled Enabled*	Configure how the printer interacts with the HP Digital Sending Software (DSS) server. HP DSS handles digital sending tasks, such as faxing, emailing, and sending scanned documents to a network folder or USB storage device. Use the Allow Use of a DSS Server and Allow Transfer to New DSS server options to configure the printer to use HP DSS.
Fax	Internal Fax Modem Setup					
	Fax Send Settings	Image Preview				

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Fax Dialing Settings	Fax Dial Volume		Off Low* High	These settings control how the fax modem dials the outgoing fax number when faxes are sent.
			Dialing Mode		Tone* Pulse	
			Redial Interval		1-5 Minutes Default = 5 minutes	
			Fax Send Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
			Dialing Prefix			
			Detect Dial Tone			
			Redial on Error		Range: 0-9 Default = 2	
			Redial on No Answer		Range: 0-2 Default = 0	
			Redial on Busy		Range: 0-9 Default = 3	
		General Fax Send Settings	Fax Number Confirmation		Enabled Disabled*	If this feature is enabled, you must enter the fax number twice.
			PC Fax Send		Enabled* Disabled	Enables users who have the correct driver installed to send faxes through the printer from their computers.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			JBIG Compression		Enabled* Disabled	The JBIG compression reduces fax-transmission time, which can result in lower phone charges. However, using JBIG compression sometimes causes compatibility problems with older fax machines. If this occurs, turn off the JBIG compression.
			Error Correction Mode		Enabled* Disabled	When error-correction mode is enabled and an error occurs during fax transmission, the printer sends or receives the error portion again.
			Fax Header		Prepend* Overlay	Use to prepend or overlay the fax header page.
			Fax Number Speed Dial Matching		Enabled Disabled*	Use this item to match the fax number that you type to numbers that are saved as a speed dial.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Billing Code Settings	Enable Billing Codes		Off* On	When billing codes are enabled, a prompt displays that asks the user to enter the billing code for an outgoing fax. This prompt does not appear if the Allow users to edit billing codes check box is not checked. You can also use the billing codes report in the Reports menu to view the list of the billing codes that have been used for faxes that have been sent from the printer. The list is grouped by billing code and also shows fax details. This feature can be used for billing or usage tracking.
			Default Billing Code			Specify a default billing code for faxing. If you specify a default billing code, this code displays in the Billing Code field when the user sends an outgoing fax. If this field is blank, no default billing code is provided for the user.
			Minimum Length		Range: 1-16 Default = 1	Specify the required length of the billing code. Billing codes can be between 1 and 16 characters long.
			Allow users to edit billing codes		Off On*	
	Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Ringer Volume		Off Low* High	Use to configure settings for receiving faxes.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Rings To Answer		Range: 1-6 Default = 1	
			Fax Receive Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
			Ring Interval		Range: 220-600 ms Default = 600 ms	
			Ring Frequency		Range: 1-200 Default = 68hz	
		Fax Printing Schedule			Always store faxes Always print faxes* Use Fax Printing Schedule	If you have concerns about the security of private faxes, use this feature to store faxes rather than having them automatically print. Open the Fax Printing Schedule sub-menu, and then you can choose to always store faxes, always print them, or you can set up a schedule for each day of the week.
			Schedule Touch this to set up a fax printing schedule if you selected the Use Fax Printing Schedule option.	+ (Add) Edit Delete (trash can)	Print incoming faxes Store incoming faxes Time Event Days	If you are using a fax printing schedule, use this menu to configure when to print faxes.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Blocked Fax Numbers	Fax Number to Block			The blocked fax list can contain up to 30 numbers. When the printer receives a call from one of the blocked fax numbers, it deletes the incoming fax. It also logs the blocked fax in the activity log along with job-accounting information. Add blocked numbers: Enter a fax number into the Fax Number to Block field, and then touch the arrow button to add a new number to the blocked fax list. To remove blocked numbers: Select a number and touch the Delete button to delete it from the blocked fax list. To clear all blocked numbers: Touch the Delete All button to clear all of the numbers from the blocked fax list. You also can use the Blocked Fax List report in the Information menu to view the list of the fax numbers that have been blocked on this printer.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Default Job Options	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
					Print E-mail*	E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.
				Include Thumbnail		NOTE: When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
				Notification E-mail address		Touch this text field, provide the email address to which you want notifications sent, and then touch the OK button.
			Stamp Received Faxes		Enabled Disabled*	Use this option to add the date, time, sender's phone number, and page number to each page of the faxes that this printer receives.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Fit to Page		Enabled* Disabled	Use to shrink faxes that are larger than Letter-size or A4-size so that they can fit onto a Letter-size or A4-size page. If this feature set to Disabled, faxes larger than Letter or A4 will flow across multiple pages.
			Paper Tray		Automatic* Select from a list of the trays.	
			Output Bin		Automatically select Standard bin Upper bin Middle bin	
			Out Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides.
	Fax Forwarding	Enable Fax Forwarding			Disabled* Enabled	Use to forward received faxes to another fax machine.
			Type of Fax Job to Forward		All faxes Sent faxes Received faxes	Use to select the type of fax jobs that you want forwarded.
			Fax Forwarding Number			Provide the forwarding phone number, and then touch the OK button.
	Clear Fax Activity Log					Clears all events from the fax activity log.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Manage Supplies	Low Warning Thresholds			Black Cartridge Cyan Cartridge Magenta Cartridge Yellow Cartridge	1-100% Default = 5%	Set the estimated percentage at which the printer notifies you when a toner cartridge is very low.
	Low Warning Threshold Message				On Off	Displays a message on the control panel when a cartridge is very low.
	Very Low Behavior	Black Cartridge Color Cartridges Transfer Kit Fuser Kit Document Feeder Kit			Stop Continue Prompt to continue	
		Staples			Stop Prompt to continue	
	Restrict Color Use				Enable Disable Color Color if allowed*	Use this feature to enable, restrict, or disable color printing or copying.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Color/Black Mix				Auto Mostly Color Pages Mostly Black Pages	Instructs the printer when to switch between color and monochrome printing modes for the best overall performance. Auto: Uses the mode that is appropriate for the first page of the job. If necessary, the printer switches modes during the middle of a job and then stays in that mode until the job is finished. Mostly Color Pages: The printer uses color mode for all jobs, even if the job contains no color pages. Mostly Black Pages: The printer uses monochrome mode until it detects a color page. The printer switches back to monochrome mode when it detects a sequence of several monochrome pages.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Store Usage Data				On supplies Not on supplies	The Store Usage Data provides a way to suppress the toner cartridges from storing most of the information gathered exclusively for the purpose of understanding the usage of the printer. Select the On supplies setting to store the data on the toner cartridge memory chip. Select the Not on supplies setting to suppress the information from being stored on the memory chip.
	Cartridge Protection				Off* Protect Cartridges	Select to permanently protect cartridges so that they can be used only in this product or fleet of products.
	Cartridge Policy				Off* Authorized HP	Set Authorized HP to allow only genuine HP cartridges to be used in this product.
Manage Stapler/ Stacker	Operation Mode				Mailbox Stacker Function Separator	
	Job Offset				On Off	
Networking	Ethernet	Information	Print Security Report		Yes No*	Yes: Prints a page that contains the current security settings on the HP Jetdirect print server. No: A security settings page is not printed.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		TCP/IP	Host Name		Use the arrow buttons to edit the host name. NPIXXXXXX*	An alphanumeric string, up to 32 characters, used to identify the printer. This name is listed on the HP Jetdirect configuration page. The default host name is NPIxxxxxx, where xxxxxx is the last six digits of the LAN hardware (MAC) address.
			IPV4 Settings	Config Method	Bootp DHCP* Auto IP Manual	Specifies the method that TCP/IPv4 parameters will be configured on the HP Jetdirect print server. Bootp (Bootstrap Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a BootP server. DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a DHCPv4 server. If selected and a DHCP lease exists, the DHCP Release menu and the DHCP Renew menu are available to set DHCP lease options. Auto IP: Use for automatic link-local IPv4 addressing. An address in the form 169.254.x.x is assigned automatically. If you set this option to the Manual setting, use the Manual Settings menu to configure TCP/IPv4 parameters.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Default IP	Auto IP* Legacy	Specify the IP address to default to when the print server is unable to obtain an IP address from the network during a forced TCP/IP reconfiguration (for example, when manually configured to use BootP or DHCP). NOTE: This feature assigns a static IP address that might interfere with a managed network. Auto IP: A link-local IP address 169.254.x.x is set. Legacy: The address 192.0.0.192 is set, consistent with older HP Jetdirect printers.
				Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = xxx.xxx.xx.xx	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = 0.0.0.0	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.
			IPV6 Settings	Enable	Off On*	Use this item to enable or disable IPv6 operation on the print server. Off: IPv6 is disabled. On: IPv6 is enabled.
				Address	Manual Settings Enable Address	Use this item to enable and manually configure a TCP/IPv6 address.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				DHCPV6 Policy	Router Specified Router Unavailable* Always	Router Specified: The stateful auto-configuration method to be used by the print server is determined by a router. The router specifies whether the print server obtains its address, its configuration information, or both from a DHCPv6 server. Router Unavailable: If a router is not available, the print server should attempt to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server. Always: Whether a router is available, the print server always attempts to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server.
				Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **xxx.xxx.xx.xx**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **0.0.0.0**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Proxy Server		Select from a provided list.	Specifies the proxy server to be used by embedded applications in the printer. A proxy server is typically used by network clients for Internet access. It caches Web pages, and provides a degree of Internet security for those clients. To specify a proxy server, enter its IPv4 address or fully-qualified domain name. The name can be up to 255 octets. For some networks, you might need to contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP) for the proxy server address.
			Proxy Port		Default = **00080**	Enter the port number used by the proxy server for client support. The port number identifies the port reserved for proxy activity on your network, and can be a value from 0 to 65535.
			Idle Timeout		Default = **0270**	The time period, in seconds, after which an idle TCP print data connection is closed (default is 270 seconds, 0 disables the timeout).

Copy menu (MFP only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Copy menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-11 Copy menu (MFP only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Sides	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides.
	Output Sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides.
Color/Black			Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray	Select how the copy should be printed. Automatically detect: Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the printer will determine whether to print in color or black and white. Color: Prints documents in color. Black: Prints documents in black and white or grayscale.
Quick Sets and Defaults			Load Save	
Options	Sides	Original Sides	1-sided 2-sided	
		Output Sides	1-sided 2-sided	
	Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray	Select how the copy should be printed. Automatically detect: Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the printer will determine whether to print in color or black and white. Color: Prints documents in color. Black: Prints documents in black and white or grayscale.

Table 3-11 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Staple		None Top left angled Top right angled	Sets the position of the staple on the page.
	Scan mode		Standard Document Book Mode 2–sided ID	Book Mode allows the user to scan pages from a book. 2–sided ID allows the user to scan both sides of an identification card onto one sheet.
	Reduce/Enlarge		Automatic* Manual	Use to scale the size of the document up or down. Select one of the predefined percentages, or select the Scaling field and type a percentage between 25 and 400. The Auto option automatically scales the image to fit the paper size in the tray. NOTE: To reduce the image, select a scaling percentage that is less than 100. To enlarge the image, select a scaling percentage that is greater than 100.
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Describes the page size of the original document.
	Paper Selection		Paper Size Paper Type Paper Tray	For the best color and image quality, select the appropriate paper type from the control panel menu or from the print driver.
	Booklet	Booklet Format	(Checkbox)	Use to copy two or more pages onto one sheet of paper so you can fold the sheets in the center to form a booklet. The printer arranges the pages in the correct order. For example, if the original document has eight pages, the printer prints pages 1 and 8 on the same sheet.

Table 3-11 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Content Orientation		Auto Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
	Pages per Sheet		One (1) Two (2) Four (4)	Copies multiple pages onto one sheet of paper. NOTE: Before using this screen, use the Content Orientation screen to describe the original document orientation.
	Image Adjustment	Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.

Table 3-11 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust*	Optimize For: Text Mixed Printed picture Photograph	Optimizes the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
	Erase Edges	Front Side	Use inches Apply same width to all edges Top edge Bottom edge Left edge Right edge	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Back Side	Use inches Mirror front side Top edge Bottom edge Left edge Right edge	

Table 3-11 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Collate		Collate on (Sets in page order)* Collate off (Pages grouped)	If you are making more than one copy, select the Collate on (Sets in page order) option to assemble the pages in the correct order in each set of copies. Select the Collate off (Pages grouped) option to group the same pages together. For example, if you are making five copies of an original document that has two pages, all five first pages would be grouped together and all five second pages would be grouped together.
	Multi-feed Detection		Enabled* Disabled	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
	Output Bin		Automatically select Standard bin Upper bin Middle bin	

Scan menu (MFP only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Scan menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-12 Scan menu (MFP)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Email					
Scan to Network Folder	Folder Paths				
	File Name				
	Quick Sets and Defaults				
	Options	File Type and Resolution			
		Original sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.

Table 3-12 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Content Orientation	Orientation	Automatically Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
		Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.

Table 3-12 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Optimize Text/Picture			
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten			
		Blank Page Suppression		Disabled Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
		Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Create Multiple Files		Disabled Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.

Table 3-12 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Notification		Do not notify Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the job in your notification.
			Notification Email		E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.
Scan to USB Drive	Destination				
	Job Name				
	Options	File Type and Resolution			

Table 3-12 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Original sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Content Orientation		Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

Table 3-12 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.

Table 3-12 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Optimize Text/Picture		Manually Adjust* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten			
		Blank Page Suppression		Disabled Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.

Table 3-12 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Create Multiple Files		Disabled Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.
		Notification		Do not notify Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the job in your notification.
			Notification Email		E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.

Table 3-12 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Job Storage				Folder	
				Job Name	
Scan to SharePoint					

Fax menu (fax models only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Fax menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-13 Fax menu (fax models only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Dialing Prefix				
Fax Recipients				
Quick Sets and Defaults				
Options	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
	Resolution		Standard (100 x 200dpi)* Fine (200 x 200dpi) Superfine (300 x 300dpi)	Select the resolution for outgoing faxes. If you increase the resolution, faxes might be clearer but they could transmit more slowly. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might be automatically changed to a valid value.
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
	Content Orientation	Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait: This setting means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape: This setting means the long edge of the page is along the top.

Table 3-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
		Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
		Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
		Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.

Table 3-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust*	Optimize For: Text Printed picture Photograph	Optimizes the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
	Blank Page Suppression		Disabled* Enabled	Prevents blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
	Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	Use this feature to prevent multiple pages being fed through the document feeder during document scans.
	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Use to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
			Print E-mail	Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.

Table 3-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
		Include Thumbnail		When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
		Notification E-mail address		Provide the email address that will receive notifications.
		2-Sided Format	Book-style* Flip-style	Use to configure the default style for 2-sided print jobs. If the Book-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed the right way up. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the left edge. If the Flip-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed upside-down. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the top edge.

Print menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Print menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-14 Print Options menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Print from Job Storage	Stored Job to Print	Untitled Stored Faxes	Print a job stored on the printer.
Print from USB Drive	Stored Job to Print	Choose file to print on USB drive.	Print a job stored on a USB drive.
Fax Polling	Fax Polling Number		

Supplies menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Supplies menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-15 Supplies menu

First level	Values	Description
Supplies Summary		
Black Cartridge	Status	
Cyan Cartridge	Order HP Part	
Magenta Cartridge	Pages Printed	
Yellow Cartridge	Approximate Pages Remaining	
Toner Collection Unit	Status	
Transfer Kit	Order HP Part	
Fuser Kit		
Document Feeder Kit		
Stapler 1		

Trays menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Trays menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-16 Trays menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Tray 1 Tray 2–x	Size	Select paper size from a list of supported sizes.	Choose the paper size for the tray
	Type	Select paper type from a list of supported types.	Choose the paper type for the tray.

Troubleshooting menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Support Tools menu, and then select the Troubleshooting menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-17 Troubleshooting

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	• Settings Menu Map • Current Settings Page • Configuration Page • How to Connect Page • Supplies Status Page • sage Page • File Directory Page • Web Services Status Page • Color Usage Job Log				Select the configuration/Status reports to review, and then touch the Print or View button.
Reports					
Other Pages	• Demonstration Page • RGB Samples • CMYK Samples • PCL Font List • PS Font List				
Event Log				Print	Prints the 50 most recent events in the Event Log. For each event, the printed log shows the error number, page count, error code, and description or personality.
Paper Path Page				View Print	Shows how many pages were printed from each tray.

Table 3-17 Troubleshooting (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax (Fax is optional)	Fax T.30 Trace	Print T.30 Report		Print	Use to print or configure the fax T.30 trace report. T.30 is the standard that specifies handshaking, protocols, and error correction between fax machines.
		When to Print Report		Never automatically print* Print after every fax Print only after fax send jobs Print after any fax error Print only after fax send errors Print only after fax receive errors	Configure the T.30 report to print after certain events. You can choose to print the report after every fax job, every fax job sent, every fax job received, every send error, or every receive error.
	Fax V.34			Normal* Off	Use to disable V.34 modulations if several fax failures have occurred or if phone line conditions require it.
	Fax Speaker Mode			Normal* Diagnostic	Used by a technician to evaluate and diagnose fax issues by listening to the sounds of fax modulations
	Fax Log Entries			On Off*	The standard fax log includes basic information such as the time and whether the fax was successful. The detailed fax log shows the intermediate results of the redial process not shown in the standard fax log.
Print Quality Pages	Print Fuser Test Page			Print	Use to print pages that help you resolve problems with print quality.
Diagnostic Tests					
	Continuous Scan			2-sided	

Table 3-17 Troubleshooting (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Run Fax Test			Start	Use this menu to perform a test on specific components within the product to determine whether the components are functioning correctly.
Retrieve Diagnostic Data				Insert a US drive into the USB port. The exported data might contain personally identifiable information.	Create files that contain information about the product that can help identify the cause of problems.
Generate Debug Data				Start	

Maintenance menu

Backup/Restore menu

To display: At the product control panel, select Support Tools and then Maintenance, and then select the Backup/Restore menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-18 Backup/Restore menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Backup Data	Enable Scheduled Backups	Backup Time	Enter a time	
		Days Between Backups	Enter the number of days	
	Backup Now			
	Export Last Backup			
Restore Data			Insert a USB drive that contains the backup file.	

Calibration/Cleaning menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the **Calibrate/Cleaning** menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-19 Calibrate/Cleaning menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Calibration/Cleaning Page		Print	Use to process the cleaning page that was created by using the Create Cleaning Page menu. The process takes up to 1.5 minutes.
Color Calibrations (color models)		Start	The product automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, you can calibrate the product immediately if you see problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a partial calibration. Use this calibration if color density or tone seems incorrect. Before calibrating the product, make sure that the **Ready** indicator displays on the control-panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.

Table 3-19 Calibrate/Cleaning menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Calibration		Start	The product automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, you can calibrate the product immediately if you see problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a full calibration, which can take up to three minutes. Use this calibration if the color layers seem to be shifted on the page. Before calibrating the product, make sure that the **Ready** indicator displays on the control-panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.
Delay Calibration at Wake/Power On		No Delay Delay 15 minutes	Controls the timing of power-on calibration when the product wakes up or is turned on. Wake: Select if you are not using the feature and want to print jobs immediately when the product wakes up or is turned on, before calibration begins. No: The product will calibrate immediately when it wakes up or is turned on. The product will not print any jobs until it finishes calibrating. Yes: Enables the product that is asleep to accept print jobs before it calibrates. It might start calibrating before it has printed all the jobs it has received. This option allows quicker printing when coming out of sleep mode or when you turn the product on, but print quality might be reduced. **NOTE:** For the best results, allow the product to calibrate before printing. Print jobs performed before calibration might not be of the highest quality.

USB Firmware Upgrade menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the **USB Firmware Upgrade** menu.

Insert a USB storage device with a firmware upgrade bundle into the USB port, and follow the on-screen instructions.

Clear paper jams

Paper jam locations



1	Tray 1
2	Tray 2
3	Tray 3

13.A1 tray 1 paper jam

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the Tray 1. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.A1.XX Jam in tray 1

1. Gently remove the jammed paper.



2. Open and then close the front door to resume printing.

13.A2, 13.A3 tray 2, tray 3 paper jam

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 2 or Tray 3. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.A2.XX Jam in tray 2
- 13.A3.XX Jam in tray 3



CAUTION: The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

NOTE: The procedure to clear a paper jam in Tray 3 is the same as for Tray 2. Only Tray 2 is shown here.

1. Open the right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



3. Close the right door.



4. Open the tray.



5. Gently remove any jammed paper.



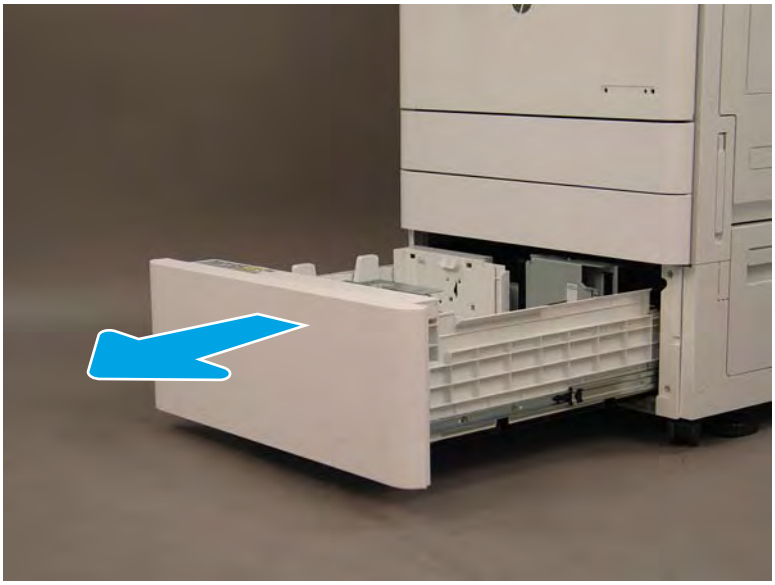
6. Close the tray. Printing automatically resumes.



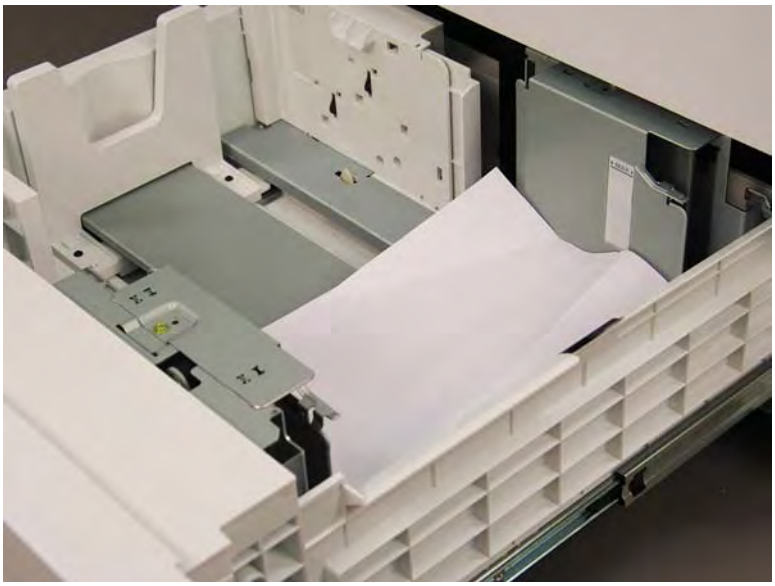
Clear paper jams in the Bottom HCI

Clear paper jams in the Bottom HCI

1. Open the HCI.



2. Remove any jammed paper.



3. Close the HCI.

Service mode (tech mode)

- Entering service mode
- Service mode menu tree
- Information tab
- Maintenance Counts tab
- Diagnostics tab
- Service Functions tab

Entering service mode

1. From the control panel, select Support Tools, and then select Service.
2. Enter the Service PIN ID.
   - 04072517
3. Select Service Tools.

Service mode menu tree

The tables below provide descriptions of the menus within the printer service mode.

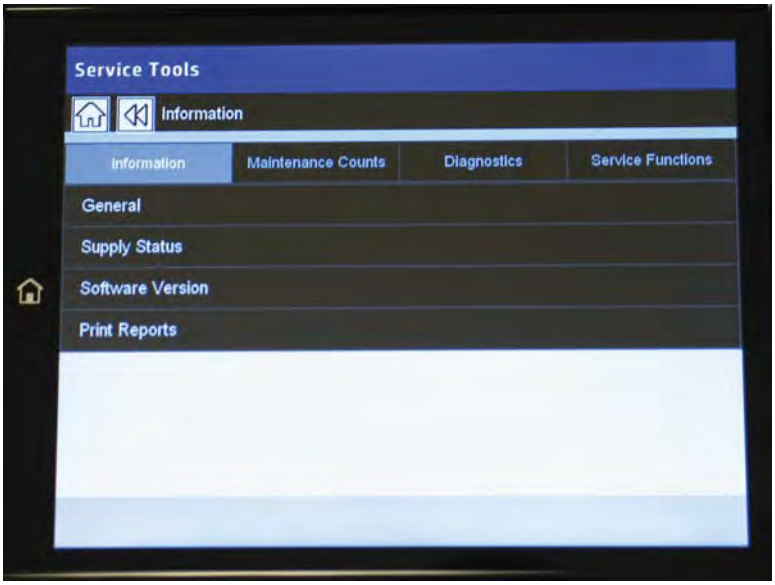


Table 3-20 Service mode Information tab

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Information	General	Engine Board Serial Number	
	Supply Status	Customer Replacement Unit	Toner CMYK
		Field Replacement Unit	Imaging Unit (Drum) CMYK
			Development Unit

Table 3-20 Service mode Information tab (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
			Toner Collection Unit
			Paper Transfer Belt (PTB)
			Fuser
			Tray X Rollers
			ADF Pickup Roller
			ADF Separation Roller
	Software Version	System FW Version	
		Main FW Version	
		Engine FW Version	
		Boot ROM Version	
		File System Version	
		ADF FW Version	
		Scanner Version	
		Finisher Version	
		Scanner Version	
		Scan Control Version	
		Tray 2–5 Version	
		Fuser Version	
		Transfer Version	
		Toner Version	
		Print CMS Version	
		Copy CMS Version	
		Scan CMS Version	
	Print Reports	Print Supplies Information Report	
		Usage Counter	
		Error Information	
		Fax Protocol Dump (Line 1)	
		Fax Protocol Dump (Line 2)	
		Fax Diagnostics (Line 1)	
		Fax Diagnostics (Line 2)	
		Auto Color Registration	
		Job Duty	

Table 3-20 Service mode Information tab (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
		Auto Toning History	
		Full Auto Color Registration	
		ID Calibration History	
		Maintenance	
		Toner Event	
	Export Reports	RTF Format	
		XML Format	
		PDF Format	

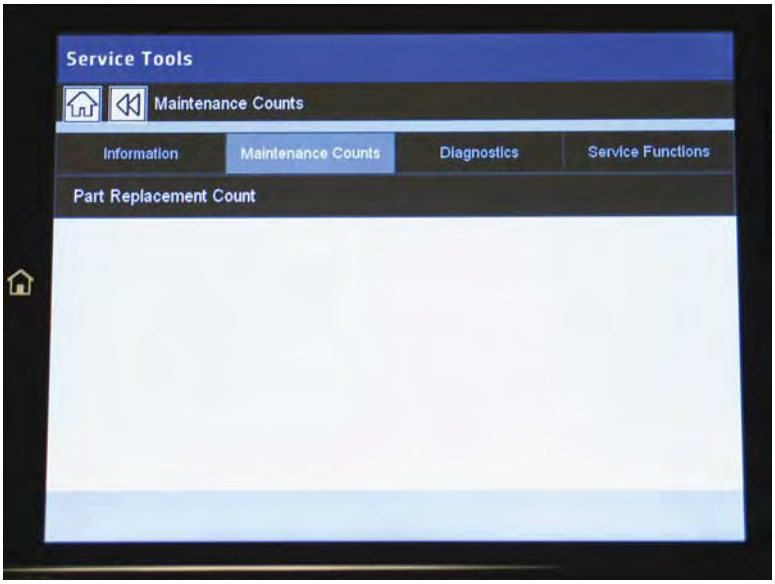


Table 3-21 Service mode Maintenance Counts tab

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Maintenance Counts	Part Replacement Count	Toner Cartridge CMYK	
		Imaging Unit (Drum) CMYK	
		Development Unit (Developer) CMYK	
		Paper Transfer Belt (PTB)	
		Transfer Roller/T2 Roller	
		Fuser	
		Tray X Rollers	
		Filter	
		ADF Pickup Roller	
		ADF Separation Roller	

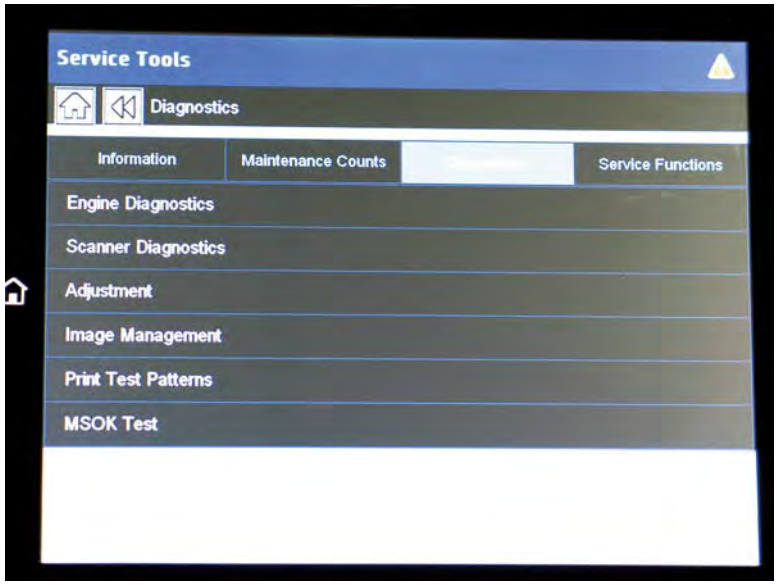


Table 3-22 Service mode Diagnostics tab

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Diagnostics	Engine Diagnostics	Engine NVM Initialization	
		Engine NVM Read/Write	
		Engine Test Routines	
	Fax Diagnostics	Fax NVM Read/Write	
		Fax Test Routines	
	Scanner Diagnostics	Shading Test	Shade and Print Report
			Print Last Shade Report
			Shade and Print Report (ADF)
			Print Last Shade Report (ADF)
		Scanner/ADF NVM Read/ Write	
		Scanner/ADF Test Routines	
	Adjustment	Print Adjustment	Automatic Adjustment
			Image Position
			Print Test Patterns
		Copy Adjustment	Image Position
		Scan Area Adjustment	Automatic Adjustment
			Manual Adjustment
		ADF Adjustment	Automatic Adjustment
			Manual Adjustment

Table 3-22 Service mode Diagnostics tab (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
	ACS	ACS Page Adjustment	
	Image Management	Auto Tone Adjustment Activation	Normal
			Full
		Auto Tone Adjustment	Normal
			Full
	Print Test Patterns	Skew Pattern	

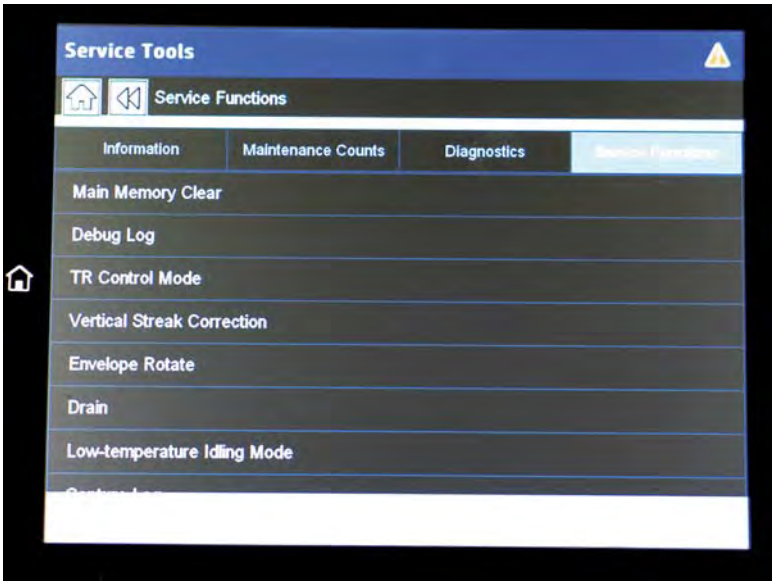


Table 3-23 Service functions

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Service Functions	Debug Log	Info	
		Job Status	
	TR Control Mode	T2 Control Mode	Paper Group/Paper Side/Paper Direction/T2 PWM
	Vertical Streak Correction		
	Drain	Off	
		On	
	Low Temperature Idling Mode		
	Capture Log	All	
		Period	Start Date/End Date
	IP Setting	IP address (manual entry)	
		Subnet Mask (manual entry)	
		Default Gateway (manual entry)	

Table 3-23 Service functions (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
	Footer		
	FW Upgrade		
	File Dump Mode	Enable Dump	Generate RGBa
			Generate Raw File
			Generate CMYK
			No Print Mode
			Debugging Mode
			Max Output file No 10
			Enable
		Retrieve Dump Image	Safely Remove USB
			Retrieve Dump Image
		Delete Dump Image	Delete Dump Image
		Disable Dump	Disable
	Copy Original Thickness	Thin (42-60 g/m^2)	
		Normal*	
		Thick (163-220 g/m^2)	
	Scan Original Thickness	Thin (42-60 g/m^2)	
		Normal*	
		Thick (163-220 g/m^2)	
	Altitude Adjustment	Normal (~1,000 m/3,280 ft)*	
		High 1 (~2,000 m/6562 ft)	
		High 2 (~3000 m/9842 ft)	
		High 3 (~4000 m/13123 ft)	
		High 4 (~5000 m/16404 ft)	
	Humidity	Normal*	
		High 1	
		High 2	
		High 3	
	Vapor Mode		
	Booklet Sub Tray		
	Event Logging		

Information tab

This section provides detailed information about the service mode **Information** tab.

General

Information > General

This menu displays the following information:

- Machine serial number

Supply Status

Customer Replacement Unit (CRU)

Information > Supply Status > Customer Replacement Unit

- This menu displays the printer's customer replacement unit status. Users can select one item in the list to check the information of the selected unit. This menu allows users to reset the counter if new supply has been replaced and a reset is required.

Field Replacement Unit (FRU))

Information > Supply Status > Field Replacement Unit

- This menu displays the printer's field replacement unit status. Users can select one item in the list to check the information of the selected unit. This menu allows users to reset a counter if a supply has been replaced, if a reset is required.

In this menu, there are five columns: Item, Threshold, Status, and Count. Some items have the Maximum Life option.

- Status: This column shows the current status of the selected item.
  - OK: The current count is smaller than the default warning value.
  - Check: The current count is bigger than the default warning value.
  - OFF: The current count exceeds the maximum life.
- Count: This column shows the current count of the selected item.
- Maximum Life: This column shows the maximum capacity of the selected item.

The technician can edit the default warning value within the given threshold.

Selecting some items will enable the reset button to reset the current count to zero after replacing the unit.

Software Version

Information > Software Version

- This menu allow the user to see firmware and software versions across the entire printer.

Fault Log

Information > Fault Log

- This menu displays faults that have occurred while the system was operating.

  Pressing the **Clear** button will clear all the saved fault logs.

Print Reports

Information > Print Reports

This menu displays reports that can be printed from the system. The following reports are available to print:

- Supplies Information
- Auto Toning History

Auto Toning History

Information > Print Reports > Auto Toning History

- NOTE: TRC means Tone Reproduction Curve.

This report shows a history of execution of the TRC control. The TRC control preserves color consistency against changes in supplies resulting from long-time use and environmental change. The purpose of the history report is to check if the TRC control is working normally.

- If the TRC control performs normally, “Pass” count must be a non-zero value and “Fail” count must be zero.
- If “Fail” count is not zero, check the image density sensor.

Maintenance Counts tab

This section provides detailed information about the service mode **Maintenance Counts** tab.

Fault Count

Maintenance Counts > Fault Count

- This menu displays fault counts. The technician can select one fault group and press OK to see detailed fault descriptions. The detailed fault description window displays engine diagnostic codes, descriptions of the fault, and the number of occurrences.

  The following table shows the fault groups defined for the system:

A1 Motor	H2 Output (Bins) System	S3 Scan System
A2 Fan	M1 Input (Trays) System	S5 UI System
A3 Sensor	M2 Media Path System	S6 Network System
C1 Toner Cartridge Unit	M3 Output (Bins) System	S7 HDD System
C3 Imaging Unit	M4 ADF System	U1 Fusing Unit
C7 Fusing Unit	S1 Video System	U2 Laser Scanner Assembly Unit
H1 Input (Trays) System	S2 Engine System	

Part Replacement Count

Maintenance Counts > Part Replacement Count

- This menu displays the replacement counts for the system parts. Users can select one group and press “OK” to see the exact name of the part and the occurrence of the replacement.

  The following table shows replaceable parts groups of the system:

Unit	Item	Sensing Method
Toner Cartridge	Toner (Black)	Auto Sensing
Imaging Unit	Imaging Unit (Black)	Auto Sensing
Fuser	Fuser	Auto Sensing
Transfer Roller	Transfer roller	Count Clear
Roller	Tray 2 Roller	Count Clear
	Tray 3 Roller	Count Clear
	Tray 4 Roller	Count Clear
	Tray 5 Roller	Count Clear
ADF Roller	ADF Pick Roller	Count Clear
	ADF Separation Roller	
Filter	Ozone filter	

Diagnostics tab

This section provides detailed information about the service mode **Diagnostics** tab.

Engine Diagnostics

Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine NVM Initialization

- This menu initializes all engine NVM values to the default.

Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine NVM Read/Write

-

Purpose	To change a configuration value for the engine firmware
Operation Procedure	When the main “NVM Read/Write” window displays, users can navigate through the list of codes with descriptions and saved values. Users can also input a code through the text box to find a configuration value directly. After selecting one value, press the “Edit” button to open an interface for user input.

Code	Display	Meaning	Default	Max/Min
109-0200	StandBy Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0201	StandBy Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0205	Warmup Center	Temperature offset	10	10

Code	Display	Meaning	Default	Max/Min
109-0255	Thin Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0256	Thin Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0265	Plain Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0266	Plain Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0275	Heavy Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0276	Heavy Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0280	Extra Heavy Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0281	Extra Heavy Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0300	Envelopes Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0301	Envelopes Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0305	Labels Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0306	Labels Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0310	Thick Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0311	Thick Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0315	Recycled Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0316	Recycled Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0320	Special Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0321	Special Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0325	1200 dpi_thin Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0326	1200 dpi_thin Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0330	1200 dpi_plain Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0331	1200 dpi_plain Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0335	1200 dpi_thick Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0336	1200 dpi_thick Side	Temperature offset	10	10
111–0030	Toner Vcon Black	Toner Vcon Black	100/100	100/100

Engine Test Routines

- Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routines

Purpose	To perform test routines for the engine
Operation Procedure	When the main Engine Test Routines window displays, users can navigate through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can directly input an EDC code through the text box to search for a routine. A maximum of three routines can be selected at the same time. After selecting one or more routines, select **OK** to open the test window. The selected routines will display and users can start/start the selected test routine.

Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0000	Main BLDC Motor	Main BLDC Motor is On/Off
100-0001	Main BLDC Motor Slow	Main BLDC Motor Slow On/Off
100-0010	Main BLDC Motor Ready	Detects if Main BLDC Motor is running at normal speed
100-0044	Black Drum Motor	Black Drum Motor is On/Off
100-0049	Black Drum Motor Ready	Detects if Black Drum Motor is running at normal speed
100-0076	Ozone Suction Fan Run	Start/Stop Ozone Suction Fan run
100-0077	Ozone Suction Fan Ready	Detects if Ozone Suction Fan is running at normal speed.
100-0120	Exit Motor Forward Fast	Exit Motor Forward Fast On/Off
100-0130	Exit Motor Forward Slow	Exit Motor Forward Slow On/Off
100-0140	Duplex Motor Forward	Duplex Motor Forward On/Off
100-0141	Duplex Motor Forward Slow	Duplex Motor Forward Slow On/Off
100-0160	Duplex Fan 1 Run	Start/Stop Duplex Fan 1 run
100-0180	Duplex Fan 1 Run Ready	Detects if Duplex Fan 1 is running at normal speed
100-0200	Tray 2 Elevating Motor	Tray 2 Elevate Motor On/Off
100-0210	Tray 3 Elevating Motor	Tray 3 Elevate Motor On/Off (Optional)
100-0220	Tray 4 Elevating Motor	Tray 4 Elevate Motor On/Off (Optional)
100-0230	Tray 5 Elevating Motor	Tray 5 Elevate Motor On/Off (Optional)
100-0241	Waste Toner LED	Waste Toner LED On/Off
100-0250	Waste Toner Full Sensor	Detects if the waste toner is full or not
100-0260	SMPS Fan Run	Start/Stop SMPS Fan run
100-0270	SMPS Fan Run Ready	Detects if SMPS Fan is running at normal speed
100-0370	Tray 2 Pickup Motor	Tray 2 Motor is On/Off
100-0371	Tray 2 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 2 Motor Slow On/Off
100-0380	Tray 3 Pickup Motor	Tray 3 Motor is On/Off
100-0381	Tray 3 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 3 Motor Slow On/Off
100-0390	Tray 4 Pickup Motor	Tray 4 Motor is On/Off
100-0391	Tray 4 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 4 Motor Slow On/Off
100-0400	Tray 5 Pickup Motor	Tray 5 Motor is On/Off

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0401	Tray 5 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 5 Motor Slow On/Off
100-0411	Registration Motor Slow	Registration Motor Slow On/Off
100-0412	Registration Motor Slowest	Registration Motor Slowest On/Off
100-0430	Exit 2 Motor Forward	Exit 2 Motor is On/Off
100-0431	Exit 2 Motor Forward Slow	Exit 2 Motor Slow On/Off
100-0440	Exit 2 Motor Backward	Exit 2 Motor is On/Off
100-0441	Exit 2 Motor Backward Slow	Exit 2 Motor Slow Backward On/Off
100-0470	DCF Feed Motor	DCF Feed Motor is On/Off
100-0471	DCF Feed Motor Slow	DCF Feed Motor Slow is On/Off
100-0480	Duct Motor	Duct Motor On/Off
100-0481	Duct Motor Sensor	Duct Motor Rib Sensing
101-0050	Registration Clutch	Engages drive to registration roller
101-0121	Tray 2 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 2 Feed Motor Slow On/Off
101-0131	Tray 3 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 3 Feed Motor Slow On/Off
101-0141	Tray 4 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 4 Feed Motor Slow On/Off
101-0151	Tray 5 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 5 Feed Motor Slow On/Off
101-0190	Out bin Full Sensor	Detects when paper is at Out bin Full Sensor
101-0191	Out-bin 2 Full Sensor	Detects when paper is at Out-bin 2 Full Sensor
101-0270	Tray 1 Clutch	Tray 1 Clutch On/Off
101-0271	Tray 1 Solenoid	Tray 1 Solenoid On/Off
101-0280	Return Gate Solenoid	Return Gate Solenoid On/Off
102-0000	Tray 2 Home Position	Detects when Tray 2 is closed
102-0010	Tray 2 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 2
102-0041	Tray 2 Paper Size Read	Detects size of paper in Tray 2
102-0050	Tray 2 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 2 is elevated to the sensor
102-0070	Tray 3 Home Position	Detects when Tray 3 is closed
102-0080	Tray 3 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 3
102-0111	Tray 3 Paper Size Read	Detects size of paper in Tray 3
102-0120	Tray 3 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 3 is elevated to the sensor
102-0140	Tray 4 Home Position	Detects when Tray 4 is closed
102-0150	Tray 4 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 4
102-0181	Tray 4 Paper Size Read	Detects size of paper in Tray 4
102-0190	Tray 4 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 4 is elevated to the sensor
102-0210	Tray 5 Home Position	Detect when Tray 5 is closed.

Code	Display	Meaning
102-0220	Tray 5 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 5
102-0251	Tray 5 Size Read	Detects paper size in Tray 5
102-0260	Tray 5 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 5 is elevated to the sensor
102-0280	Tray 1 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 1
102-0281	Tray 1 Paper Size Read	Detects paper size in Tray 1
102-0290	Feed 1 Sensor	Detects when paper is at the Feed 1 sensor
102-0300	Tray 3 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 3 Feed sensor (Optional)
102-0320	Tray 4 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 4 Feed sensor (Optional)
102-0340	Tray 5 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 5 Feed sensor (Optional)
102-0360	Registration Sensor	Detects when paper is at the Registration sensor
102-0361	Fuser Out Sensor	Detects when paper is at the Fuser Out sensor.
102-0371	Exit 2 Sensor	Detects when paper is at Exit 2 sensor.
102-0380	Duplex Jam 1 Sensor	Detects when paper is at Duplex Jam 1 sensor.
102-0435	Front Cover Sensor	Detects status of front cover
102-0436	Side Cover Sensor	Detects status of side cover
104-0000	Waste Install Sensor	Detects if waste is installed
106-0200	HVPS Installed	Detects if HVPS is installed
107-0165	Black Eraser On	Detects if Black Eraser is on
107-0169	Black Eraser Detect	Detects Black Eraser
109-0030	Fuser Motor Forward	Fuser Motor Forward On/Off
109-0031	Fuser Motor Backward	Fuser Motor Backward On/Off
109-0034	Fuser Motor Ready	Detects if Fuser Motor runs at each speed
109-0140	Fuser Gap Home Sensor	Detects if the fuser press is located Home position
109-0200	Detect Fuser Relay	
109-0210	Detect Zero Cross Period	
109-0300	Fuser Installed	Detects if the fuser is installed
110-0000	LSU Motor 1 Run Ready	Detects if LSU Motor 1 runs at normal speed
110-0060	LSU Motor 1 Run	LSU Motor 1 On/Off
110-0170	LSU HSync 4	Detects LSU HSync 4 (black)
111-0030	Toner Dispense Motor Black	Toner Dispense (Supply) Motor On/Off
111-0070	Toner Sensor Black	TC sensor in developer tank
111-0140	Toner Control Voltage Black	

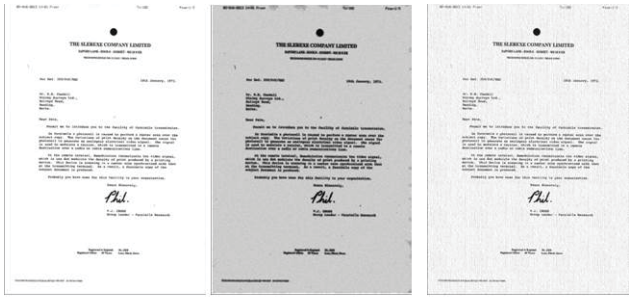
Code	Display	Meaning
112-0340	Center ID Sensor P Read	
112-0350	Center ID Sensor S Read	
113-0000	Finisher Present Sensor	
113-0350	Finisher Entrance Sensor	Detects when paper is at Entrance Sensor
113-0360	Finisher Exit Sensor	Detects when paper is at Exit Sensor
113-0361	Finisher Compile Paper Sensor	
113-0370	Finisher Paddle Home Sensor	Detects Paddle Home position
113-0380	Finisher Left Tamper Home Sensor	Detects Lift Tamper Home position
113-0390	Finisher Right Tamper Home Sensor	Detects Right Tamper Home position
113-0410	Finisher Stapler Door Sensor	Detects if Stapler Door Cover is closed
113-0420	Finisher Jam Cover Sensor	Detects if Jam Door Cover is closed
113-0430	Finisher Stapler Home Sensor	Detects Stapler Home position
113-0440	Finisher Stapler Low Sensor	Detects Stapler level
113-0451	Finisher Stapler Ready Sensor	
113-0460	Finisher Ejector Home Sensor	Detects Ejector Home position
113-0461	Finisher Ejector 1 Home Sensor	Detects Ejector 1 Home position
113-0462	Finisher Ejector 2 Home Sensor	Detects Ejector 2 Home position
113-0463	Finisher Ejector 2 Encoder Sensor	
113-0470	Finisher Main Tray Home Sensor	Detects Main Tray Home position
113-0471	Finisher Main Tray Beam Sensor	
113-0472	Finisher Main Tray Low Limit Sensor	
113-0473	Finisher Main Tray Encoder Sensor	
113-0481	Finisher Paper Support Sensor	
113-0491	Finisher Traverse Front Sensor	
113-0492	Finisher Traverse Rear Sensor	
113-0501	Finisher Entrance Motor	Finisher Entrance Motor On/Off
113-0502	Finisher Exit Motor	Finisher Exit Motor On/Off
113-0510	Finisher Paddle Motor	Finisher Paddle Motor On/Off
113-0520	Finisher Left Tamper Motor	Finisher Left Tamper Motor On/Off
113-0530	Finisher Right Tamper Motor	Finisher Right Tamper Motor On/Off
113-0550	Finisher Staple Unit Motor	Finisher Staple Unit Motor On/Off
113-0561	Finisher Ejector 1 Motor	Finisher Ejector 1 Motor On/Off
113-0562	Finisher Ejector 2 Motor	Finisher Ejector 2 Motor On/Off
113-0563	Finisher Ejector 2 Reverse Motor	Finisher Ejector 2 Reverse Motor On/Off

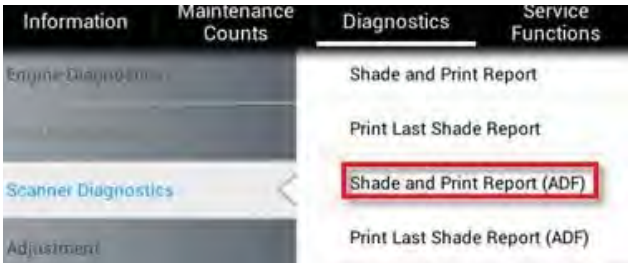
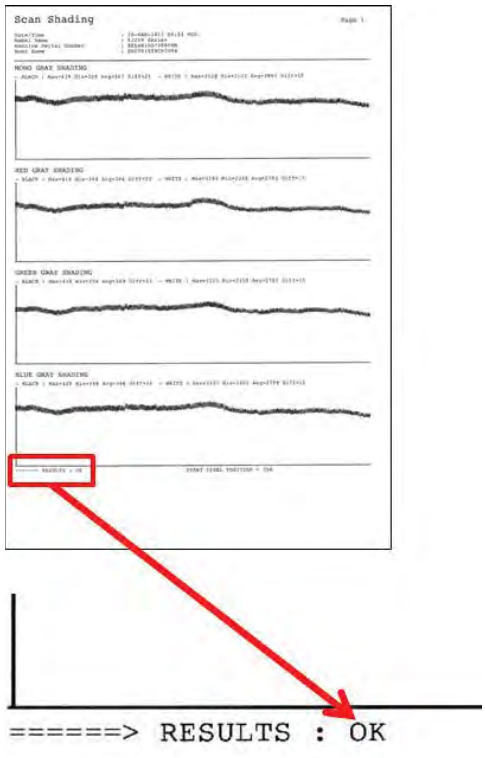
Code	Display	Meaning
113-0570	Finisher Main Tray Motor	Finisher Main Tray Motor On/Off
113-0571	Finisher Paper Support Motor	Finisher Paper Support Motor On/Off
113-0581	Finisher Traverse Motor	Finisher Traverse Motor On/Off
113-0591	Finisher Paper Hold Solenoid	Finisher Paper Hold Solenoid On/Off

Scanner Diagnostics

Shading Test

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Shading Test

Purpose	–	To check the quality of scanned images, especially if there might be defects in optical devices such as the lens, mirror, or lamp.
	–	Check the quality problem as shown below:  Normal Image Defected Image Defected Image

Operation Procedure	**For Image Scanner Unit** Press “Shade and Print report” to see if the current shading value is correct. Mono, red, green, and blue gray shading values will be shown on the printed report. When the previous shading value is needed, press “Print Last Shade Report”. **For Flow ADF/ADF unit** 1. Load the shading sheet on the ADF tray. 2. Enter SCV mode. Select the following menu items: Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Shading Test > Shade and Print Report (ADF)  Press “Print Last Shade Report (ADF)” for the previous shading value report. 3. Check if the printed results are correct. NOTE: – When executing ADF shading, use only the shading sheet (JC63-05055A). – A Shading Test for the ADF Unit must be completed after replacing the ADF unit or main board.
Verification	
Verification	

Scanner/ADF NVM Read/Write

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Scanner/ADF NVM Read/Write

Purpose	To read and/or write values in the scanner and ADF memory.
Operation Procedure	When the main “NVM Read/Write” window displays, users can navigate through the list of codes with descriptions and saved values. Users can also directly input a code through the text box to search for an NVM. After selecting a code, the “Edit” button will be enabled only if the code is writable. If the selected code is writable and the “Edit” button is enabled, press the button to configure the desired value for the code.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Code	NVM Description	Default	Flow ADF	ADF
05-0000	Pick Up Count	0	0	0
05-0001	Separation Roller Count	0	0	0
05-0030	Simplex Registration Value (Regi 1)	0	0	0
05-0040	Duplex Registration Value (Regi 2)	0	X	0
05-0050	Width Guide Max Value	Depends on ADF	0	0
05-0060	Width Guide Min Value	Depends on ADF	0	0

Scanner/ADF Test Routines

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Scanner/ADF Test Routines

Purpose	To perform test routines for the scanner and ADF.
Operation Procedure	When the main Scanner/ADF Test Routines window displays, users can navigation through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can input a code through the text box to search for a routine. After selecting a routine, press “OK” to open the test window that lists the selected routine. Users can start/stop the selected test routine.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	Table below

Code	Name	Value	Flow ADF	ADF
06-0000	Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 1	High/Low	0	0

Code	Name	Value	Flow ADF	ADF
06-0001	Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 2	High/Low	0	0
06-0010	Scanner Cover Open/ Close Sensor 1	High/Low	0	0
06-0011	Scanner Cover Open/ Close Sensor 2	High/Low	0	0
06-0020	Scanner Platen Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0	0
06-0030	Scanner Platen Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0	0
06-0040	Scanner Platen Home Position Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0000	Document Length .1 Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0001	Document Length .2 Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0020	Document Cover Open Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0040	Document Detect Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0050	Document Feed Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0060	Document Simplex Registration Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0061	Document Duplex Registration Sensor	High/Low	X	0
05-0070	Document Scan Read Sensor1	High/Low	0	0
05-0071	Document Scan Read Sensor2	High/Low	0	X
05-0080	Document Exit Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0110	Document Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0	0
05-0111	Document Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0	0
05-0123	Document Width 1 MSO Sensor			
05-0124	Document Width 2 MSO Sensor			
05-0125	Document Width 3 MSO Sensor			
05-0130	Document Pickup Motor Forward			
05-0131	Document Pickup Motor Backward			

Code	Name	Value	Flow ADF	ADF
05-0140	Document Pickup Roller Detect Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0151	Document Stacker Lift Lower Sensor			
05-0152	Document Stacker Lift Home Position Sensor			
05-0153	Document Scan-In Release Sensor			
05-0154	Document Separation Up Down Sensor			
05-0160	Document Registration 1 Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0	X
05-0162	Document Registration 1 Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0	X
05-0170	Document Regi 2 Motor Forward			
05-0171	Document Regi 2 Motor Backward			
05-0180	Document Stacker Lift Motor Forward			
05-0181	Document Stacker Lift Motor Backward			
05-0182	Document Exit Motor Forward			
05-0183	Document Exit Motor Backward			
05-0184	Document Pickup Release Motor Forward			
05-0185	Document Pickup Release Motor Backward			
05-0186	Document Scanln Release Motor Forward			
05-0187	Document Scan-In Release Backward			
05-0190	Document Width Guide ADC Sensor	10Bit (0~1023)	0	0
	Document USM ADC Sensor			
05-0192	Document USM Calibration Test			
05-0210	Document Jig Test Low Speed Simplex	Start/Stop	0	0
05-0230	Document Jig Test High Speed Simplex	Start/Stop	0	0

Adjustment

Print Adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Print Adjustment > Image Position

Purpose	Manually adjust the position of the printed image on the paper in the print engine.
Operation Procedure	1. Select a tray to adjust. 2. Change the adjustment value using the “+” or “-” buttons, then press the “OK” button to save the changes. ○ Simplex Leading Edge ○ Simplex Side Edge ○ Duplex Leading Edge ○ Duplex Side Edge NOTE: ○ Adjustment must be done for each tray (Tray 2, 2, 3, 4, and MP). ○ Do not choose “ALL” for the tray selection. ○ Adjust for the tray with each new tray selection. 3. Print out the test pattern and check if the image is adjusted. If not, repeat step 2.

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Print Adjustment > Print Margin Test

  This menu is used to print out the test pattern manually.

Copy Adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Copy Adjustment > Image Position

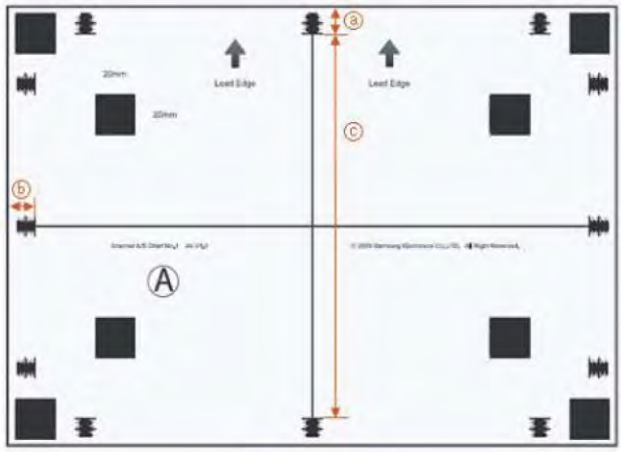
Purpose	Manually adjust the position of the copied image on the paper in the copy engine.
Operation Procedure	NOTE: Before copy adjustment: – Make sure that the initial values of margin adjustment are the same as the values of the print adjustment. – Perform an adjustment for each tray. Do not choose “All” for tray selection, as this can confuse the adjustment. NOTE: – Complete adjustment for each tray (Tray 2, 2, 3, 4, and MP). – Do not choose “All” for tray selection. – Adjust for the tray with each new tray selection. 1. Locate the Scanner A/S Chart at the scanner glass. 2. Change the adjustment value using the “+” or “-” button, and then press “OK” to save the changes.

- Simplex Leading Edge
- Simplex Side Edge
- Duplex Leading Edge
- Duplex Side Edge

3. Print out the test pattern and check if the image has moved. It not, repeat step 2.

Scan Area Adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Scan Area Adjustment > Automatic Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the image position and magnification of scanned images automatically.
Operation Procedure	1. Locate the Scanner A/S chart at the scanner glass.  A4 Scanner A/S Chart Note that the “Lead Edge” arrows point to the left side of the scanner glass and are placed face down. The Scanner A/S Chart comes in two sizes, A4 and Letter. 2. Press “OK”. A scan begins and the system will automatically calculate the proper value based on the scanning result of the chart. 3. The new value saves to the system. 4. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the scanner glass. 5. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image. 6. To check the magnification, compare the length of line “c” from the chart to the scanned image. NOTE: Specifications: ○ a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm ○ c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

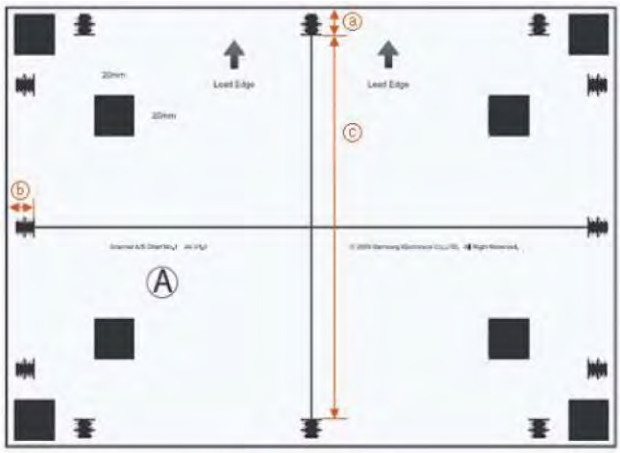
- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Scan Area Adjustment > Manual Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.
Operation Procedure	1. Choose one item from the table. There are three items to choose from: ○ Image Position — Leading Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: —6/+6) ○ Image Position — Side Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: —6/+6) ○ Magnification — Vertical Direction (Unit: %, Min/Max: 98.5/101.5) 2. Select one item and press the “Edit” button. 3. Change the adjustment value using the arrow button. 4. Image position (a, b): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press “+”, otherwise press “-”. 5. Magnification (c): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press “-”, otherwise, press “+”. 6. Press the “OK” button to apply the new value to the system. 7. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the scanner glass. 8. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image. 9. To check the magnification, compare the length of line “c” from the chart to the scanned image. NOTE: Specifications: ○ a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm ○ c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

ADF Adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > ADF Adjustment > Automatic Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the image position and magnification of images scanned with the Flow ADF/ADF automatically.
Operation Procedure	1. Locate the Scanner A/S chart on the ADF tray.



A4 Scanner A/S Chart

2. Press “OK”. A scan begins and the system will automatically calculate the proper value based on the scanning result of the chart.
3. The new value saves to the system.
4. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the Flow ADF/ADF.
5. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image.
6. To check the magnification, compare the length of line “c” from the chart to the scanned image.

   NOTE: Specifications:

   - a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm
   - c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

   NOTE: After executing the ADF adjustment, perform a shading test. Refer to “Scanner Diagnostics”.

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > ADF Adjustment > Manual Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.
Operation Procedure	1. Choose one item from the table. There are three items to choose from:

	○ Image Position — Leading Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: —6/+6) ○ Image Position — Side Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: —6/+6) ○ Magnification — Vertical Direction (Unit: %, Min/Max: 98.5/101.5) 2. Select one item and press the “Edit” button. 3. Change the adjustment value using the arrow button. 4. Image position (a, b): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press “+”, otherwise press “-”. 5. Magnification (c): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press “-”, otherwise, press “+”. 6. Press the “OK” button to apply the new value to the system. 7. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the Flow ADF/ADF. 8. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image. 9. To check the magnification, compare the length of line “c” from the chart to the scanned image. NOTE: Specifications: ○ a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm ○ c: 190, ± 1.5 mm NOTE: After executing the ADF adjustment, perform a shading test. Refer to “Scanner Diagnostics”.

Image Management

Auto Tone Adjustment Activation

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment Activation > Normal

Purpose	To correct image quality when density of the image is poor. Normal TRC Control is recommended after changing a unit, such as a toner cartridge, imaging unit, and PTB, or after restarting the printer.
Operation Procedure	1. Select “On” or “Off” for Normal TRC Control execution. ○ Off: Normal TRC Control will not execute. ○ On: Normal TRC Control will execute during the determined conditions, 2. Change the execution condition(s) of Normal TRC Control. ○ Page Count: The system executes Normal TRC Control based on the count of printed pages since the last execution. ○ Time Left Alone: The system executes Normal TRC Control when the system returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceeds the configured value.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment Activation > Full

Purpose	To correct image quality when any OPC drum is replaced, the life of the OPC drum is changed, the density of the image is poor, or the temperature and/or humidity in the room changes suddenly.
Operation Procedure	1. Select “On” or “Off” for Full TRC Control execution. ○ Off: Full TRC Control will not execute. ○ On: Full TRC Control will execute during the determined conditions, 2. Change the execution condition(s) of Full TRC Control. ○ Page Count: The system executes Full TRC Control based on the count of printed pages since the last execution. ○ Time Left Alone: The system executes Full TRC Control when the system returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceeds the configured value.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

Auto Tone Adjustment

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment > Normal

Purpose	To correct image quality when image density is poor. Normal TRC Control is recommended after changing a unit, such as toner cartridge, imaging unit, and PTB, or after restarting the printer.
Operation Procedure	Select “OK” to execute Normal TRC.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment > Full

Purpose	To correct image quality when any OPC drum is changed, the life of the OPC drum is changed, the image density is poor, or the temperature and/or humidity in the room changes suddenly.
Operation Procedure	Select “OK” to execute Full TRC.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment > CTD Sensor Cleaning

Purpose	To solve the “CTD Sensor Failure” error.
Operation Procedure	After cleaning the CTD/CPR sensor, execute this menu.

Print Test Patterns

Diagnostics > Print Test Patterns > Skew Pattern

- The skew pattern stored in the machine will be printed out as the selected size.

Service Functions tab

This section provides detailed information about the service mode **Service Functions** tab.

Main Memory Clear

Service Functions > Main Memory Clear

- This function resets the main memory of the system to the factory default setting. This function can be used to reset the system to the initial value when the product is functioning abnormally. User configured values return to the default values.

  To clear the main memory, select the country/region where the system is located, and restart the printer.

Debug Log

Service Functions > Debug Log

- This function sets the system log message level. Users can select three options:
  - Off: This option disables the logging option.
  - Job Status: This option only enables the logging of user created jobs.
  - Details: This option enables all the logging options of the running tasks of the system. This option might effect the performance of certain system operations. Use this option when the system performs abnormally and engineers need to investigate the problem.

Capture Log

Service Functions > Capture Log

- This function copies all the saved logs in the system to a USB flash drive as a .zip file. The size of the system log could reach up to 1GB. If the system log size becomes very large, it will take a longer time to copy to the USB flash drive.

  1. Connect the USB flash drive to the printer.
  2. Tap the Service Mode app.
  3. Go to **Service Functions > Debug Log** and change the debug log level to "INFO."
  4. Go to **Service Functions > Capture Log**.
  5. Select “All” or “Period”. If selecting “Period”, enter the start and end date.
  6. Press the Capture Log button.
  7. Once the log is completed, a completion message will display. Restore the debug log level to “JOB STATUS”.

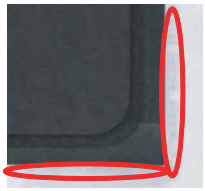
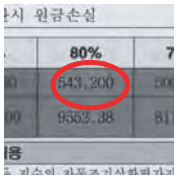
     NOTE: If the system log size becomes very large, it will take longer to copy to the USB flash drive.

  8. Check that the Log File has been saved to the USB flash drive.

TR Control Mode

Service Functions > TR Control Mode

Purpose	To correct transfer related problems. This function can be used to change the transfer value to optimize image quality to a certain type of paper.

Operation Procedure	– T2 Control Mode ○ Choose the paper group, paper side, and paper direction. ○ Adjust PWM value based on the problem type. ● Blur: Increase PWM value ● Poor Transfer: Increase PWM value ● Re-transfer: Decrease PWM value ● White Spot: Decrease PWM value ● OPC Cylic Ghost: Decrease PWM value  Blur  Poor Transfer  Retransfer  White Spot  OPC Cyclic Ghost
Verification	Print a test job and make sure the transfer problem has been resolved.
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Part Replacement Alert

Service Functions > Part Replacement Alert

- This function enables/disables the alert message of the consumable's life time.
  - ON: Alert message on (Level: Low, Empty, Exhaust, Worn)
  - OFF: Alert message off

Envelope Rotate

Service Functions > Envelope Rotate

- This menu enables rotation when printing on an envelope. The machine usually guides loaded envelopes with SEF direction. If this function is enabled, the user can load an envelope with LEF direction and the machine will rotate the image for printing on the envelope.

  This function provides the following setting options:

- Off (default): Load envelope SEF direction
- 90 degrees: Load envelope LEF direction.
- 180 degrees: Load envelope SEF direction with flap on bottom side.



NOTE: If the paper source is “Auto”, the device will feed from Tray 1 because the LEF envelope can only be loaded in Tray 1 according to paper specification.

If the length of envelope is over the maximum size of the customer width, the device will not rotate the image and determine that the direction of the envelope is SEF. For example, the A4 model supports custom sizes like W 98–216 ~ L148-356. This model does not support C5 Env (162x229) DL Env (110x220), No 9 Env (98x225), No 10 Env (105x241) rotation.

Drain

Service Functions > Drain

- This menu recovers toner density. The printer prints grayed images after operating over 500 low coverage images. This menu supports 10 level.

  This function provides the following setting options:

  - Off (default)
  - On
  - Black [1~10]

Print quality troubleshooting guide

Image quality problems and solutions (HP LaserJet MFP E72525, E72530, E72535)

Print quality defects can be caused by printer components, consumables, media, internal software, external software applications, and environmental conditions.

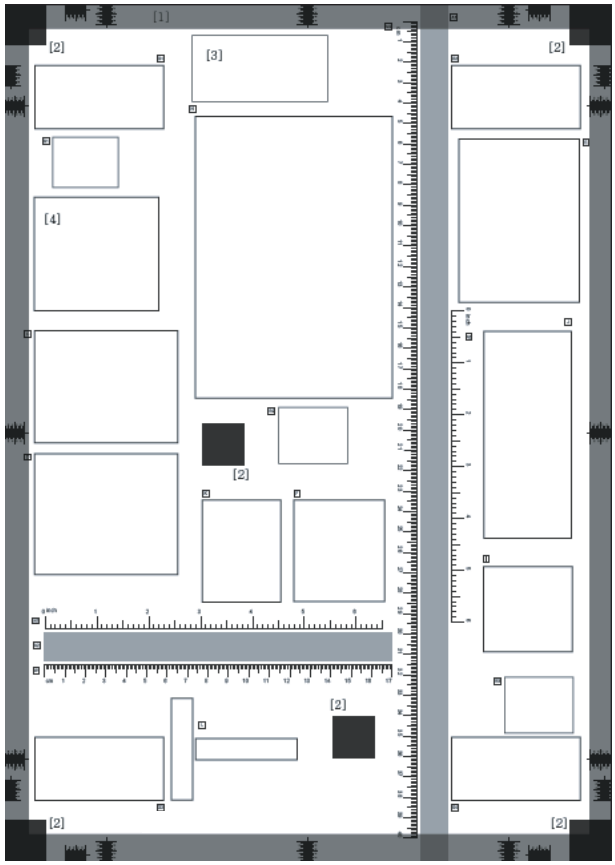
To successfully troubleshoot print quality problems, eliminate as many variables as possible.

First, generate prints using printable pages using laser paper. Use paper from an unopened ream that has been acclimated to room temperature. Make sure that genuine HP toner is installed in the printer.

Figure 3-30 A/S chart (A3)



Figure 3-31 A/S chart



[1]	Grid pattern	For adjusting margin and magnification
[2]	Black patches	For adjusting skew error
[3]	Barcode	For checking the reproduction of the barcode
[4]	Note area	For recording the date, conditions, etc.
[A]	Halftone band	For checking banding and jitter (K 50%)
[B, L]	Resolution patterns	For checking resolution
[C, D, E]	Images	For checking color reproduction
[F]	Map image	For checking fine line reproduction
[G]	Color patches	For checking color reproduction and uniformity
[H]	Gradation pattern	For checking tone reproduction of 7 colors (C, M, Y, K, R, G, B/10~100%)
[I]	Color/Mono text	For checking the reproduction of color, mono text
[J]	Multilingual feature	For checking the reproduction of small text
[K]	White gap pattern	For checking color to color, color to mono white gap
[M]	Rulers	For checking the magnification error (unit: cm)
[N]	Rulers	For checking the magnification error (unit: inch)

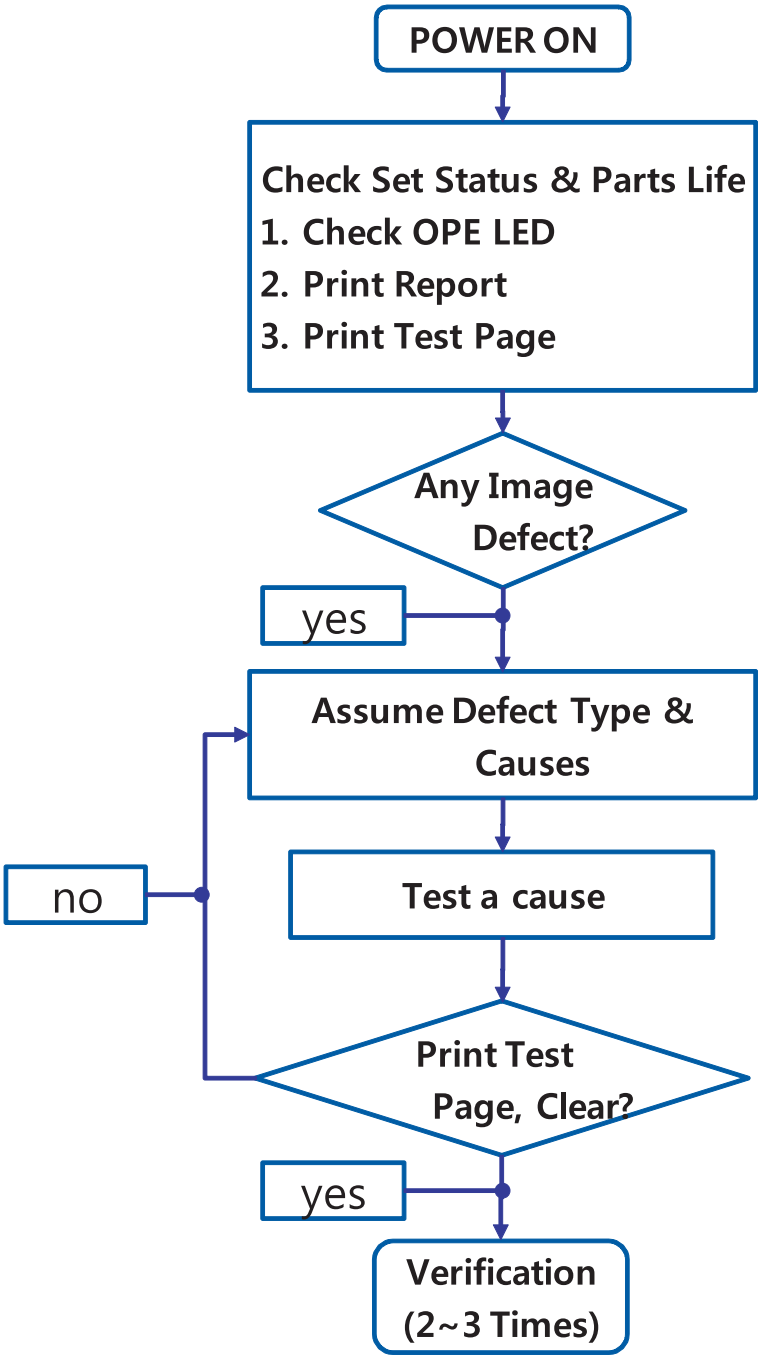
How to analyze image defects

See the following flowchart.

TIP: Depending on the remaining life of the part, the cause of the defect can vary. Check the remaining life of the part.

Check for defects even if the defect is not repeated.

Figure 3-32 Defect analysis flowchart



Vertical black lines

Figure 3-33 Typical faulty images



Table 3-24 Troubleshooting procedure

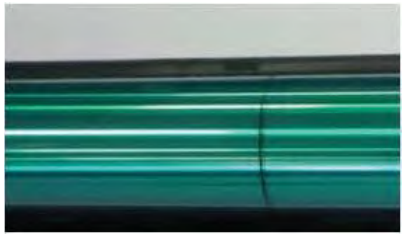
Step	Check item	Action
1	Check the OPC for scratches or contamination in a vertical direction. 	Replace the Drum unit.
2	Check the Charge Scorotron in the Developer unit for contamination. 	Clean the Scorotron with the Cleaning bar. 

Table 3-24 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Check item	Action
3	Check the Charge Scorotron for defects.  	Replace the Drum unit.
4	Scanner unit is contaminated (ADF glass/mirror/CCD sensor) 	Wipe the surface of the contaminated parts with a soft cloth.

Vertical light or white lines

Figure 3-34 Typical faulty images

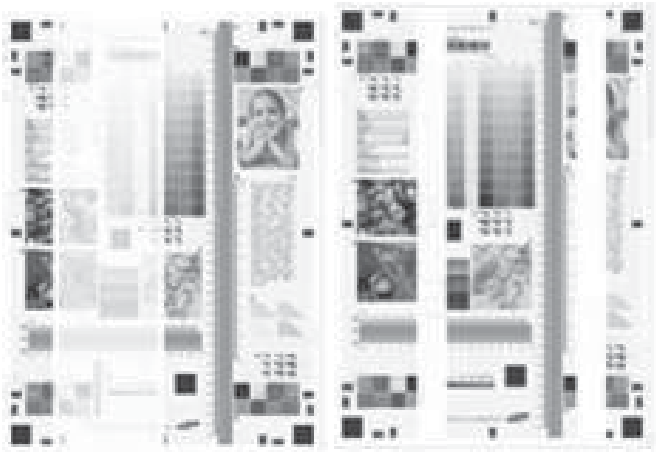


Table 3-25 Troubleshooting procedure

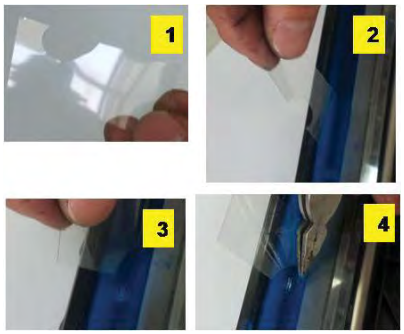
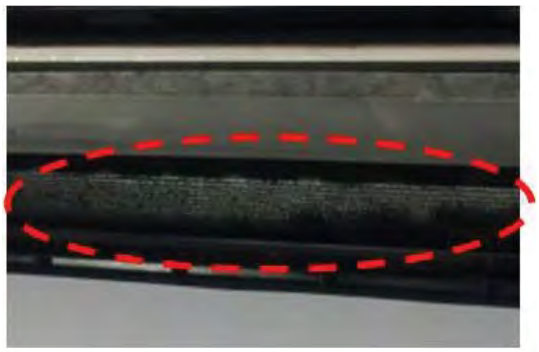
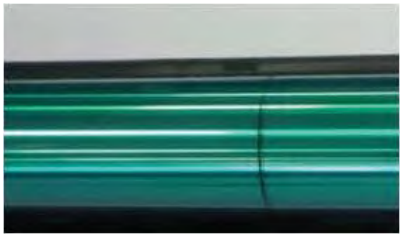
Step	Check item	Action
1	A foreign substance is between the DR and the Blade. No toner on DR. 	Remove the foreign substance. 
2	The Developer is empty.	Replace the Developer Unit. • Check the remaining toner. • Make sure that the toner layer is uniform on the Magnetic Roller.  Normal  Low Toner Layer

Table 3-25 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Check item	Action
3	The laser beam path is blocked. (Foreign substance is on the laser scanner assembly window.)	Clean the laser scanner assembly window. 
4	The OPC is scratched or contaminated in a vertical direction. 	Replace the Drum unit.

Horizontal periodic black lines, dots

Figure 3-35 Typical faulty images

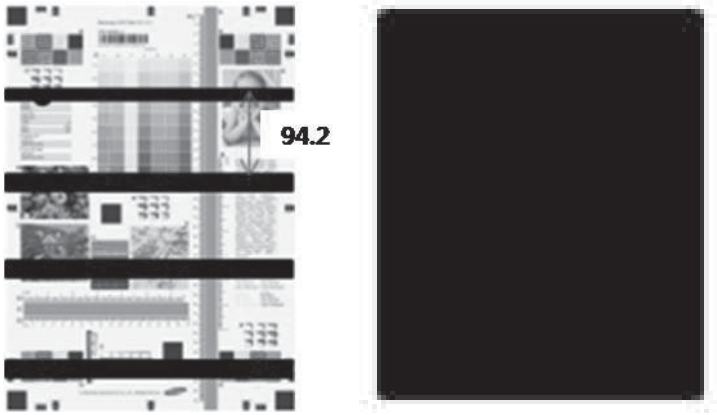


Table 3-26 Troubleshooting procedure

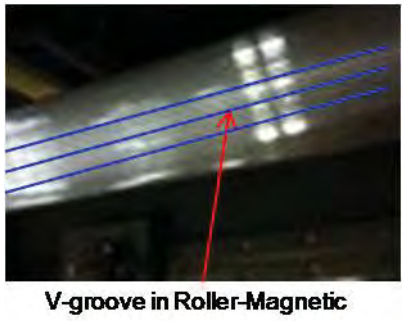
Step	Check item	Action
1	Poor connection between the CR terminal and Set.	Wipe clean the surface of the contaminated CR terminal. 
2	Poor charge voltage of HVPS (MHV)	Check the connection between the MHV terminal and the connector. Replace the HVPS.

Horizontal periodic light/dark lines, dots

Figure 3-36 Typical faulty images



Table 3-27 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Check item	Action
1	Horizontal periodic bands (OPC, 94.2 mm) • OPC was exposed for too long. • Damage was caused by a high voltage in a short amount of time.	This problem is likely to resolve itself over time. If the problem persists, replace the Drum unit.
2	Poor charge voltage of HVPS (MHV)  V-groove in Roller-Magnetic	Replace Developer unit.

Blurred image

Figure 3-37 Typical faulty images

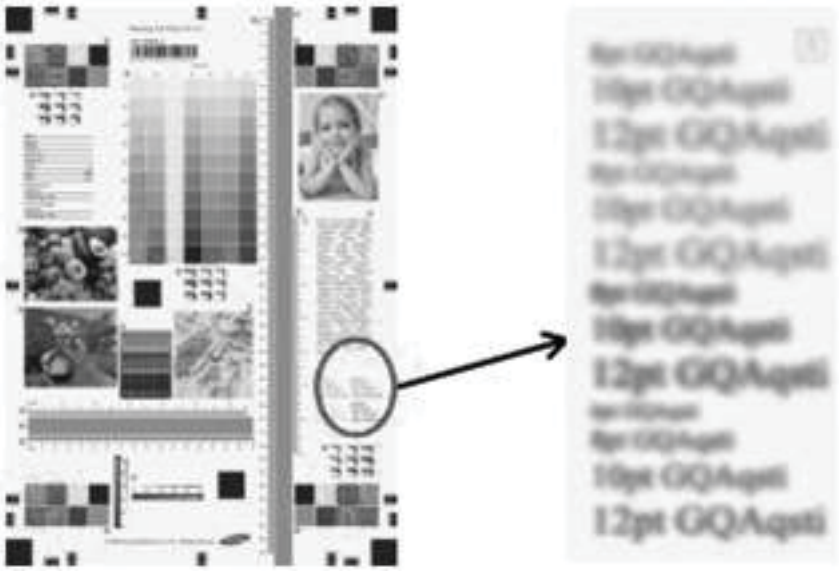


Table 3-28 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	High humidity and/or the quality of the paper.	Use new, high quality paper.

Table 3-28 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Cause	Action
2	THV transfer voltage is low.	Increase the THV transfer voltage.
3	Connection between HVPS and THV is incorrect.	Check if the connection between THV high voltage terminal and HVPS THV terminal is correct. Check if the connection between the HVPS and TR is correct.

Foggy image

Figure 3-38 Typical faulty images

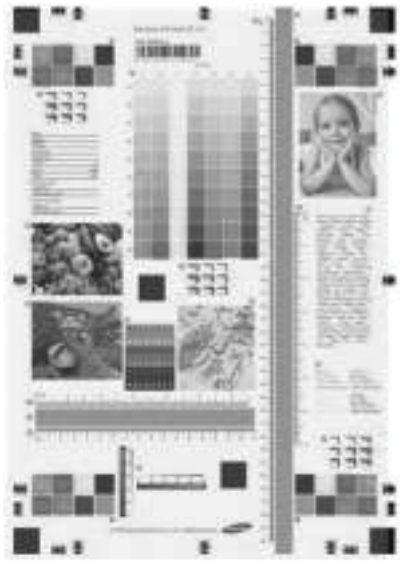


Table 3-29 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Voltage of OPC is abnormally low.	Replace the Drum unit.
2	Toner is over supplied by abnormal TC sensor.	Replace the toner cartridge.
3	T1 voltage is abnormally high.	Check the HVPS connection. • Connection of transfer rollers in THV and TR. Replace HVPS.
4	HVPS operates abnormally. HVPS is damaged or broken.	Replace HVPS.

Light image

Figure 3-39 Typical faulty images



Table 3-30 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	A poor transfer has occurred.	Replace HVPS.
2	Output voltage of HVPS is abnormally low. • Color density decreases.	Replace HVPS.
3	TC Sensor operates abnormally.	Replace toner cartridge.

Uneven pitch and jitter image

Figure 3-40 Typical faulty images

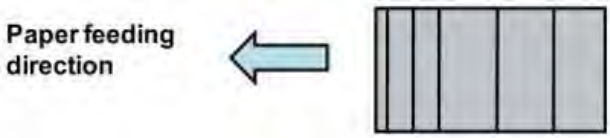
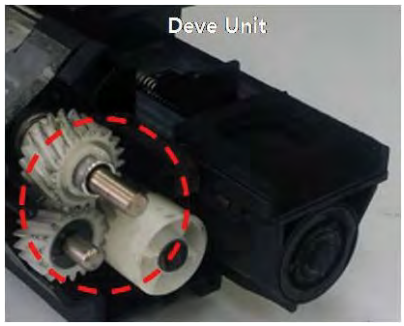
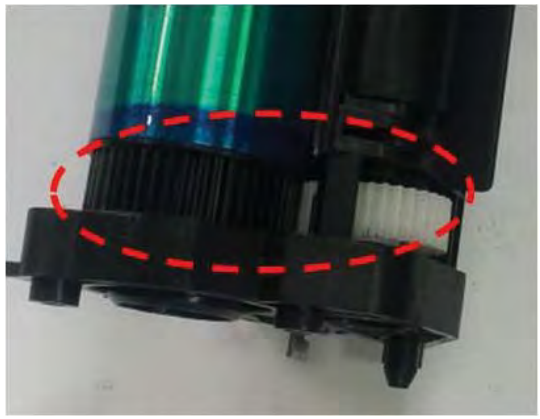


Table 3-31 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Under 3 mm periodic jitters or horizontal bands have occurred.	Remove foreign substance from the drive gears. Grease the drive gears. • Toner cartridge gears

Table 3-31 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Cause	Action
		 • OPC unit gears.  Replace abnormal units. • Toner cartridge • Drum unit • Main drive unit
2	Under 1 mm periodic jitter or horizontal bands have occurred.	Check if the laser scanner assembly is assembled correctly. If not, replace the screws. Replace the laser scanner assembly.

Skewed image

Figure 3-41 Typical faulty images

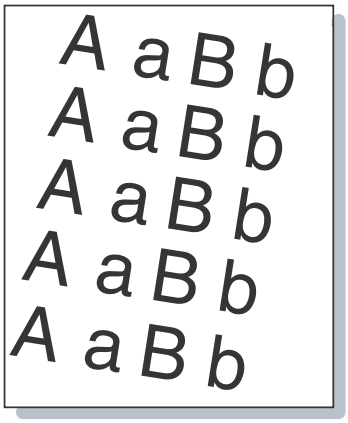


Table 3-32 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Check item	Action
1	Is the tray properly installed?	Reinstall the tray correctly.
2	Is too much paper loaded in the tray?	Remove some paper.
3	Are the paper guides properly set?	Adjust the paper guides.
4	Is the surface of the pickup/reverse/feed roller dirty?	Clean or replace the contaminated roller.
5	Is the paper transfer belt (PTB) installed properly?	Reinstall the PTB unit.
6	Is the flow ADF installed and adjusted properly?	Reinstall the flow ADF unit. Adjust the flow ADF skew. 

Poor fusing performance

Figure 3-42 Typical faulty images

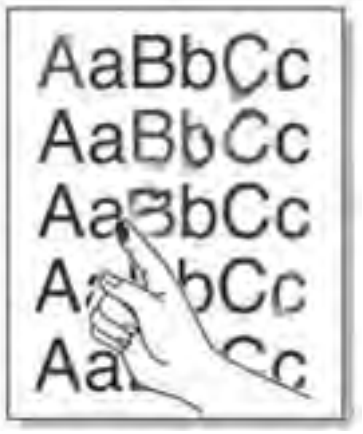
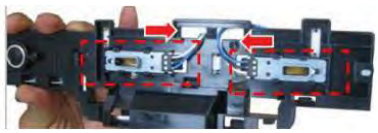


Table 3-33 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Check the paper type. Depending on what type of paper is used, print speed varies. • Plain (71~90g/), Thick (91~105g/): Full Speed • Heavy weight (106~175g/): Half Speed • Envelope (75~90 g/), Label (120~150 g/): Half Speed	Check that the paper type displayed on the control panel is the same type of paper being used for the print job.
2	The fuser unit is worn out.	Replace the fuser unit.
3	Check the surface of the fuser belt and pressure roller for scratches.	Replace the fuser unit.
4	Check the temperature control system for problems. • Thermistor is broken or operates abnormally • Halogen lamp is broken or operates abnormally	Check the non-contact thermistor sensor  Check the halogen lamp. If parts are broken, replace the broken parts or the Fuser unit.
5	Check if the pressure control system operates properly.	Check the pressure control system. If the problem persists, replace the Fuser unit.
6	Paper is wrapped on the Heating roller.	Remove the wrapped paper and print a test page. If the problem persists, replace the Fuser unit.

Stain on the paper back side

Figure 3-43 Typical faulty images



Table 3-34 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Is the transfer roller dirty or worn out?	Clean or replace the Transfer Roller Assembly. 
2	Is the fuser belt or pressure roller dirty?	Clean the fuser belt and pressure roller.
3	Check the pressure roller surface for damage or scratches.	Replace the fuser.

Other Errors

Image problem (HP LaserJet MFP E72525, E72530, E72535)

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Toner cartridge detection error	
2	Paper edge contamination	

Toner cartridge detection error

Symptom

- Toner cartridge is installed, but “Not Installed” message displays.

Cause

- Toner cartridge is not properly installed.
- Toner cartridge CRUM harness is defective.
- CRUM PCA or CRUM Chip is defective.
- CRUM connection (modular connector) is defective.
- CRUM joint PCA is defective.
- Bad connection between the main board and the CRUM Joint PCA.

Troubleshooting

- Toner cartridge installation problem:
  - Check if the toner cartridge is properly installed.
  - If the cartridge comes out automatically, check the cartridge fixing hook.
  - If the cartridge fixing hook is damaged, replace the cartridge cap or cartridge.
- CRUM harness problem:
  - Make sure the CRUM harness is correctly connected.

    Check the modular jack for damage or abnormal assembly.
  - If the modular jack harness is defective, replace it with a new one.

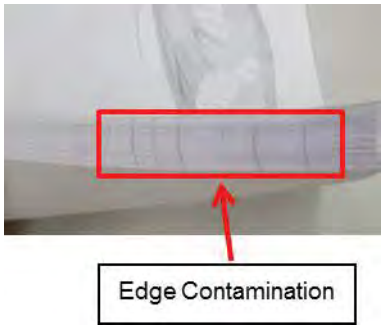
    If the modular jack has moved into the toner cartridge, remove it.
- CRUM PCA problem or CRUM data problem:
  - Replace the toner cartridge.
- CRUM connection (modular connector) installation problem:
  - Open the front cover. Remove the toner cartridge.
  - Make sure that the CRUM connection (modular connector) is correctly installed.
  - If the modular connector is not installed correctly, open the rear cover and reinstall.
- CRUM joint PCA problem:
  - If the CRUM joint PCA, modular jack pin, or main board interface connector are damaged, replace the PCA (see the previous step).
- Bad connection between the main board and the CRUM joint PCA,:
  - Check the connection between the main board and the CRUM joint PCA. If the connection is bad, replace the harness, the CRUM joint PCA,, or the main board.

Paper edge contamination

Symptom

- Paper tail edge is contaminated by toner. Contamination positions correspond to paper guide rib positions.

Figure 3-44 Paper edge contamination



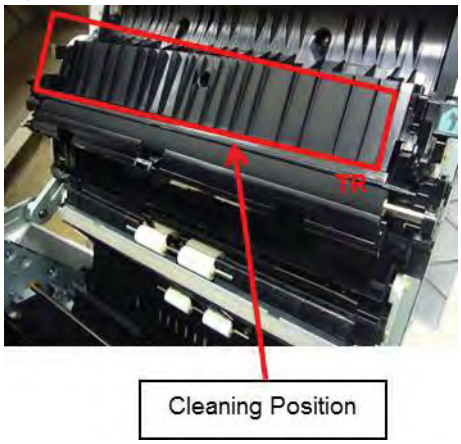
Cause

- The paper guide rib can be contaminated by splattered toner from the Development unit after long term use of the printer. The paper tail edge contamination cab occur when the paper edge touches the paper guide rib.

Troubleshooting

- This problem can occur after long term use. (150,000 images or more)
- The service technician must clean the contaminated paper guide ribs when replacing the transfer roller unit. Cleaning the contaminated paper guide ribs will prevent paper edge contamination.

Figure 3-45 Paper guide rib contamination



Fuser problem (HP LaserJet MFP E72525, E72530, E72535)

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Acoustic noise in Fuser unit	

Acoustic noise in Fuser unit

- **Symptom:** Acoustic noise from the fuser assembly in the early stages of printing.
- **Cause:** Fuser gear is damaged.

Troubleshooting

▲ Replace the fuser unit.

Scanner and ADF problems (HP LaserJet MFP E72525, E72530, E72535)

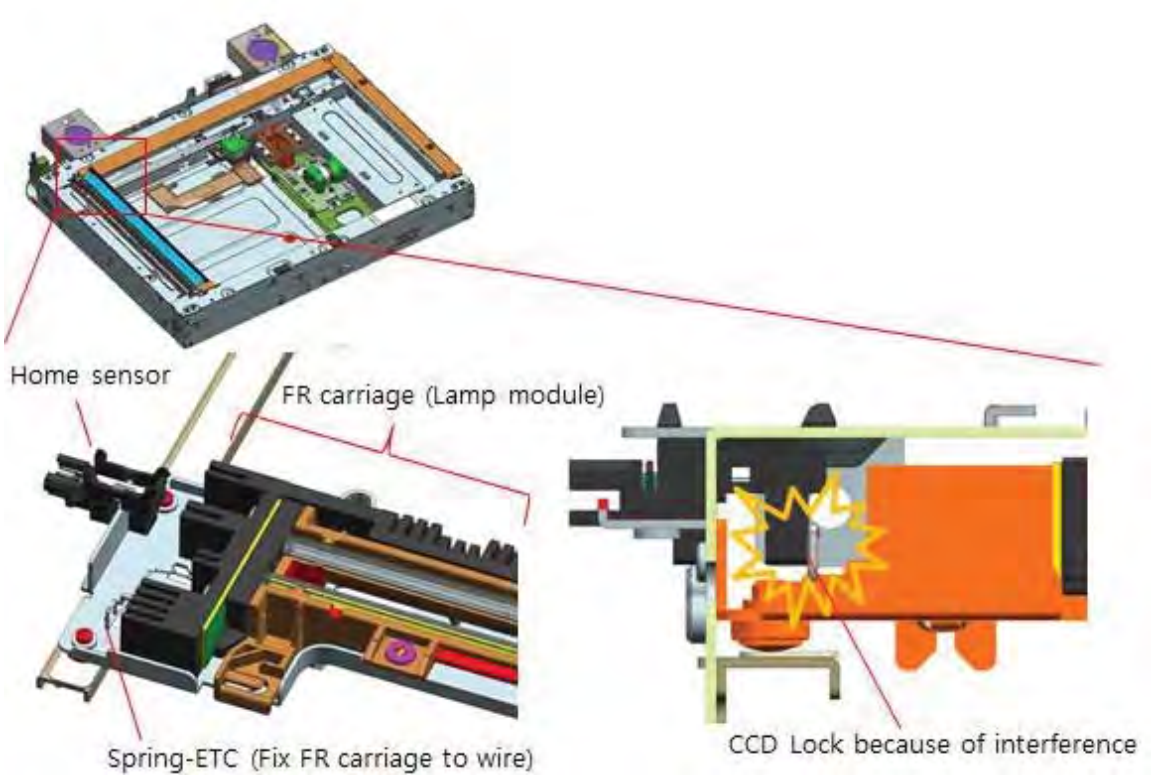
No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	How to resolve CCD lock due to spring-wire	
2	Noise of ADF hinge/Crack of ADF hinge/ADF will not stay open	
3	ADF paper jam (multi-feed)	
4	Scanner Locked	
5	How to adjust image distortion	
6	Paper jam occurs due to registration ROLLER-IDLE of ADF	
7	ADF is not recognized. An S3–3211 error occurs or copying must be performed from the scanner glass.	
8	During copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3–3213 error occur.	

How to resolve CCD lock because of spring wire

Symptom

- The control panel displays a CCD Lock message when turning on the printer. The FR Carriage cannot move on the rail.

Figure 3-46 CCD lock



Cause

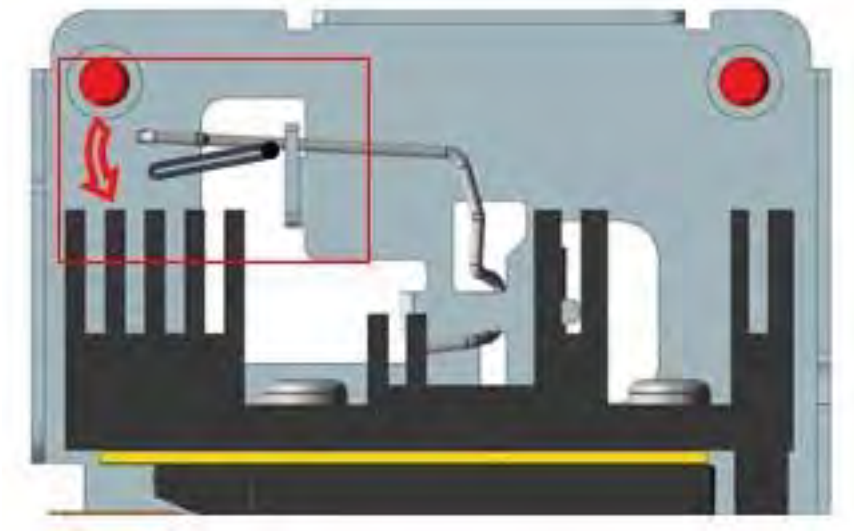
- The printer is tilted more than 20 degrees.
- When completing a scan with the FR pushed.

Troubleshooting

- Open the top cover, showing the scanner glass.

- Bend the spring as shown in the following image:

  Figure 3-47 Bend FR carriage spring



Noise of ADF hinge/Crack of ADF/ADF does not stay open

Symptom

- A noise comes from the ADF hinges when it is opened or closed.
- The ADF hinge is cracked.
- When the ADF is opened to access the scanner glass, the unit should remain at a 50° angle (±10°). The ADF does not remain open as expected.

Troubleshooting

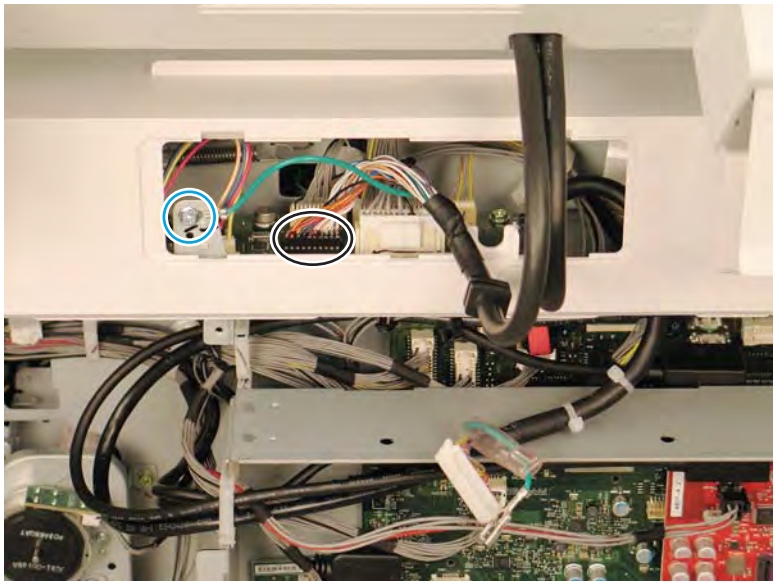
1. Remove the ADF connector cover.

   Figure 3-48 Remove ADF connector cover



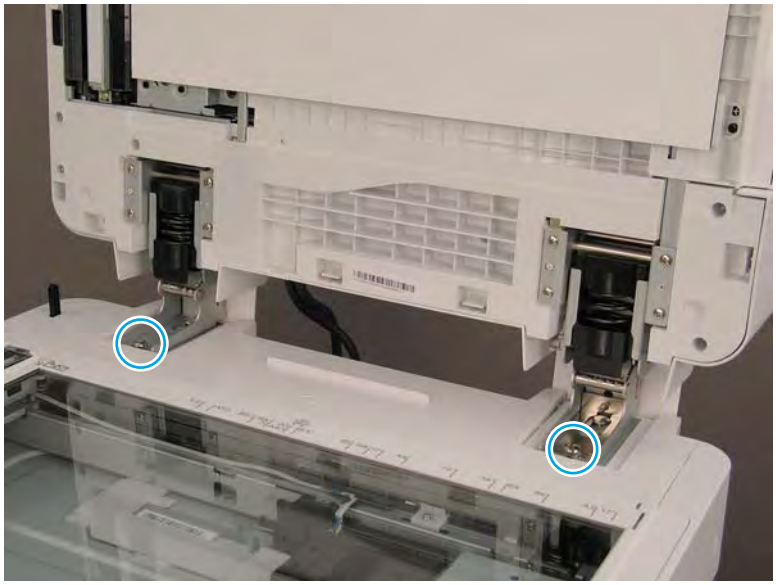
2. Remove the connector and one screw.

Figure 3-49 Remove connector and screw



3. Remove two screws. Slide the assembly back, and then lift the ADF to remove it.

Figure 3-50 Remove ADF unit



4. Remove four screws from the hinge unit. Remove and replace the hinge unit.
5. Reassemble the ADF.

ADF paper jam (multi-feed)

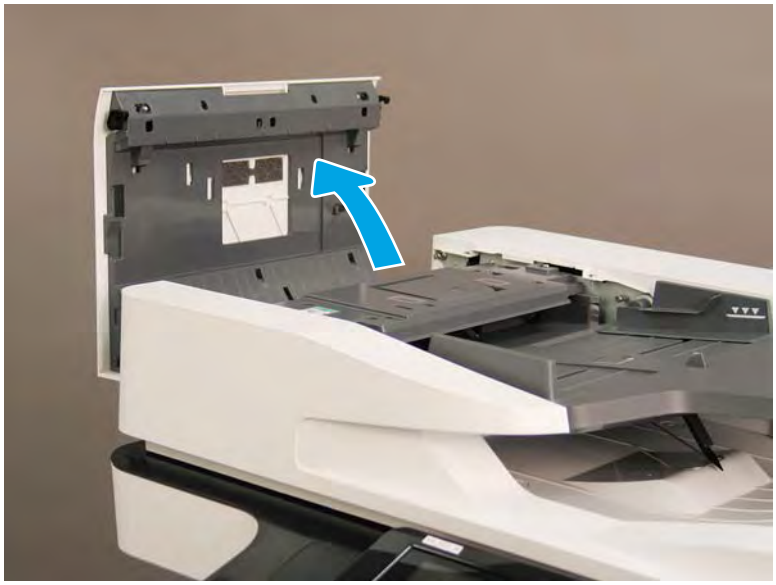
- **Symptom**: Paper stops between the ADF roller and the registration roller causing a paper jam.
- **Troubleshooting**: When a registration out jam occurs during multi-feeding, the guide pickup must be replaced. This also stabilizes the paper path.

NOTE: The friction pad must be replaced at the time that the guide pickup is replaced.

Replacement procedure

1. Open the ADF assembly cover.

   Figure 3-51 Open ADF assembly cover

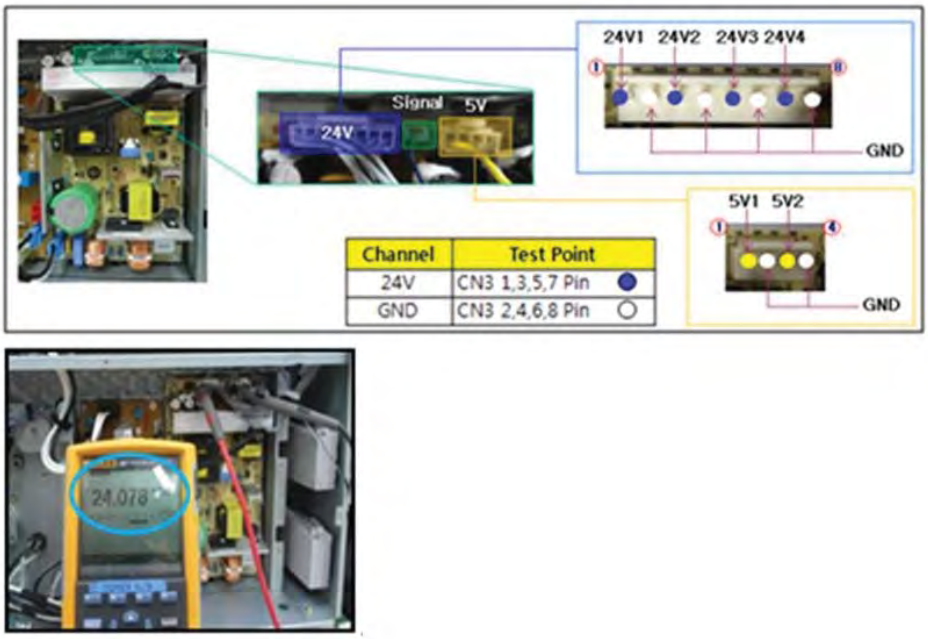
2. Remove the ADF separation pad. Replace with a new separation pad.
3. Update the firmware to the latest version.

Scanner locked/#U1–2115 error

- Symptom: Paper stops between the ADF roller and the registration roller causing a paper jam.
- Cause: All 24V channels output voltage is off (24V output voltage is nearly 0V) and 5V channels output is normal.
- Troubleshooting

  1. Check all 24V output channels (24VS1, 24VS2, 24VS3, 24VS4) whether or not 24V voltage occurs.

Figure 3-52 Check all 24V output channels



2. If 24V voltage does not occur, check the “24V on/off signal pin” on the main board.

Figure 3-53 Check 24V on/off signal pin



The voltage at “24V on/off signal pin” is 0V: Main board and signal is normal.

The voltage at signal pin 4~5.3V: Main board and signal is abnormal.

3. If the main board and signal is normal, and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, check out parts (such as the Fuser motor, scanner harness, etc.) driven by 24V voltage before replacing the LVPS.
4. If the main board and signal is normal, and only 1–3 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect the harness from the abnormal 24V output channel(s) before replacing the LVPS.
5. If the main board and signal is abnormal and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect the harness, connector, and main board.

How to adjust image distortion

Symptom

- Image distortion occurs when paper is fed from the ADF.

Troubleshooting

1. Loosen the four screws on the left hinge, and then loosen the four screws on the right hinge. Adjust the ADF.
2. Perform a copy job from the ADF and check if image distortion occurs. Repeat steps 1 and 2 if there is distortion.
3. If the problem is resolved, tighten the screws on the hinges.

Paper jam occurs due to Registration ROLLER-IDLE of ADF

Symptom

- Paper jam occurs due to Registration ROLLER-IDLE of ADF.

  When a paper jam occurs during original document scanning, the registration sensor and spring tension need to be checked. Otherwise, the Registration ROLLER-IDLE needs to be checked.

Cause

- A screw was tightened too much during ADF cover assembly. The cover presses the Registration ROLLER-IDLE and it cannot rotate smoothly, causing a paper jam.

Troubleshooting

1. Open the ADF cover.
2. Rotate the Registration ROLLER-IDLE by hand. If the Registration ROLLER-IDLE is too close to a screw, it will not rotate smoothly.
3. If the roller does not rotate smoothly, loosen the screw until the roller does rotate smoothly.
4. If loosening the screw does not resolve the problem, remove the ADF cover and scrape the contact point with a knife or sharp edge until the roller rotates smoothly. Install the ADF and adjust the screw.
   - Remove the ADF cover.
   - Remove the ADF pickup assembly.
   - Use a razor knife to shave the cover area which is in contact with the Registration ROLLER-IDLE.

ADF is not recognized. An S3–3211 error occurs or copying must be performed from the scanner glass

Symptom

- The ADF installation is not recognized.
- S3–3211 error occurs and a copy job must be performed using the scanner glass.

Cause

- The ADF power cable fails.

Troubleshooting

1. Reassemble the ADF power cable. If the problem is not resolved, replace the power cable.
2. Adjust the harness and fix it with a cable tie.

During copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3–3213 error occur

Symptom

- During a copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3–3213 error occur.

Troubleshooting

- Make sure the “Sponge-Damper Separation” is moved to other position.

Figure 3-54 Check Sponge-Damper Separation position



- If the “Sponge-Damper Separation” is in other position, do the following:
  - Remove three screws.

Figure 3-55 Remove screws



  - Remove the linker that has the upper side pressed to the inner direction. Remove the front cover.

Figure 3-56 Remove linker and front cover



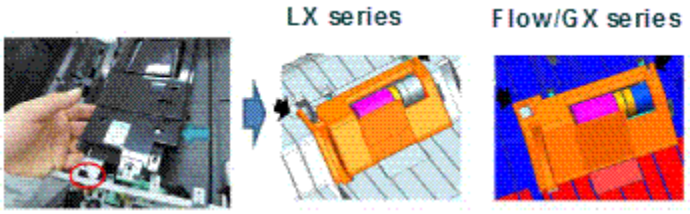
– Remove four screws.

Figure 3-57 Remove screws



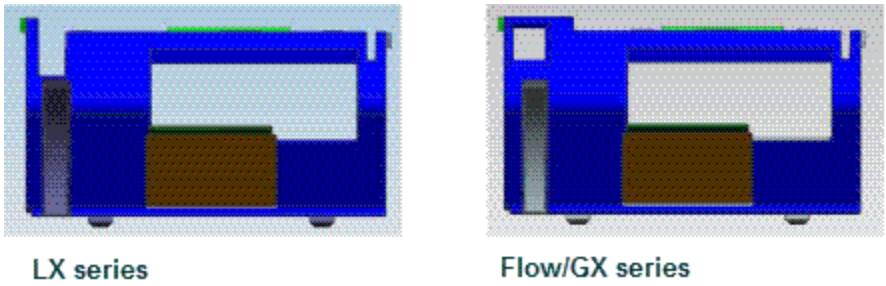
– Remove the Pickup Assembly.

Figure 3-58 Remove pickup assembly



– Replace the flow ADF-HOUSING SEPARATION.

Figure 3-59 Replace housing separation



Drive unit problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Machine makes noise during print job	

Machine makes noise during print job

Symptom

- Machine makes noise during a print job.

Cause

- The gear train needs to be greased.
- An old type gear is assembled.

Troubleshooting

1. Enter service mode.
2. Execute a fuser motor test.

   Service Mode > Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routines > Fuser Motor Forward
3. Remove the fuser unit and execute the fuser motor test again.
4. If the printer still makes a noise during a print job, replace the DRIVE-FUSER EXIT assembly.
5. If the problem is not resolved, replace the Fuser unit.

Feeding system problem (HP LaserJet MFP E72525, E72530, E72535)

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	How to resolve tray locking	
2	Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper	
3	Printer cannot feed paper	

How to resolve tray locking

Symptom

- Tray does not open or does not open easily.

Figure 3-60 Tray does not open



Cause

- Tray operation is not smooth because toner powder is attached to the tray locker.

Troubleshooting

1. Wipe the toner powder that is attached to the tray locker.

   Figure 3-61 Remove toner powder

2. Apply a small amount of grease to the tray locker.
3. HANARL grease:
   - Product name: HANARL SN-250
   - Manufacturer: KANTO KASEI, Inc.
   - Appearance: Orange
   - Directions: Soak the object in HANARL, or apply HANARL to the object using a brush.
   - After the object has dried for 30 minutes, apply HANARL to the assembly.

Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper

Symptom

- Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper.

Cause

- Bad harness connection on the main board.
- Connector defect of the main board.

Troubleshooting

1. Check the harness connection. Reconnect the harness if it is not connected correctly.
2. Check the pickup connector on the main board.

   If the connector has a problem with the soldering, replace the main board.

Printer cannot feed paper

Symptom

- The printer cannot feed paper from Tray 2 or Tray 3.

Cause

- Feed motor problem
- Feed motor connection problem
- Main board defect

Troubleshooting

- Check the feed motor operation.
  - Open the right door and push the cover switch forcibly.

    Figure 3-62 Open right door and push cover switch

  - Enter service mode.

    Press the 1, 2, and 3 keys simultaneously and enter the password (1934).

– Select the following menu items:

EDC Mode > Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routine > Feed motor > On/Off

Check the operating status of the two feed rollers.

Figure 3-63 Check feed rollers



– If the feed rollers cannot rotate, open the rear cover and check the motor and gears.

- Check the connection between the main board (CN27) and the feed motor.
- If the problem persists, replace the main board.

Laser scanner assembly problem (HP LaserJet MFP E72525, E72530, E72535)

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Laser scanner assembly motor makes a loud noise	

Symptom

- The laser scanner assembly motor makes a loud noise while in printing mode.

Cause

- The laser scanner assembly motor is defective.

Troubleshooting

1. Enter service mode and execute the laser scanner assembly motor test.
2. If the laser scanner assembly motor running sound is loud, replace the laser scanner assembly.

Electrical circuit problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Right door recognition error	
2	LVPS output voltage drop error	
3	HDD makes a loud noise	
4	Networking not functioning	
5	Control panel malfunction	
6	Different language displays on control panel when installing printer	
7	Home screen icon not visible or control panel is broken	
8	No power problem	
9	Active NFC does not detect NFC tag	

Right door recognition error

Symptom

- The right door is closed but the right door open message displays on the control panel.

Cause

- The right door open sensor spring plate is damaged by the right door stopper.

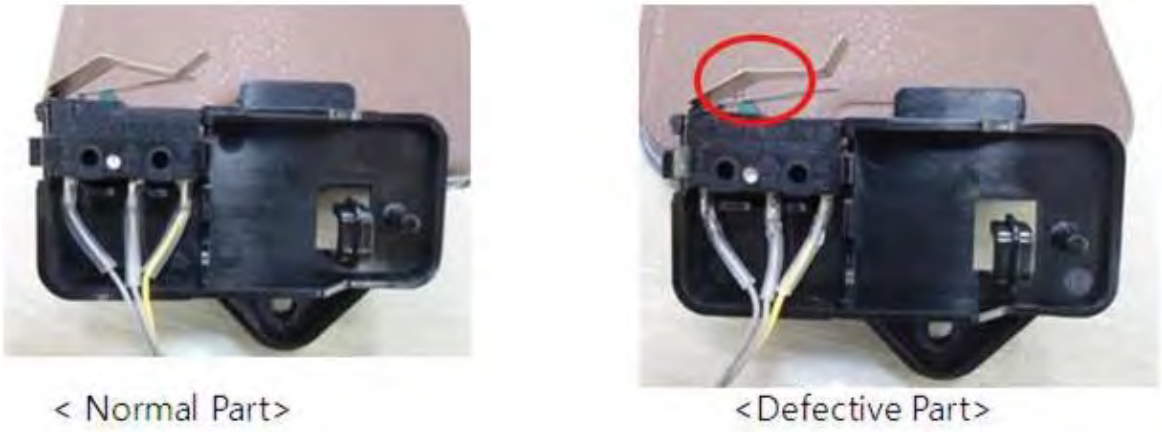
Figure 3-64 Right door sensor spring plate is damaged



Troubleshooting

- Replace the right door open sensor assembly, or manually reshape the spring plate.

Figure 3-65 Right door open sensor assembly



LVPS output voltage drop error

Symptom

- A error message occurs on the OPE (C3–1312, S3–3121, M1–4111, M1–4211).

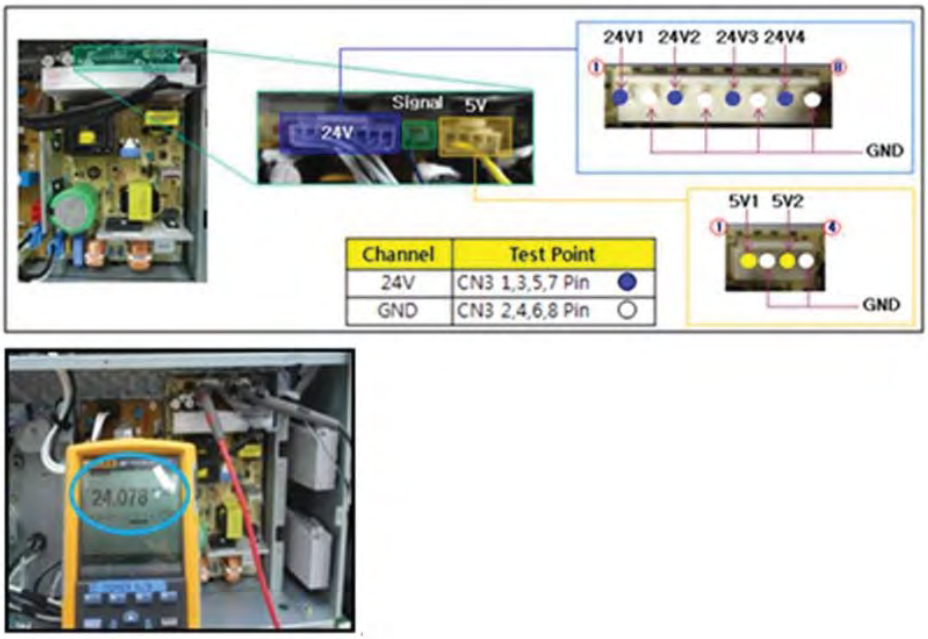
Cause

- 24V channel output voltage drops to under 21.6V and 5V channel output is normal.

Troubleshooting

1. Check all 24V output channels (24VS1, 24VS2, 24VS3, 24VS4) for 24V voltage.

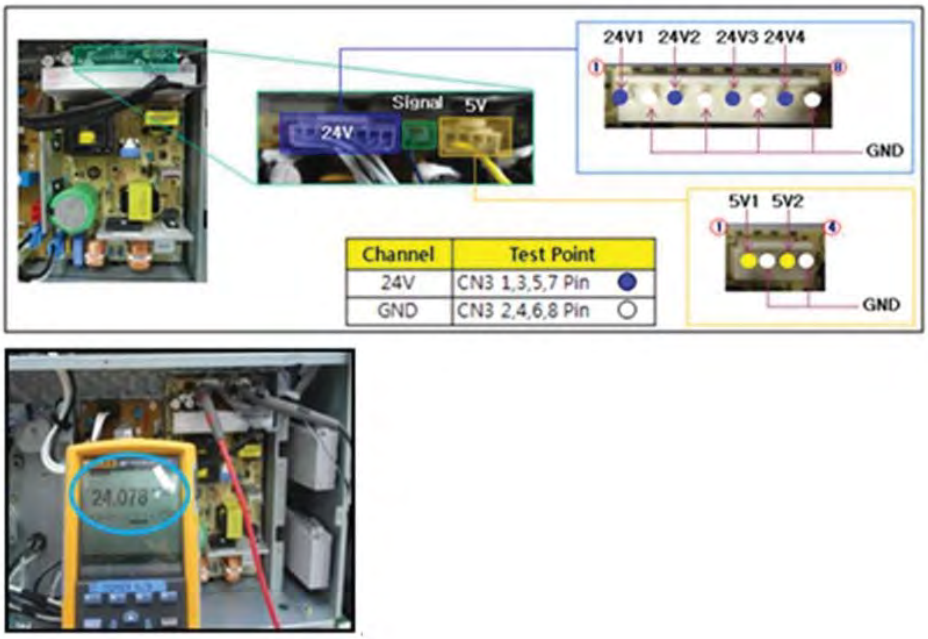
Figure 3-66 Check all 24V output channels



2. Troubleshooting

1. Check all 24V output channels (24VS1, 24VS2, 24VS3, 24VS4) whether or not 24V voltage occurs.

Figure 3-67 Check 24V output channels



2. If 24V voltage does not occur, check the “24V on/off signal pin” on the main board.

   The voltage at “24V on/off signal pin” is 0V: Main board and signal is normal.

   The voltage at signal pin 4~5.3V: Main board and signal is abnormal.

3. If the main board and signal is normal, and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, check out parts (such as the Fuser motor, scanner harness, etc.) driven by 24V voltage before replacing the LVPS.

4. If the main board and signal is normal, and only 1–3 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect the harness from the abnormal 24V output channel(s) before replacing the LVPS.

5. If the main board and signal is abnormal and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect the harness, connector, and main board.

Hard Disk Drive (HDD) makes a loud noise

Symptom

- The Hard Disk Drive (HDD) makes a loud noise.

Cause

- The HDD has defects.

Troubleshooting

- Replace the HDD.

Networking not function

Symptom

- Network is not functioning.

Cause

- Network line itself is not working properly.
- Network configuration is wrong.
- Some related electronic components in the main board have defects.

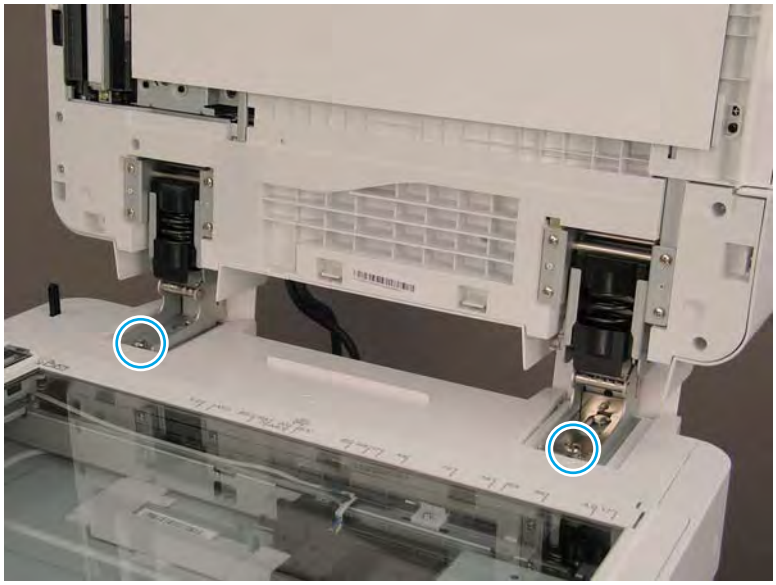
Troubleshooting

1. Connect a network line to the PC and complete a ping test.
2. Complete a ping test after connecting the network line. If the connection is working, check the network configuration which might have been set incorrectly.
3. If the ping test does not have a result, open the rear cover and check the main board for visible defects on the network related components such as the connector (CN16), capacitor (C192), and other close components. Surge voltage from the outside can cause defects.
4. If any of the components have visible defects, then replace the main board.

Adjusting the flow ADF/ADF skew

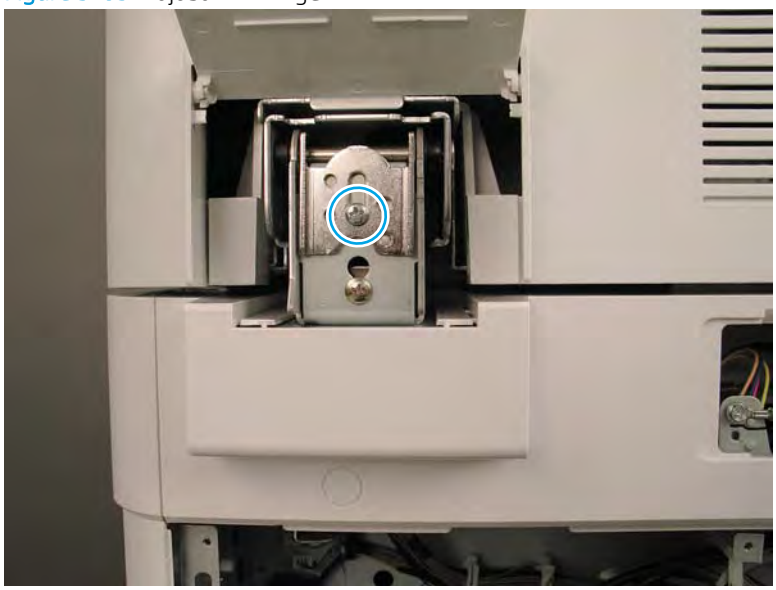
1. Open the ADF. Loosen the two screws securing both hinges.

Figure 3-68 Open ADF and loosen screws



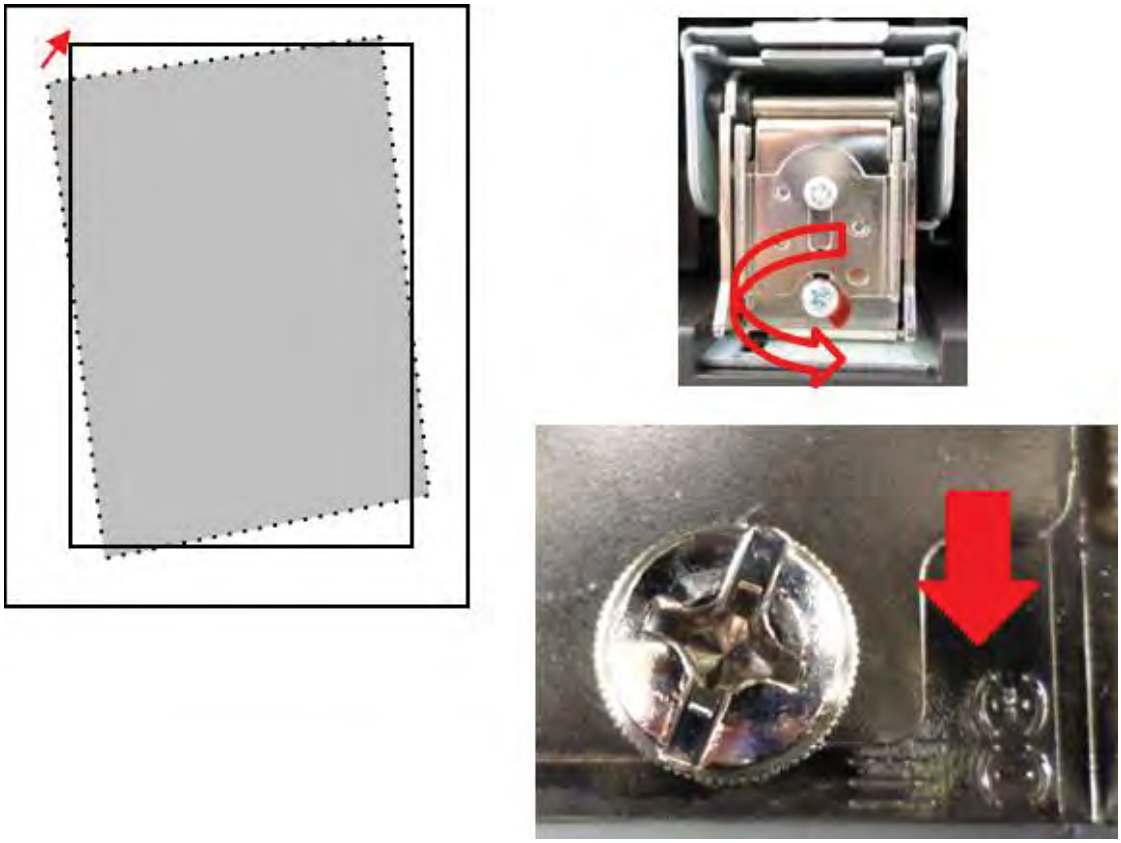
2. Adjust the position of the ADF hinge according to the skew status.

Figure 3-69 Adjust ADF hinge



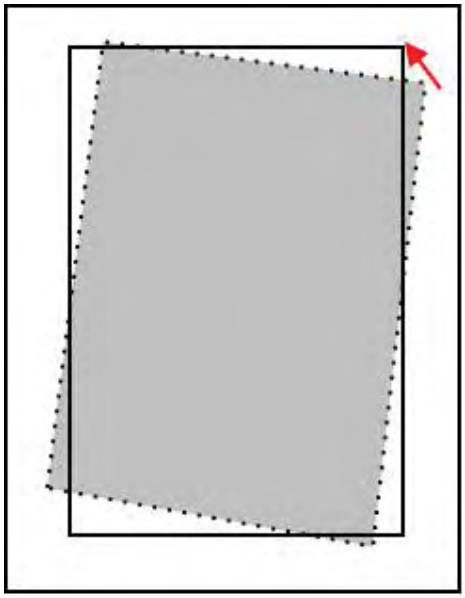
a. If the skew image is similar to the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)

Figure 3-70 Adjust hinge



b. If the skew image is like the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)

Figure 3-71 Adjust hinge







3. Detach the ADF sponge after adjusting the skew. Place the ADF sponge on the scanner glass. Close the ADF unit to attach the sponge.

4 3,250-sheet Stapling Finisher/2,250-sheet Booklet Finisher

- For additional service and support
- Product specification and description
- Service approach
- Part diagrams, removal and replacement procedures (stapler/stacker and booklet finishers)
- Problem solving
- Finisher system diagram

For additional service and support

HP service personnel, go to the Service Access Workbench (SAW) at http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Channel partners, go to HP Channel Services Network (CSN) at https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn.

At these locations, find information on the following topics:

- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty and regulatory information

Channel partners, access training materials in the HP University and Partner Learning Center at https://content.ext.hp.com/sites/LMS/HPU.page.

To access HP PartSurfer information from any mobile device, go to http://partsurfermobile.hp.com/ or scan the Quick Response (QR) code below.

Product specification and description

Finisher system

Finisher sectional view (Booklet finisher)

Sensor location (Booklet finisher)

Figure 4-1 Sensor locations (Booklet finisher)

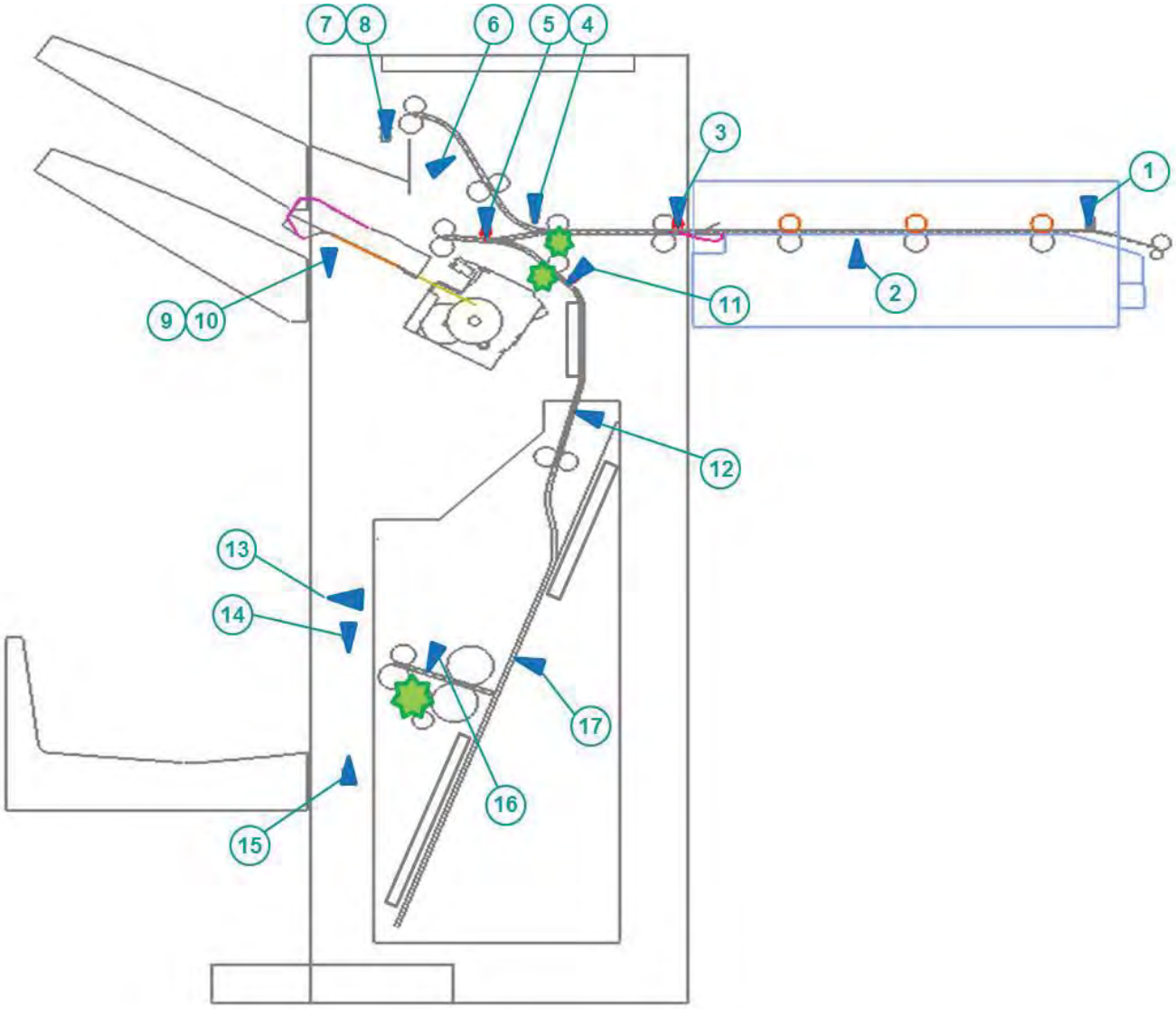


Table 4-1 Sensor locations

Item	Name	Item	Name
1	Bridge Entrance Sensor	10	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Emitter)
2	Bridge Output Sensor	11	Feed Buffer Output Sensor
3	Feed Entrance Paper Sensor	12	Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor
4	Diverter Home Sensor	13	Stacker Full Sensor

Table 4-1 Sensor locations (continued)

Item	Name	Item	Name
5	Feed Main Output Sensor	14	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Detector)
6	Feed Top Output Sensor	15	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Emitter)
7	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Detector)	16	Fold Output Paper Sensor
8	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Emitter)	17	Booklet Compile Paper Sensor
9	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Detector)		

Roller location (Booklet finisher)

Figure 4-2 Roller location (Booklet finisher)

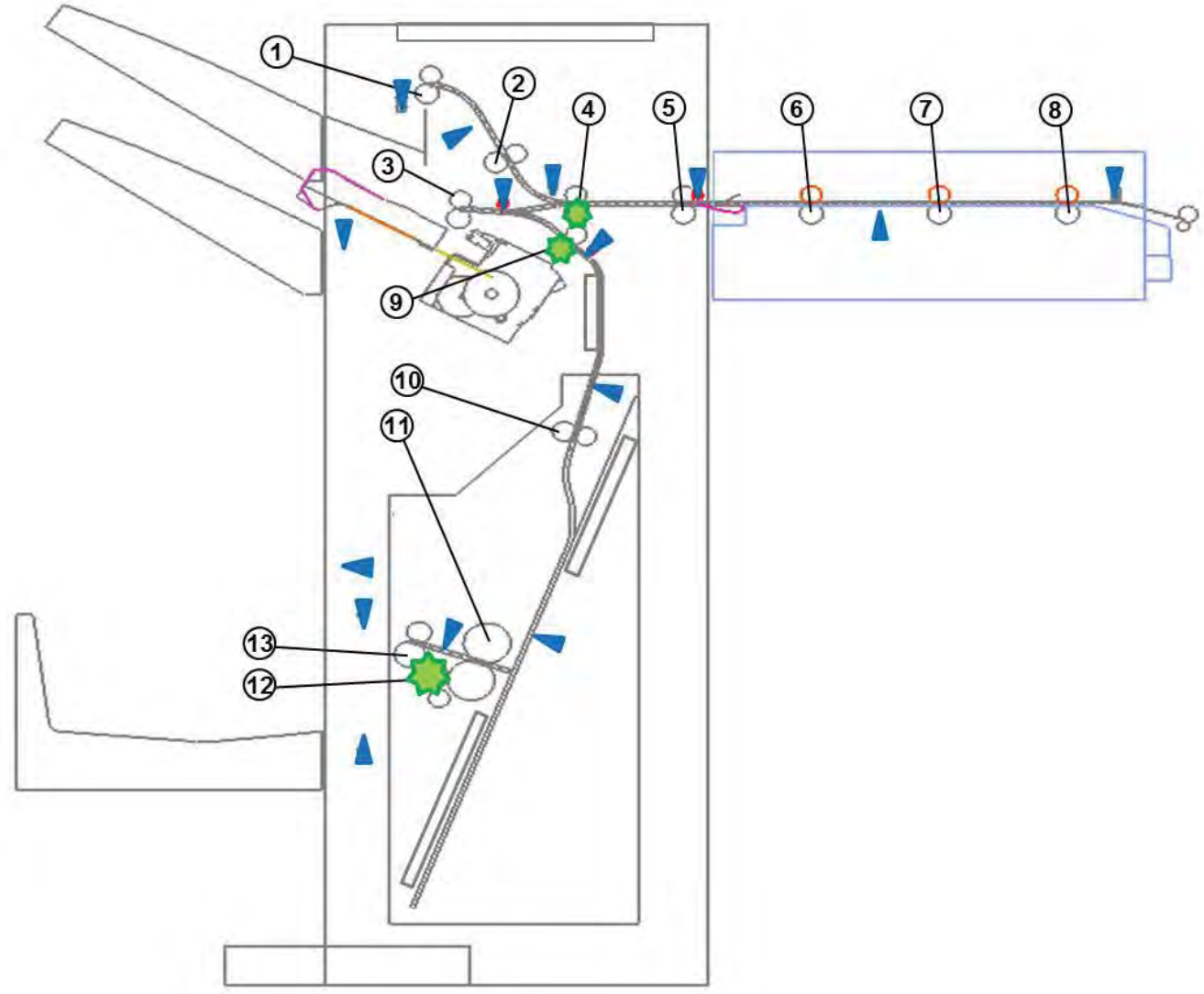


Table 4-2 Roller location (Booklet finisher)

Item	Name	Item	Name
1	Top Output Roller	8	TB Entrance Roller

Table 4-2 Roller location (Booklet finisher) (continued)

Item	Name	Item	Name
2	Top Middle Roller	9	Feed Buffer Output Roller
3	Finisher Compile Output Roller	10	BM Compile Output Roller
4	Middle Roller	11	BM Folding Roller
5	Entrance Roller	12	BM C-Folding Roller
6	TB Output Roller	13	BM Folding Output Roller
7	TB Middle Roller		

Jam removal guide

Figure 4-3 Jam removal guide

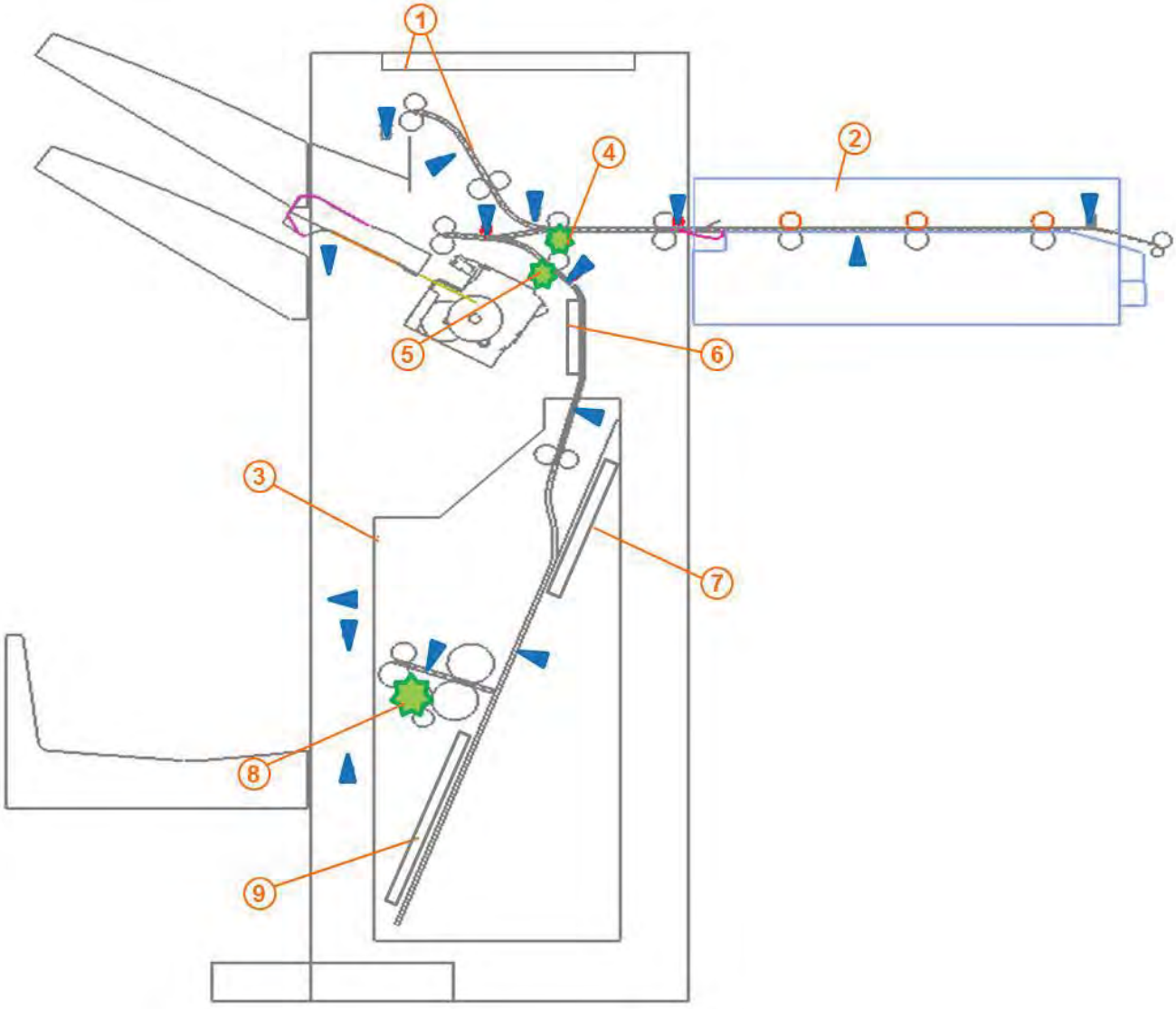


Table 4-3 Jam removal guide

Item	Name	Item	Name
1	Top Door Guide	6	SD Jam Clear Cover
2	IPTU Door	7	Booklet Feed Jam Clear Cover
3	Booklet Module	8	BM C-Folding Roller Knob
4	Middle Roller Knob	9	Booklet Lower Feed Jam Clear Cover
5	Feed Buffer Output Roller Knob		

Paper path

Figure 4-4 Paper path

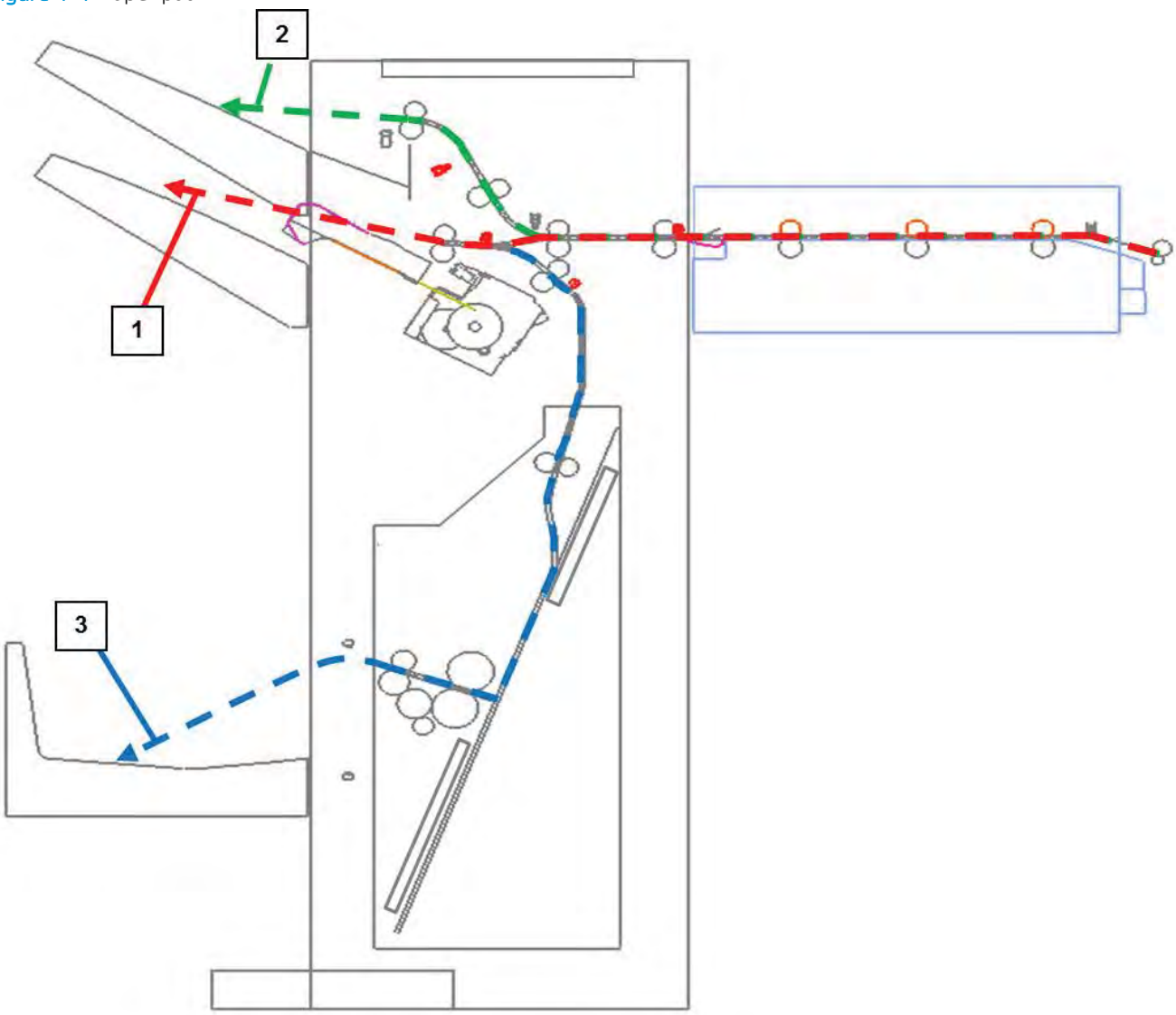


Table 4-4 Paper path

Item	Name
1	Finisher Main Tray - Staple & Punch (Optional)
2	Finisher Top Tray - Punch (Optional)
3	Booklet Tray – Folding & Staple

Electrical parts layout

Finisher and booklet module

Figure 4-5 Electrical parts layout (1 of 2)

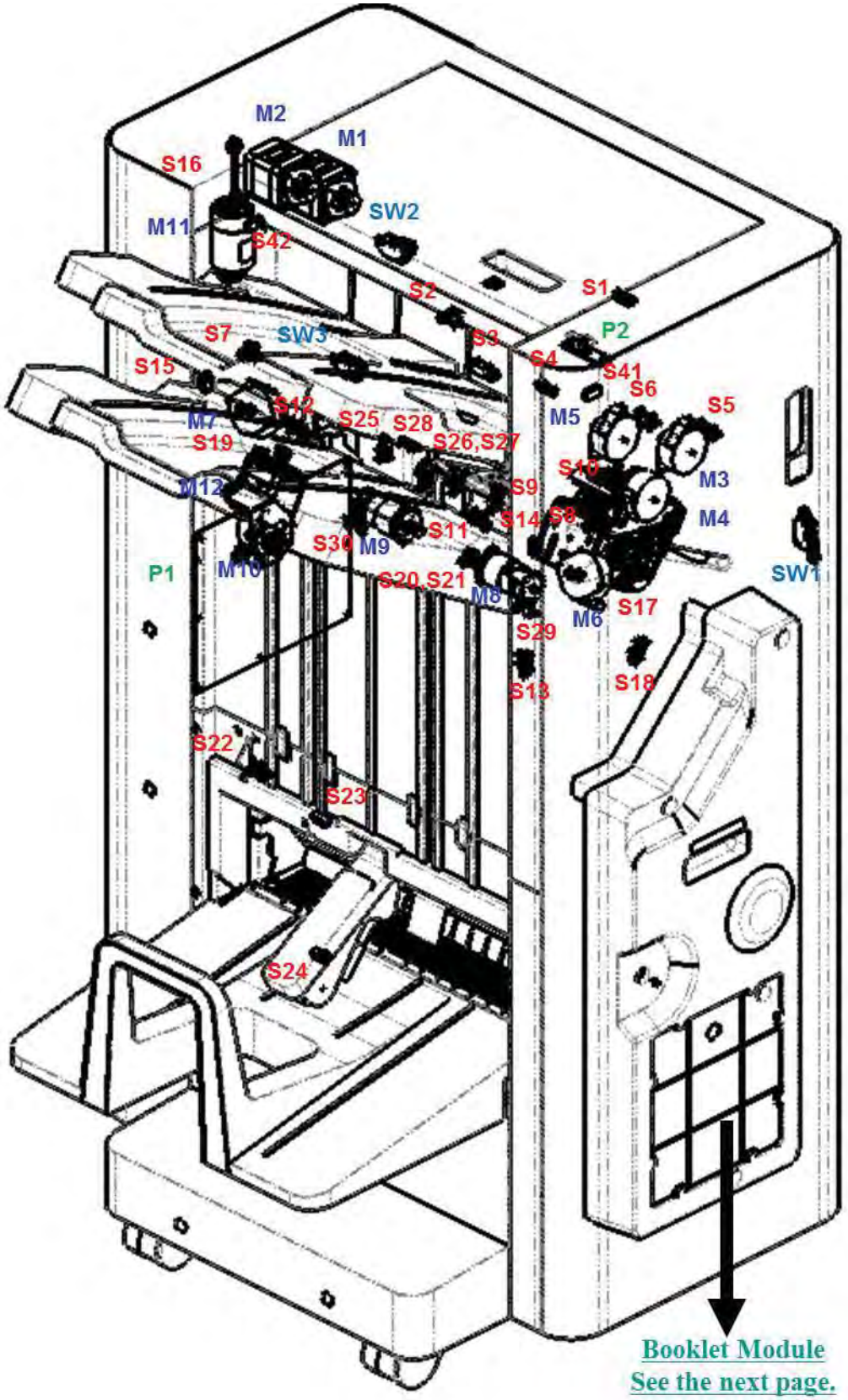


Figure 4-6 Electrical parts layout (2 of 2)

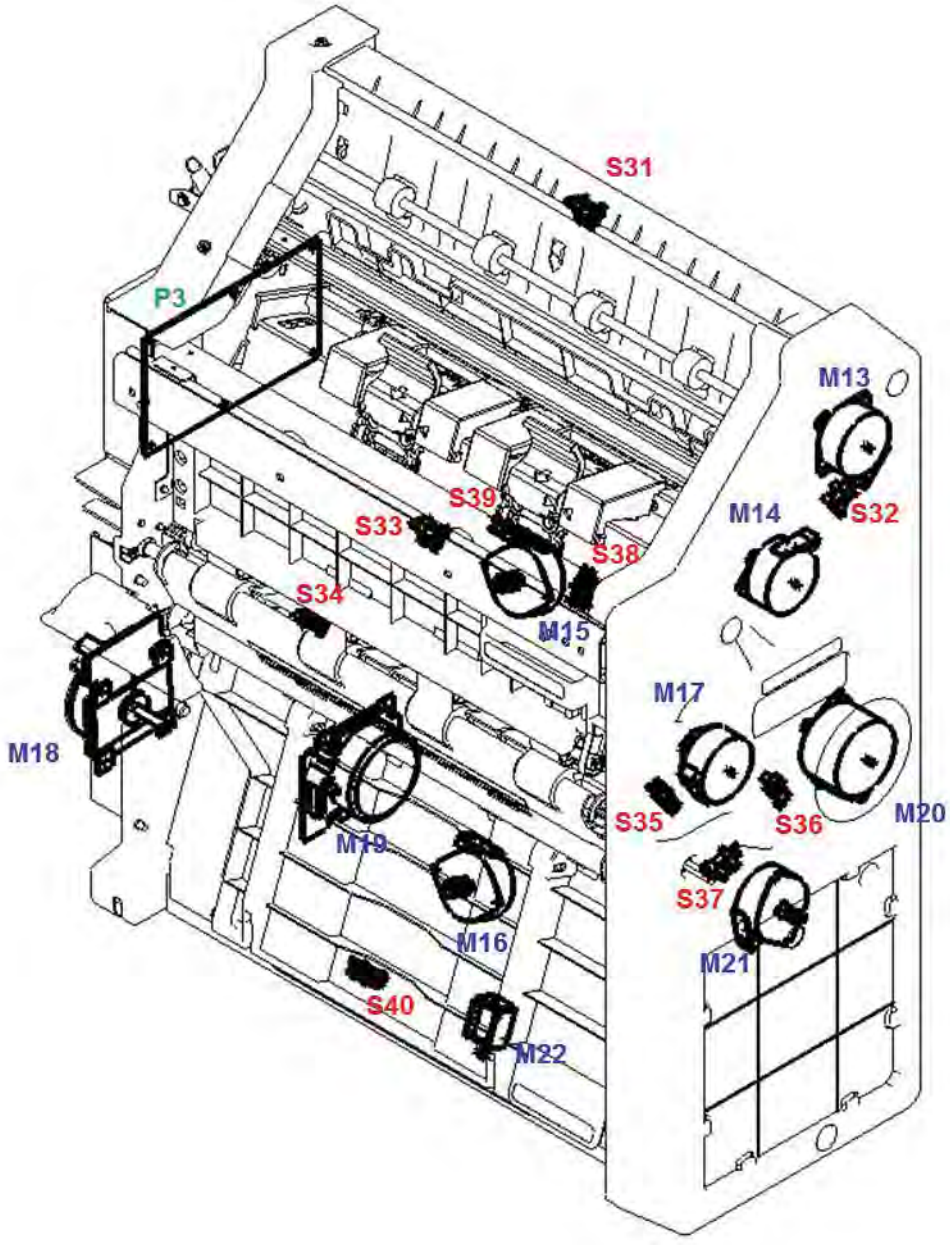


Table 4-5 Electrical parts layout

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S1		Sensor-RP A	Feed Entrance Paper Sensor
S2		Photo Sensor	Feed Top Output Sensor
S3		Sensor-RP A	Feed Main Output Sensor
S4		Sensor-RP A	Feed Buffer Output Sensor
S5		Photo Sensor	Diverter Home Sensor
S6		Photo Sensor	Buffer Home Sensor
S7		Photo Sensor	Rear Tamper Home Sensor

Table 4-5 Electrical parts layout (continued)

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S8		Photo Sensor	Front Tamper Home Sensor
S9		AS-Sensor	EF Home Sensor
S10		Photo Sensor	Main Paddle Home Sensor
S11		Photo Sensor	Main Tray Front Level Sensor
S12		Photo Sensor	Main Tray Rear Level Sensor
S13		Photo Sensor	SCU Home Sensor
S14		AS-Sensor	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Detector)
S15		AS-Sensor	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Emitter)
S16		Photo Sensor	Main Tray Encoder Sensor
S17		Photo Sensor	Offline Staple Position Sensor
S18		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Offline Sensor
S19		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Home Sensor
S20		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Mid-Rear Sensor
S21		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Mid-Front Sensor
S22		Photo Sensor	Stacker Full Sensor
S23		AS-Sensor	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Detector)
S24		AS-Sensor	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Emitter)
S25		Photo Sensor	Grip Home Sensor
S26		Photo Sensor	PE EJT Home Sensor
S27		Photo Sensor	PE EJT Away Sensor
S28		Sensor-RP A	Compile Paper Sensor
S29		Photo Sensor	GE Encoder Sensor
S30		Photo Sensor	PE Encoder Sensor
S31		Photo Sensor	Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor
S32		Photo Sensor	TE Presser Home Sensor
S33		Photo Sensor	Blade Home Sensor
S34		Sensor-RP A	Fold Output Paper Sensor
S35		Photo Sensor	Separate Pawl Home Sensor
S36		Photo Sensor	Guide Home Sensor
S37		Photo Sensor	Booklet Paddle Home Sensor
S38		Photo Sensor	Booklet Tamper Home Sensor
S39		Sensor-RP A	Booklet Compile Paper Sensor
S40		Photo Sensor	Stopper Home Sensor

Table 4-5 Electrical parts layout (continued)

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S41		AS-Sensor	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Detector)
S42		AS-Sensor	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Emitter)
SW1		Micro Switch	Front Door I/L Switch
SW2		Micro Switch	Top Door I/L Switch
SW3		Micro Switch	Stacker Upper Limit Switch
P1		3K Main PCA	Finisher Main PCA
P2		Switch PCA	Offline Staple OP PCA
P3		Booklet PCA	Booklet Main PCA
M1		Assembly, HB Motor	Feed Entrance Motor
M2		Assembly, HB Motor	Feed Output Motor
M3		Assembly, PM Motor	Buffer Motor
M4		Assembly, PM Motor	End Fence Motor
M5		Assembly, PM Motor	Main Paddle Motor
M6		Assembly, PM Motor	Front Tamper Motor
M7		Assembly, PM Motor	Rear Tamper Motor
M8		AS-Motor DC Ejector	Grip-Eject Motor
M9		AS-Motor DC Ejector	Pre-Eject Motor
M10		Assembly, PM Motor	SCU Motor
M11		Assembly, 3657 DC Motor	Main Tray Moving Motor
M12		Assembly, HB Motor	Stapler Move Motor
M13		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Feed Entrance Motor
M14		Assembly, PM Motor	TE Presser Motor
M15		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Tamper Motor
M16		Assembly, PM Motor	Stopper Moving Motor
M17		Assembly, PM Motor	Separate Pawl Motor
M18		Motor BLDC-Main	Folding Roller Motor
M19		Motor BLDC-Main	Blade Motor
M20		Assembly, PM Motor	C Fold Motor
M21		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Paddle Motor
M22		Solenoid	Stopper Solenoid

Bridge Unit

Figure 4-7 Bridge Unit

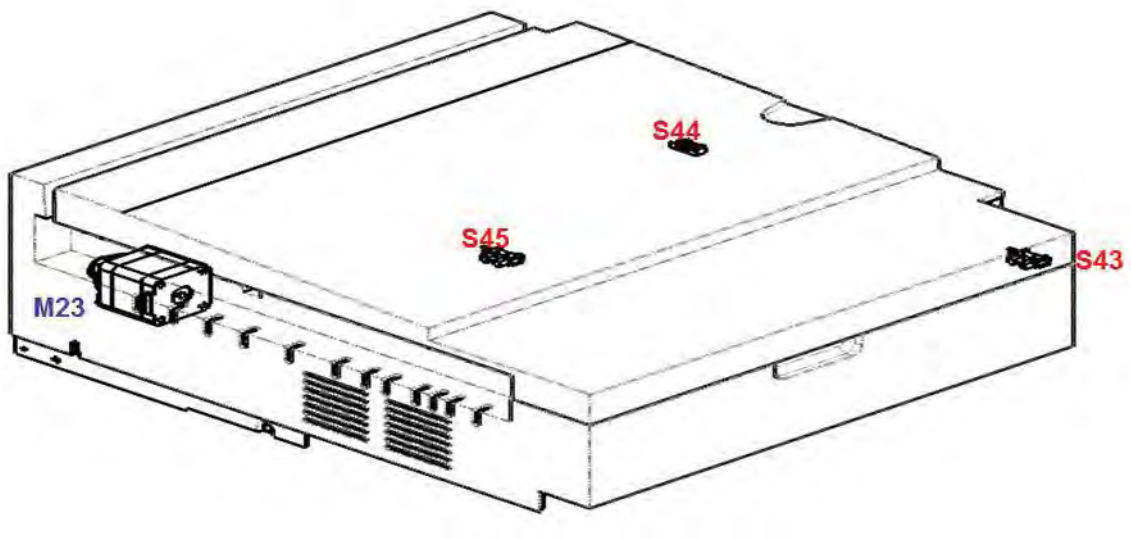


Table 4-6 Bridge Unit

Item	Part code	Description	Function
M23		Assembly, HB Motor	Bridge Feed Motor
S43		Photo Sensor	Bridge Door Sensor
S44		Sensor-RP A	Bridge Entrance Sensor
S45		Photo Sensor	Bridge Output Sensor

Punch unit

Figure 4-8 Punch unit

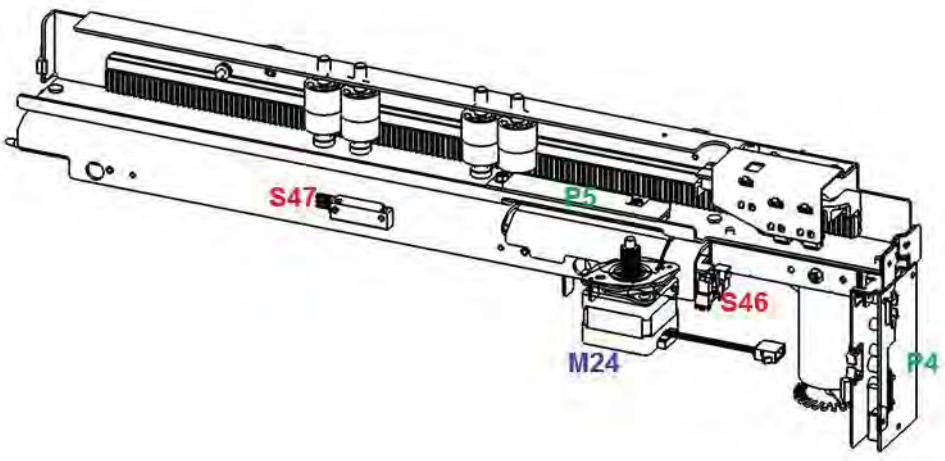


Table 4-7 Punch unit

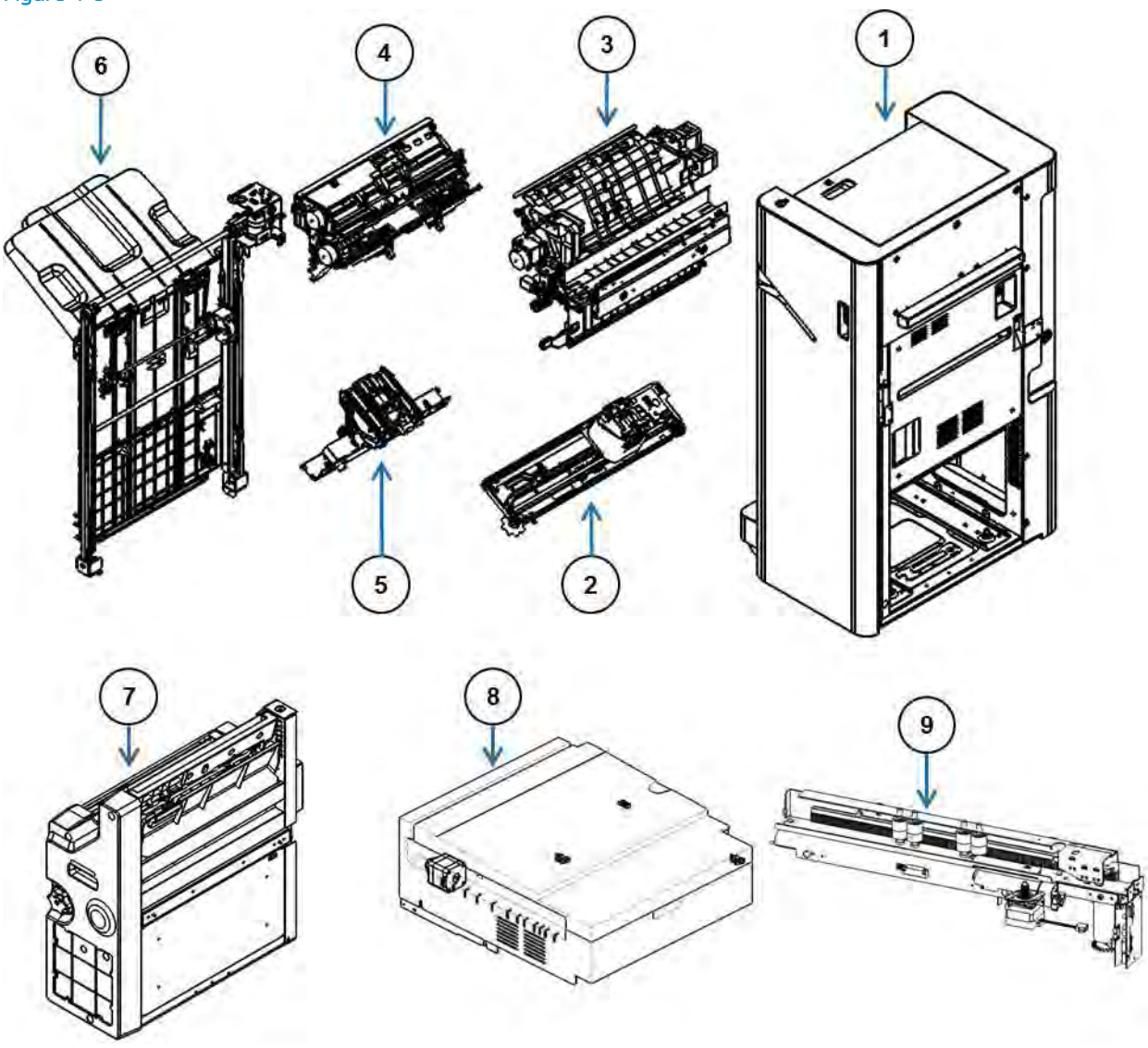
Item	Part code	Description	Function
M24		AS-HB Motor	Punch Scan Motor

Table 4-7 Punch unit (continued)

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S46		AS-Sensor	Punch Scan Home Motor
S47		AS-Sensor	Hole Punch Hopper Sensor
P4		AS-PCB Punch	Punch PCA
P5		AS-PCB Punch Sensor	Punch Scan Sensor PCA

Each unit functions

Figure 4-9



Item	Unit	Function
1	Frame unit	Finisher main frame and exterior.
2	Stapler unit	Device used for putting staples in to sheets of paper.

(continued)

Item	Unit	Function
3	Feed unit	Transports the paper to the compile and eject unit.
4	Compile unit	Compiles the paper.
5	Eject unit	Transports the stacked paper to the tray.
6	Stacker unit	Stacks the stapled papers on the tray.
7	Booklet unit	Folds paper, completes stapling jobs, and transports paper to the tray.
8	Bridge Unit	Transports the paper from the main machine to the finisher entrance.
9	Punch unit	Device used for punching on the paper.

PCA connection information

Finisher PCA

Figure 4-10 Finisher PCA

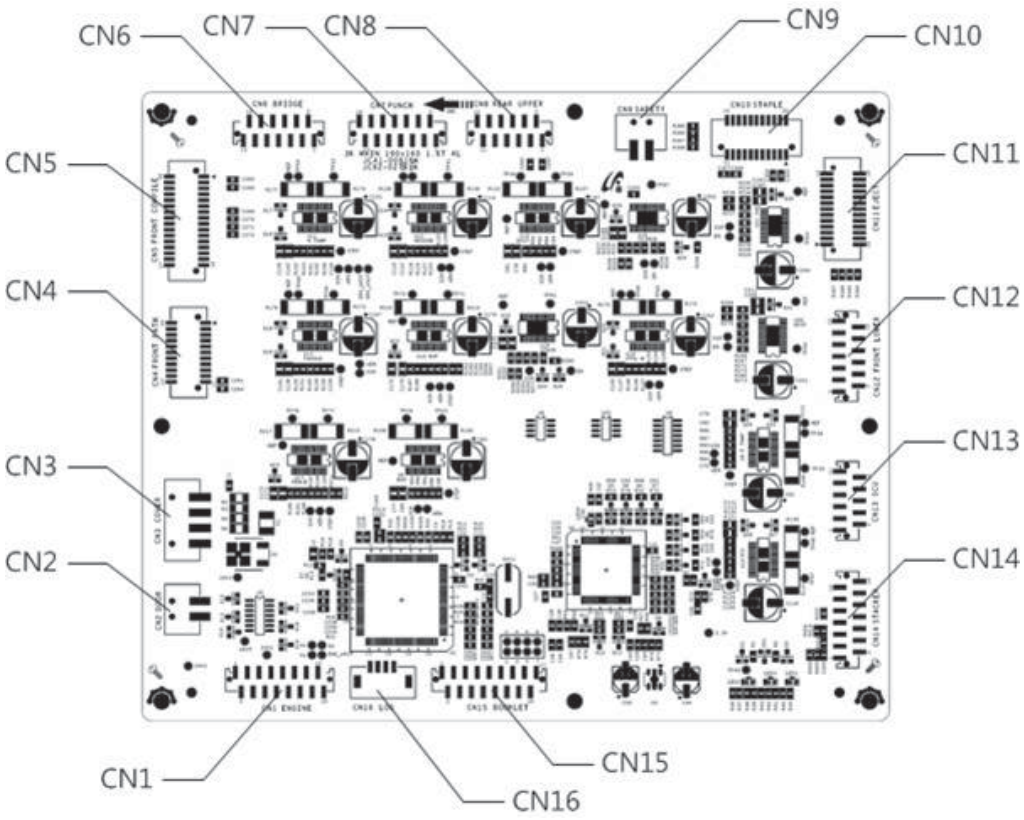


Table 4-9 Finisher PCA

CN No.	Connection	CN No.	Connection
CN1	PSU, ENGINE INTERFACE	CN9	SAFETY SWITCH
CN2	FRONT DOOR SWITCH	CN10	STAPLER

Table 4-9 Finisher PCA (continued)

CN No.	Connection	CN No.	Connection
CN3	TOP DOOR SWITCH	CN11	EJECTOR
CN4	FRONT PATH	CN12	FRONT LOWER
CN5	FRONT COMPILE	CN13	SCU
CN6	BRIDGE UNIT	CN14	STACKER
CN7	PUNCH	CN15	BOOKLET
CN8	REAR UPPER	CN16	LOG

Switch PCA

Figure 4-11 Switch PCA



Table 4-10 Switch PCA

CN No.	Connection
CN1	Offline Staple LED and Button

Booklet maker PCA

Figure 4-12 Booklet maker PCA



CN No.	Connection
CN1	Finisher interface
CN3	Log

CN No.	Connection
CN4	Stapler/Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor
CN5	Booklet Feed Entrance Motor/TE Presser Motor
CN6	Blade Home Sensor/Booklet Tamper Home Sensor/ Booklet Compile Paper Sensor
CN7	Booklet Paddle Motor/Separate Pawl Motor
CN8	Fold Output Paper Sensor/Guide Home Sensor/C Fold Motor
CN9	Stopper Solenoid/Stopper Moving Motor
CN10	Folding Roller Motor/Blade Motor

Service approach

⚠ CAUTION: When working on the product, do not pick up the unit by the output tray, which will detach under the weight of the product.

Precautions when replacing parts

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the printer, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains 19 different screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCA

Static electric might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA

- Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
- Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.

- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.
  - Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
  - Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches can break easily; release them carefully. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.



Before performing service

- Remove all paper from the product.
- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

ESD precautions

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

After performing service

- Plug in the power cable.
- Verify the functions of the printer that might have been impacted by service procedures. Make sure the printer is in complete working order.
- Replace any accessories removed for service.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

Part diagrams, removal and replacement procedures (stapler/stacker and booklet finishers)

- ESD precautions
- Finishers (Booklet finisher and stapler/stacker finisher)
- Top output bin
- Right top cover
- Top cover
- Front door
- Rear cover
- Front cover
- Front lower cover
- Booklet tray
- Caster cover
- Lower shield assembly
- Upper shield assembly
- Controller PCA
- Stapler unit
- Dummy feed guide
- Top jam access cover
- Top lower feed assembly
- Ejector unit
- Front tamper unit
- Rear tamper unit
- Feed entrance motor (M1)
- Feed exit motor (M2)
- Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)
- Front tamper motor (M6)
- Rear tamper motor (M7)
- SCU motor (M10)
- Main tray moving motor (M11)
- Booklet finisher front cover

- Booklet finisher
- Booklet finisher PCA
- Booklet finisher fold stopper unit
- Booklet feed entrance motor (M13)
- TE presser motor (M14)
- Stopper moving motor (M16)
- Separate pawl motor (M17)
- Folding roller motor (M18)
- Blade motor (M19)
- C fold motor (M20)

ESD precautions

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Finishers (Booklet finisher and stapler/stacker finisher)

- Booklet finisher 1
- Booklet finisher 2
- Booklet finisher 3
- Booklet finisher 4
- Booklet finisher 5
- Booklet finisher 6
- Booklet finisher 7
- Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold exit
- Low exit, hb motor, and top guide
- SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide
- Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor
- Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam
- FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade
- Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

- Three fold blade
- Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide
- Entrance guide, mid jam, and main exit
- Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor
- Front alignment (tamper)
- Rear alignment (tamper)
- Shield
- PCA bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle
- Finisher sub booklet
- Bridge Unit

Booklet finisher 1

Figure 4-13 Booklet finisher 1

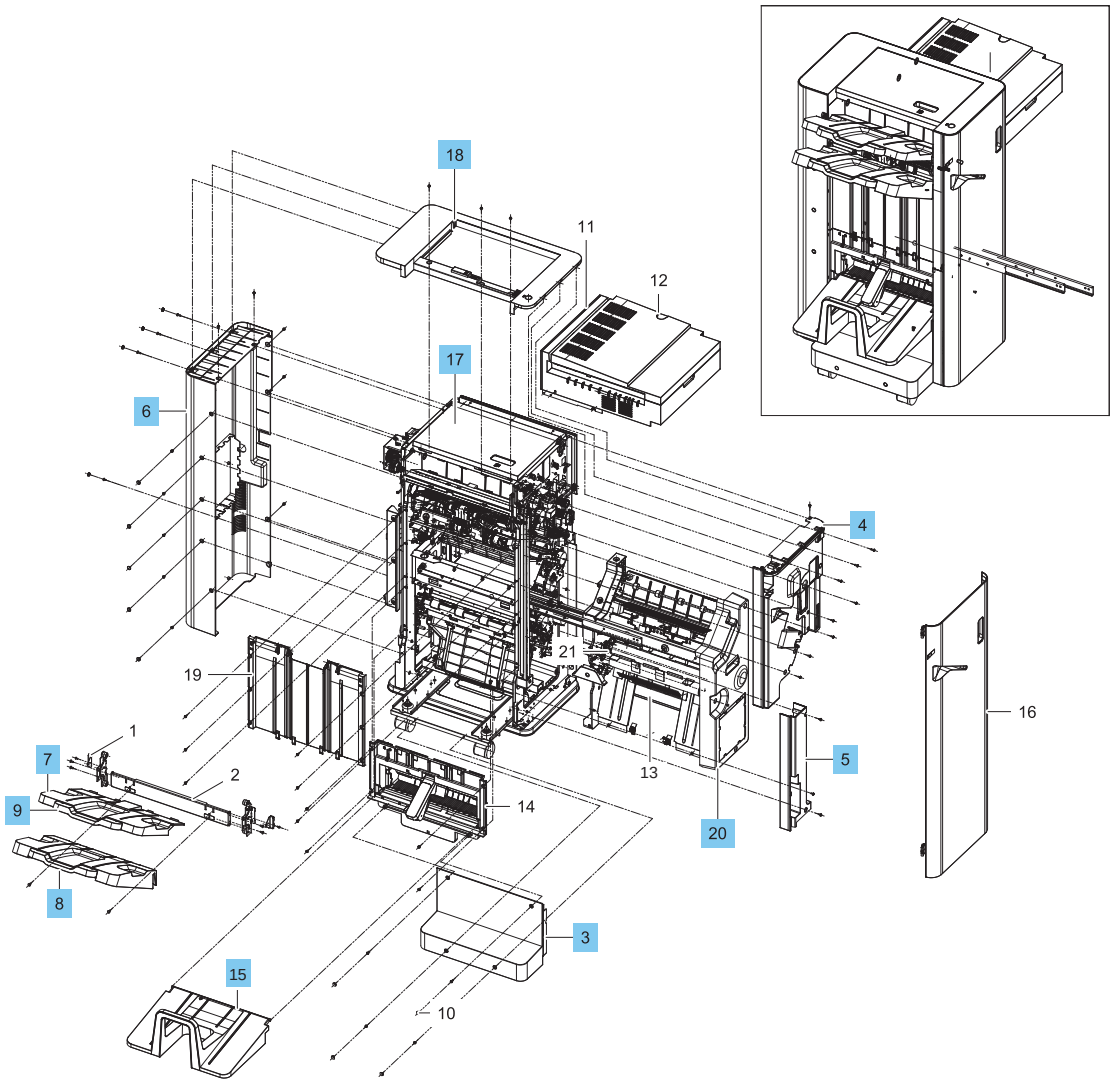


Table 4-11 Booklet finisher 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Caster cover	JC63-04985B	1
4	Cover, front	JC63-04986B	1
5	Cover-f, lower	JC63-04987B	1
6	Cover, rear	JC63-04988B	1
7	Cover-t, tray 2	JC63-04996B	1
8	Cover-m, tray	JC63-05002B	1
9	Cover-s, tray	JC63-05003B	2
15 (1)	Tray - guide booklet finisher	JC61-07253B	1
15 (2)	Cover - tray booklet finisher	JC63-04978B	1
17	Finisher sub-top door	JC90-01445B	1
18	Finisher sub-top cover	JC90-01446B	1
20	Finisher sub-cover f bm	JC90-01417B	1
Not shown	Harness, finisher to copier PWR	JC39-02308A	1

Booklet finisher 2

Figure 4-14 Booklet finisher 2

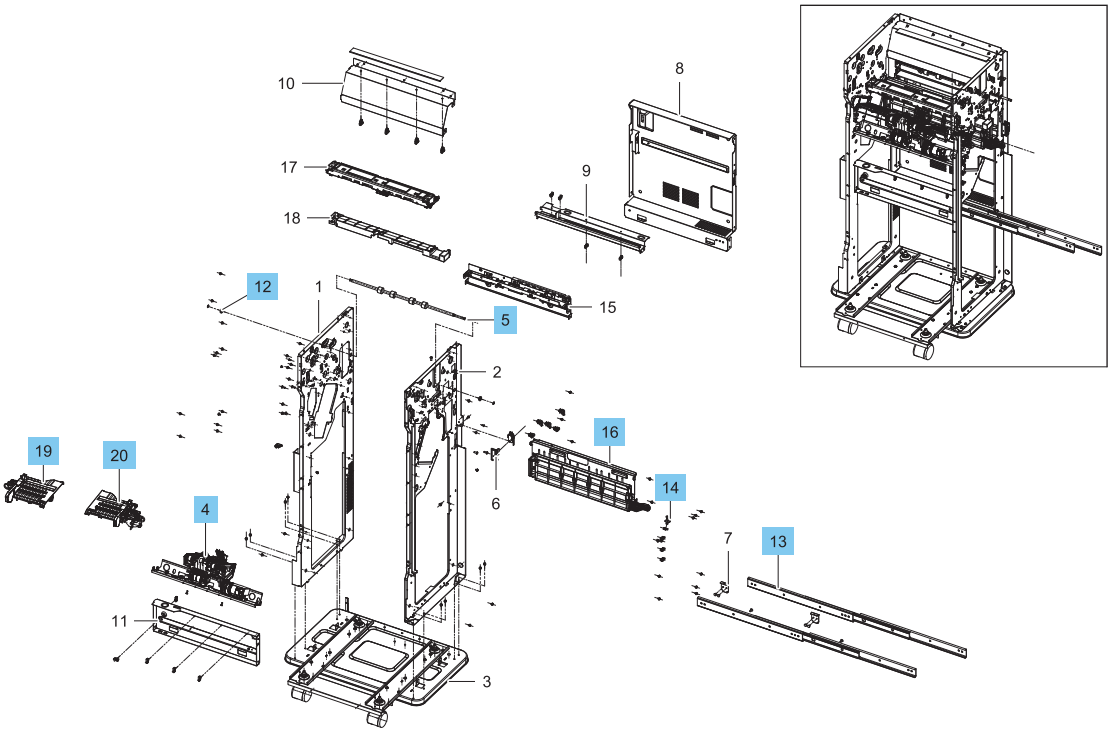


Table 4-12 Booklet finisher 2

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
4	Finisher sub-ejector unit	JC90-01409A	1
5	Roller, main-feed entrance	JC66-04722A	1
12	Bearing ball	6601-001478	6
13	Rail	6102-003369	2
14	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
16	Finisher sub-right jam	JC90-01457A	1
19	Finisher sub-tamper rear	JC82-00898A	1
20	Finisher sub-tamper front	JC82-00901A	1
Not shown	Finisher sub-exit main	JC90-01451A	1
Not shown	Harness, top cover	JC39-02310A	1
Not shown	Finisher sub-booklet unit	JC909-01416A	1

Booklet finisher 3

Figure 4-15 Booklet finisher 3

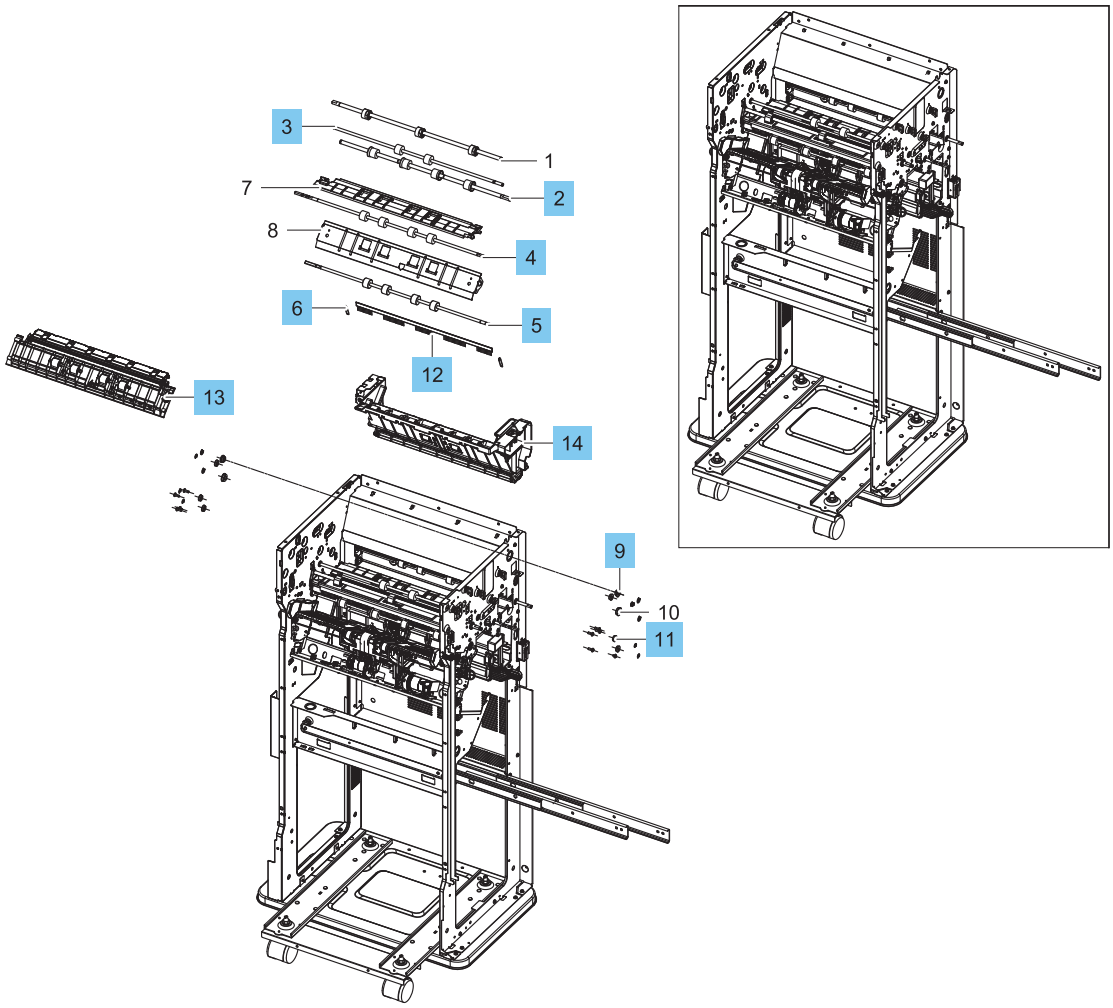


Table 4-13 Booklet finisher 3

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Feed roller main exit	JC66-04726A	1
3	Feed roller top-mid exit	JC66-04725A	1
4	Feed roller mid-exit	JC66-04724A	1
5	Finisher sub feed	JC90-01672A	1
6	Spring	JC61-07414A	2
9	Bushing	JC61-00426A	2
11	Bearing ball	6601-001478	6
12	Main-brush, exit	JC67-00817A	1
13	Finisher sub exit	JC90-01674A	1
14	Finisher sub-top jam	JC90-01455A	1

Booklet finisher 4

Figure 4-16 Booklet finisher 4

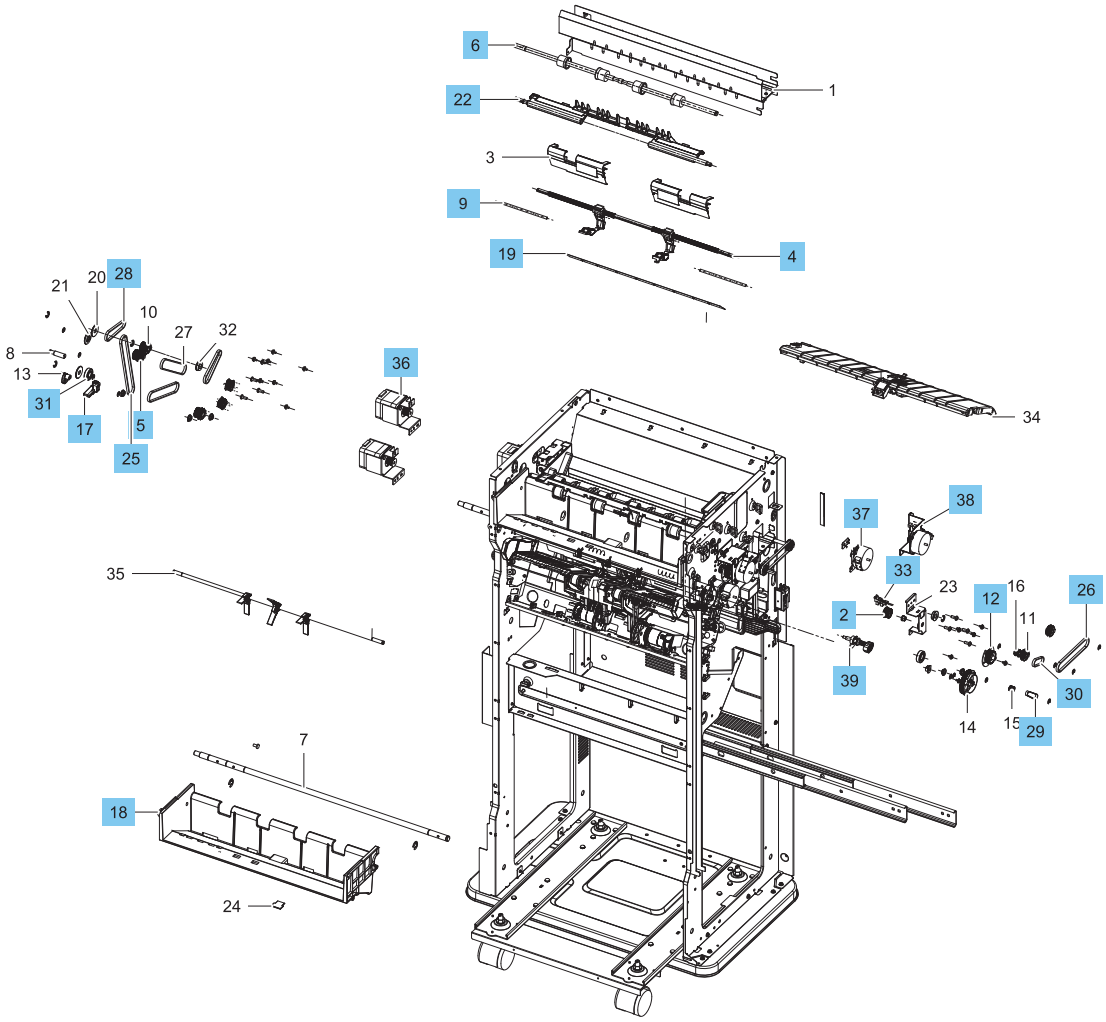


Table 4-14 Booklet finisher 4

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Finisher sub-clutch div	JC90-01474A	1
4	Finisher sub-end fence	JC90-01466A	1
5	Clutch drive	JC90-01404A	1
6	Roller, top-feed exit	JC66-04727A	1
9	Roller, feed	JC66-04523A	1
12	Gear	JC66-04602A	1
17	Actuator	JC66-04526A	1
18	Cover-t, tray	JC63-04995B	1
19	Seal	JC62-01328A	1
22	Guide	JC61-07206A	1
25	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003649	1
26	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003647	2
28	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003645	2
29	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003640	1
30	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003639	1
31	Bearing ball	6601-003062	2
33	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
36	Finisher sub-hb mtr	JC90-01459A	2
37	Finisher sub-ef mtr	JC90-01467A	1
38	Finisher sub-drv buff	JC90-01453A	1
39	Finisher sub-div cam	JC90-01458A	1
43	Solenoid	JC90-01675A	1
44	Motor - BM exit cam	JC90-01673A	1

Booklet finisher 5

Figure 4-17 Booklet finisher 5

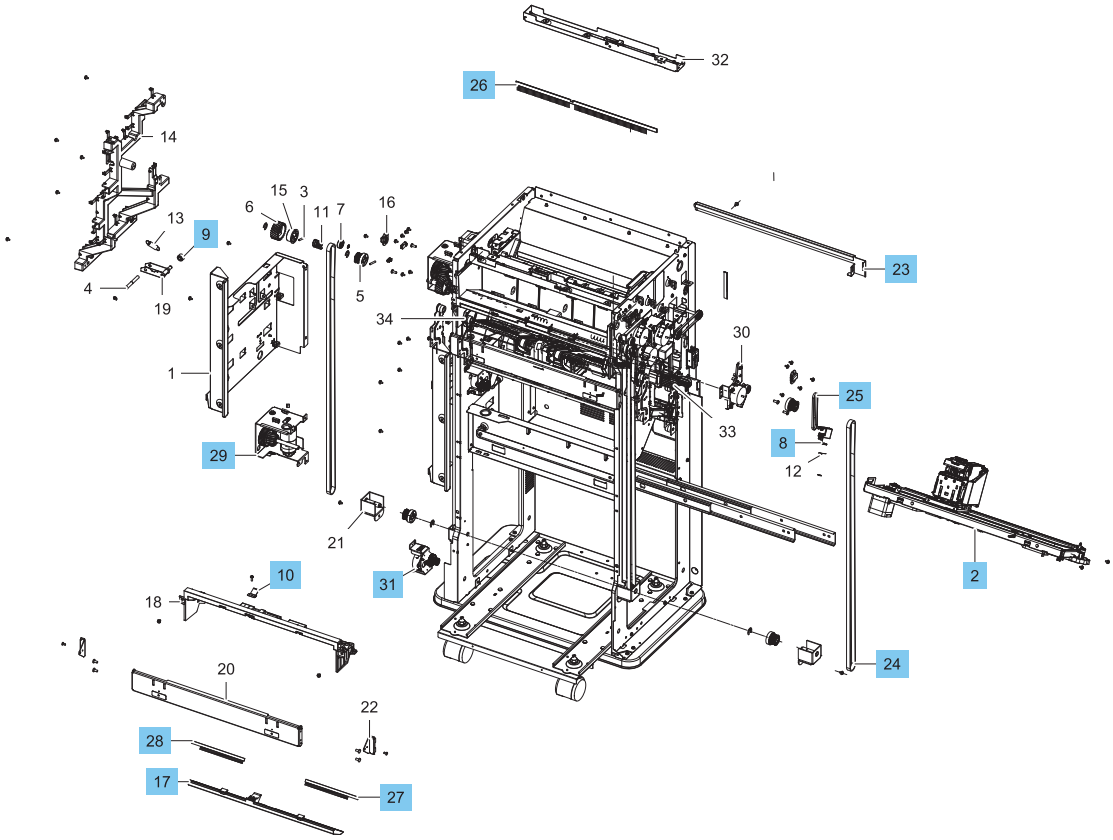


Table 4-15 Booklet finisher 5

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Finisher sub-staple unit	JC90-01412A	1
8	Actuator	JC66-04528A	1
9	Roller, feed	JC66-04523A	1
10	Ground	JC63-04984A	1
17	Guide	JC61-07192A	1
18	Guide	JC61-07189A	1
23	Frame mount	JC61-06663A	1
24	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003652	2
25	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003270	1
26	Top-brush exit	JC67-00818A	1
27	Compiler-brush, ceiling front	JC67-00820A	1
28	Compiler-brush, ceiling rear	JC67-00819A	1
29	Tray motor	JC90-01415B	1
31	Motor	JC90-01414A	1
Not shown	PCA - 3K main	JC92-02791A	1
Not shown	E ring	6044-000125	1
Not shown	Cable clamp	6502-001131	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher rear upper	JC39-02312A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher front upper	JC39-02313A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher punch relay	JC39-02314A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher staple relay	JC39-02315A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher staple safety	JC39-02316A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher eject relay	JC39-02317A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher front lower	JC39-02318A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher stack relay	JC39-02319A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher to copier PWR	JC39-02308A	1

Booklet finisher 6

Figure 4-18 Booklet finisher 6

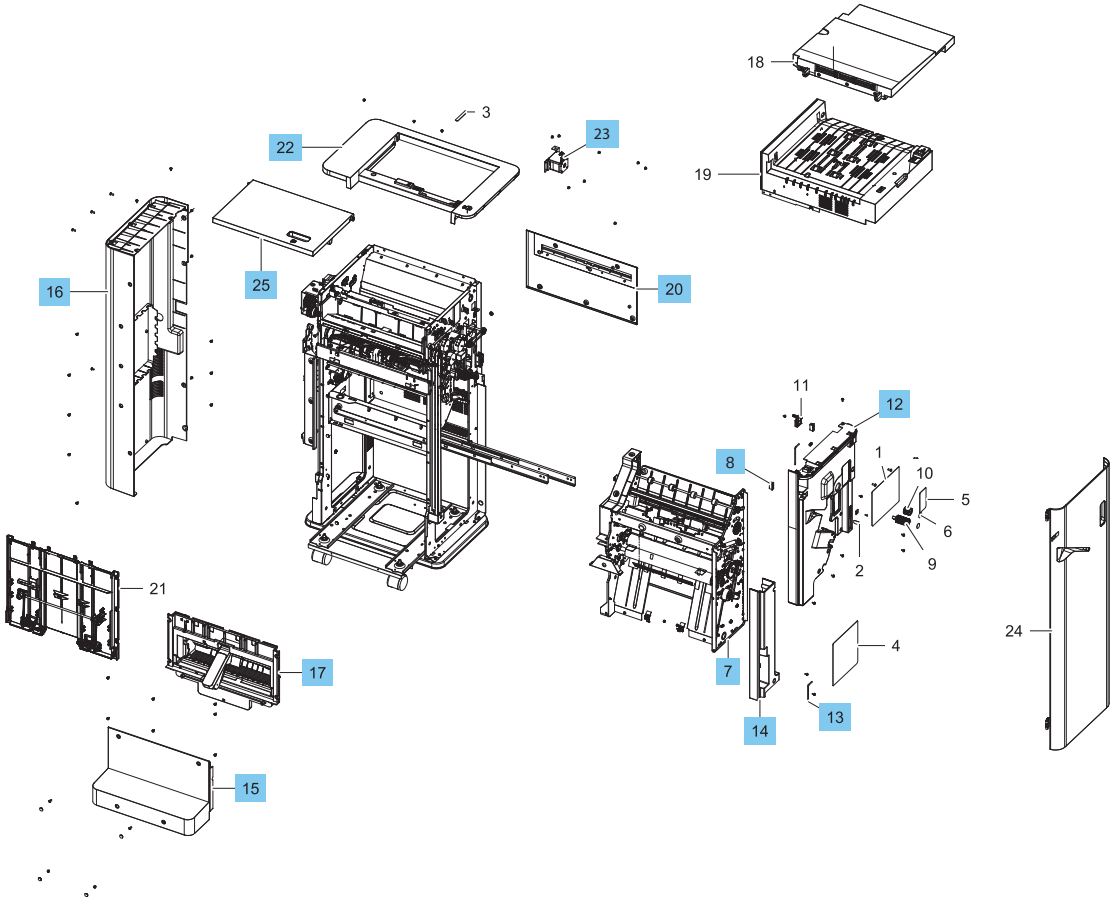


Table 4-16 Booklet finisher 6

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
8	Magnet	JC81-08263A	1
7	Finisher sub-booklet unit	JC90-01416A	1
12	Front cover	JC63-04986B	1
13	Hinge	JC66-04767A	2
14	Cover-f, lower	JC63-04987B	1
15	Caster	JC63-04985B	1
16	Rear cover	JC63-04988B	1
17	Finisher sub-tray bm unit	JC90-01417B	1
20	Finisher sub-inlet guide	JC90-01448B	1
22	Finisher sub-top cover	JC90-01446B	1
23	Finisher sub-HB mtr	JC90-01402B	1
25	Finisher sub-top door	JC90-01445B	1
Not shown	Stack full harness	JC39-02331A	1
Not shown	Csp acuator duplex	JC81-07930A	1
Not shown	CS spring acuator stack	JC81-09396A	1

Booklet finisher 7

Figure 4-19 Booklet finisher 7

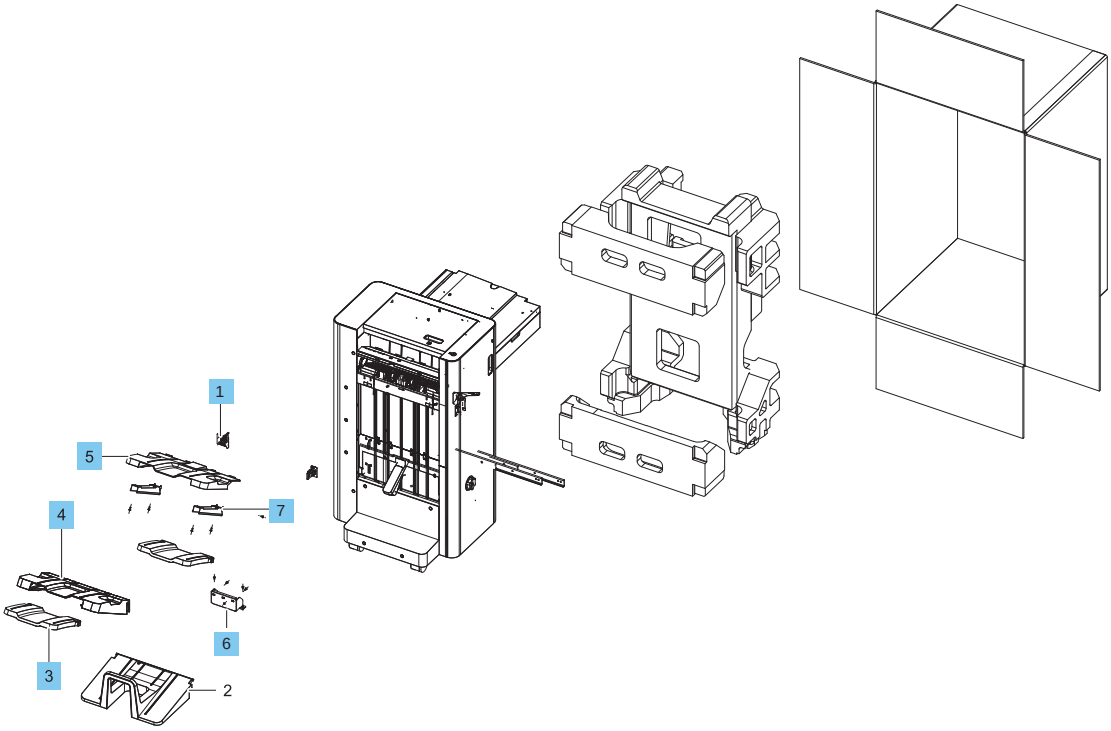


Table 4-17 Booklet finisher 7

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher - engine side bracket	JC90-01442A	2
3	Cover-s, tray	JC63-05003B	2
4	Cover-m, tray	JC63-05002B	1
5	Cover-t, tray 2	JC63-04996B	1
6	Shipping lock for booklet	JC61-007149A	1
7	Tray support	JC61-06668A	2

Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold exit

Figure 4-20 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold exit

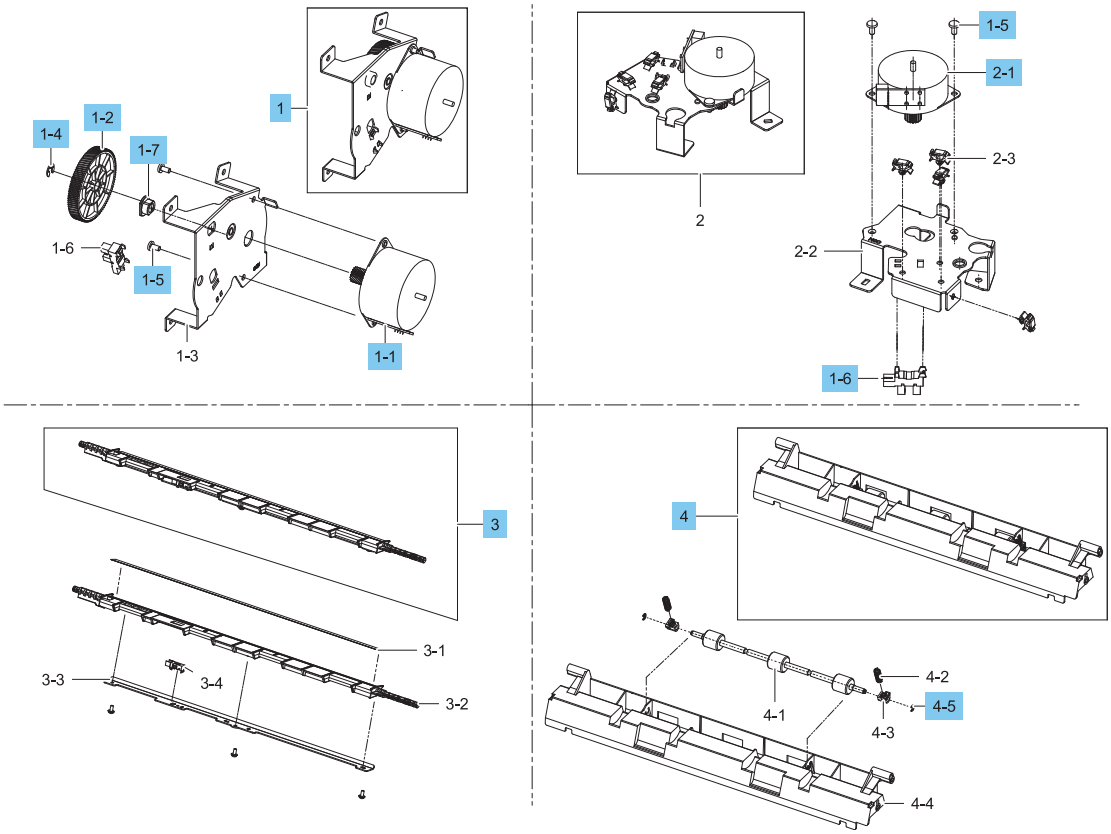


Table 4-18 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold exit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-3 fold motor	JC90-01396A	1
1-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01154A	1
1-2	Gear	JC66-04579A	1
1-4	E-ring	6044-000125	2
1-5	Screw, machine M3	6001-000130	4
1-6	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
1-7	Bushing	JC61-00423A	1
2-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01153A	1
3	Finisher sub-curl pawl	JC90-01398A	1
4	Finisher sub - 3 fold exit	JC90-01399A	1
4-5	C-ring	6044-000159	1

Low exit, hb motor, and top guide

Figure 4-21 Low exit, hb motor, and top guide, floor standing finisher

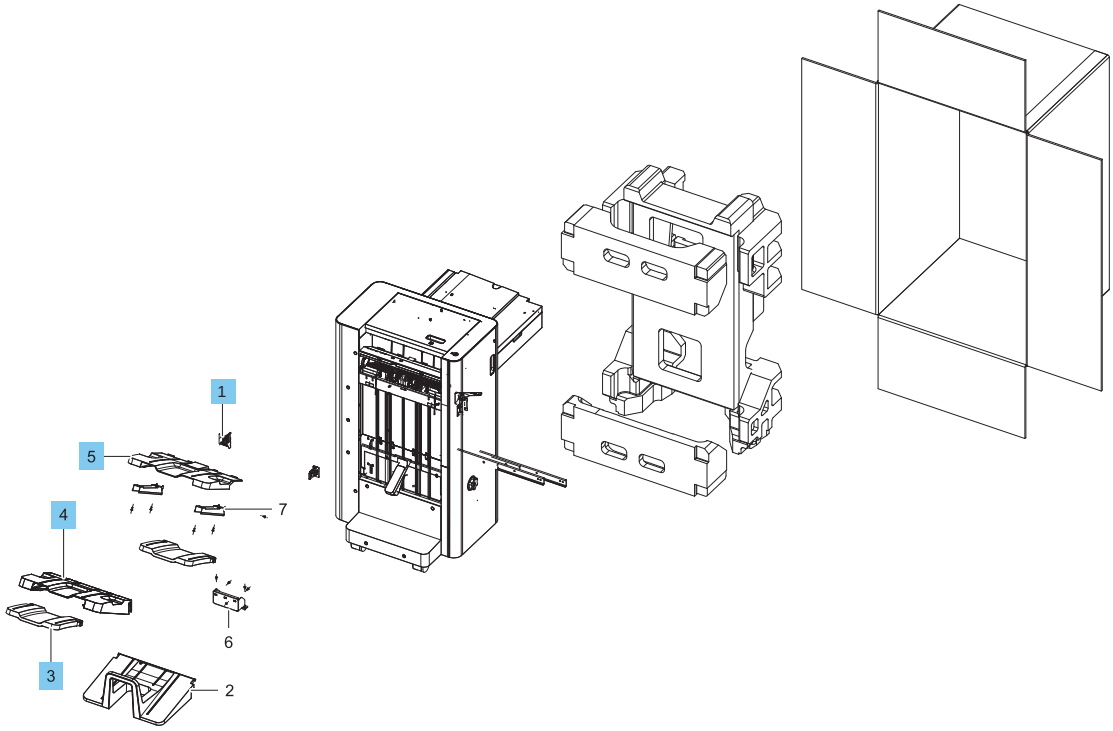


Table 4-19 Low exit, hb motor, and top guide, floor standing finisher

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-low exit	JC90-01400A	1
1-2	Roller, exit, fold	JC66-04744A	1
1-3	Roller, feed-fold exit	JC66-04721A	1
1-7	Bushing	JC61-00426A	4
1-8	E-ring	6044-000129	2
2-2	Motor, step	JC31-00163B	2
2-3	Cable clamp	6502-001131	1
3	Finisher sub-guide top	JC90-01406A	1
3-3	Spring, es	JC61-07431A	2
3-4	Spring, es	JC61-07430A	4

SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

Figure 4-22 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

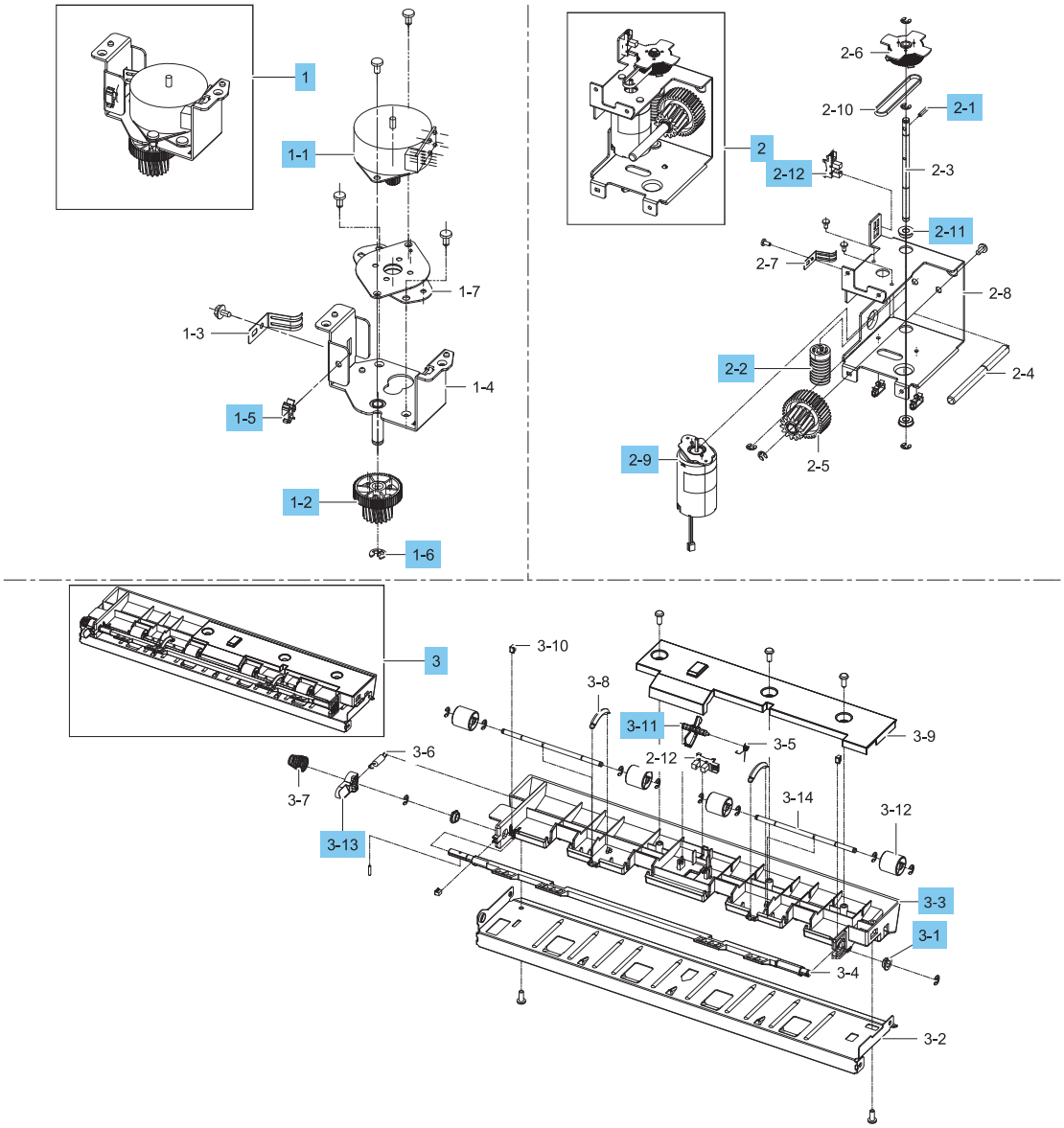


Table 4-20 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Motor, lift assembly	JC90-01414A	1
1-1	Motor, step	JC93-01156A	1
1-2	Gear	JC66-04604A	1
1-5	Cable clamp	6502-001131	1
1-6	E-ring	6044–000125	2
2	Motor, tray	JC90-01415B	1
2-1	Cartridge, ICT-PIN	JC70-40542A	1
2-2	Stacker, CSP-worm	JC81-07637A	1
2-9	Motor, lift	JC31-00178B	1
2-11	Bearing ball	6601-001478	3
2-12	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
3	Finisher sub-entrance guide	JC90-01424A	1
3-1	Bushing	JC61-02372A	2
3-3	Harness, 3K finisher top cover	JC39-02310A	2
3-11	Actuator	JC66-04520A	1
3-13	Actuator	JC66-04644A	1

Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor

Figure 4-23 Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor

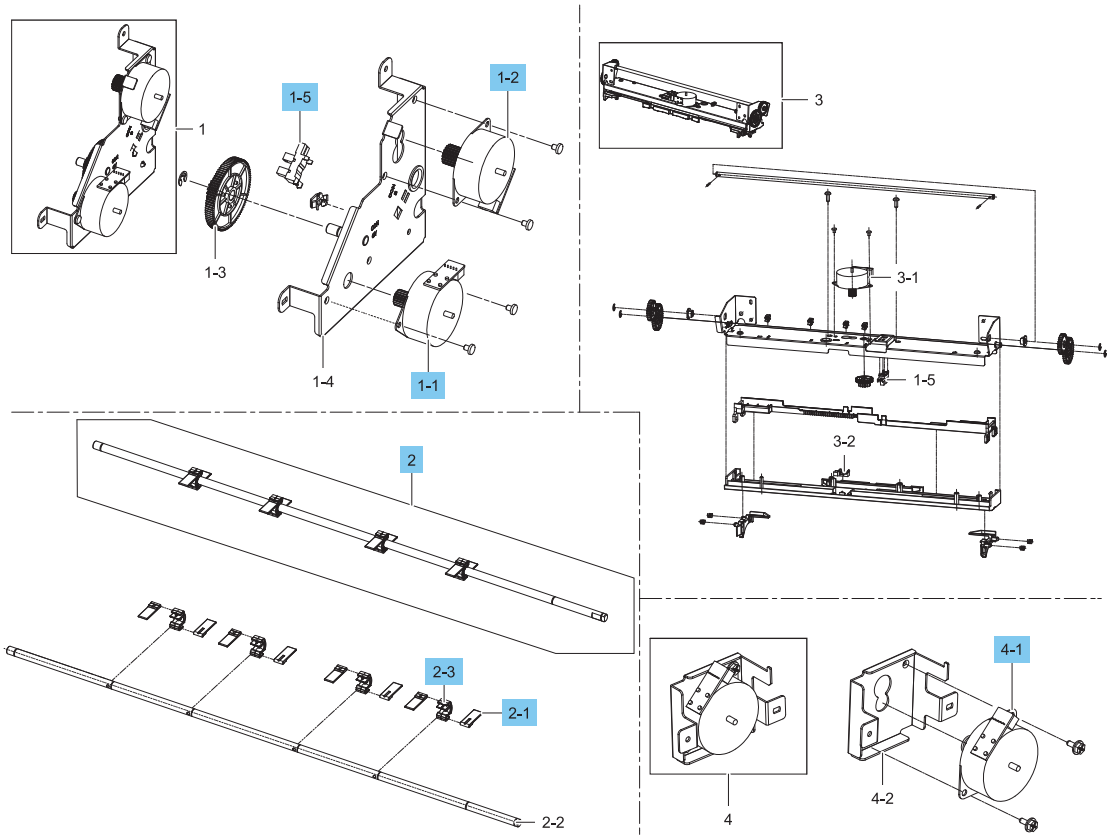


Table 4-21 Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01155A	1
1-2	Driver motor, step	JC93-01152A	1
1-5	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
2	Finisher sub-low paddle	JC90-01429A	1
2-1	Roller, feed	JC66-04719A	8
2-3	Paddle holder	JC61-07225A	4
4-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01001A	1

Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam

Figure 4-24 Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam

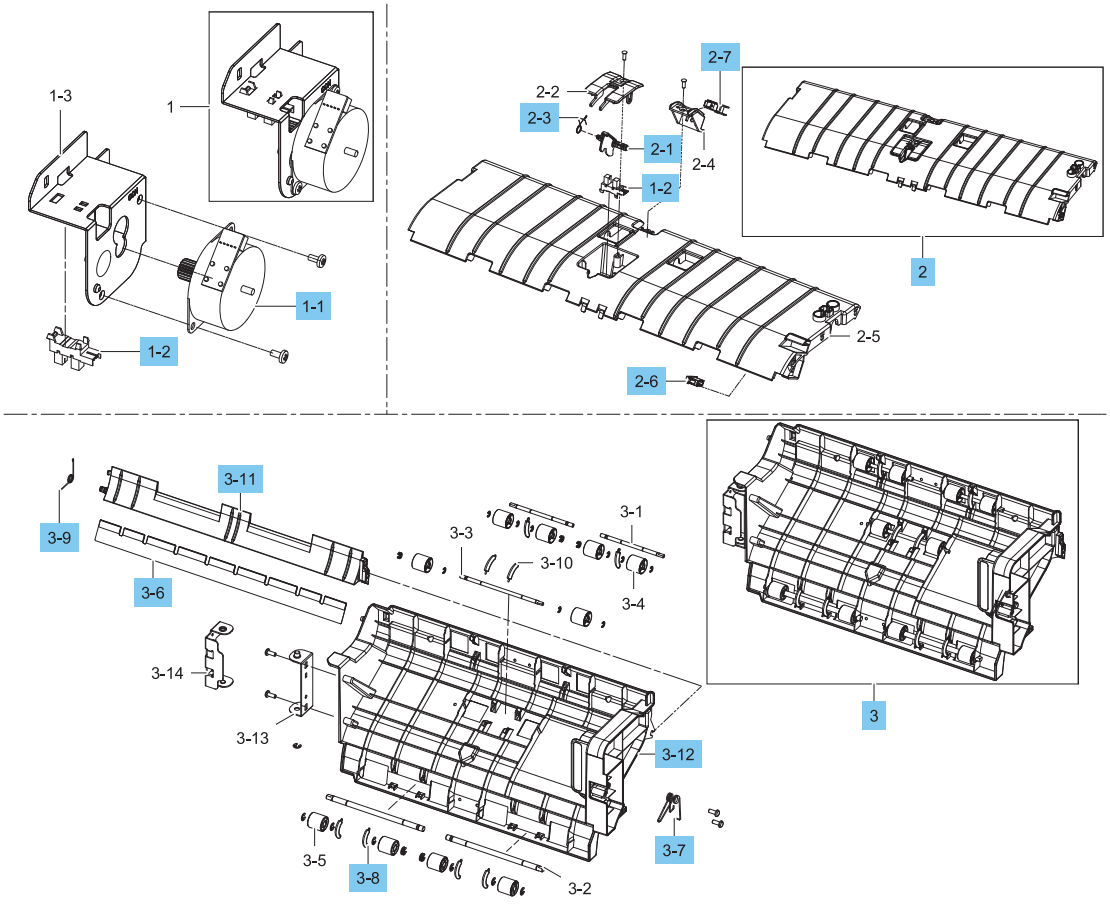


Table 4-22 Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01155A	1
1-2	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
2	Finisher sub-top lower	JC90-01454A	1
2-1	Actuator, top exit	JC66-04525A	1
2-3	Spring, TS	JC61-07411A	1
2-6	Harness, 3k finisher exit path	JC39-02322A	1
2-7	Sensor	JC32-00020A	1
3	Finisher sub-top jam	JC90-01455A	2
3-6	Seal	JC62-01328A	1
3-7	Spring, ts	JC61-07417A	1
3-8	Spring, es	JC61-07415A	4
3-9	Spring, ts	JC61-07410A	1
3-10	Spring, es	JC61-07409A	2
3-11	Guide, diverter	JC61-07205A	1
3-12	Guide, top jam	JC61-07196A	1

FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

Figure 4-25 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

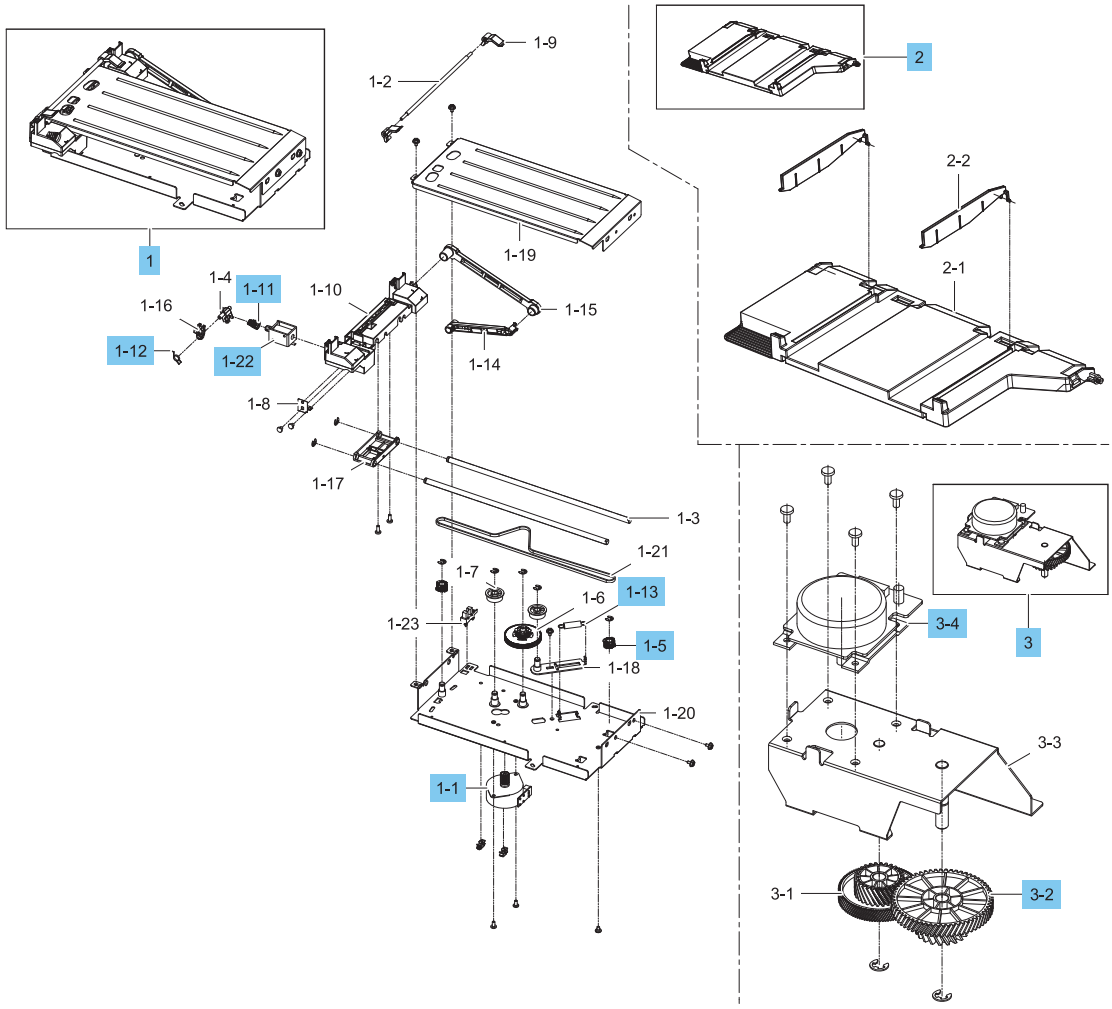


Table 4-23 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-fd stopper unit	JC90-01432A	1
1-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01155A	1
1-5	Timing pulley	JC66-04583A	2
1-11	Spring, cs	JC61-07403A	1
1-12	Spring, ts	JC61-07401A	1
1-13	Spring, es	JC61-07400A	1
1-22	Solenoid	JC33-00038A	1
2	Finisher sub-jam clear	JC90-01433A	1
3	Finisher sub-bkt main blade	JC90-01435A	1
3-1	Gear, helical 4	JC66-04595A	1
3-2	Gear, helical 3	JC66-04594A	1
3-4	Motor BLDC, Type 2	JC31-00144A	1

Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

Figure 4-26 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

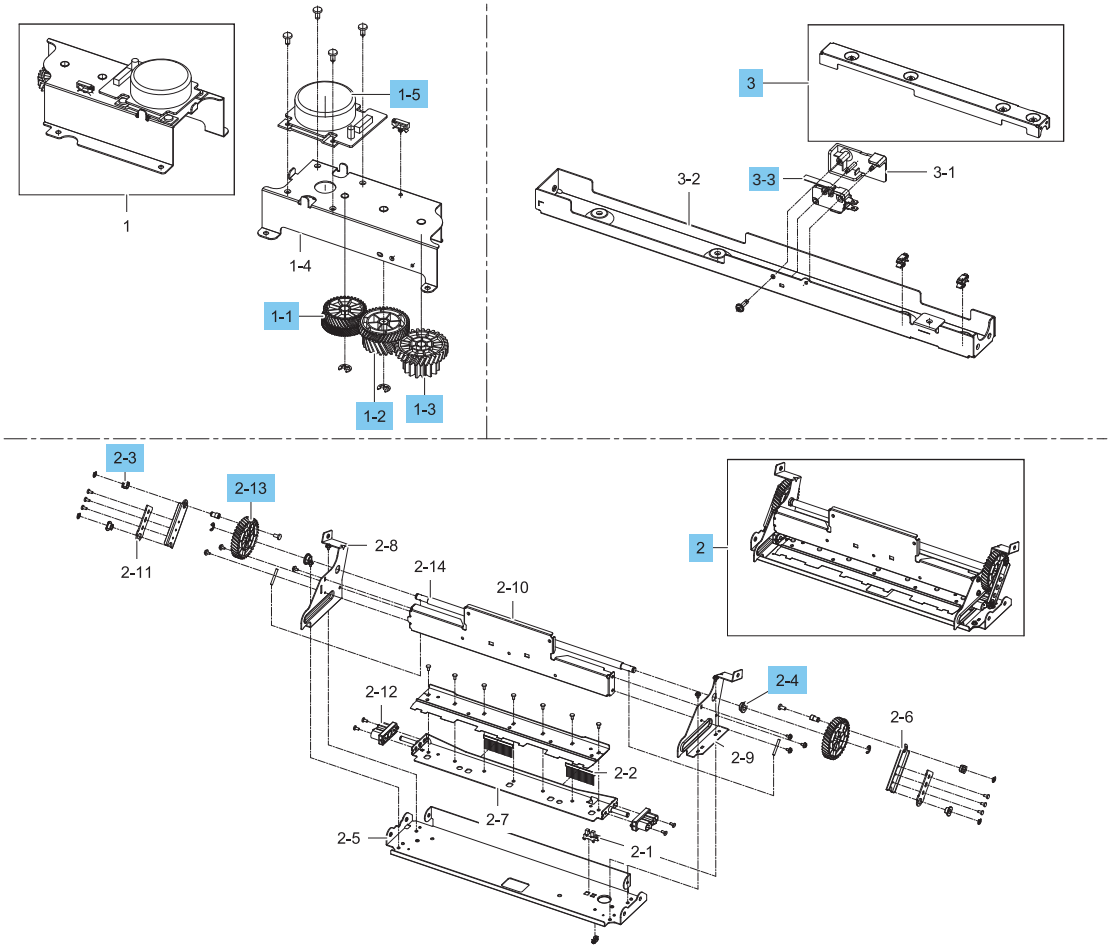


Table 4-24 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Gear, helical 2	JC66-04593A	1
1-2	Gear, helical 1	JC66-04592A	1
1-3	Gear, double	JC66-04573A	1
1-5	Motor BLDC, Type 2	JC31-00144A	1
2	Finisher sub-main blade	JC90-01437A	1
2-3	Bushing	JC61-00423A	1
2-4	Bushing	JC61-00426A	2
2-13	Gear, helical	JC66-04591A	2
3	Finisher sub-top frame	JC90-01440A	1
3-3	Harness, 3k finisher top cover	JC39-02310A	1

Three fold blade

Figure 4-27 Three fold blade

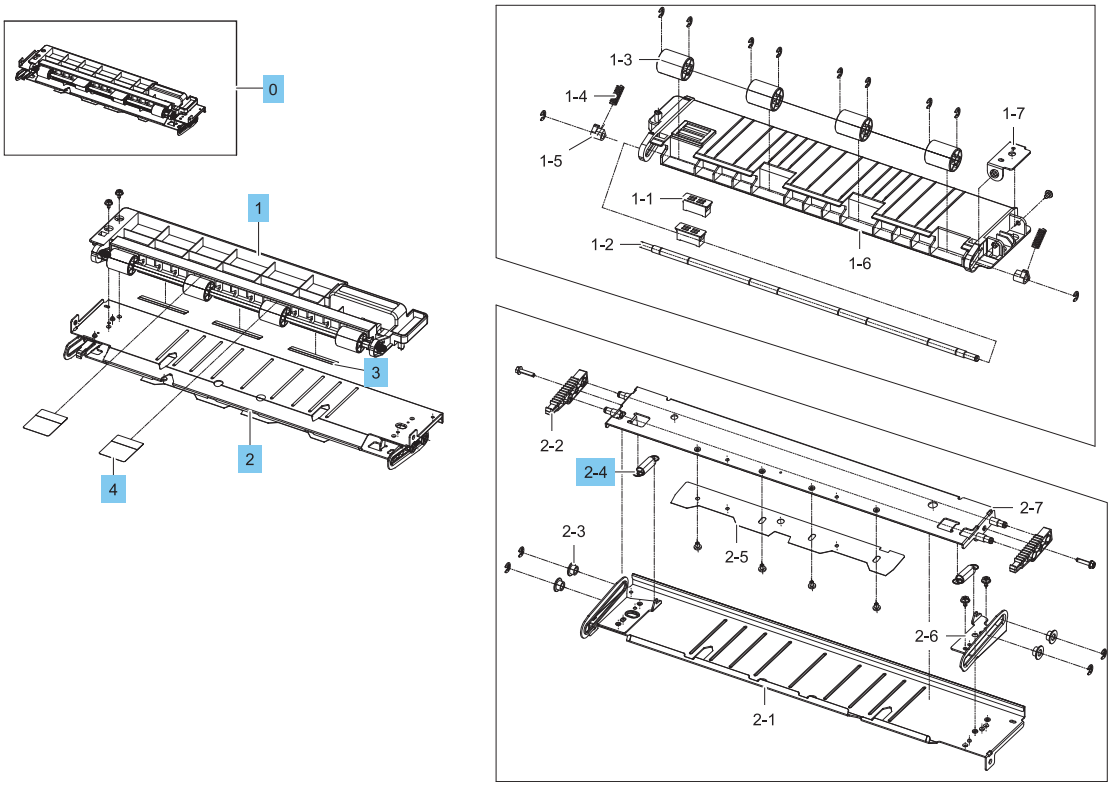


Table 4-25 Three fold blade

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-3 fold blade	JC90-01438A	1
1	Finisher sub-exit roller	JC90-01395A	1
2	Finisher sub-guide three fold	JC90-01394A	1
2-4	Spring, es	JC61-07391A	2
3	Sheet-jam guide	JC63-05044A	3
4	Sheet-fold exit	JC63-05041A	2

Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide

Figure 4-28 Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide

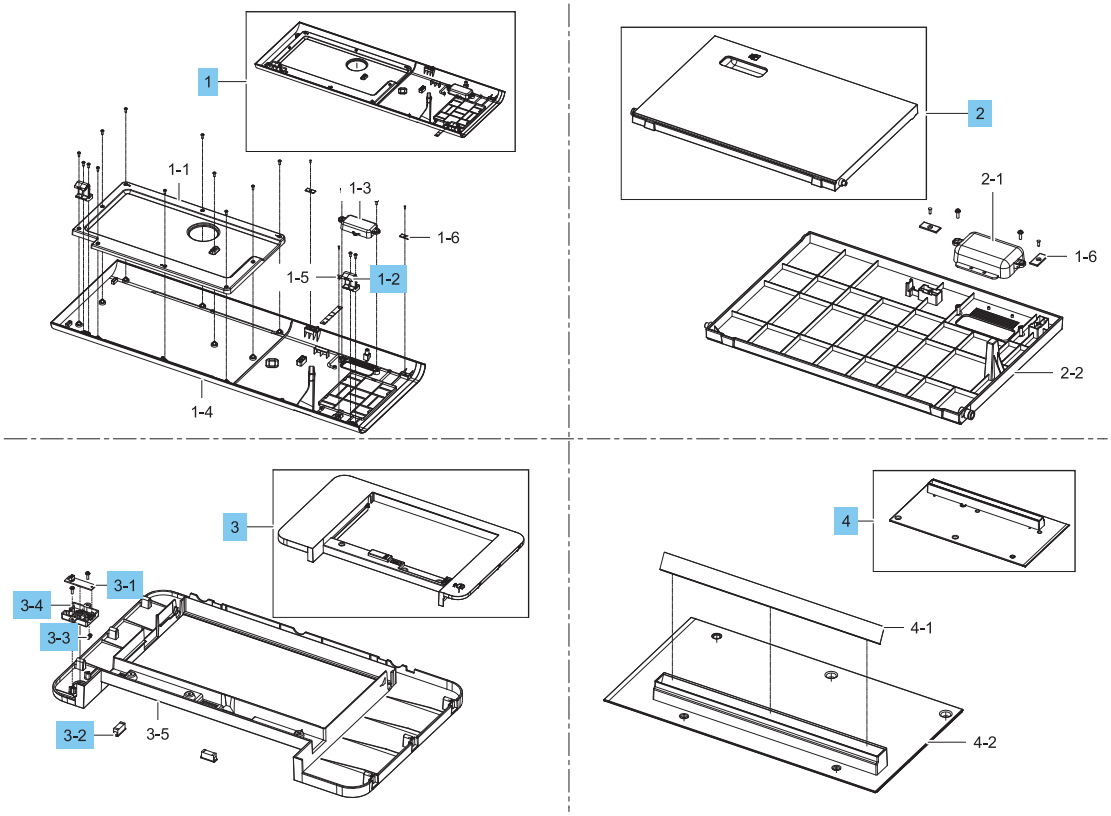


Table 4-26 Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-door	JC90-01444A	1
1-2	Cover, link	JC63-05004A	2
2	Finisher sub-top door	JC90-01445B	1
3	Finisher sub-top cover	JC90-01446B	1
3-1	PCA, 3k switch	JC92-02789A	1
3-2	Magnet, as	JC81-08263A	1
3-3	Button lens	JC64-00996A	1
3-4	Button, staple	JC64-00995A	1
4	Finisher Sub - Inlet Guide	JC90-01448B	1

Entrance guide, mid jam, and main exit

Figure 4-29 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main exit

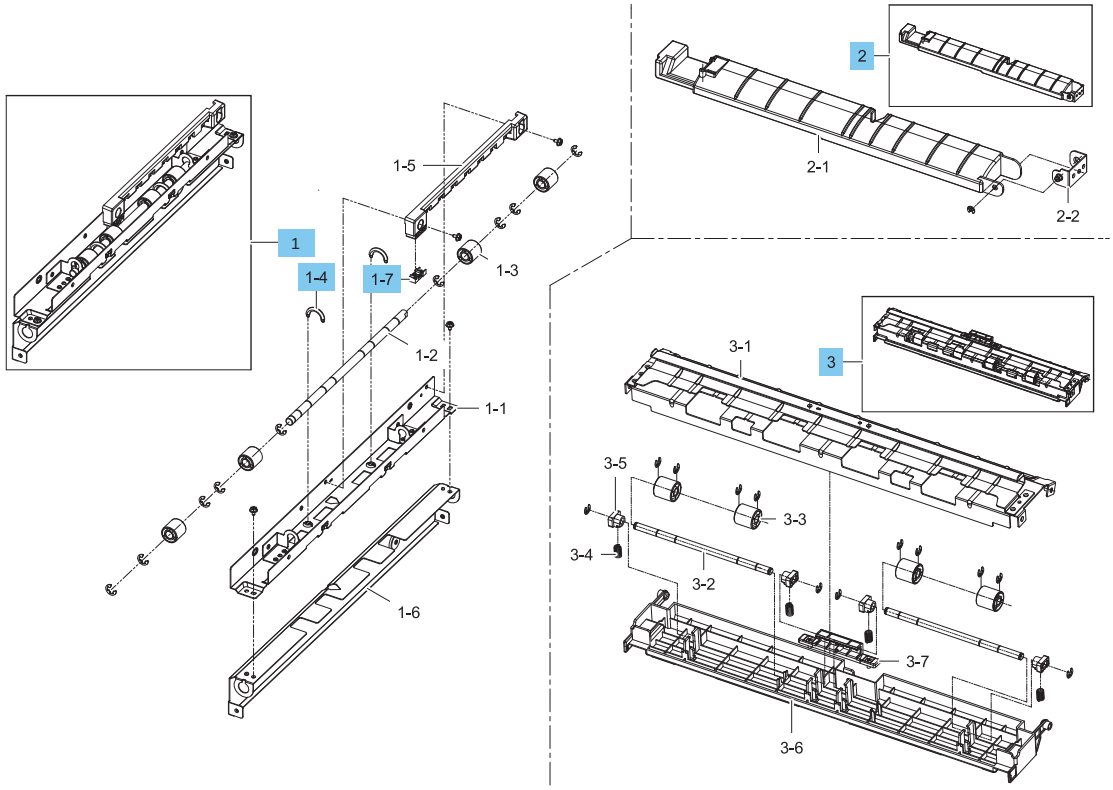


Table 4-27 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main exit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-ent guide	JC90-01449A	2
1-4	Spring, ES	JC61-07408A	2
1-7	Sensor, rp	JC32-00020A	1
2	Finisher sub-mid jam	JC90-01450A	1
3	Finisher sub-exit main	JC90-01451A	1

Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

Figure 4-30 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

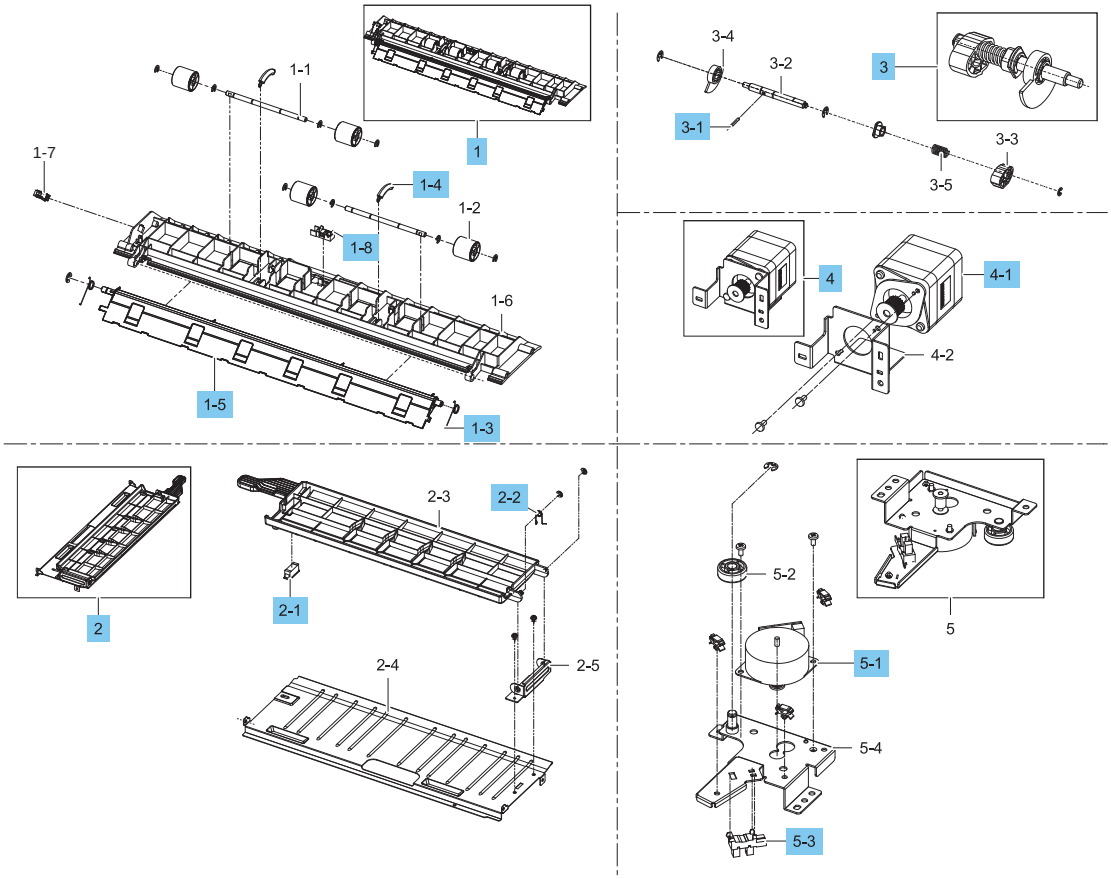


Table 4-28 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub exit	JC90-01674A	1
1-3	Spring, TS	JC61-07413A	2
1-4	Spring, ES	JC61-07409A	2
1-5	Guide, buff div	JC61-07204A	1
1-8	Sensor, rp	JC32-00020A	1
2	Finisher sub-right jam	JC90-01457A	1
2-1	Magnet	JC81-08263A	1
2-2	Spring, TS	JC61-07418A	1
3	Finisher sub-div cam	JC90-01458A	1
3-1	Ict-pin, paralled, p/u	JC70-40360A	1
4	Finisher sub-hb motor	JC90-01459A	2
4-1	Motor step, ip	JC31-00163B	2
5-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01001A	1
5-3	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1

Front alignment (tamper)

Figure 4-31 Front alignment (tamper)

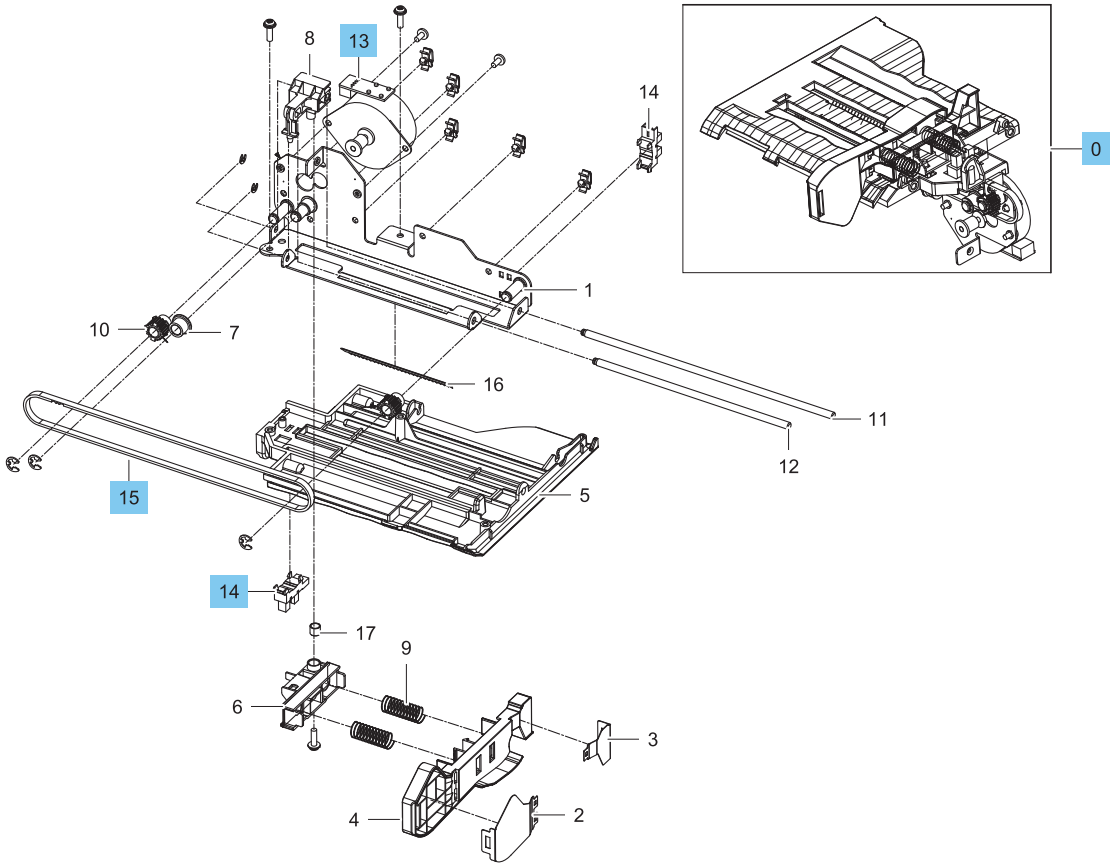


Table 4-29 Front alignment (tamper)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-tamper, front	JC90-01464A	1
13	Driver motor, step	JC93-01001A	1
14	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
15	Timing belt, gear	6602-003644	1

Rear alignment (tamper)

Figure 4-32 Rear alignment (tamper)

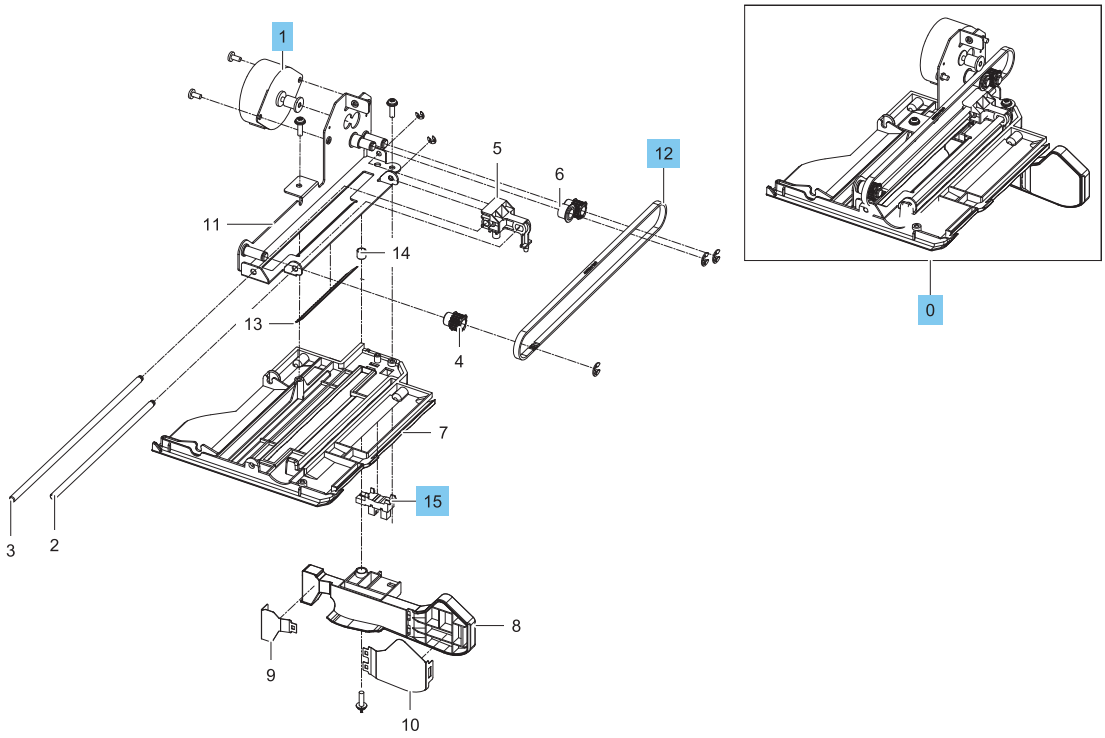


Table 4-30 Rear alignment (tamper)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-tamper, rear	JC90-01465A	1
1	Driver motor, step	JC93-01001A	1
12	Timing belt, gear	6602-003644	1
15	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1

Shield

Figure 4-33 Shield

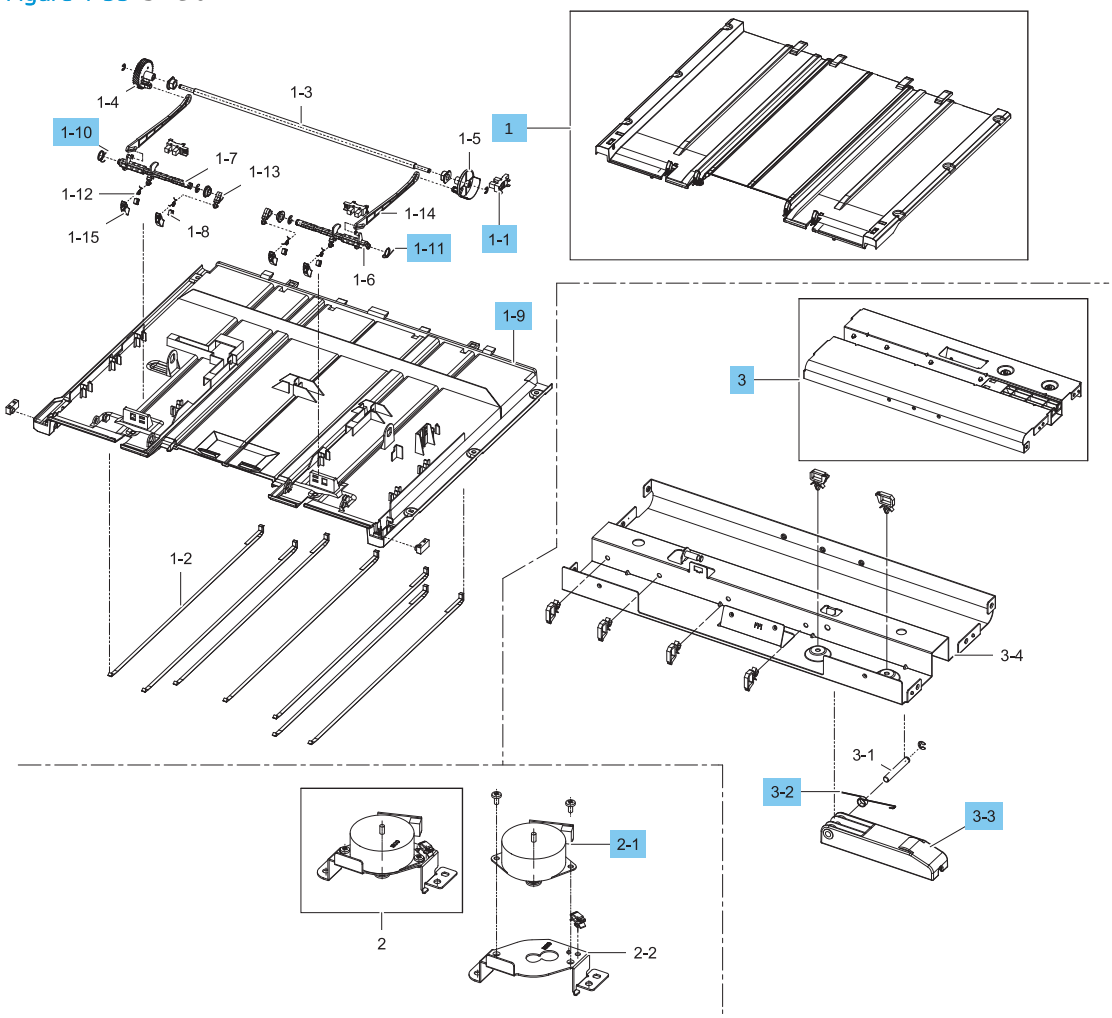


Table 4-31 Shield

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-shield	JC90-01475A	1
1-1	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
1-9	Cover, stacker	JC63-04999B	1
1-10	Spring, ts	JC61-07428A	1
1-11	Spring, ts	JC61-07427A	1
2-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01001A	1
3	Finisher sub-base low	JC90-01476A	1
3-2	Spring, ts	JC61-07392A	1
3-3	Leg bracket	JC61-07279A	1

PCA bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

Figure 4-34 PCA bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

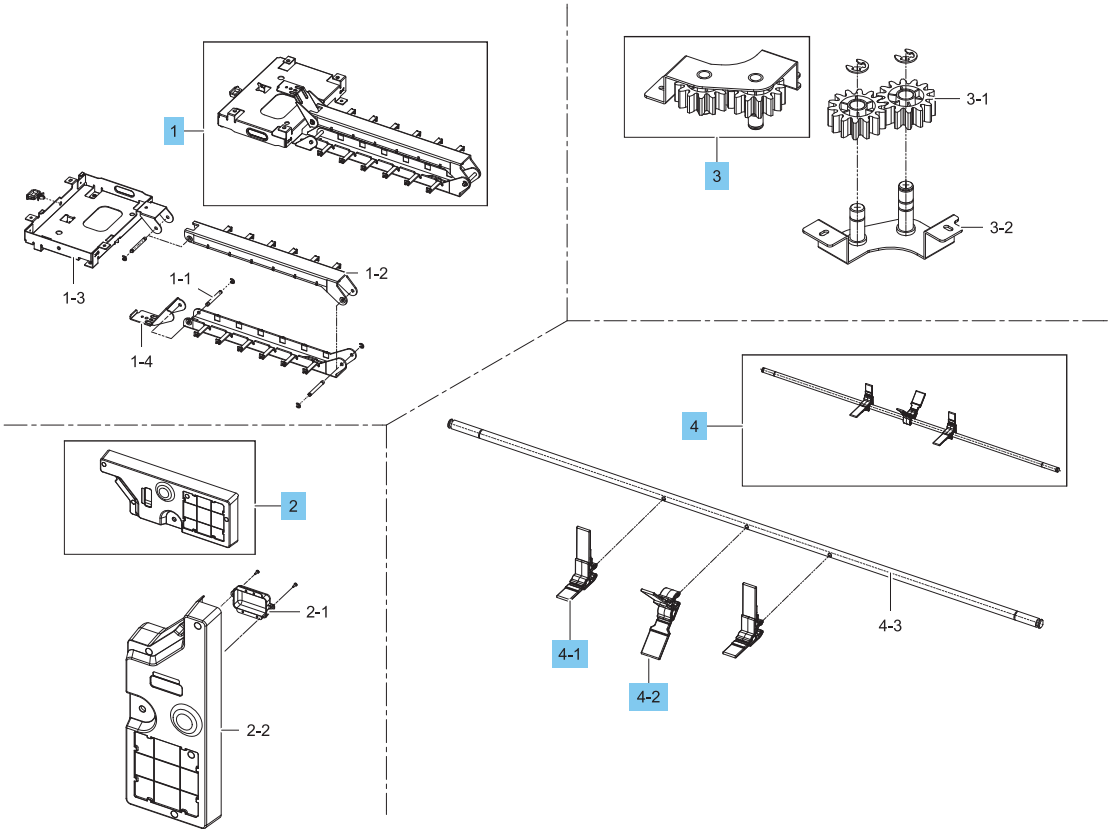


Table 4-32 PCA bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	BM PCA wiring loom assy	JC90-01477A	1
2	Finisher sub-cover f bm	JC90-01478B	1
3	Finisher sub-idle fold	JC90-01479A	1
4	Finisher sub-paddle	JC90-01480A	1
4-1	Finisher sub-paddle, wing	JC90-01463A	2
4-2	Finisher sub-paddle, mid	JC90-01462A	1

Finisher sub booklet

Figure 4-35 Finisher sub booklet

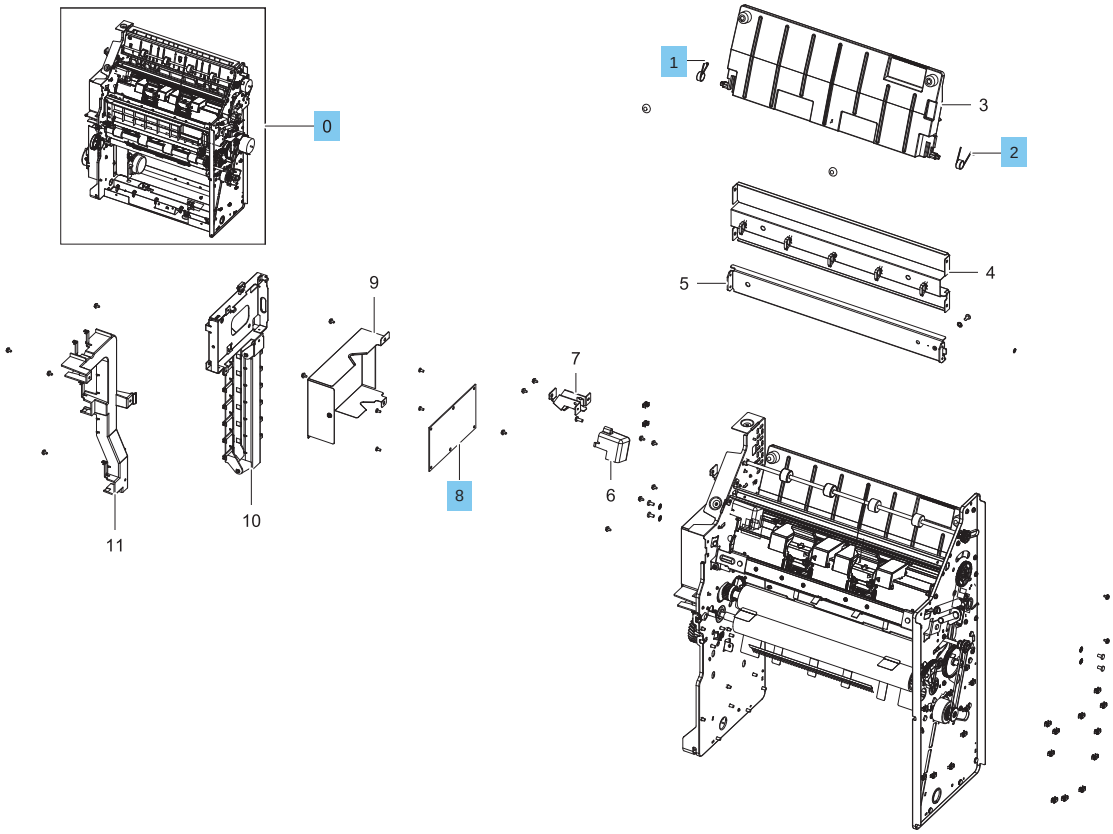


Table 4-33 Finisher sub booklet

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-booklet 4	JC90-01502A	1
1	Spring TS	JC61-07398A	1
2	Spring TS	JC61-07397A	1
8	PCA, bookletmaker	JC92-02790B	1
Not shown	Saddle staple unit	JC81-09881B	1
Not shown	Corner staple unit	JC81-09882B	1

Bridge Unit

Figure 4-36 Bridge Unit

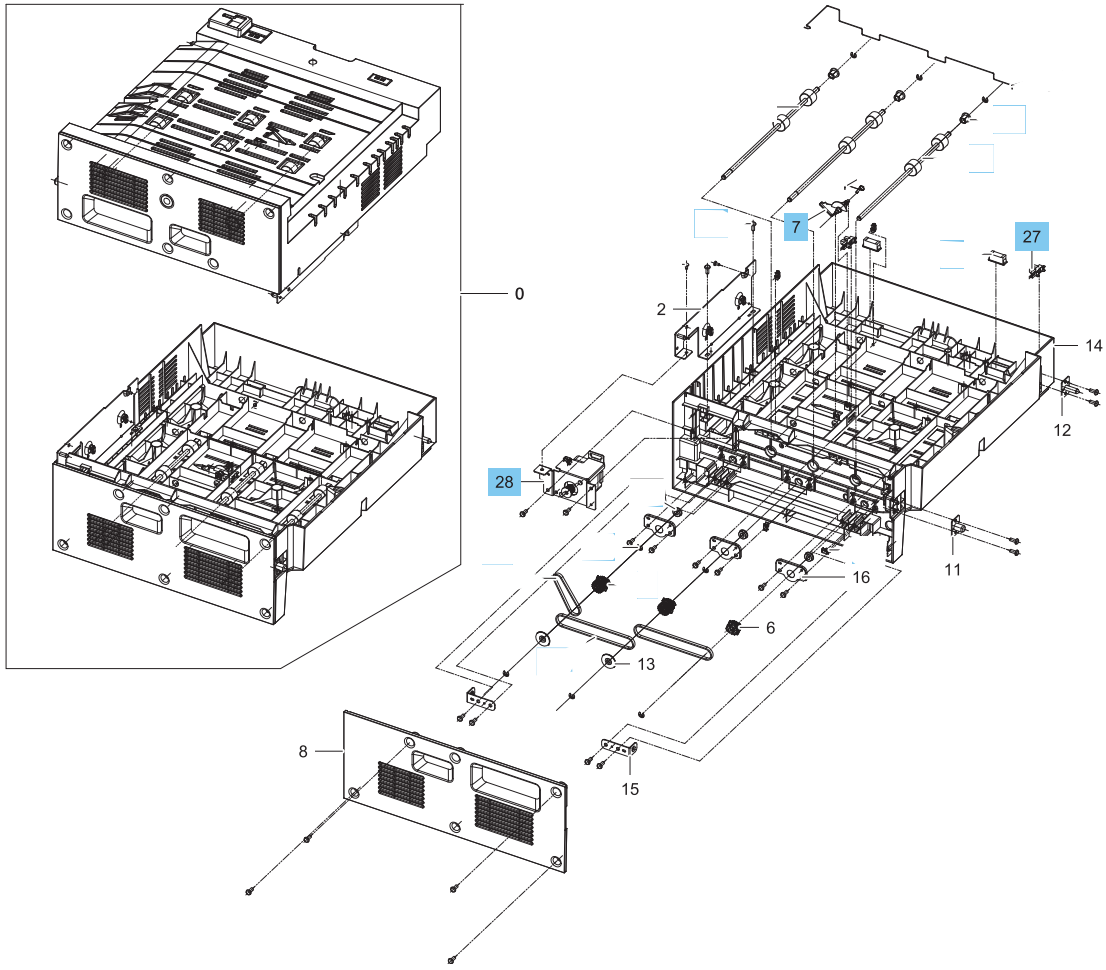


Table 4-34 Bridge Unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Magnet	JC81-08263A	1
4	Roller, brg-feed entrance	JC66-04733A	1
5	Roller, brg-feed	JC66-04732A	2
7	Actuator, sensor	JC66-04569A	1
10	Spring, ts	JC61-07432A	1
17	Bush-6, d(l)	JC61-00884A	3
18	Harness, 3K Finisher Bridge Pa	JC39-02328A	1
19	Harness, 3K Finisher Bridge Sub	JC39-02327A	1
20	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003648	2
21	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003645	1
22	Bearing ball	6601-001478	2
23	Cable clamp	6502-001131	1
24	E-ring	6044-000125	2
25	Screw, tap type m4	6003-001256	4
26	Screw, machine m3	6001-000130	4
27	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
28	Finisher sub-hb mtr	JC90-01402A	1
Not shown	Clutch drive	JC90-01404A	1

Top output bin

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the top output bin
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top output bin on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC63-05002B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Cover, M Tray

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

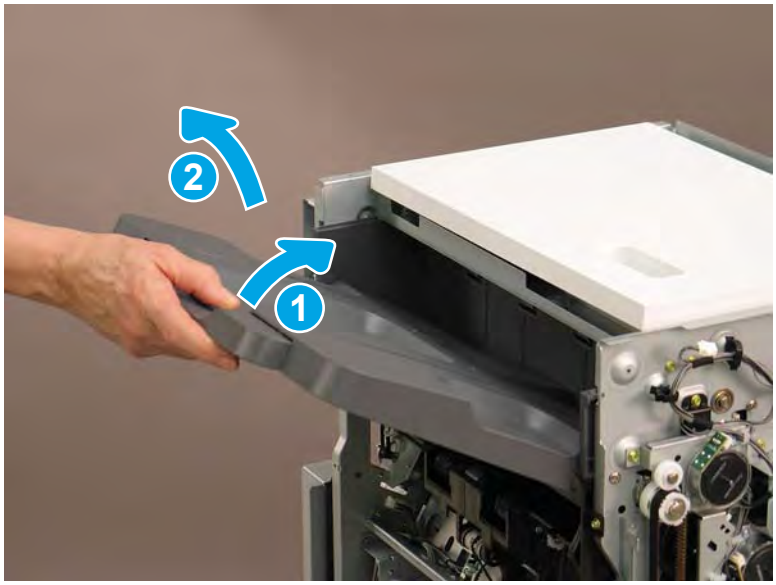
Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the top output bin

▲ Raise the end of the top output bin (callout 1), and then lift it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-37 Remove the top output bin



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right top cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right top cover of the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01448B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher sub - Inlet guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

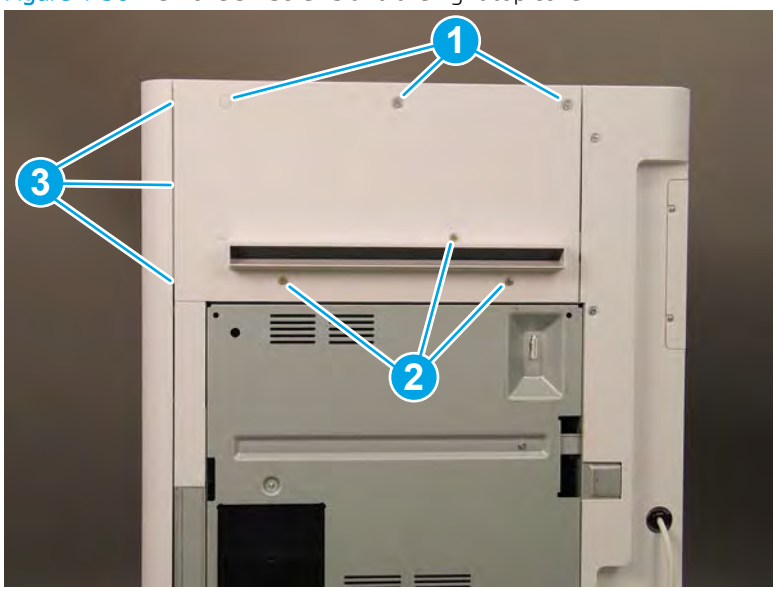
Step 1: Remove the right top cover

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-38 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top cover of the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01446B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Cover, top

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

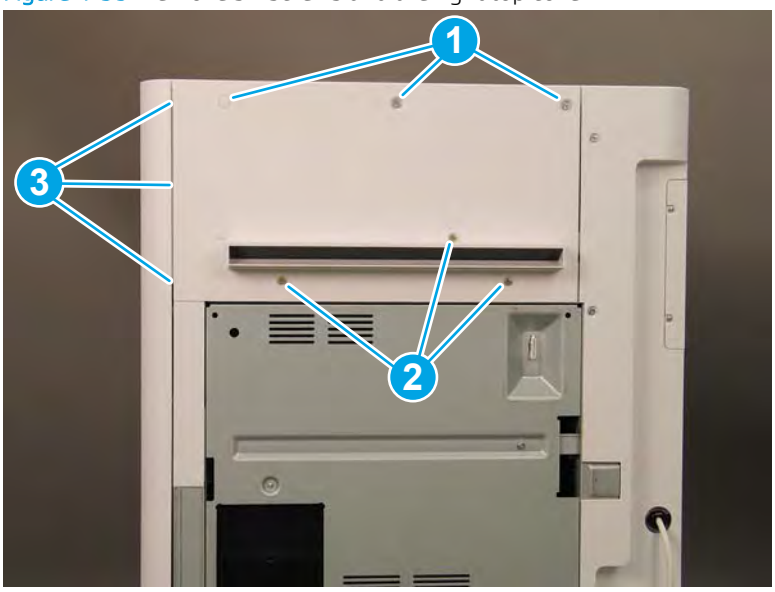
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

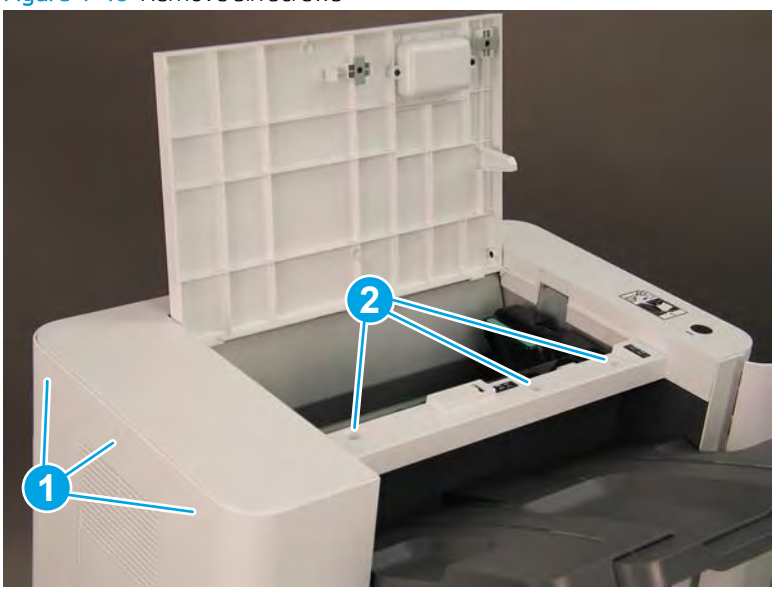
Figure 4-39 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

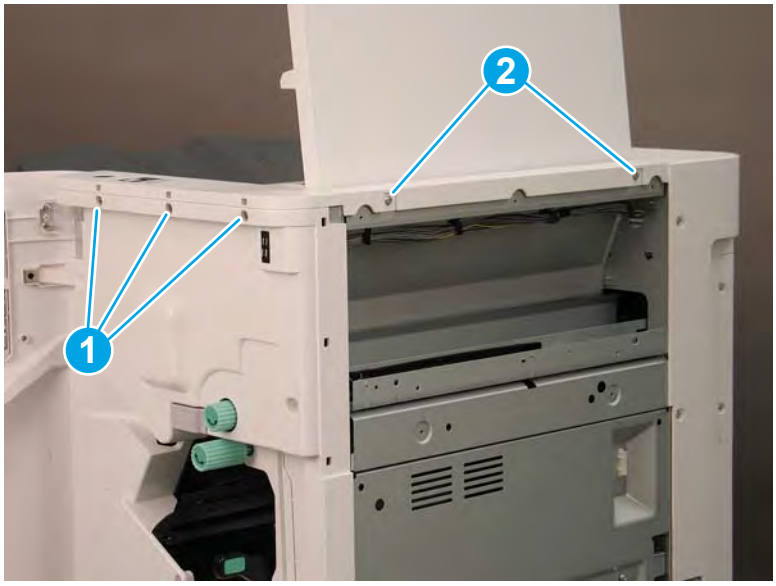
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-40 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

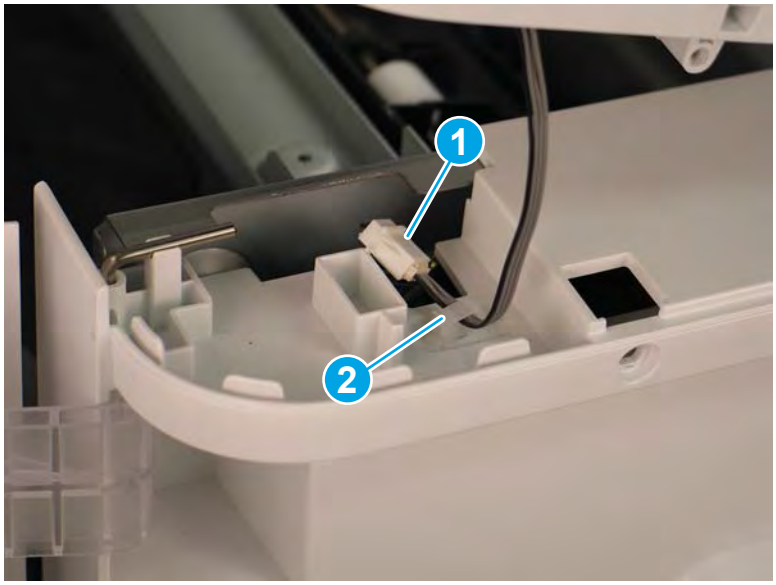
Figure 4-41 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-42 Disconnect one connector and release retainer



Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front door

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front door for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01444A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher sub - door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

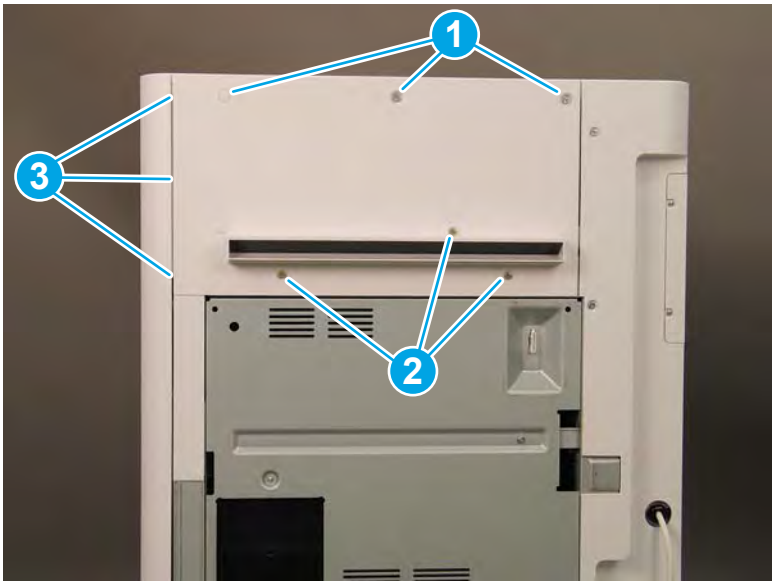
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

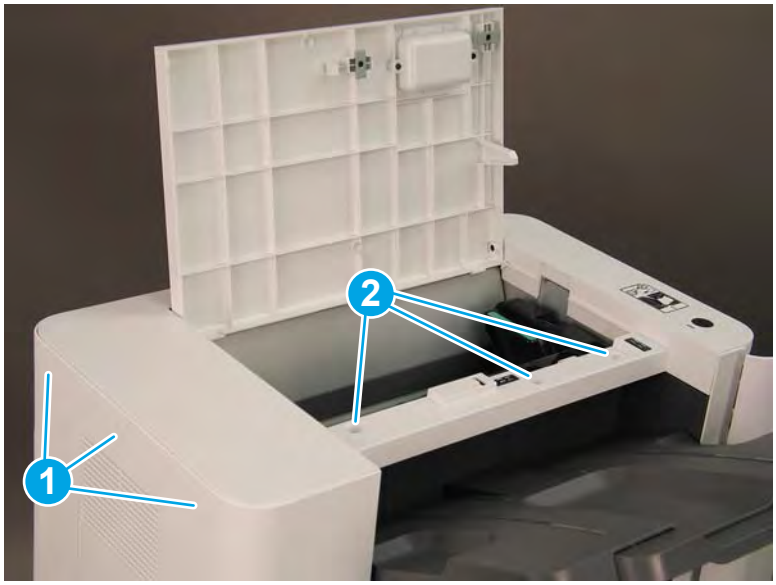
Figure 4-43 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

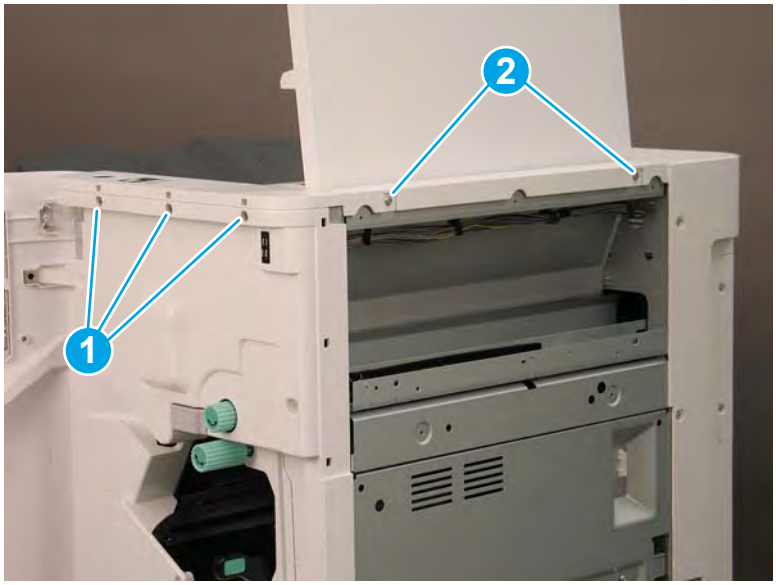
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-44 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

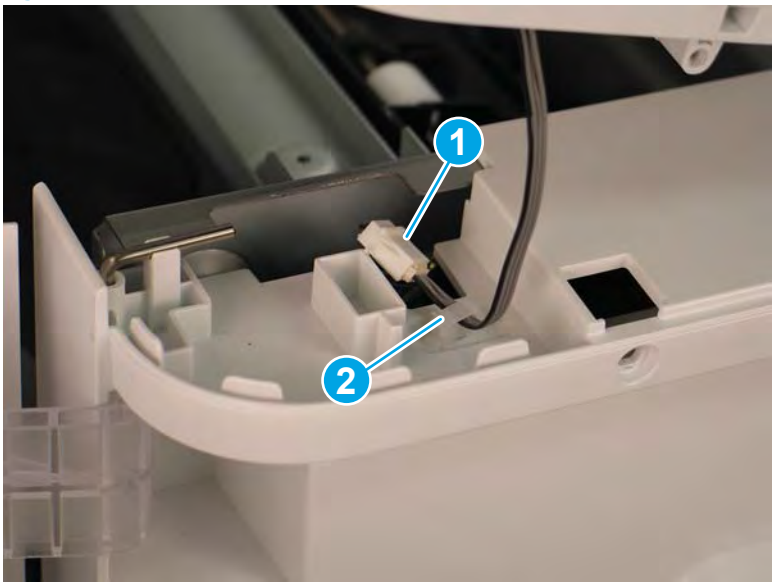
Figure 4-45 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-46 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

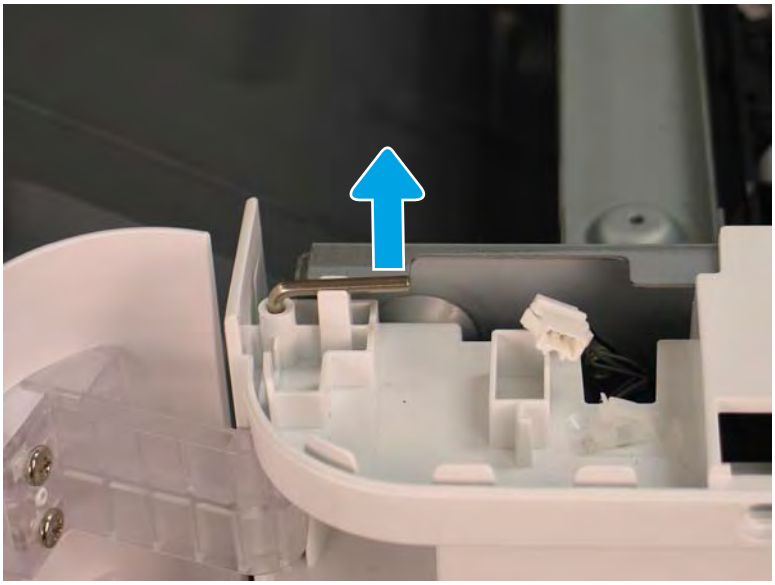


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

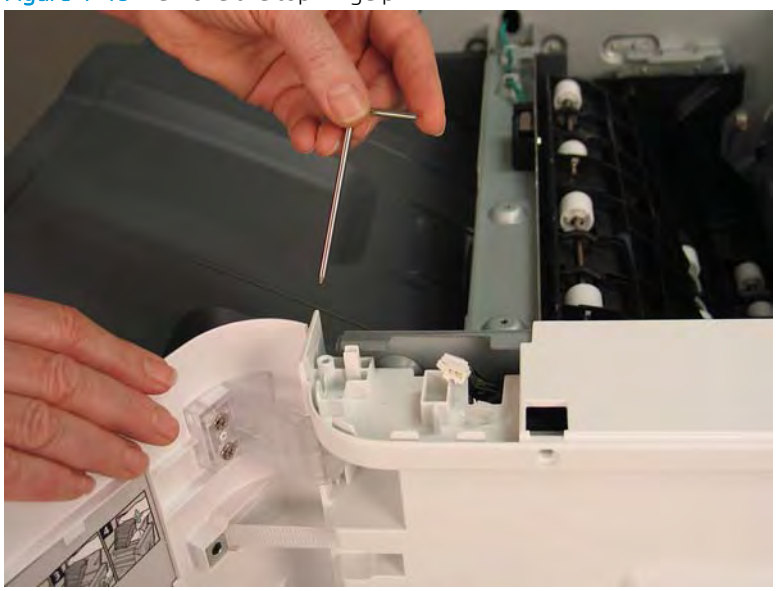
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-47 Lift the top hinge pin



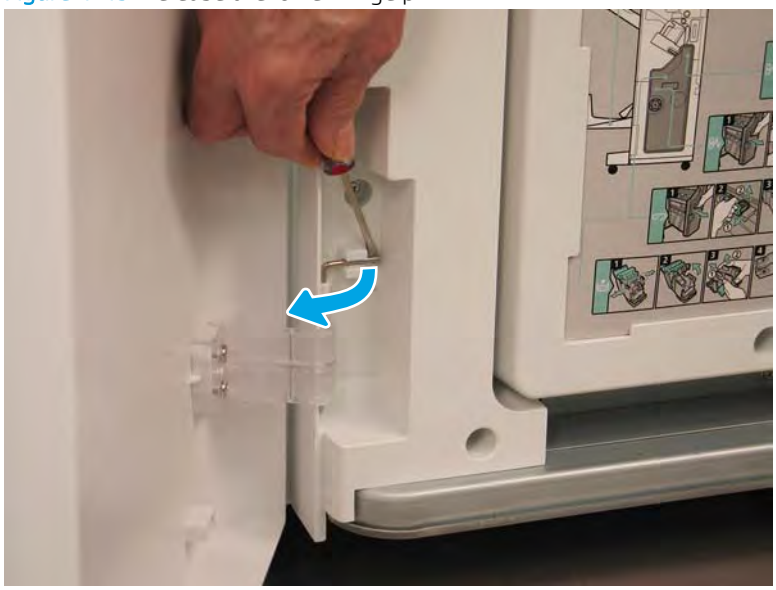
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-48 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-49 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

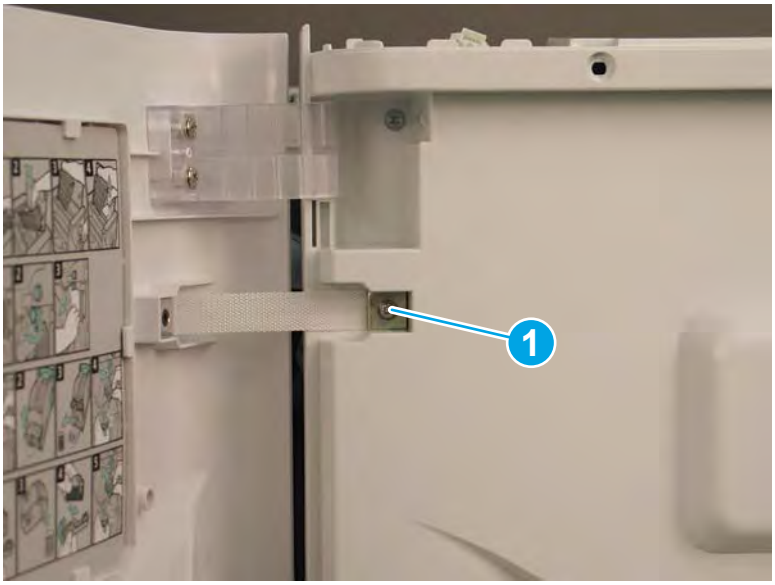
Figure 4-50 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-51 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC63-04988B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Cover, rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

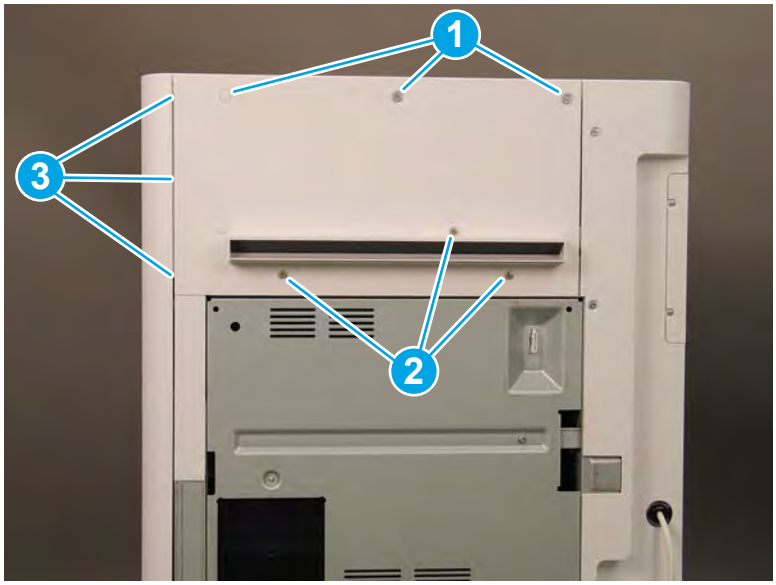
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

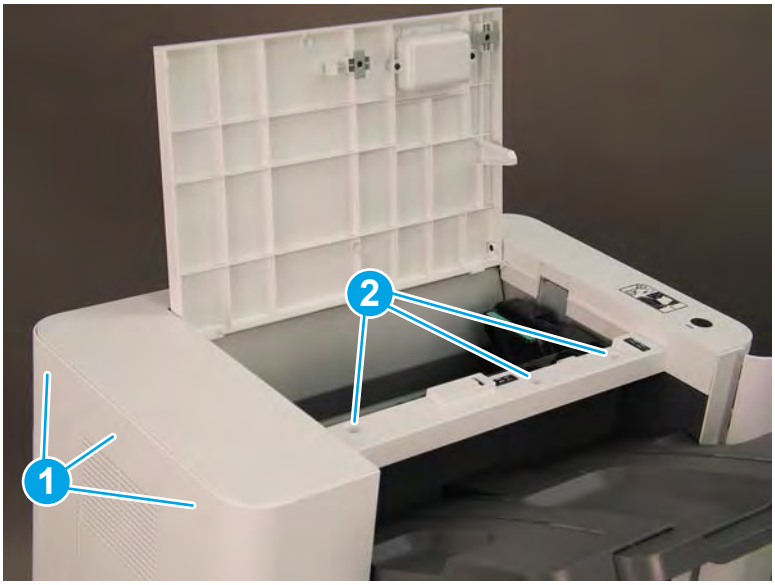
Figure 4-52 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

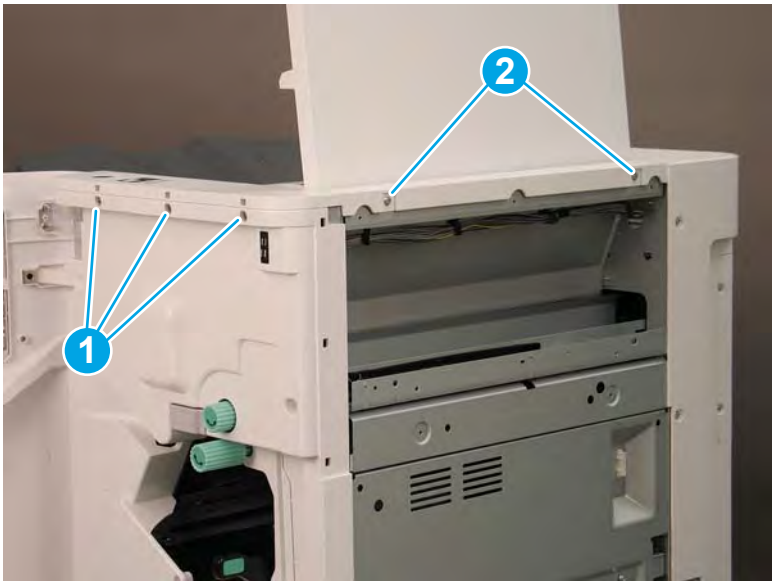
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-53 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

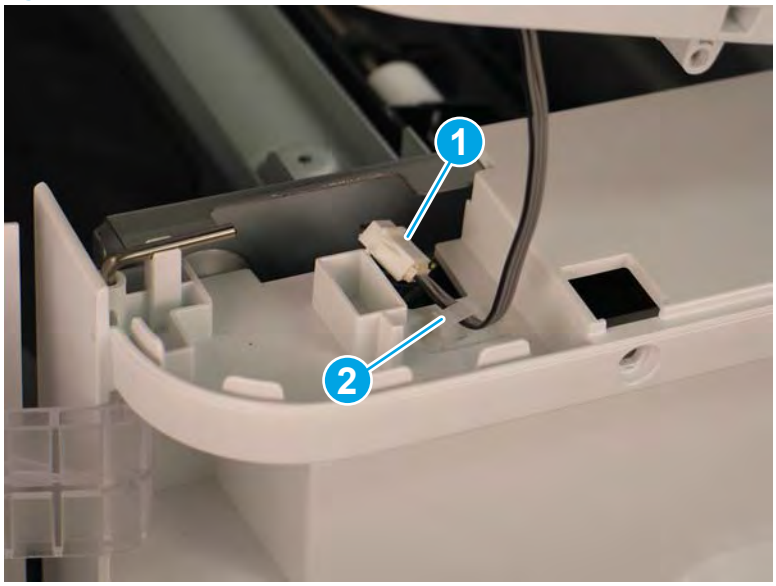
Figure 4-54 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-55 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

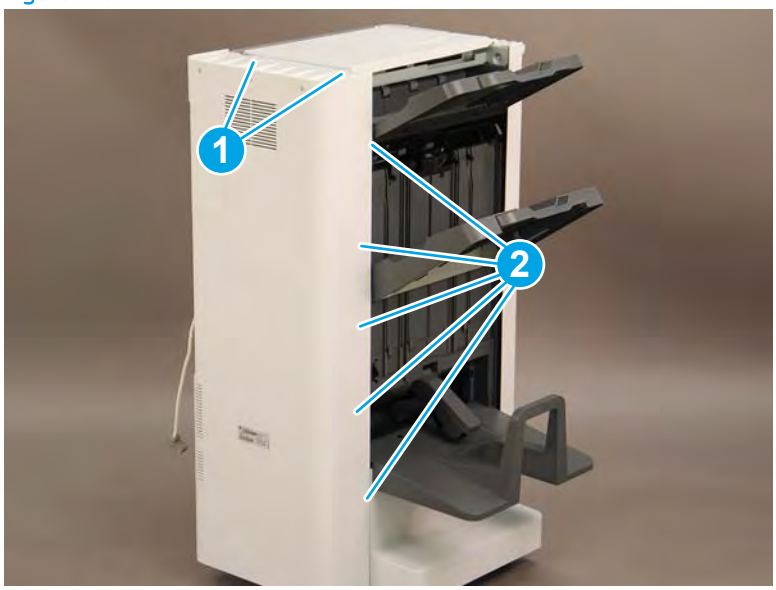


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-56 Remove seven screws

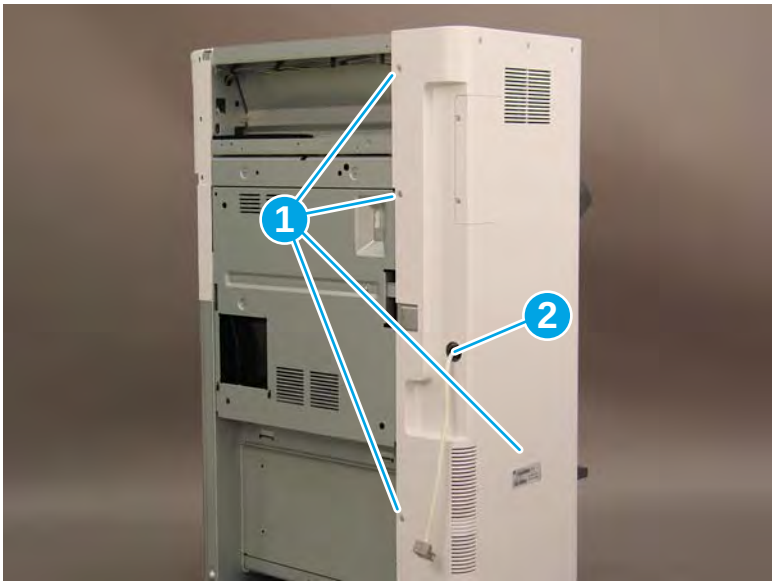


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-57 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC63-04986B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Cover, front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

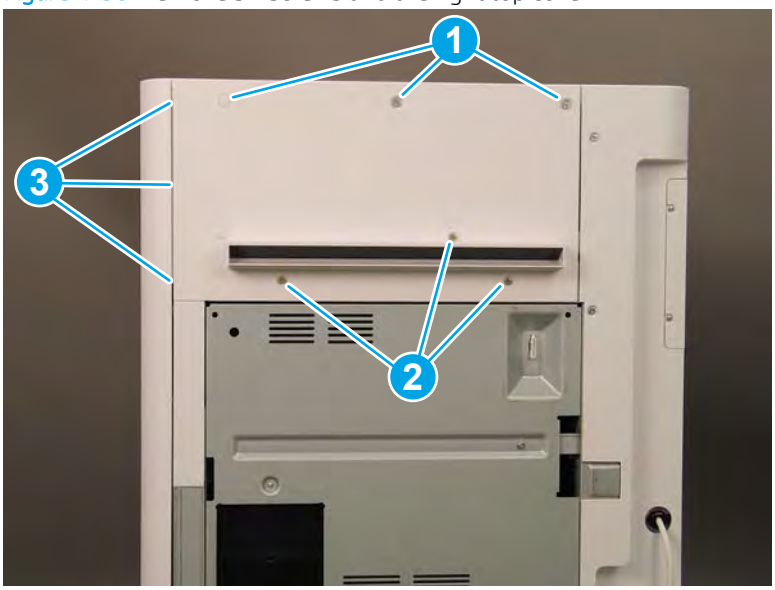
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

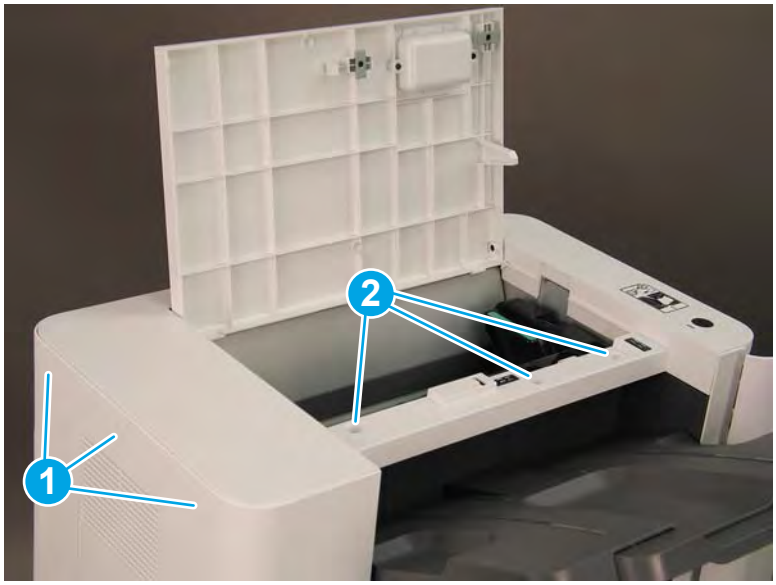
Figure 4-58 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

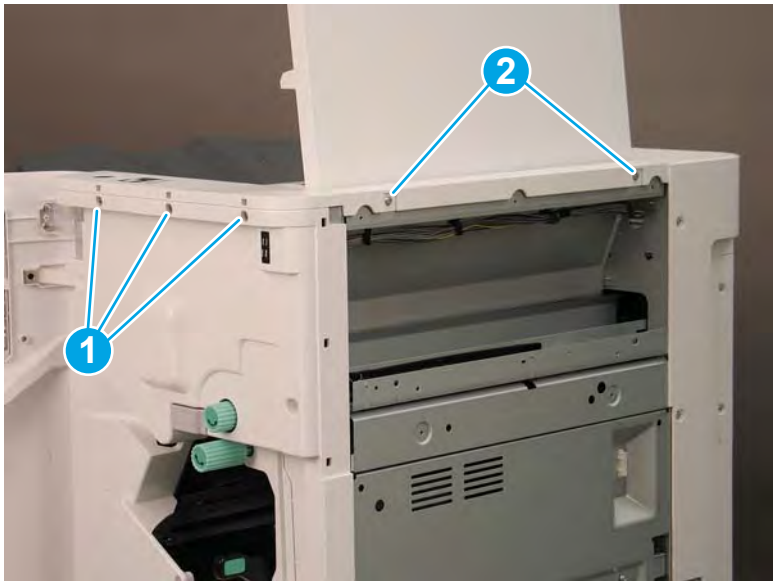
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-59 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

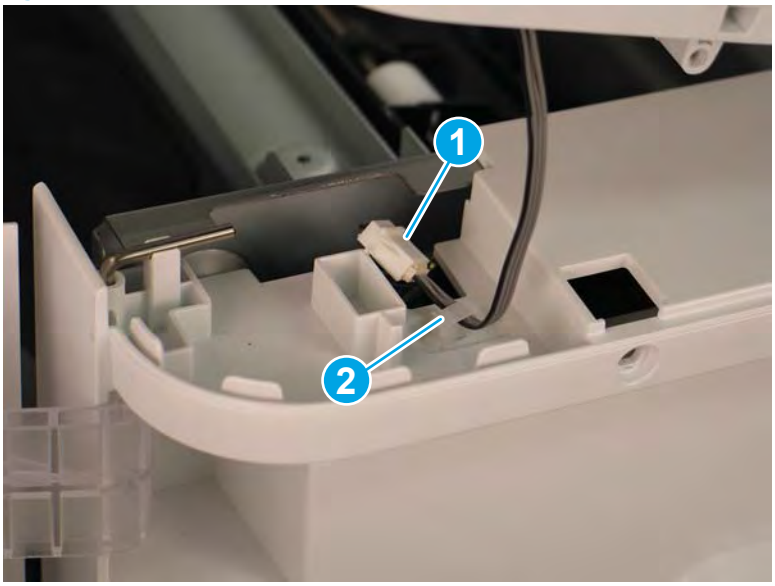
Figure 4-60 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-61 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

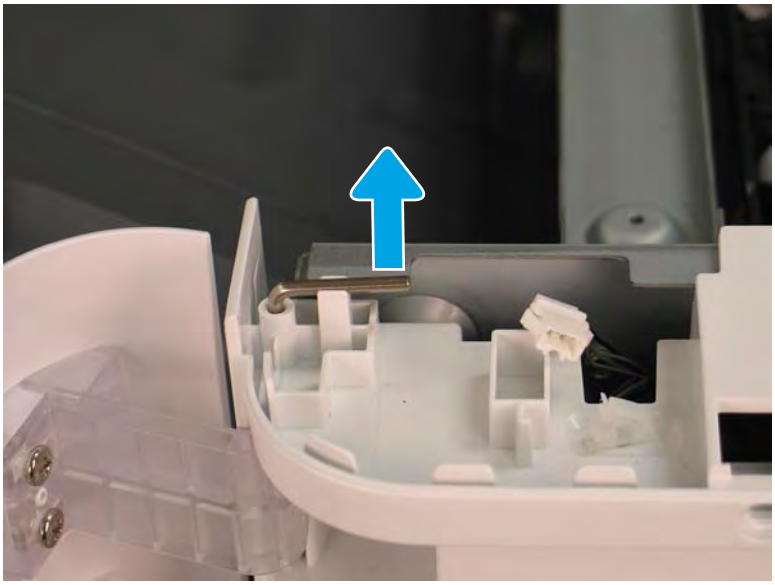


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

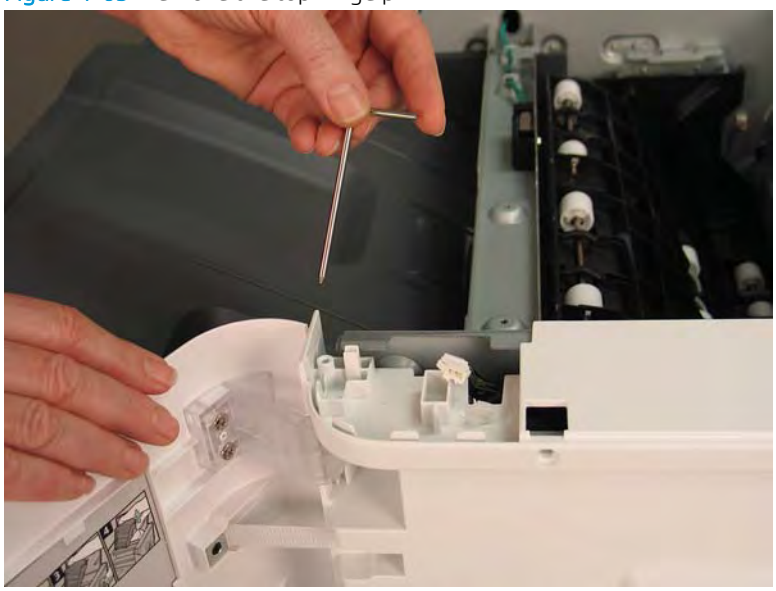
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-62 Lift the top hinge pin



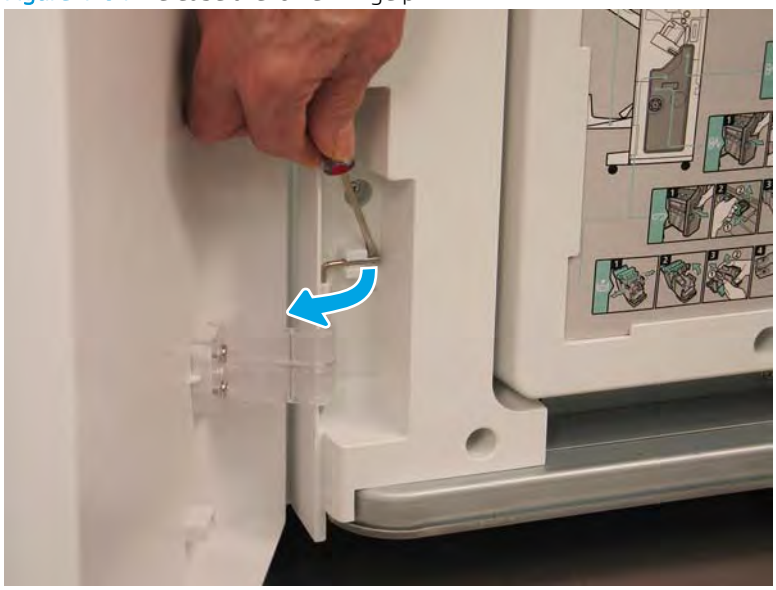
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-63 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-64 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

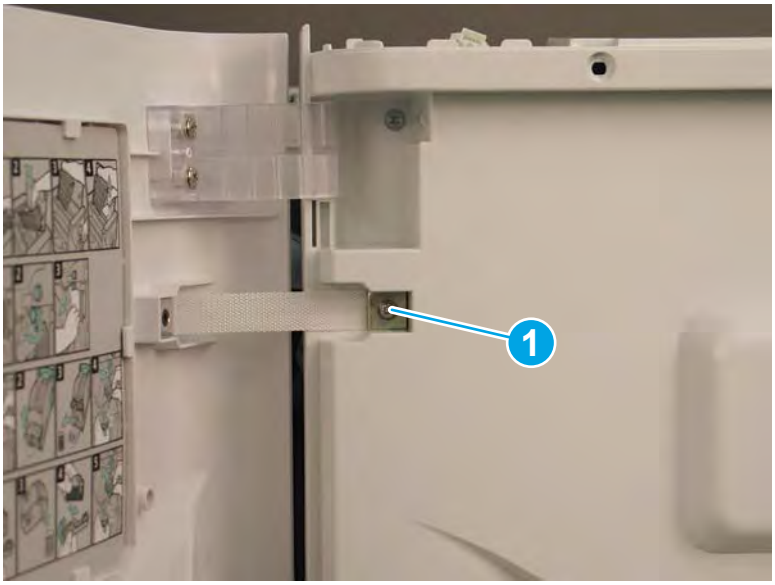
Figure 4-65 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

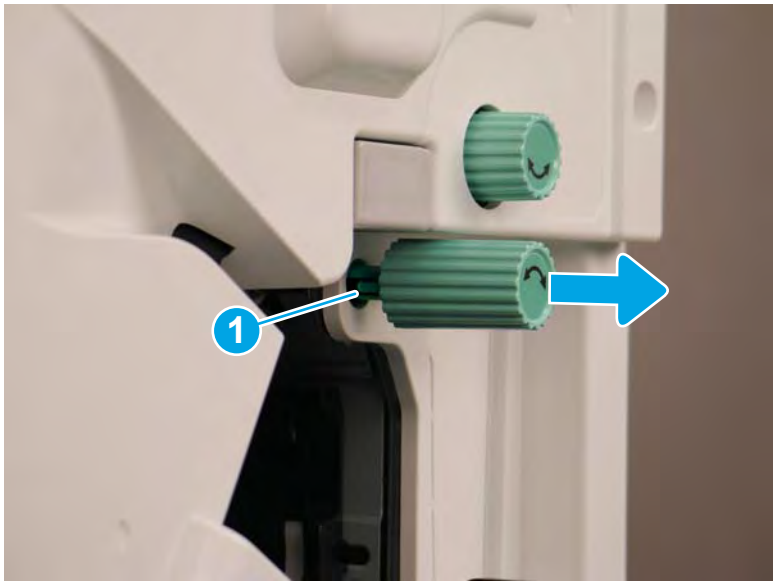
Figure 4-66 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-67 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

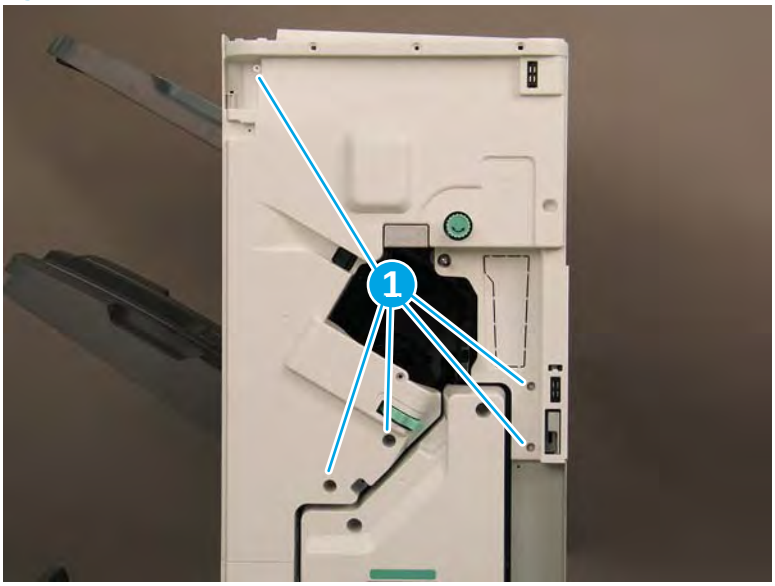
Figure 4-68 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-69 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front lower cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the front lower cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front lower cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC63-04987B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Cover - tray booklet finisher

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

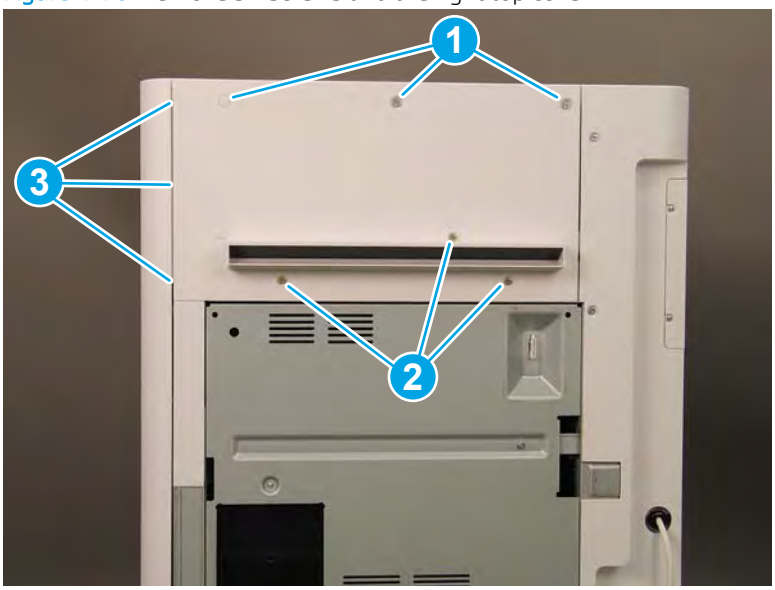
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

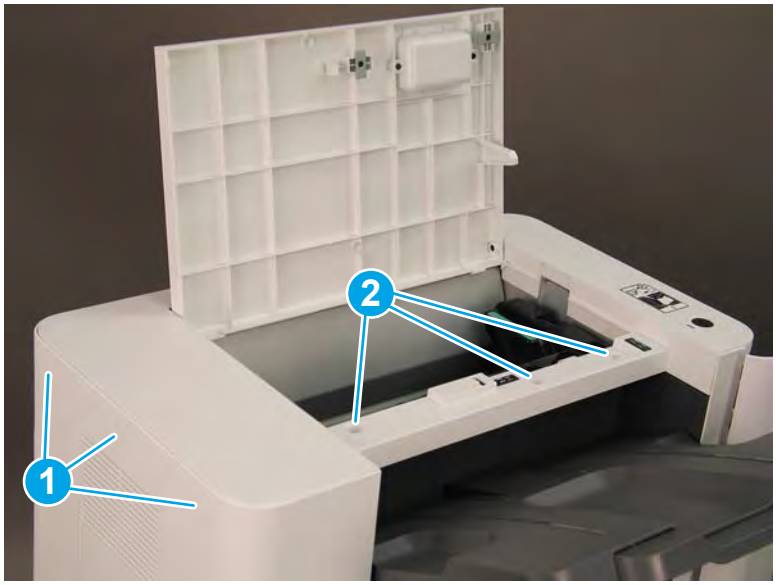
Figure 4-70 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

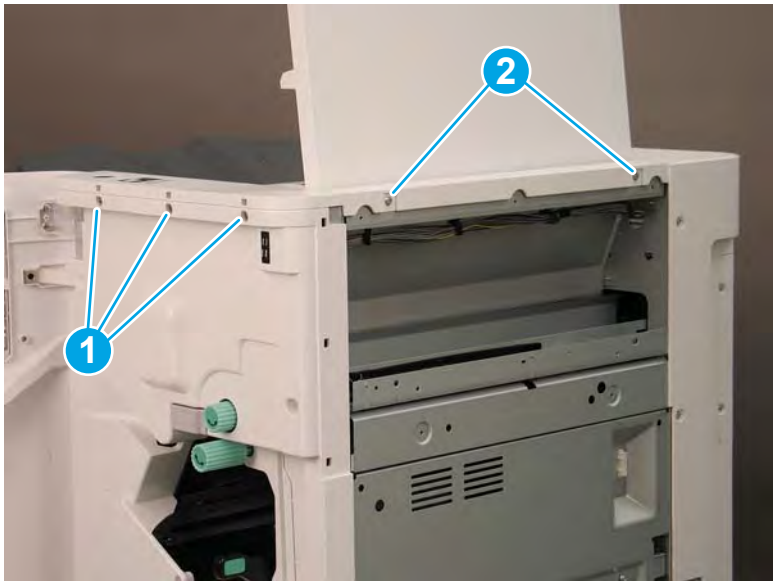
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-71 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

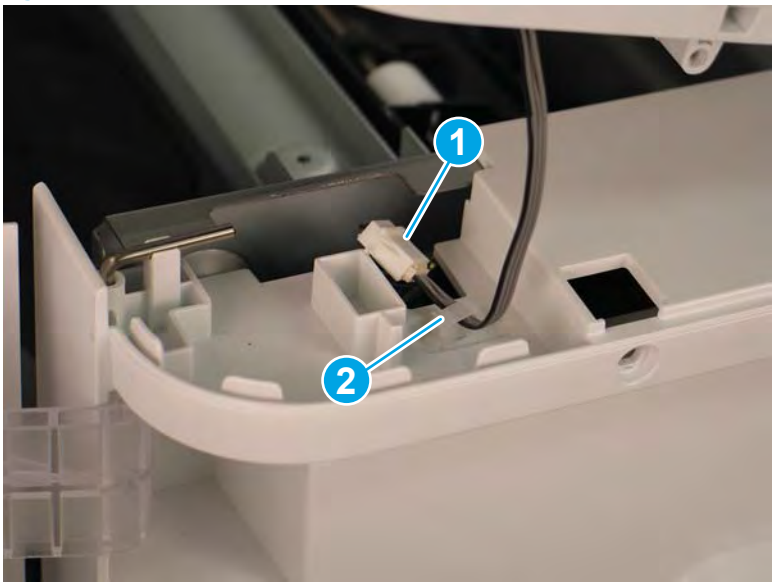
Figure 4-72 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-73 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

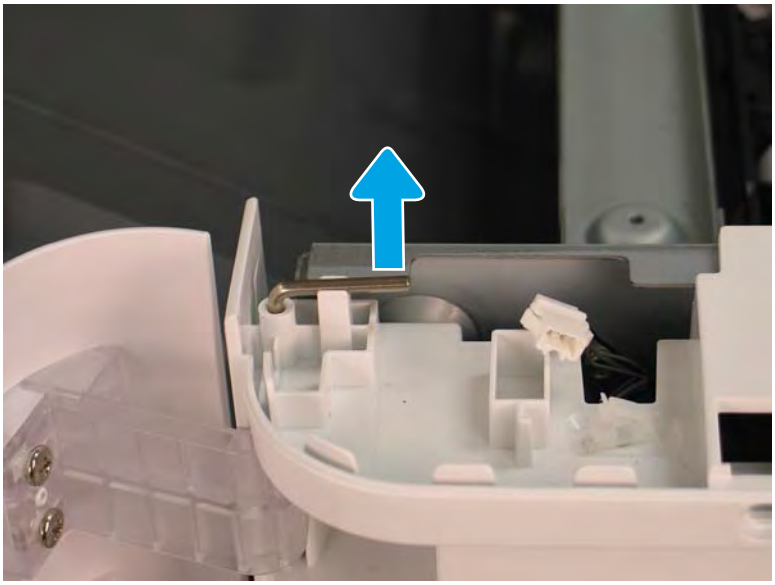


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

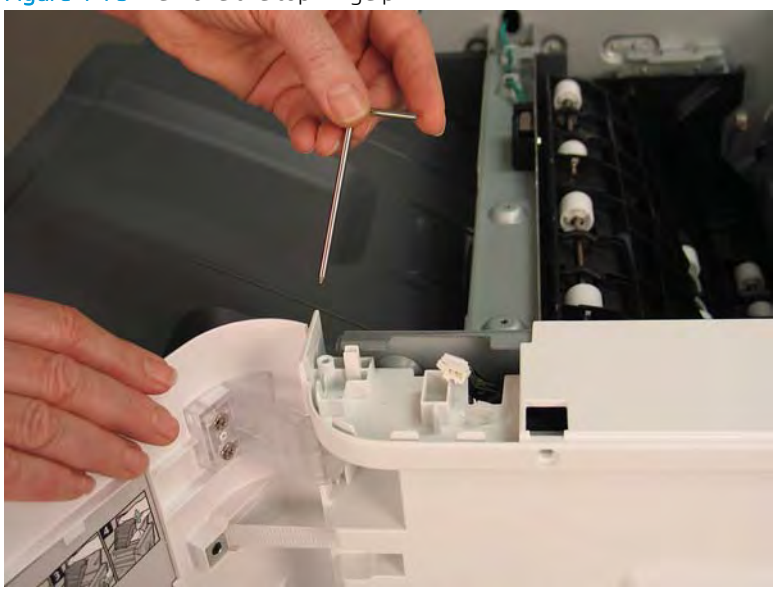
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-74 Lift the top hinge pin



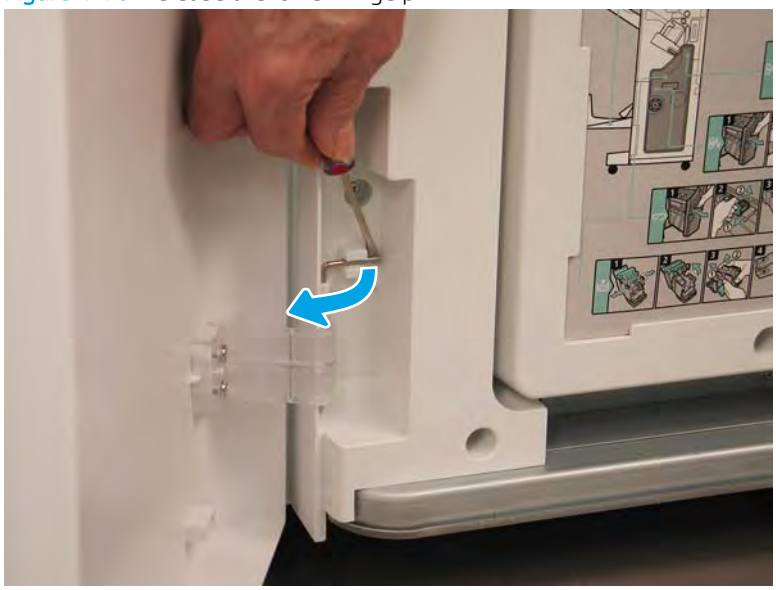
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-75 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-76 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

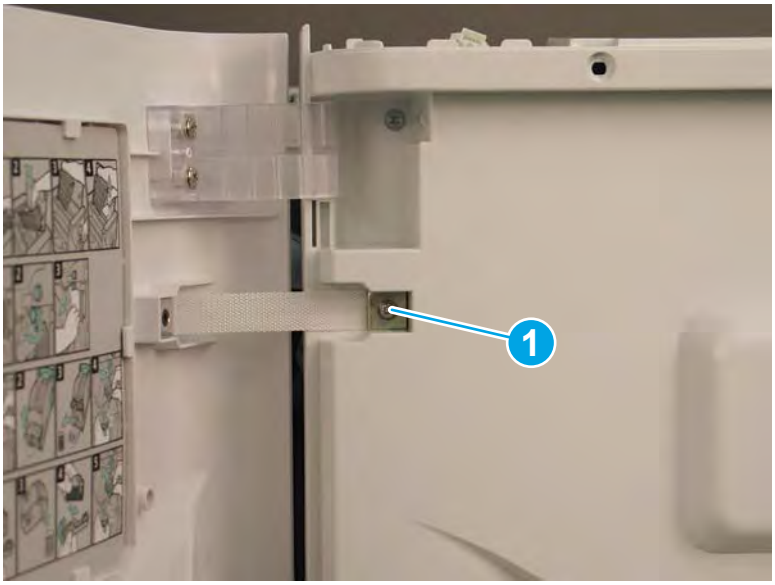
Figure 4-77 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

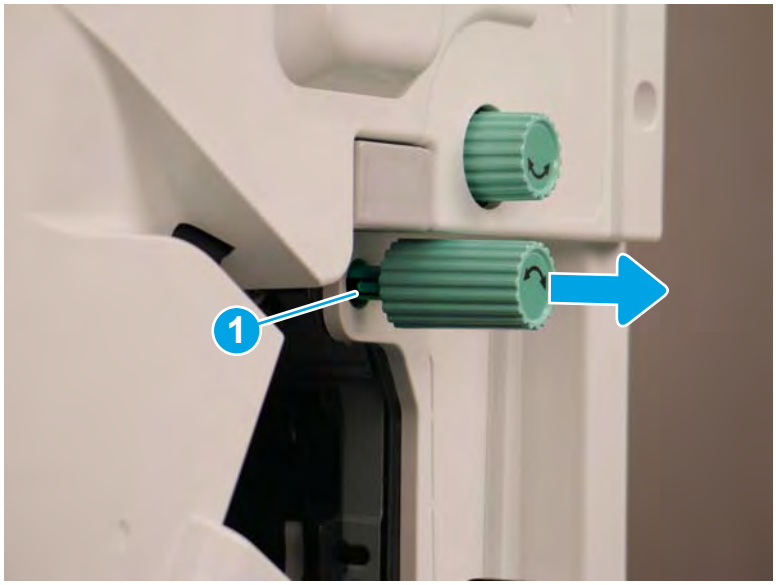
Figure 4-78 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-79 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

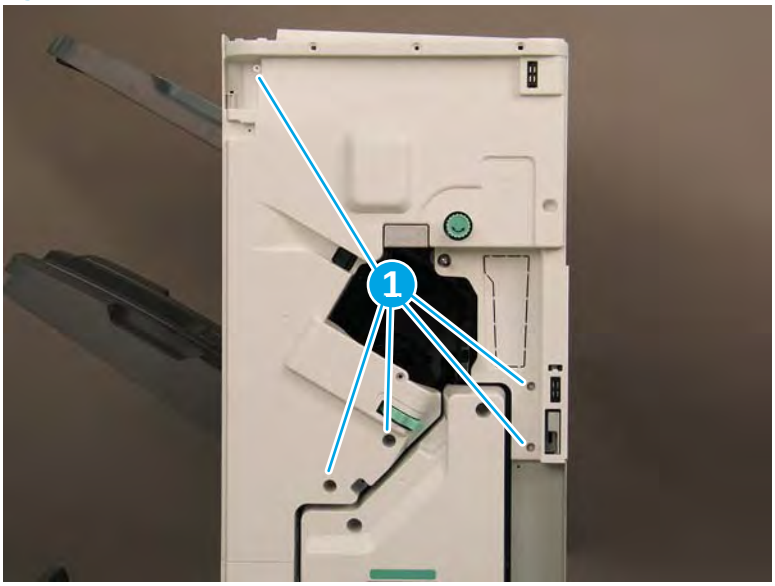
Figure 4-80 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-81 Remove five screws and the front cover

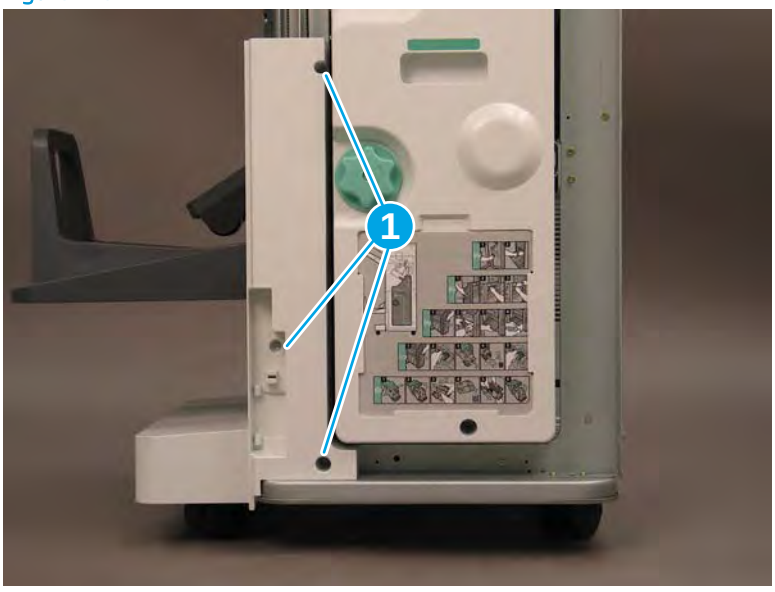


Step 5: Remove the front lower cover (finisher)

▲ Remove three machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front lower cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-82 Remove three screws and the front lower cover



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet tray

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet tray
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet tray on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC61-07253B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Tray - guide booklet finisher

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

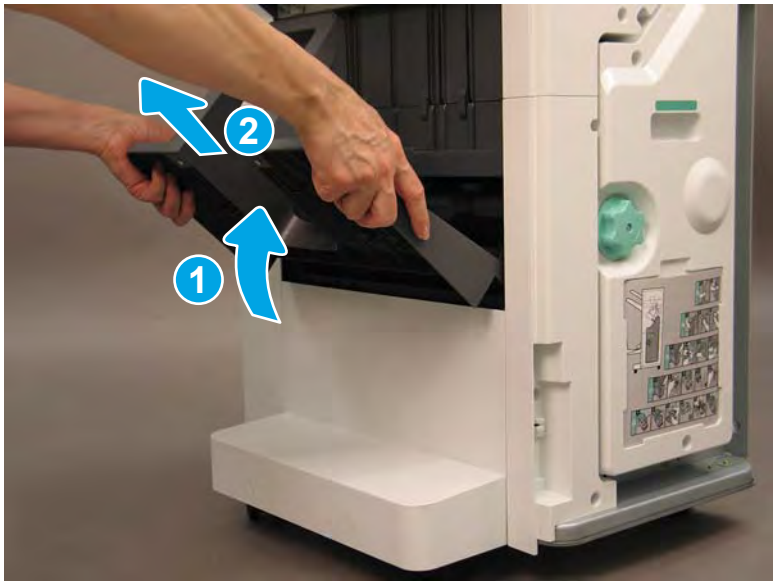
Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-83 Remove the booklet tray



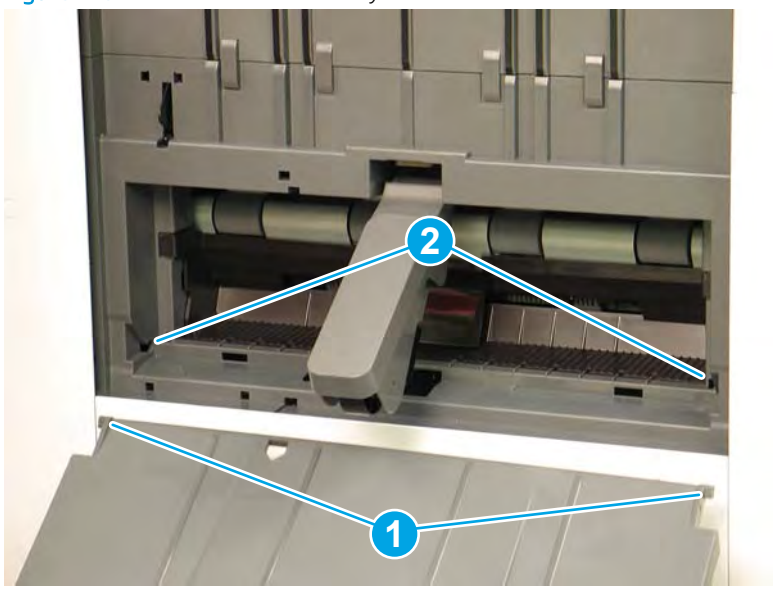
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 4-84 Install the booklet tray



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Caster cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet tray (booklet finishers only)
- Step 2: Remove the caster cover
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the caster cover on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC63-04985B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Caster cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

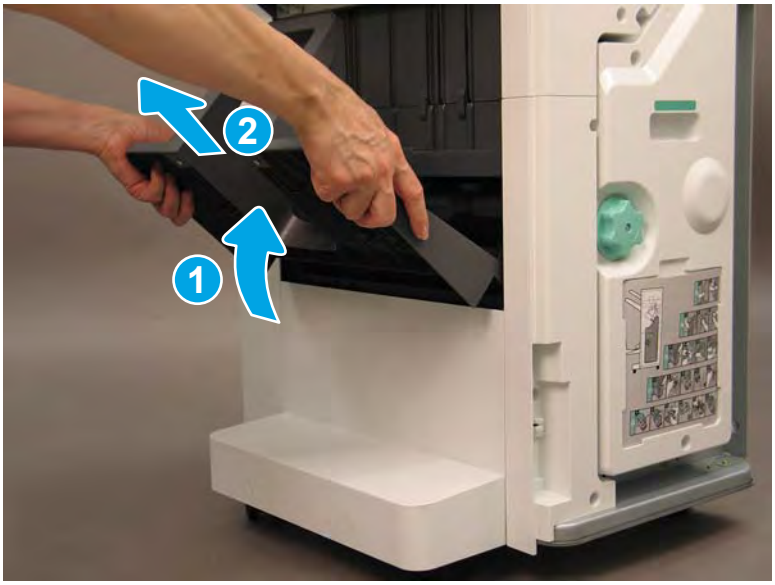
Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet tray (booklet finishers only)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-85 Remove the booklet tray



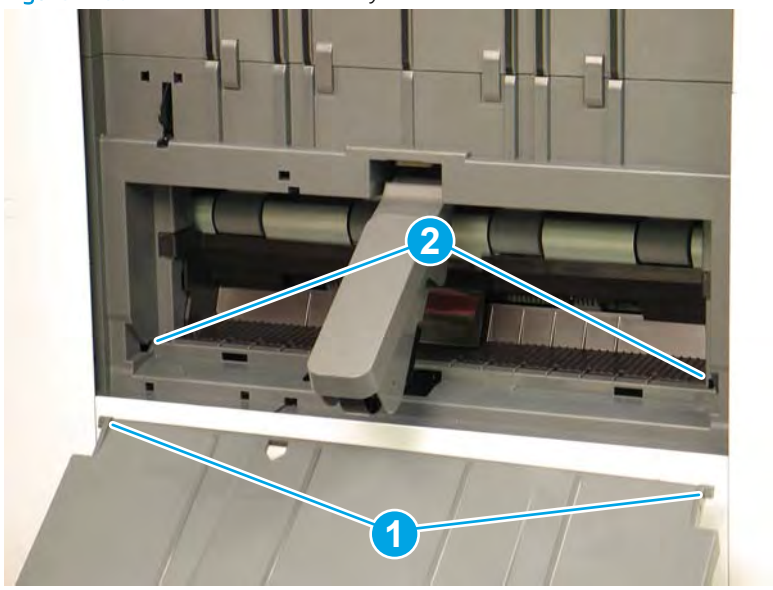
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

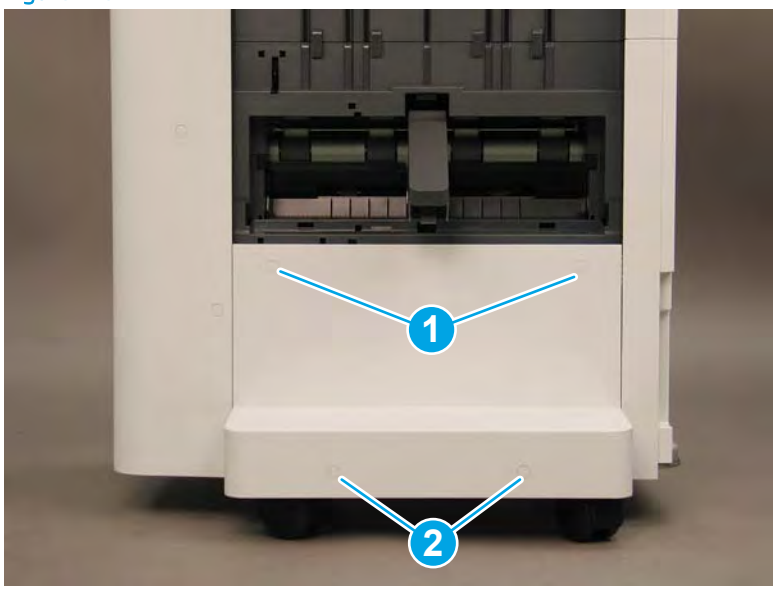
Figure 4-86 Install the booklet tray



Step 2: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-87 Remove four screws

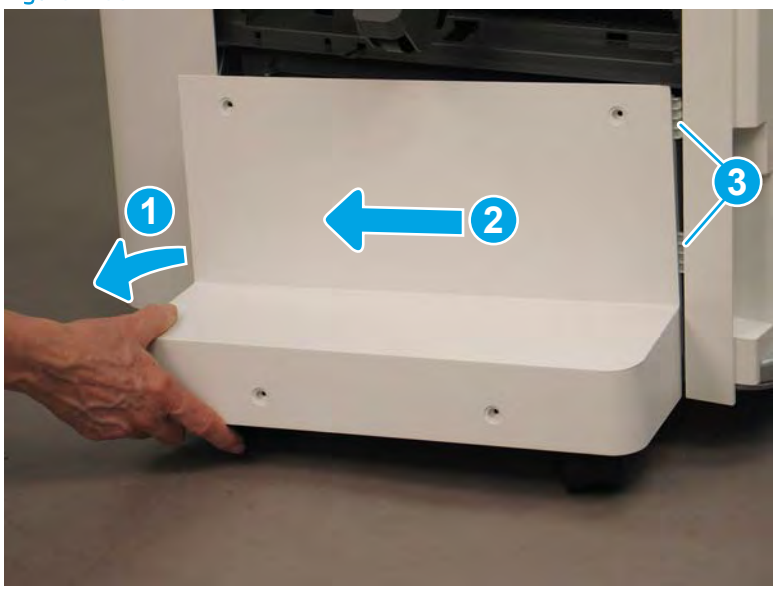


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-88 Remove the caster cover



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Lower shield assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the lower shield assembly on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01417B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Lower shield assembly (finisher)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

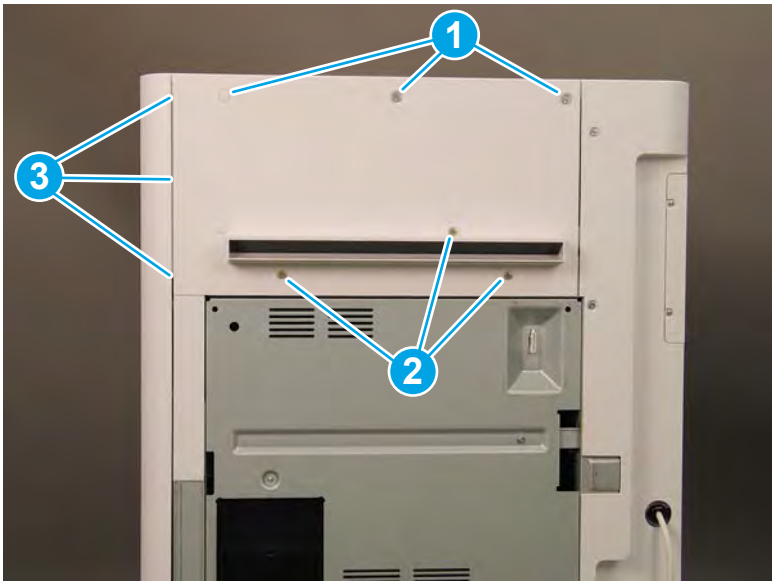
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

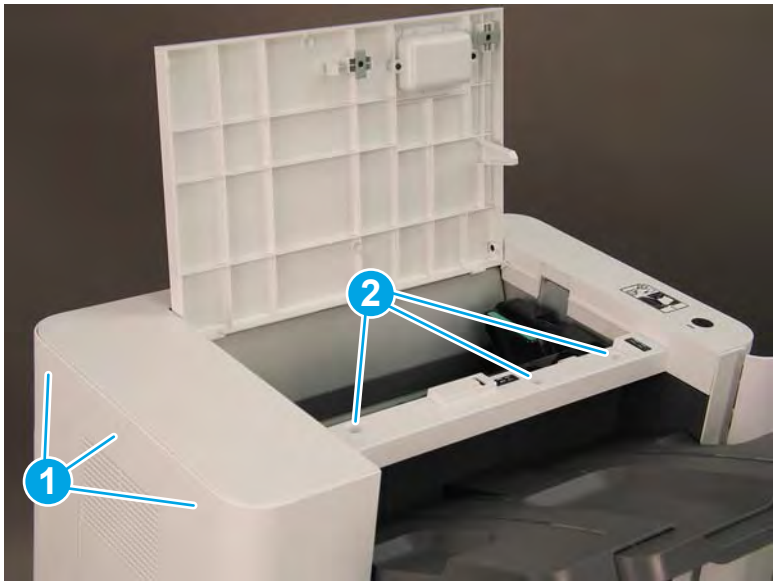
Figure 4-89 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

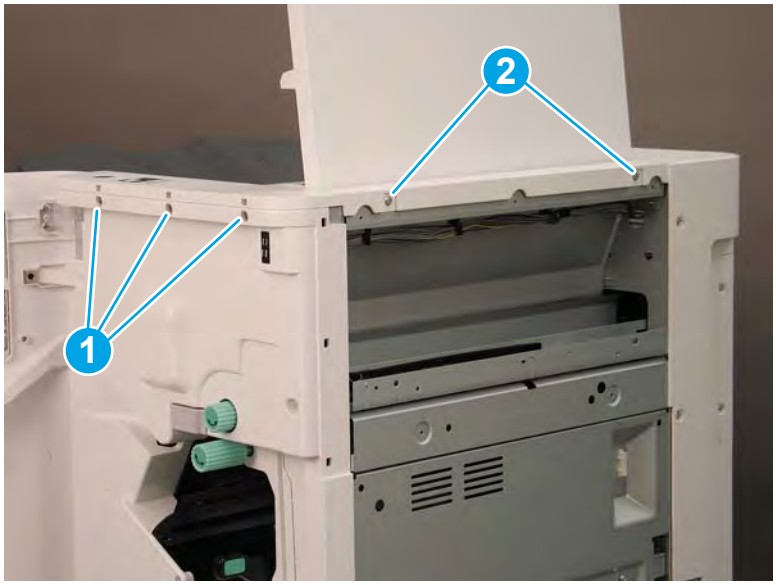
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-90 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

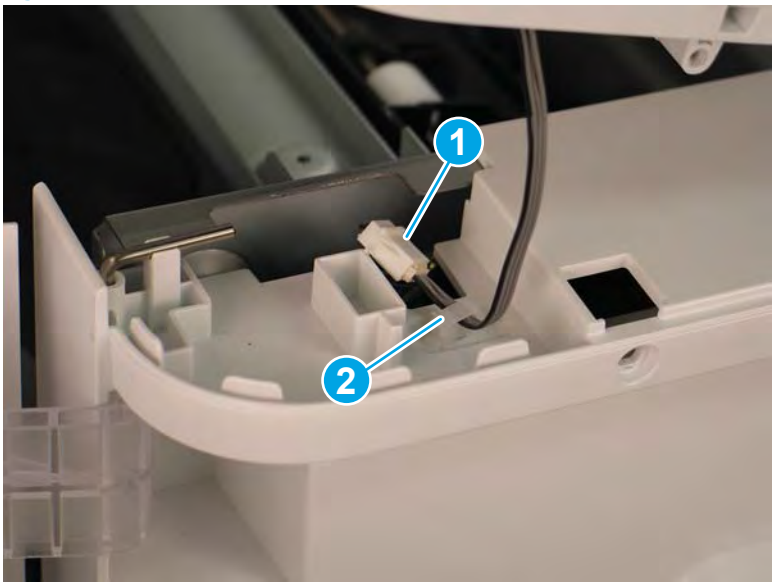
Figure 4-91 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-92 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

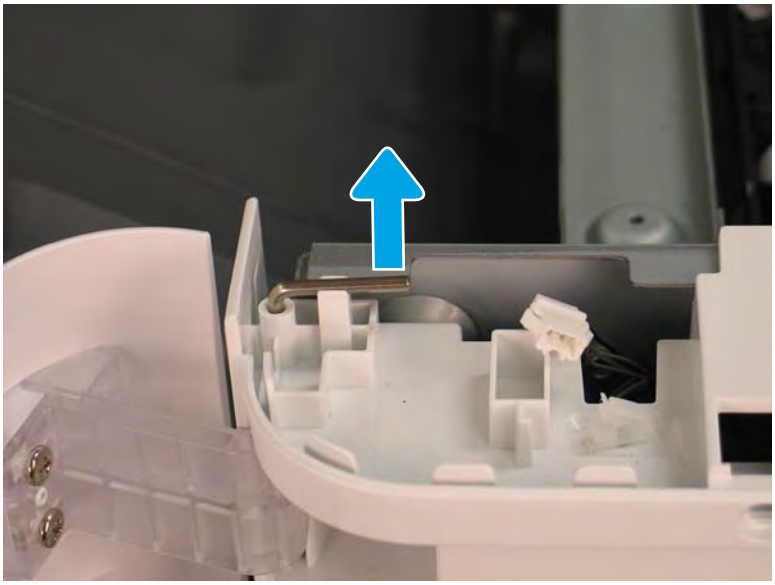


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

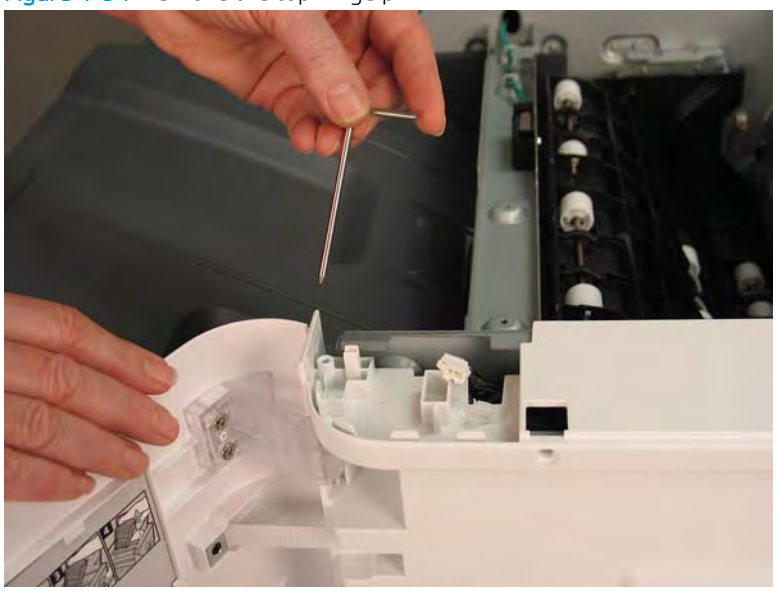
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-93 Lift the top hinge pin



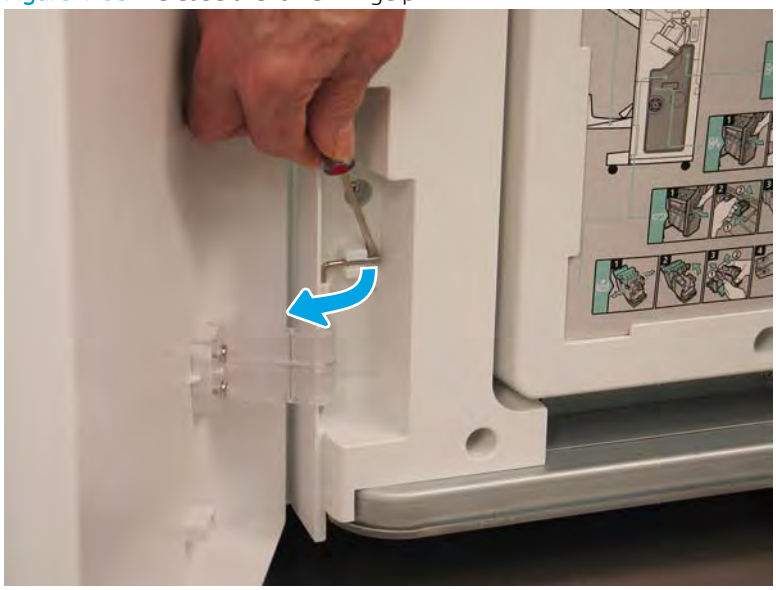
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-94 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-95 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

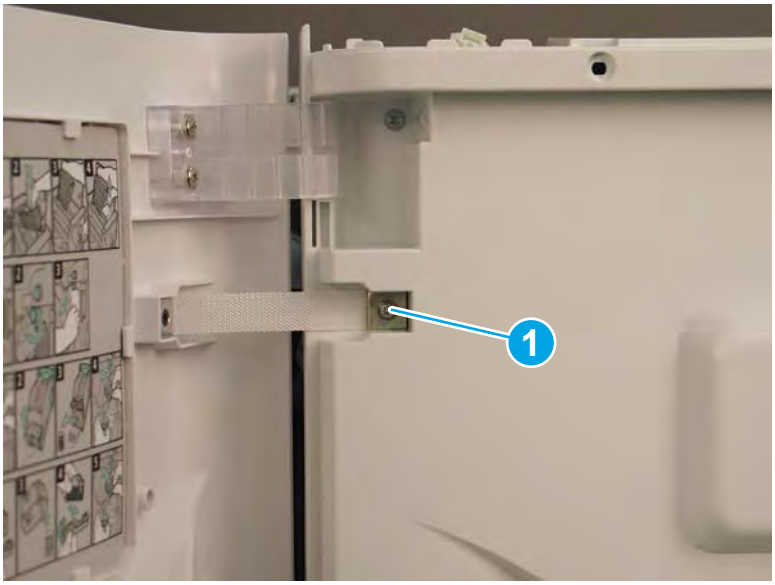
Figure 4-96 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

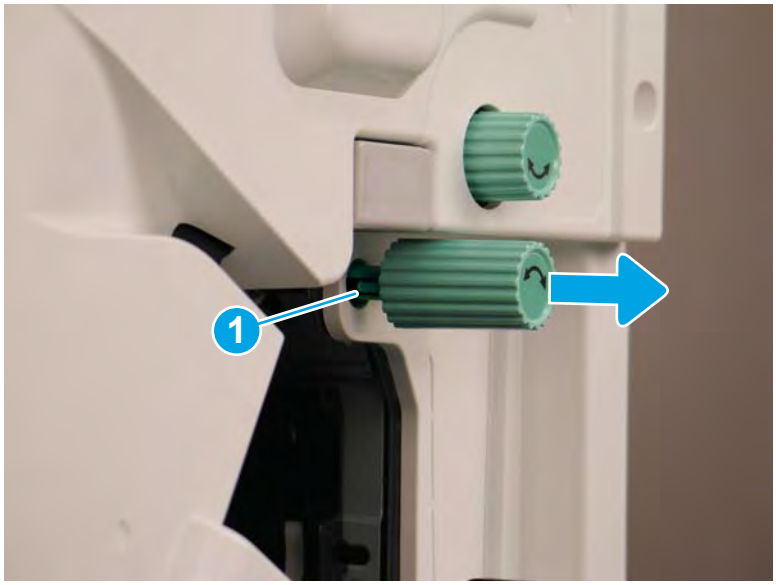
Figure 4-97 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-98 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

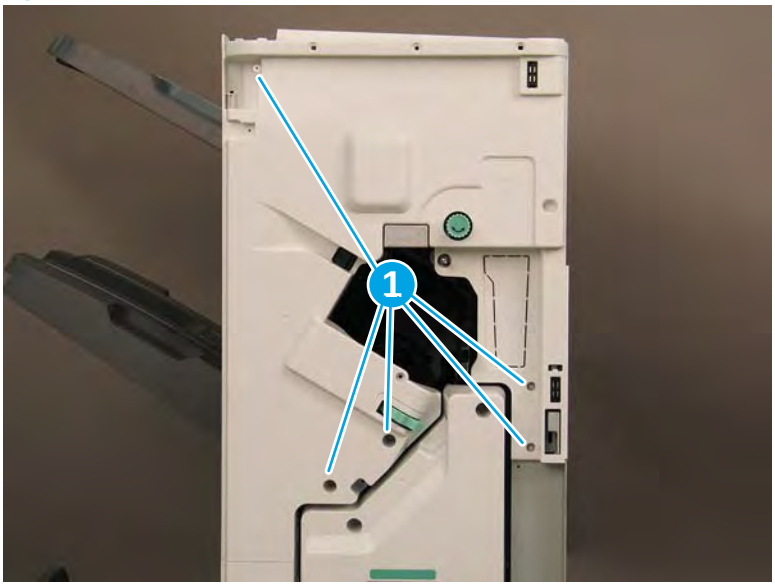
Figure 4-99 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

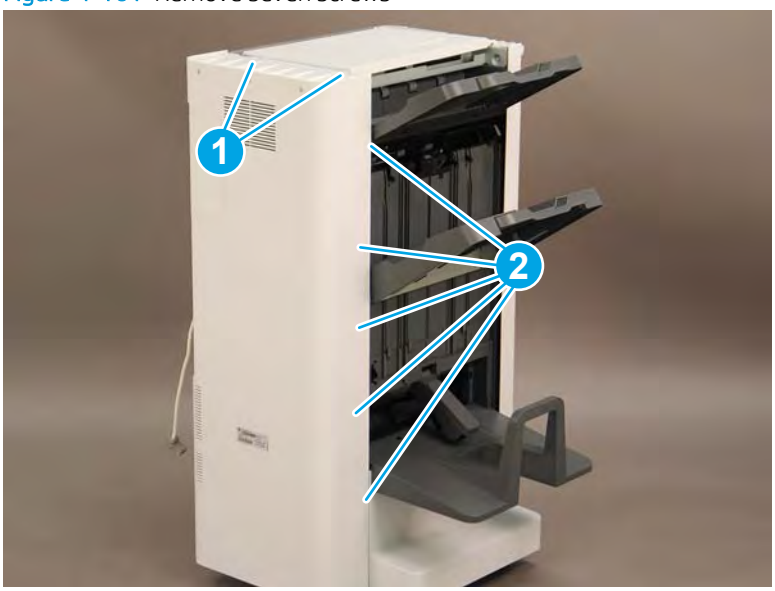
Figure 4-100 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-101 Remove seven screws

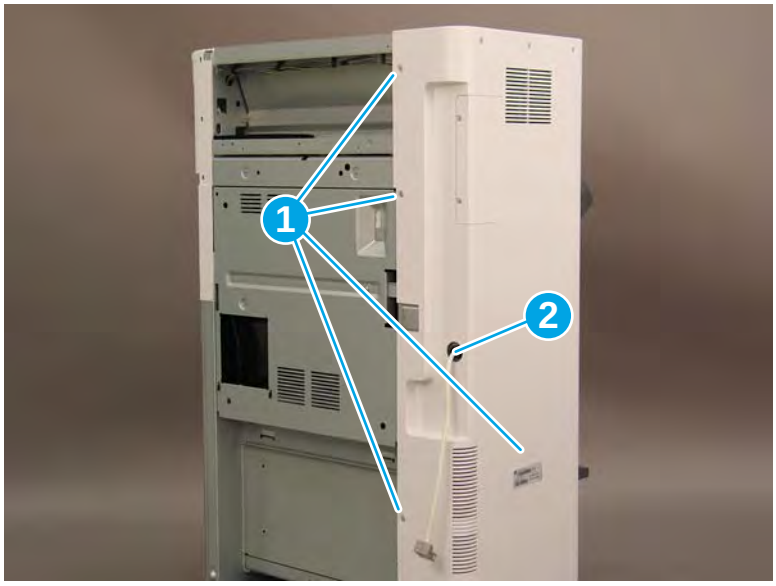


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

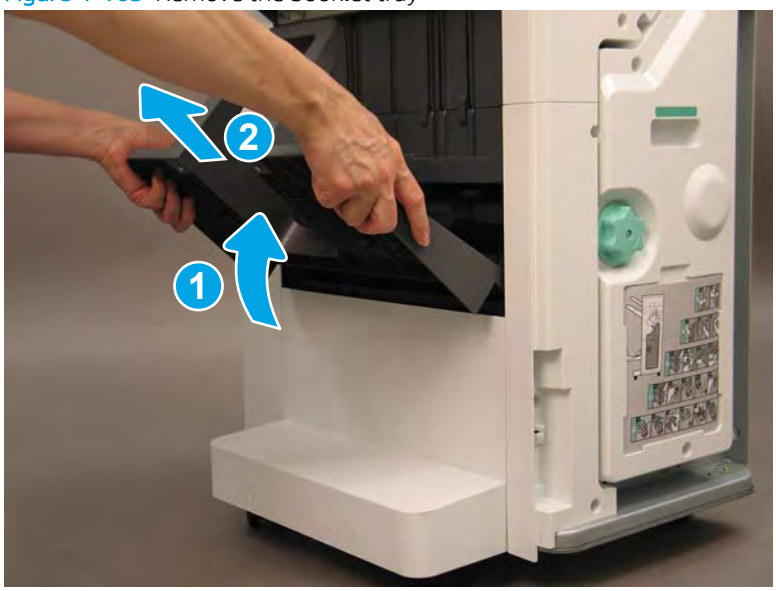
Figure 4-102 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-103 Remove the booklet tray



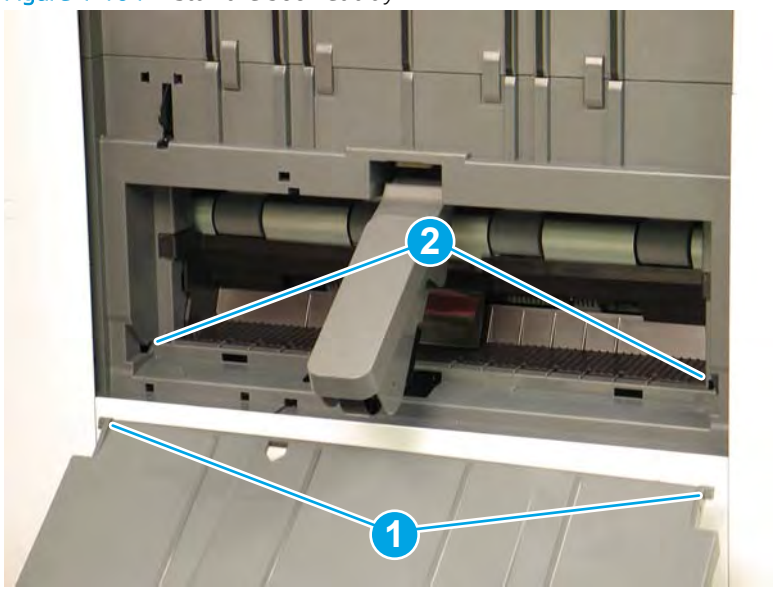
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

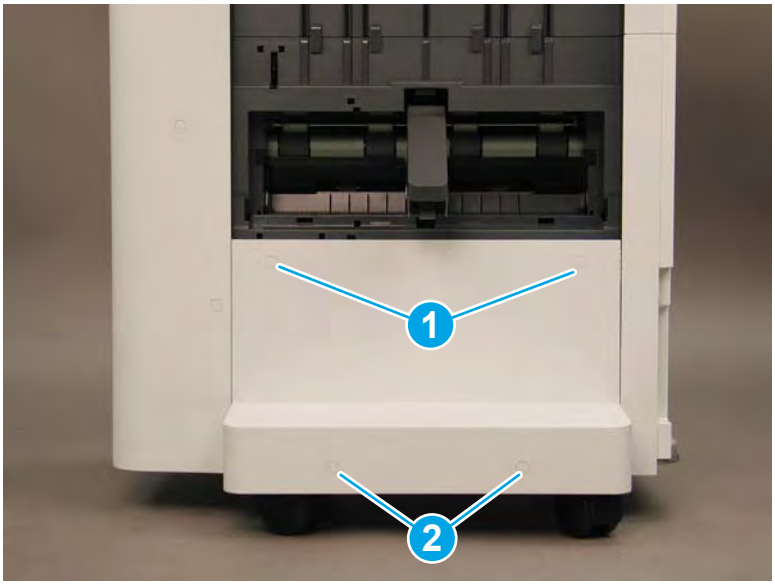
Figure 4-104 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-105 Remove four screws

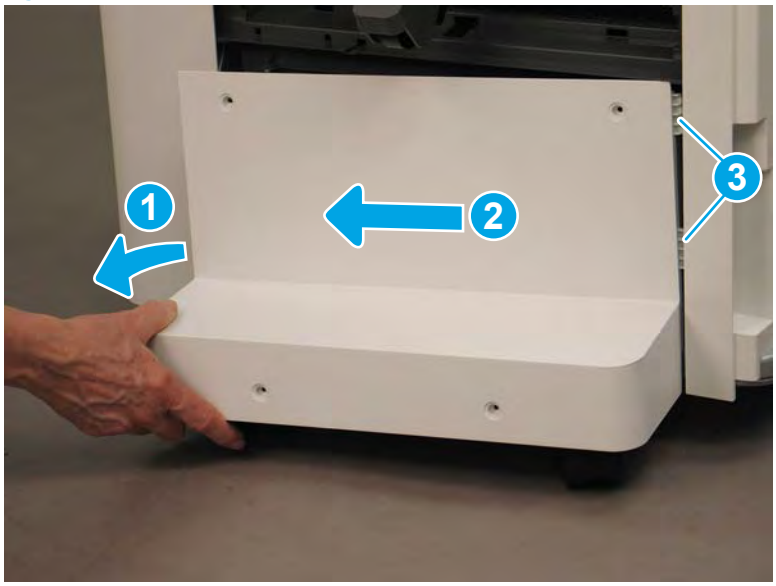


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-106 Remove the caster cover

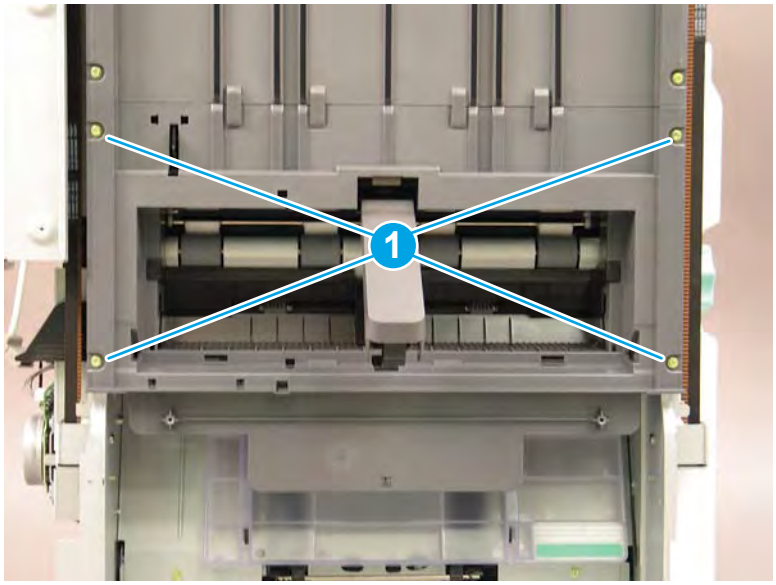


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 4-107 Remove four screws

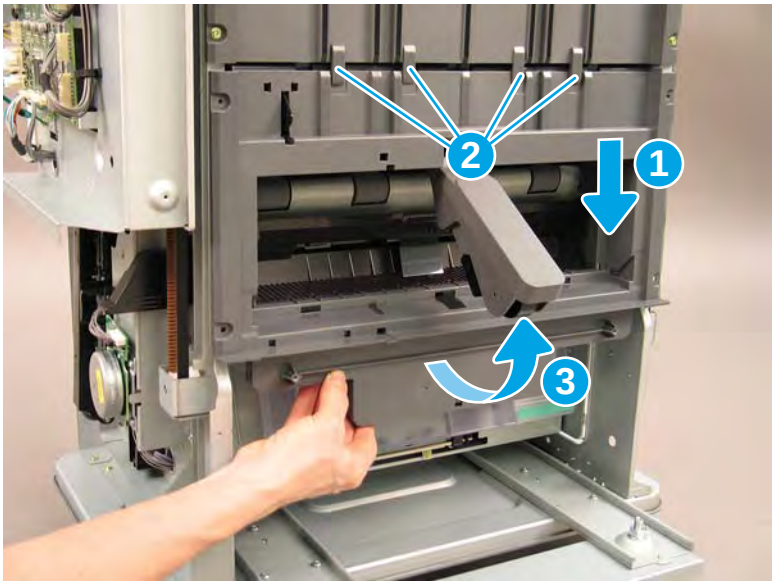


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

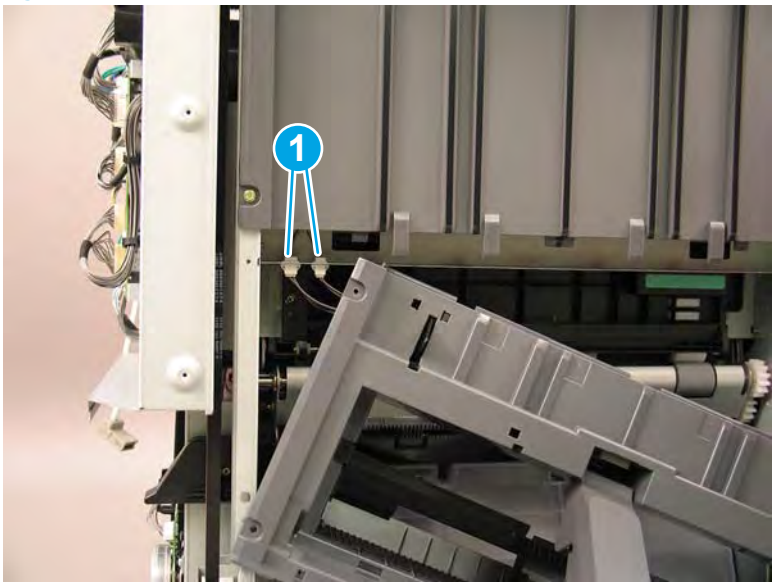
Figure 4-108 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

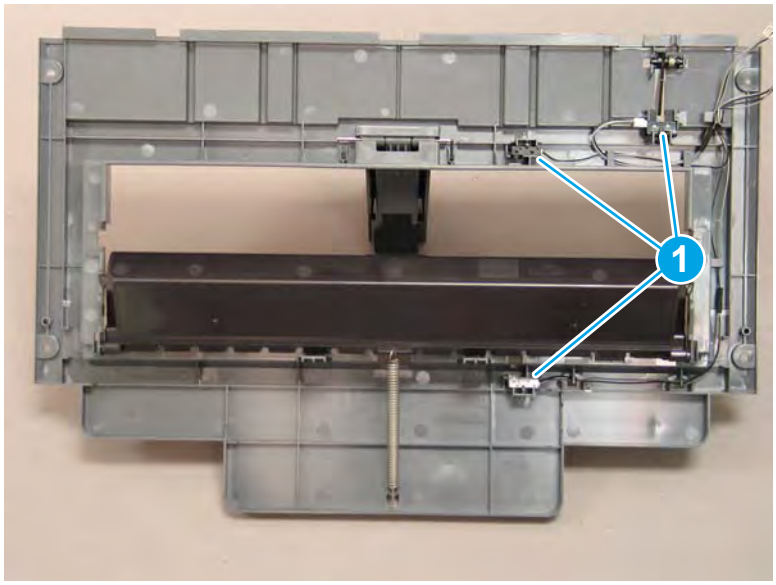
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-109 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 4-110 Locate sensors



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Upper shield assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the upper shield assembly on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01475A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher sub - shield

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

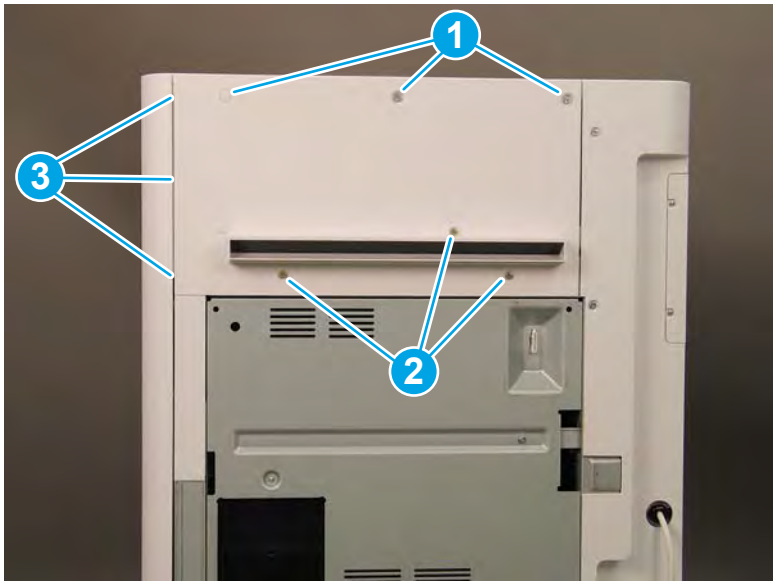
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

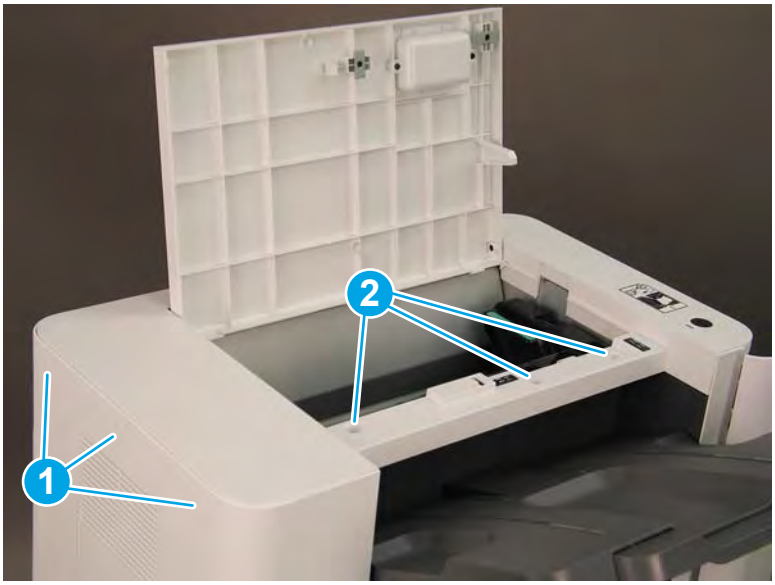
Figure 4-111 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

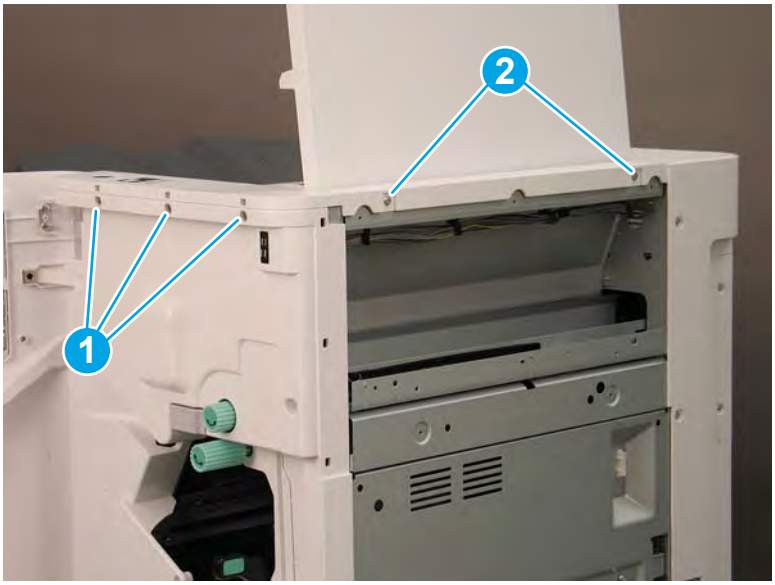
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-112 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

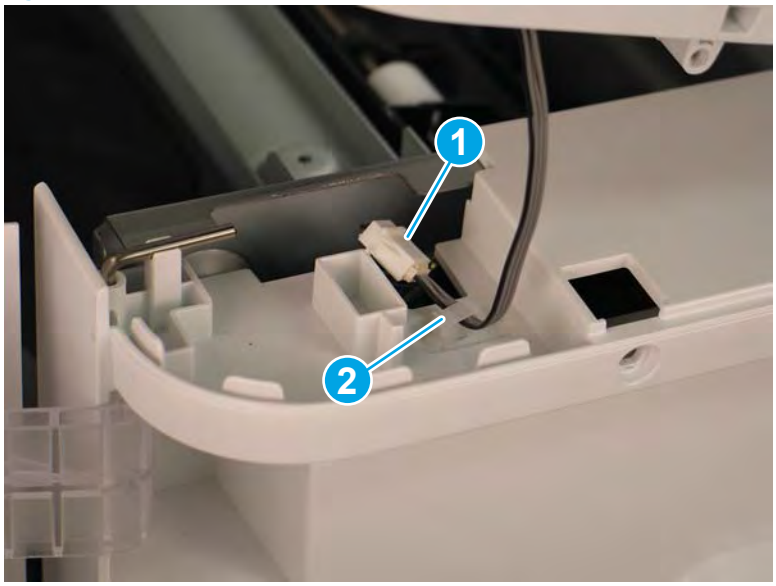
Figure 4-113 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-114 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

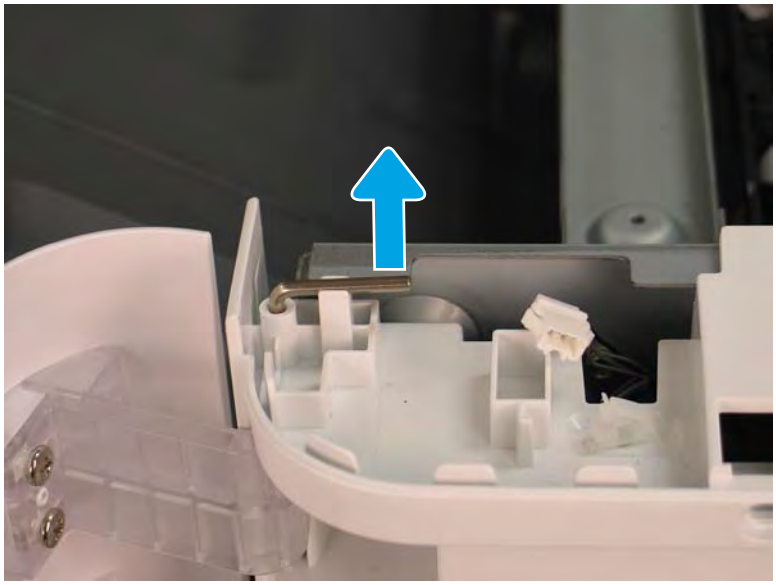


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

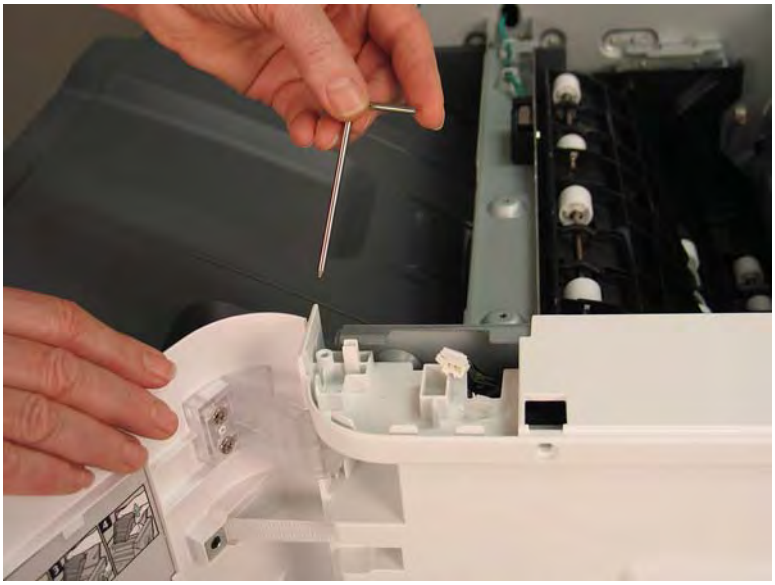
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-115 Lift the top hinge pin



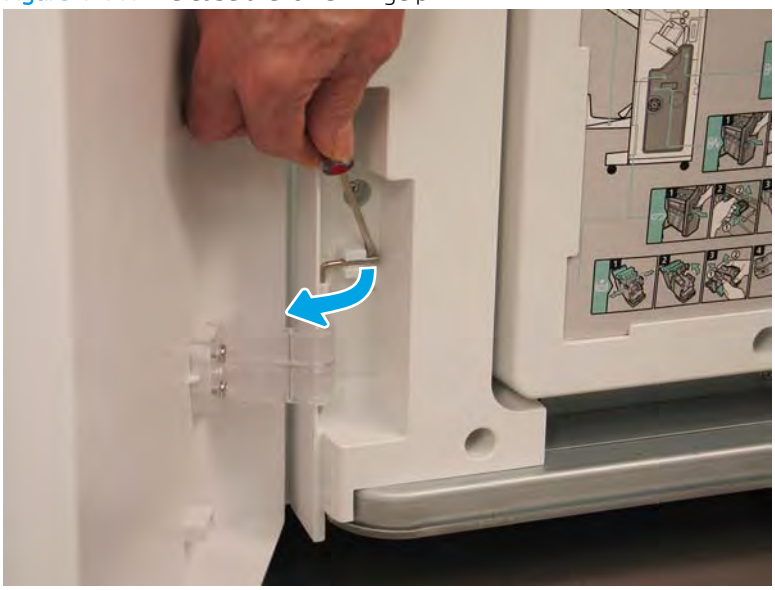
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-116 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-117 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

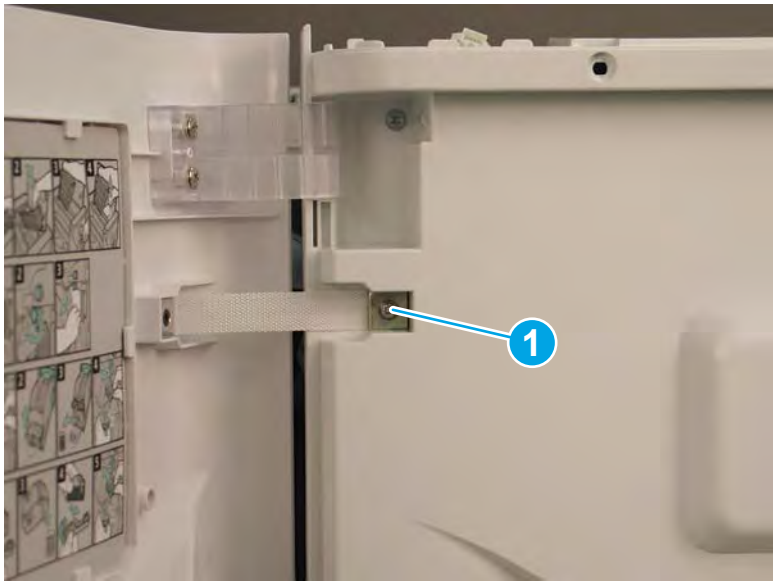
Figure 4-118 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

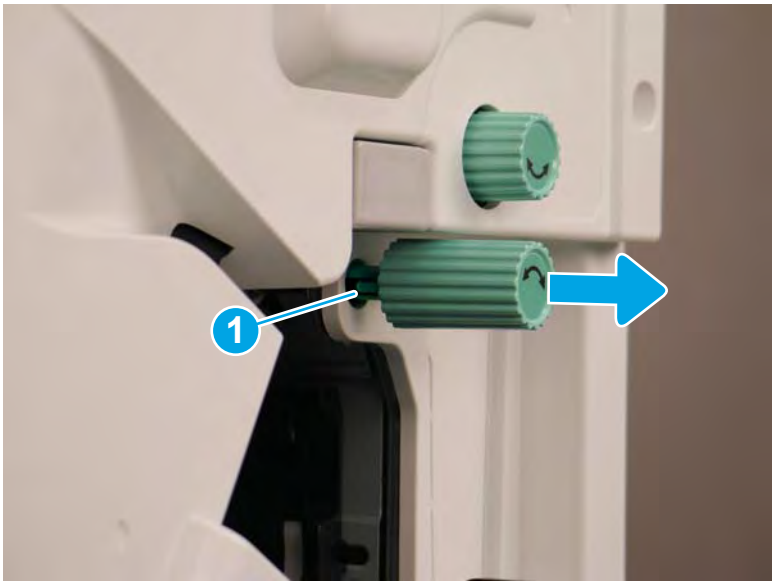
Figure 4-119 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-120 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

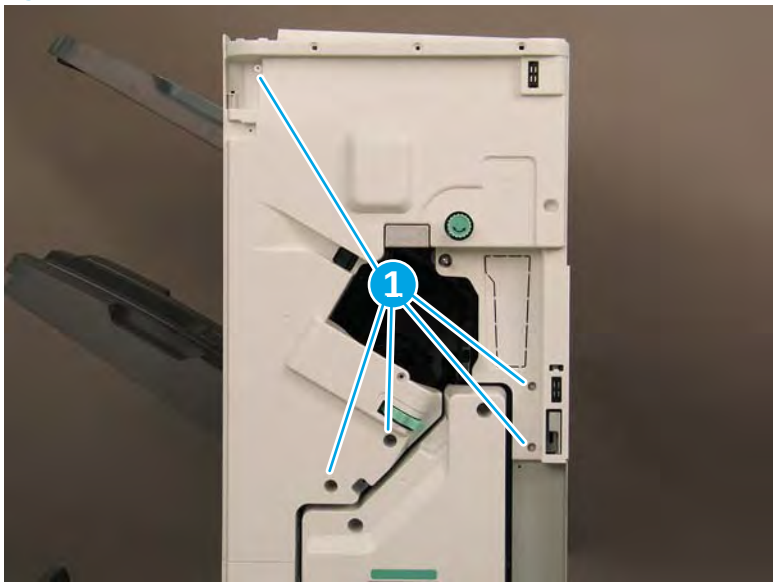
Figure 4-121 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

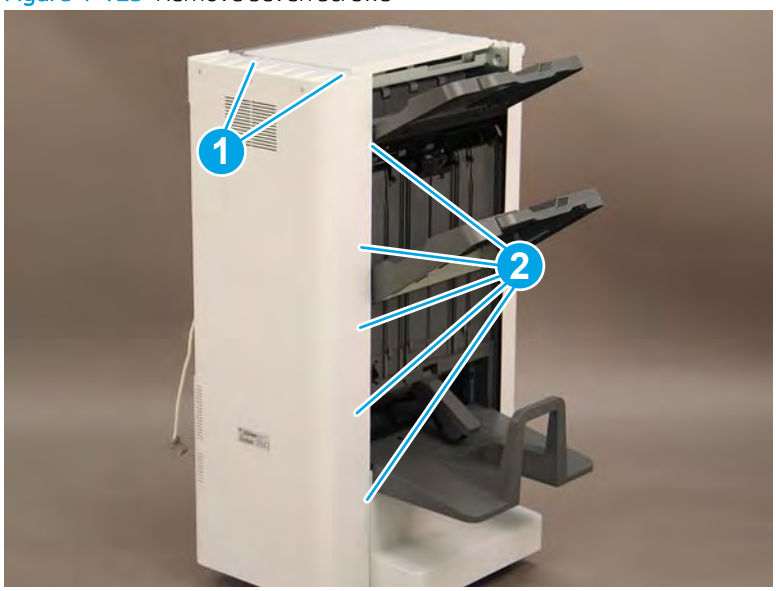
Figure 4-122 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-123 Remove seven screws

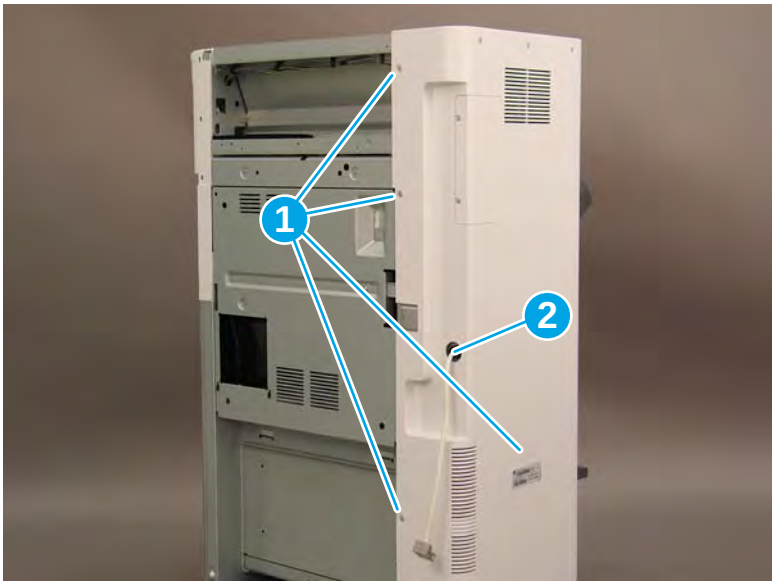


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

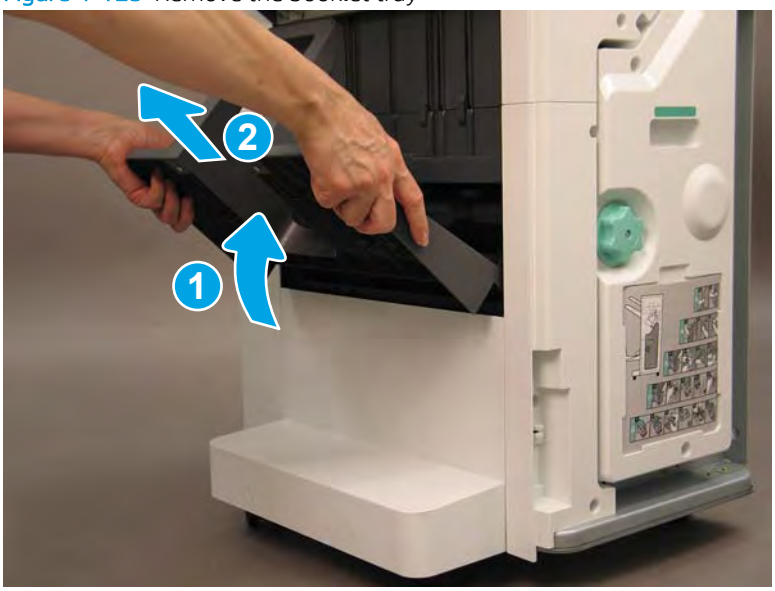
Figure 4-124 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-125 Remove the booklet tray



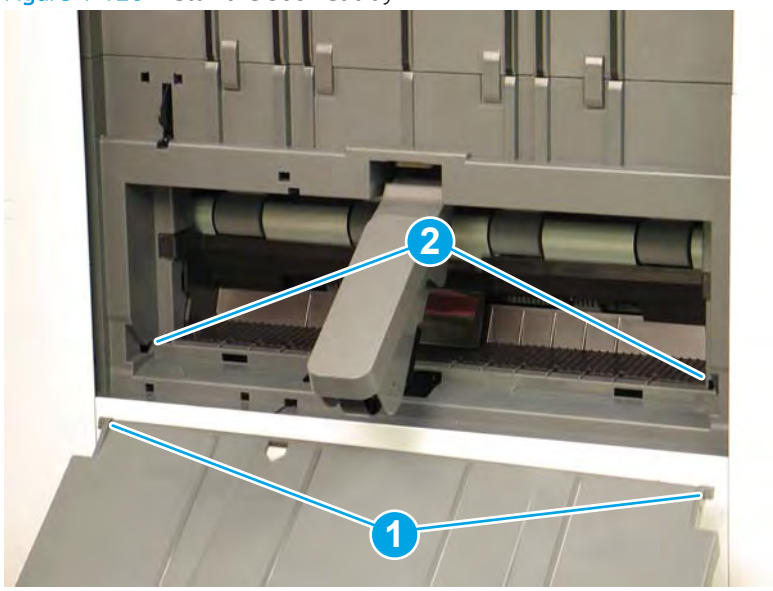
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

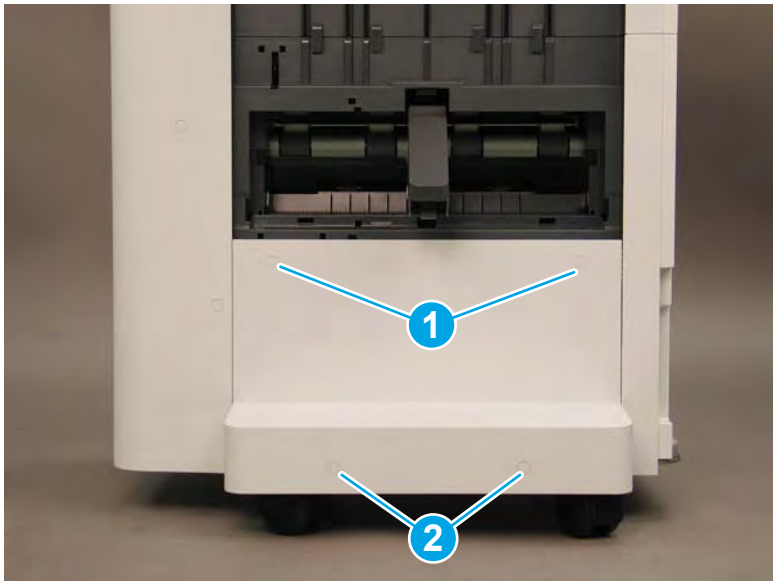
Figure 4-126 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-127 Remove four screws

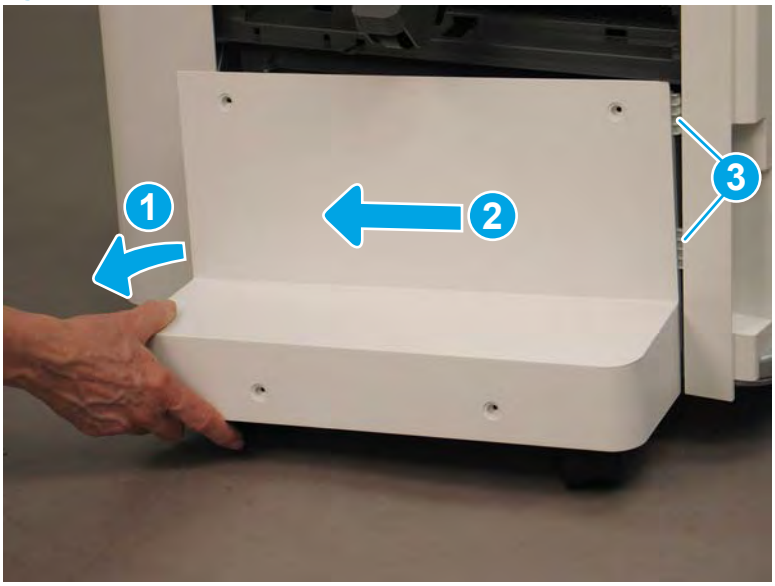


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-128 Remove the caster cover

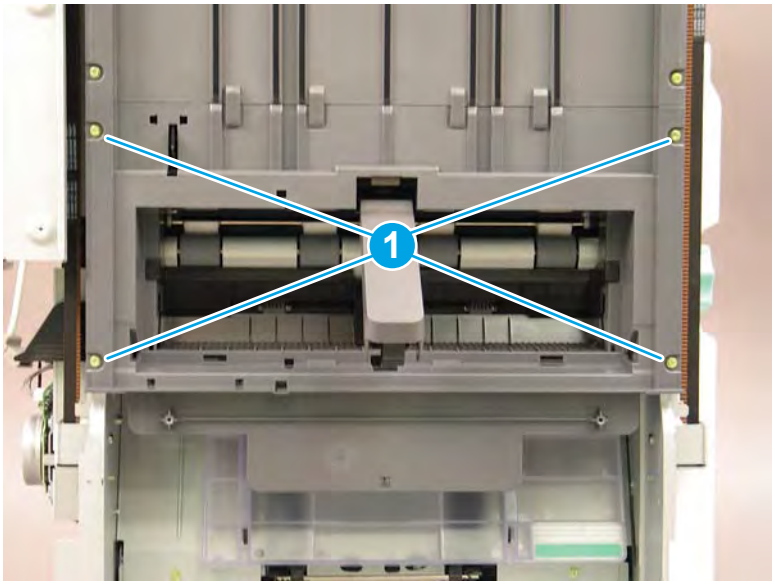


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 4-129 Remove four screws

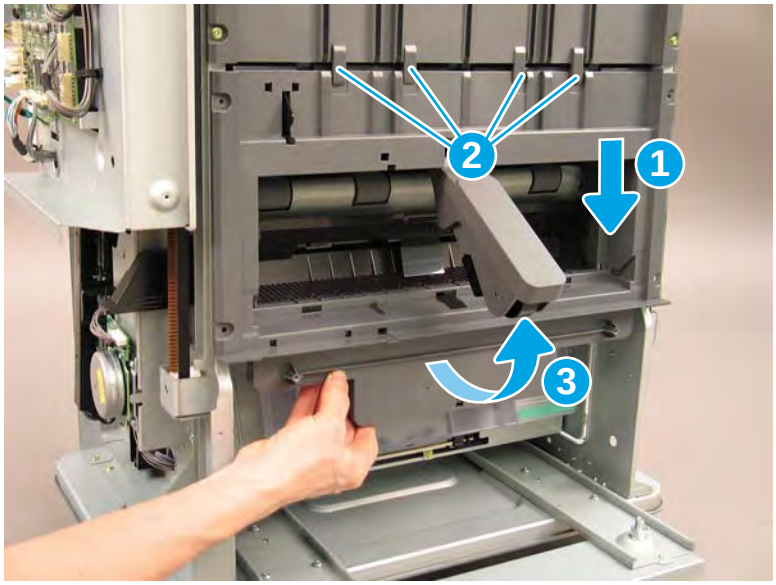


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

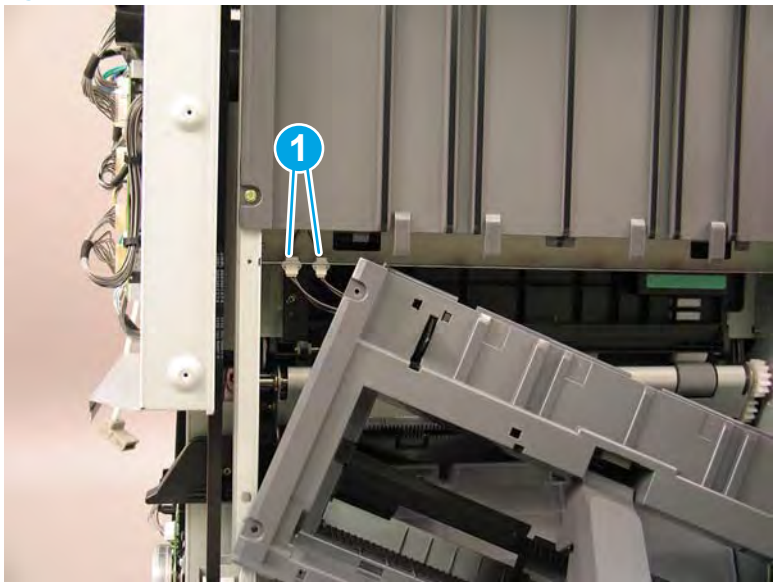
Figure 4-130 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

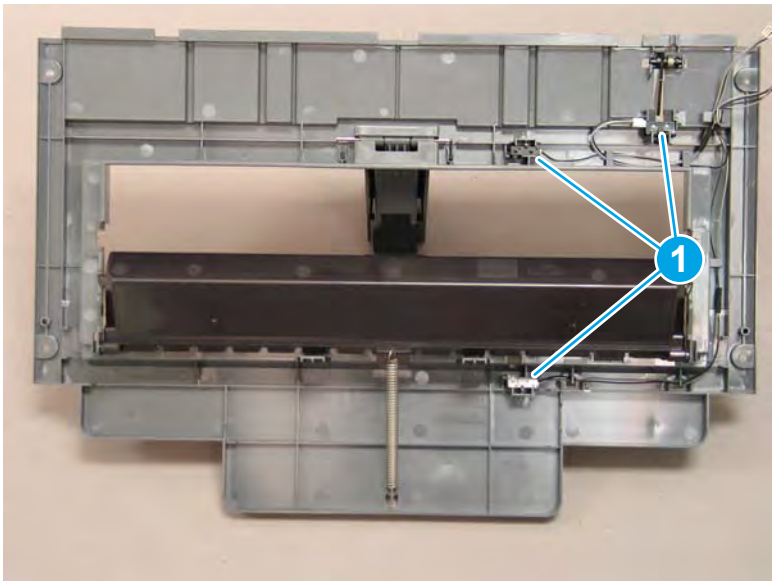
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-131 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

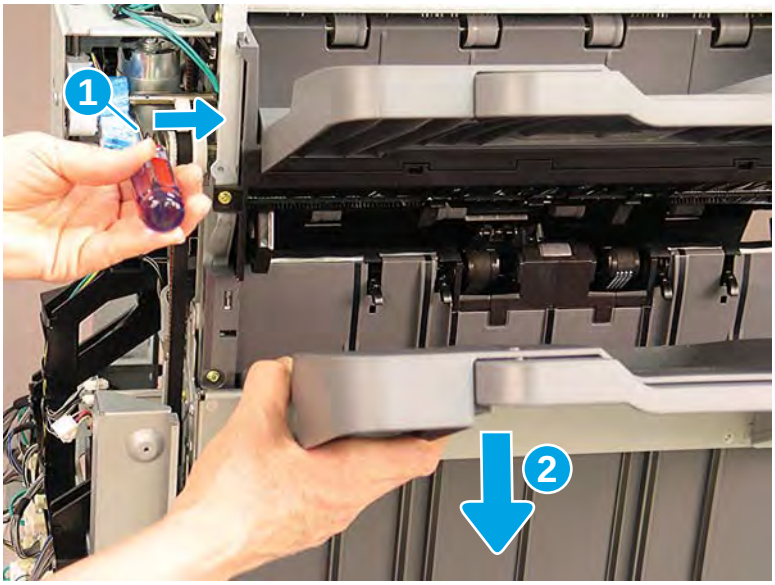
Figure 4-132 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

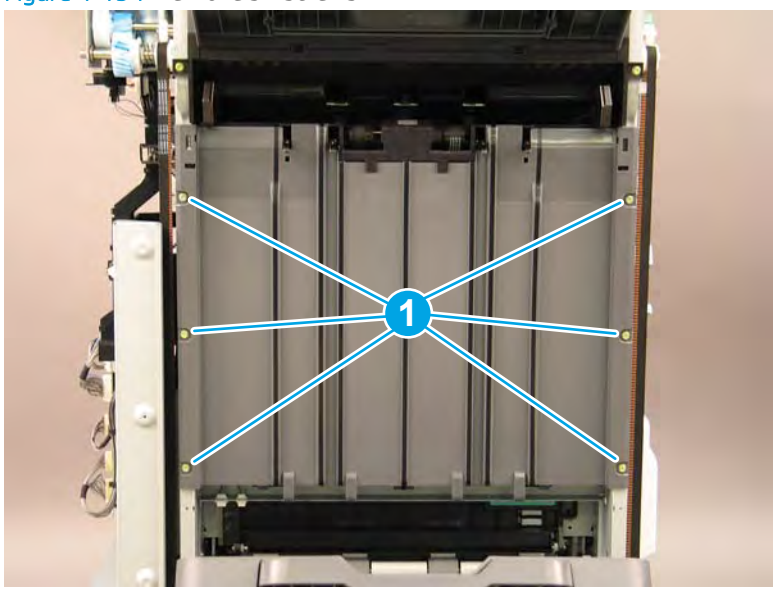
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 4-133 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-134 Remove six screws

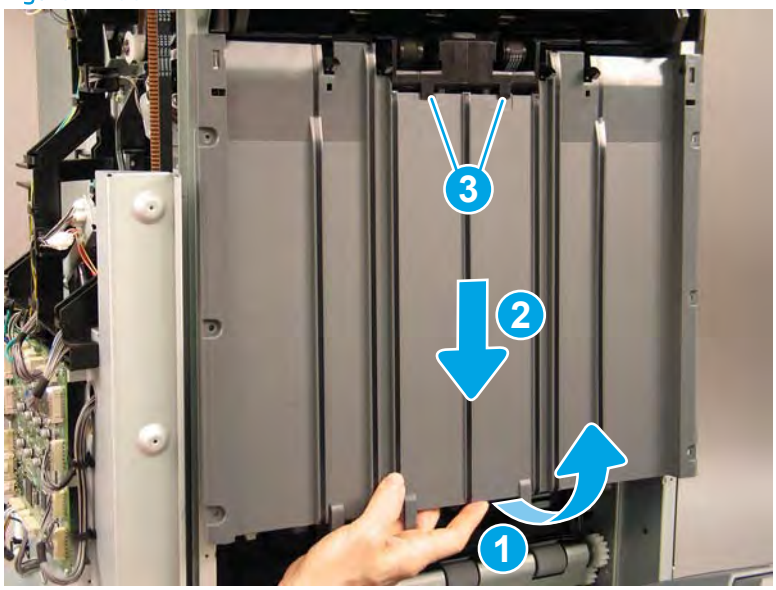


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

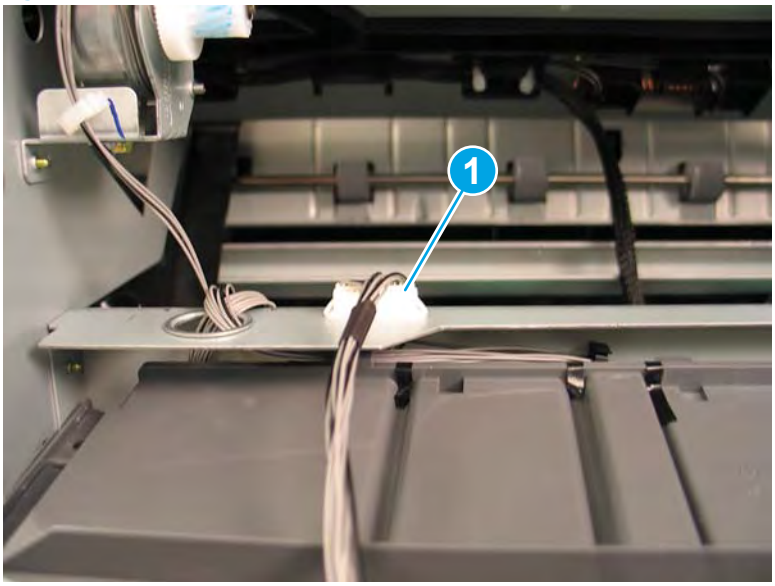
Figure 4-135 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

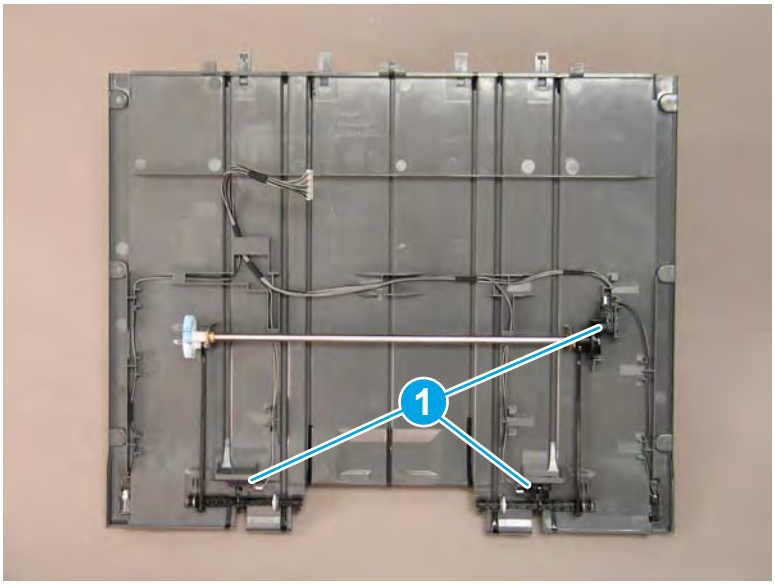
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-136 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 4-137 Locate sensors



Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Controller PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the controller PCA
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the controller PCA on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC92-02790B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Controller PCA (finisher)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

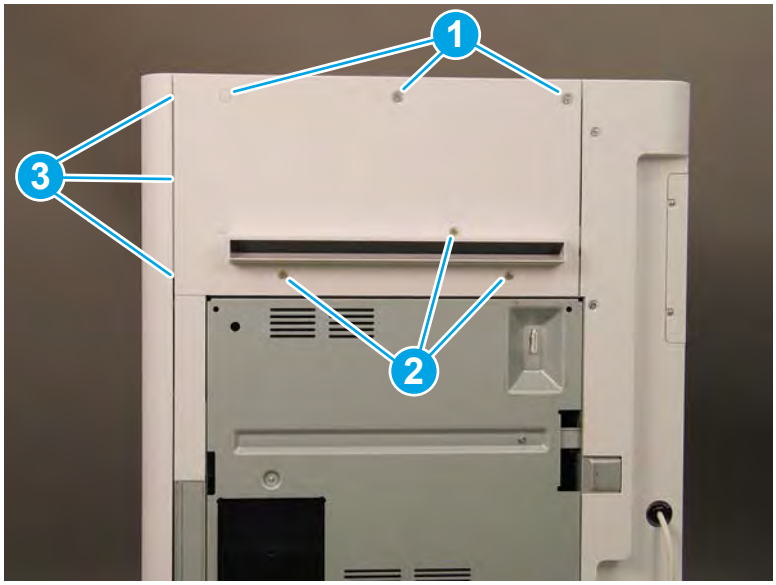
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

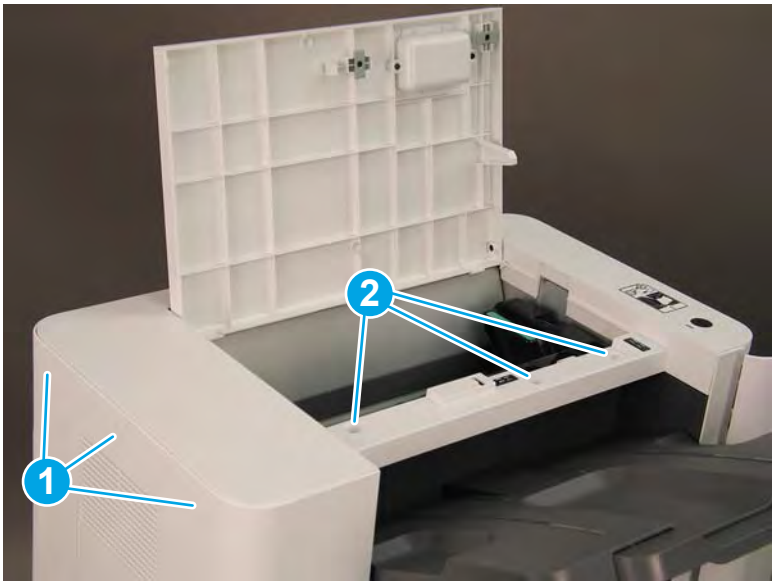
Figure 4-138 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

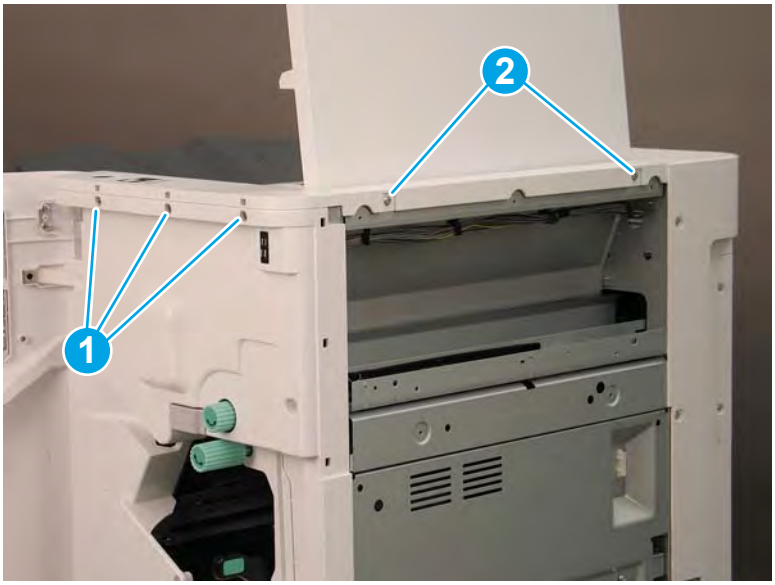
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-139 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

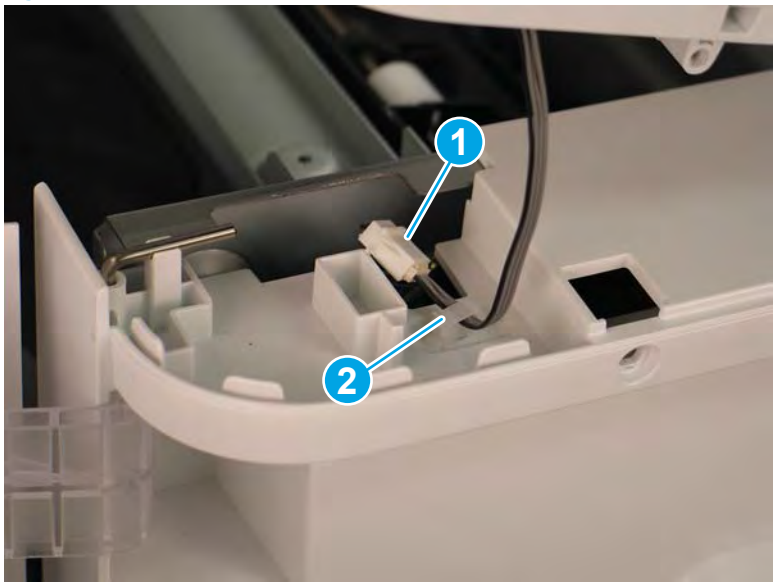
Figure 4-140 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-141 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

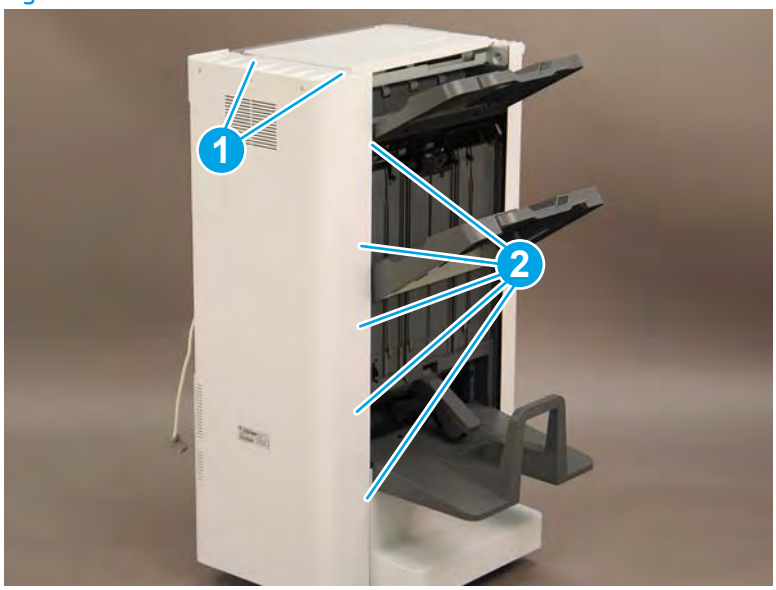


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-142 Remove seven screws

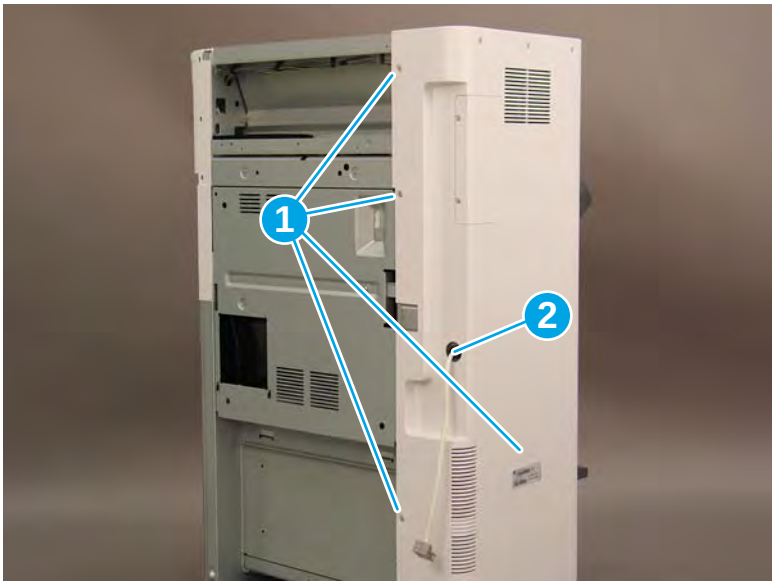


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-143 Remove four screws and the rear cover



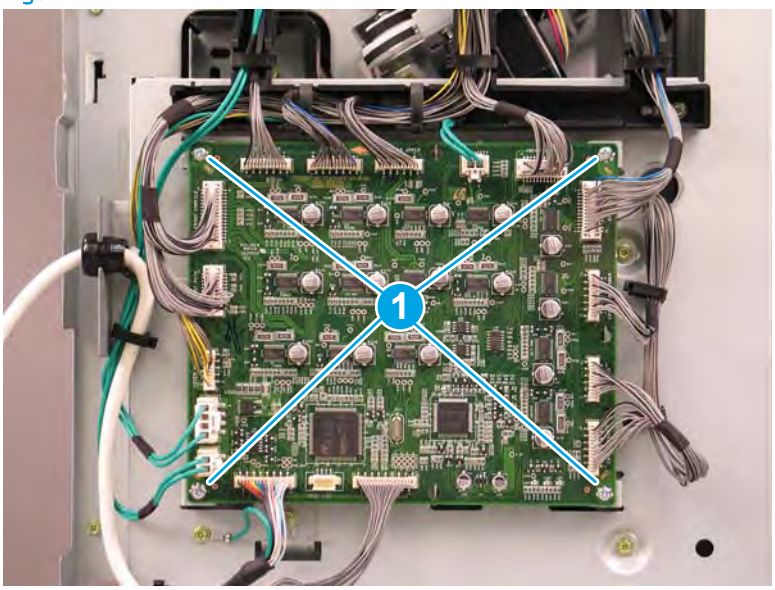
Step 4: Remove the controller PCA

▲ Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the controller PCA.

Reinstallation tip: Refer to the figure below for correct positioning and connection of the cables.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-144 Remove the controller PCA



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stapler unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the staple unit
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the staple unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01412A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher Sub - Staple Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Staple a document and verify that the stapler functions correctly.

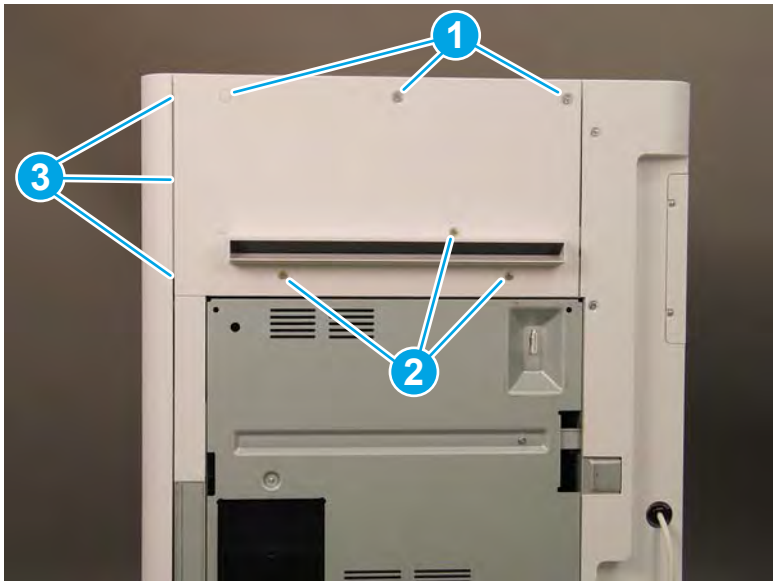
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

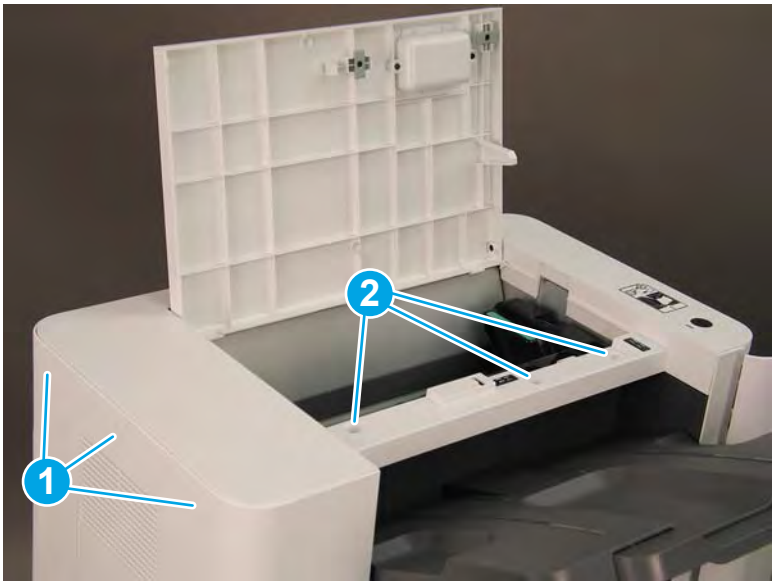
Figure 4-145 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

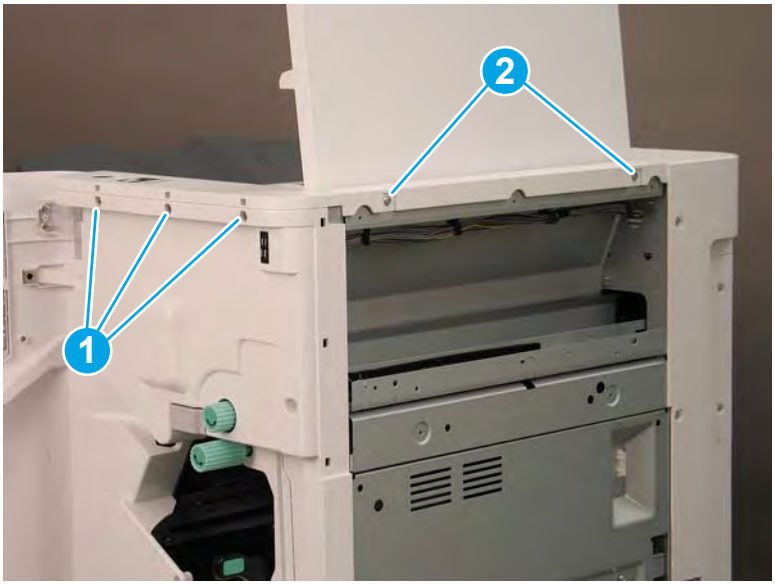
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-146 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

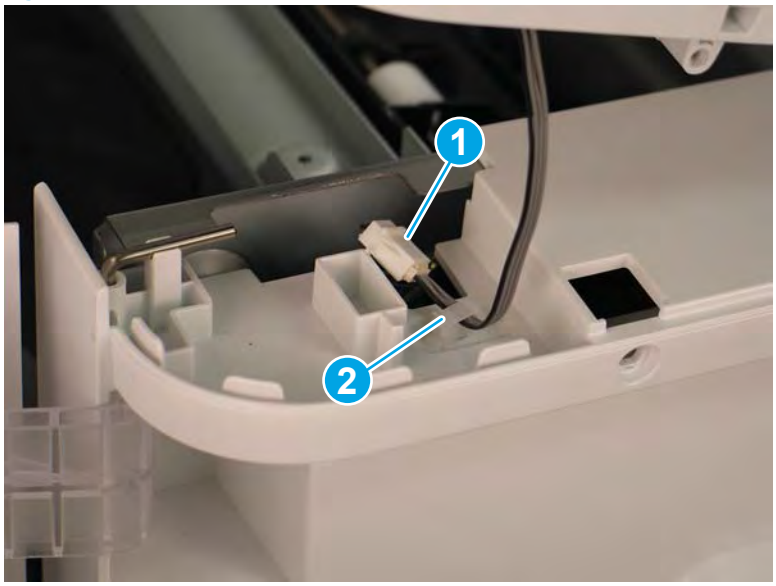
Figure 4-147 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-148 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

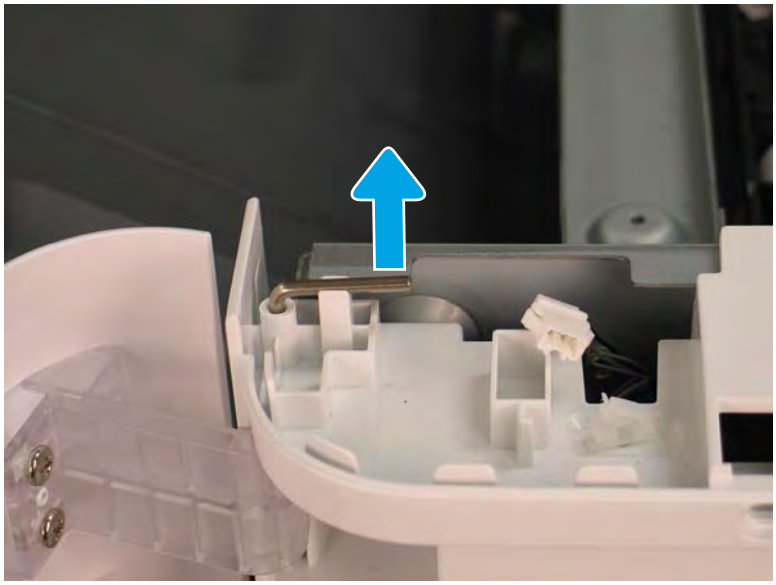


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

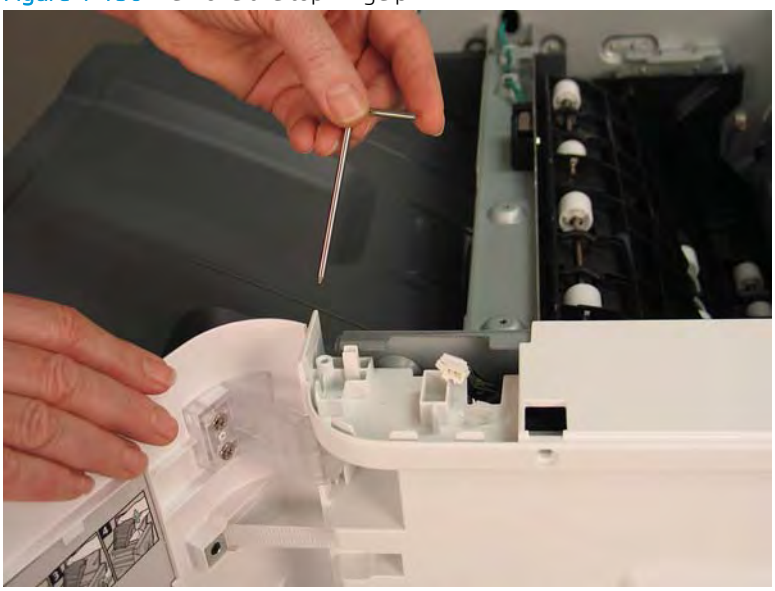
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-149 Lift the top hinge pin



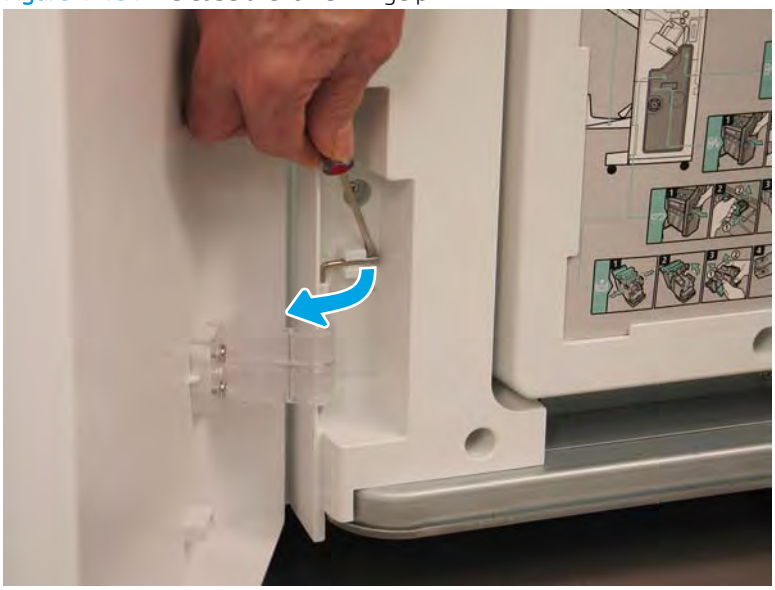
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-150 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-151 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

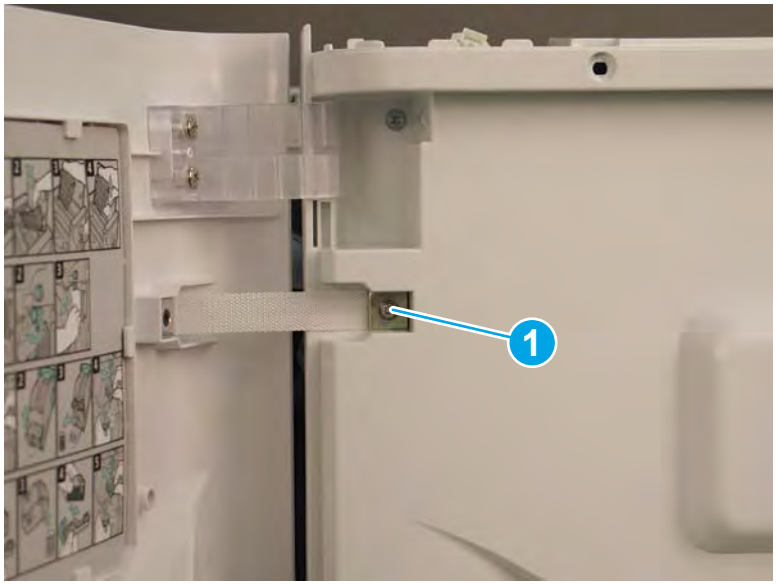
Figure 4-152 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

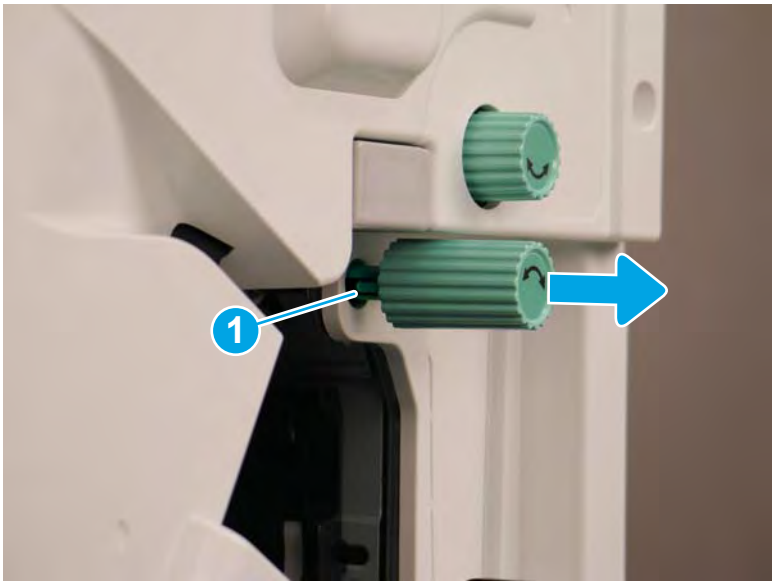
Figure 4-153 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-154 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

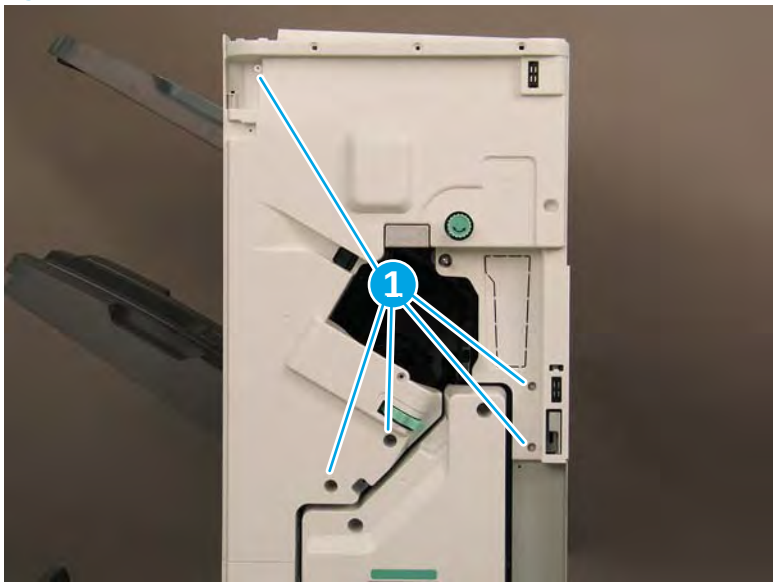
Figure 4-155 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

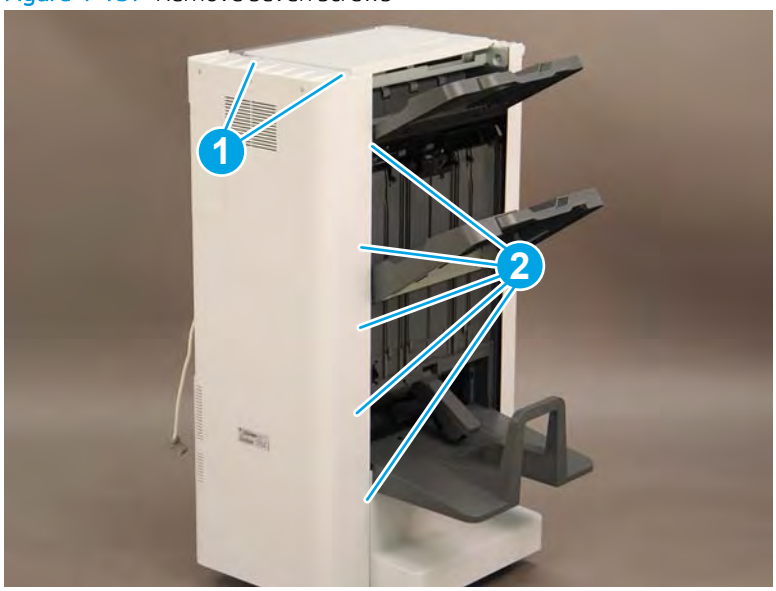
Figure 4-156 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-157 Remove seven screws

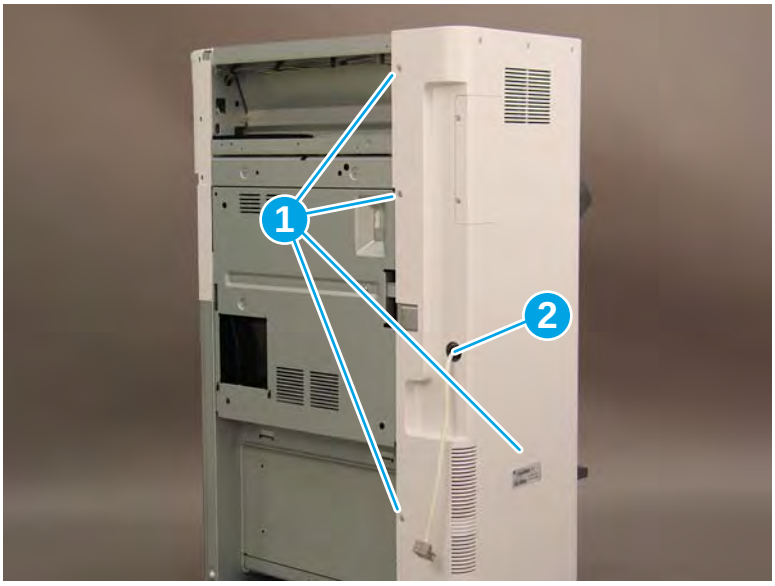


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

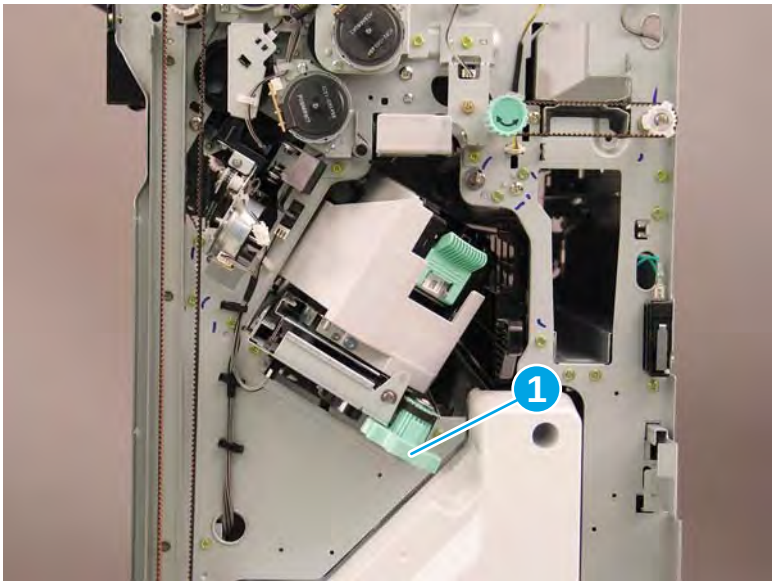
Figure 4-158 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the staple unit

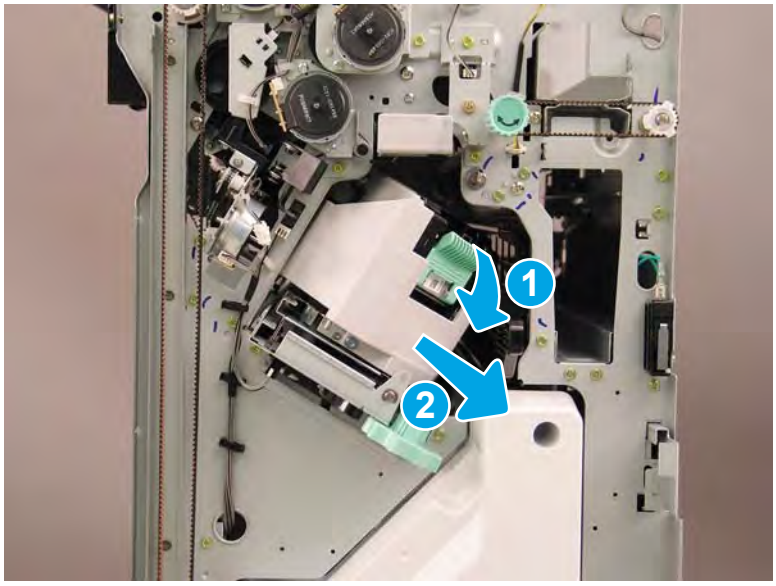
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the front until it stops.

Figure 4-159 Move the staple unit to the front



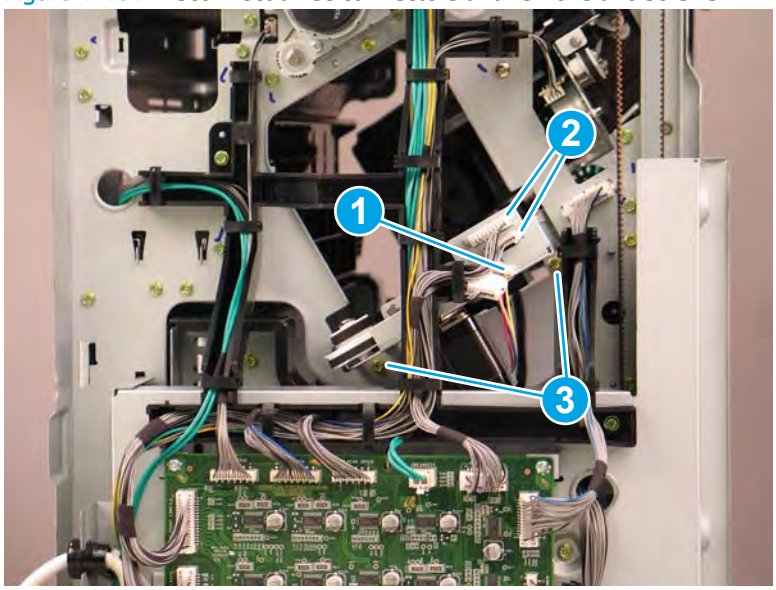
2. Lower the green latch (callout 1), and then slide the staple cartridge away from the finisher to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 4-160 Remove the staple cartridge



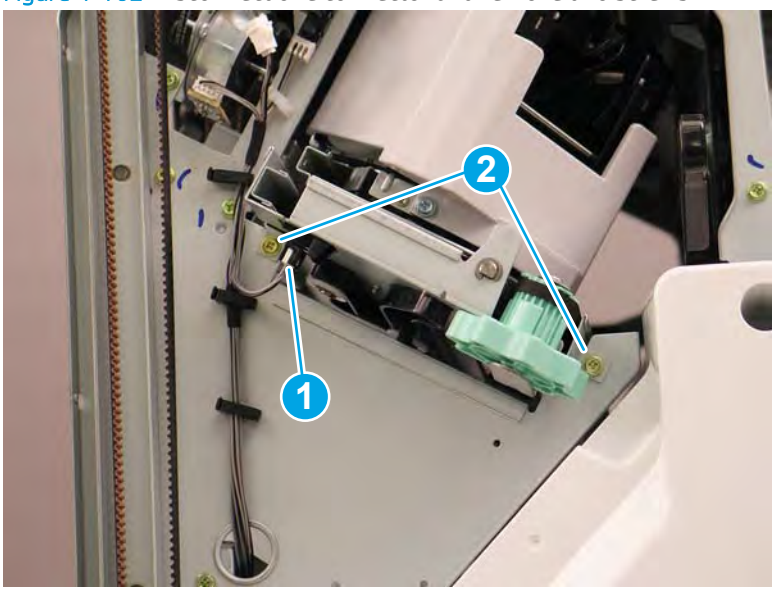
3. At the back of the finisher, release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 4-161 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



4. At the front of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

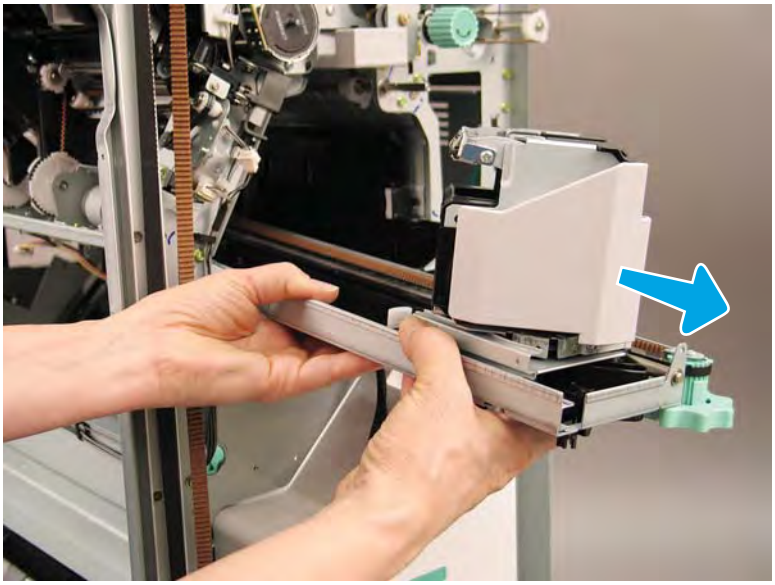
Figure 4-162 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



5. Lift up, and then slide the staple unit to the front of the finisher to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-163 Remove the staple unit



Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dummy feed guide

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the dummy feed guide (finisher)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the dummy feed guide on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC93-01161A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Assy-Guide Dummy-Feed

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

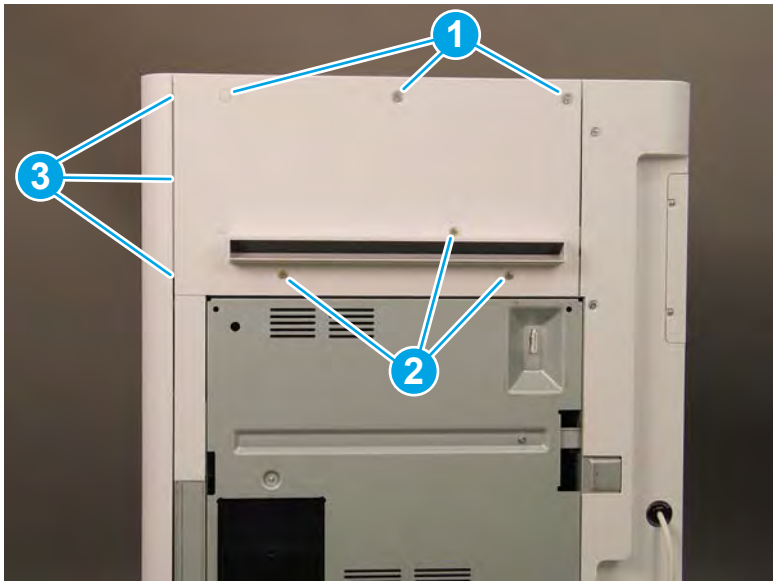
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

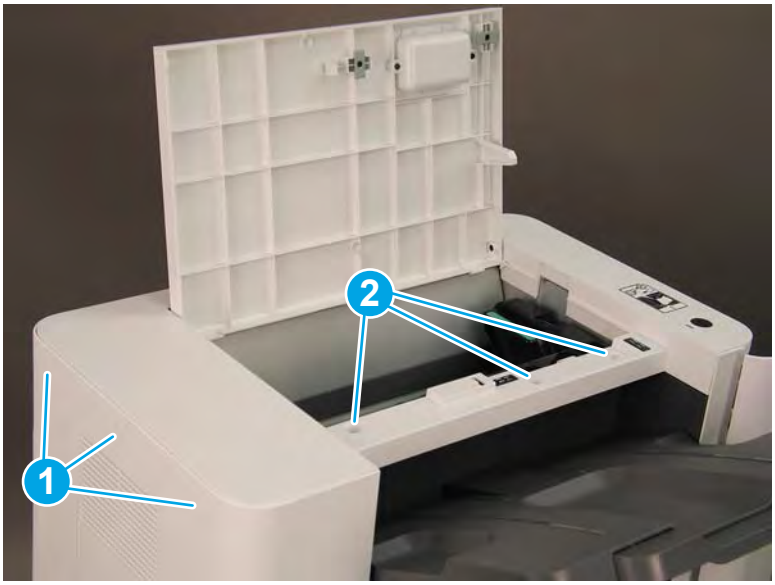
Figure 4-164 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

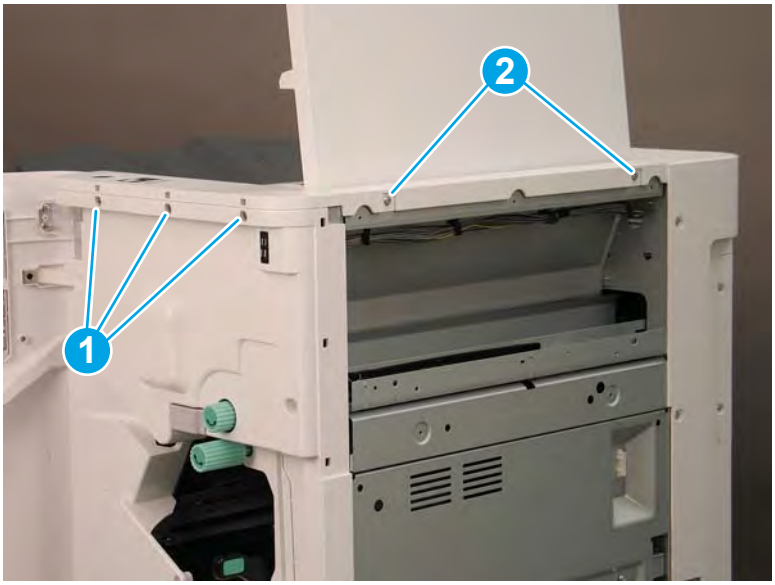
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-165 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

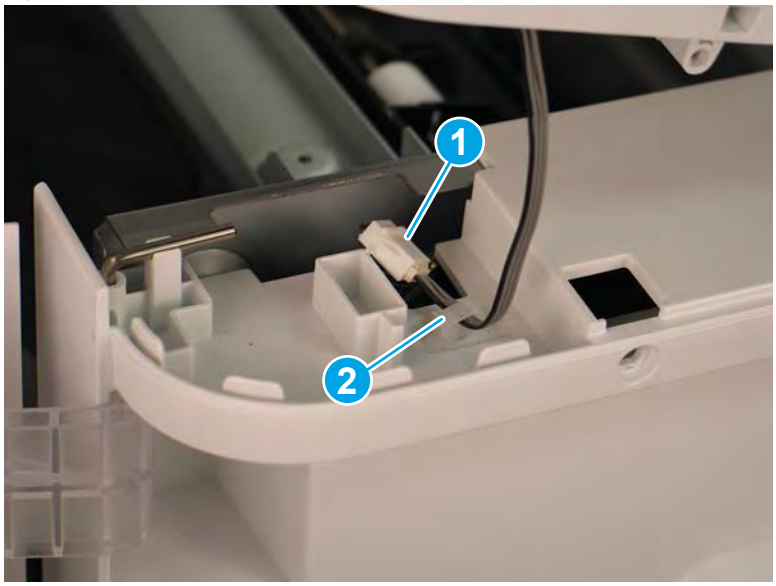
Figure 4-166 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-167 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

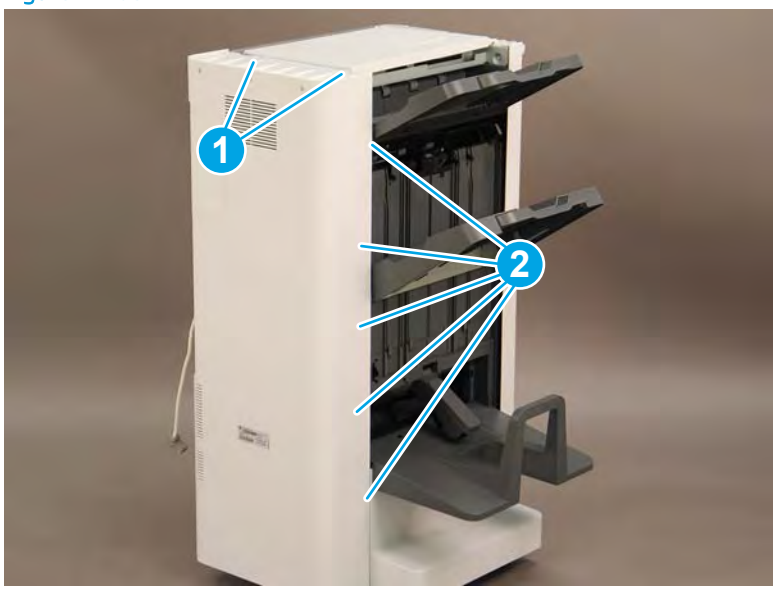


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-168 Remove seven screws

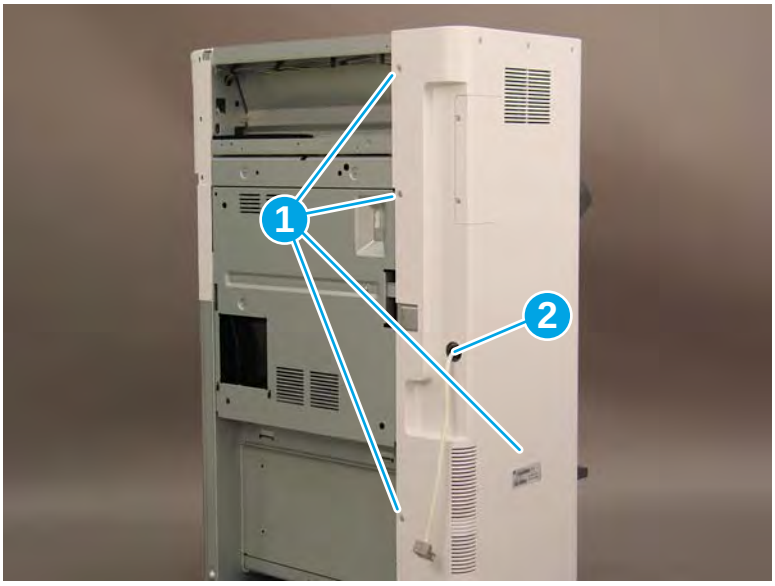


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-169 Remove four screws and the rear cover

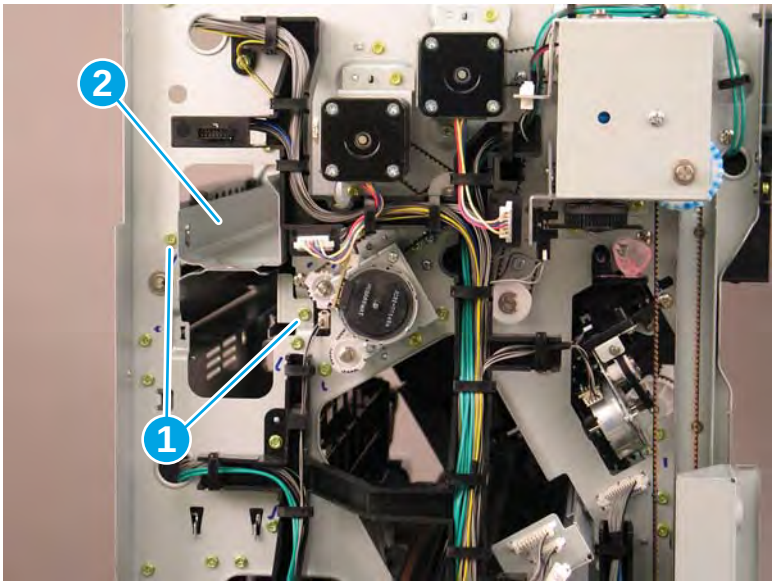


Step 4: Remove the dummy feed guide (finisher)

▲ At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the dummy feed guide (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-170 Remove two screws and the feed guide



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top jam access cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor
- Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top jam access cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01455A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher Sub - Top Jam

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.

- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

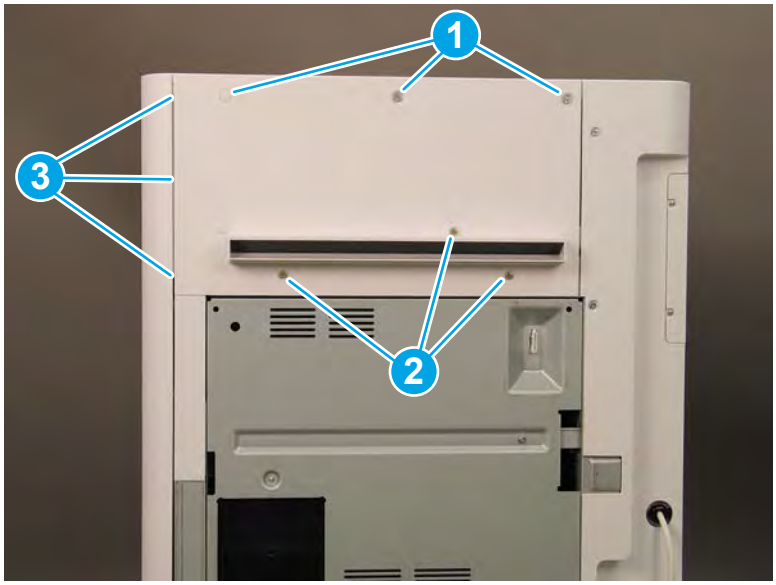
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

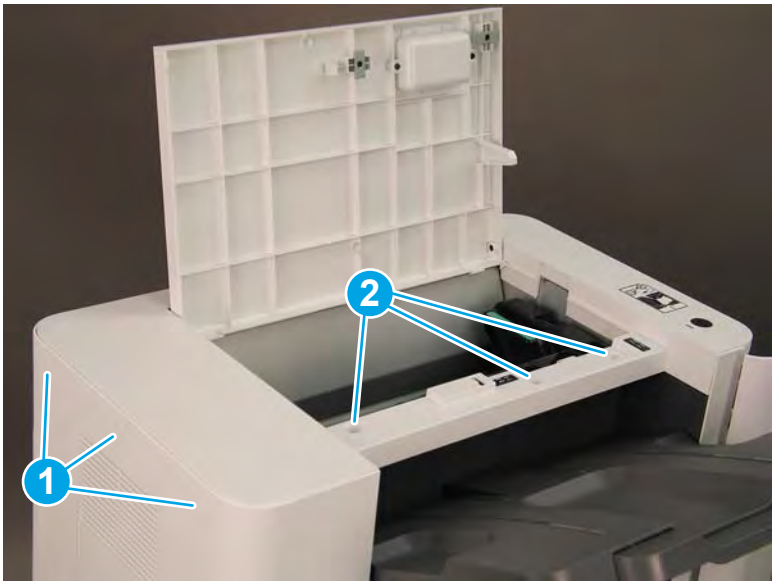
Figure 4-171 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

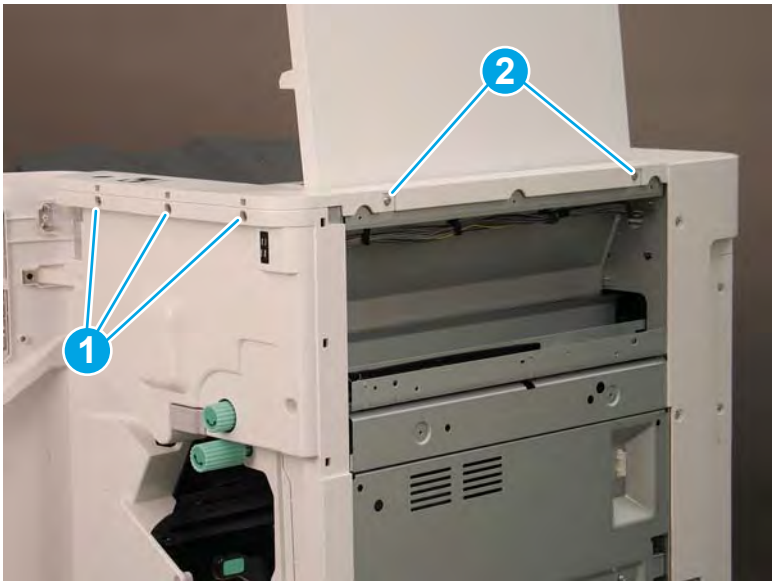
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-172 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

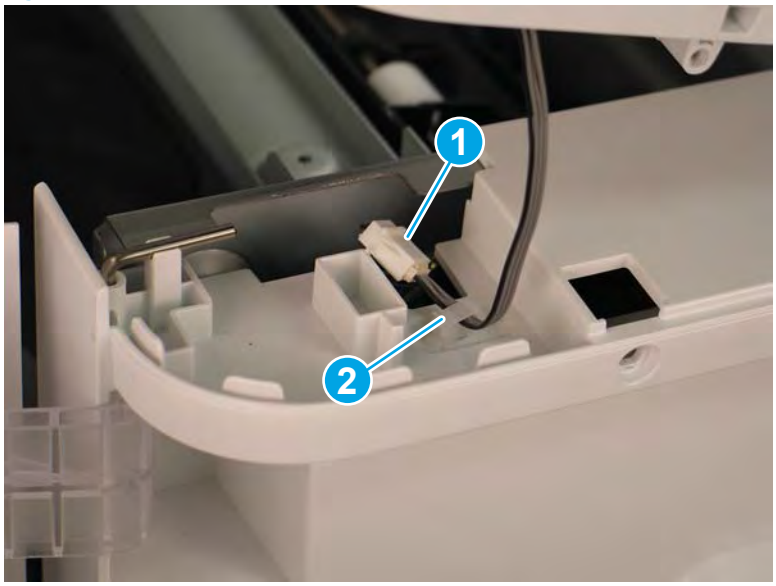
Figure 4-173 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-174 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

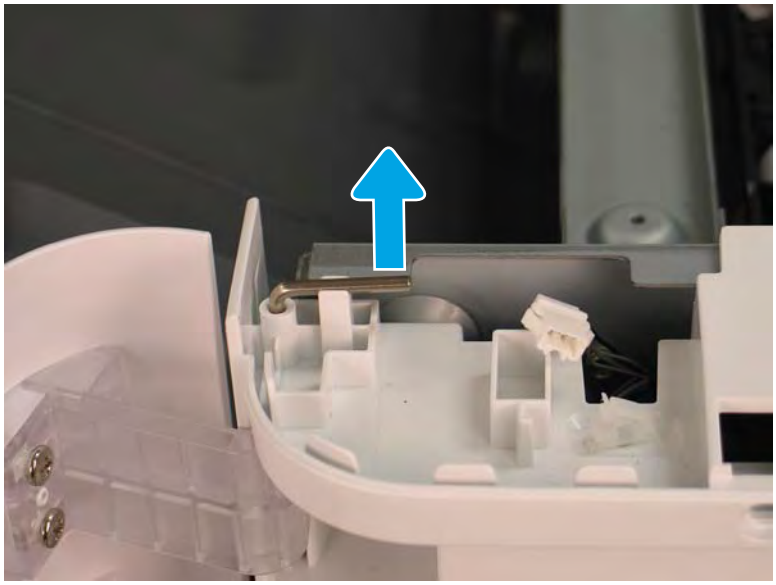


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

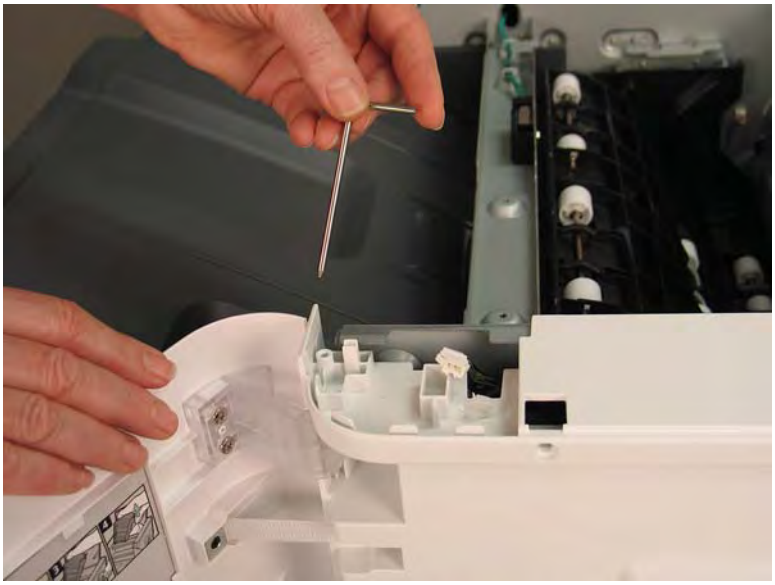
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-175 Lift the top hinge pin



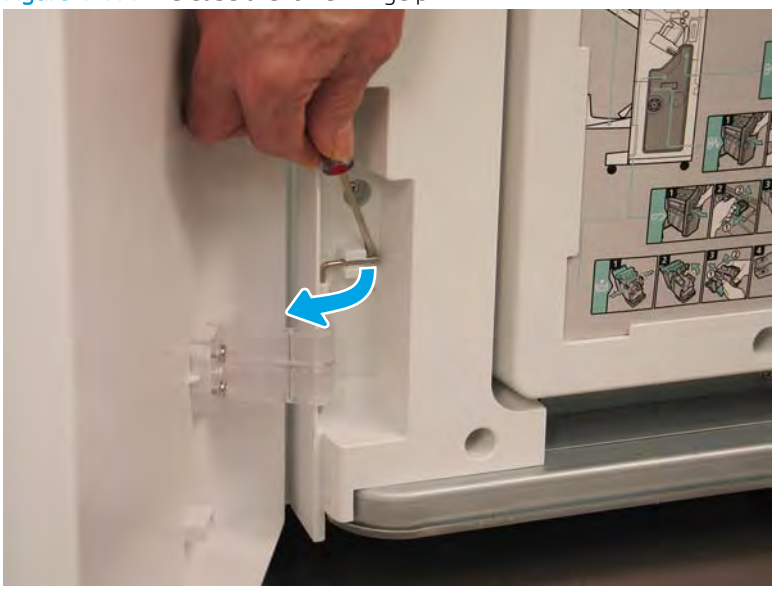
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-176 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-177 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

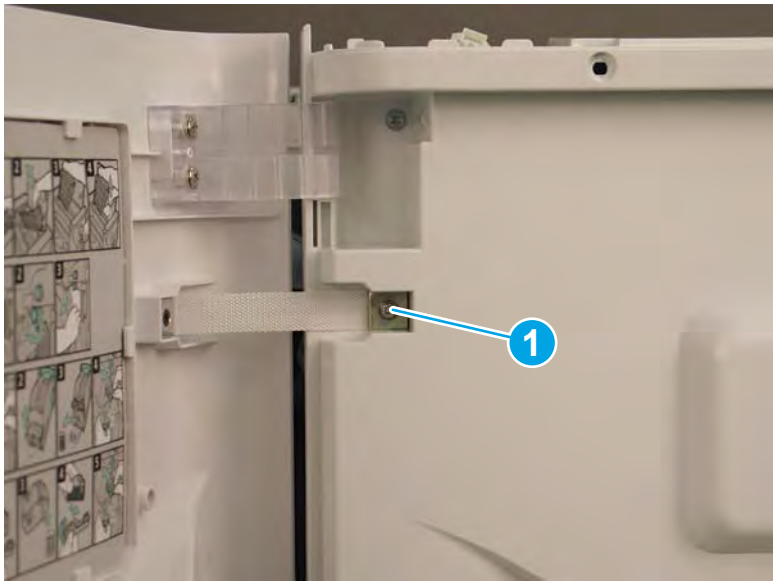
Figure 4-178 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

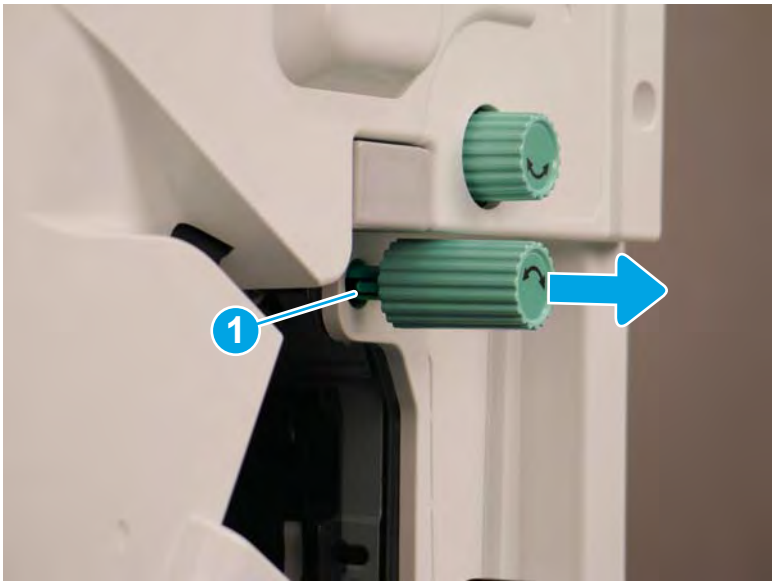
Figure 4-179 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-180 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

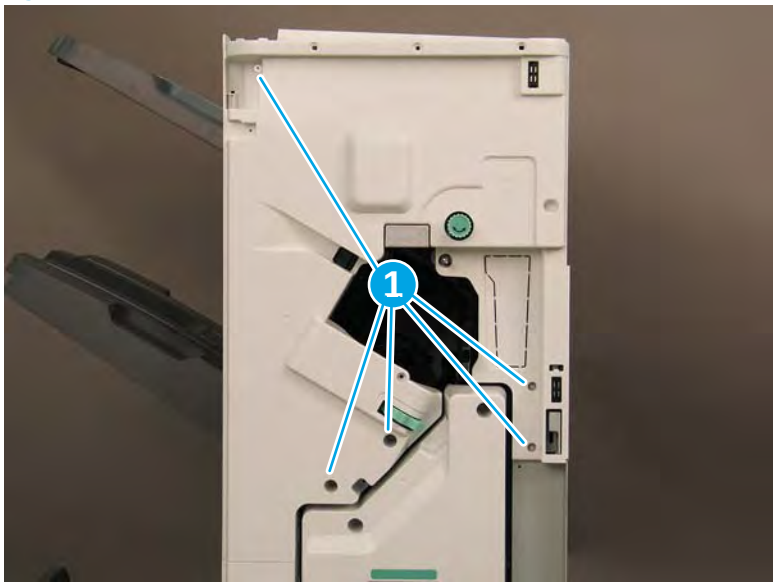
Figure 4-181 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

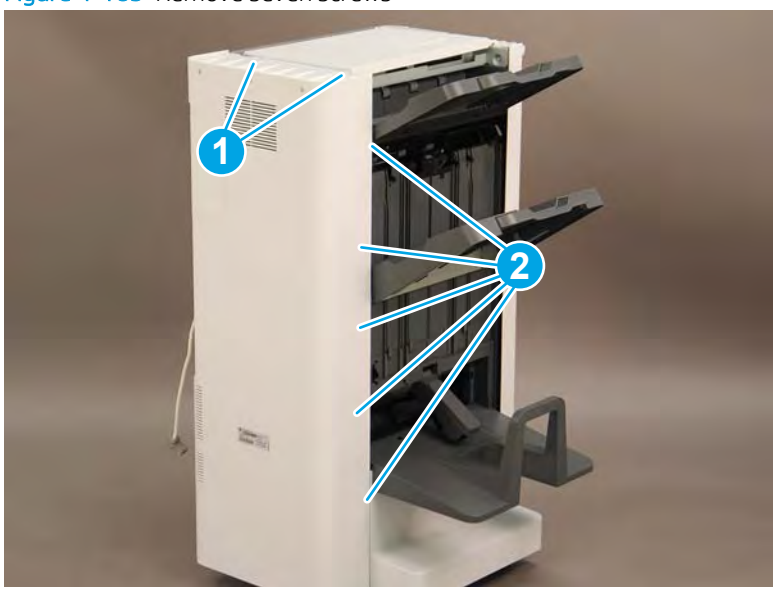
Figure 4-182 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-183 Remove seven screws

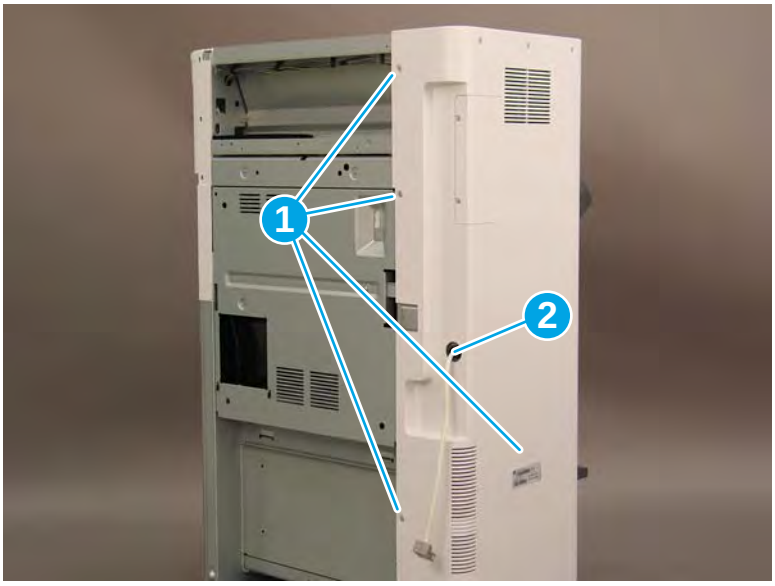


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-184 Remove four screws and the rear cover



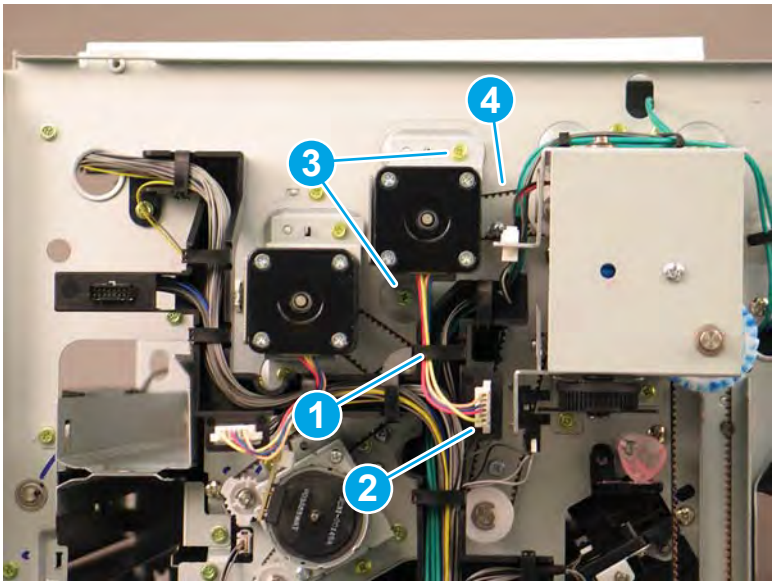
Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

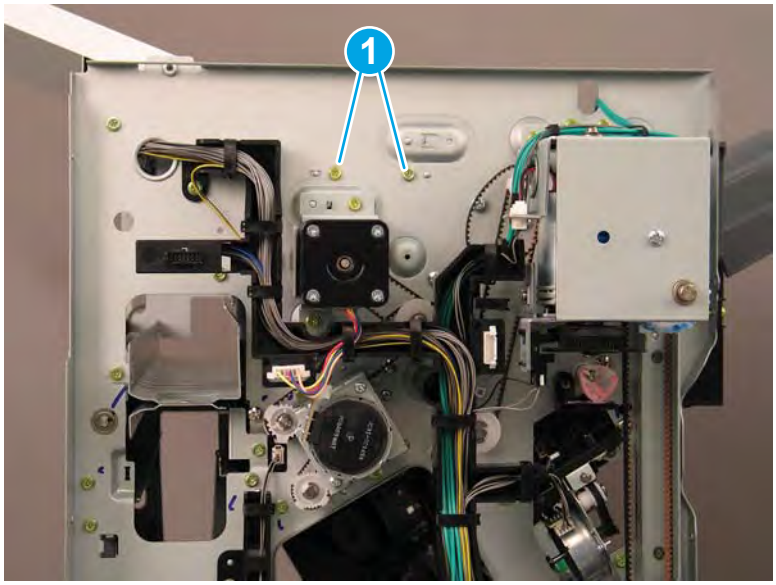
Figure 4-185 Remove the feed exit motor



Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-186 Remove two screws



2. Remove the top jam access cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-187 Remove the top jam access cover



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top lower feed assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover
- Step 8: Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top lower feed assembly for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01454A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher Sub-Top Lower

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

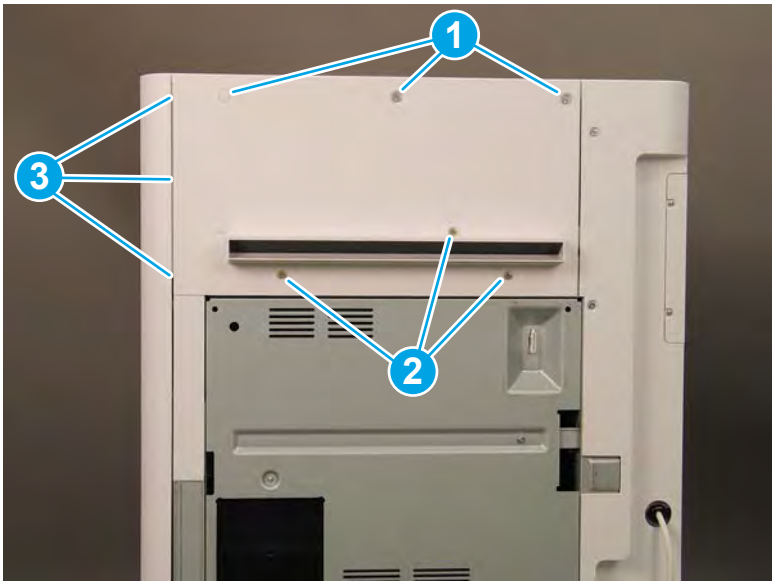
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

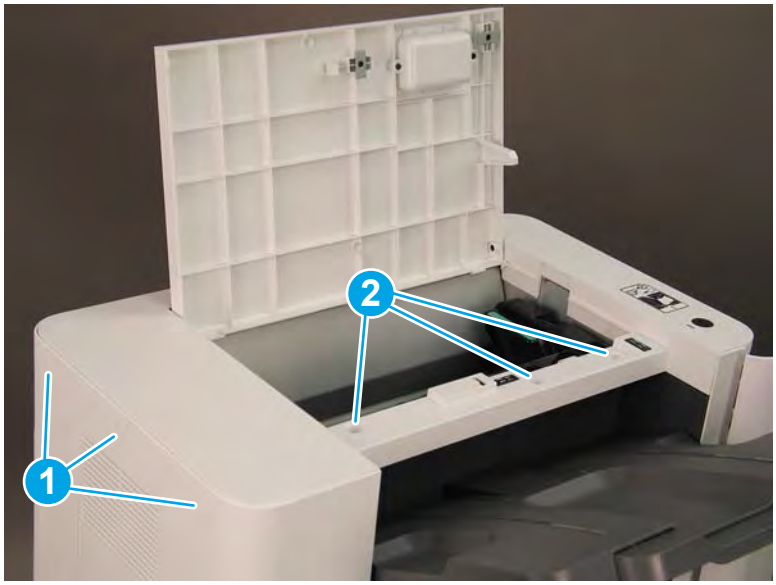
Figure 4-188 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

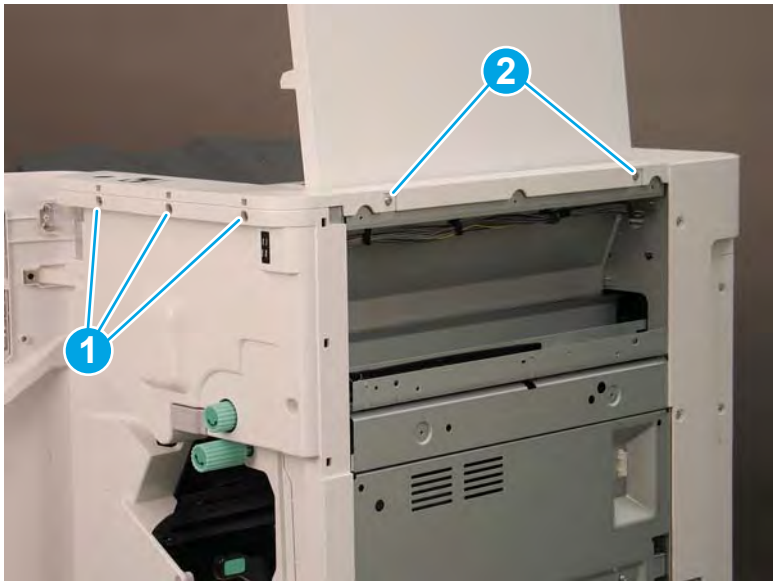
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-189 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

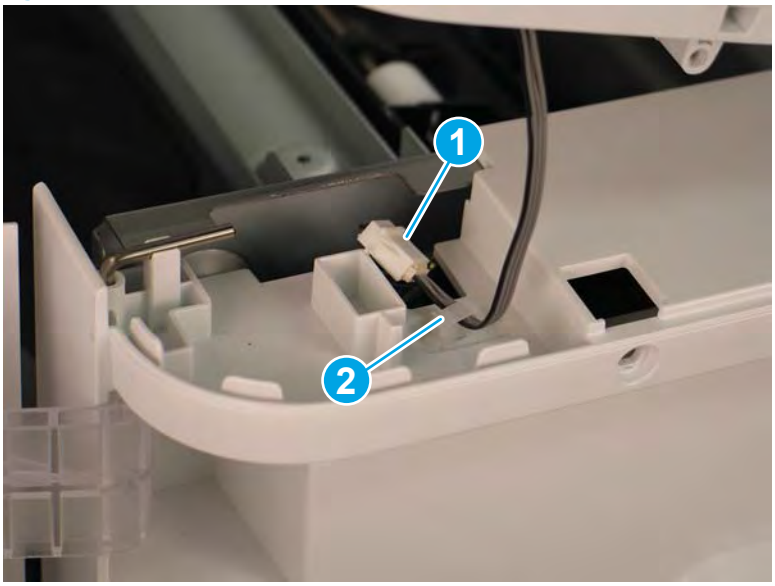
Figure 4-190 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-191 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

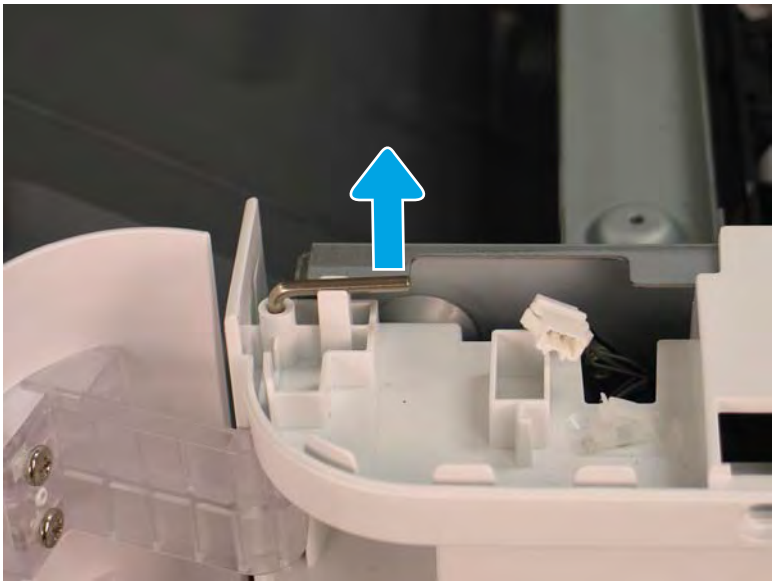


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

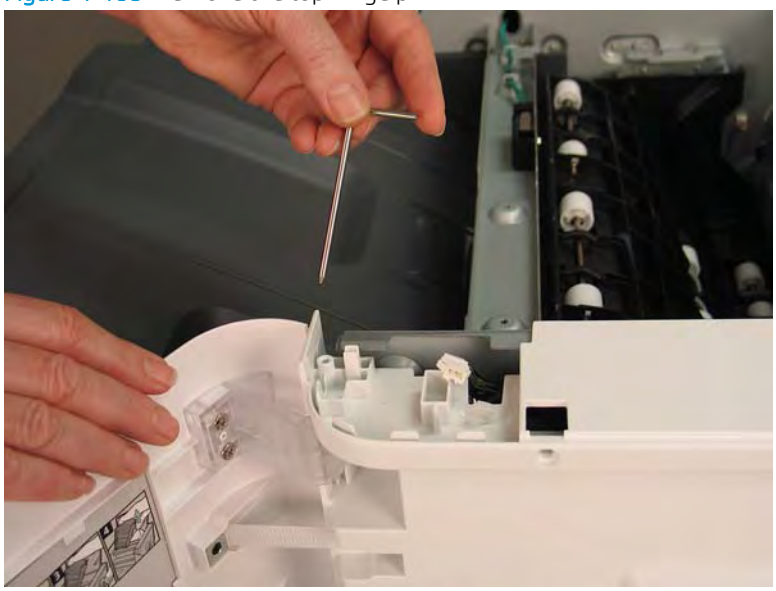
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-192 Lift the top hinge pin



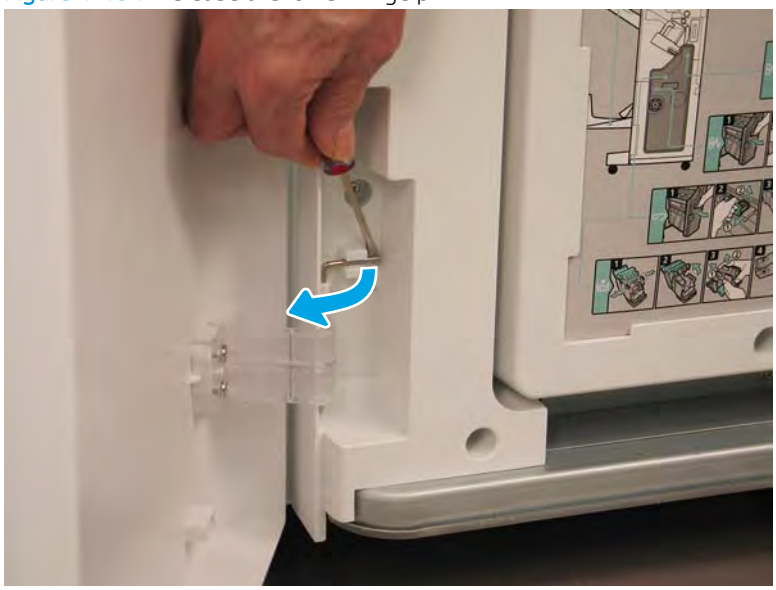
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-193 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-194 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

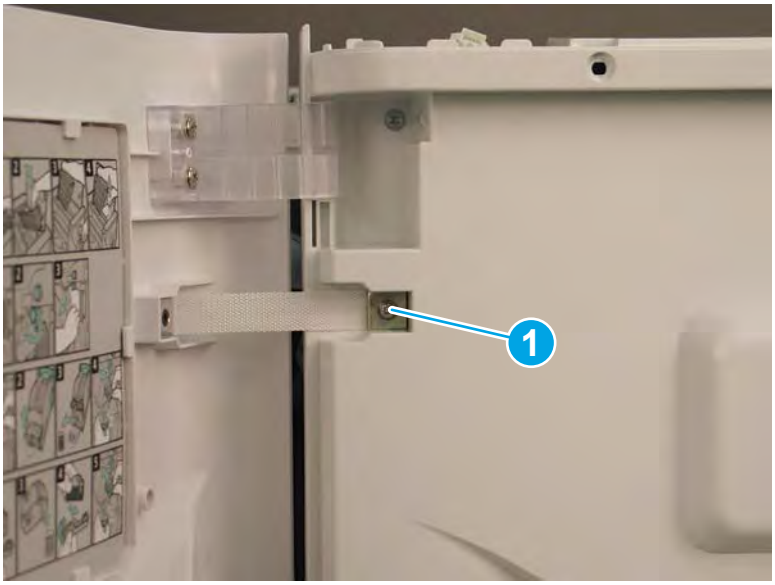
Figure 4-195 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

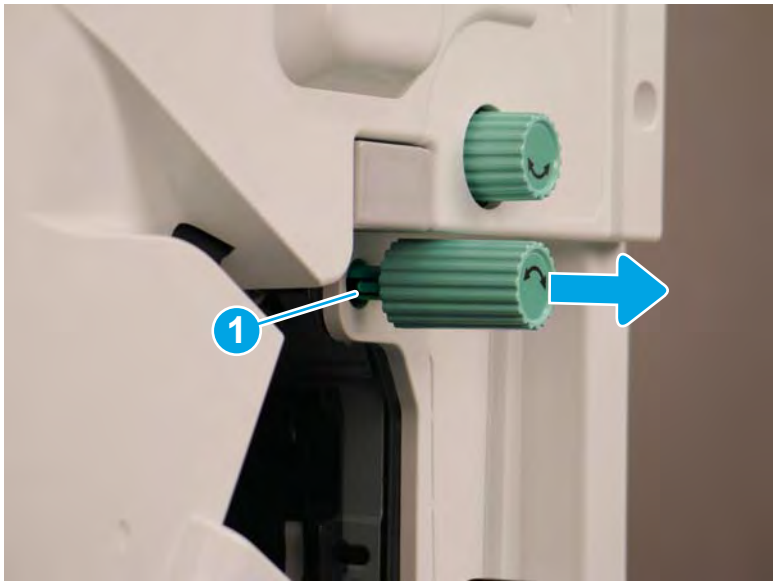
Figure 4-196 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-197 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

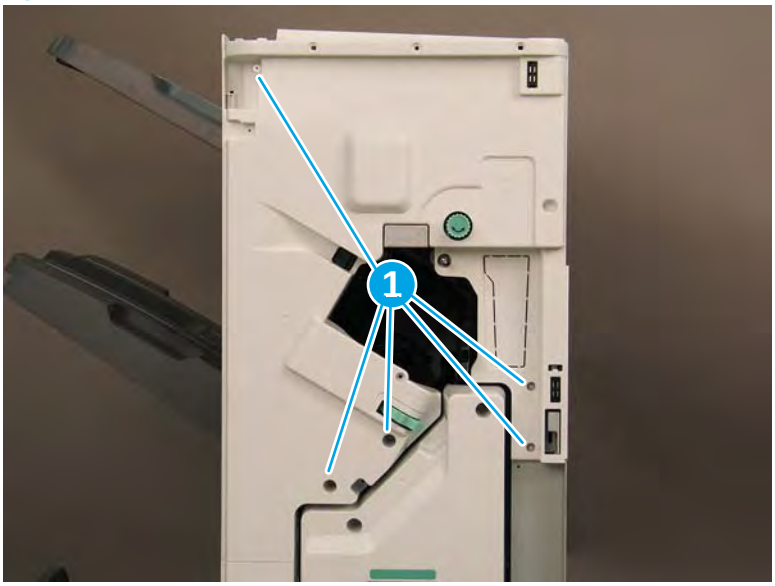
Figure 4-198 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

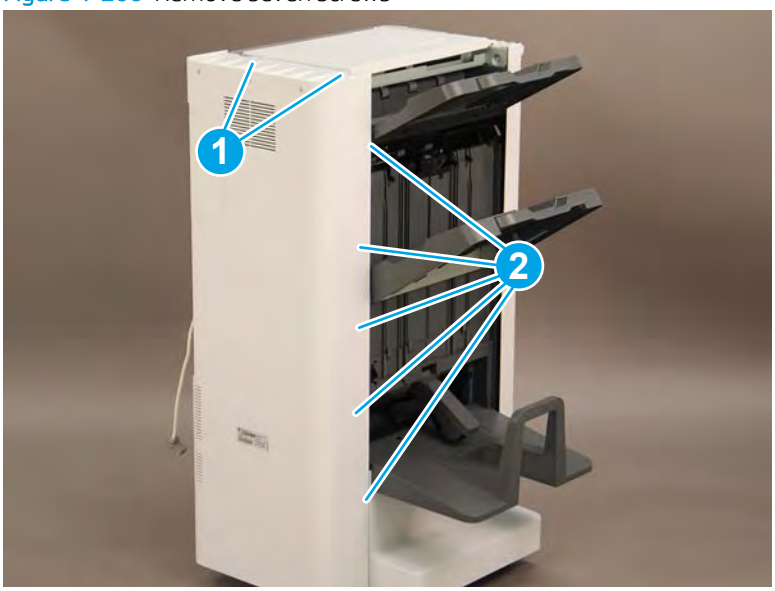
Figure 4-199 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-200 Remove seven screws

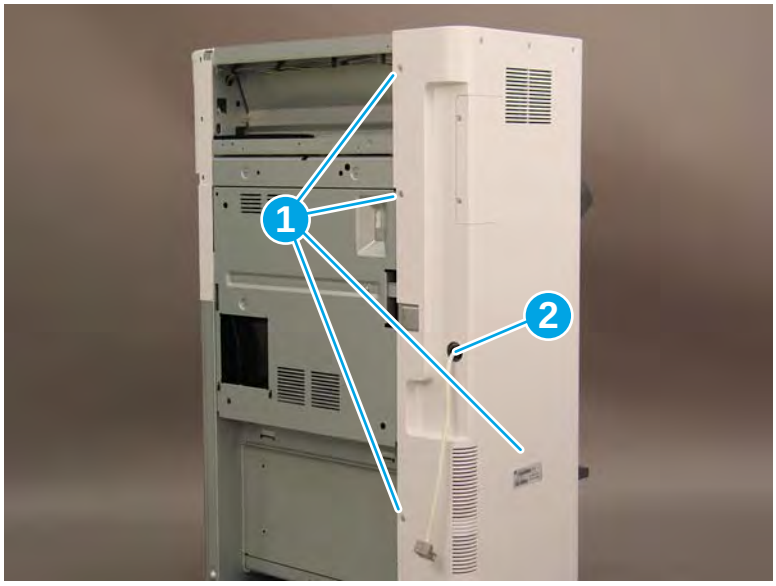


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-201 Remove four screws and the rear cover



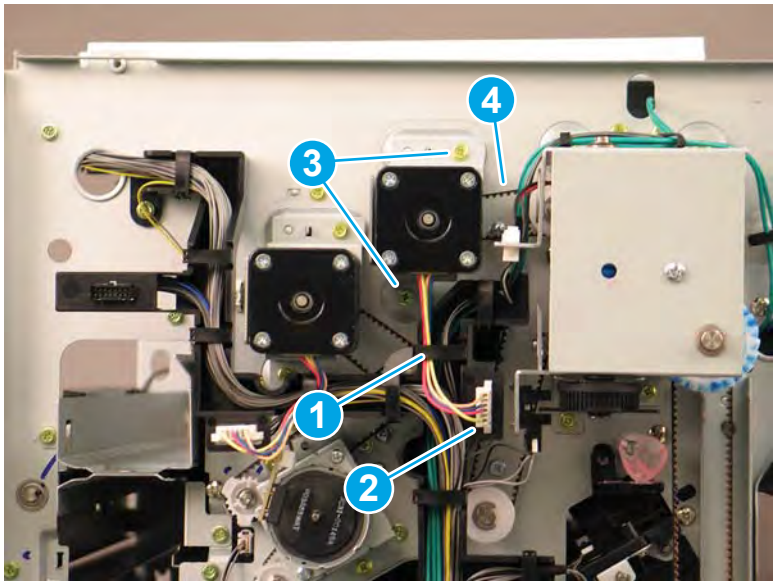
Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor (finisher)

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

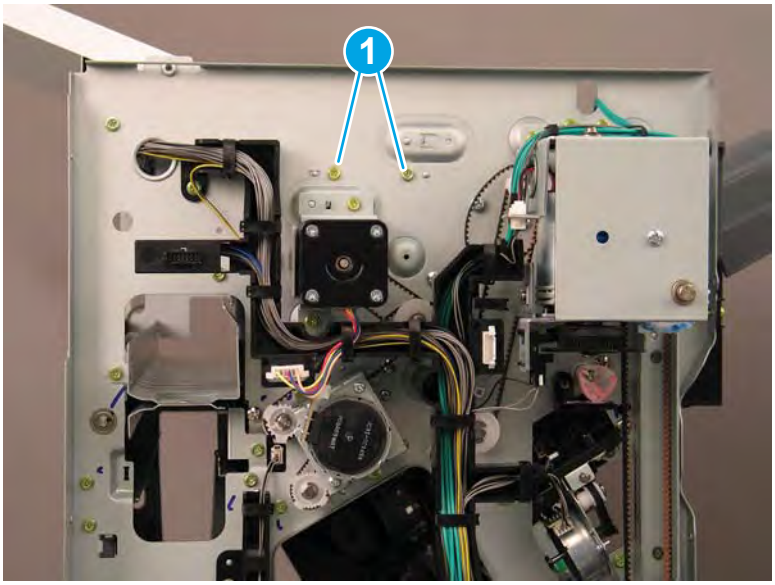
Figure 4-202 Remove the feed exit motor



Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-203 Remove two screws



2. Remove the top jam access cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

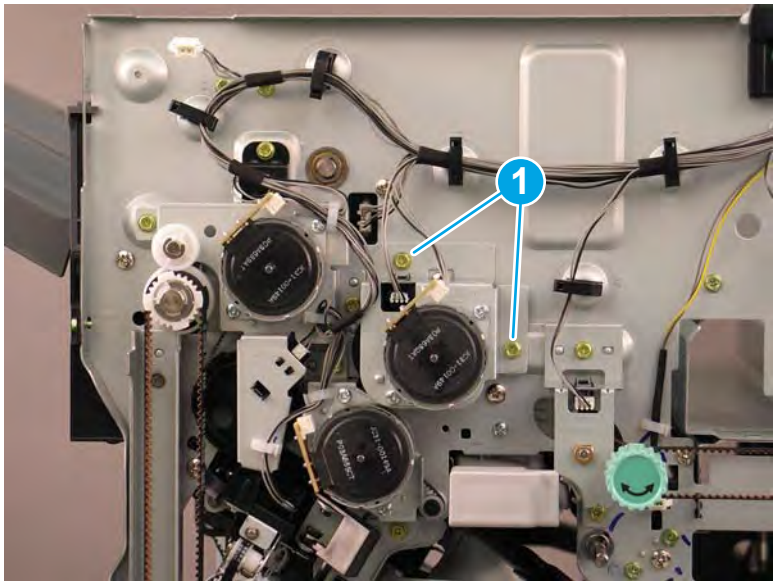
Figure 4-204 Remove the top jam access cover



Step 8: Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher)

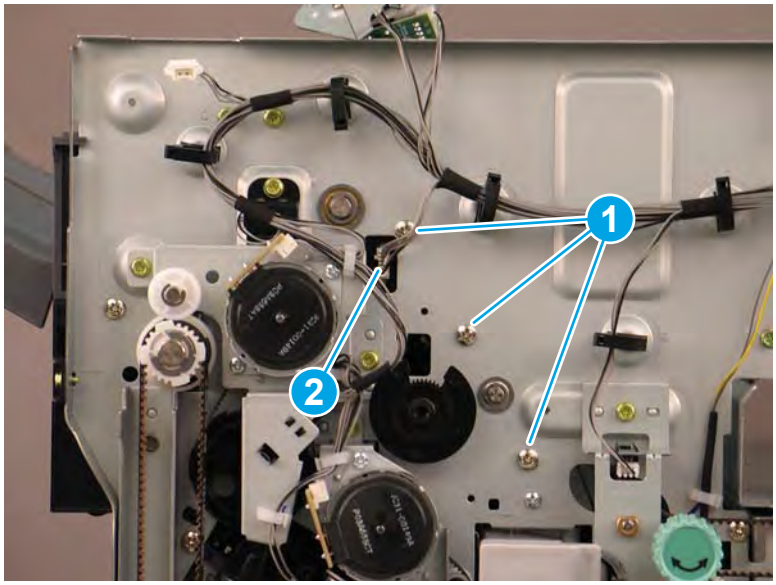
1. At the front of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1) on the buffer motor housing, and then tilt the motor aside to access the screws under it.

Figure 4-205 Remove two screws



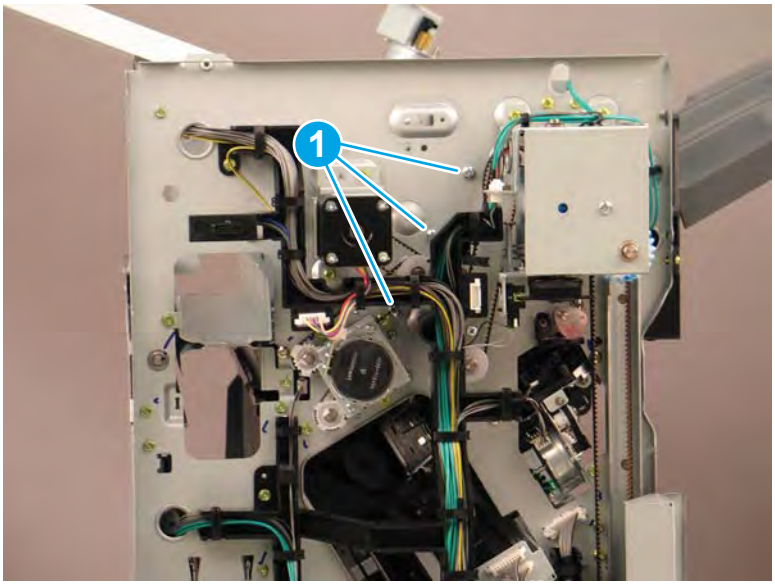
2. At the front of the finisher, remove three self-tapping screws (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 4-206 Remove three screws and disconnect one connector



3. At the rear of the finisher, remove three machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-207 Remove three screws



4. At the top of the finisher, lift the feed assembly straight up to disengage two tabs on the bottom and remove the assembly.

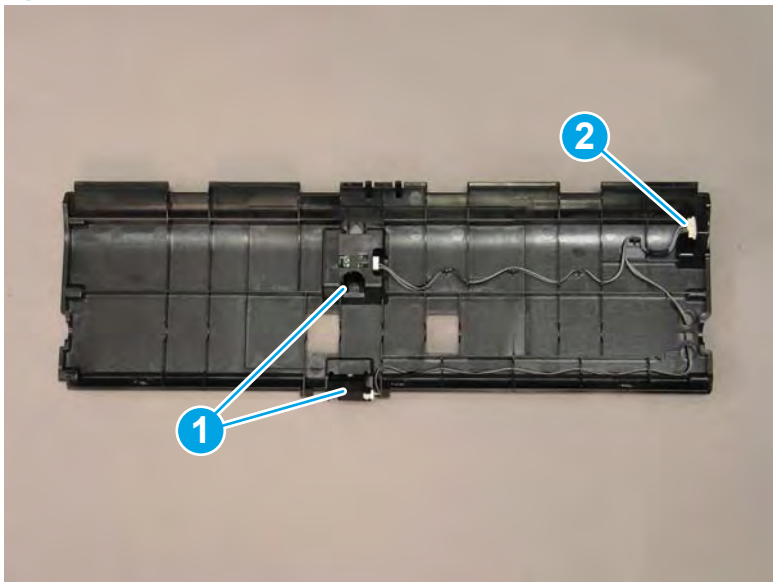
Figure 4-208 Remove the feed assembly



5. If you are replacing the top lower feed assembly, locate two sensors (callout 1) and one connector (callout 2) on the back of the assembly. Remove these items and transfer them to the replacement part.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-209 Locate sensors and connector



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the ejector unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01409A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher Sub - Ejector Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

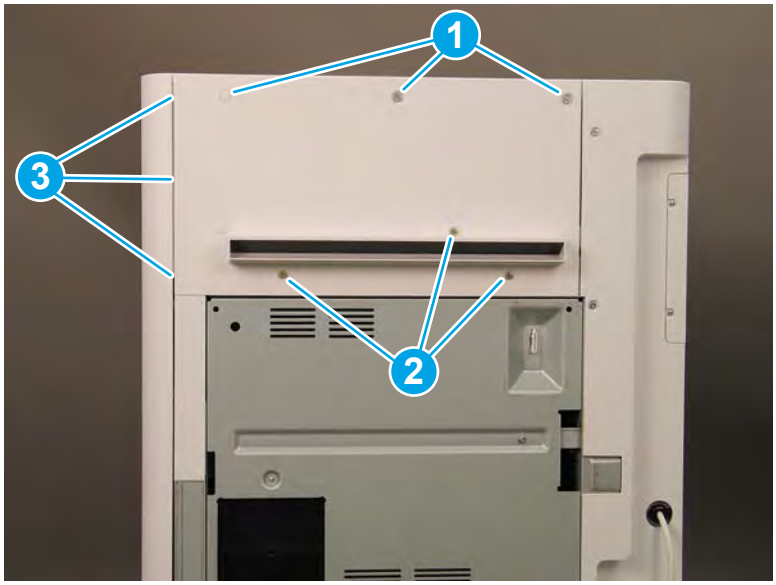
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

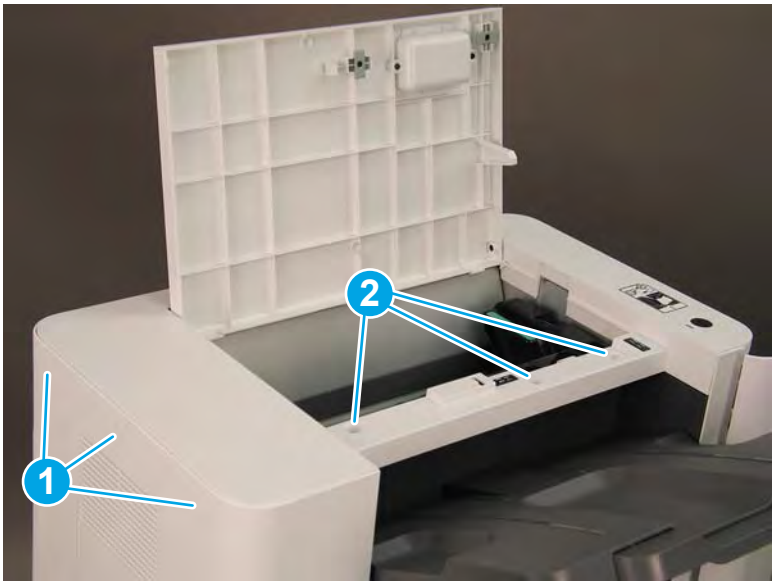
Figure 4-210 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

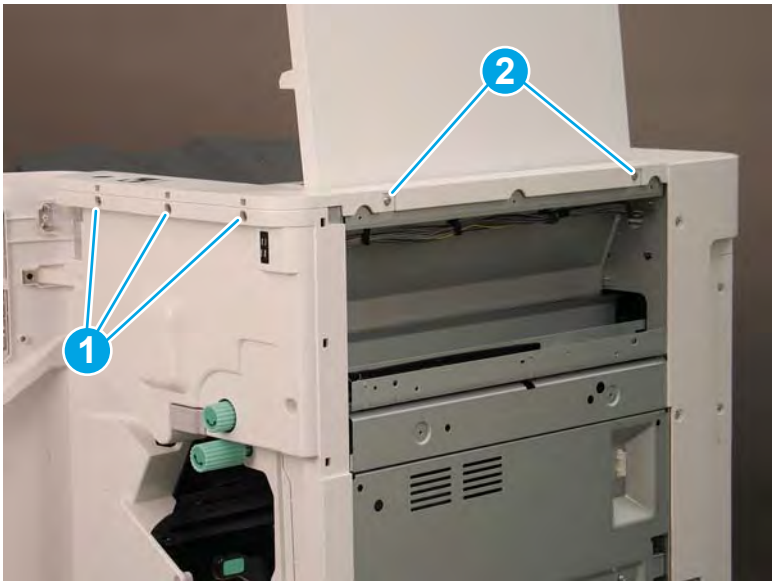
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-211 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

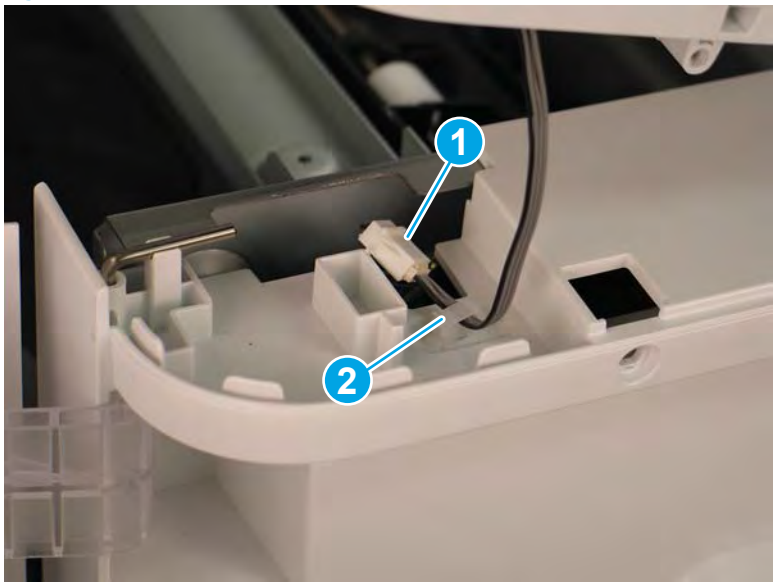
Figure 4-212 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-213 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

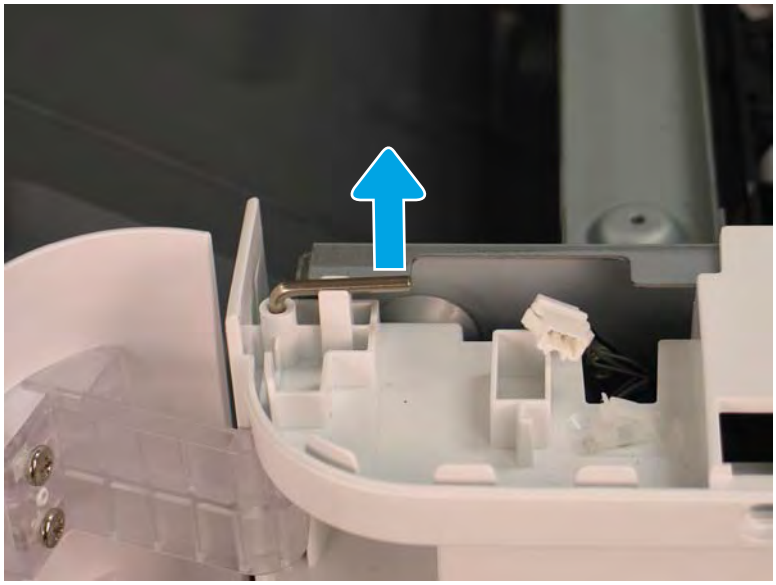


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

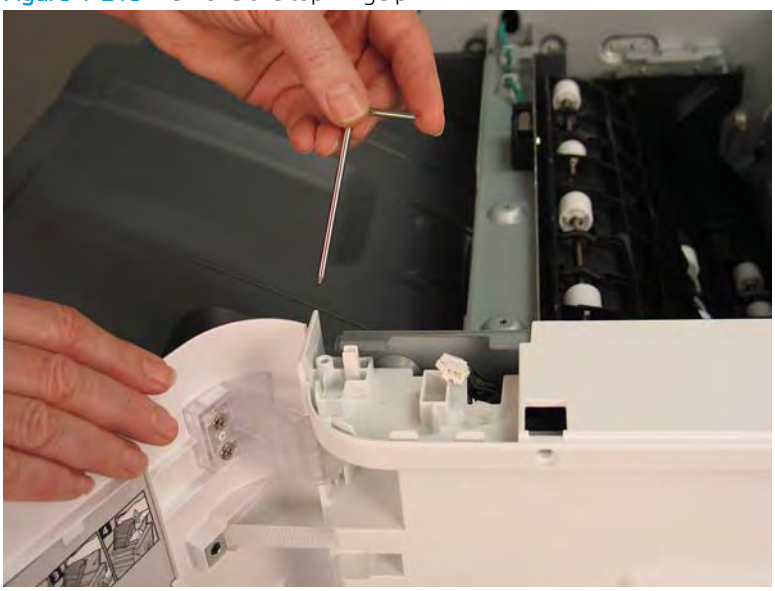
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-214 Lift the top hinge pin



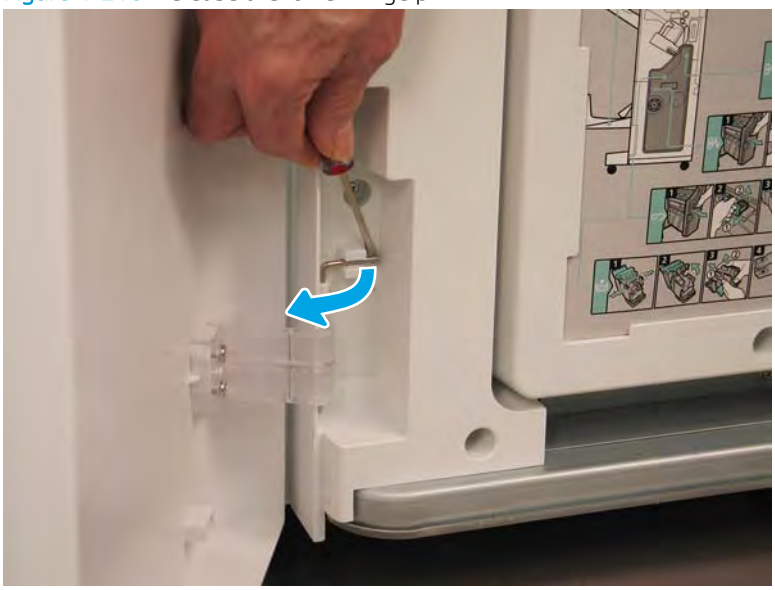
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-215 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-216 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

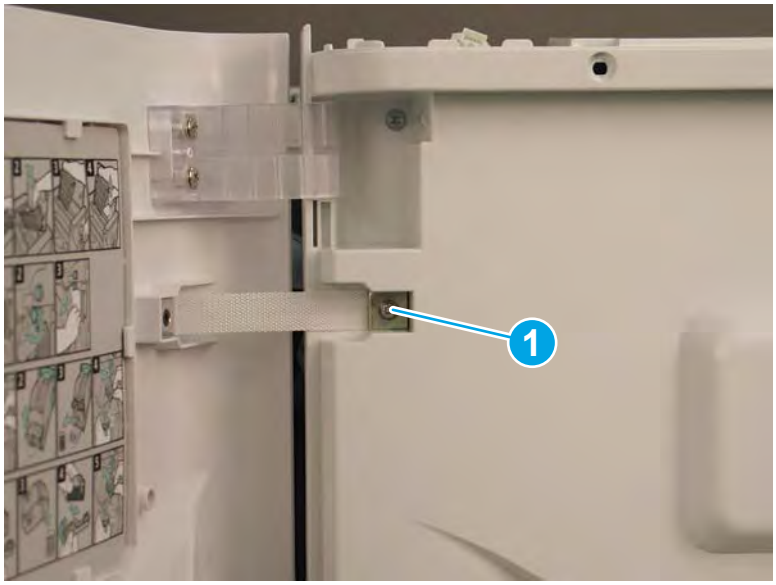
Figure 4-217 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

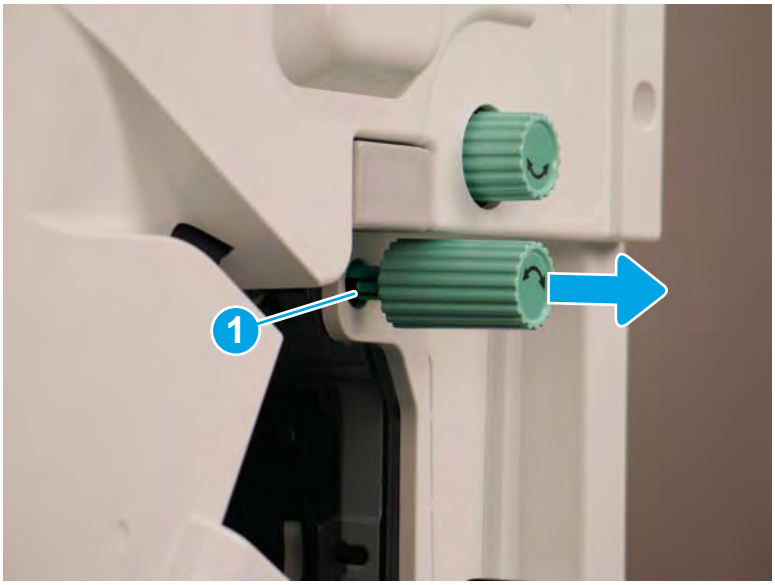
Figure 4-218 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-219 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

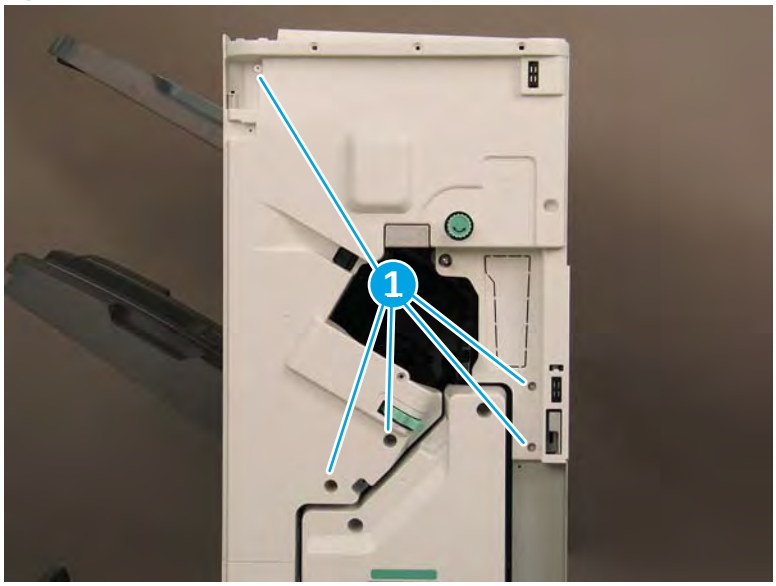
Figure 4-220 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

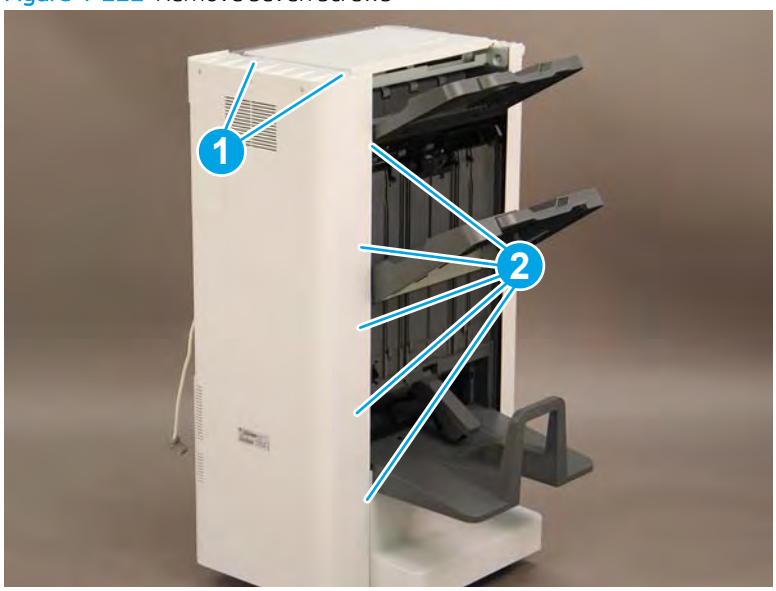
Figure 4-221 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-222 Remove seven screws

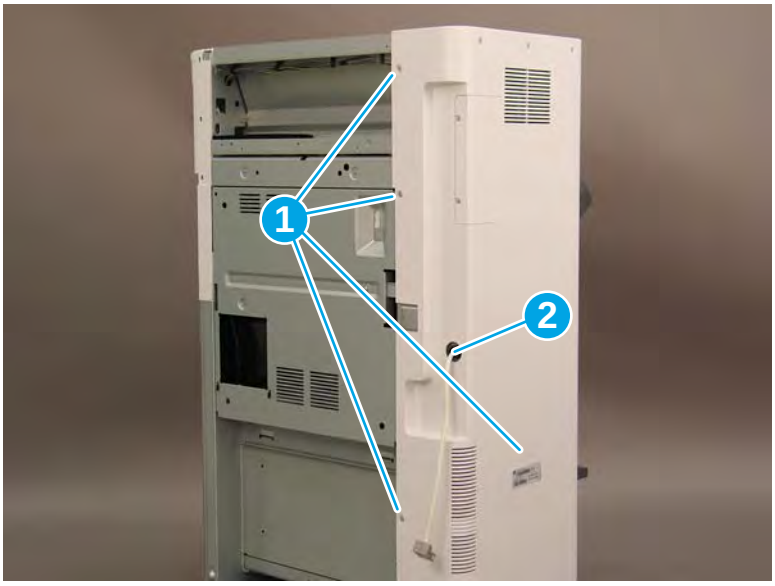


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

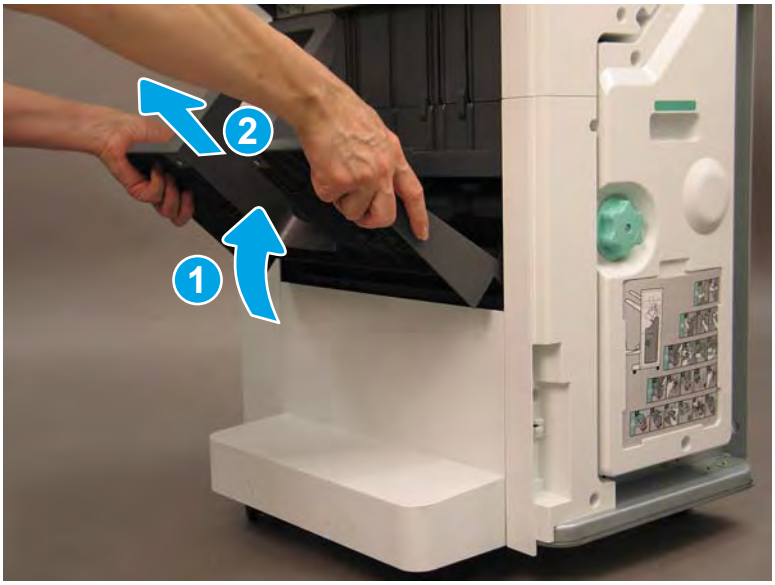
Figure 4-223 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-224 Remove the booklet tray



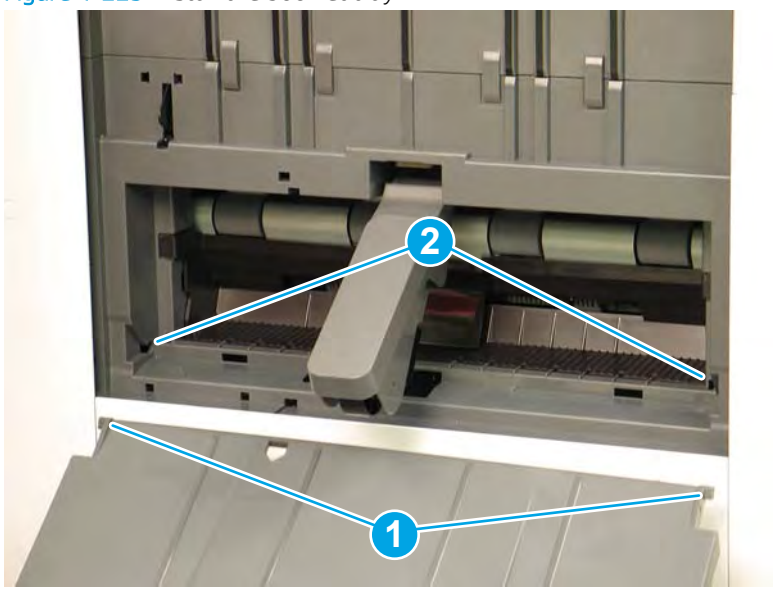
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

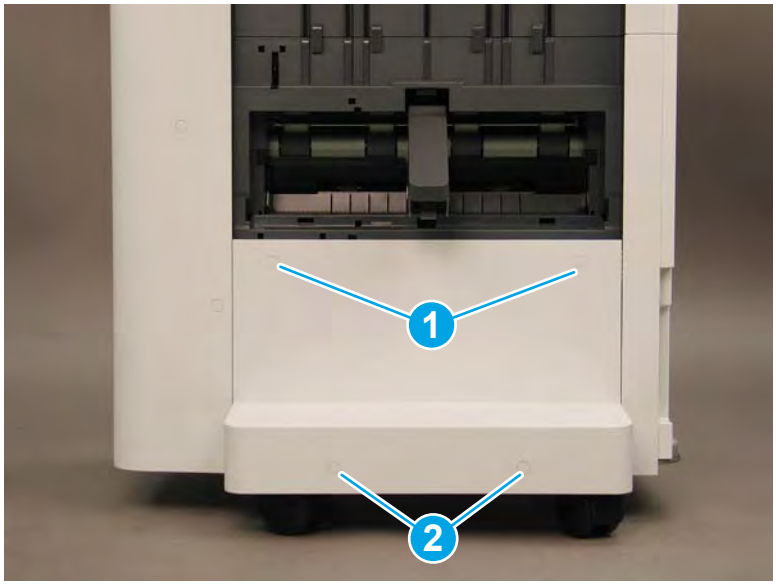
Figure 4-225 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-226 Remove four screws

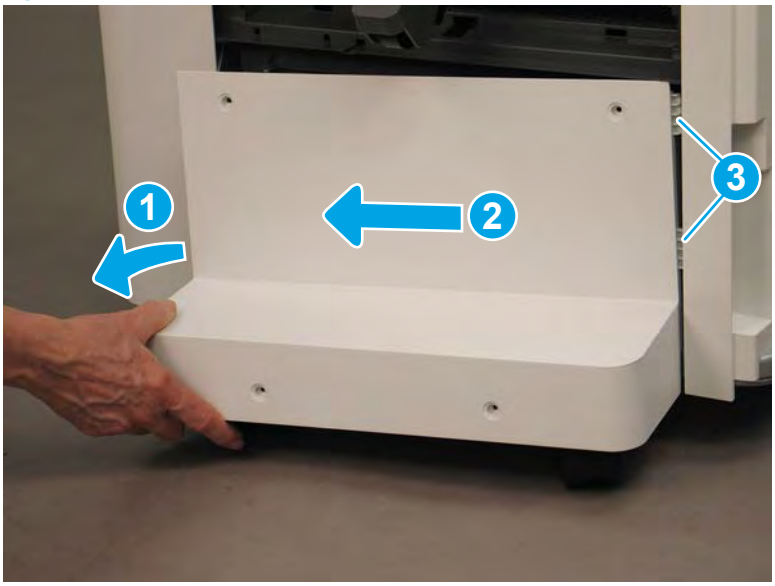


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-227 Remove the caster cover

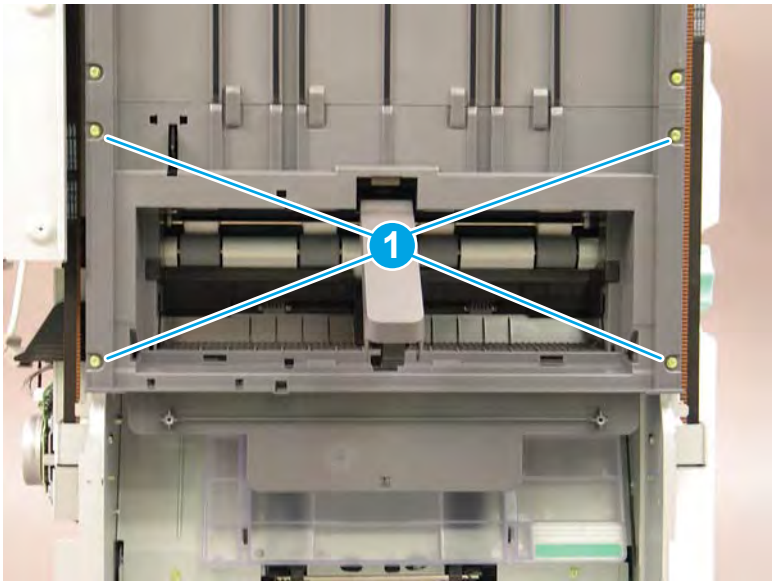


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 4-228 Remove four screws

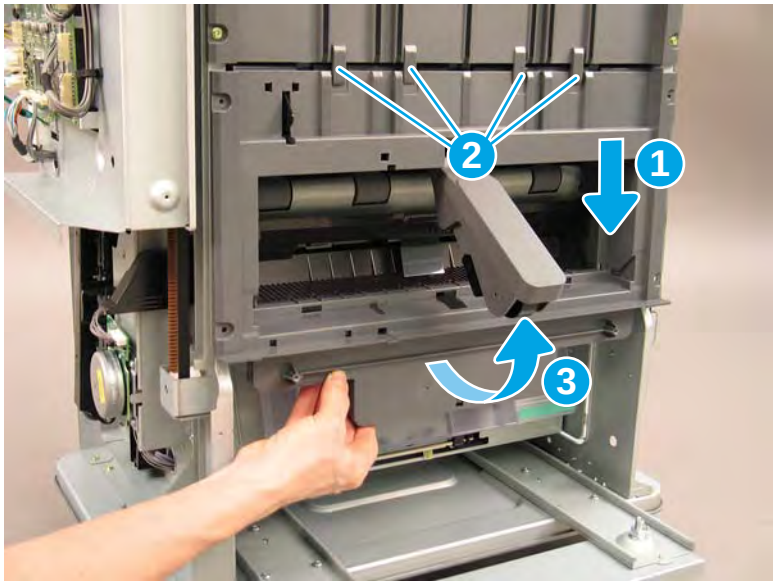


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

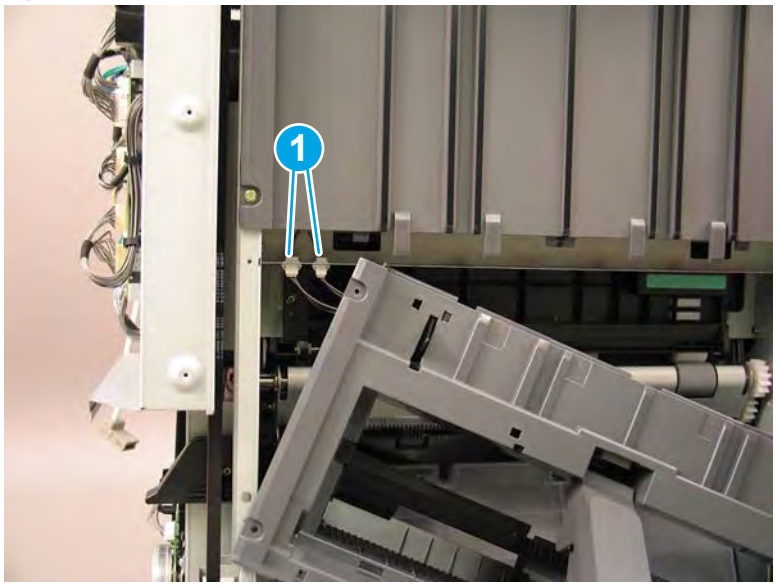
Figure 4-229 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

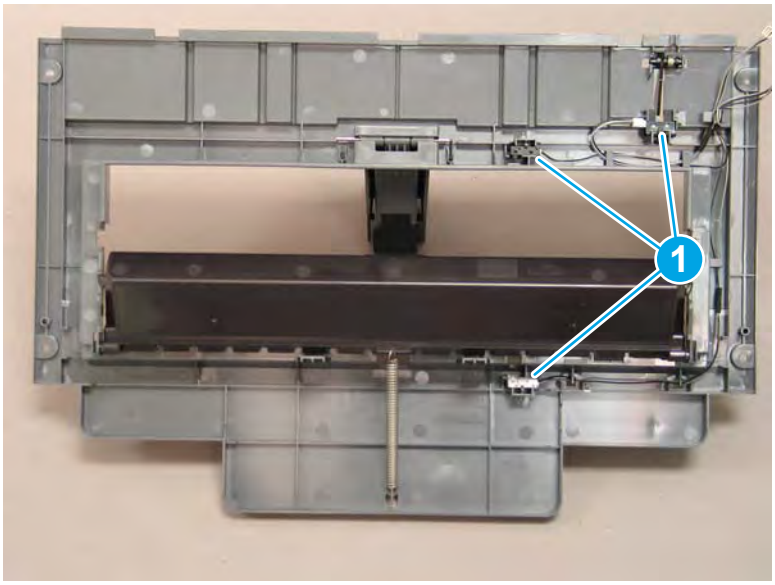
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-230 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

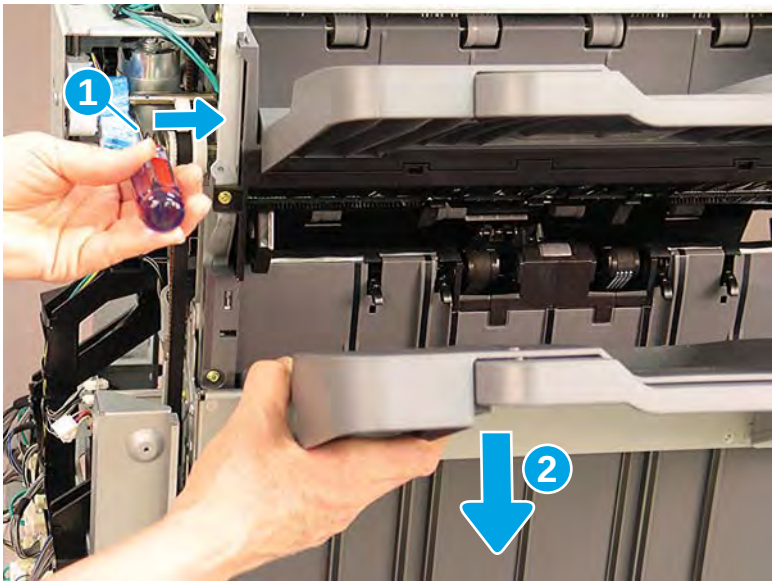
Figure 4-231 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

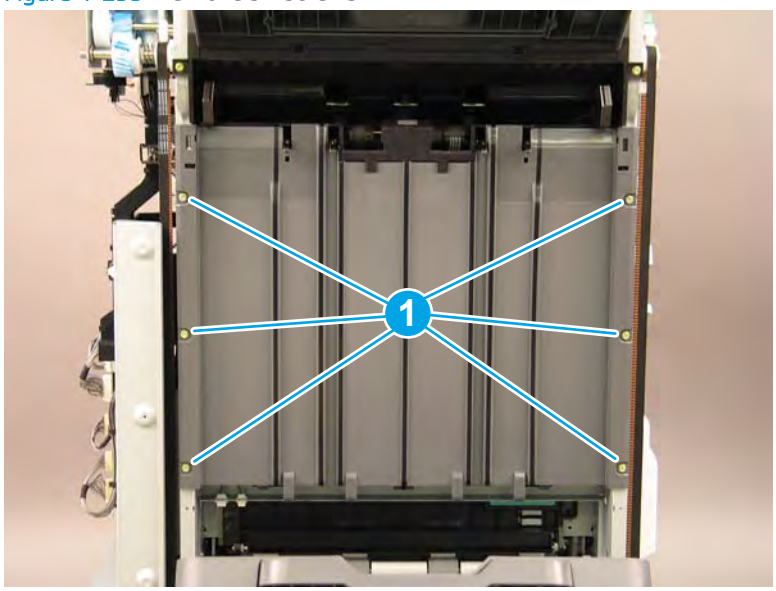
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 4-232 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-233 Remove six screws

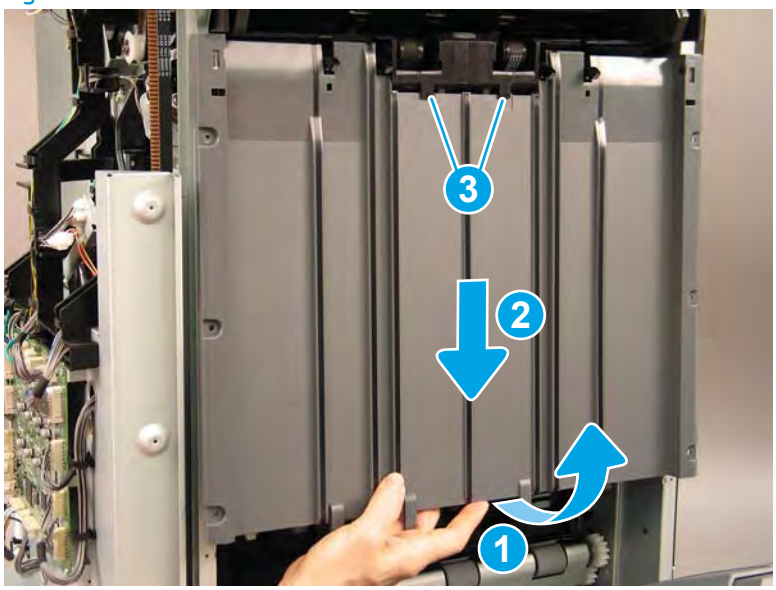


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

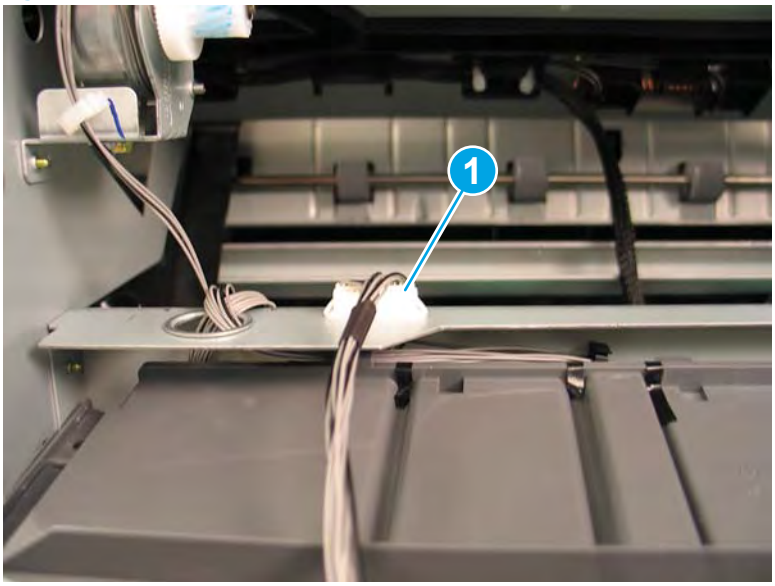
Figure 4-234 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

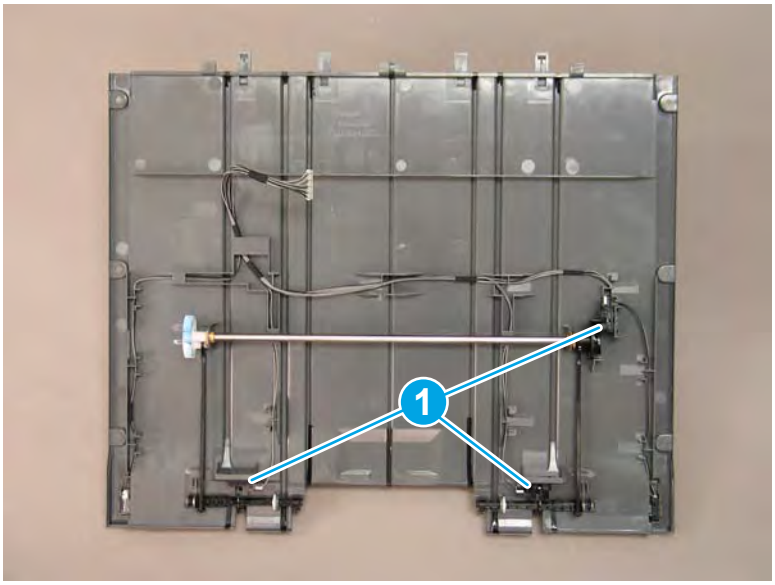
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-235 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

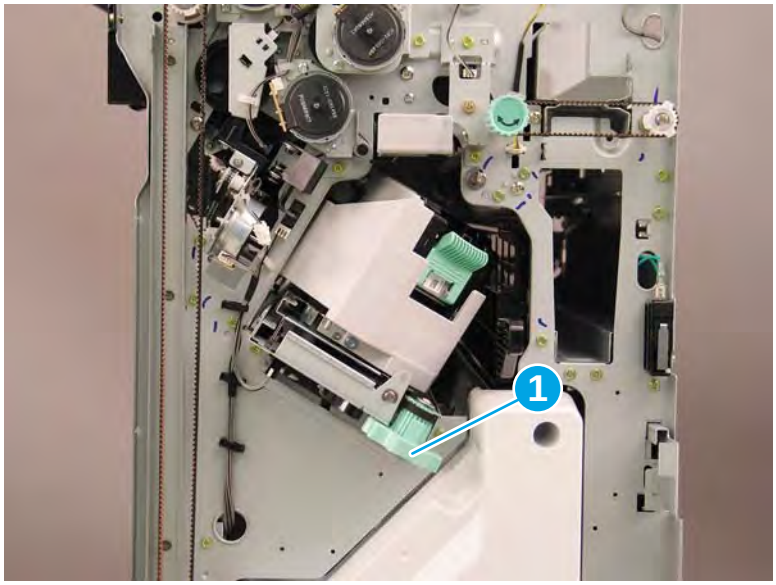
Figure 4-236 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

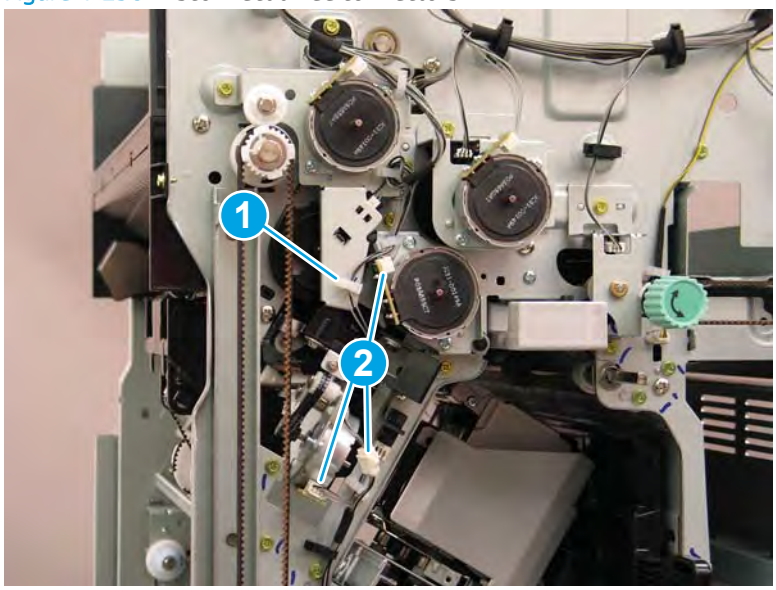
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 4-237 Move the staple unit to the center



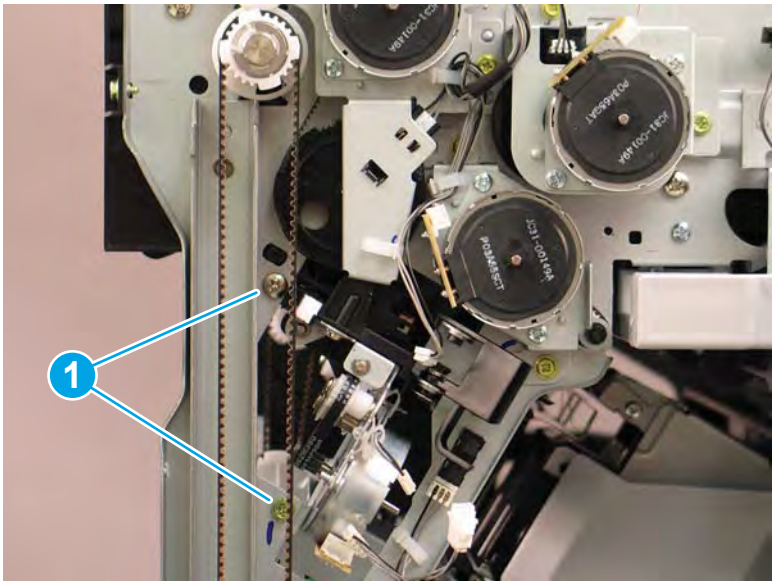
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 4-238 Disconnect three connectors



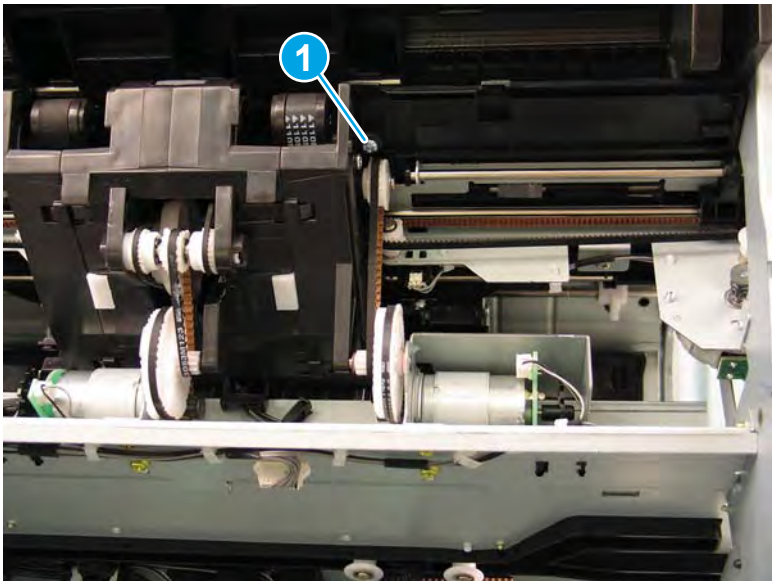
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-239 Remove two screws



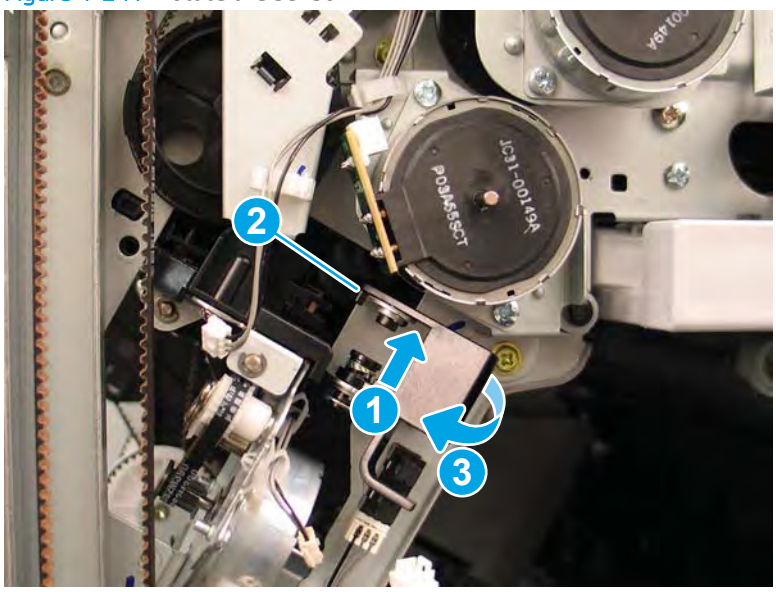
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-240 Remove one screw



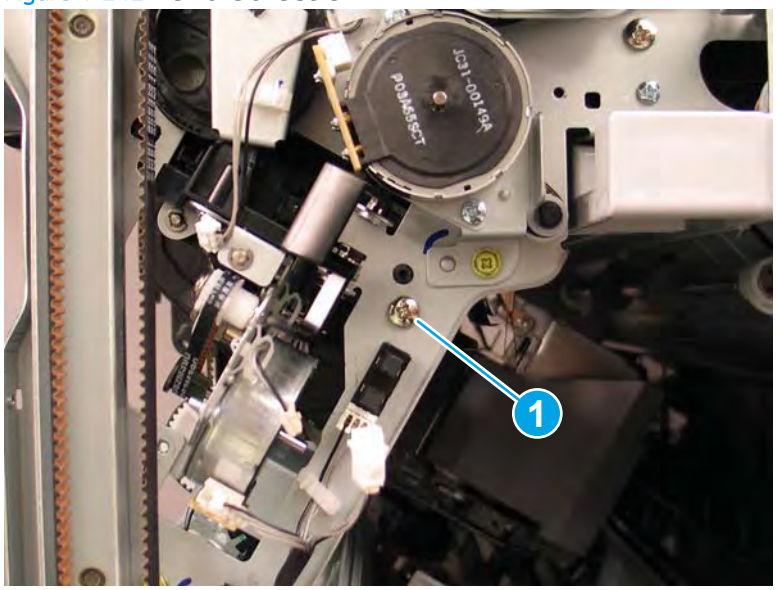
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 4-241 Rotate the sensor



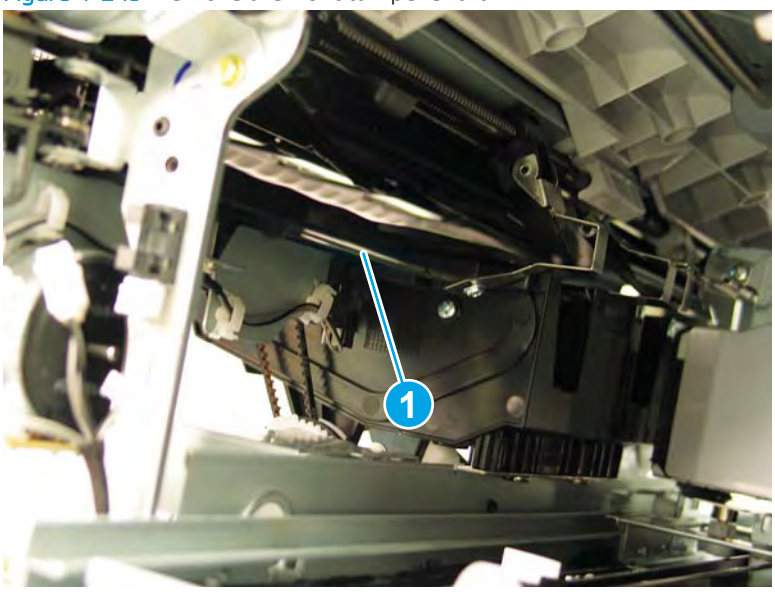
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-242 Remove one screw



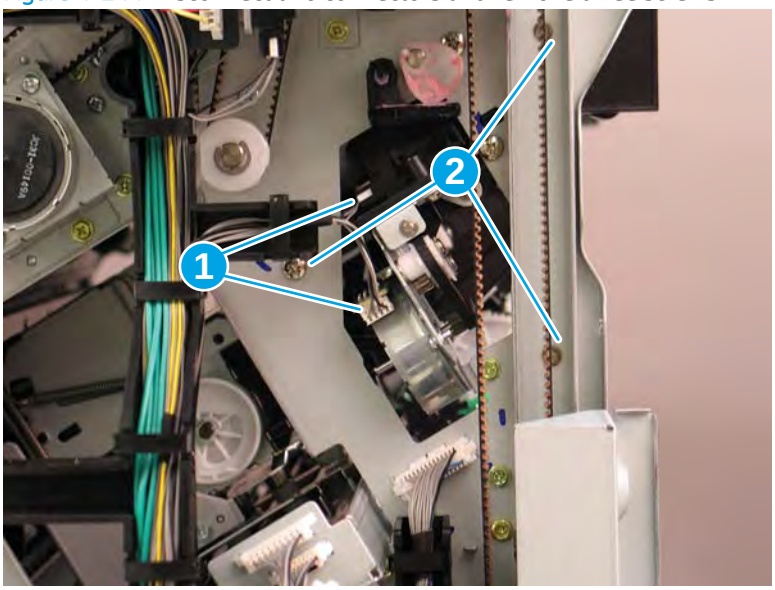
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 4-243 Remove the front tamper shaft



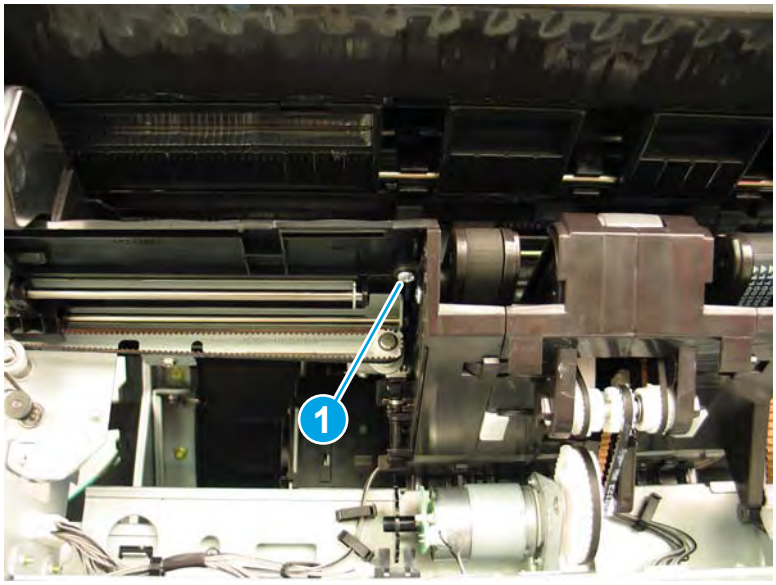
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-244 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



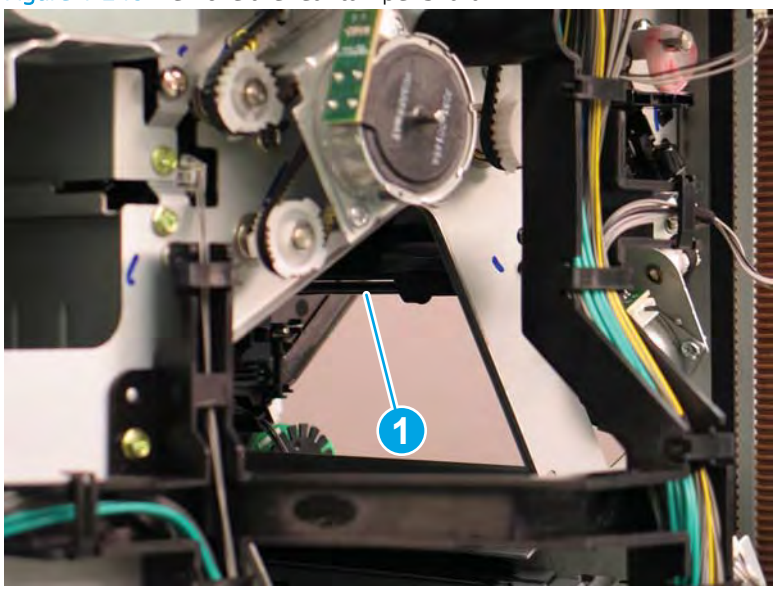
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-245 Remove one screw



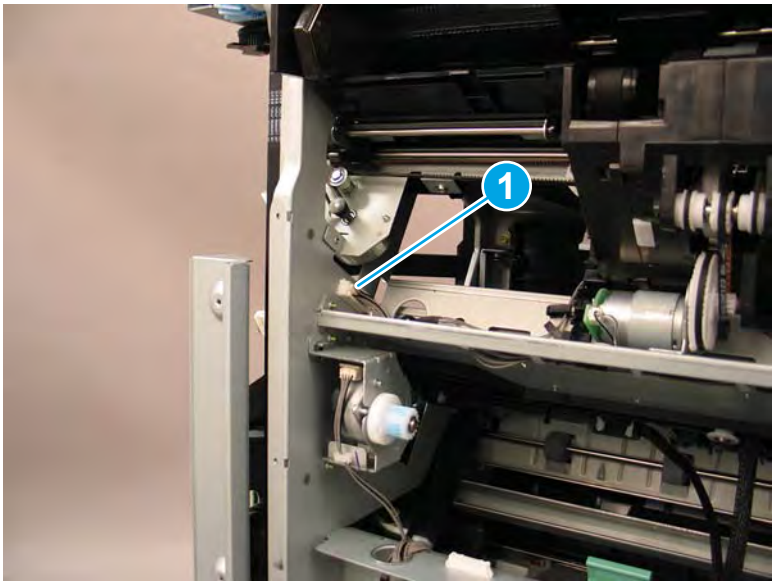
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 4-246 Remove the rear tamper shaft



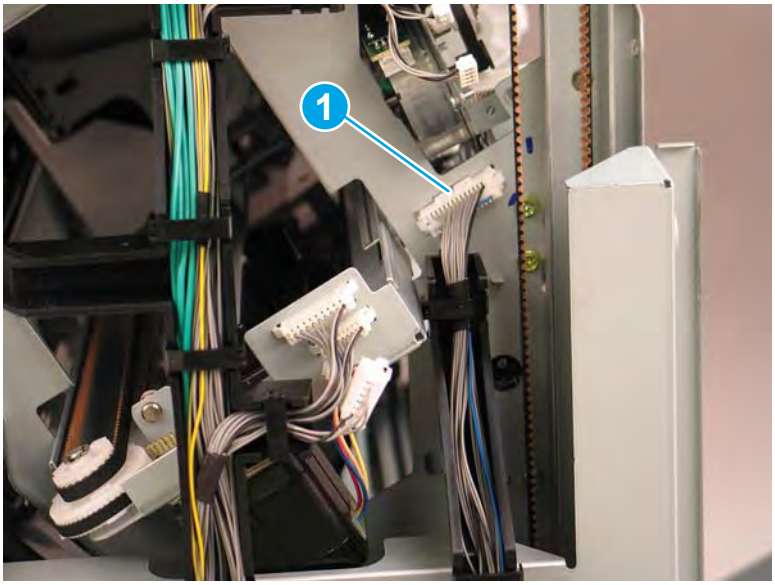
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-247 Disconnect one connector



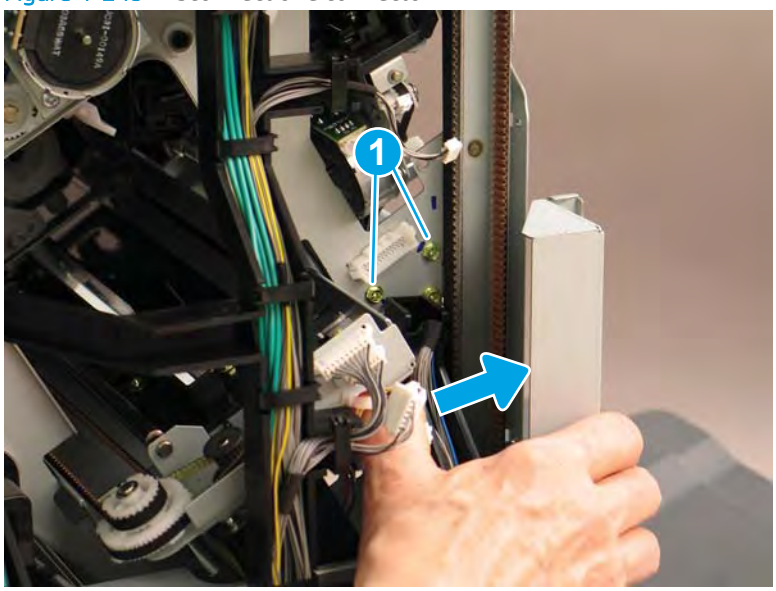
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-248 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-249 Disconnect one connector



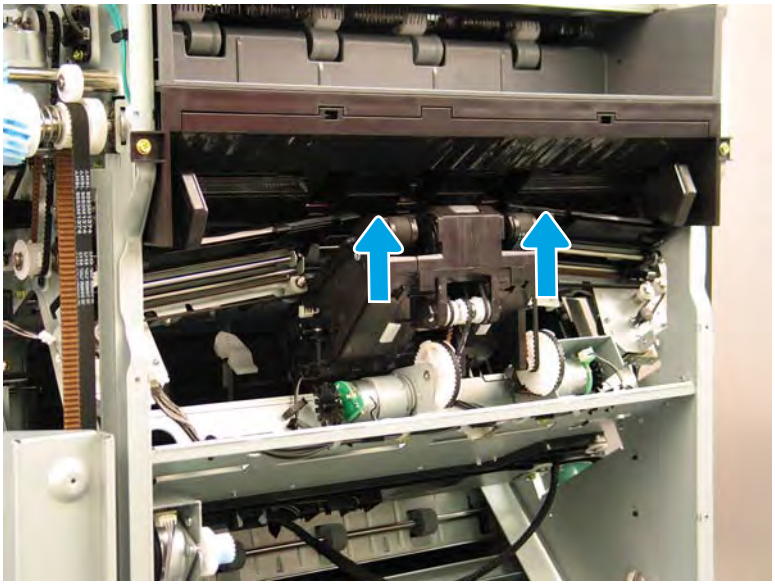
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-250 Remove two screws



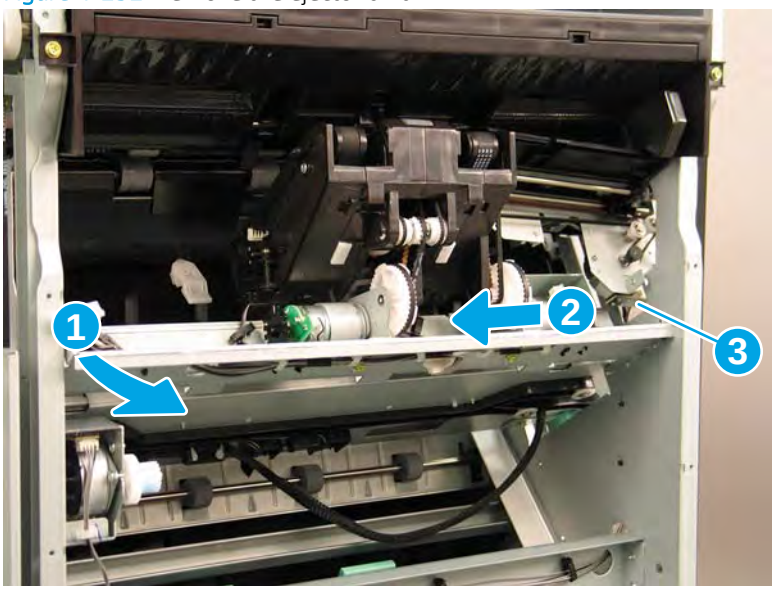
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 4-251 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 4-252 Remove the ejector unit



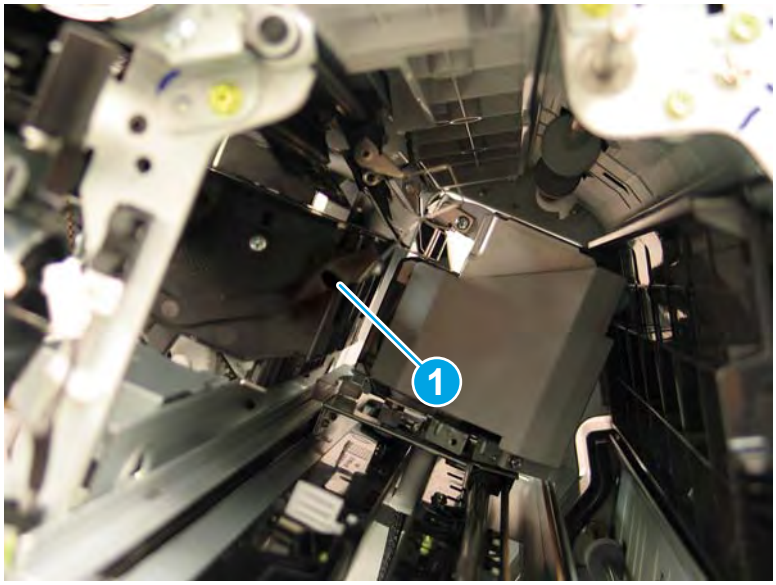
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

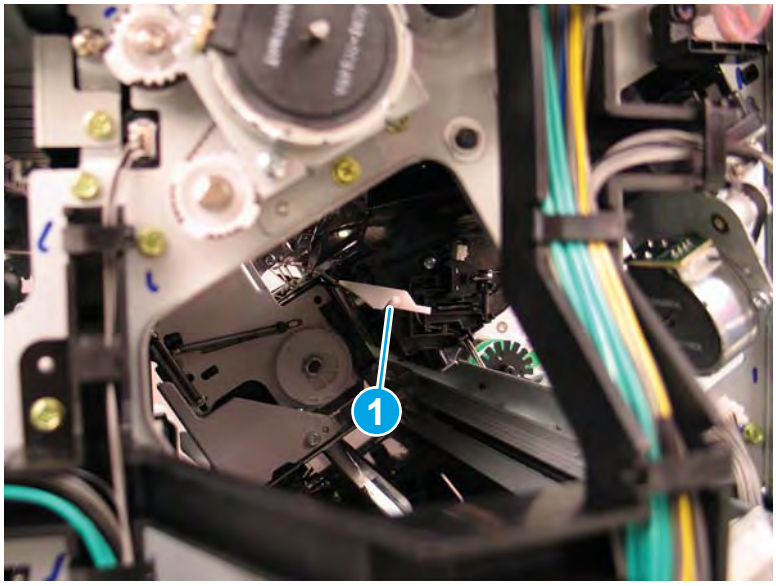
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-253 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-254 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft



Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front tamper unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the front tamper unit
- Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front tamper unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC82-00901A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher Sub - Tamper Front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

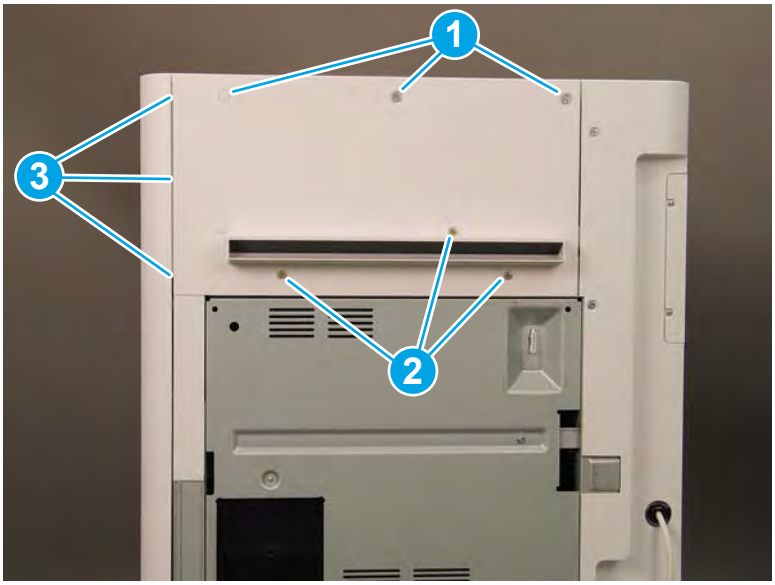
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

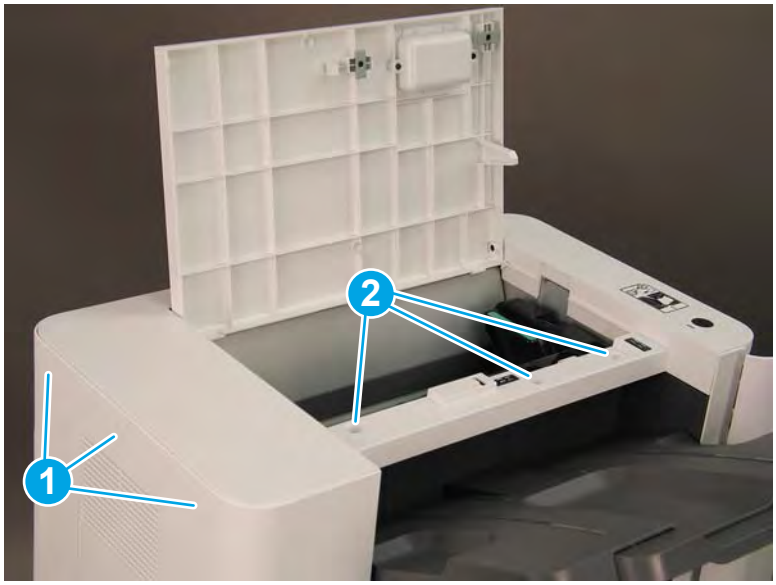
Figure 4-255 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

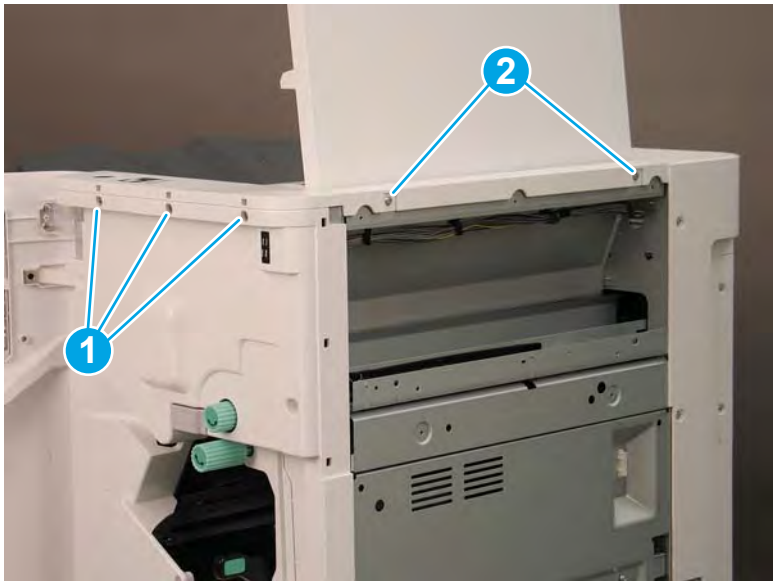
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-256 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

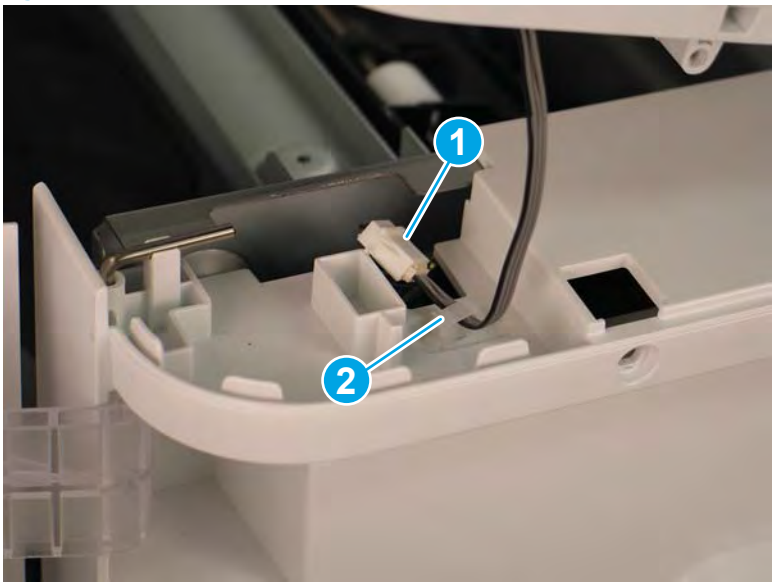
Figure 4-257 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-258 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

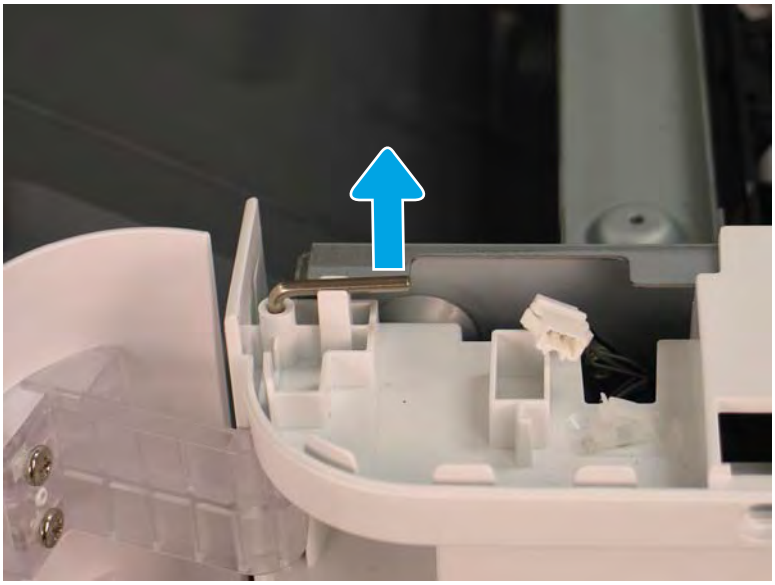


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

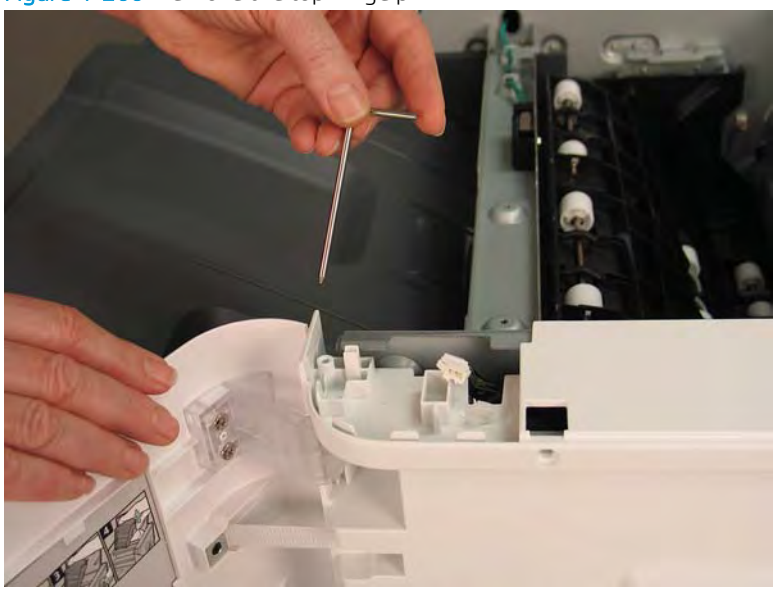
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-259 Lift the top hinge pin



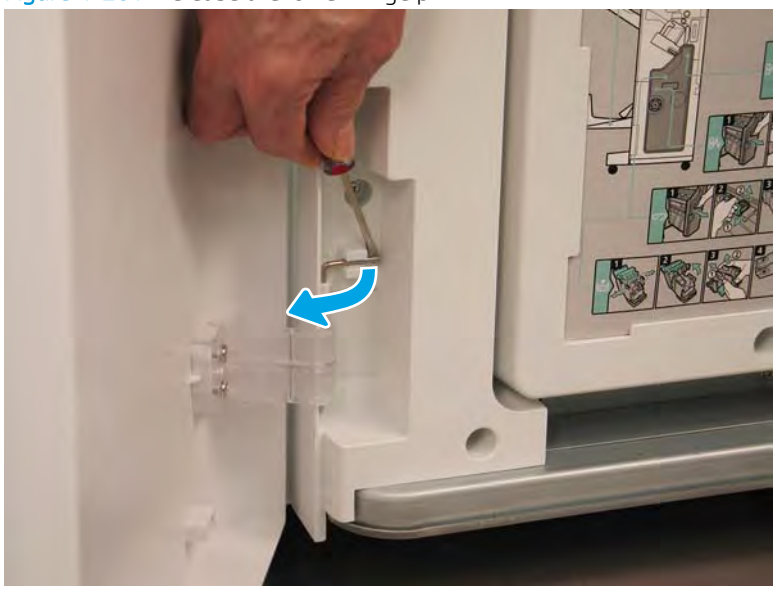
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-260 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-261 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

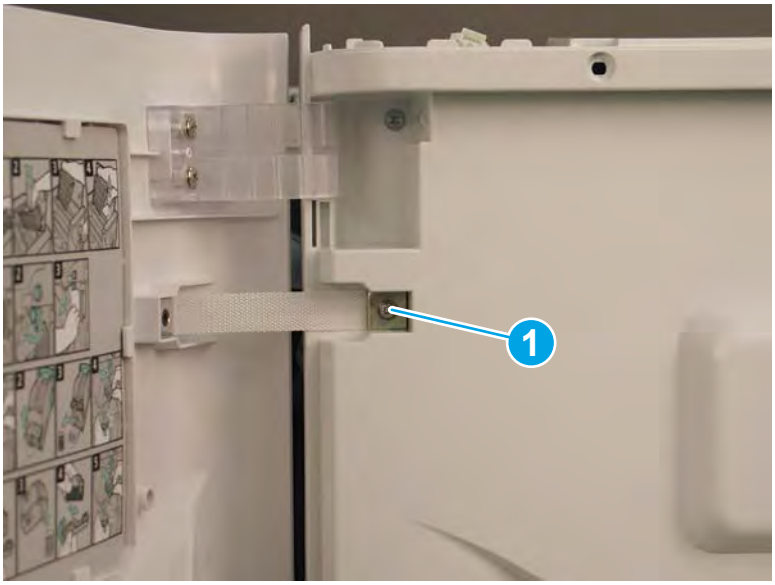
Figure 4-262 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

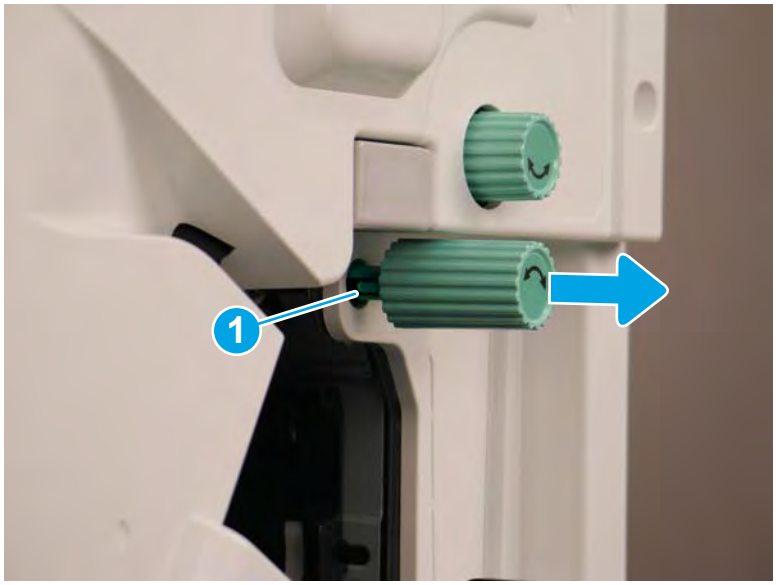
Figure 4-263 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-264 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

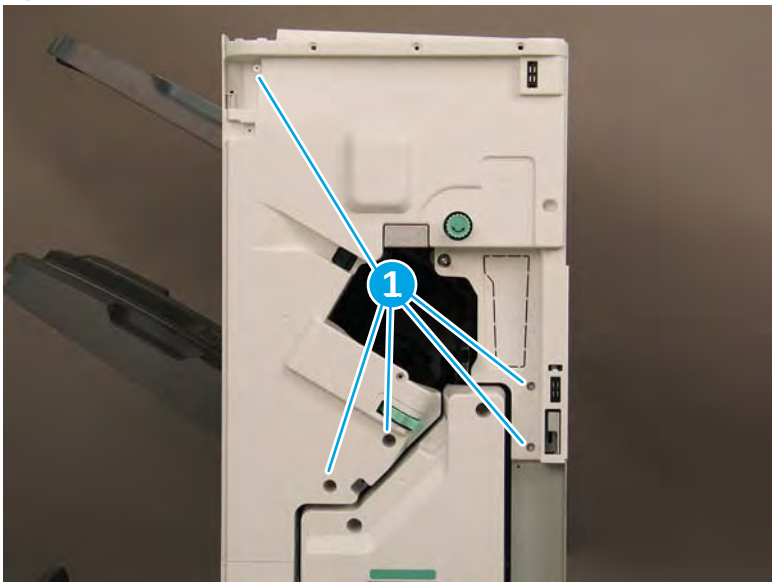
Figure 4-265 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

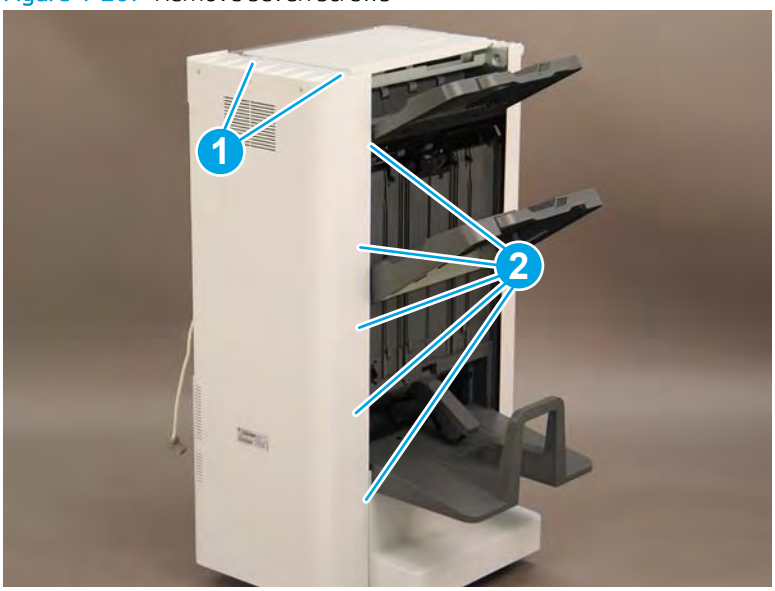
Figure 4-266 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-267 Remove seven screws

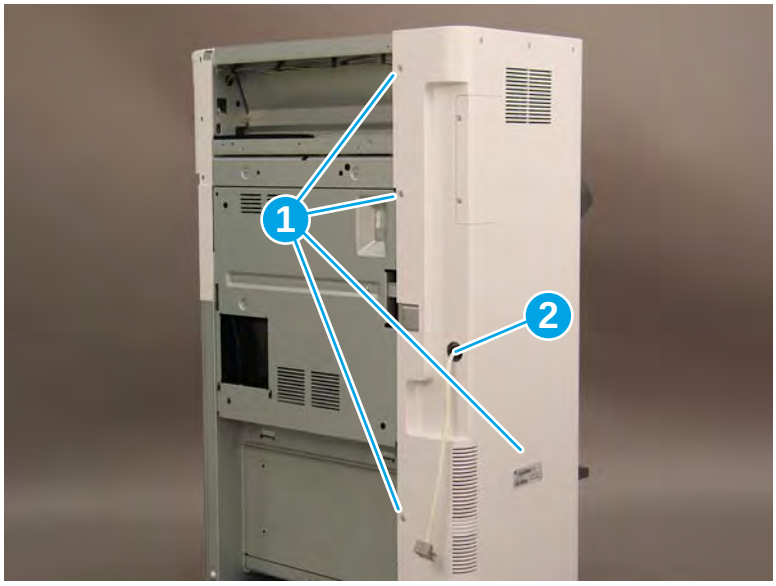


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

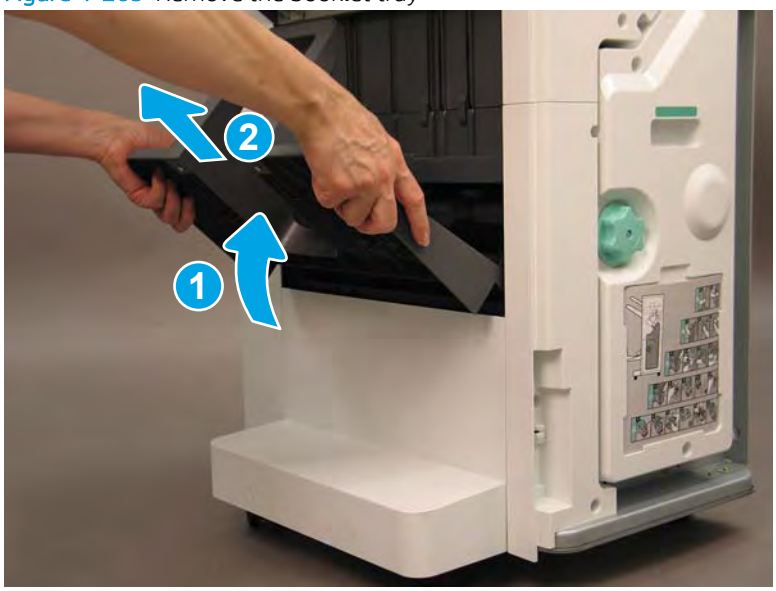
Figure 4-268 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-269 Remove the booklet tray



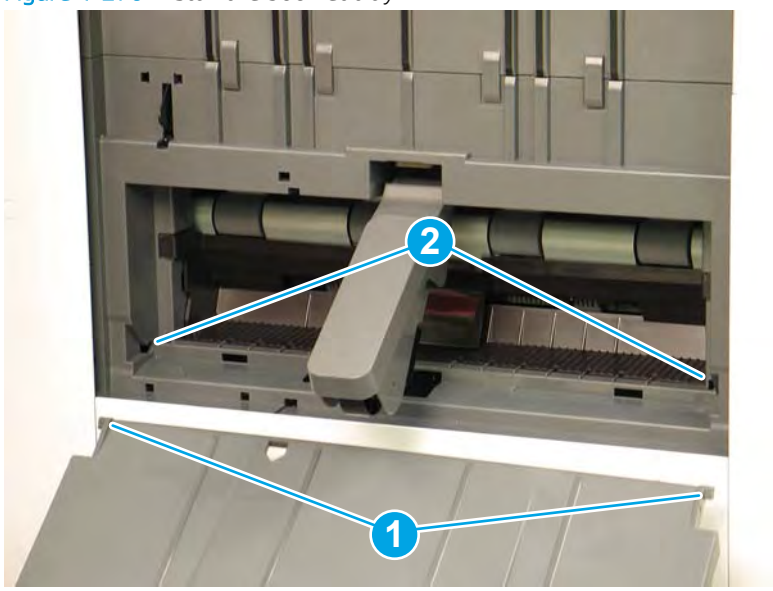
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

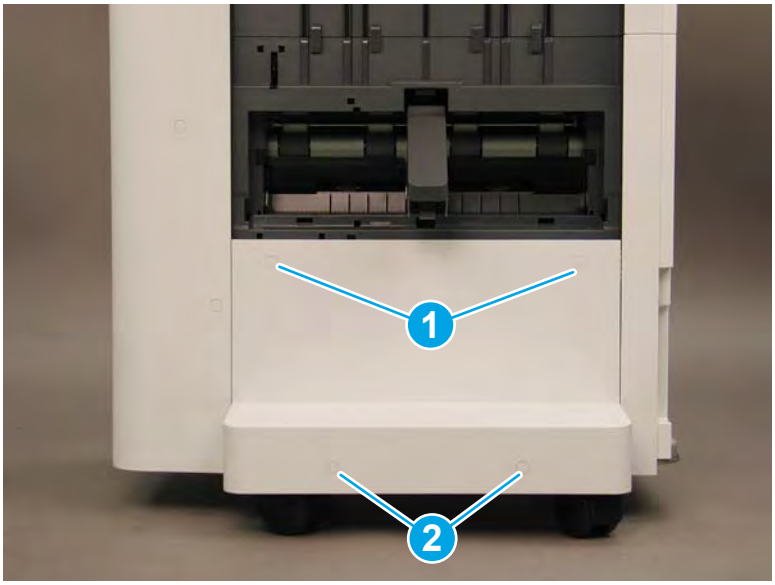
Figure 4-270 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-271 Remove four screws

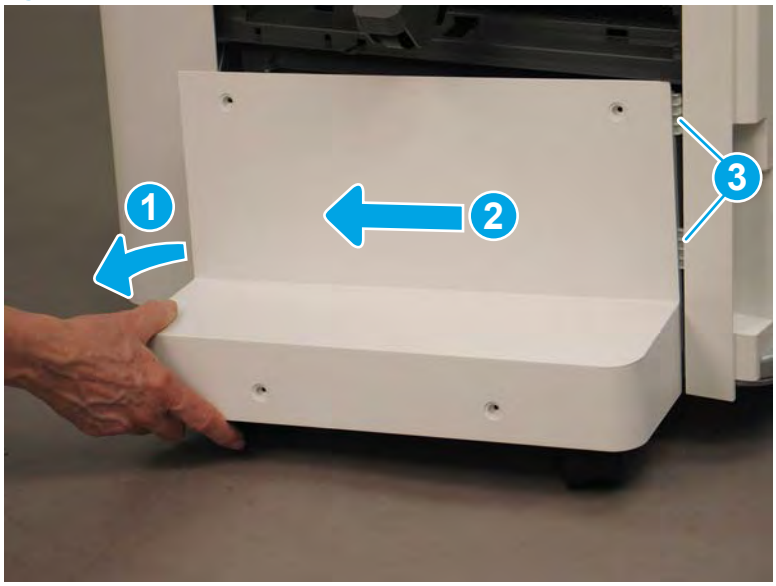


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-272 Remove the caster cover

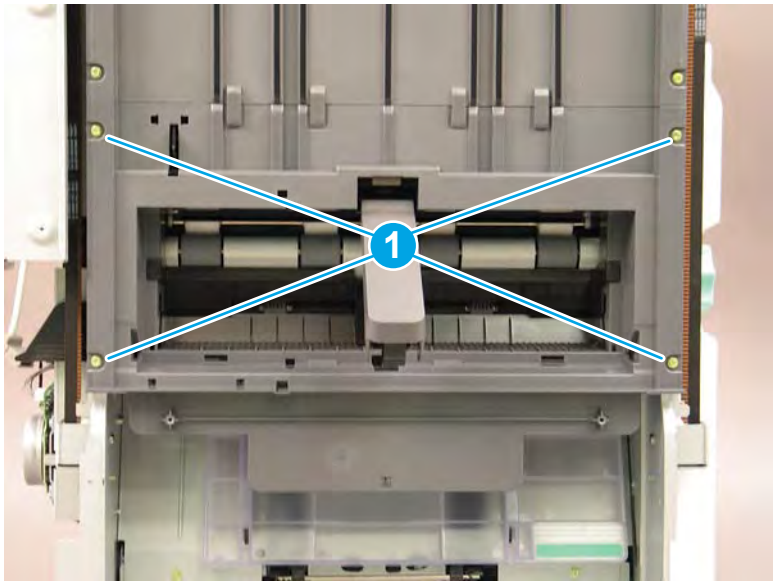


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 4-273 Remove four screws

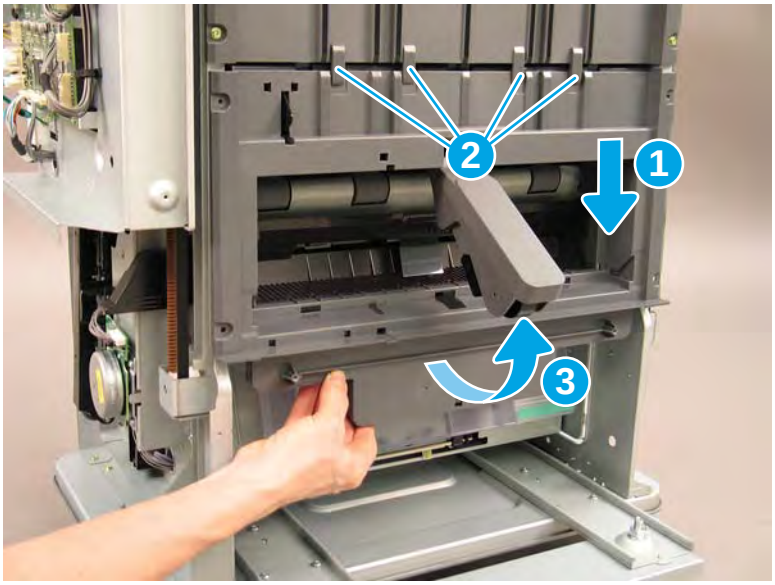


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

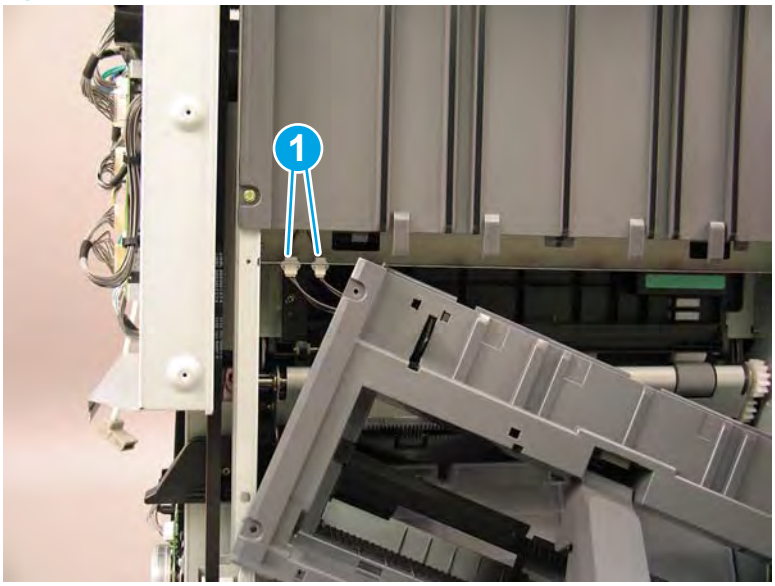
Figure 4-274 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

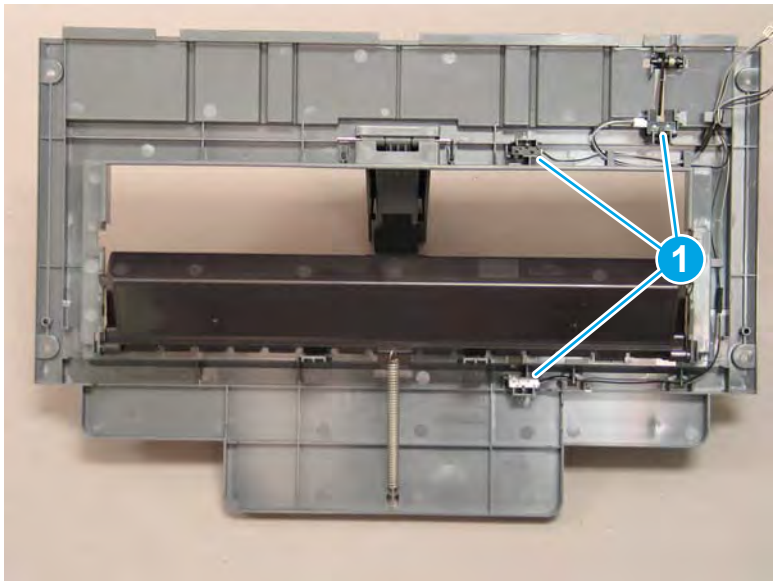
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-275 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

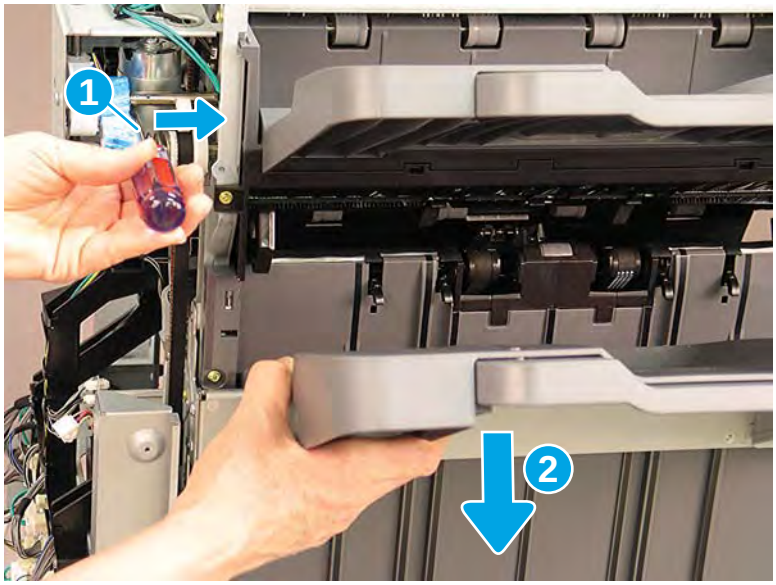
Figure 4-276 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

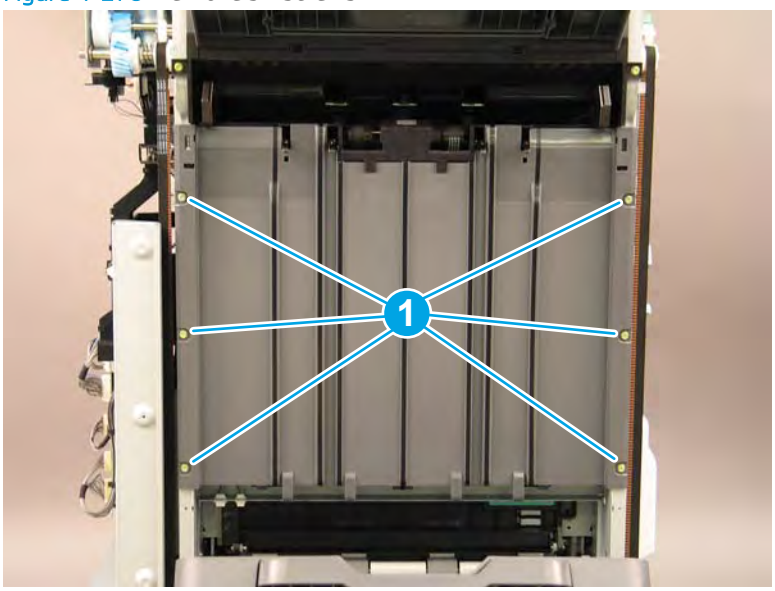
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 4-277 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-278 Remove six screws

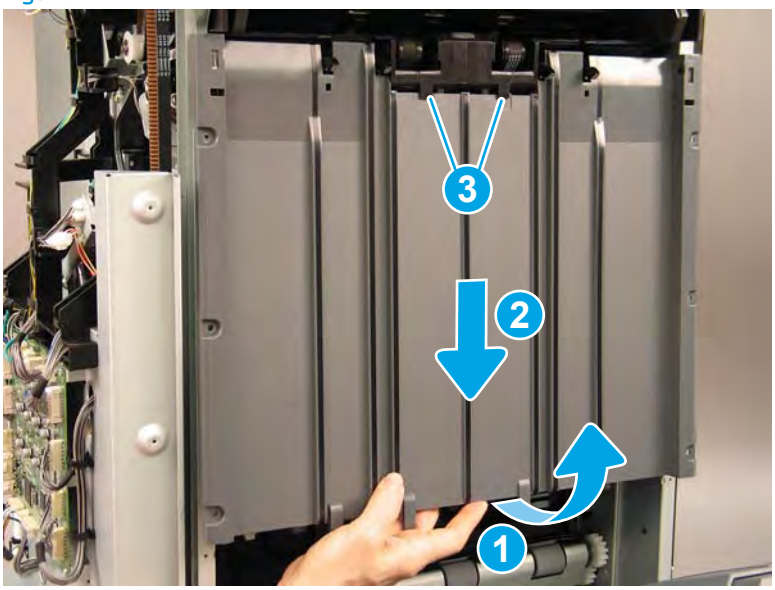


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

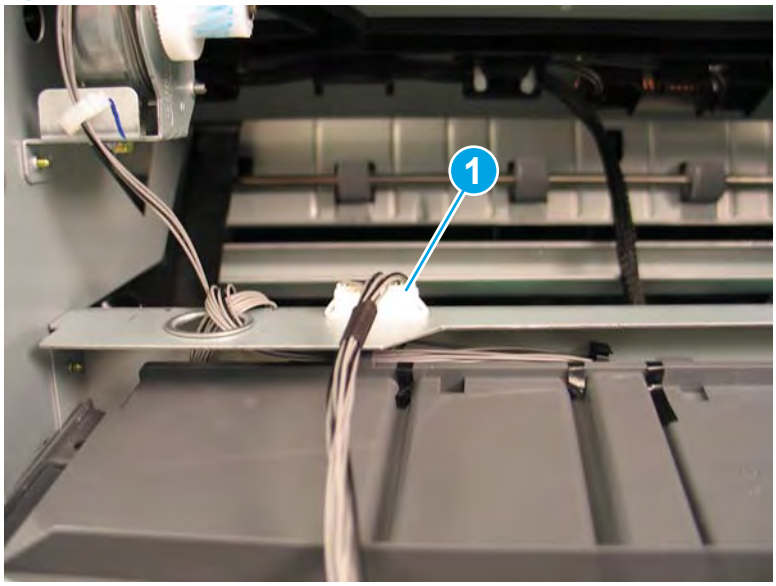
Figure 4-279 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

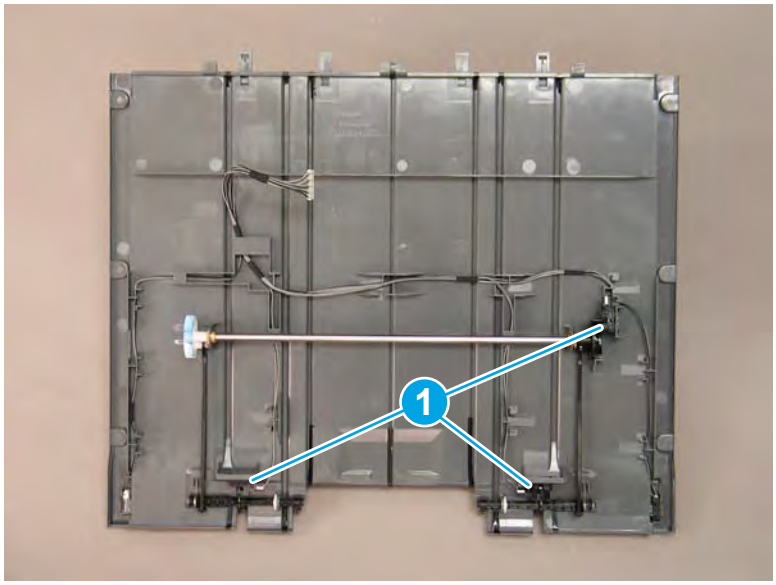
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-280 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

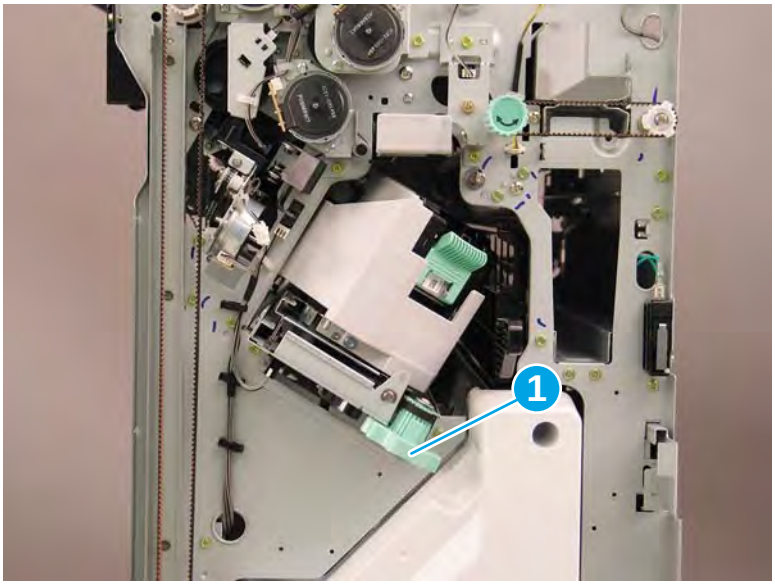
Figure 4-281 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

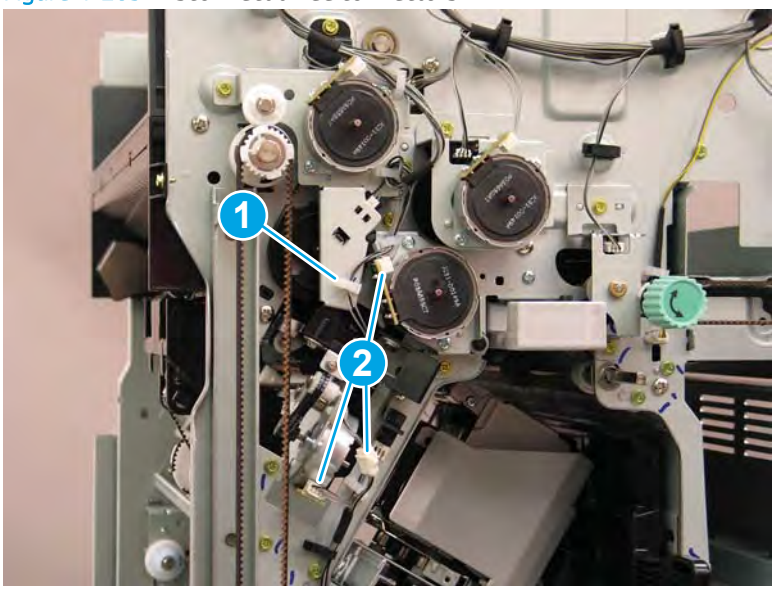
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 4-282 Move the staple unit to the center



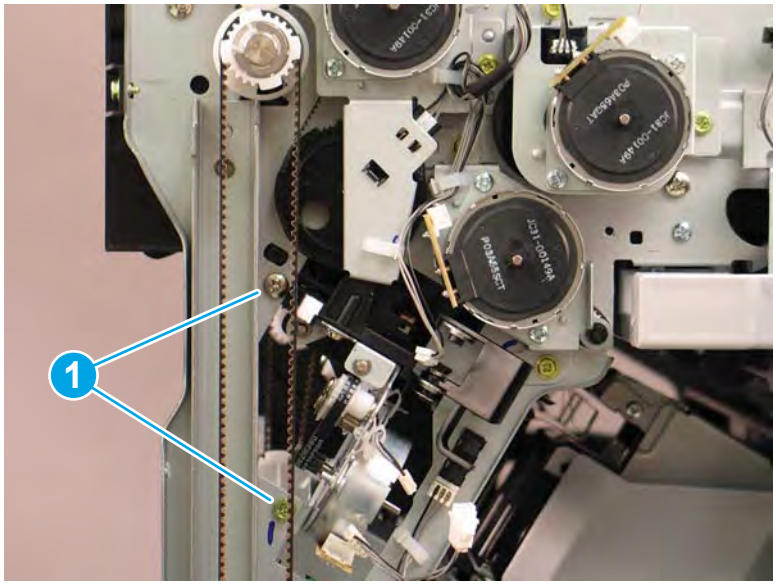
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 4-283 Disconnect three connectors



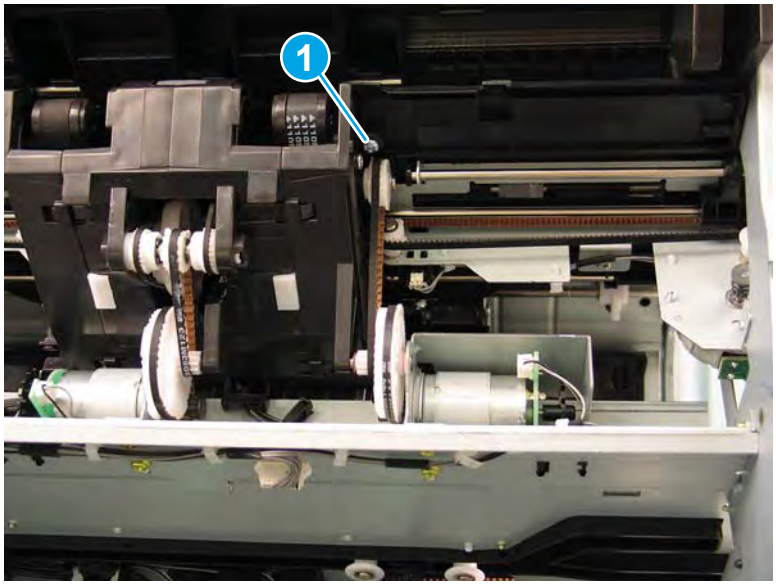
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-284 Remove two screws



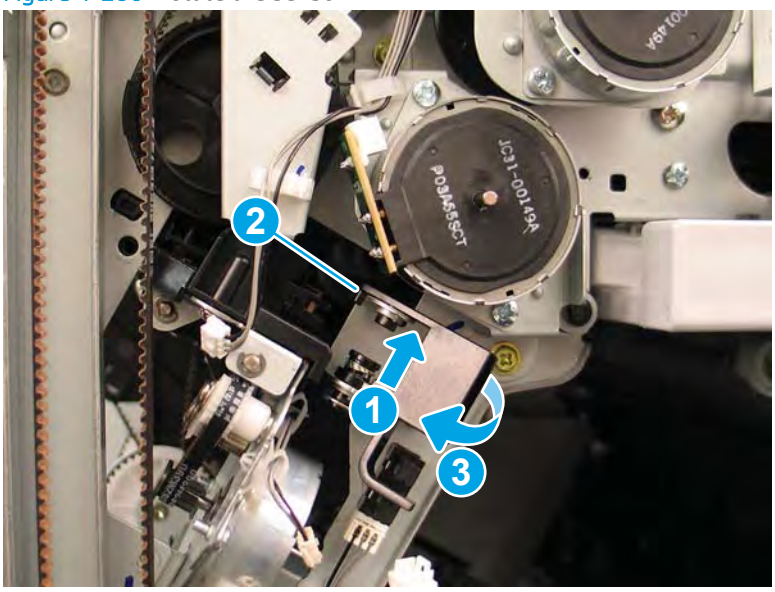
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-285 Remove one screw



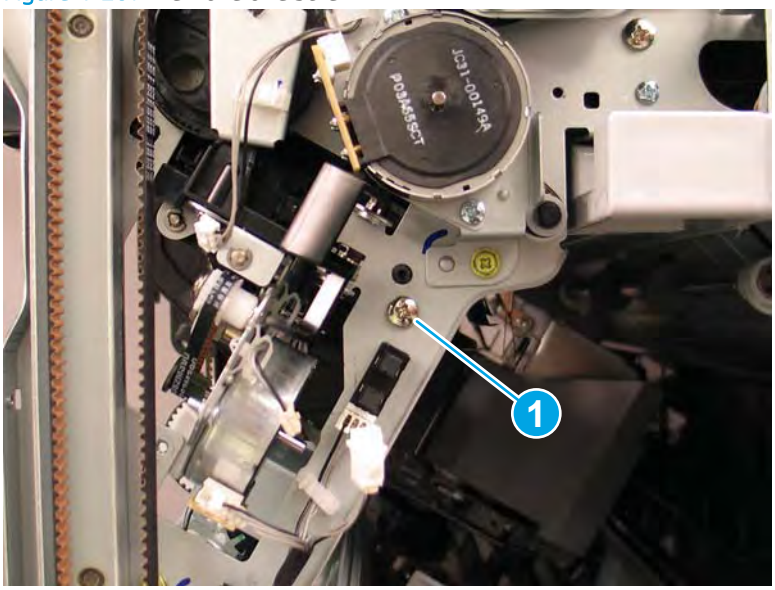
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 4-286 Rotate the sensor



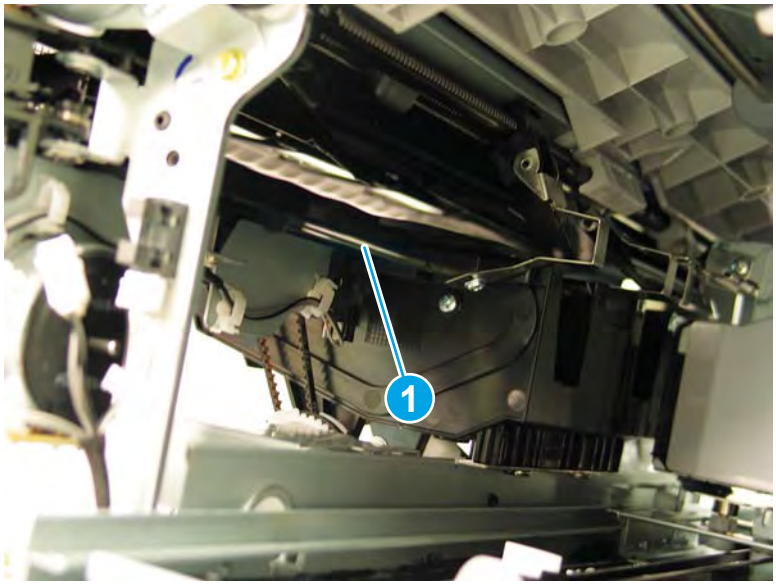
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-287 Remove one screw



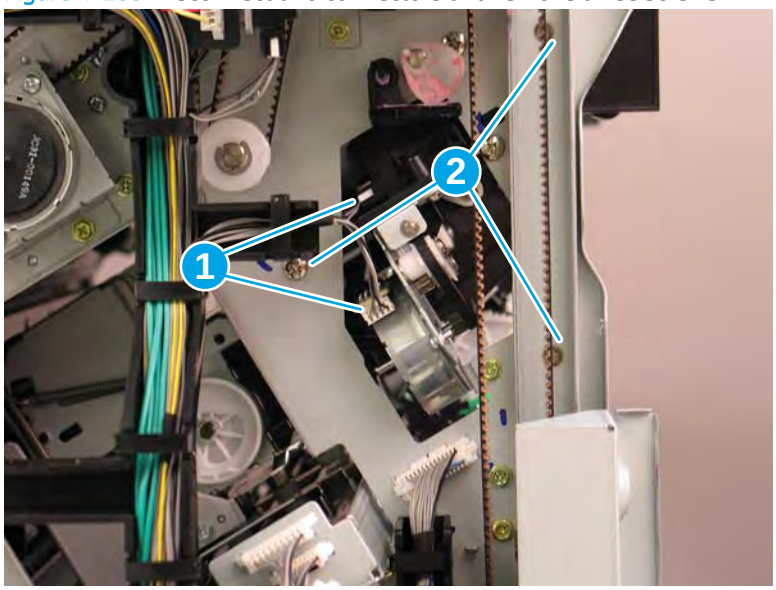
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 4-288 Remove the front tamper shaft



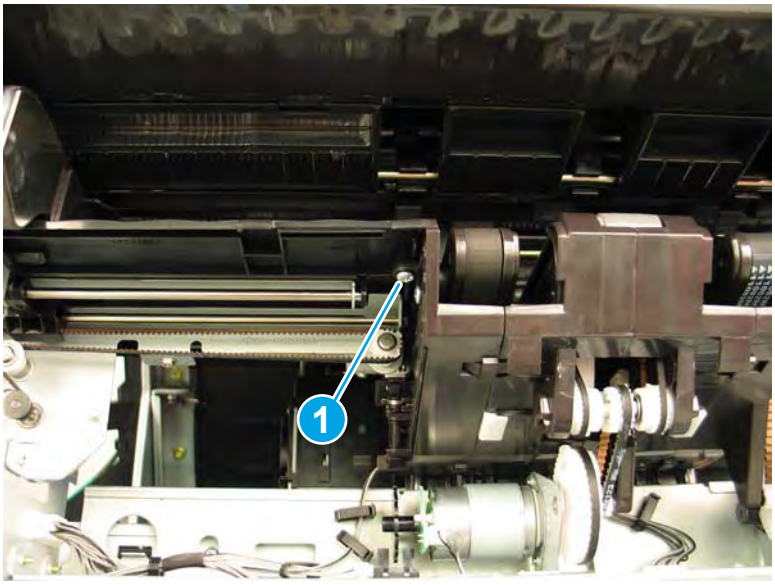
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-289 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



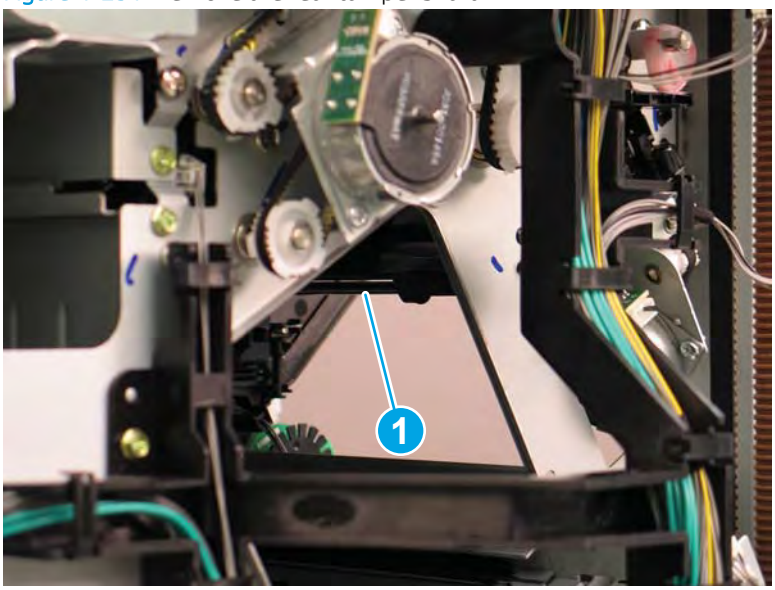
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-290 Remove one screw



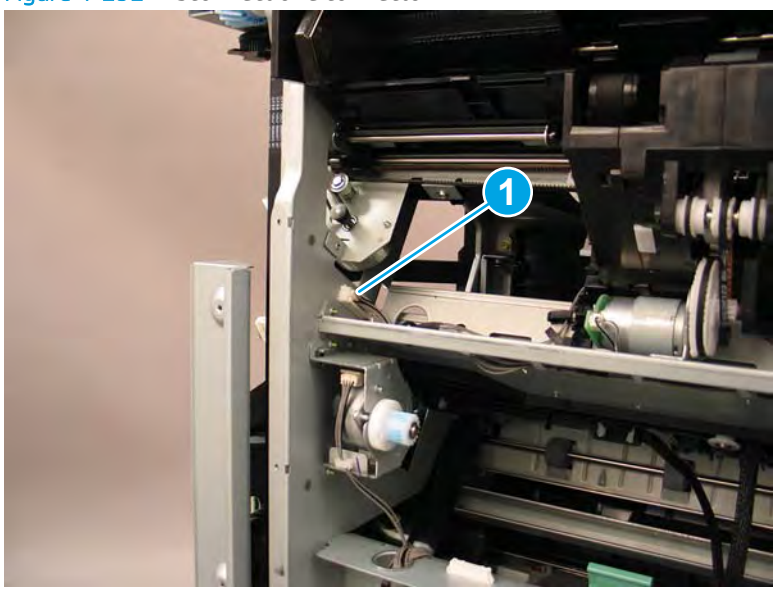
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 4-291 Remove the rear tamper shaft



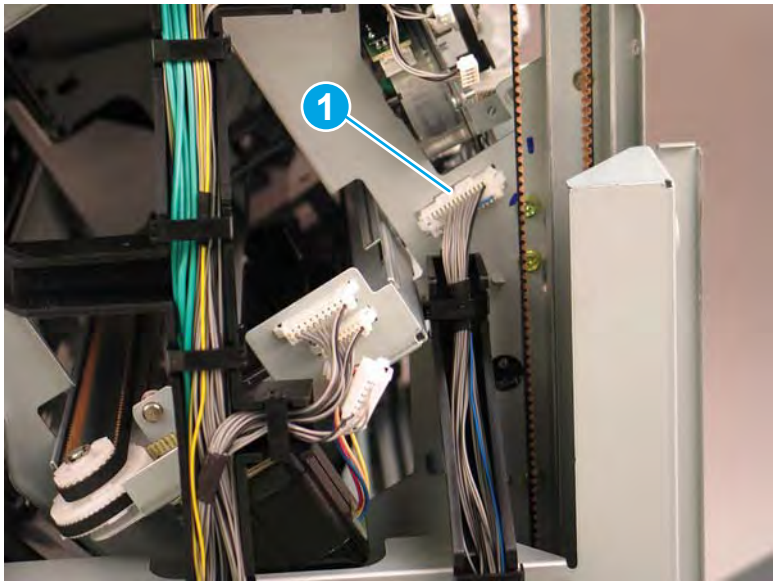
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-292 Disconnect one connector



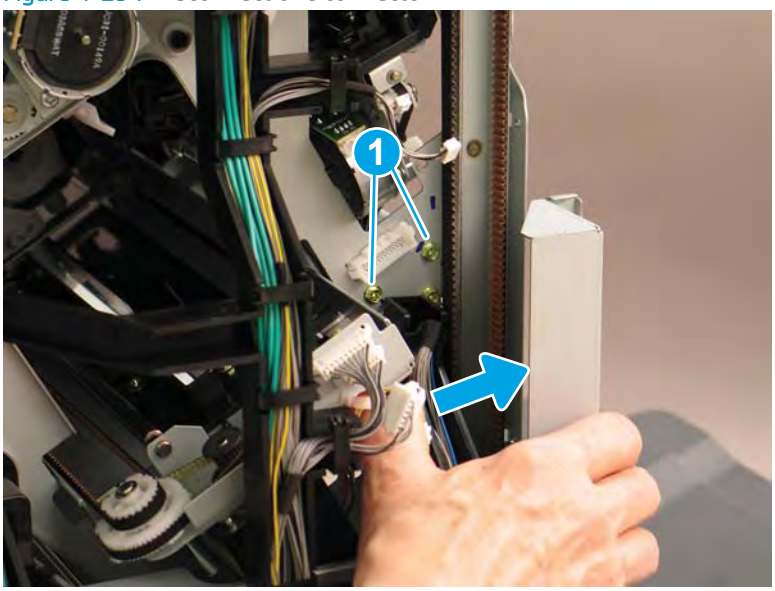
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-293 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-294 Disconnect one connector



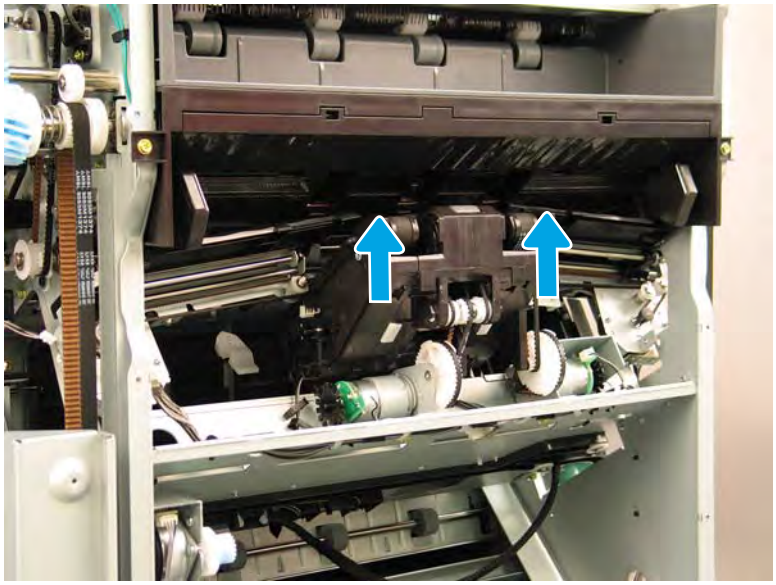
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-295 Remove two screws



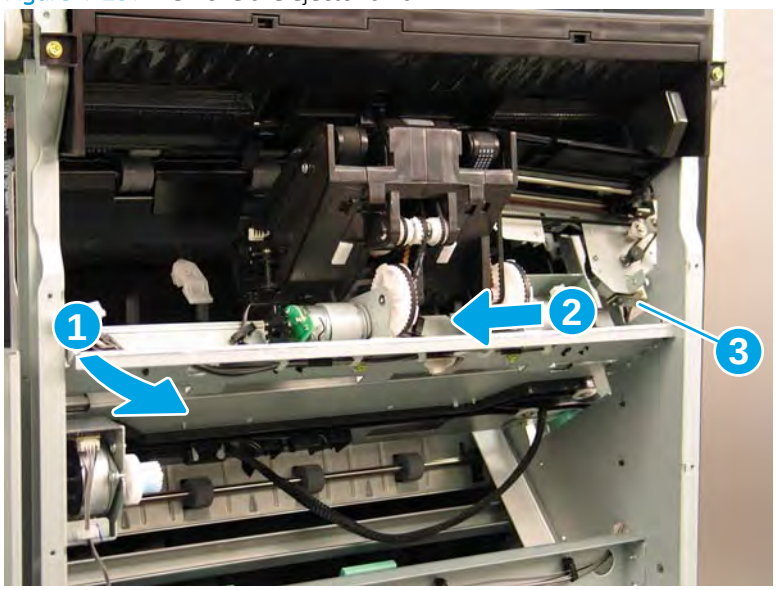
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 4-296 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 4-297 Remove the ejector unit



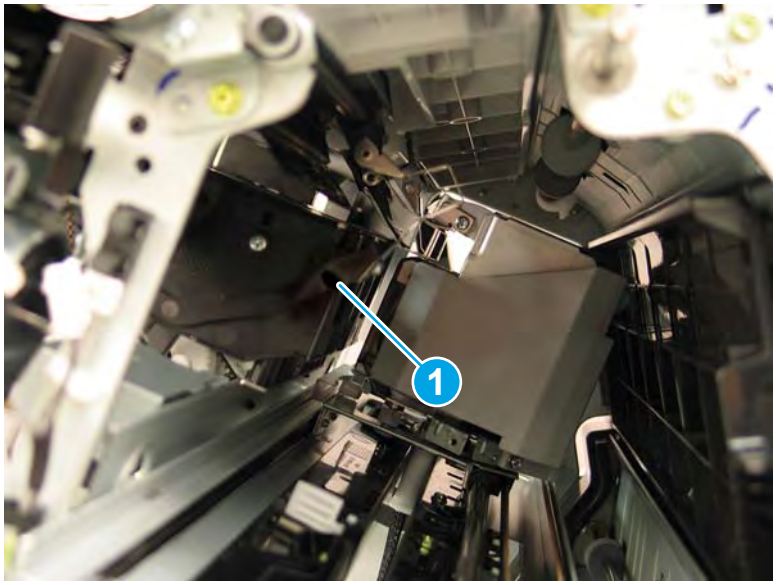
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

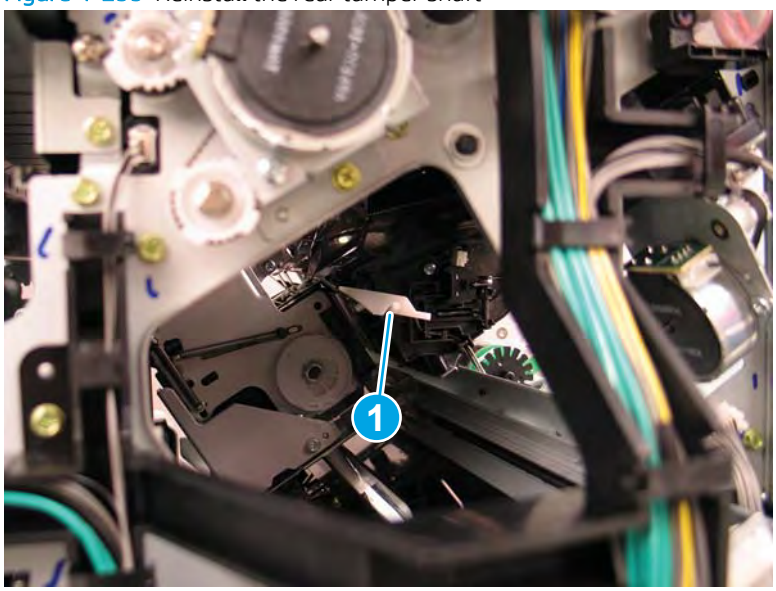
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-298 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-299 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft



Step 11: Remove the front tamper unit

▲ Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-300 Remove the front tamper



Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear tamper unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the rear tamper unit
- Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear tamper unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC82-00898A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher Sub - Tamper Rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

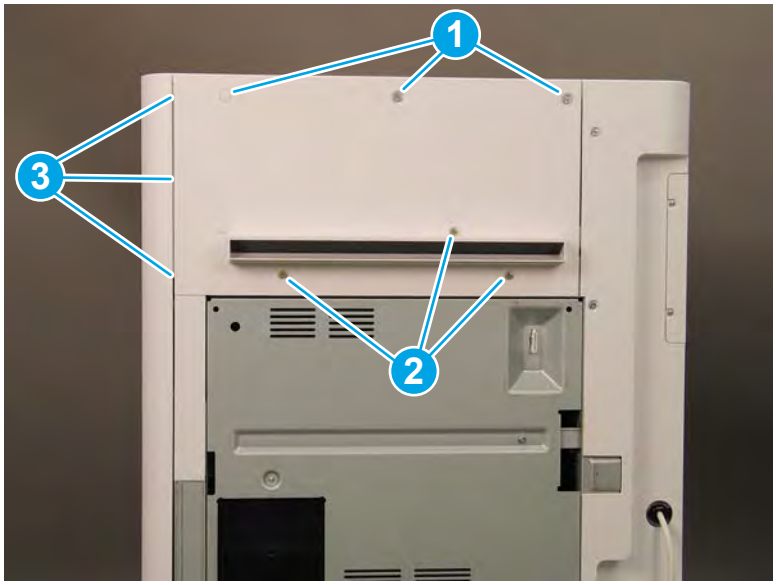
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

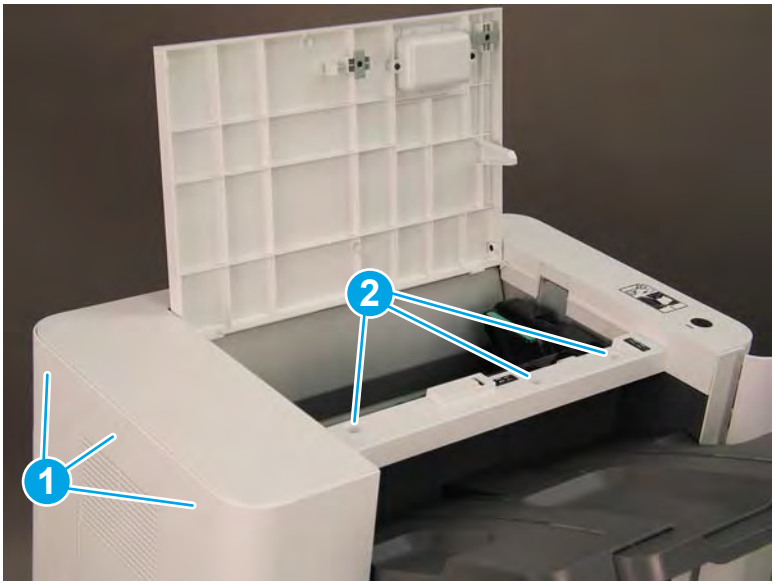
Figure 4-301 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

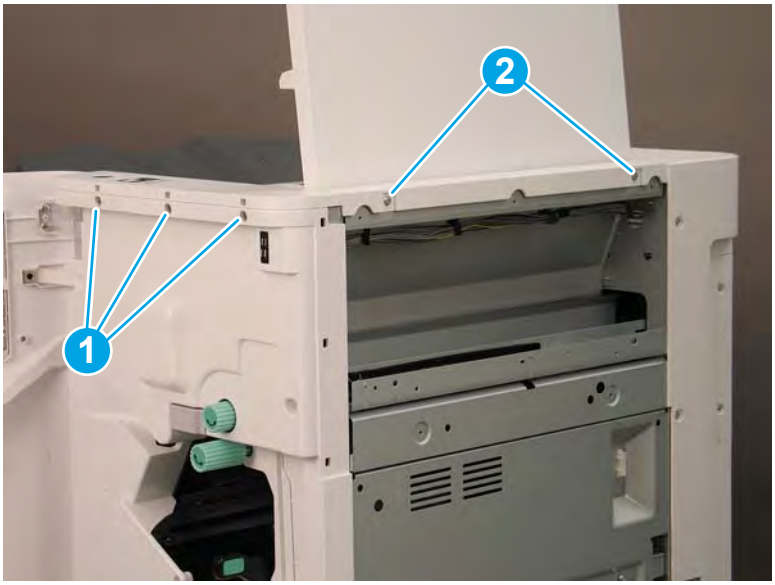
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-302 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

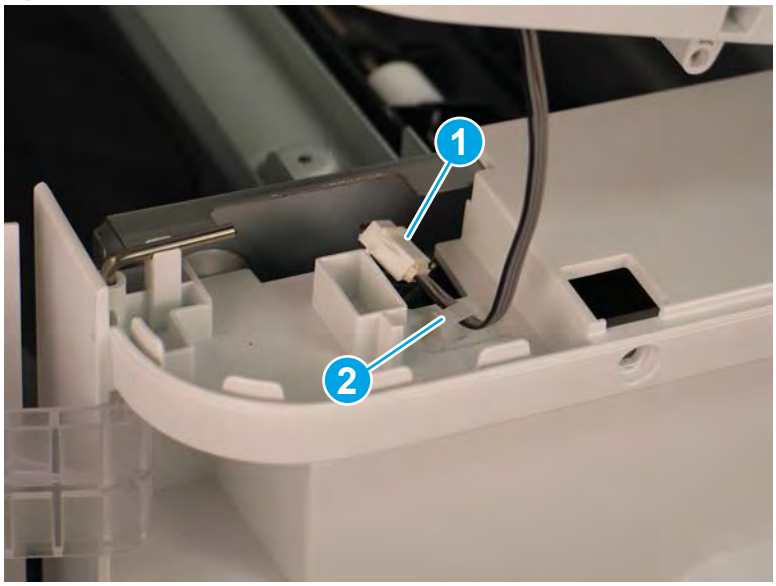
Figure 4-303 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-304 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

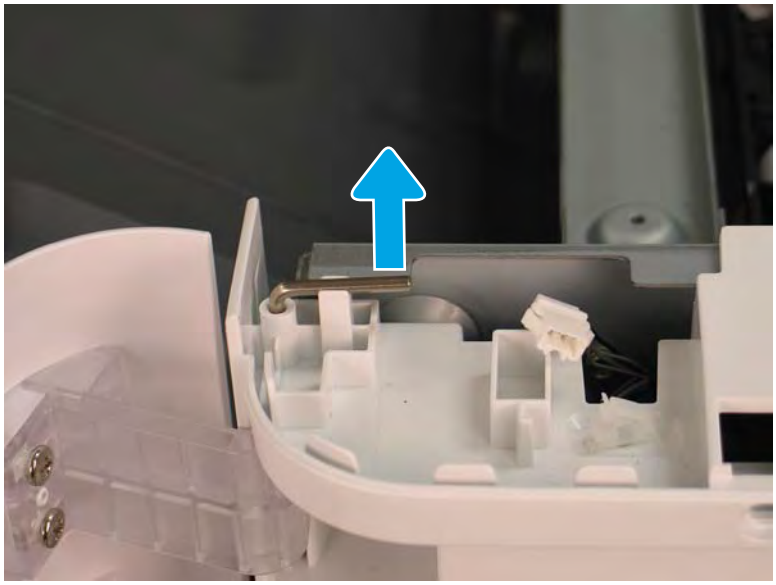


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

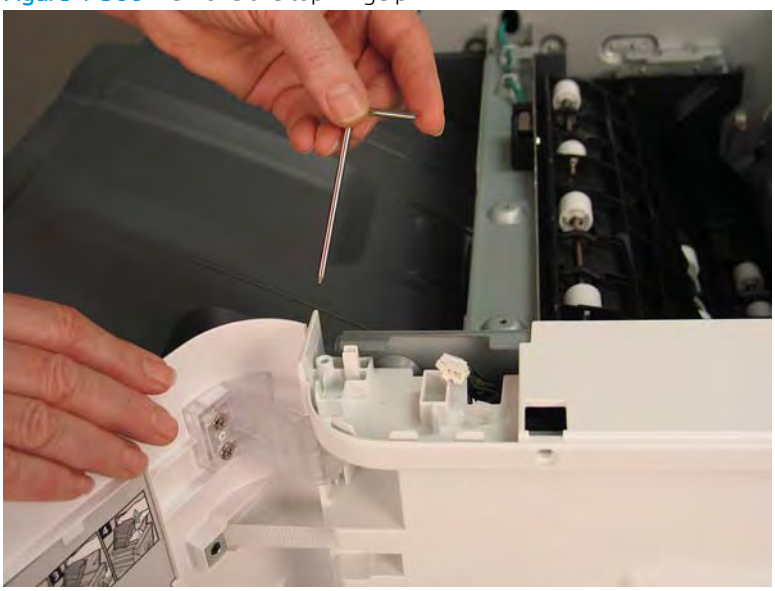
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-305 Lift the top hinge pin



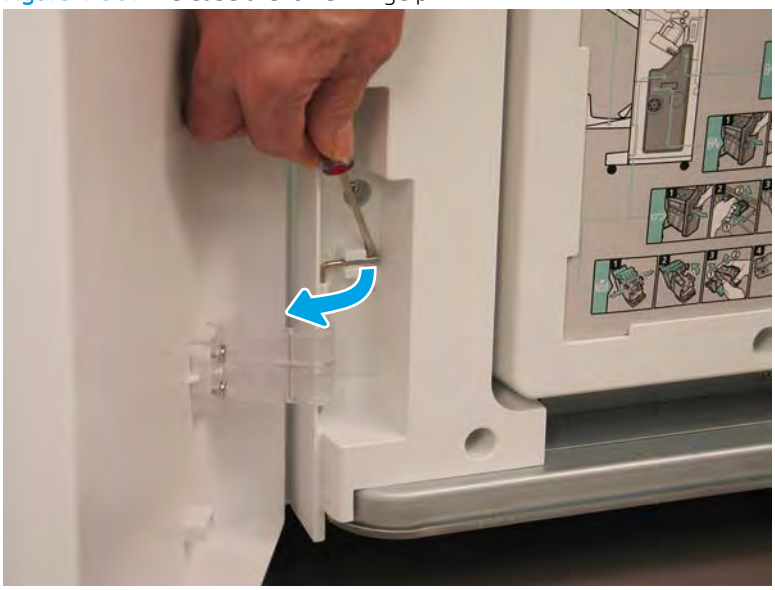
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-306 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-307 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

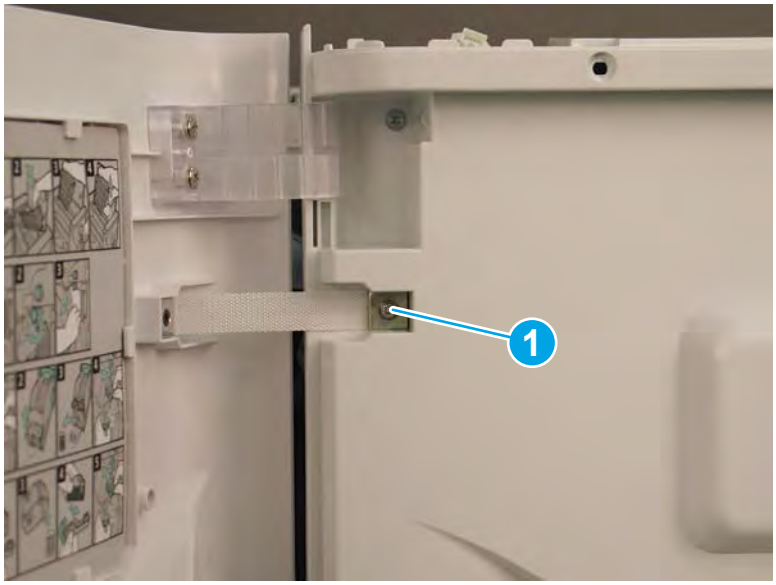
Figure 4-308 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

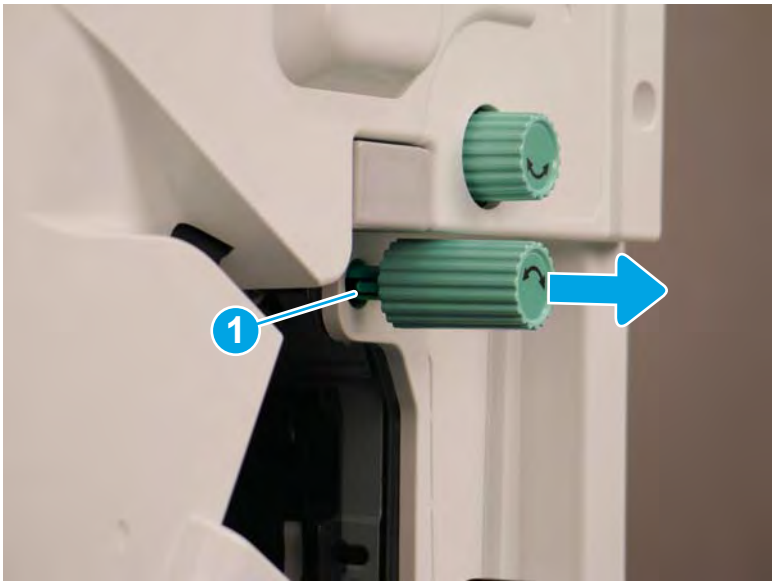
Figure 4-309 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-310 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

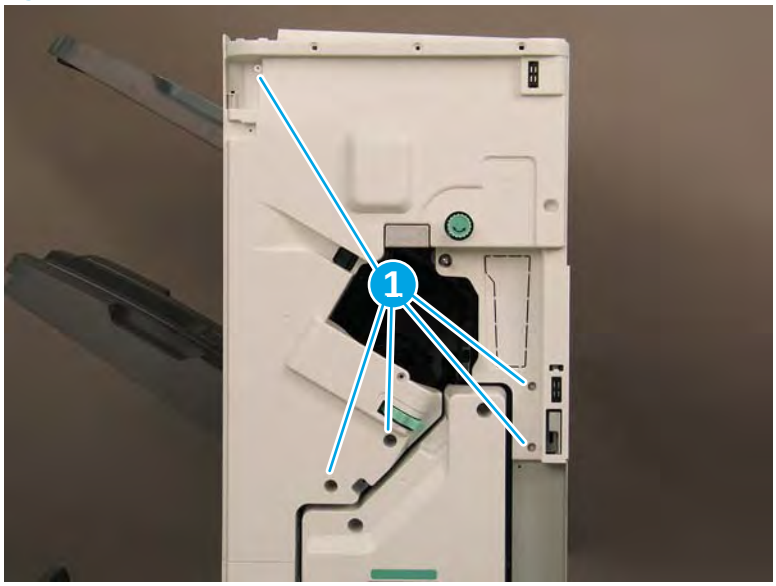
Figure 4-311 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

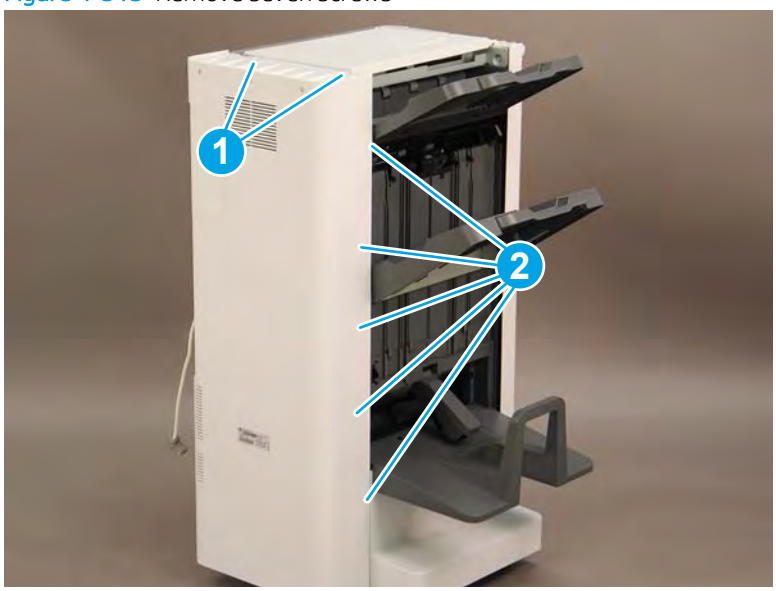
Figure 4-312 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-313 Remove seven screws

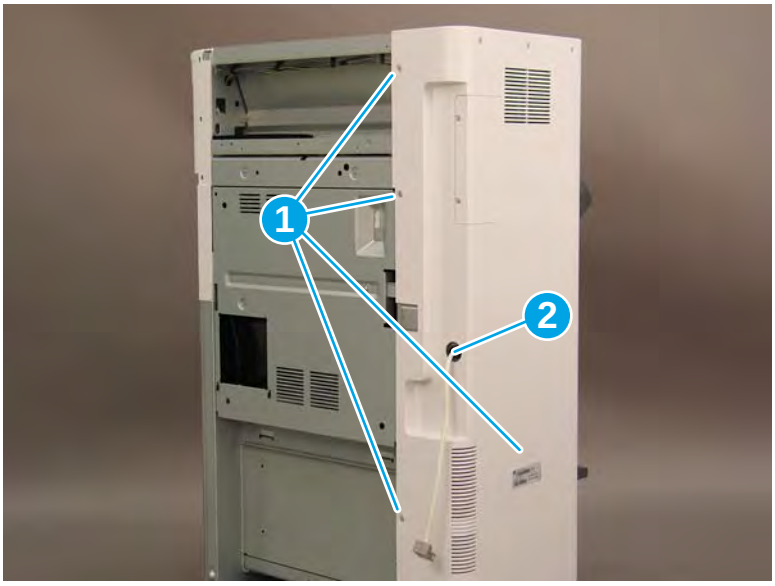


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

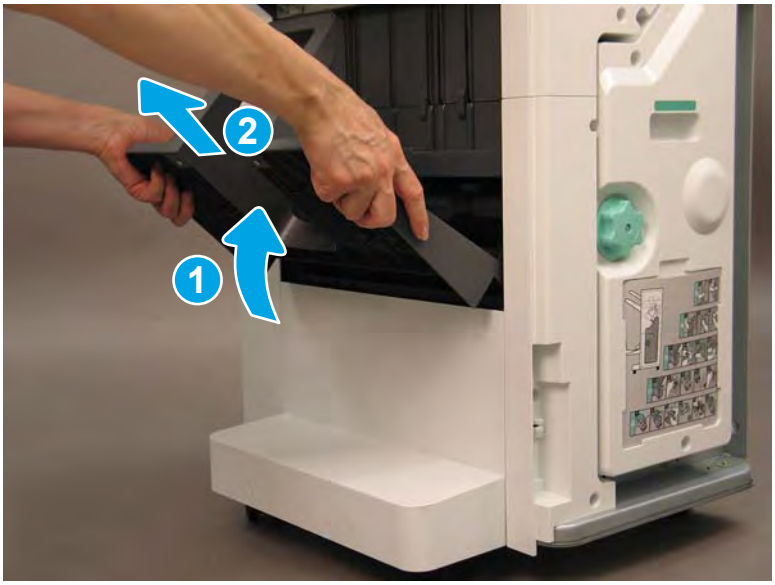
Figure 4-314 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-315 Remove the booklet tray



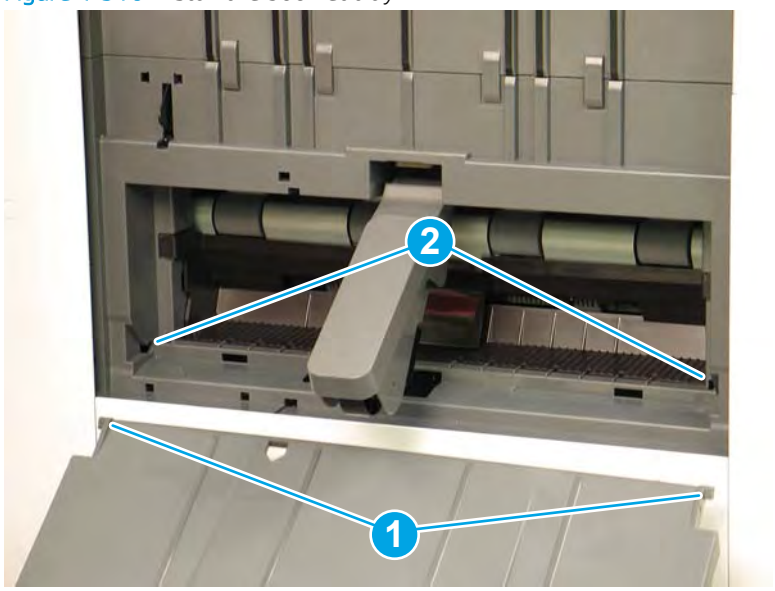
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

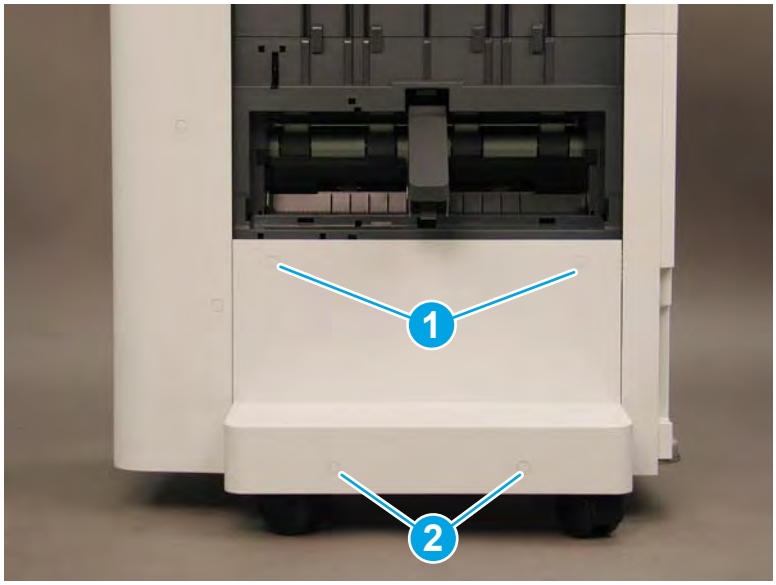
Figure 4-316 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-317 Remove four screws

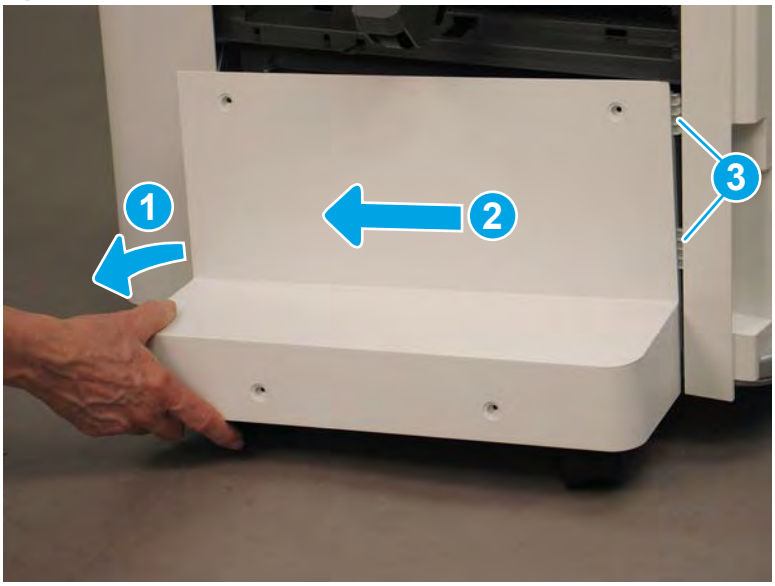


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-318 Remove the caster cover

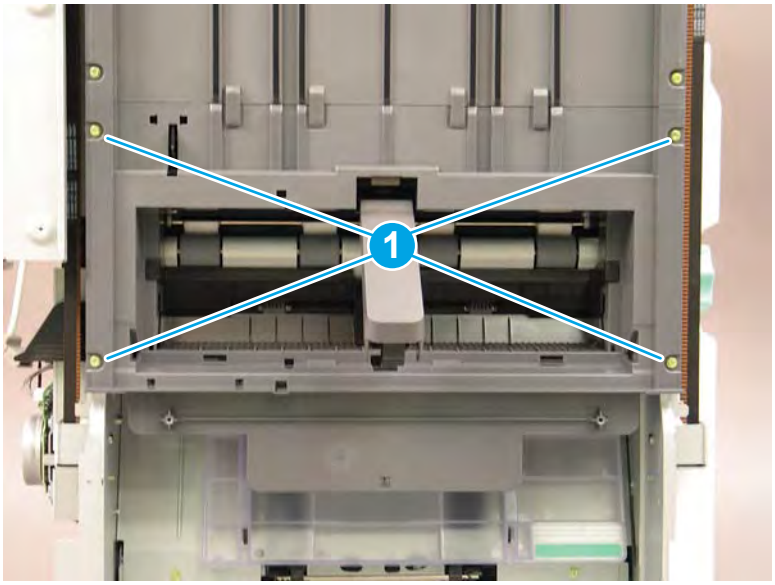


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 4-319 Remove four screws

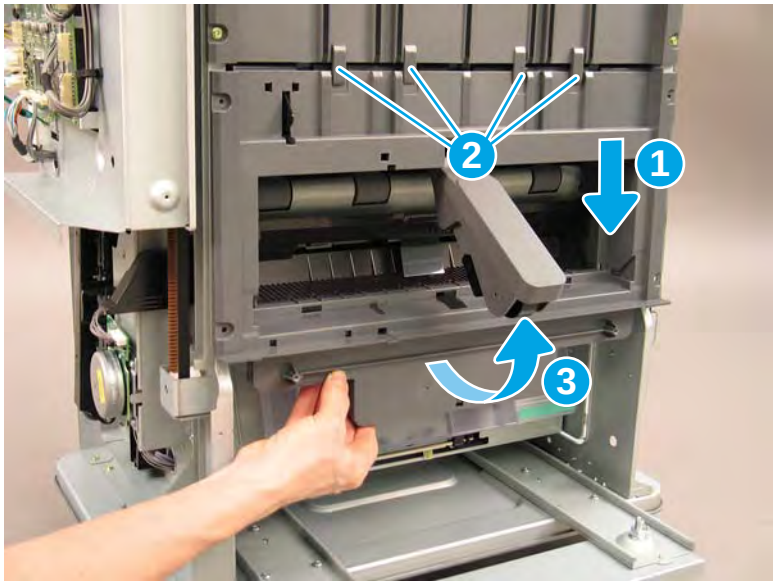


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

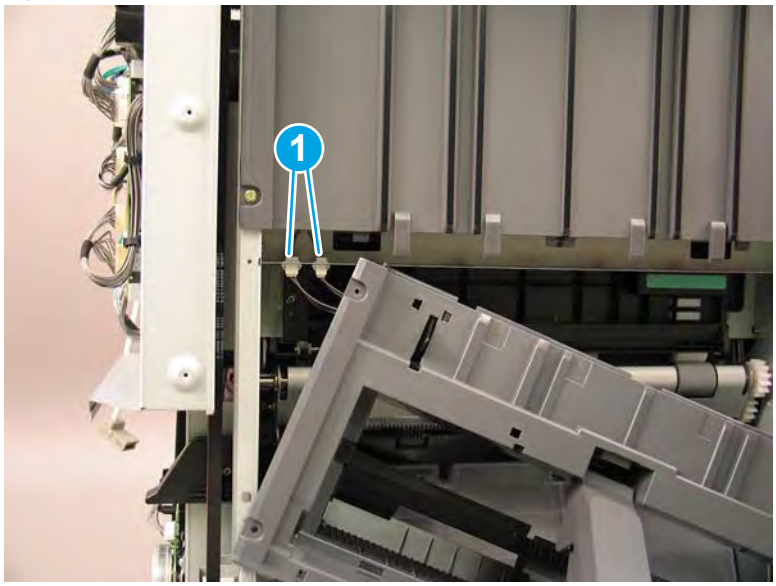
Figure 4-320 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

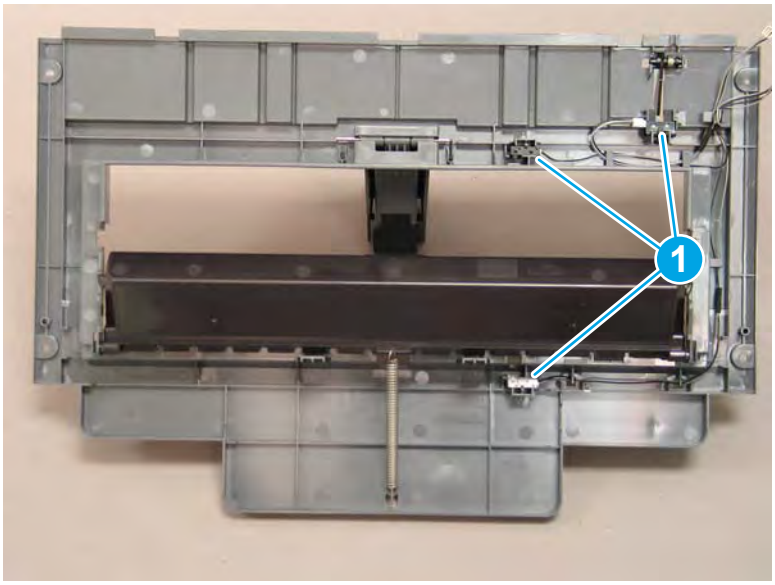
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-321 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

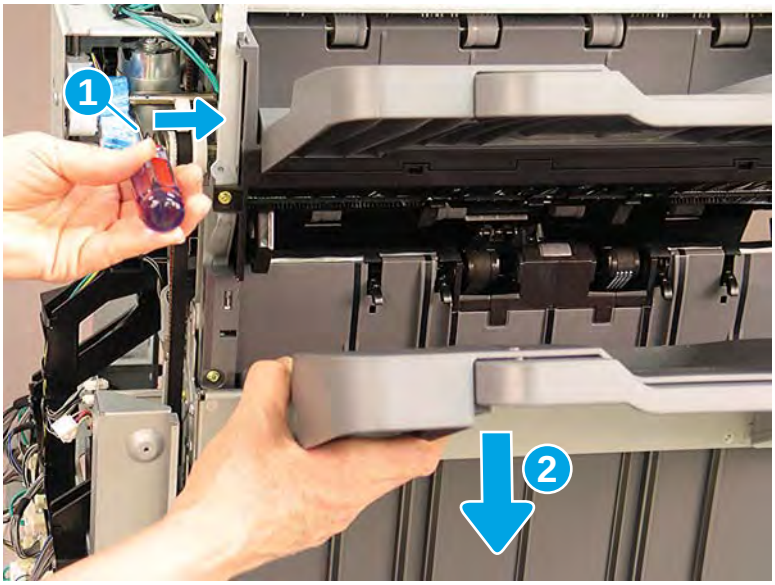
Figure 4-322 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

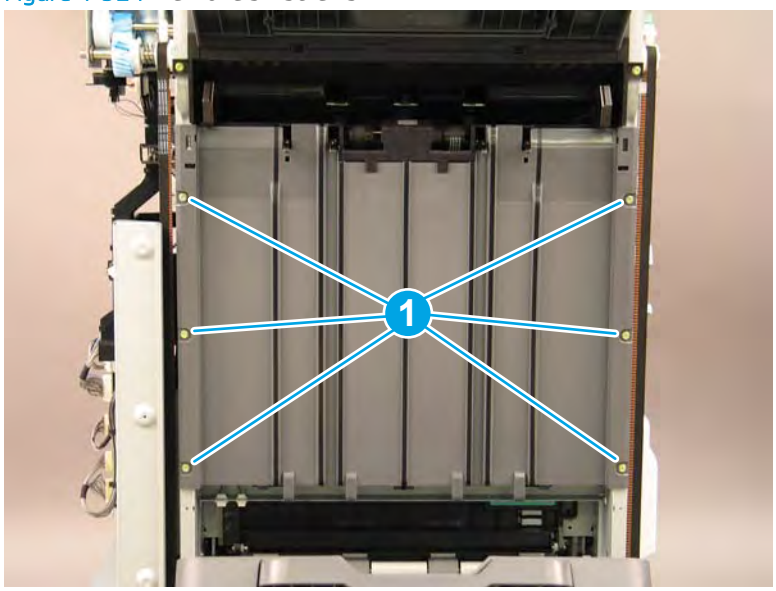
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 4-323 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-324 Remove six screws

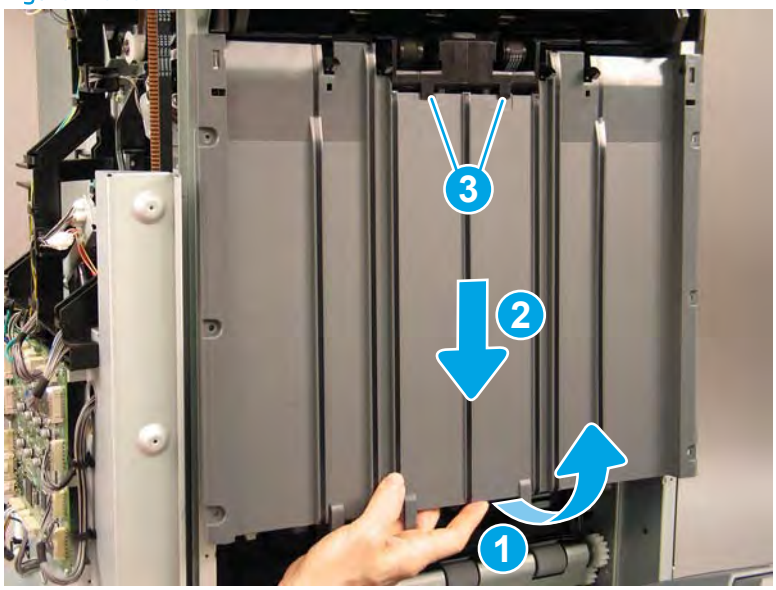


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

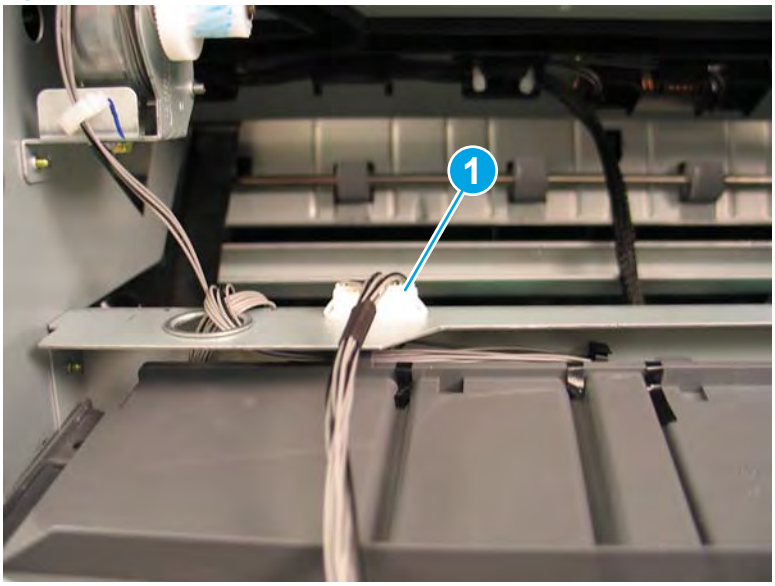
Figure 4-325 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

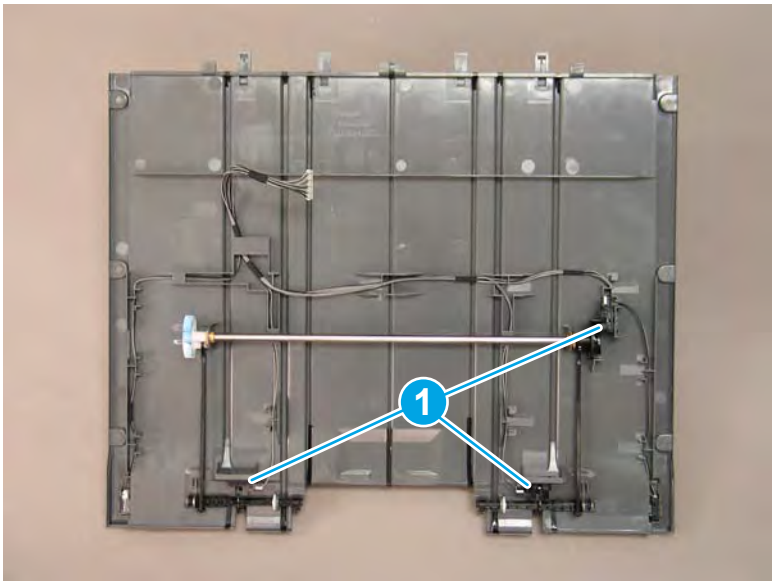
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-326 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

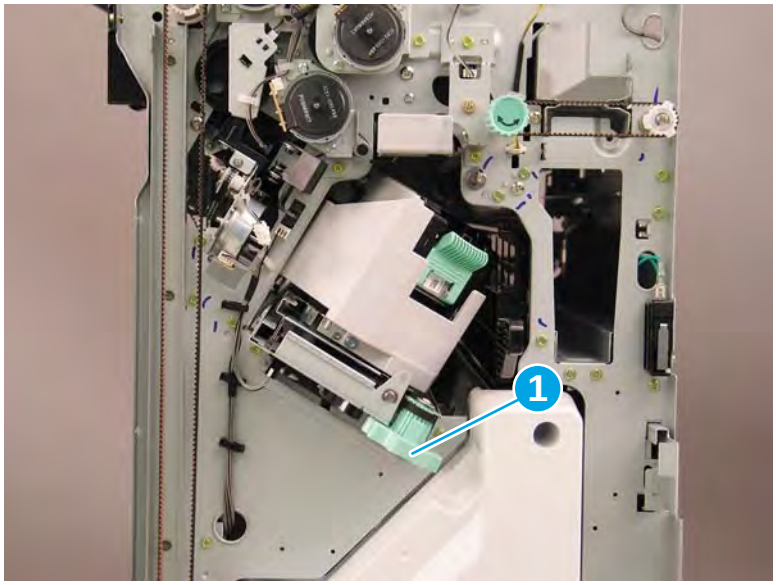
Figure 4-327 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

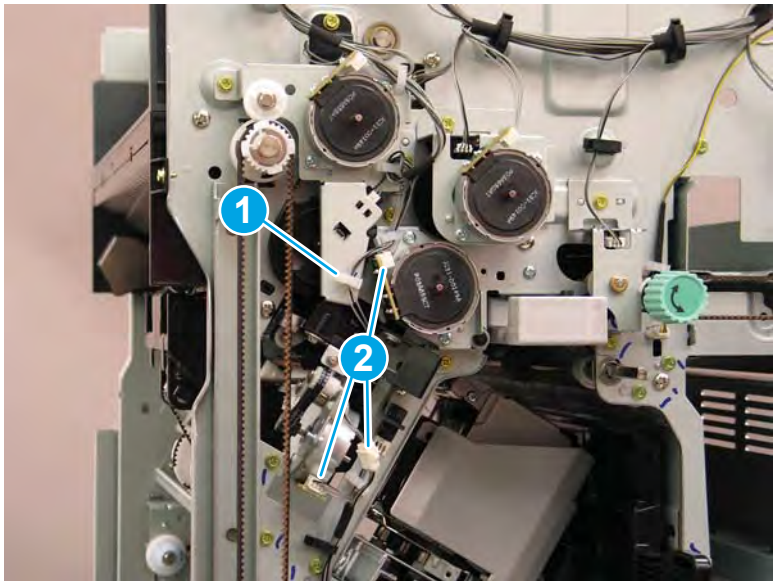
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 4-328 Move the staple unit to the center



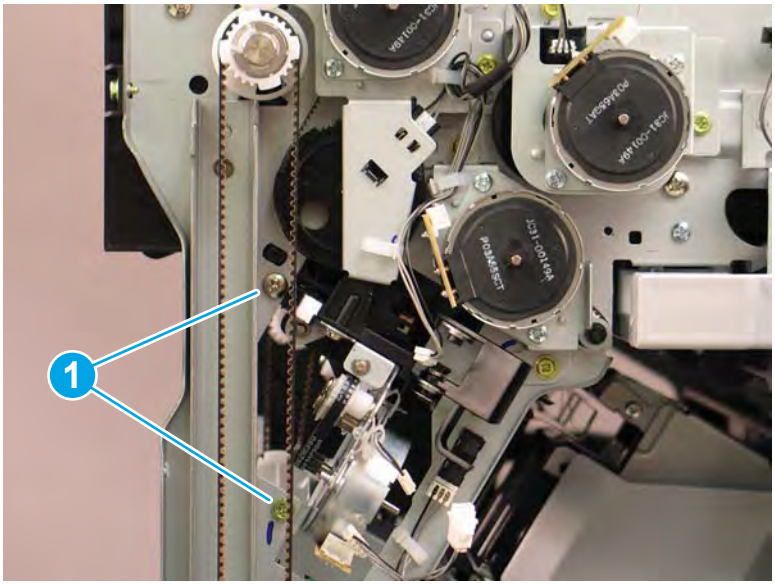
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 4-329 Disconnect three connectors



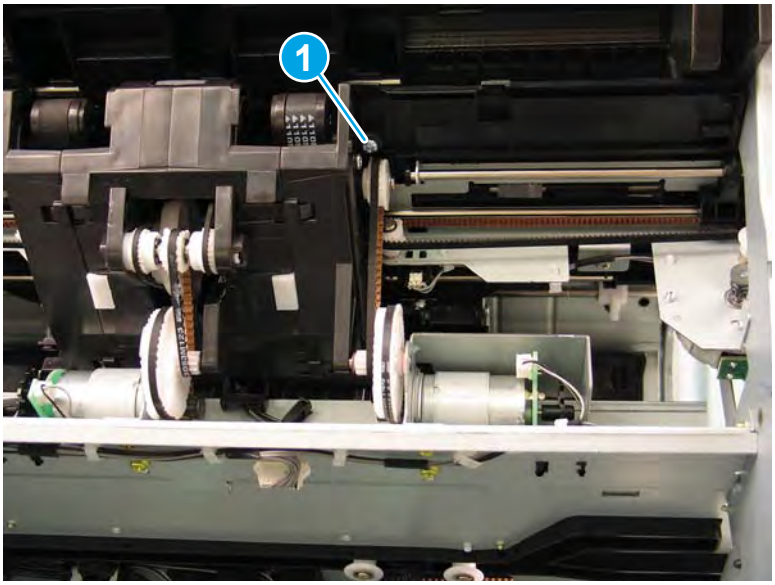
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-330 Remove two screws



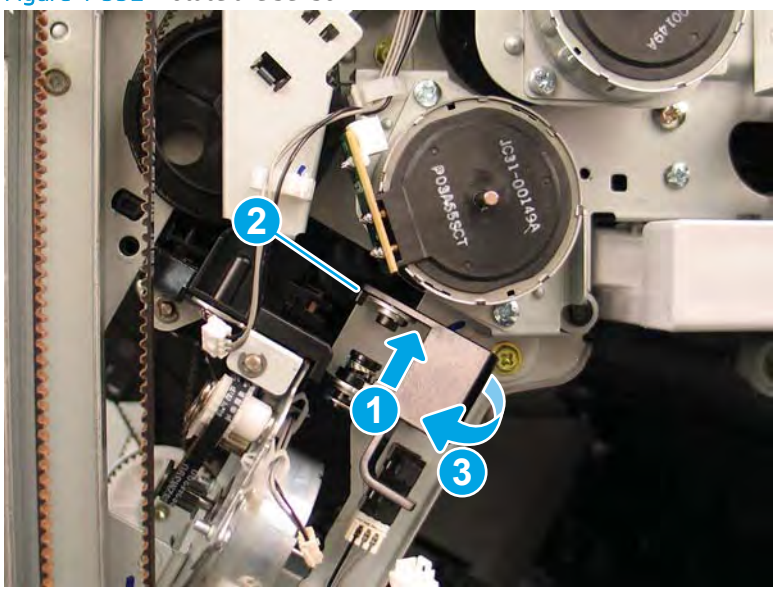
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-331 Remove one screw



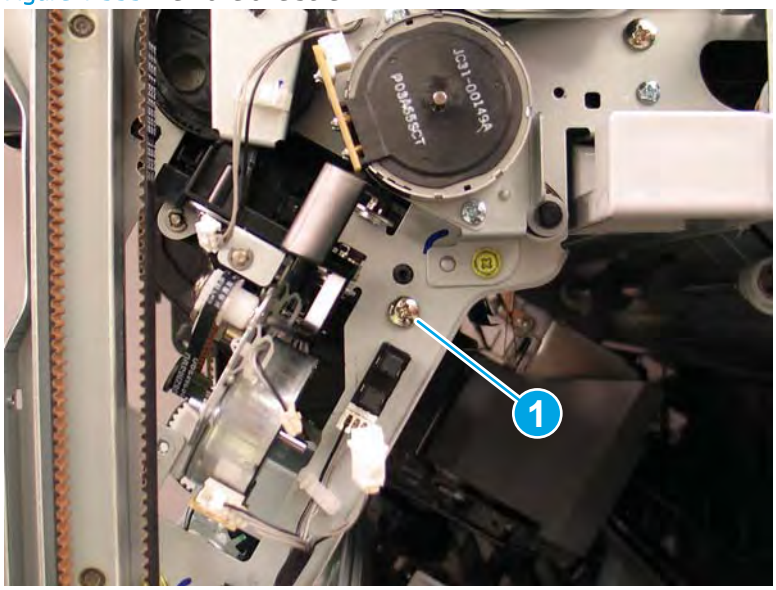
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 4-332 Rotate the sensor



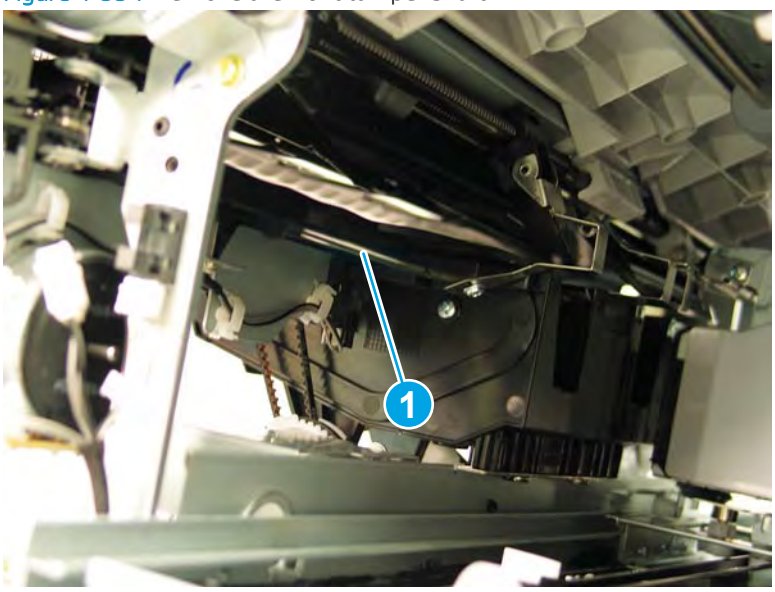
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-333 Remove one screw



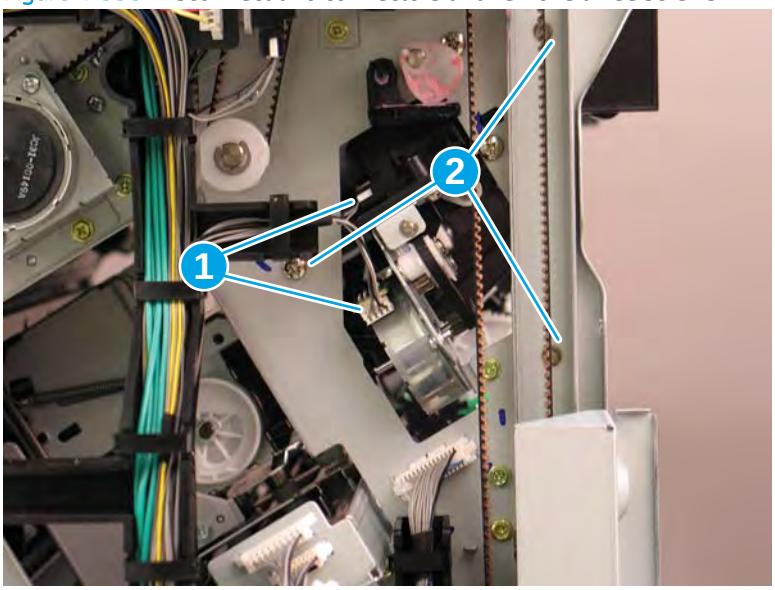
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 4-334 Remove the front tamper shaft



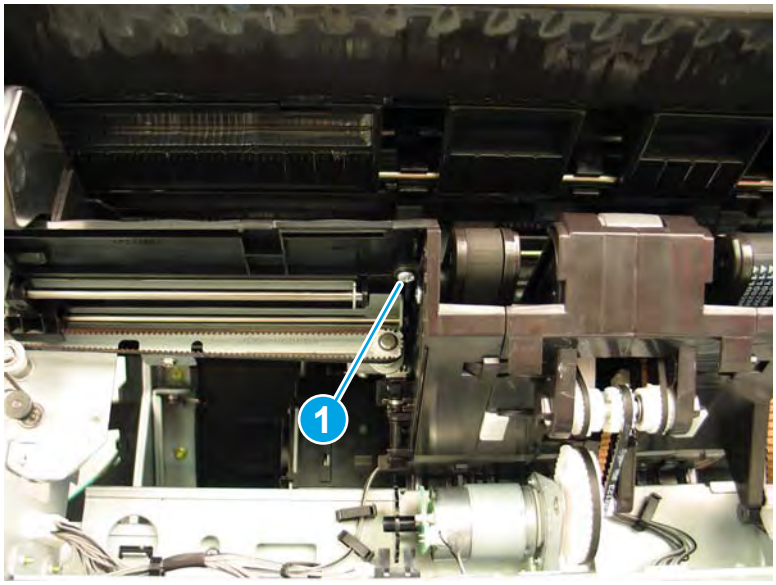
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-335 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



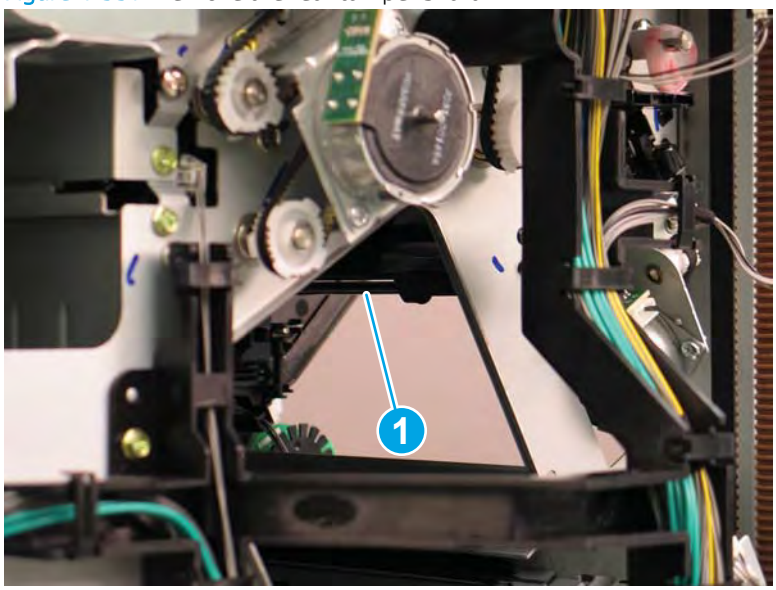
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-336 Remove one screw



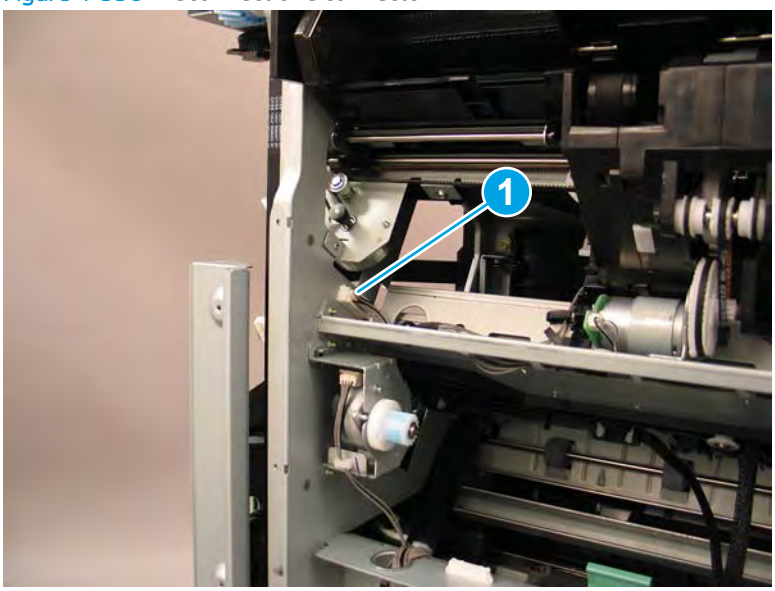
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 4-337 Remove the rear tamper shaft



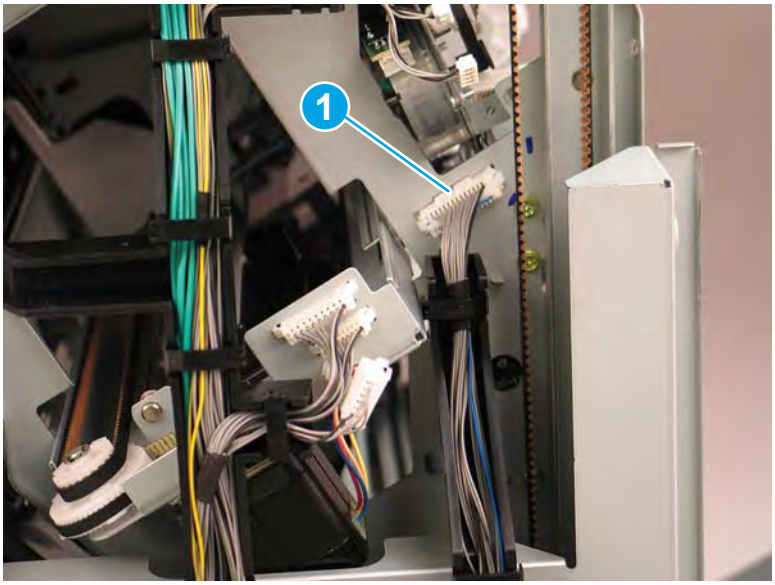
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-338 Disconnect one connector



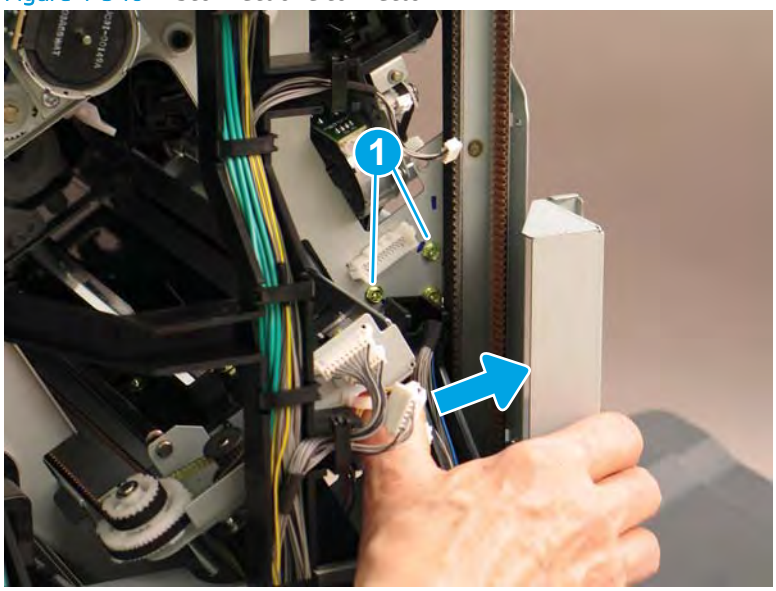
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-339 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-340 Disconnect one connector



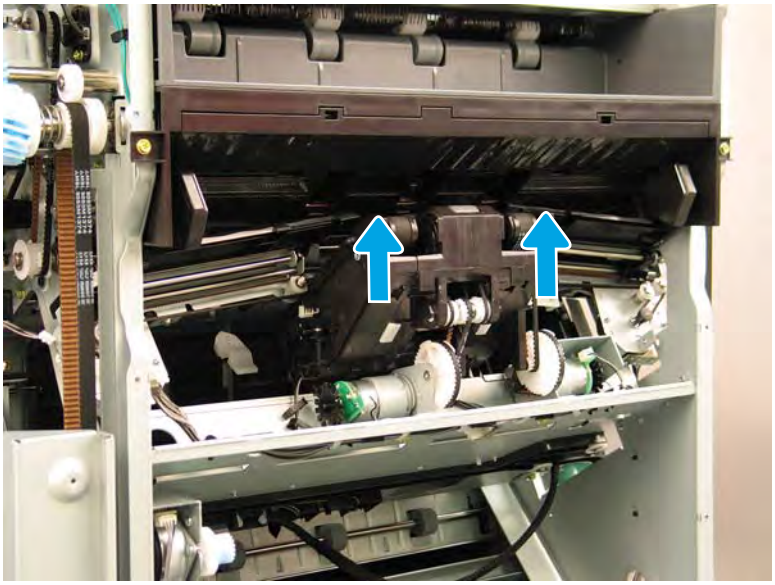
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-341 Remove two screws



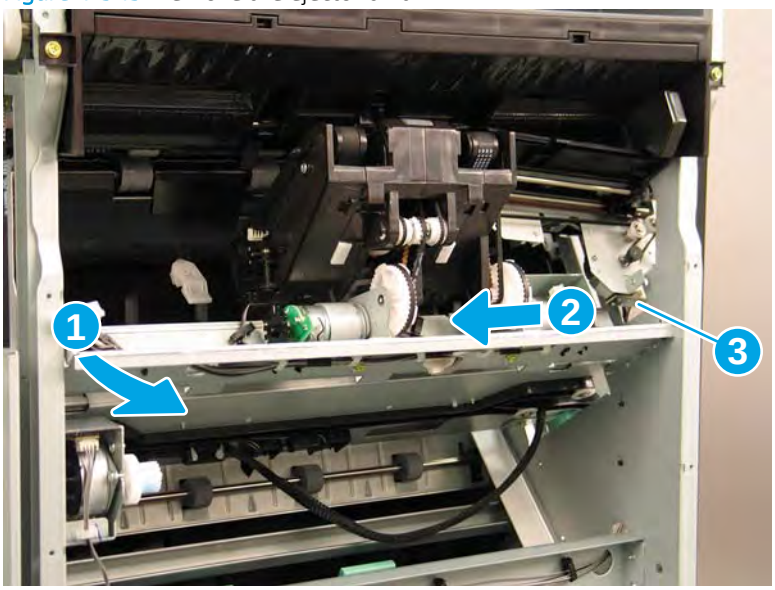
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 4-342 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 4-343 Remove the ejector unit



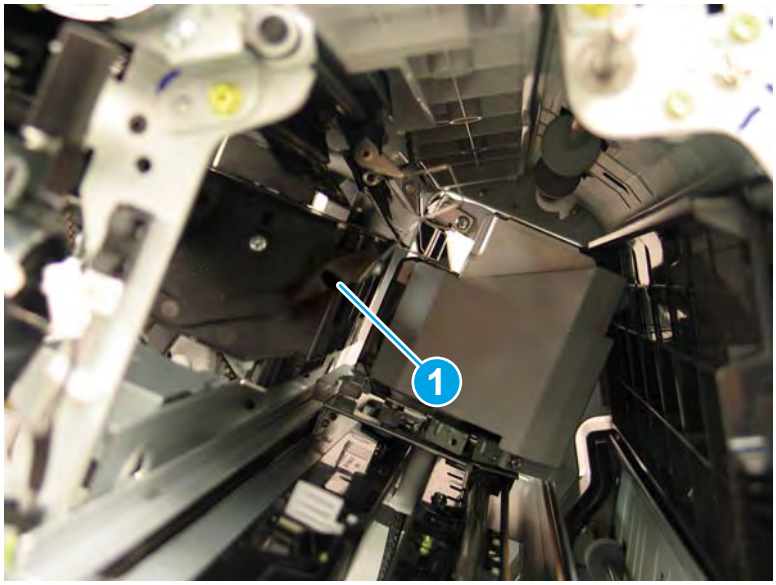
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

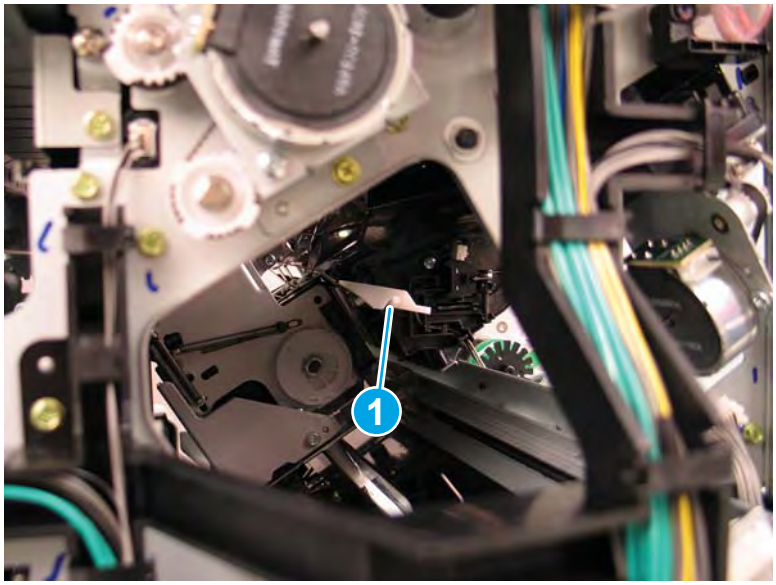
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-344 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-345 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft

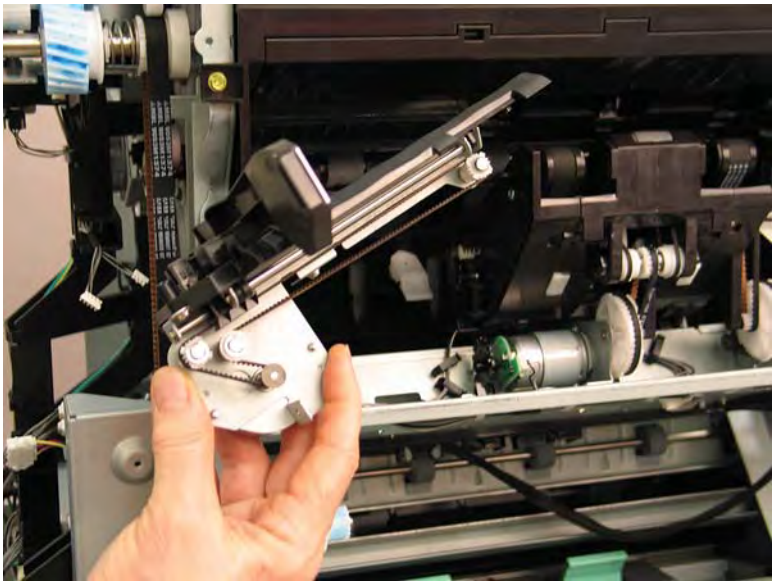


Step 11: Remove the rear tamper unit

▲ Lift the rear tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-346 Remove the rear tamper



Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed entrance motor (M1)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the feed entrance motor (M1)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed entrance motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC31-00163B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

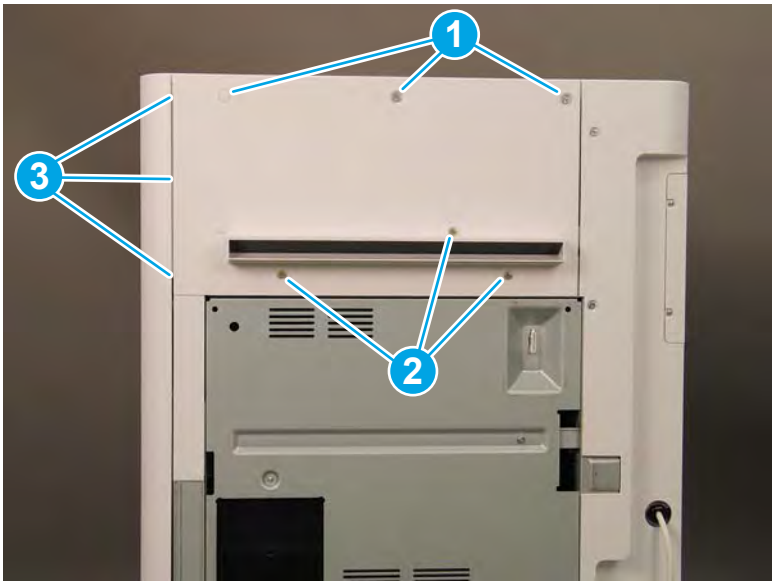
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

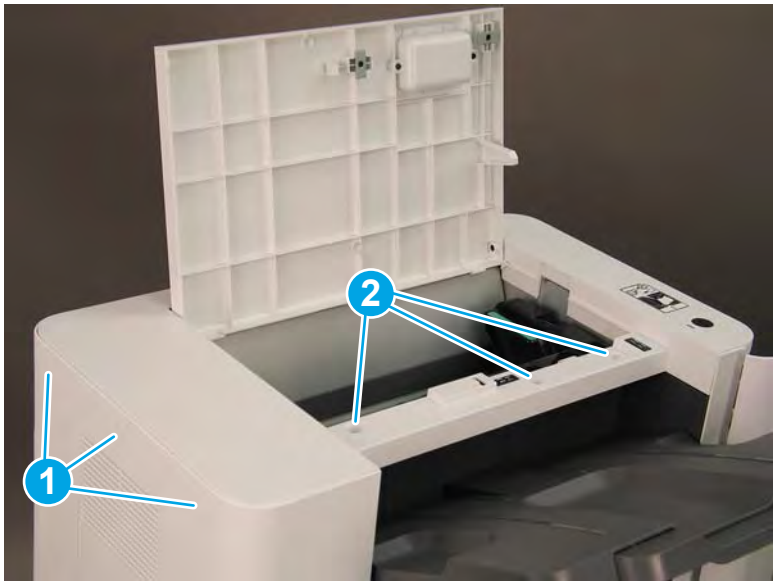
Figure 4-347 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

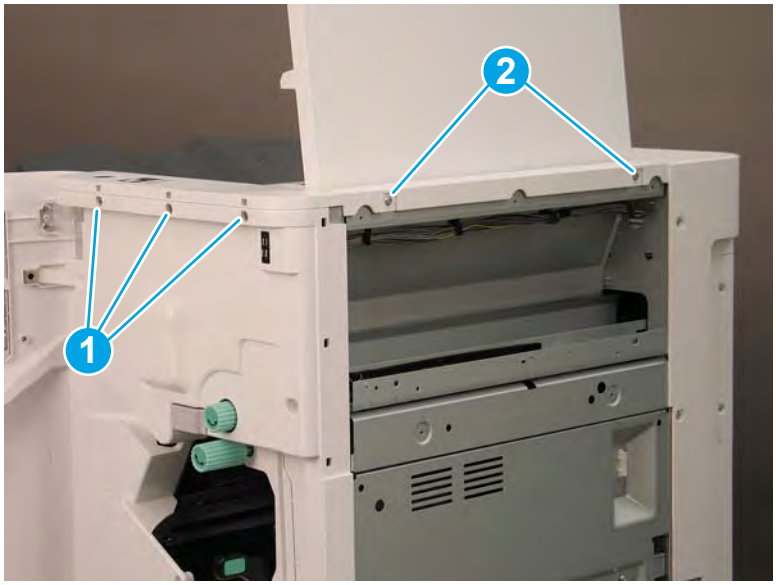
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-348 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

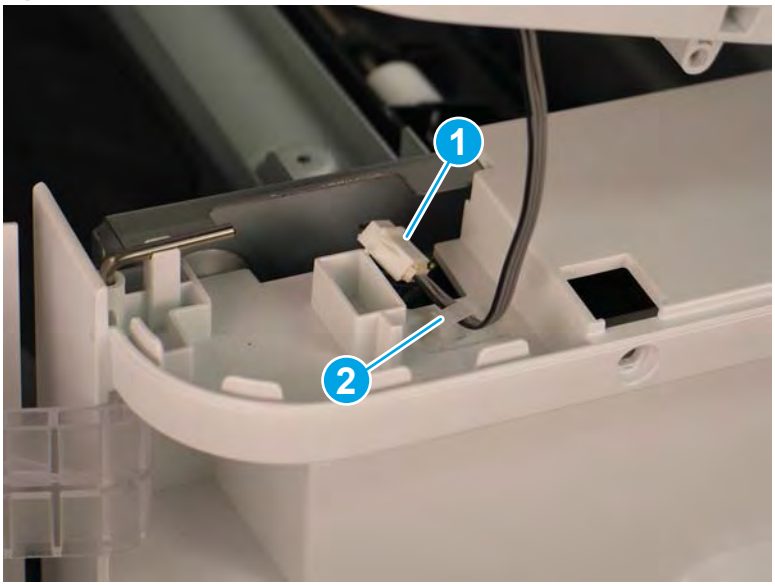
Figure 4-349 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-350 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

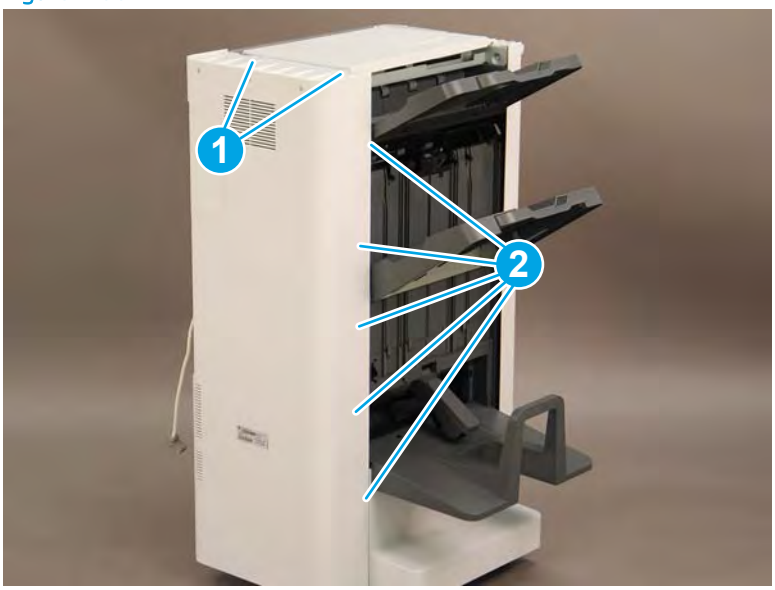


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-351 Remove seven screws

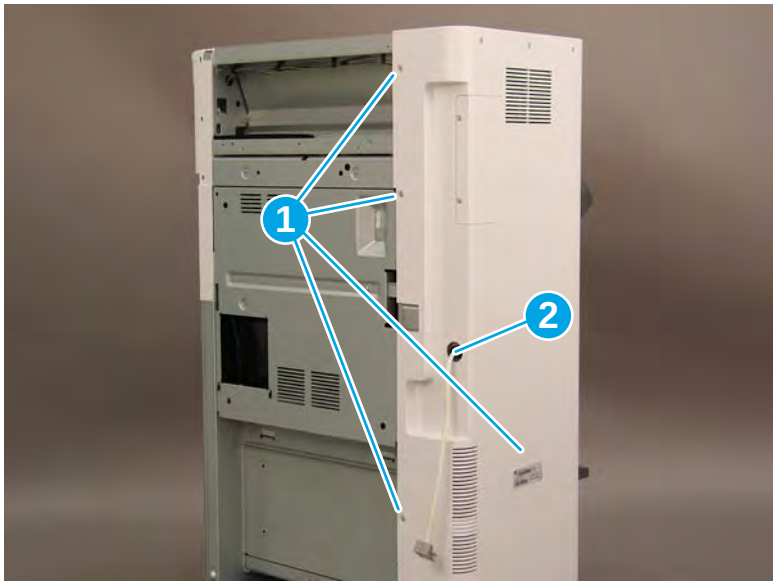


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-352 Remove four screws and the rear cover



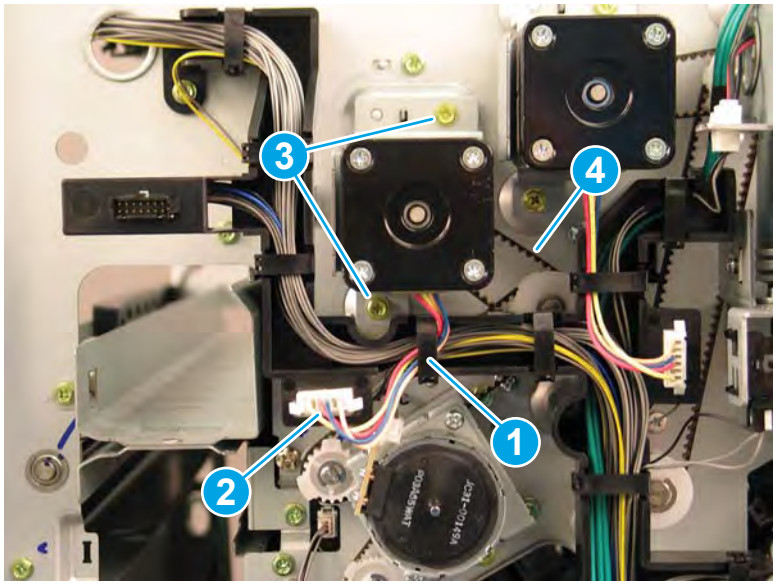
Step 4: Remove the feed entrance motor (M1)

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed entrance motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-353 Remove the feed entrance motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed exit motor (M2)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the feed exit motor (M2)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed exit motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC31-00163B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

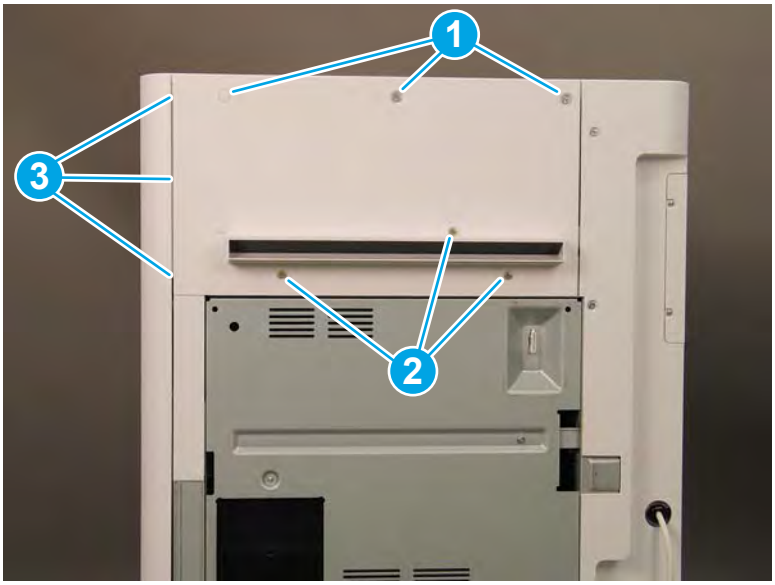
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

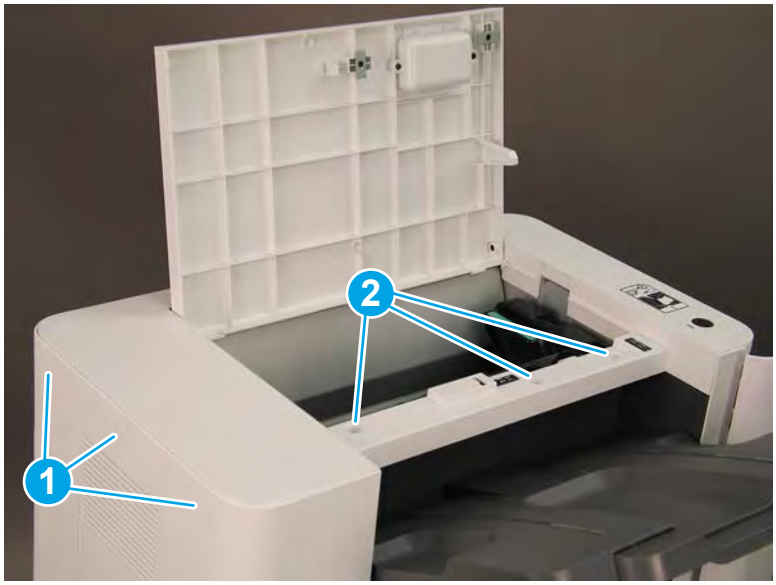
Figure 4-354 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

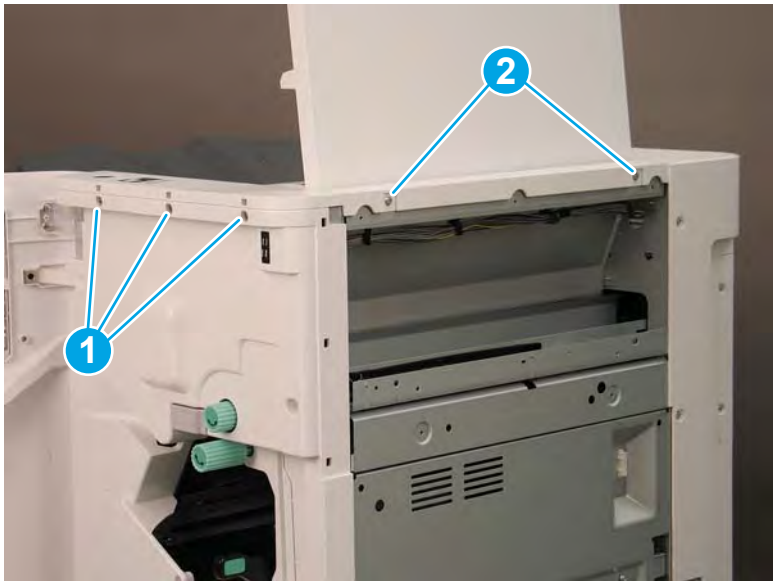
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-355 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

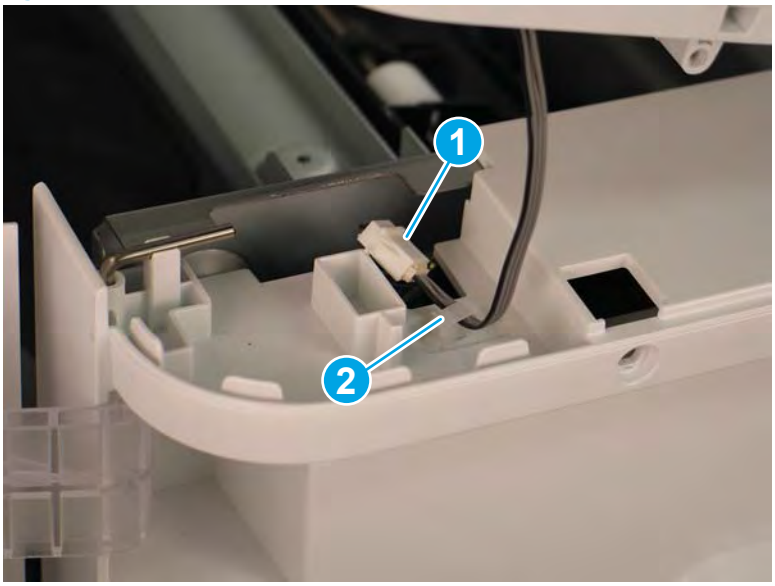
Figure 4-356 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-357 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

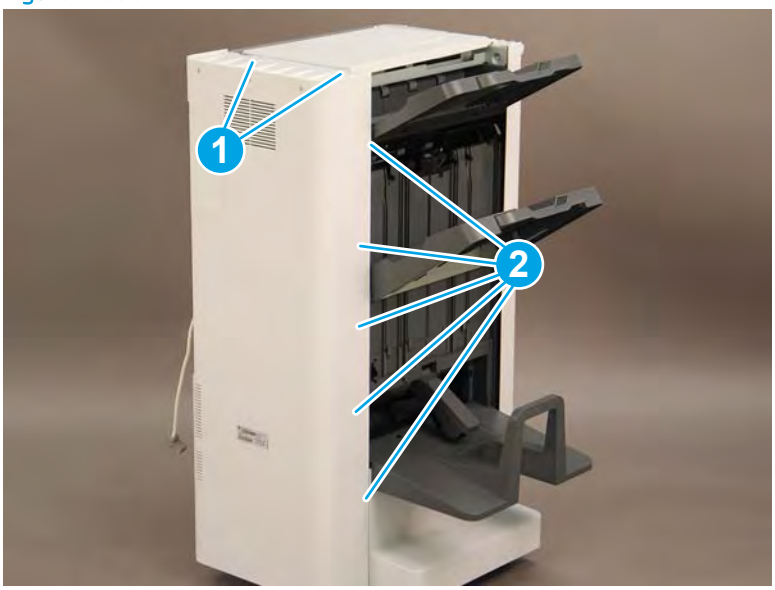


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-358 Remove seven screws

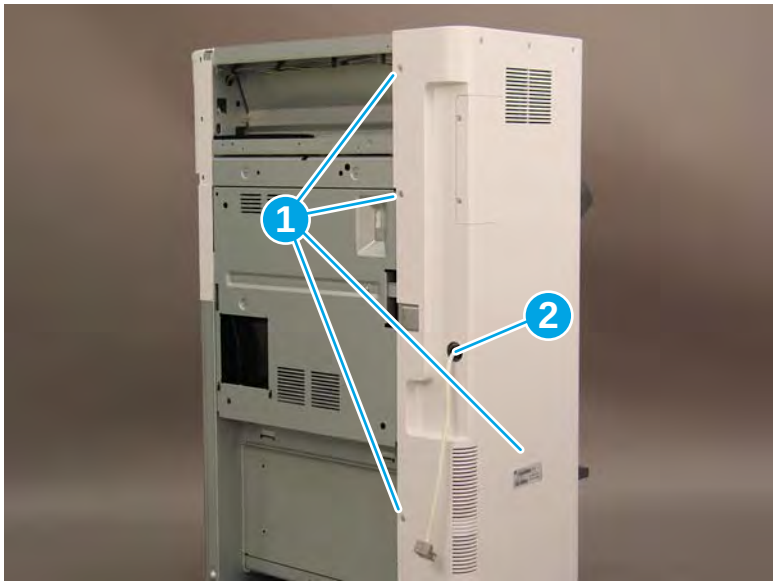


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-359 Remove four screws and the rear cover



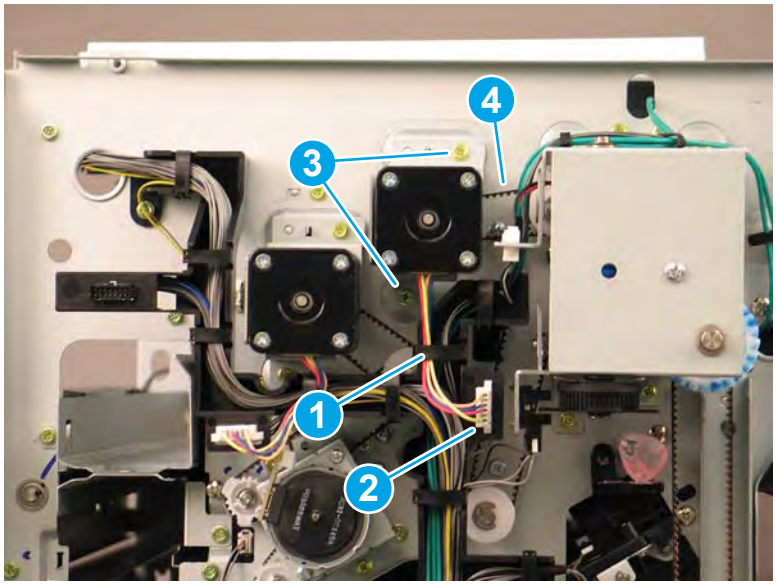
Step 4: Remove the feed exit motor (M2)

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-360 Remove the feed exit motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the buffer motor, gear, and sensor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the buffer motor, gear, and sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01453A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher sub - drive buffer

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

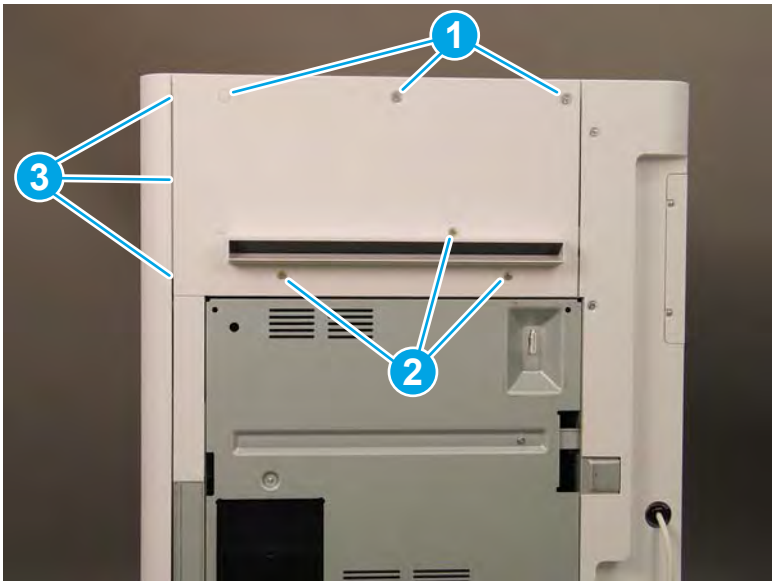
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

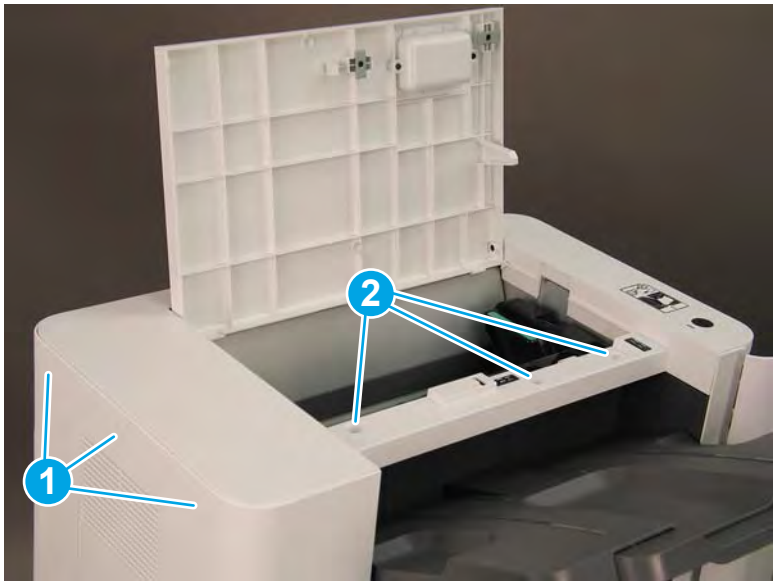
Figure 4-361 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

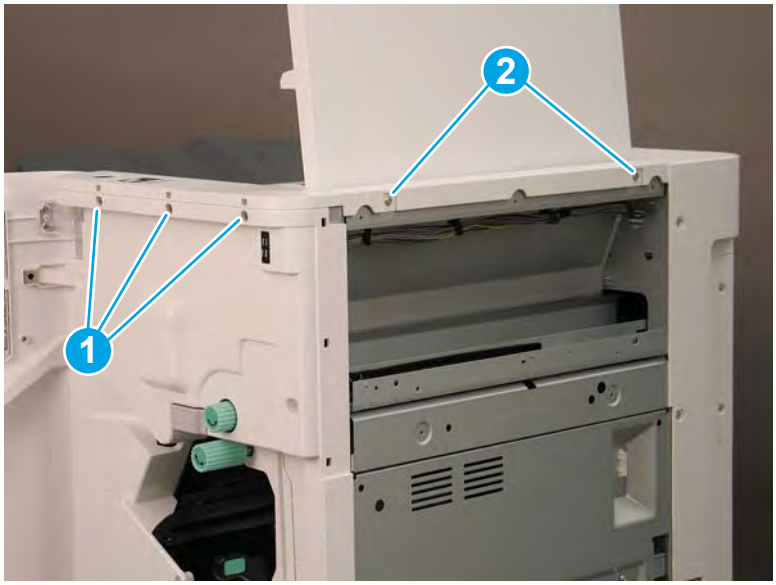
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-362 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

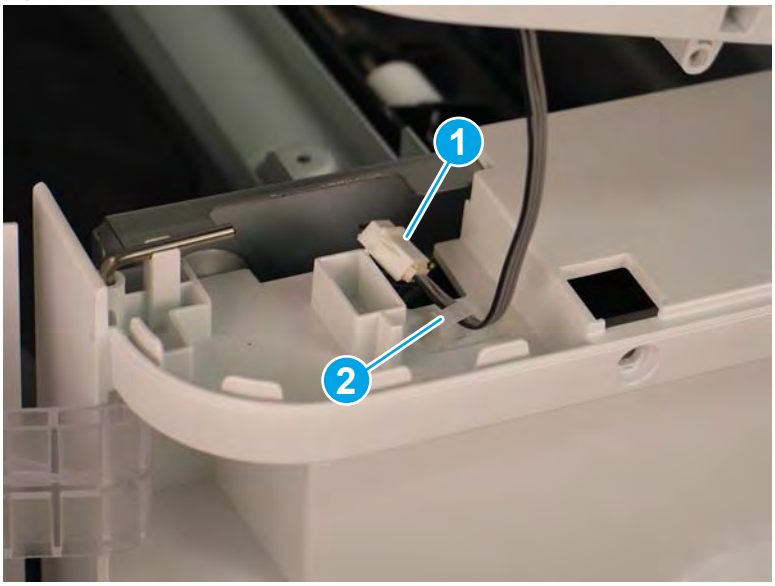
Figure 4-363 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-364 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

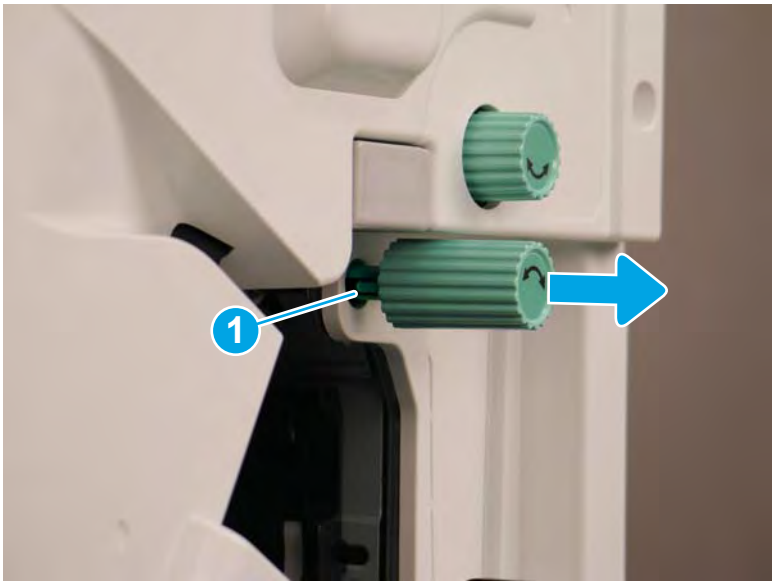


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-365 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

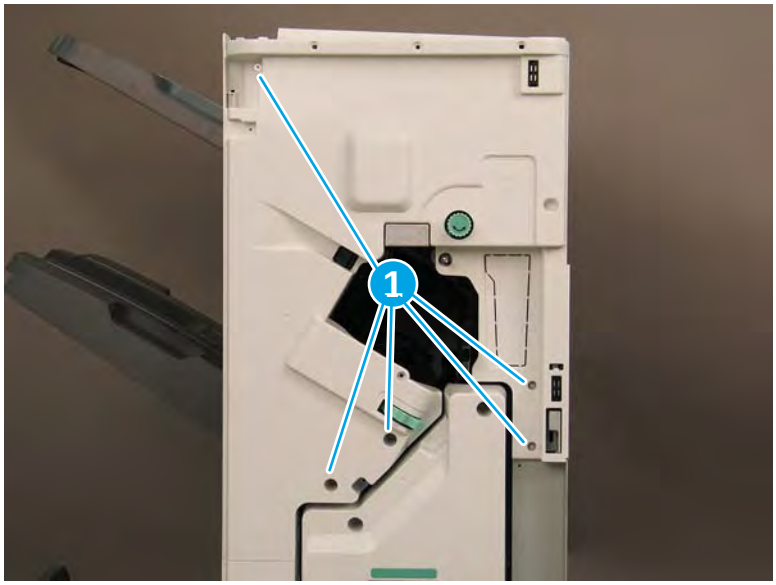
Figure 4-366 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

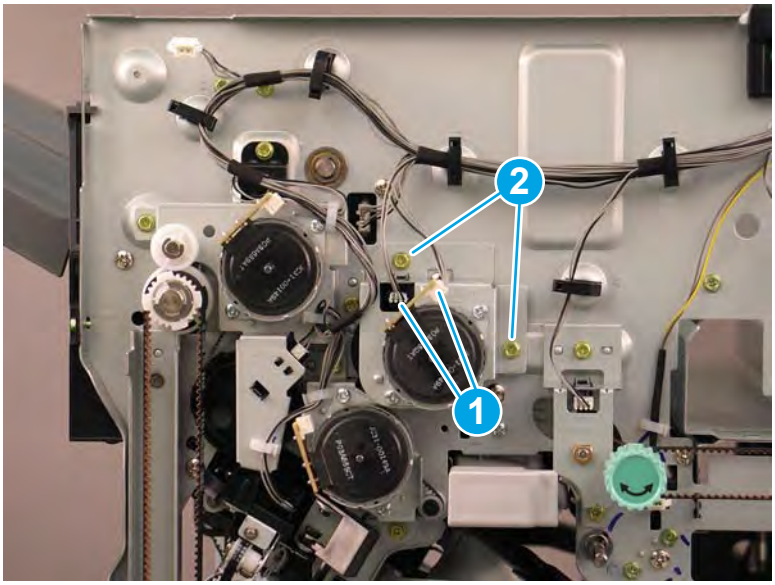
Figure 4-367 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 4: Remove the buffer motor, gear, and sensor

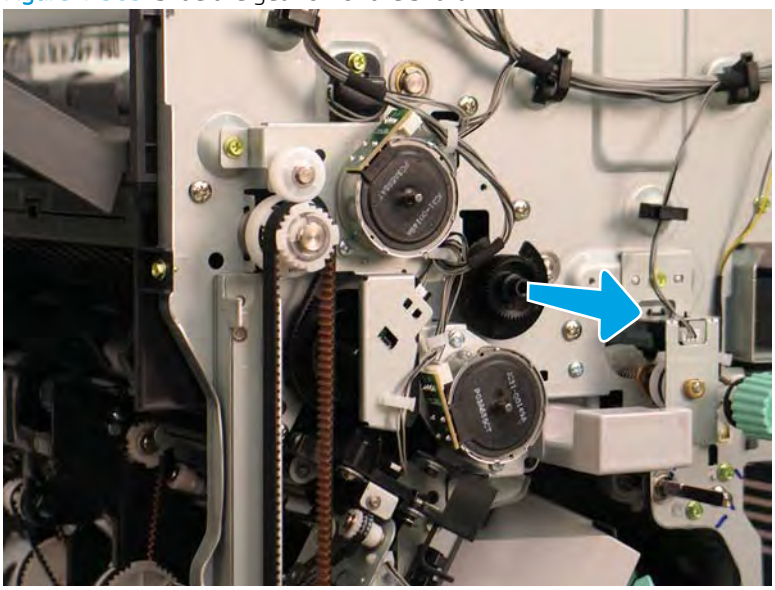
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-368 Disconnect two connectors and remove two screws



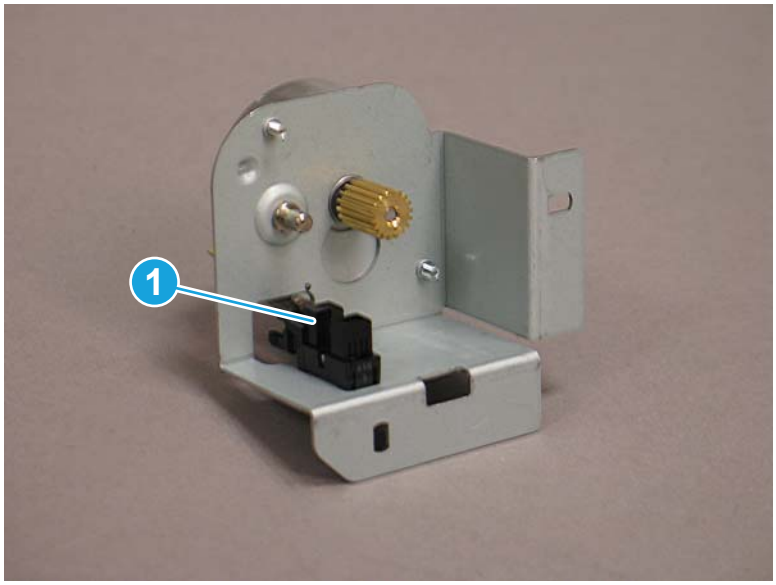
2. If you are replacing the gear, slide it off of the shaft.

Figure 4-369 Slide the gear off of the shaft



3. If you are replacing the sensor (callout 1), remove it from the motor housing.

Figure 4-370 Remove the sensor

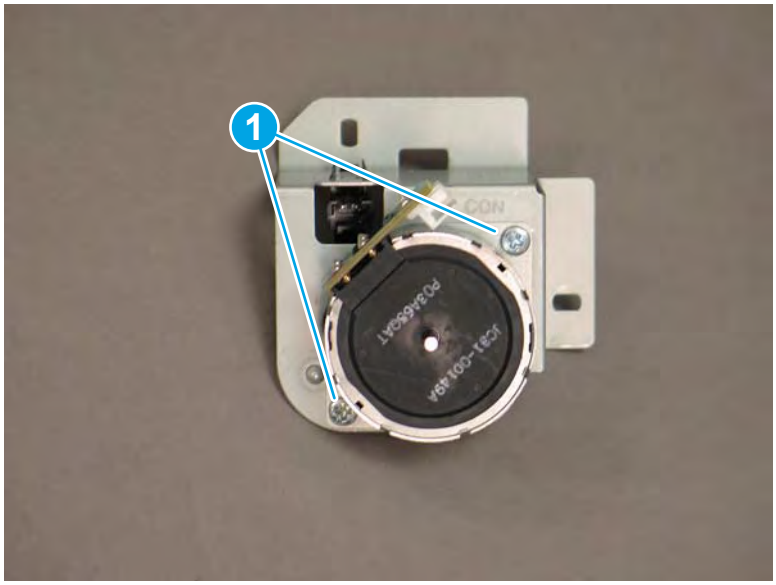


4. If you are replacing the motor, do the following:).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

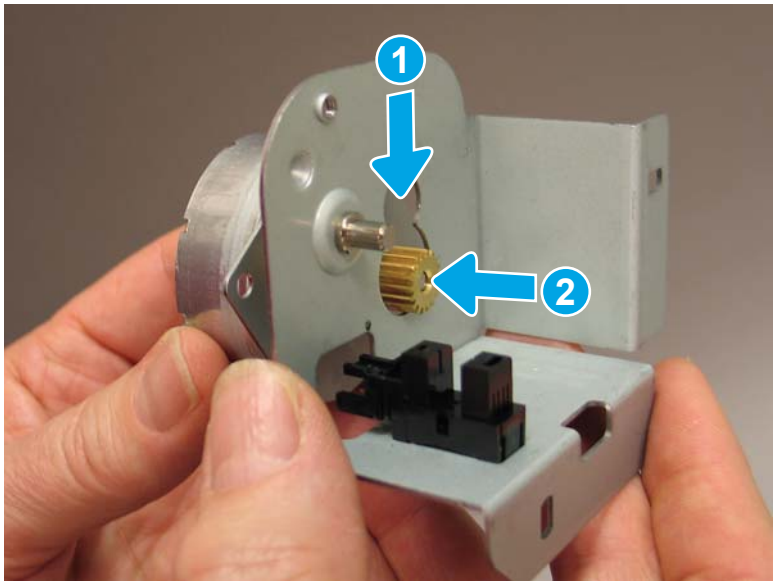
a. Remove two screws (callout 1)

Figure 4-371 Remove two screws



b. Lower the motor (callout 1) and then pull it away from the housing (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-372 Remove the buffer motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front tamper motor (M6)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the front tamper (finisher)
- Step 12: Remove the front tamper motor (M7)
- Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front tamper motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC93-01001A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

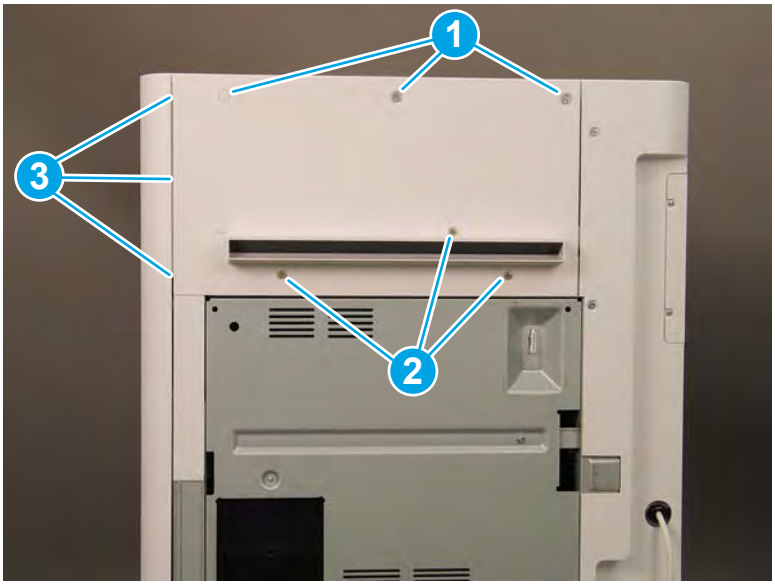
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

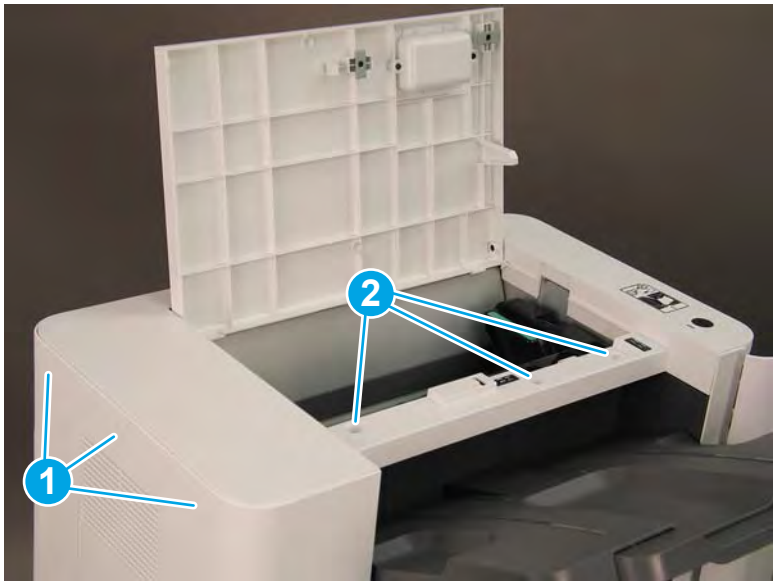
Figure 4-373 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

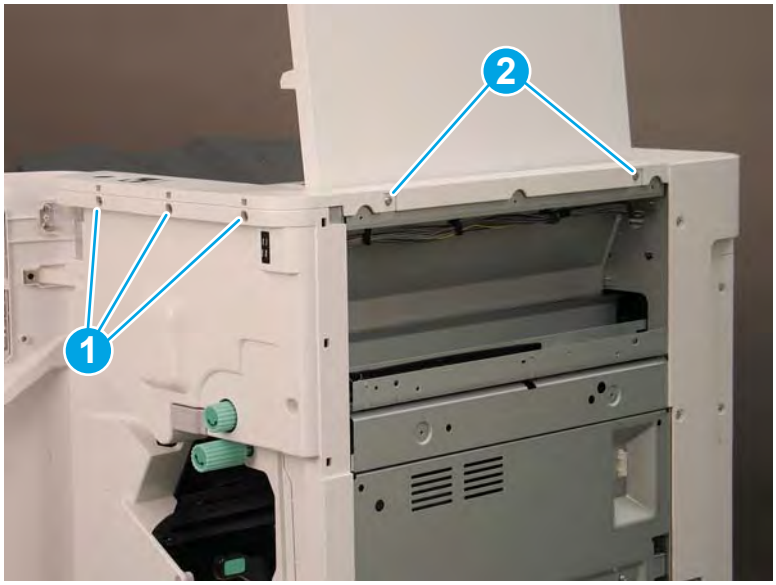
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-374 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

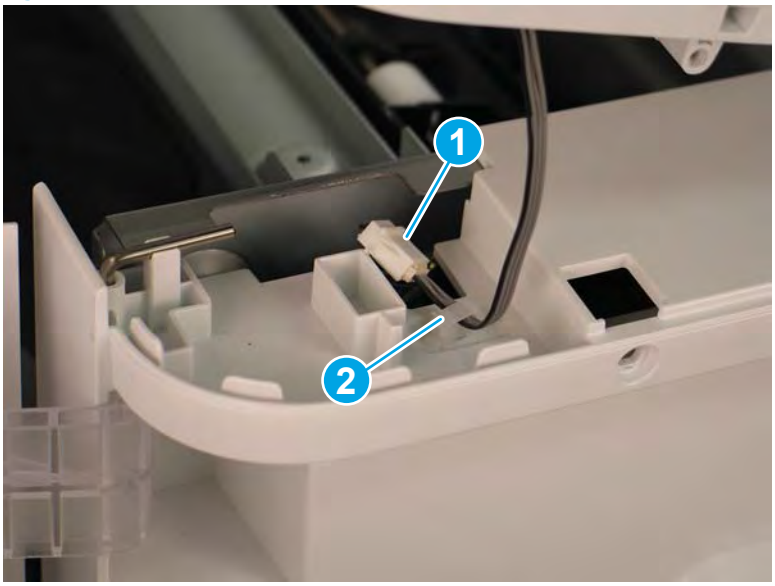
Figure 4-375 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-376 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

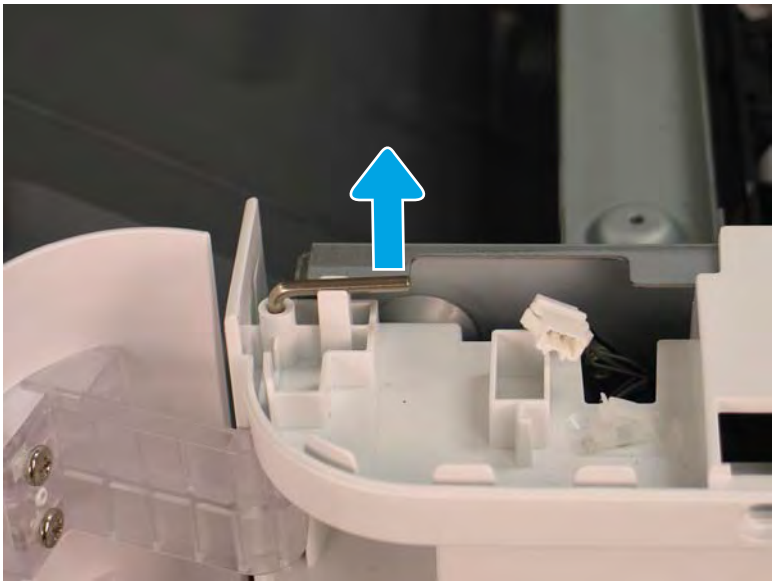


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

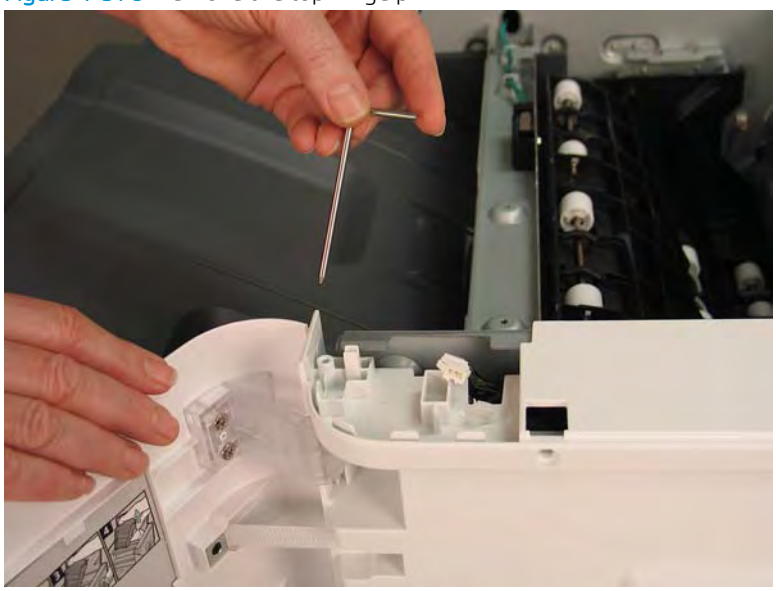
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-377 Lift the top hinge pin



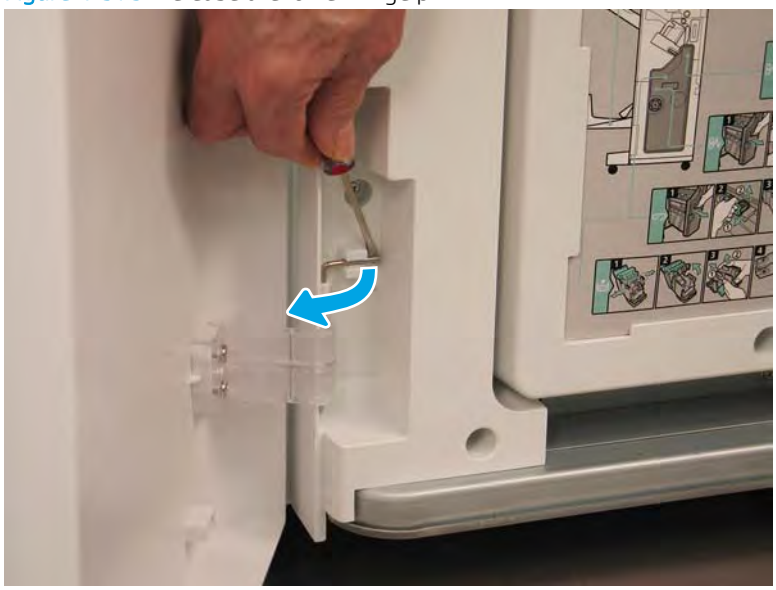
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-378 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-379 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

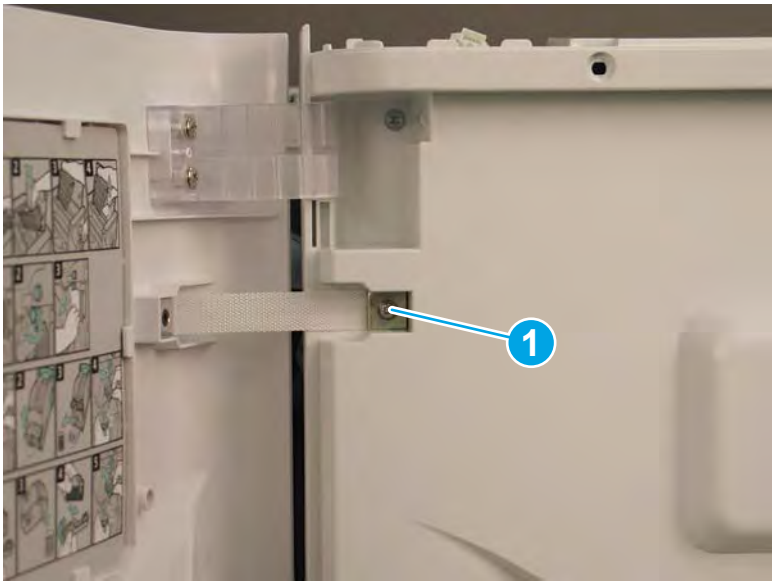
Figure 4-380 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

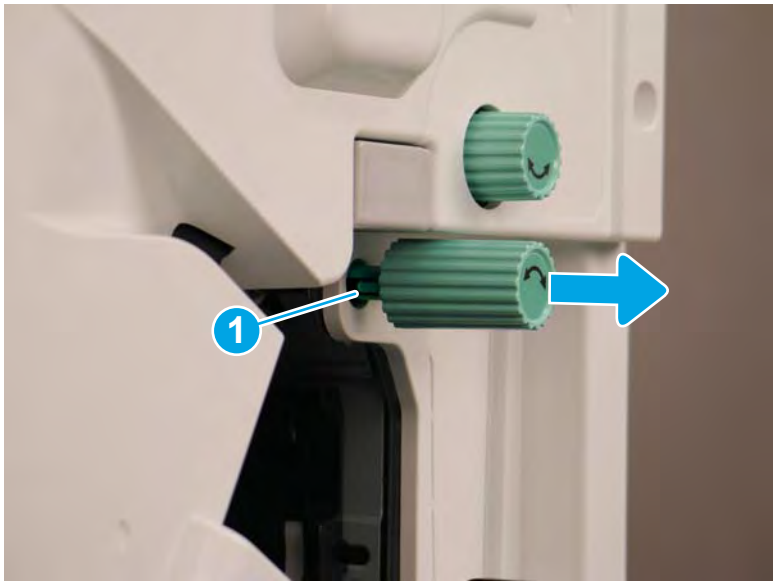
Figure 4-381 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-382 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

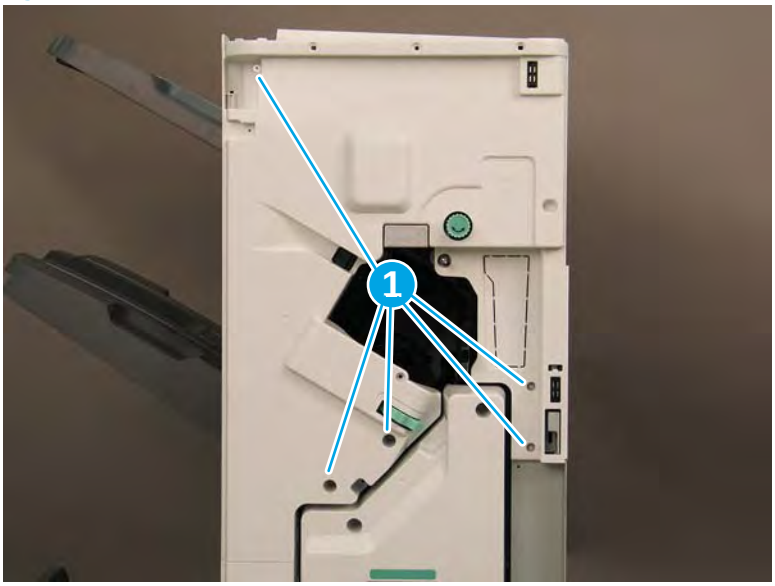
Figure 4-383 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

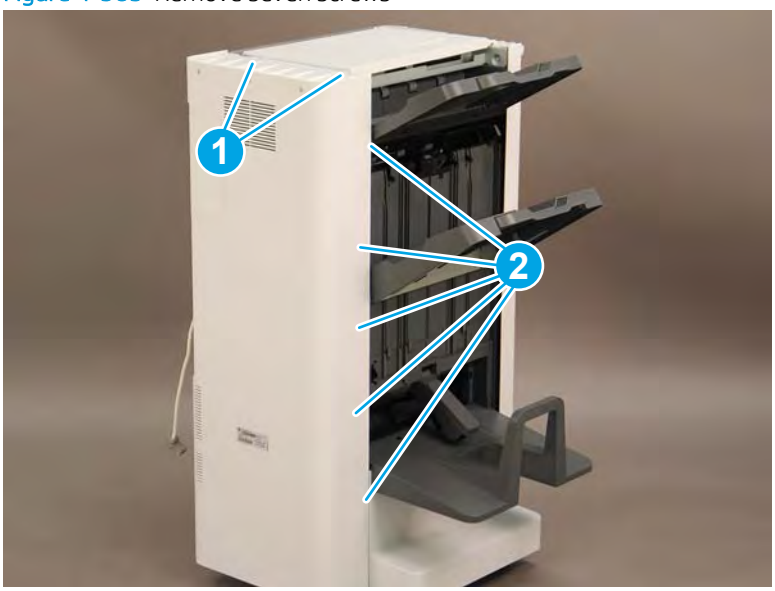
Figure 4-384 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-385 Remove seven screws

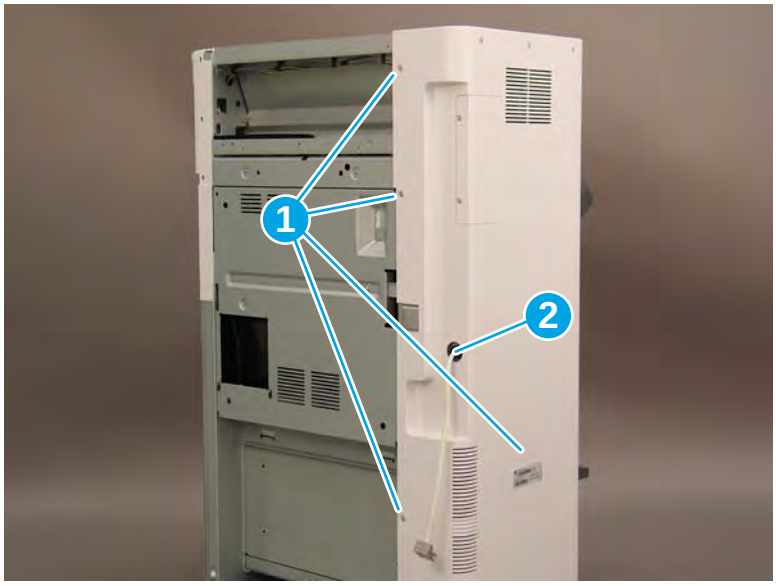


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

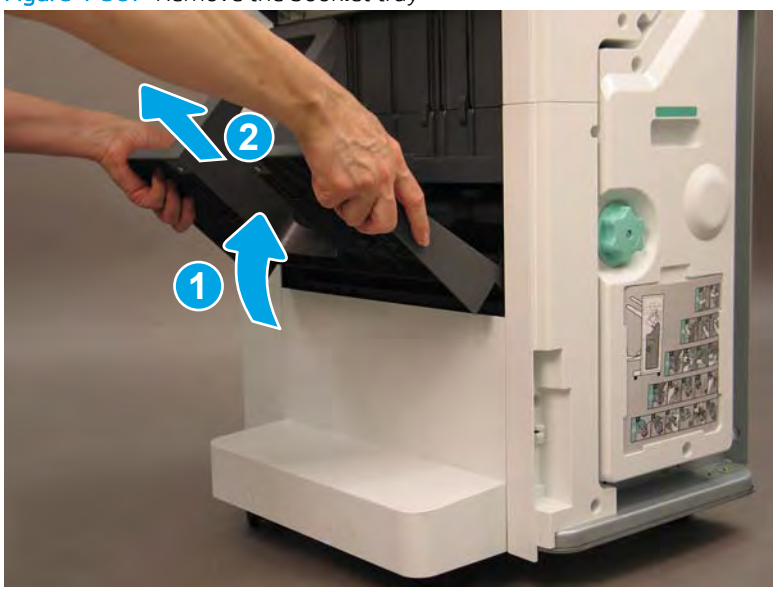
Figure 4-386 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-387 Remove the booklet tray



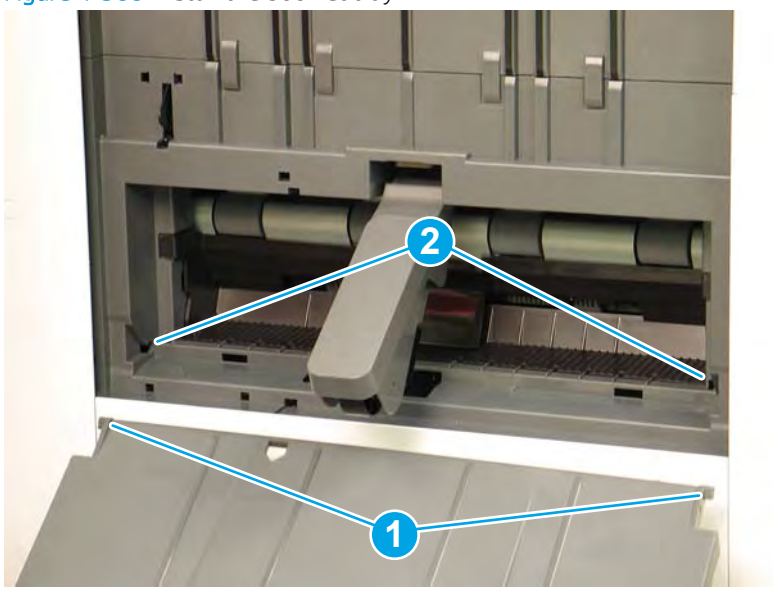
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

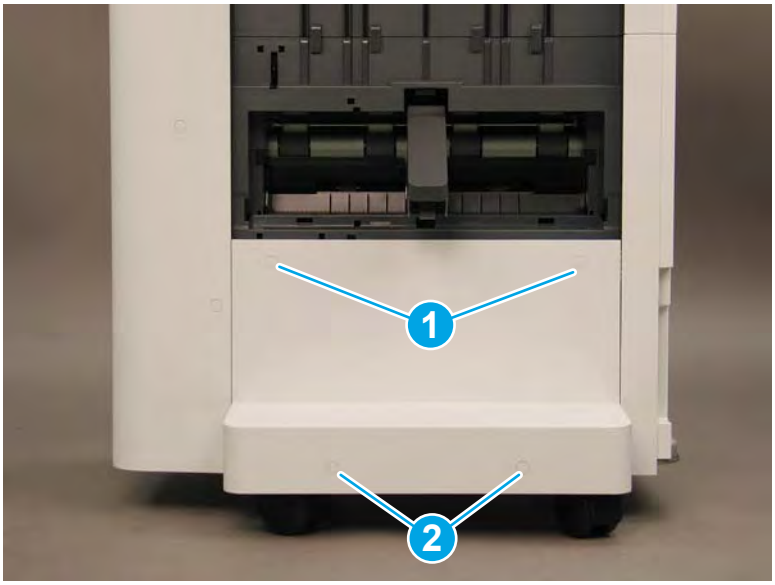
Figure 4-388 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-389 Remove four screws

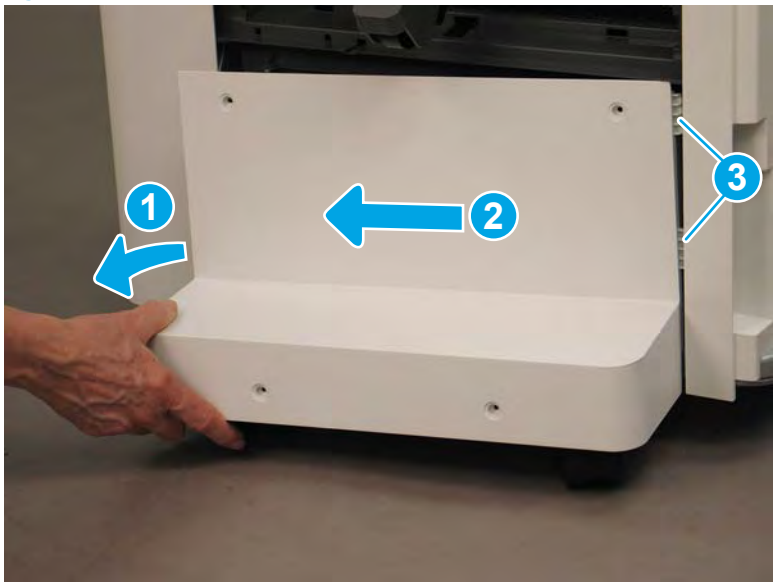


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-390 Remove the caster cover

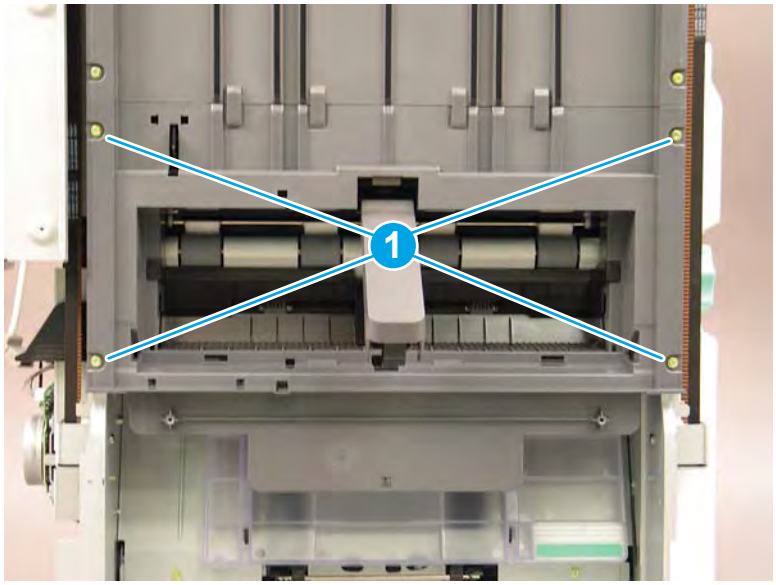


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 4-391 Remove four screws

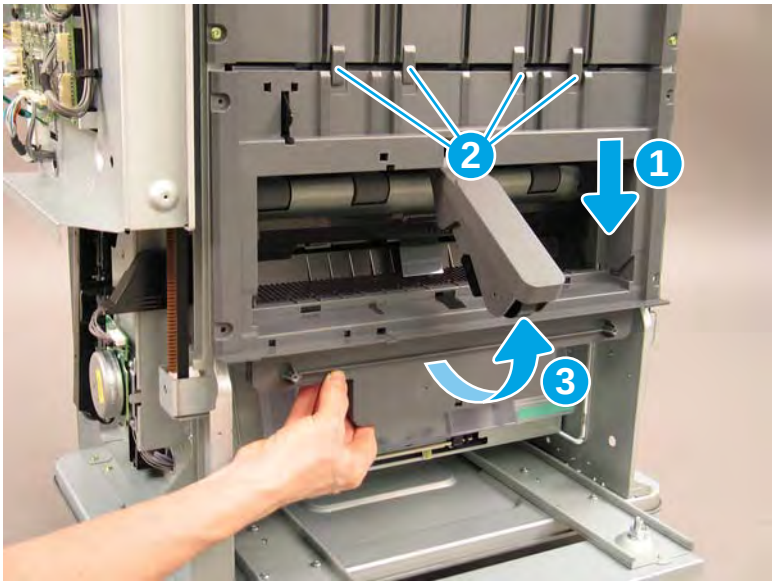


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

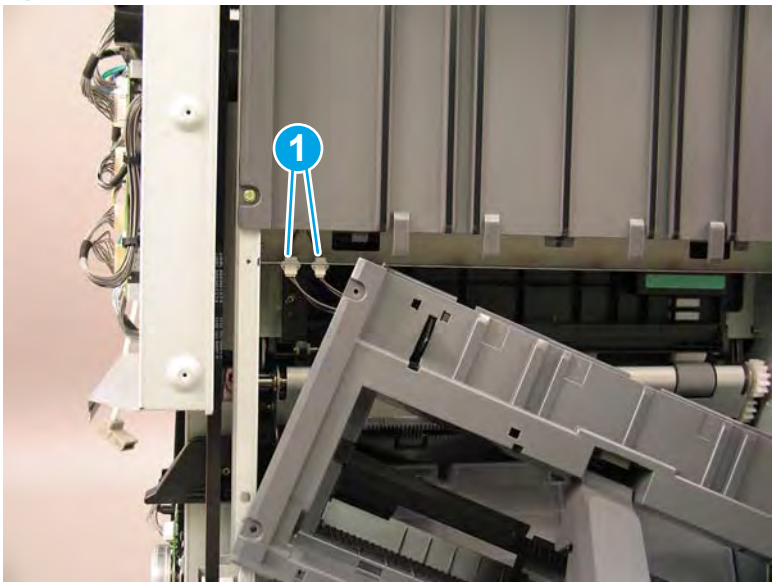
Figure 4-392 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

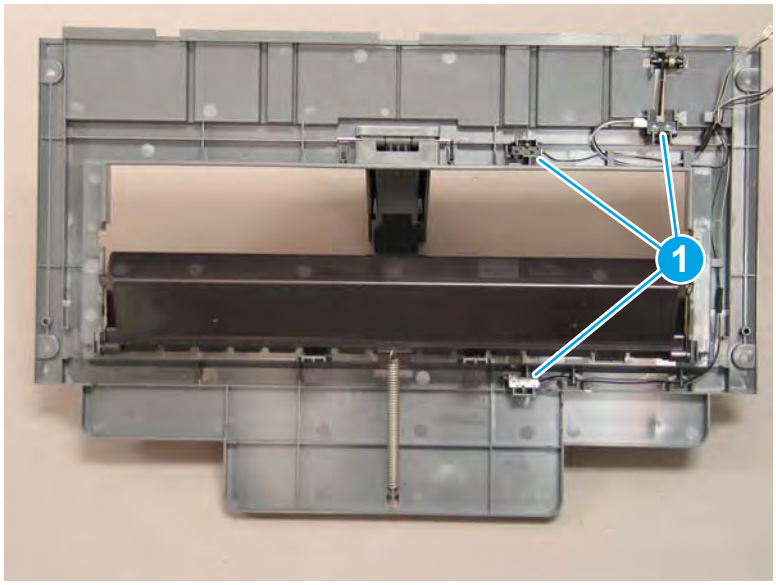
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-393 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

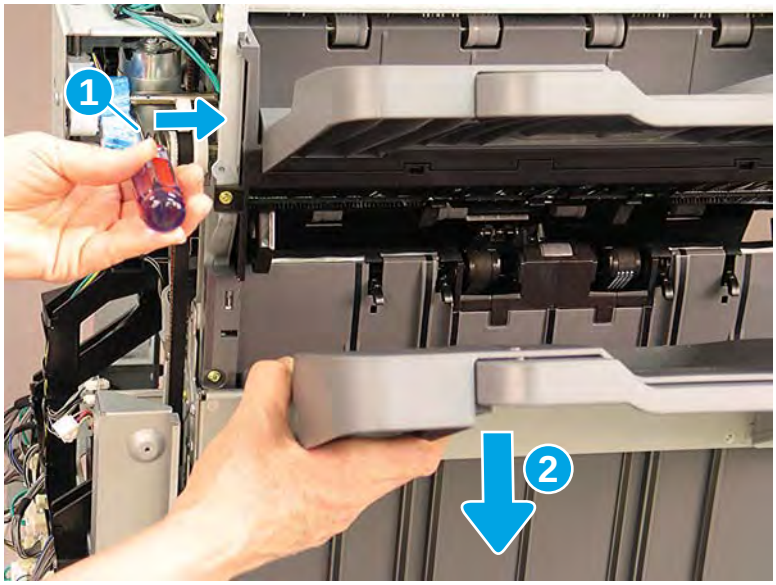
Figure 4-394 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

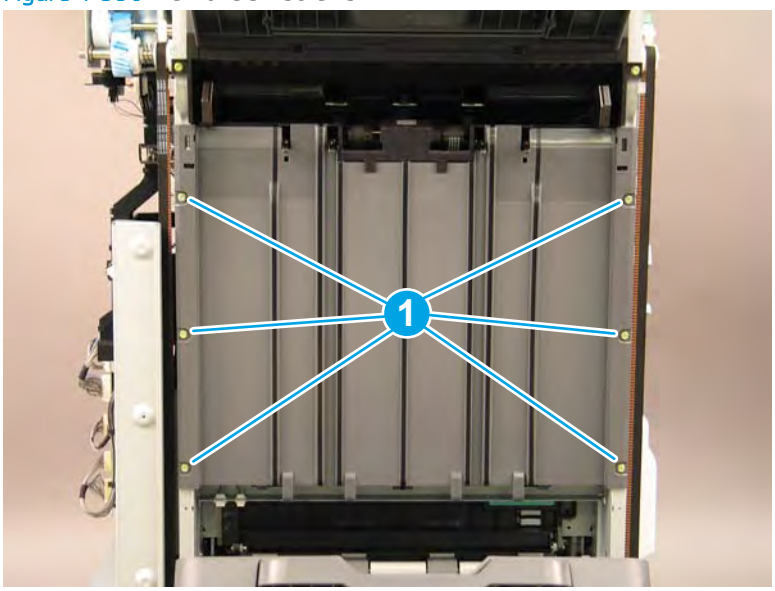
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 4-395 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-396 Remove six screws

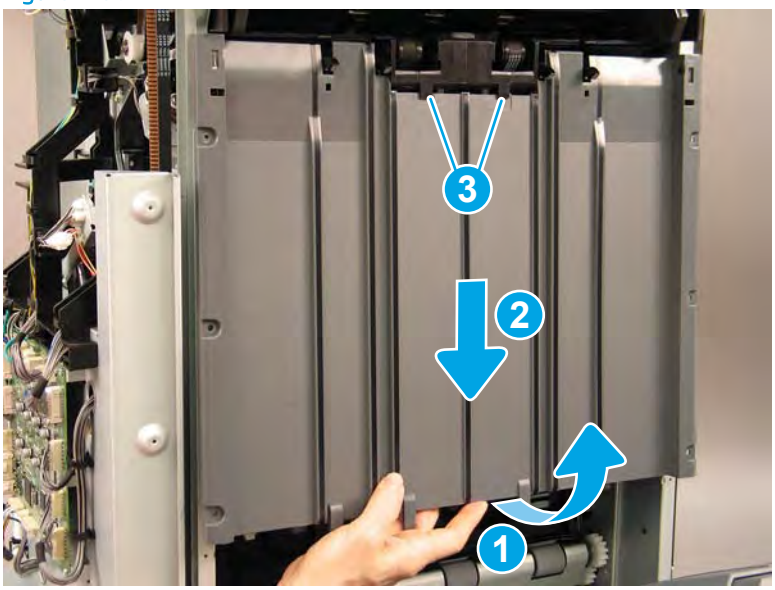


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

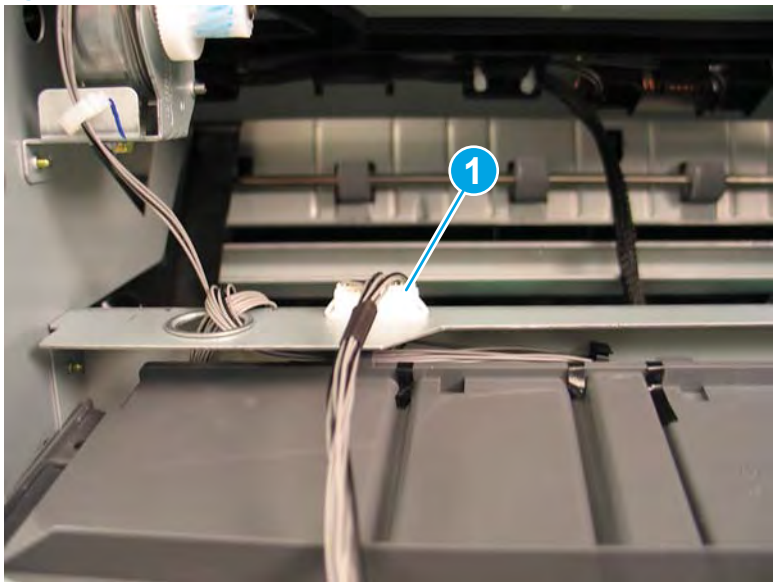
Figure 4-397 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

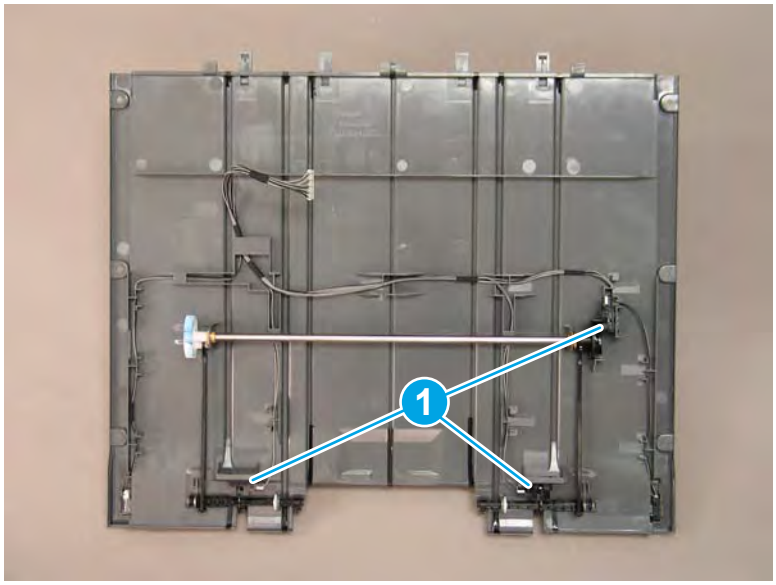
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-398 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

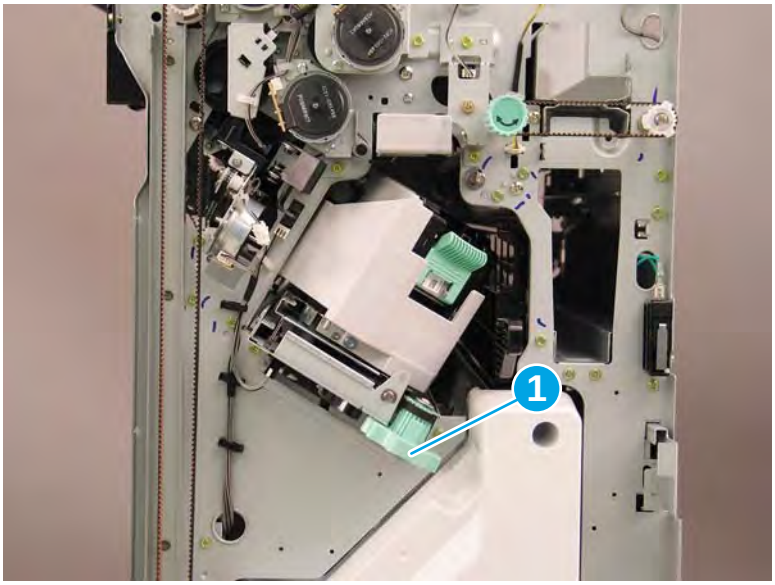
Figure 4-399 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

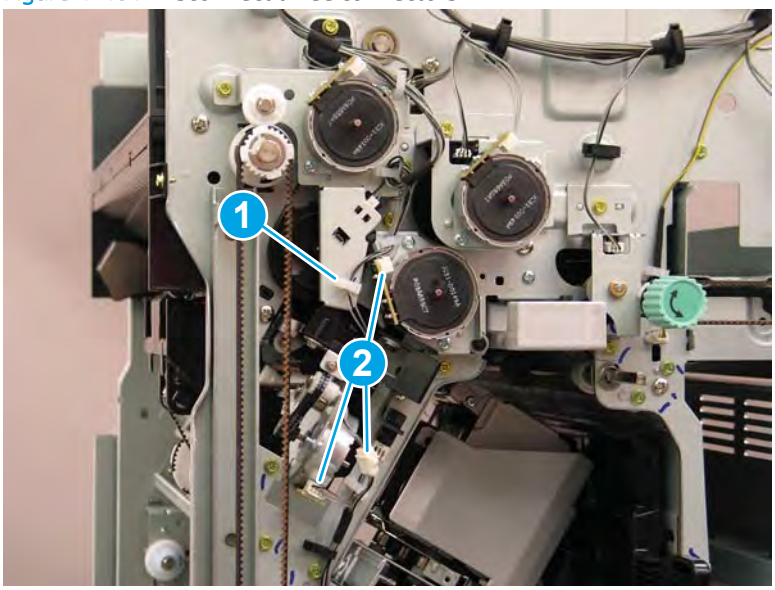
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 4-400 Move the staple unit to the center



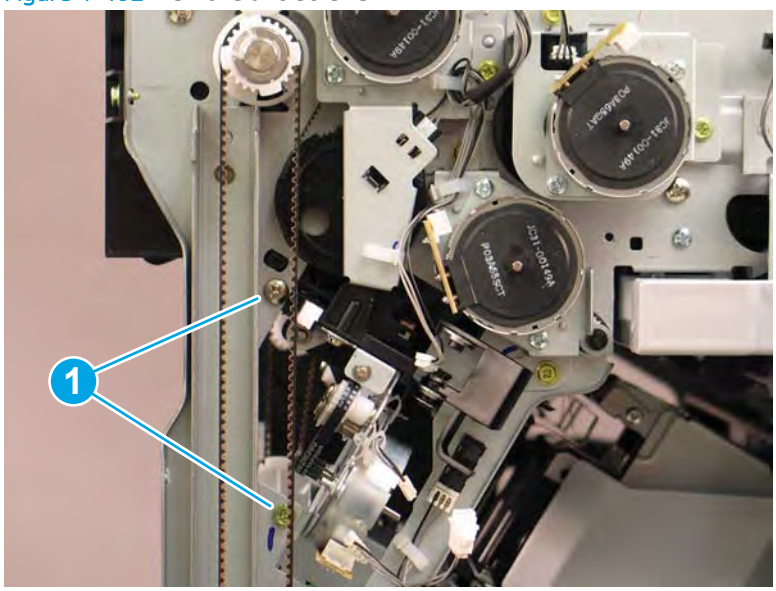
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 4-401 Disconnect three connectors



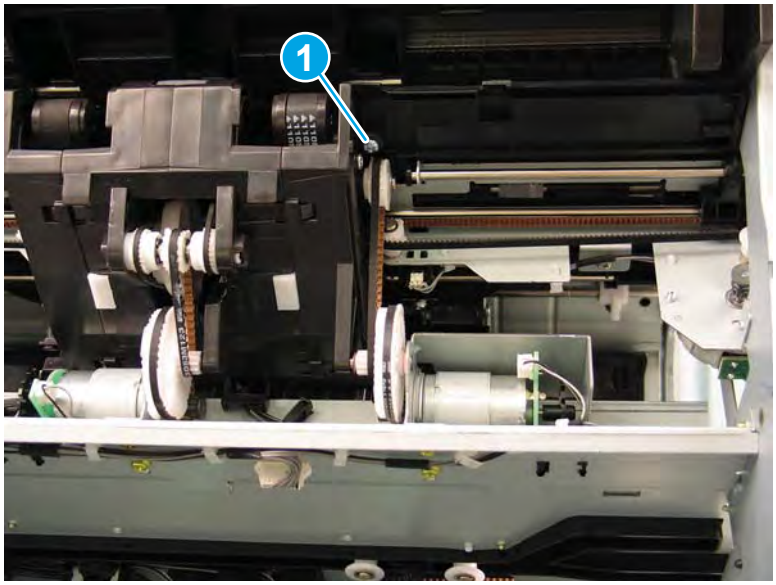
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-402 Remove two screws



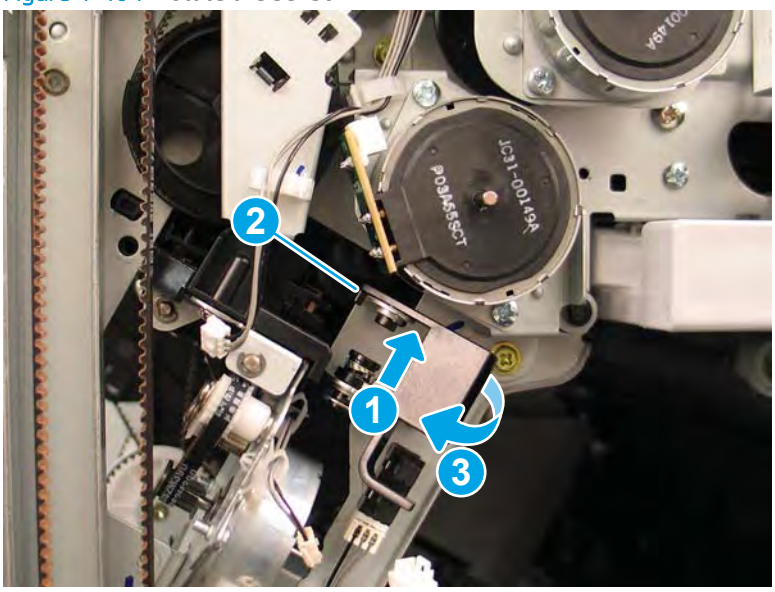
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-403 Remove one screw



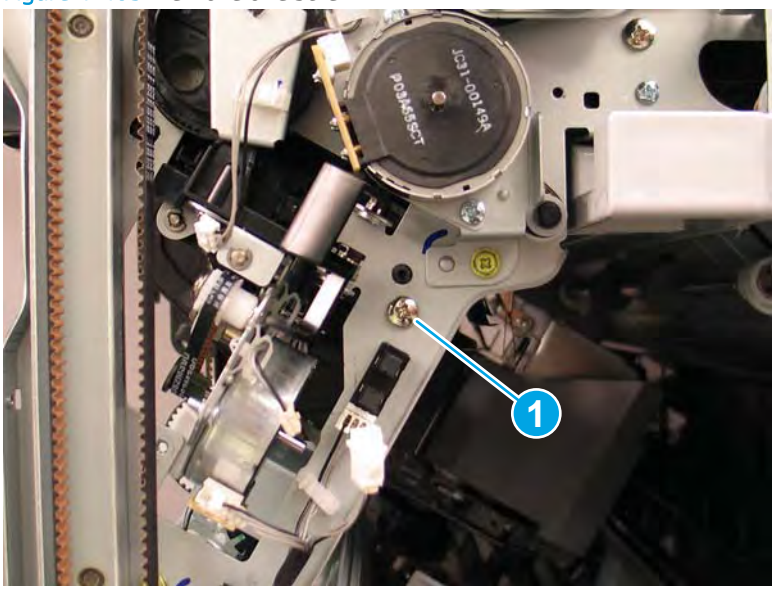
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 4-404 Rotate the sensor



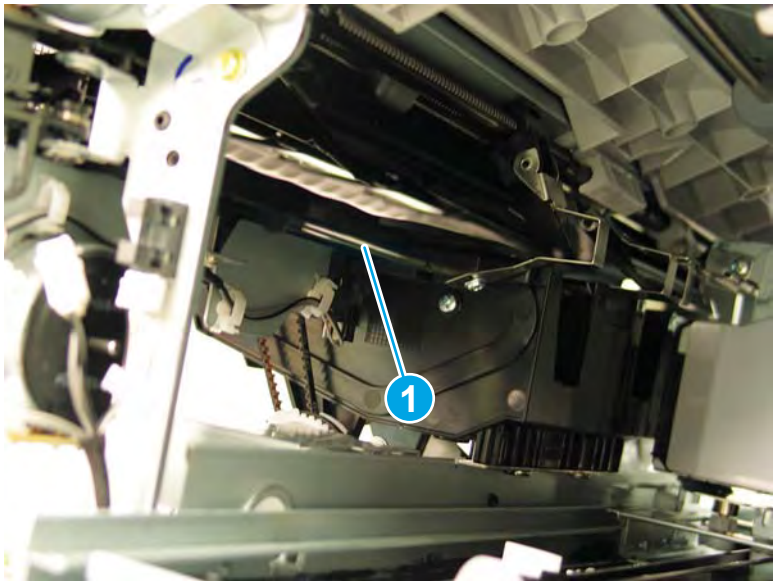
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-405 Remove one screw



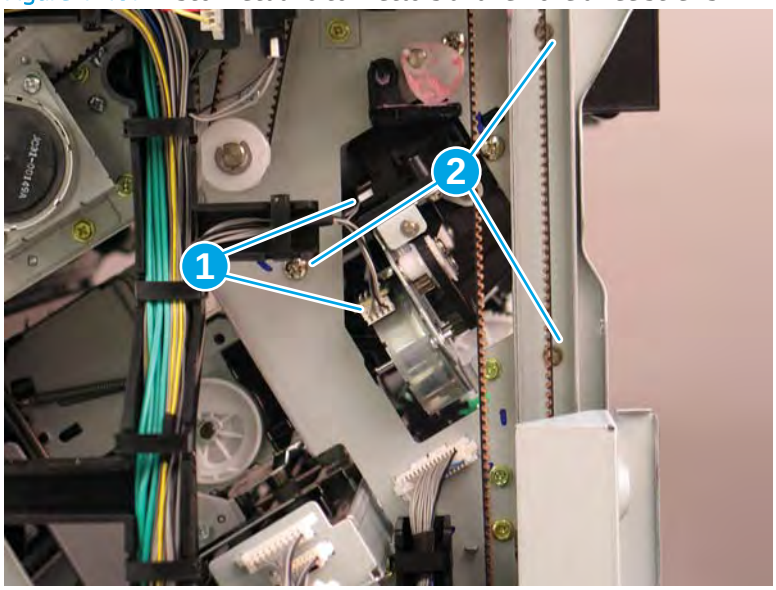
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 4-406 Remove the front tamper shaft



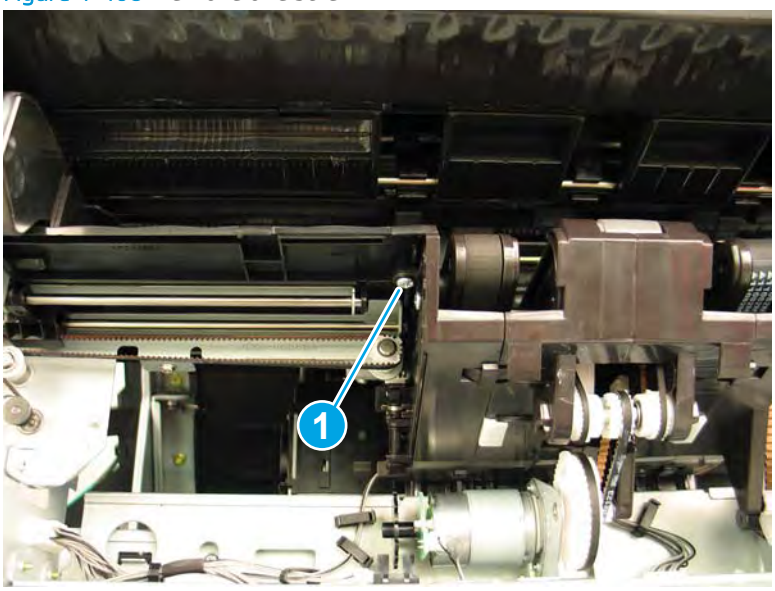
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-407 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



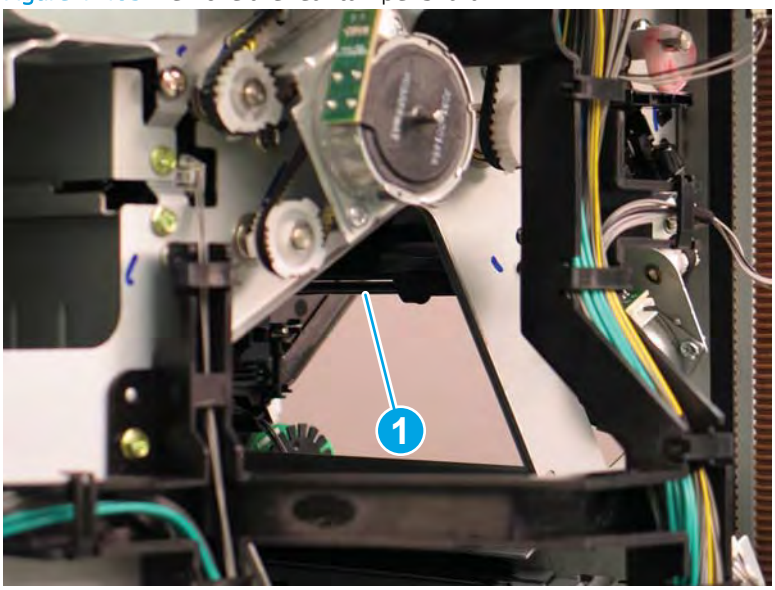
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-408 Remove one screw



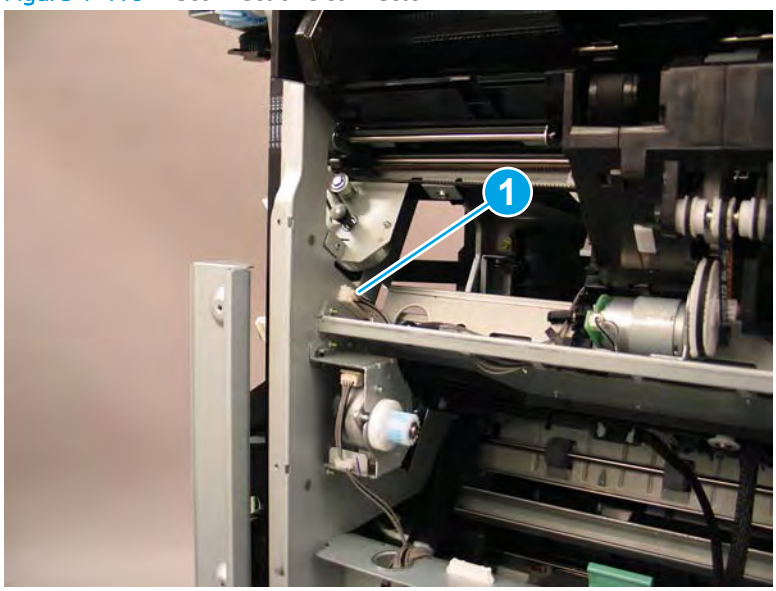
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 4-409 Remove the rear tamper shaft



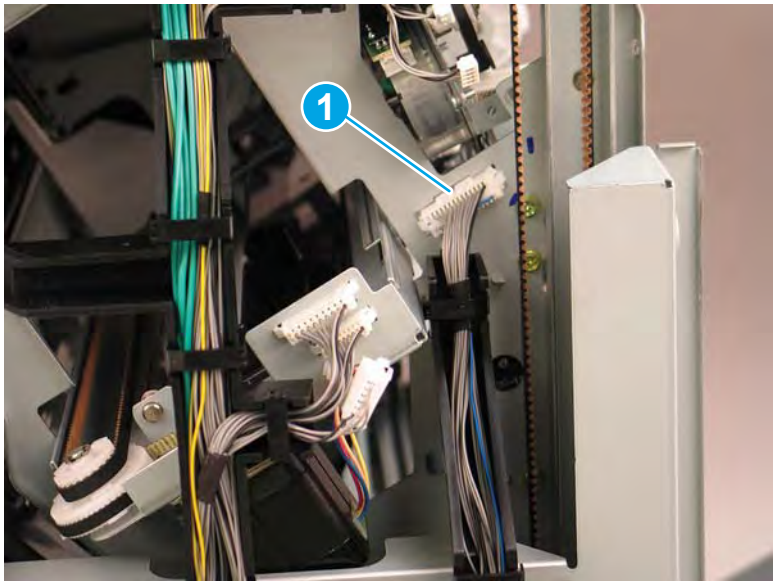
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-410 Disconnect one connector



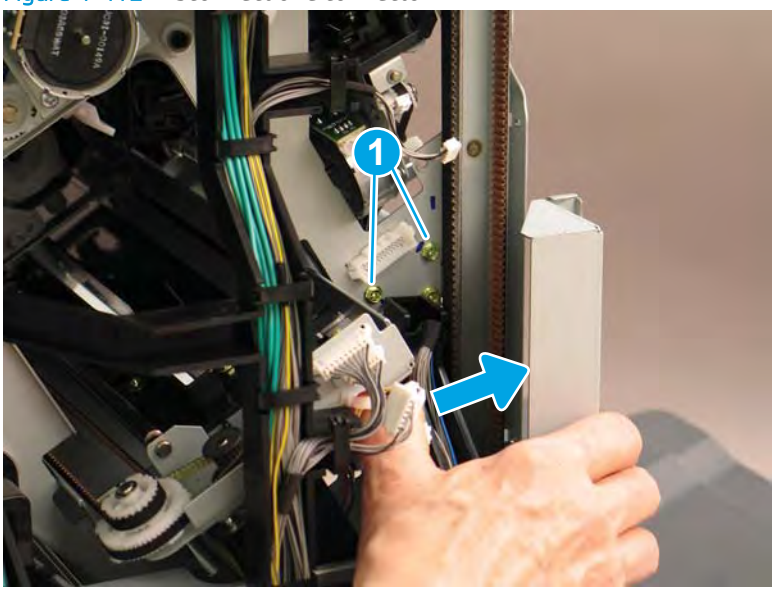
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-411 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-412 Disconnect one connector



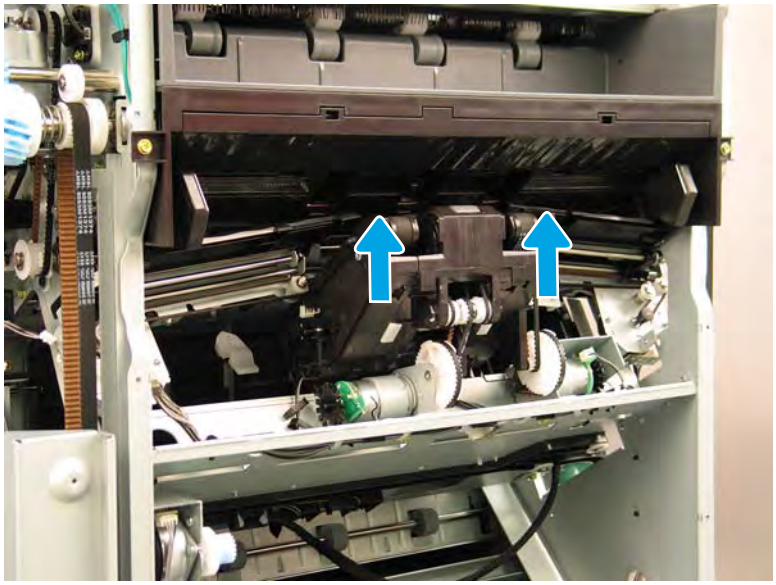
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-413 Remove two screws



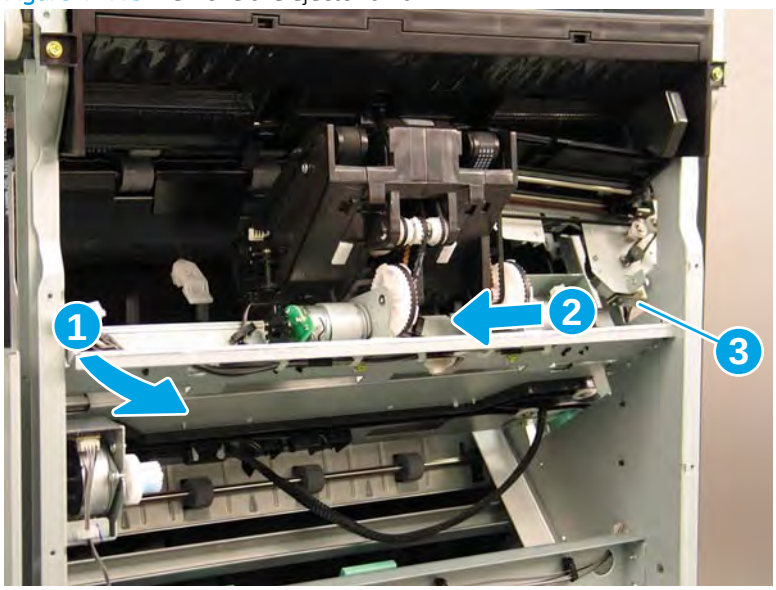
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 4-414 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 4-415 Remove the ejector unit



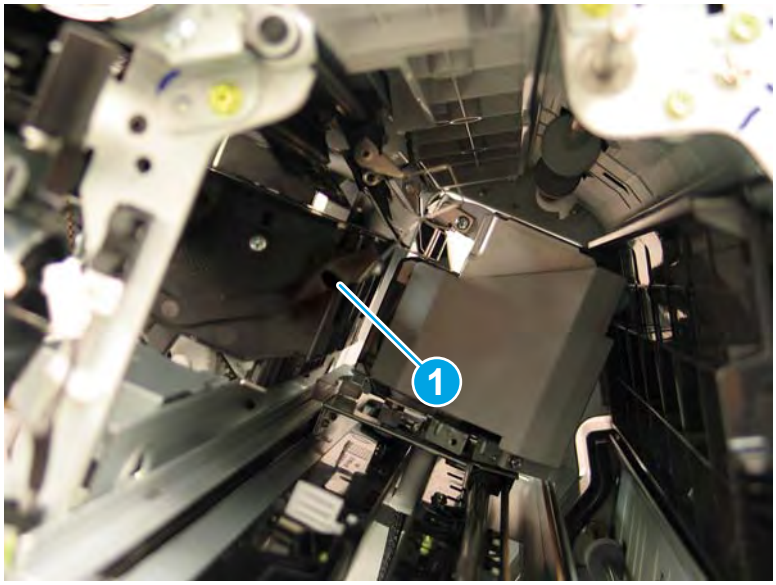
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

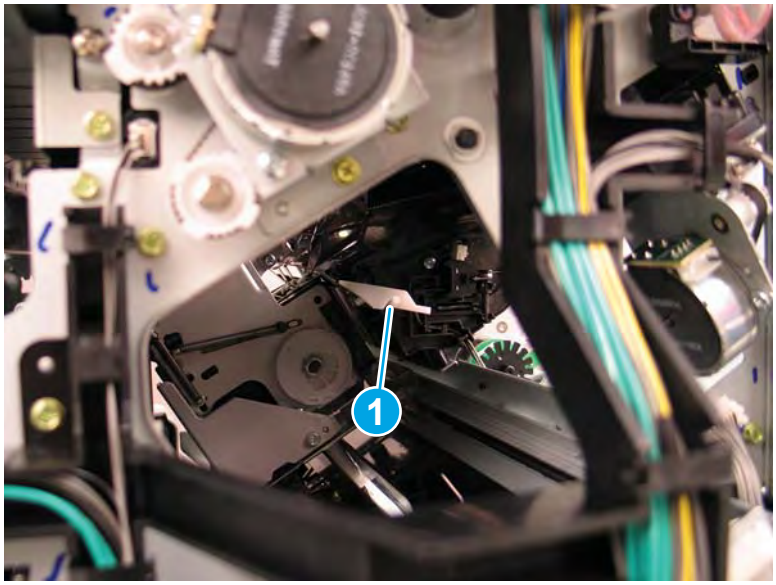
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-416 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-417 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft



Step 11: Remove the front tamper (finisher)

▲ Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

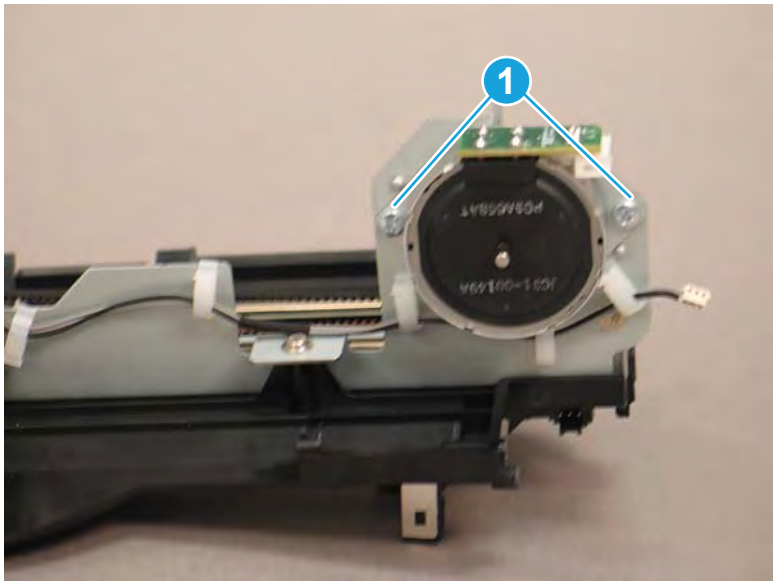
Figure 4-418 Remove the front tamper



Step 12: Remove the front tamper motor (M7)

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-419 Remove two screws



2. Release the belt (callout 1), and then remove the front tamper motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt is routed correctly when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-420 Release the belt and remove the motor



Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear tamper motor (M7)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the rear tamper (finisher)
- Step 12: Remove the rear tamper motor (M7)
- Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear tamper motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC93-01001A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

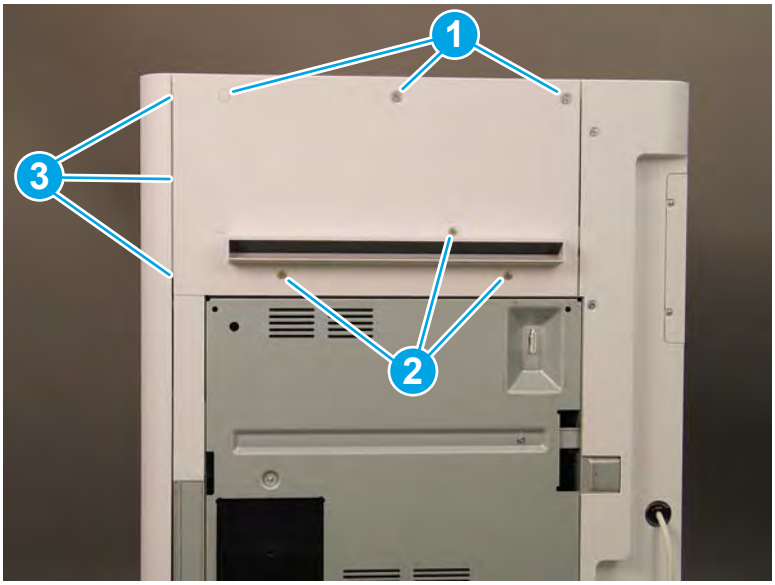
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

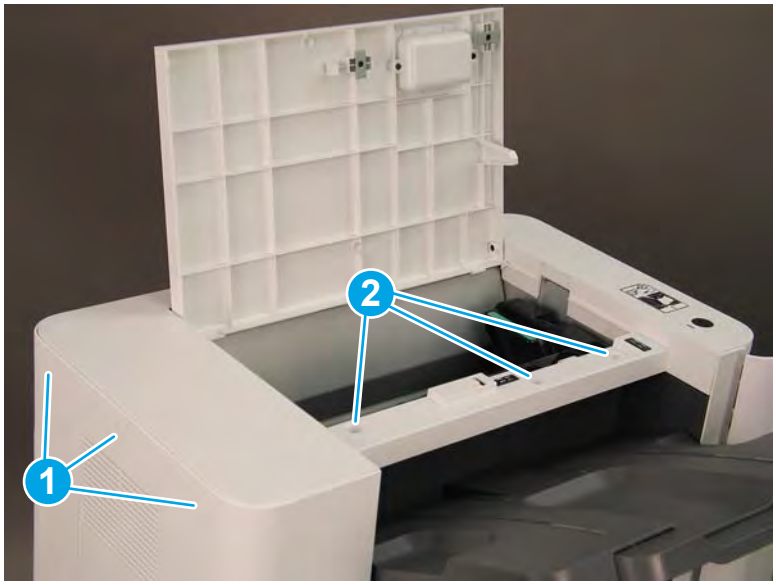
Figure 4-421 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

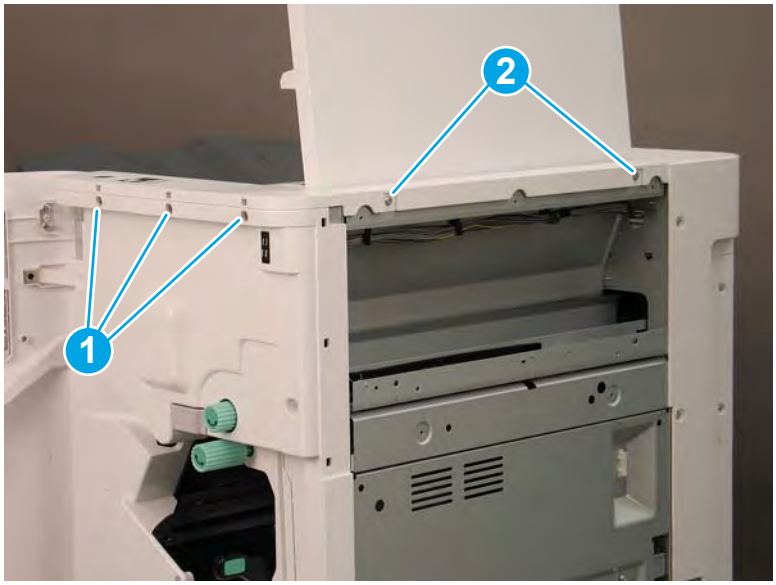
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-422 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

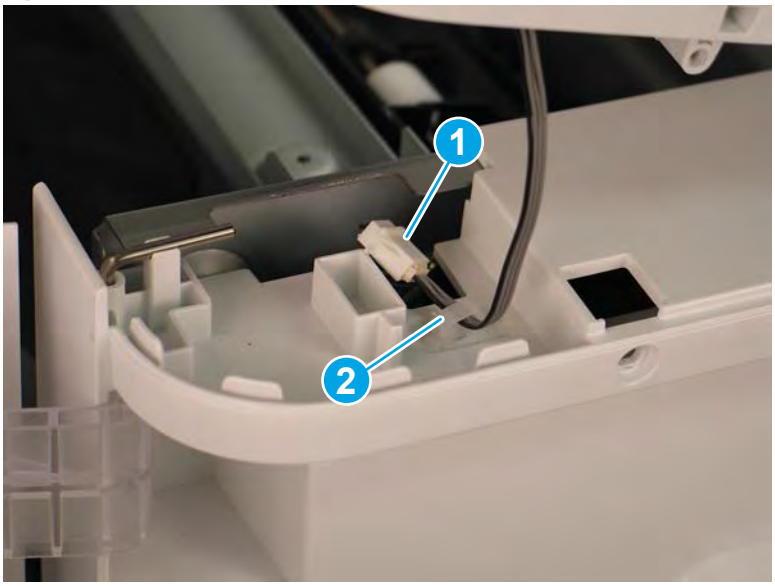
Figure 4-423 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-424 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

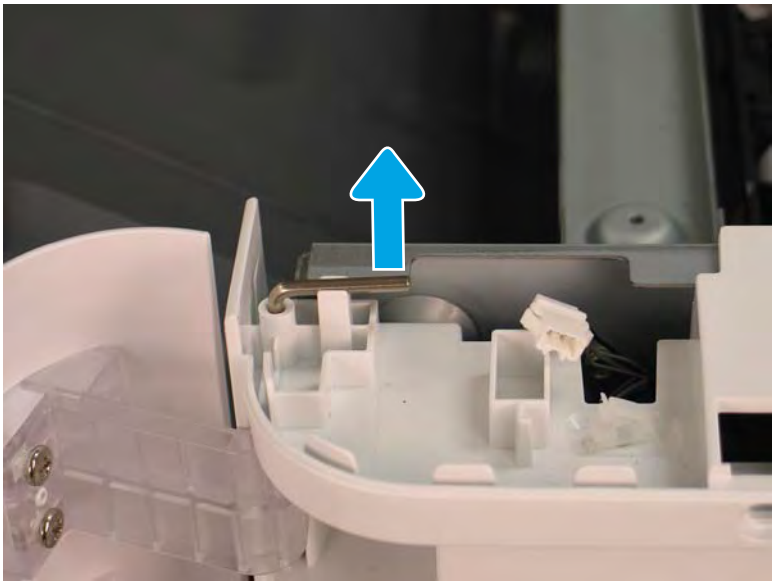


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

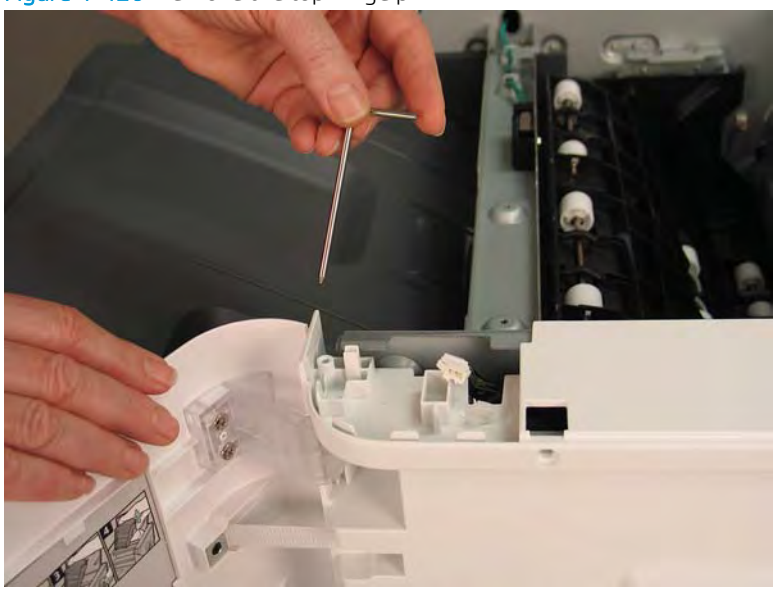
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-425 Lift the top hinge pin



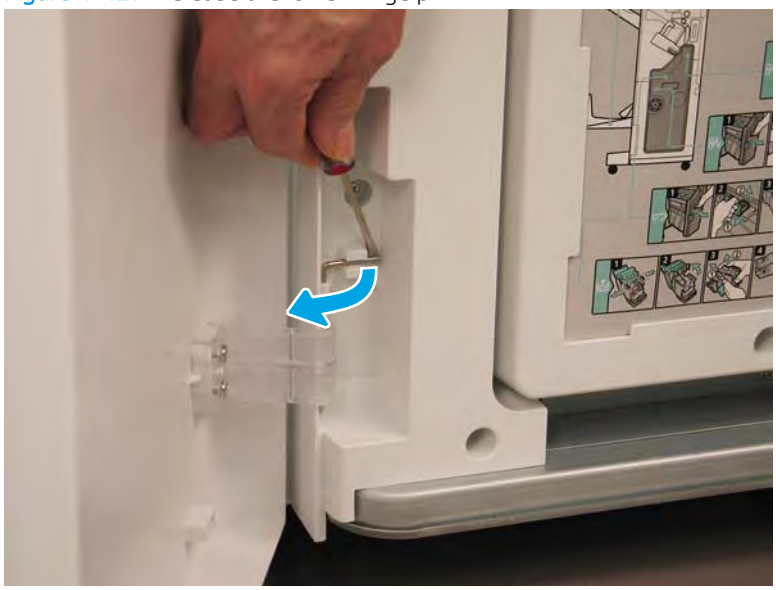
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-426 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-427 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

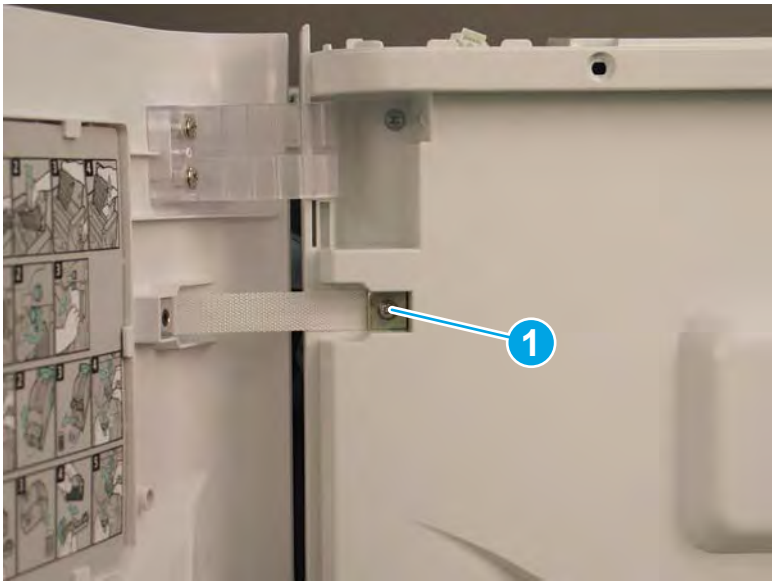
Figure 4-428 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

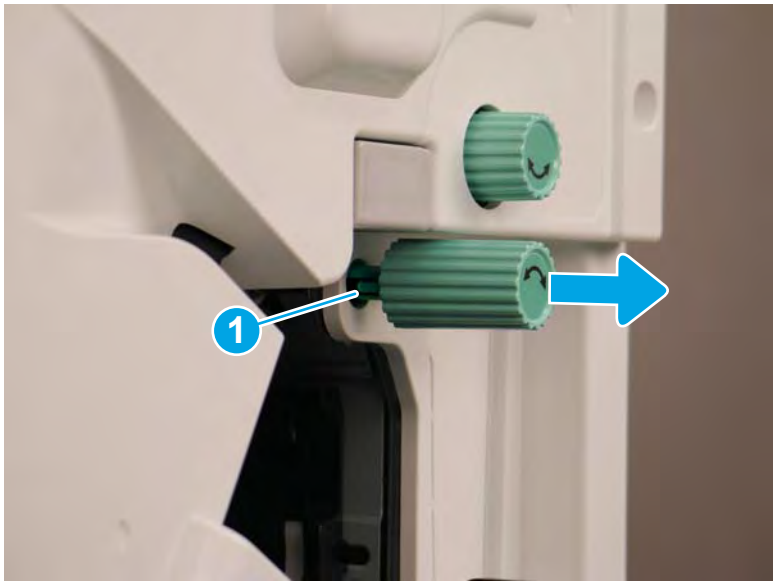
Figure 4-429 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-430 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

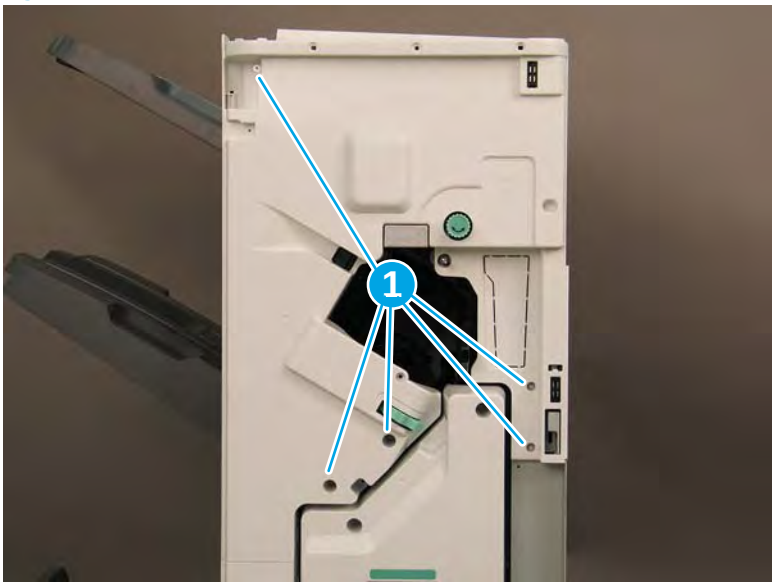
Figure 4-431 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

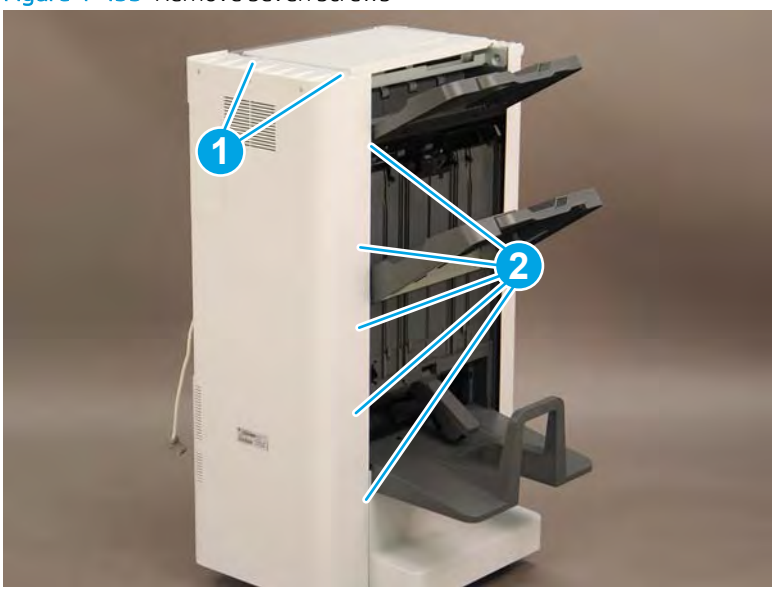
Figure 4-432 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-433 Remove seven screws

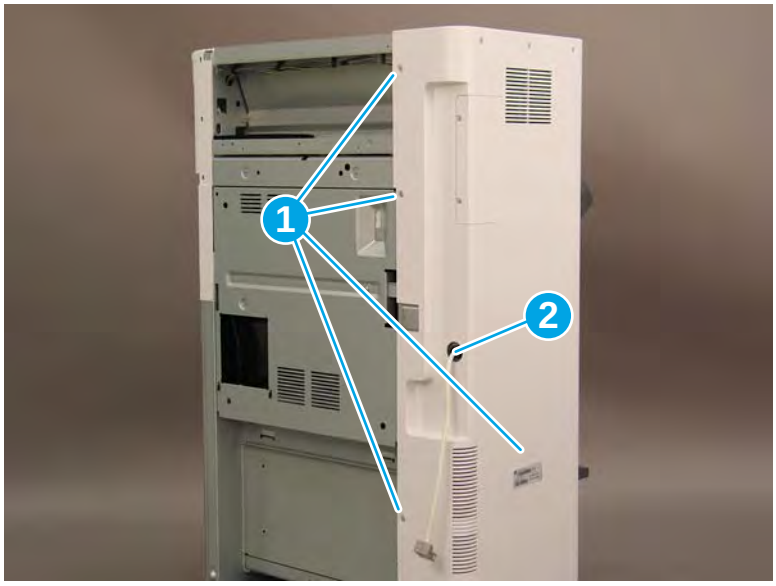


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

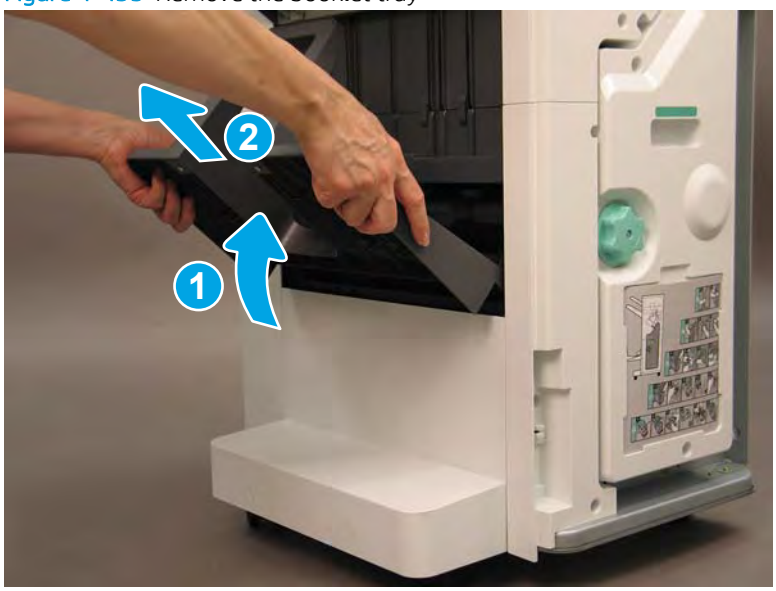
Figure 4-434 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-435 Remove the booklet tray



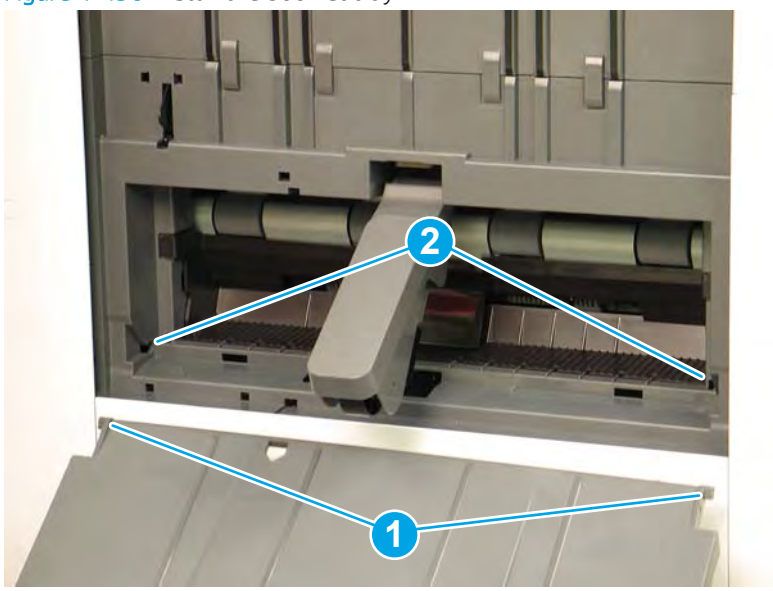
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

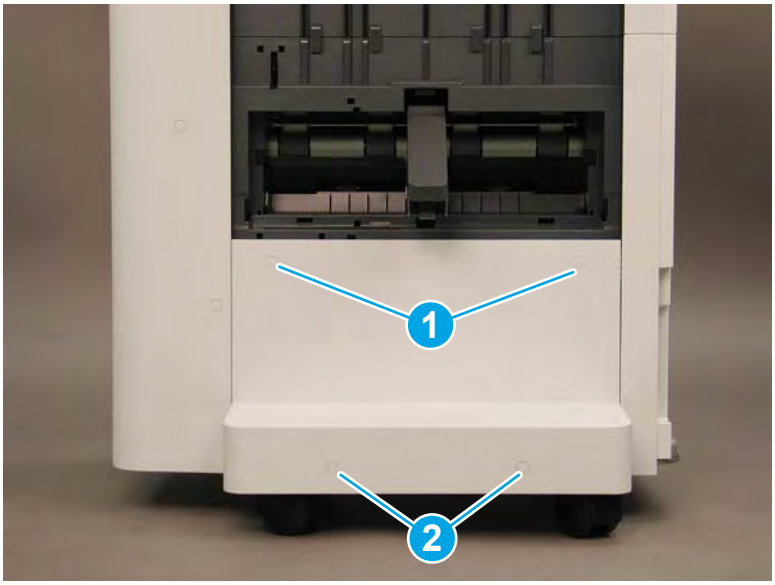
Figure 4-436 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-437 Remove four screws

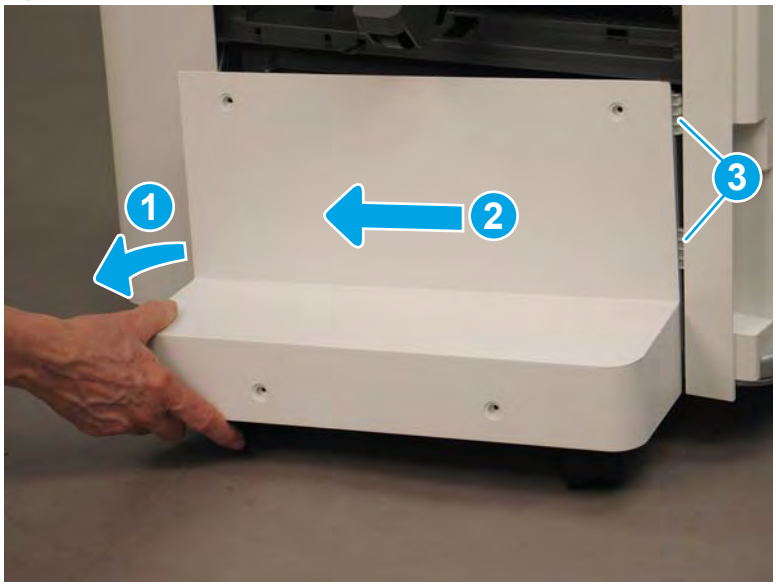


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-438 Remove the caster cover

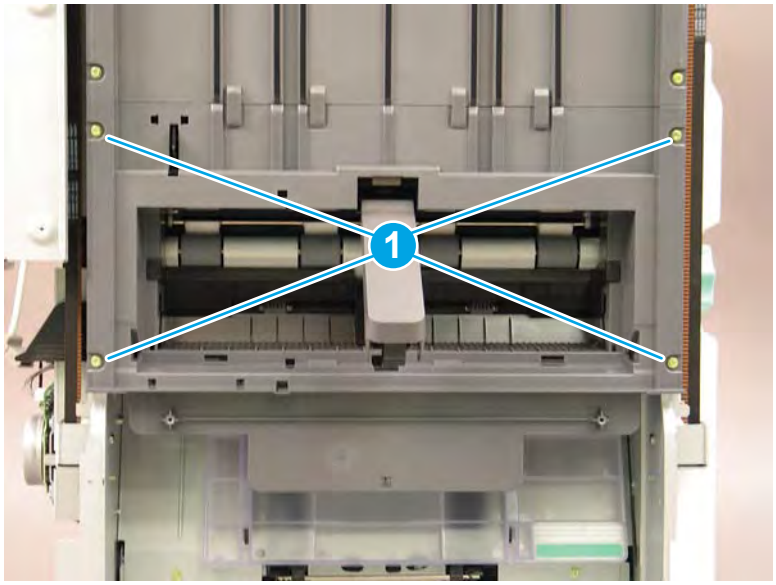


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 4-439 Remove four screws

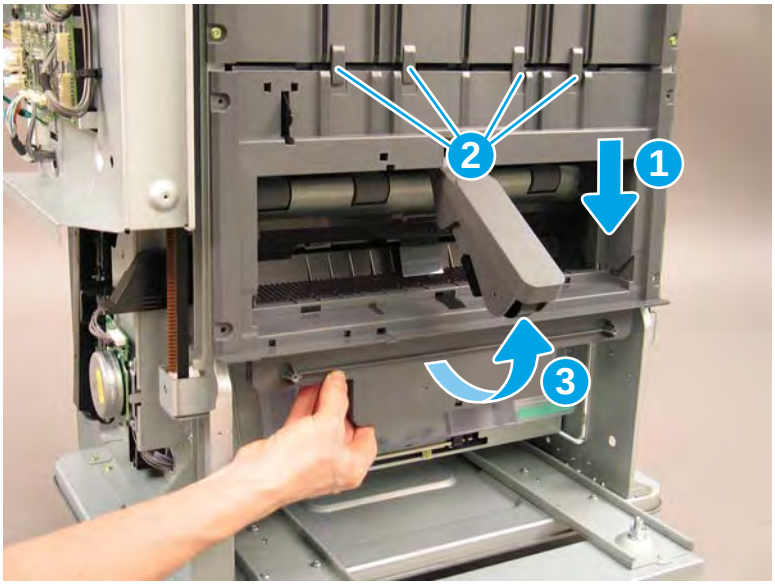


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

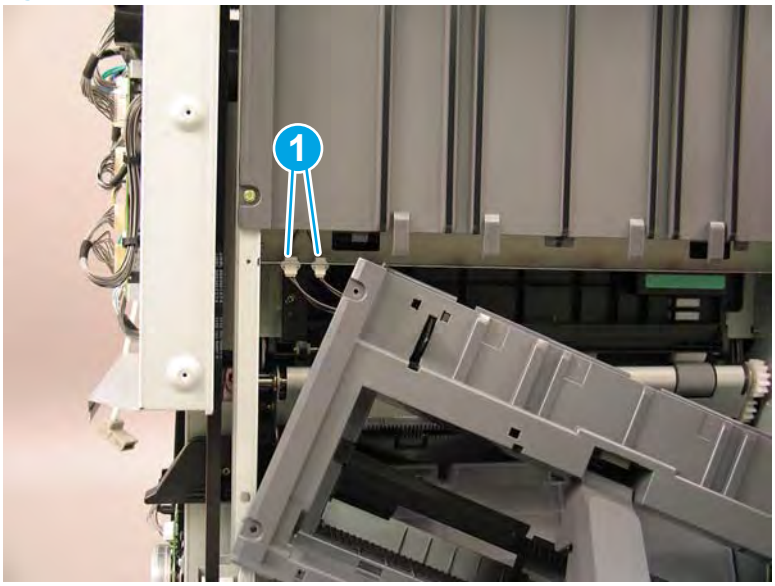
Figure 4-440 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

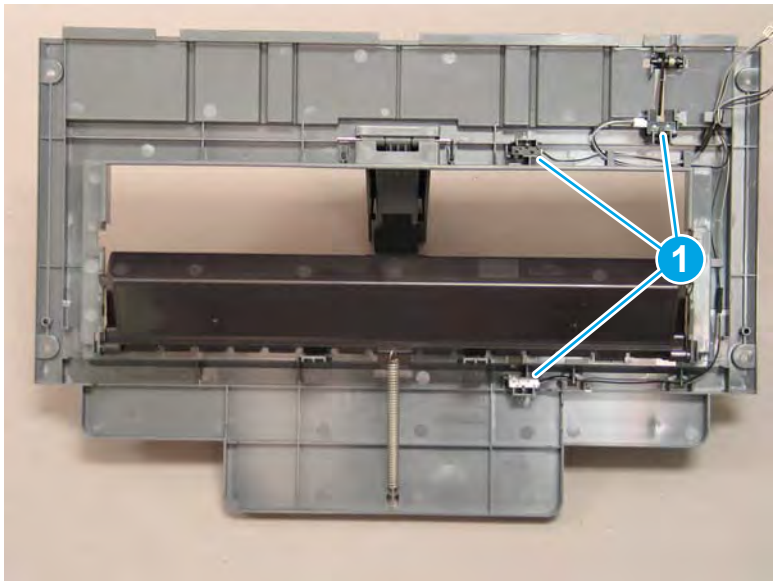
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-441 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

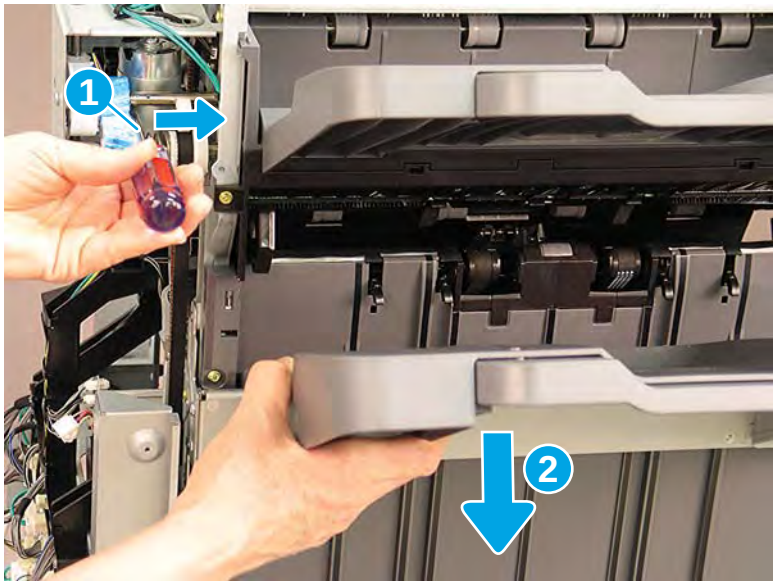
Figure 4-442 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

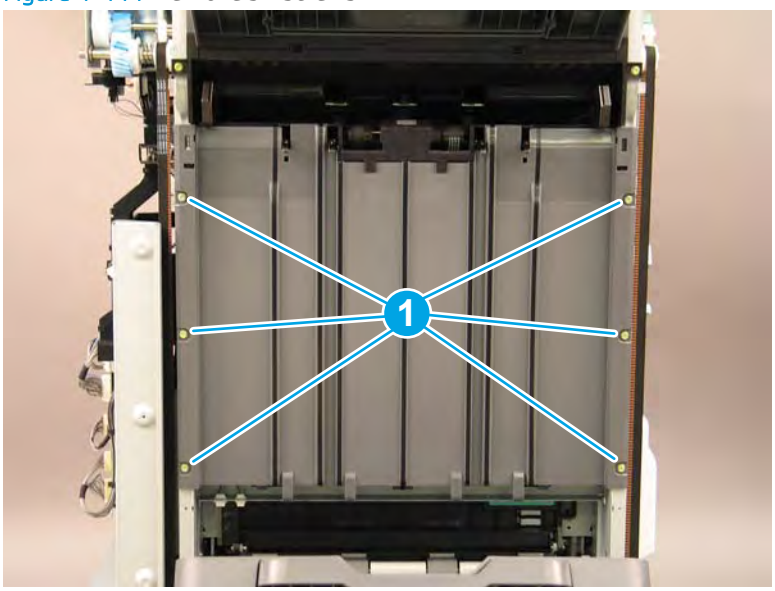
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 4-443 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-444 Remove six screws

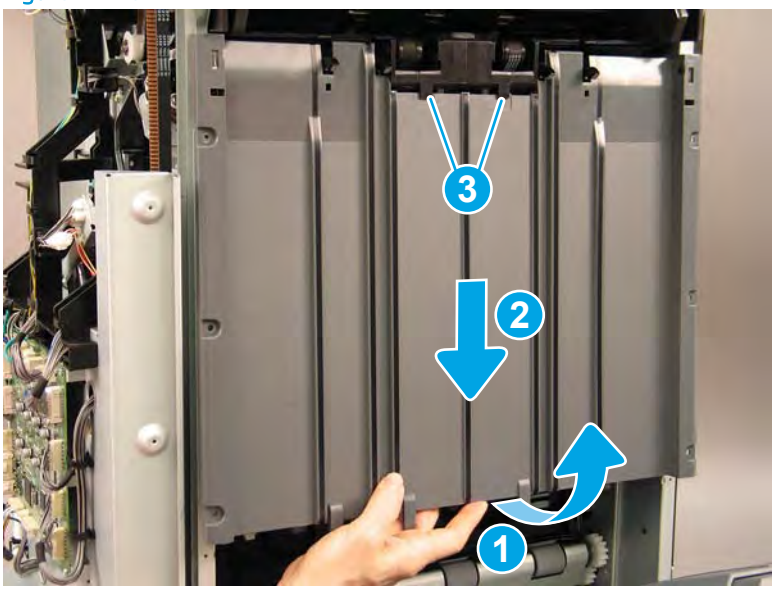


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

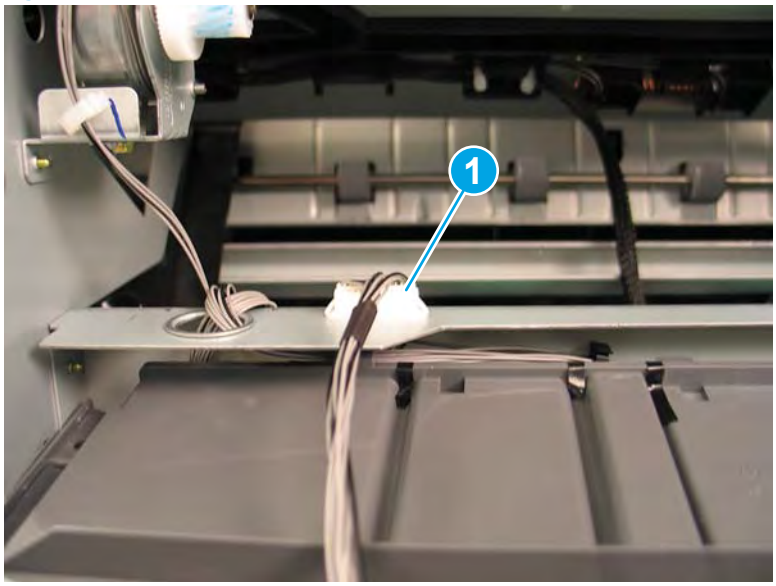
Figure 4-445 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

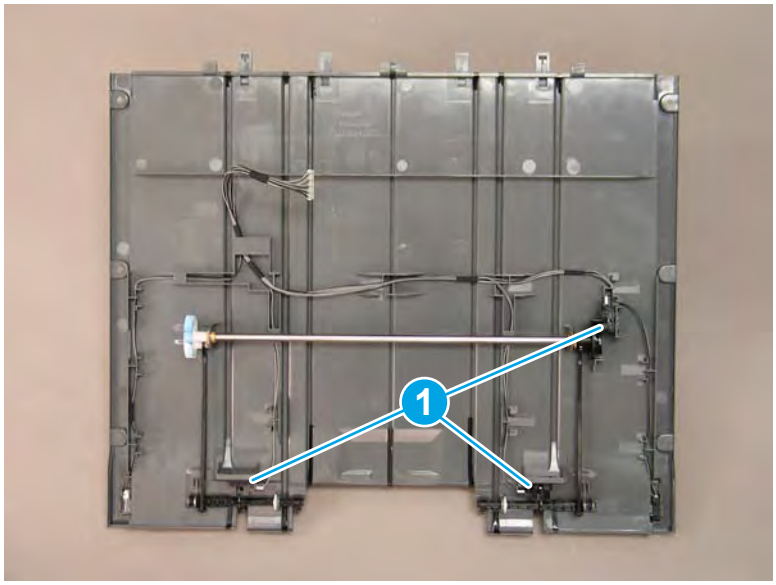
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-446 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

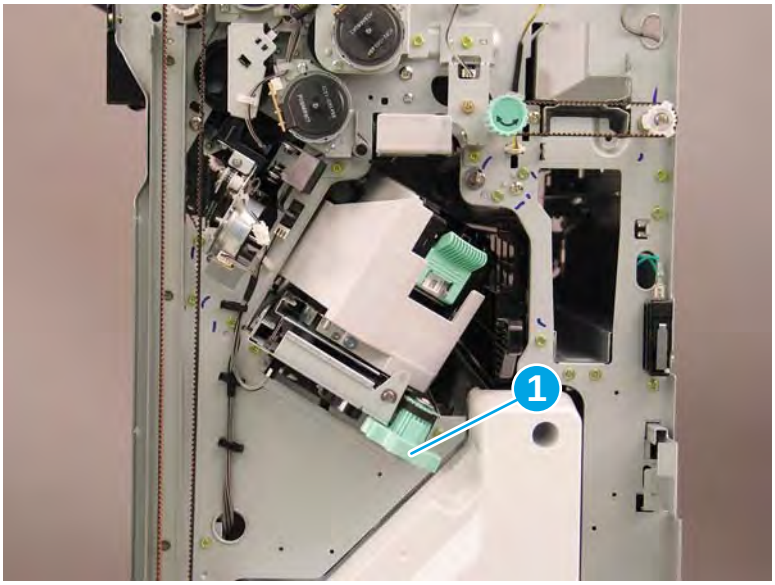
Figure 4-447 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

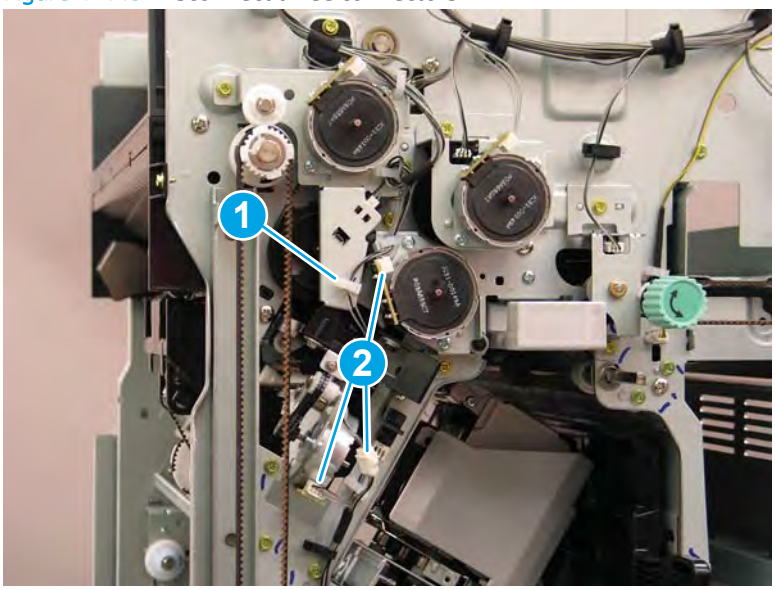
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 4-448 Move the staple unit to the center



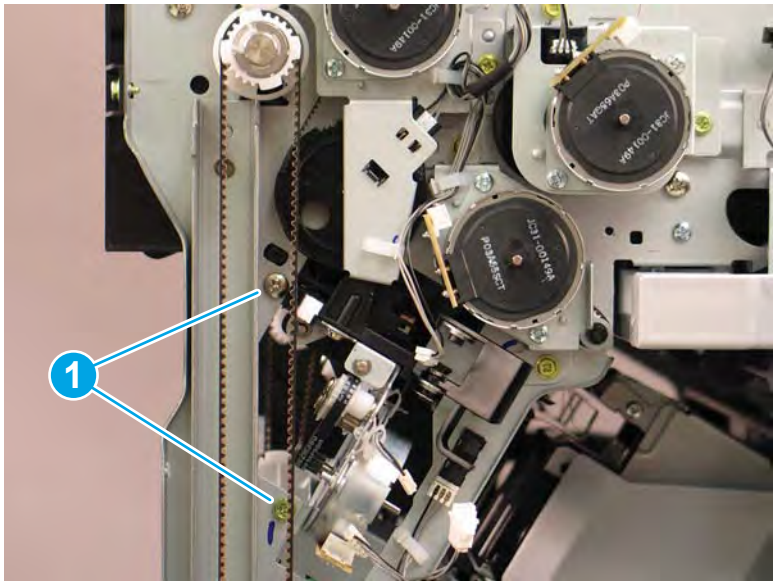
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 4-449 Disconnect three connectors



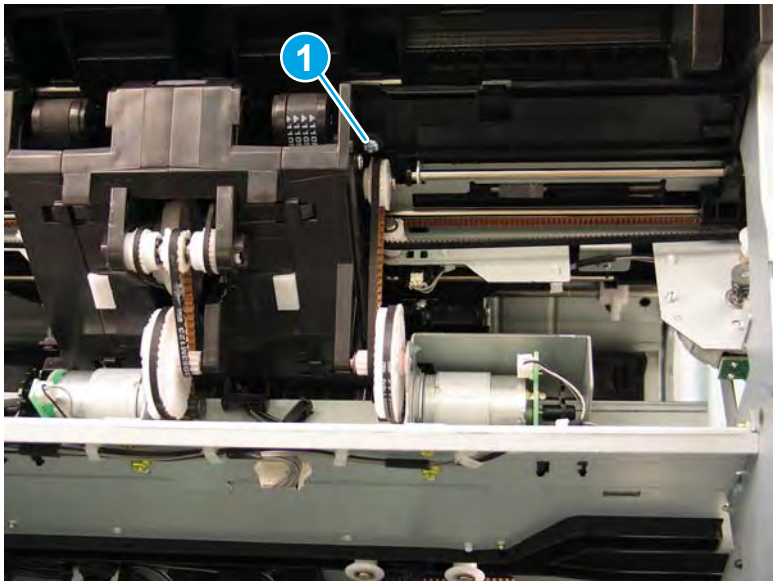
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-450 Remove two screws



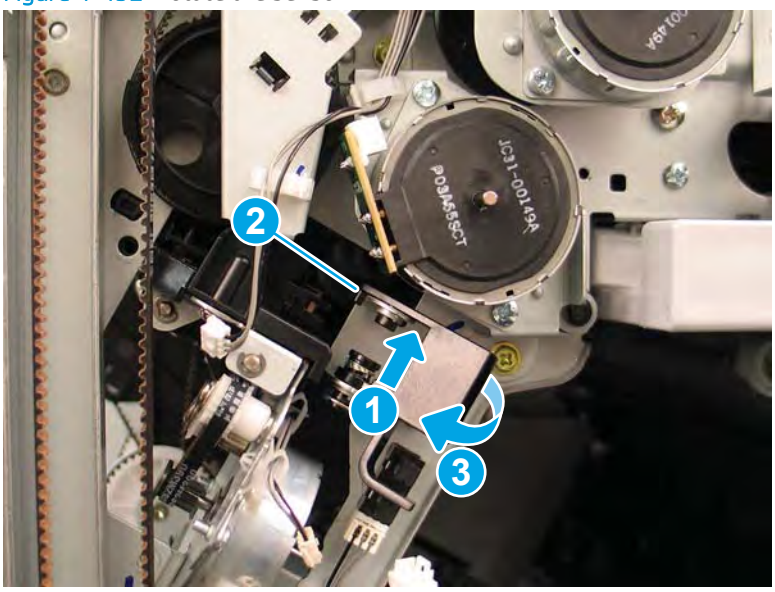
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-451 Remove one screw



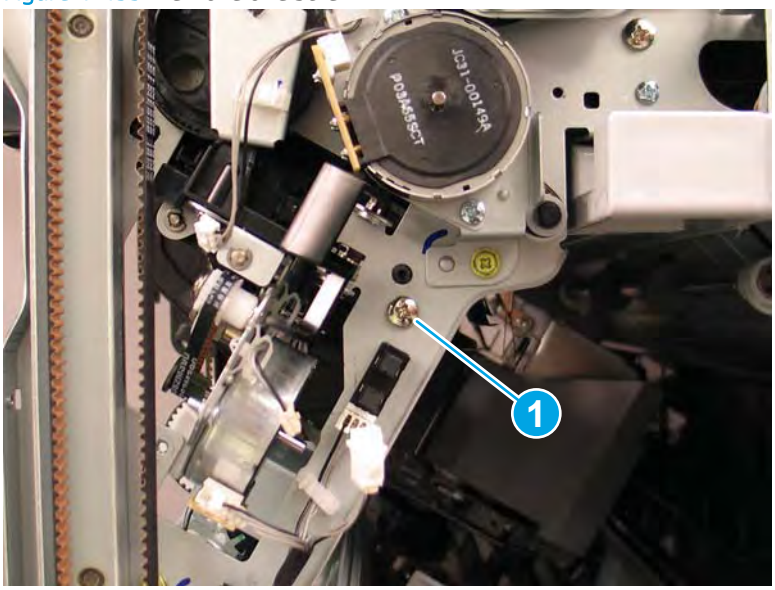
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 4-452 Rotate the sensor



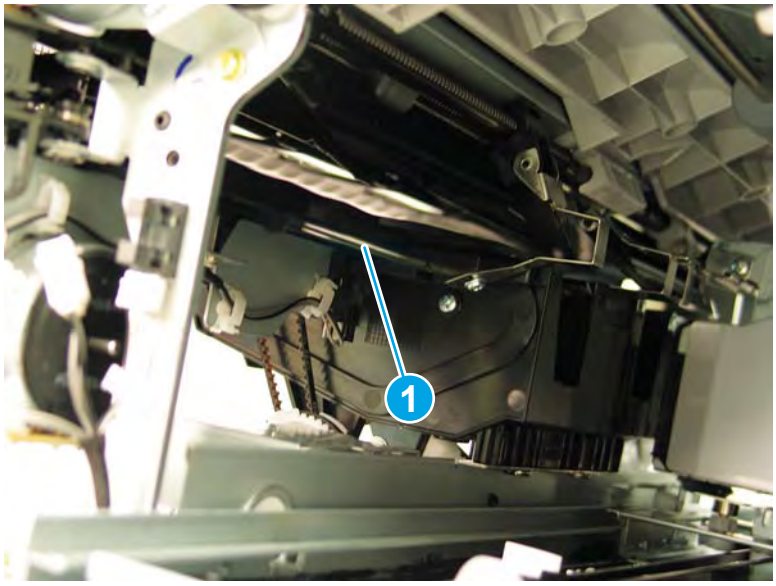
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-453 Remove one screw



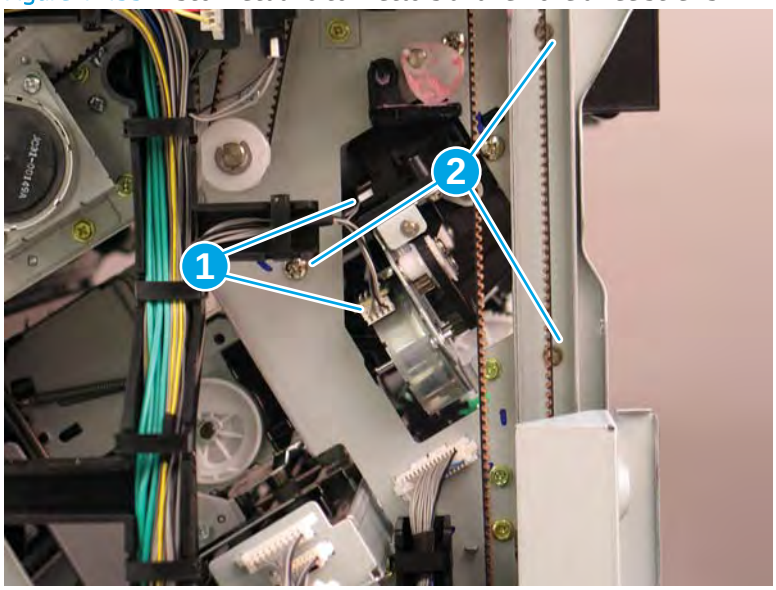
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 4-454 Remove the front tamper shaft



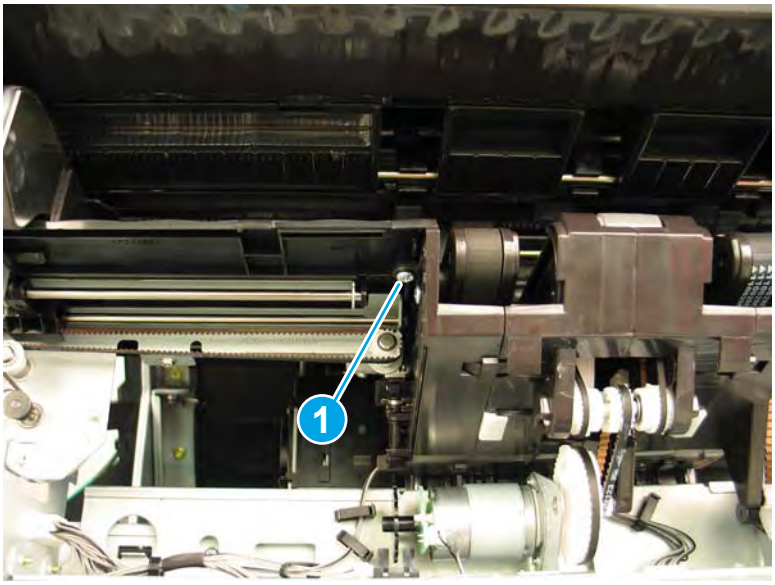
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-455 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



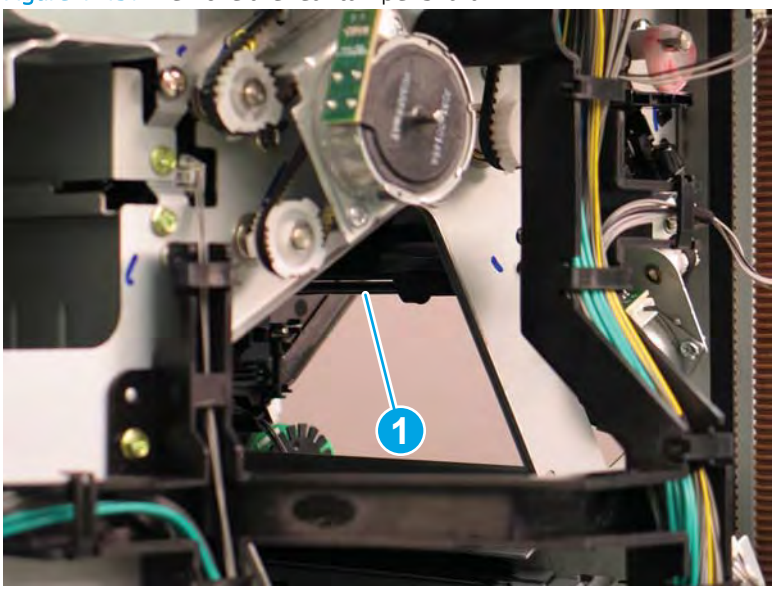
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-456 Remove one screw



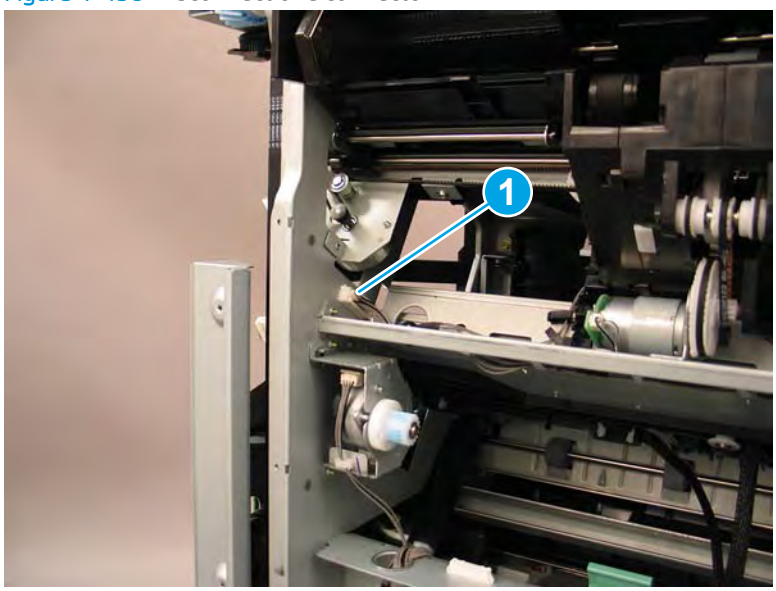
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 4-457 Remove the rear tamper shaft



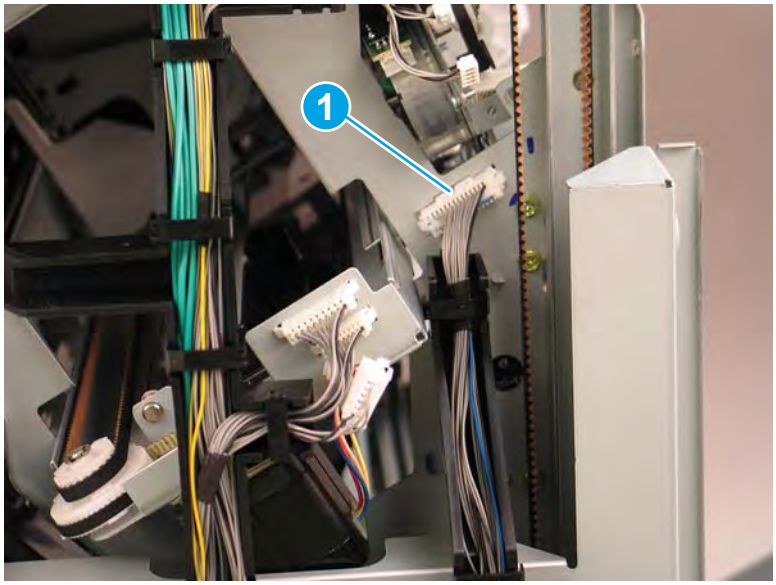
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-458 Disconnect one connector



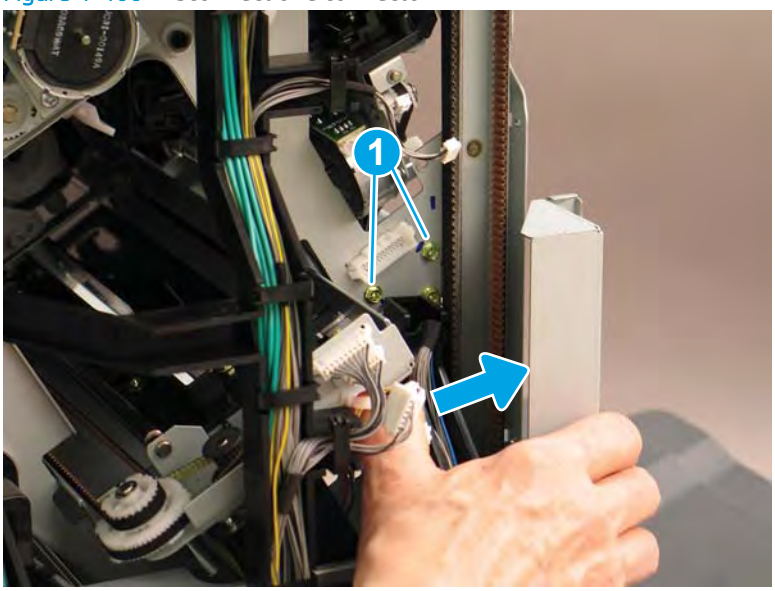
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-459 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-460 Disconnect one connector



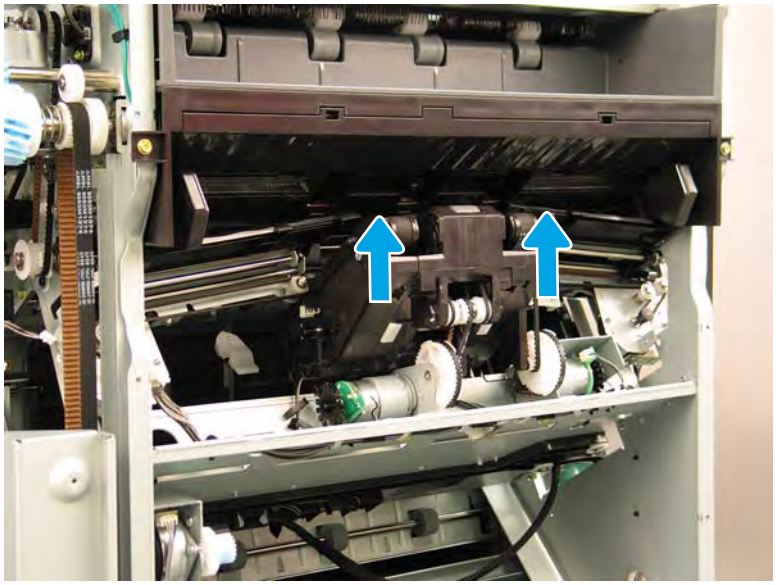
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-461 Remove two screws



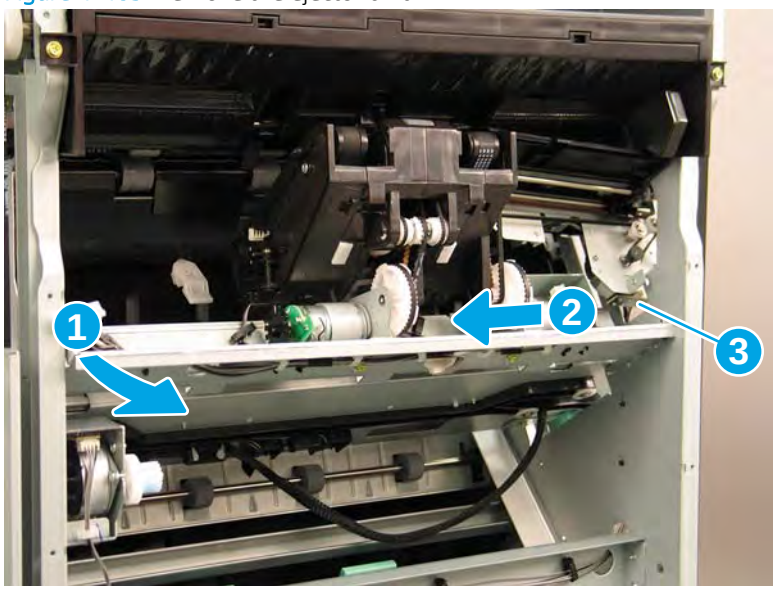
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 4-462 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 4-463 Remove the ejector unit



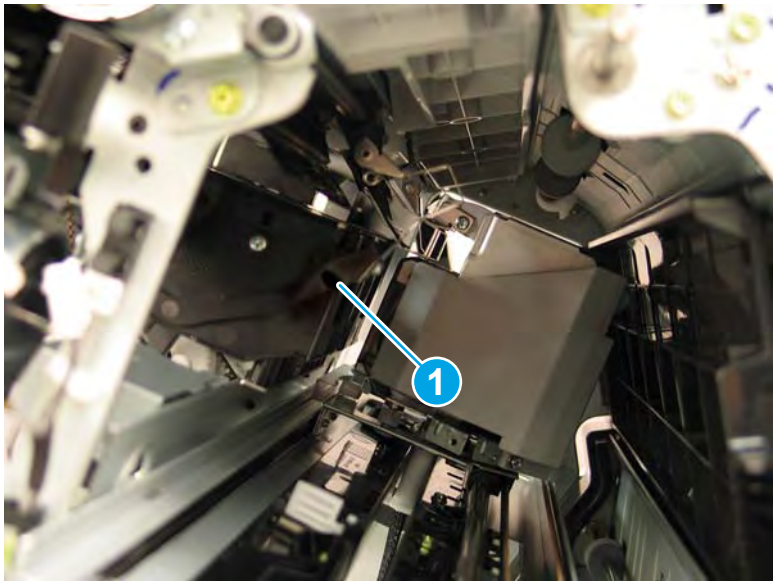
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

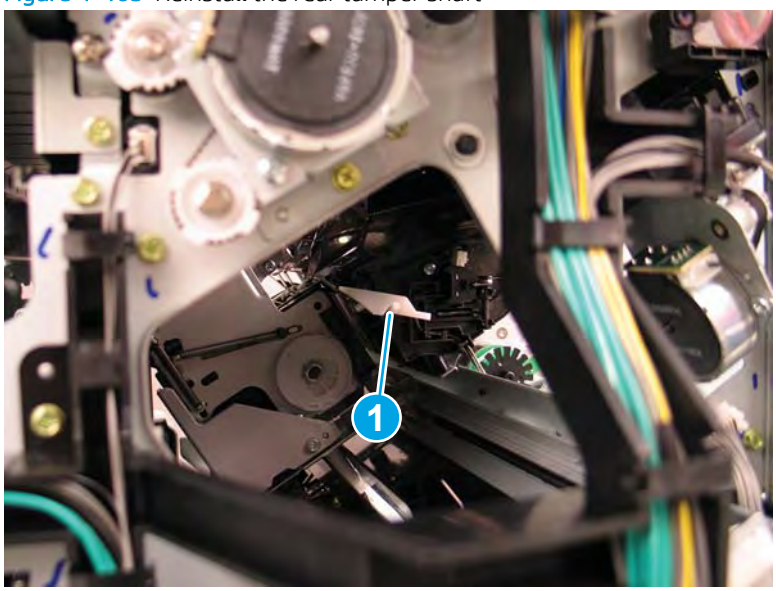
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-464 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-465 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft

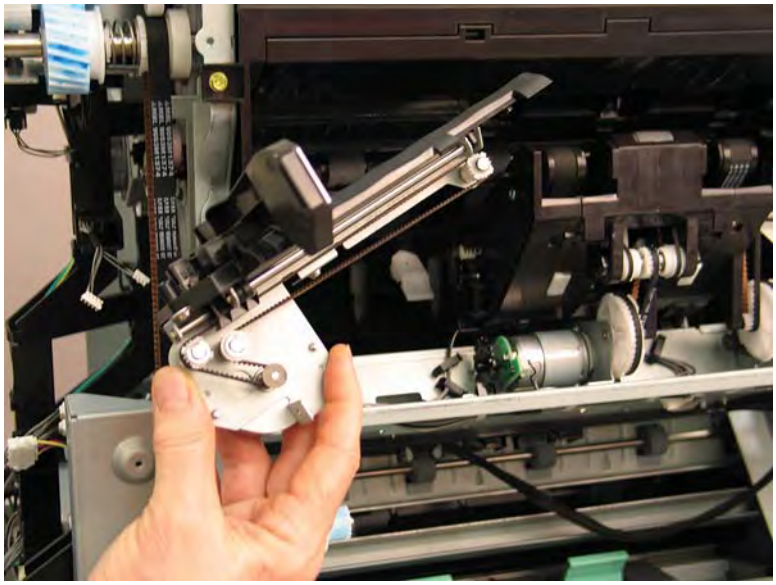


Step 11: Remove the rear tamper (finisher)

▲ Lift the rear tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

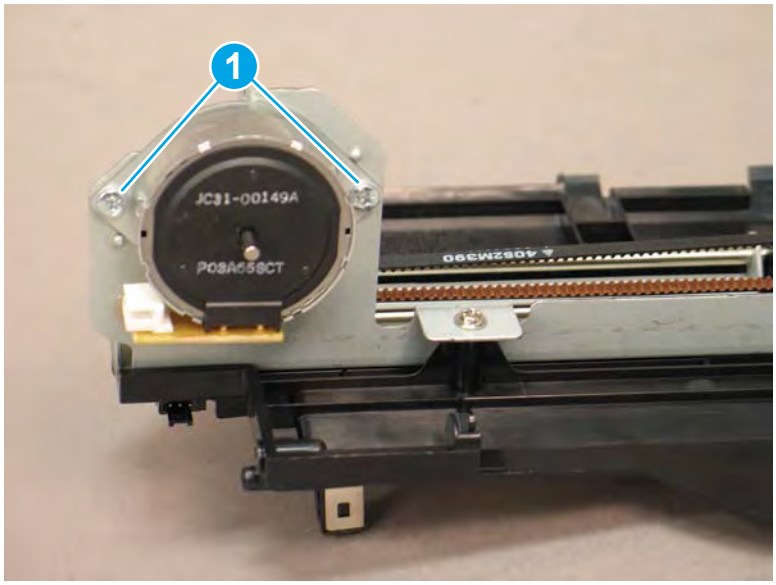
Figure 4-466 Remove the rear tamper



Step 12: Remove the rear tamper motor (M7)

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-467 Remove two screws

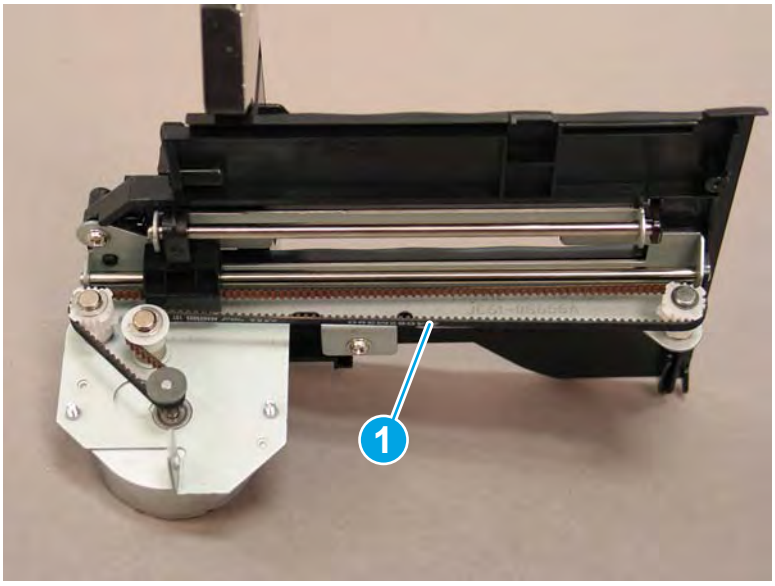


2. Release the belt (callout 1), and then remove the rear tamper motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt is routed correctly when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-468 Release the belt and remove the motor



Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

SCU motor (M10)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the SCU motor (M10)
- Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the SCU motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC93-01156A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

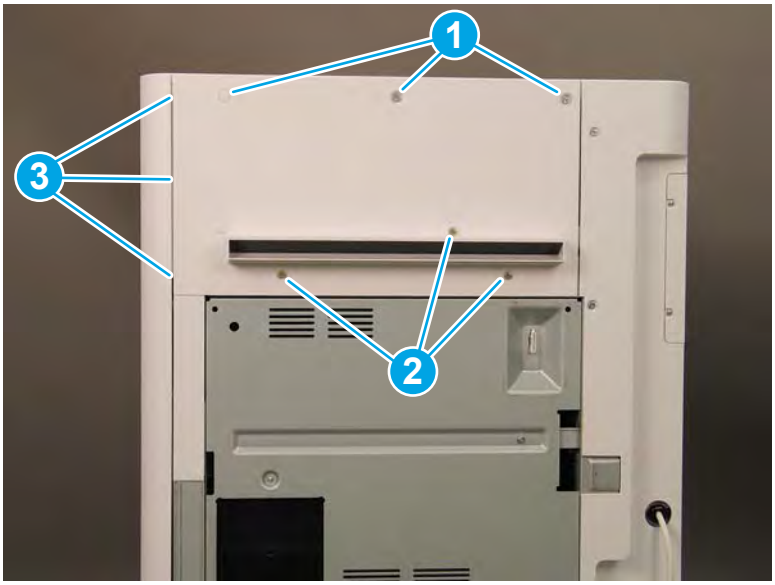
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

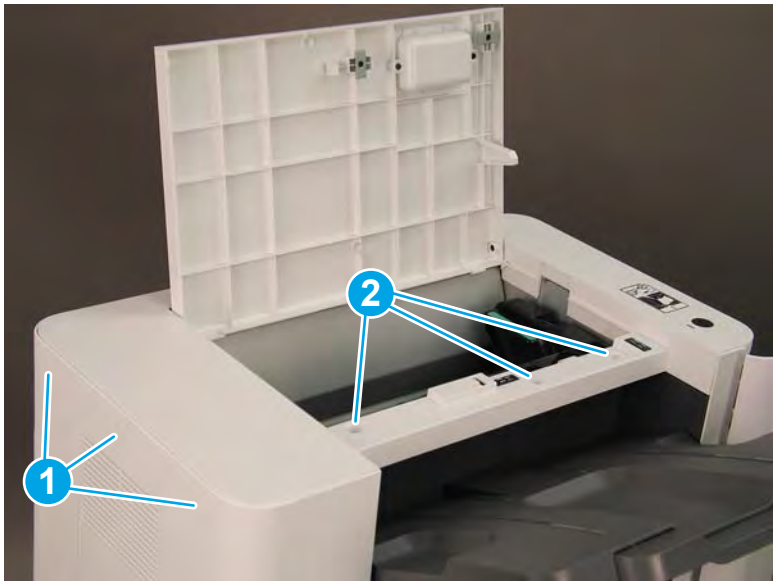
Figure 4-469 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

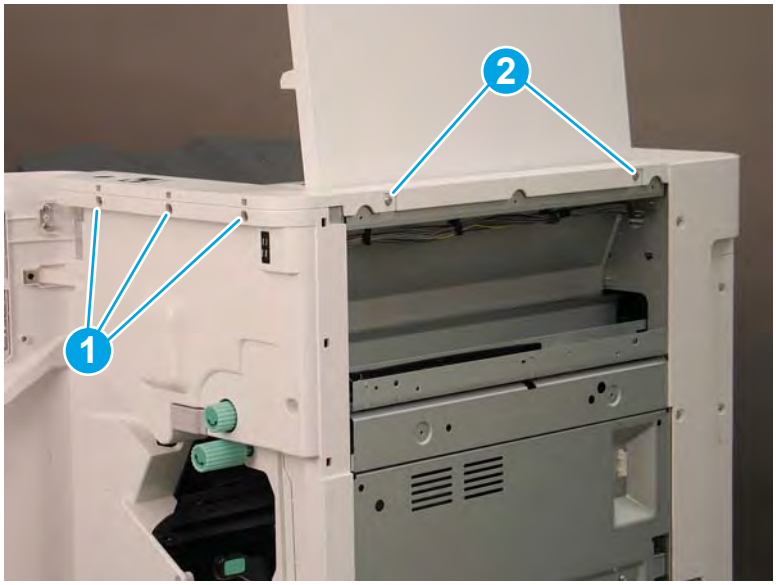
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-470 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

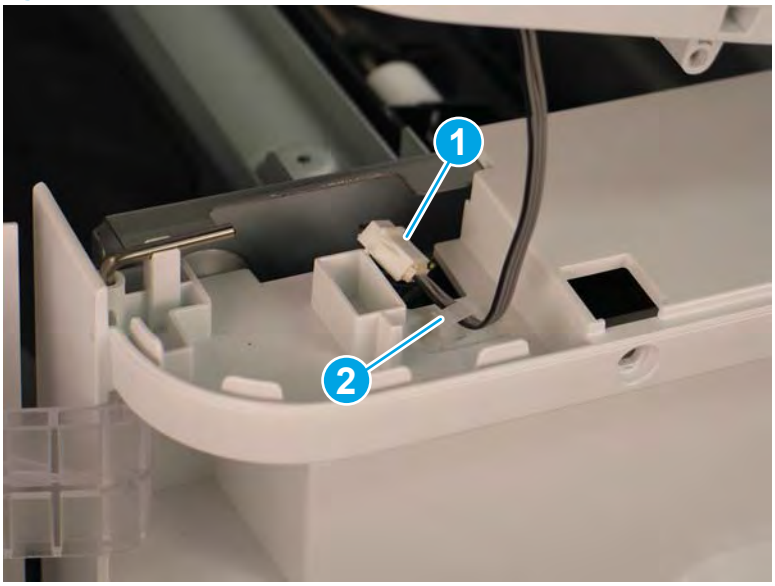
Figure 4-471 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-472 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

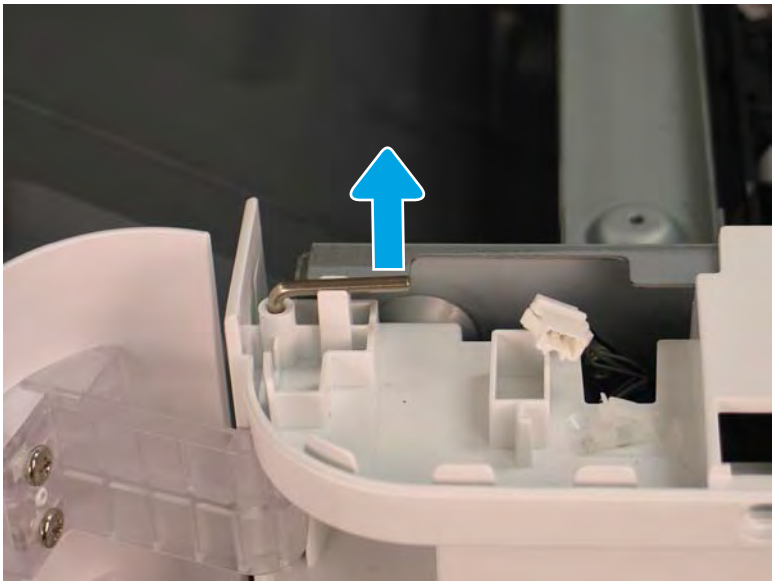


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

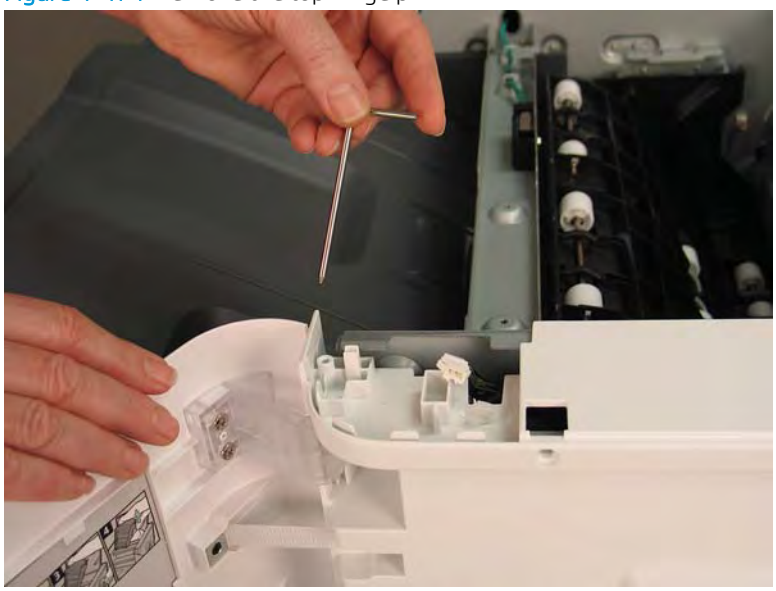
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-473 Lift the top hinge pin



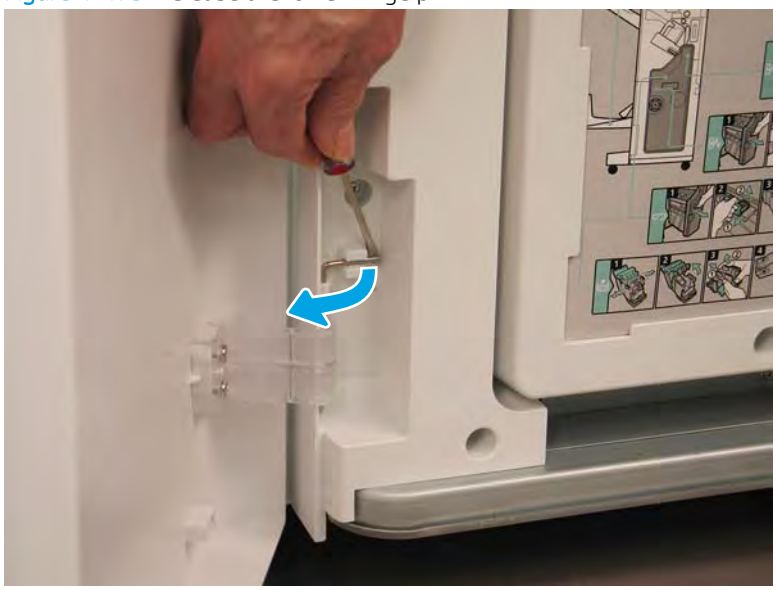
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-474 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 4-475 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

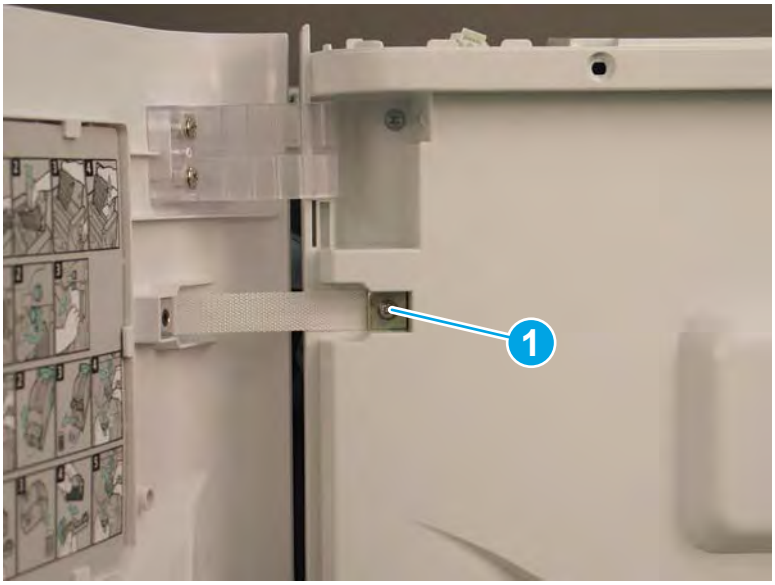
Figure 4-476 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

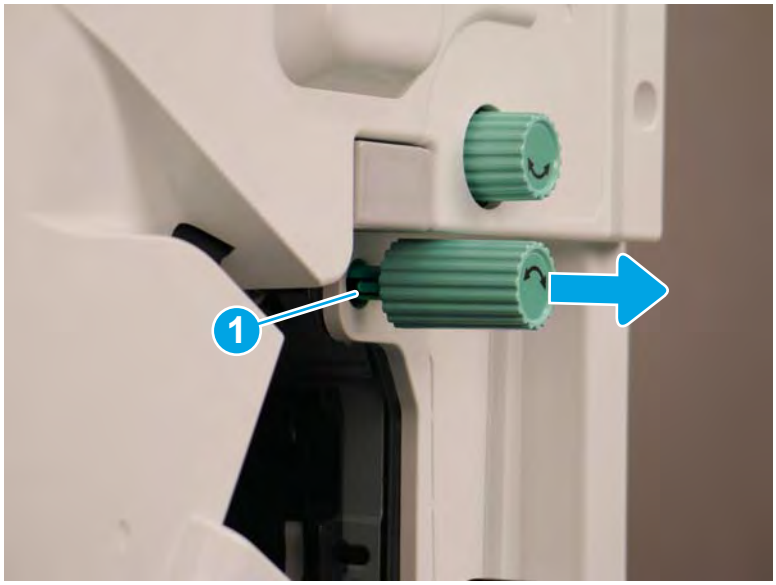
Figure 4-477 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-478 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

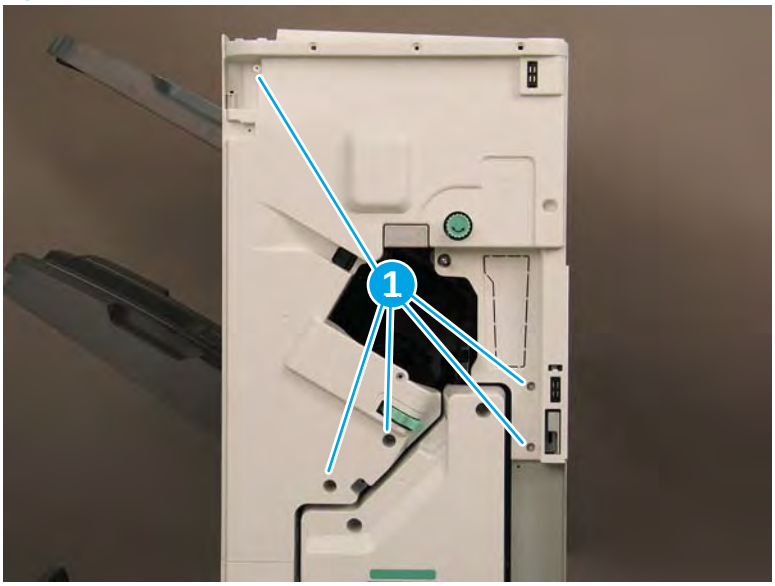
Figure 4-479 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

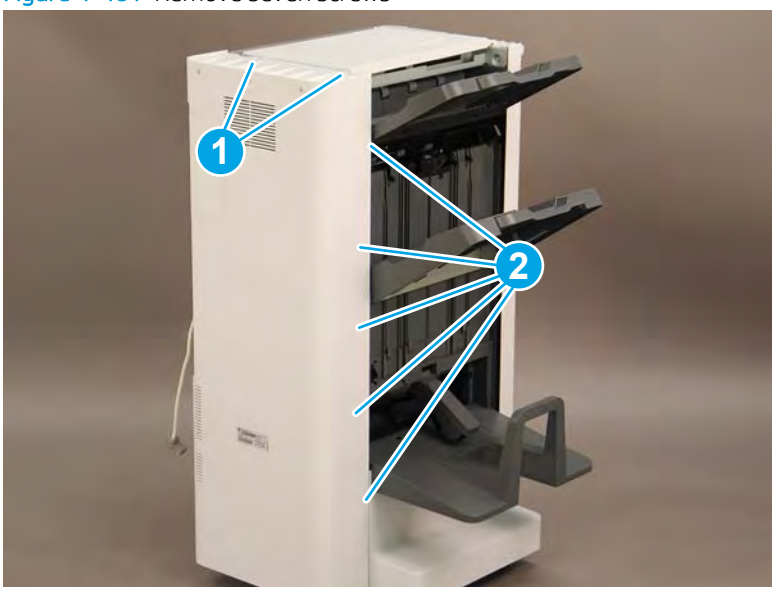
Figure 4-480 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-481 Remove seven screws

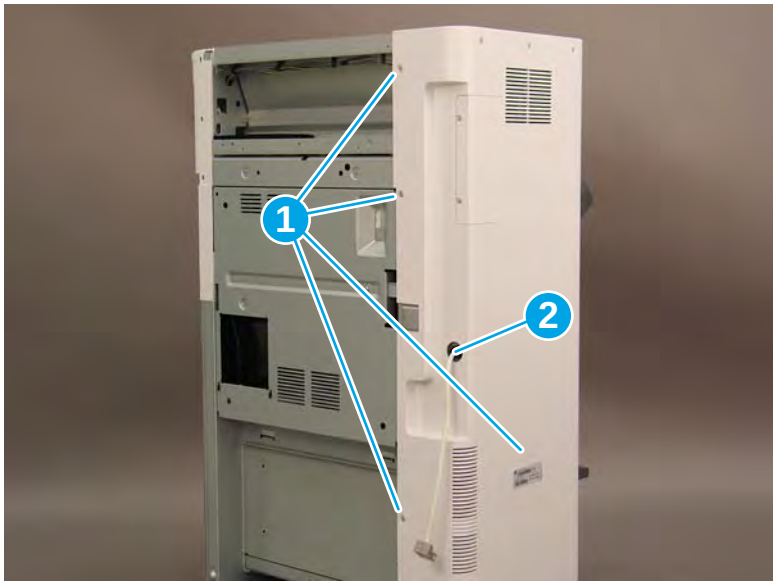


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

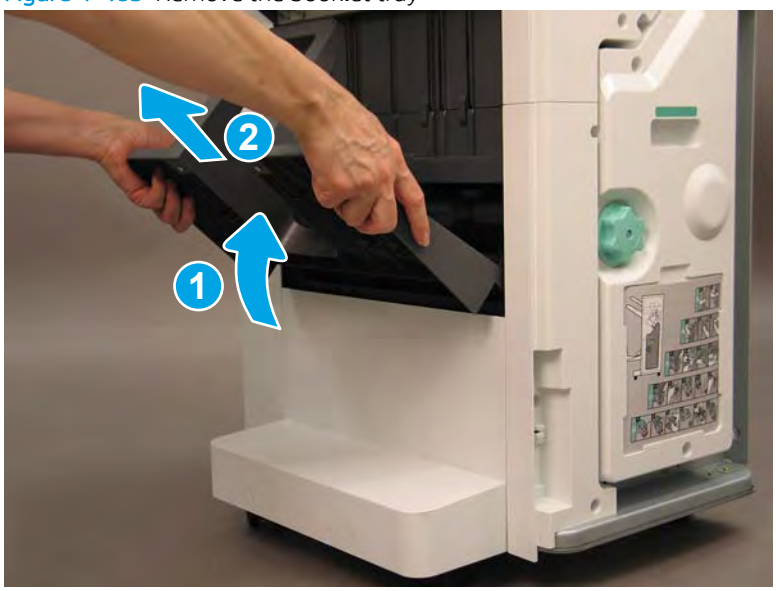
Figure 4-482 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-483 Remove the booklet tray



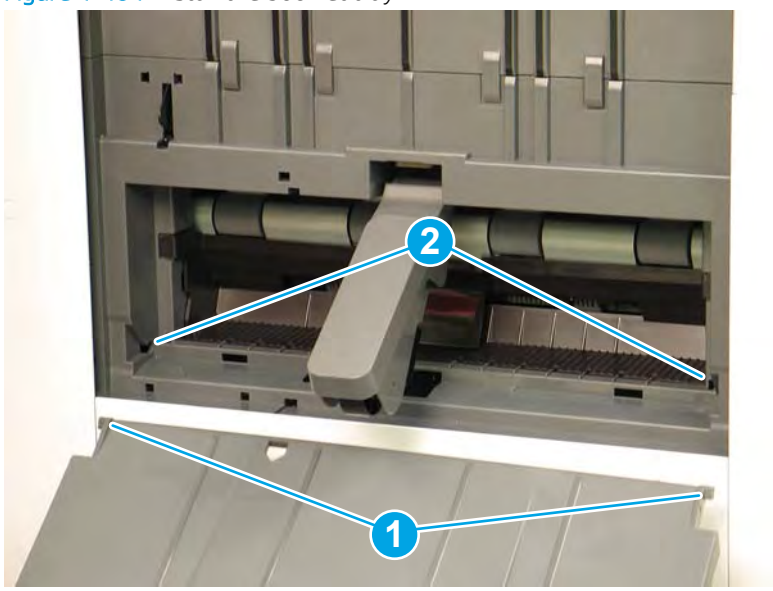
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

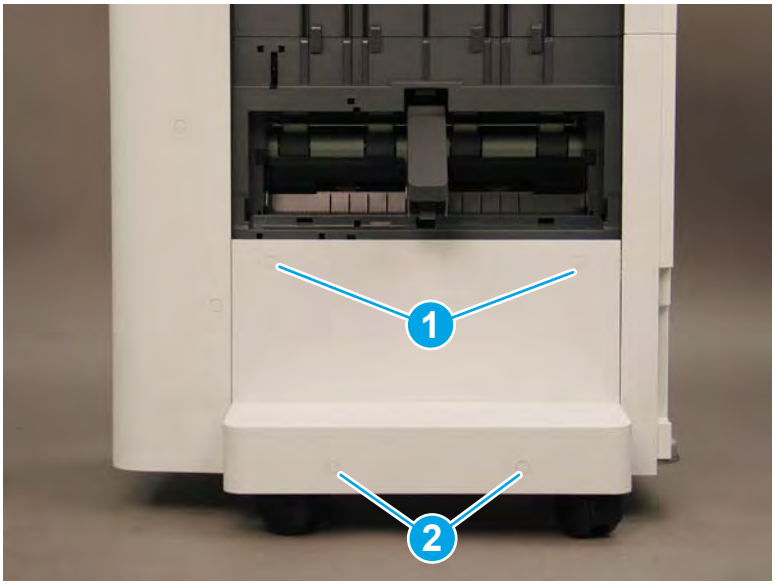
Figure 4-484 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-485 Remove four screws

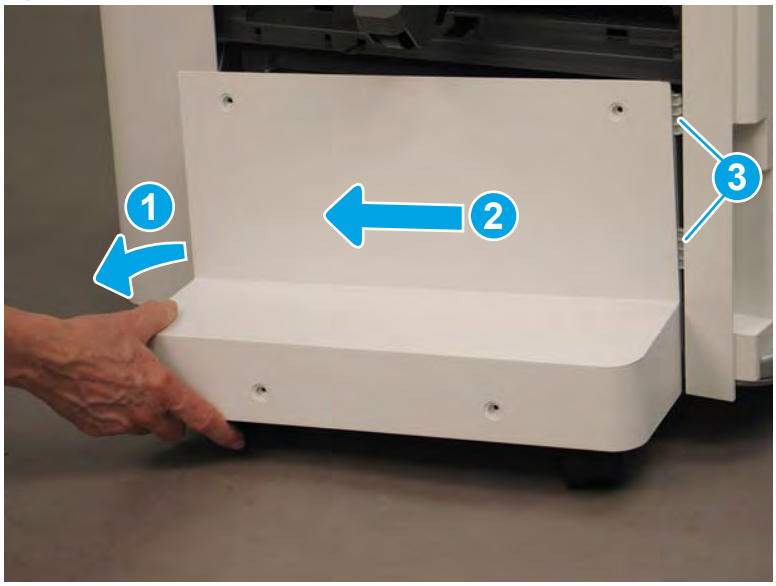


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-486 Remove the caster cover

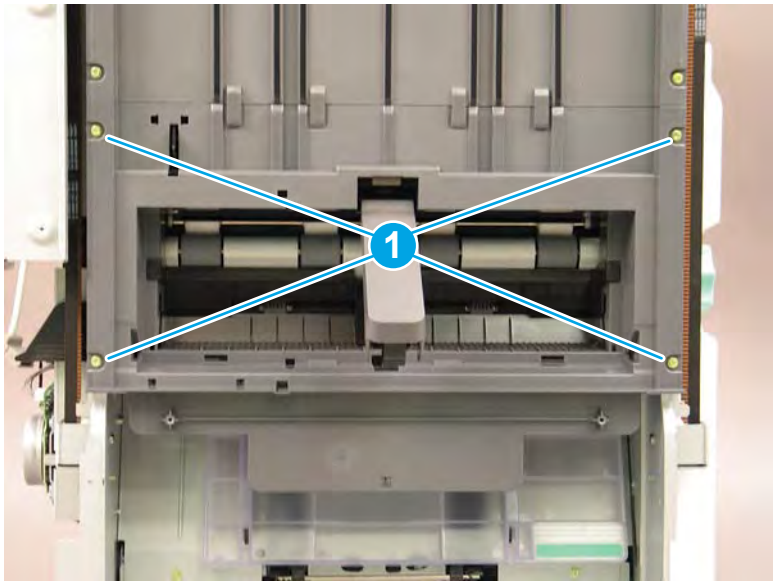


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 4-487 Remove four screws

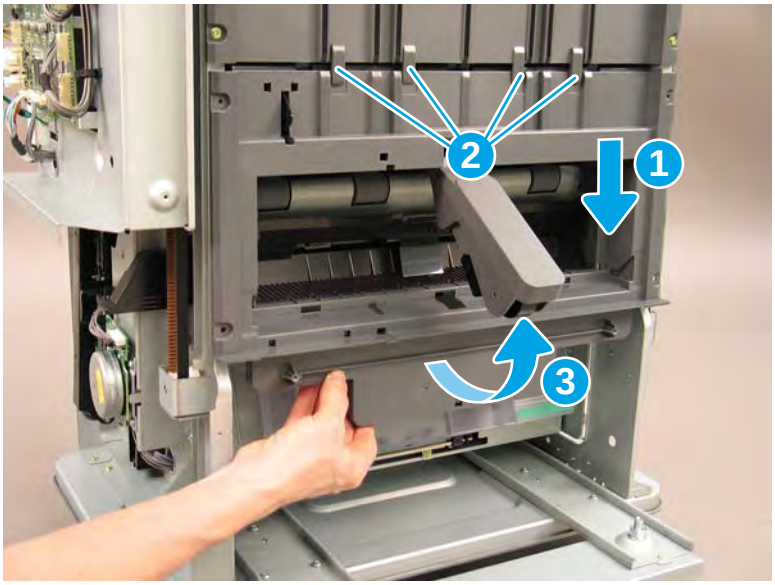


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

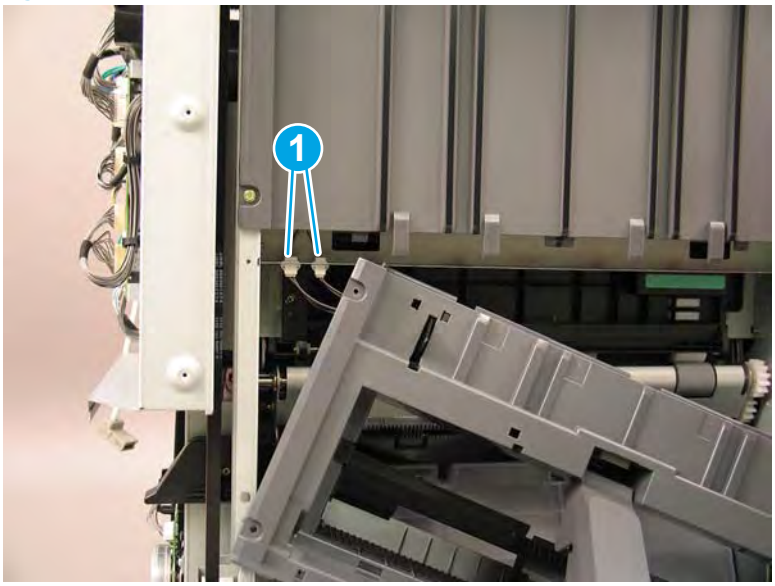
Figure 4-488 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

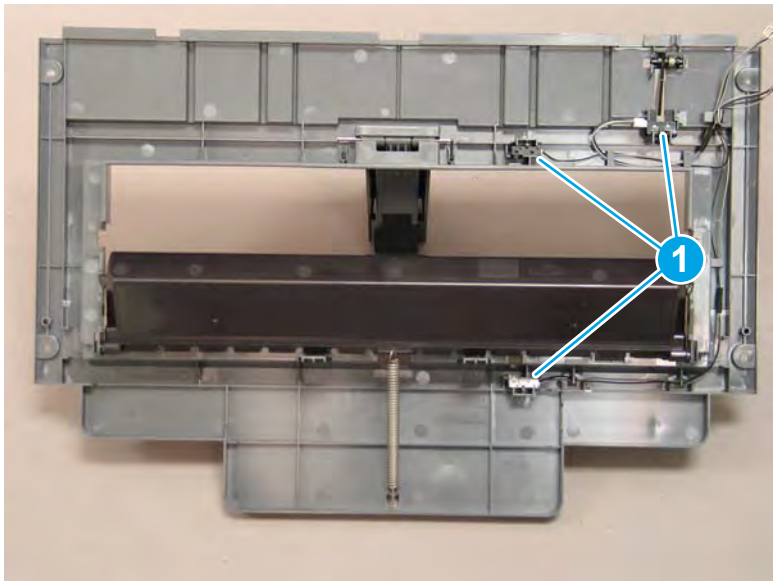
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-489 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

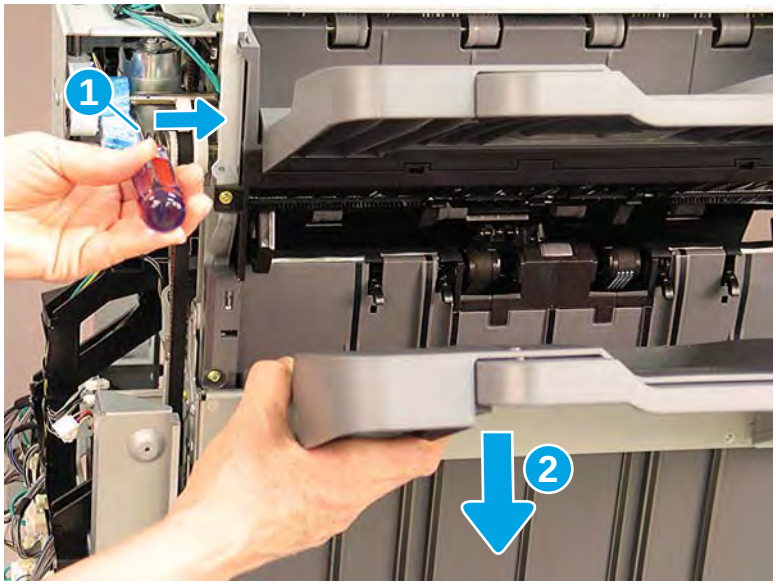
Figure 4-490 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

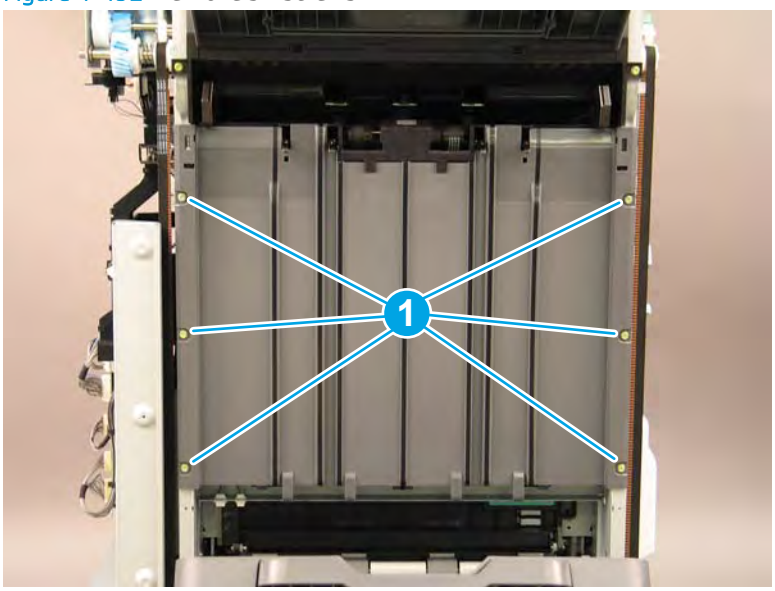
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 4-491 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-492 Remove six screws

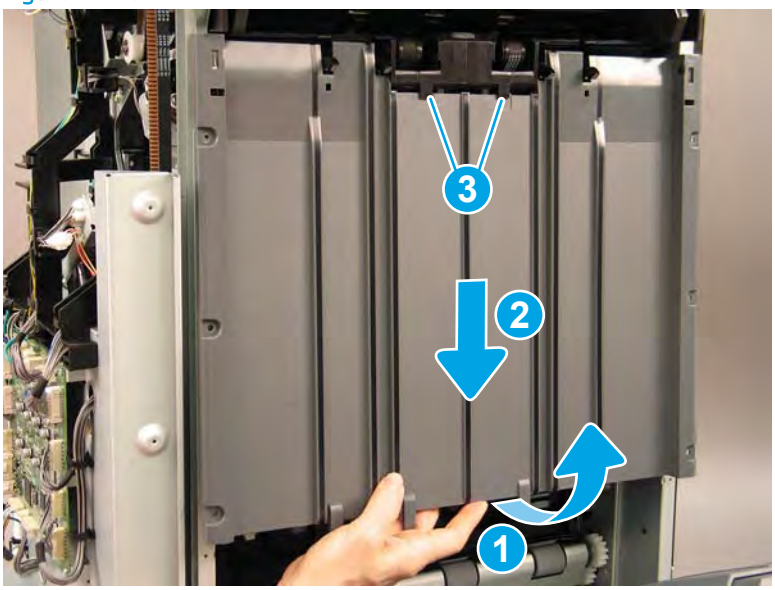


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

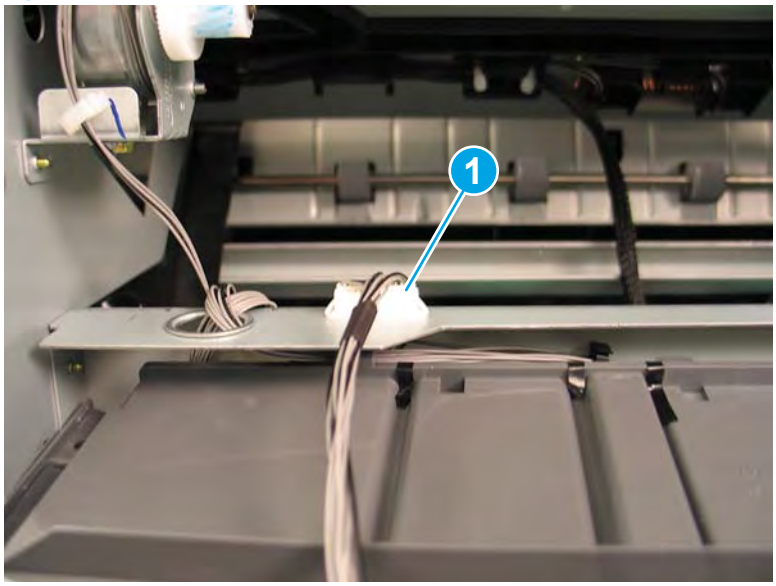
Figure 4-493 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

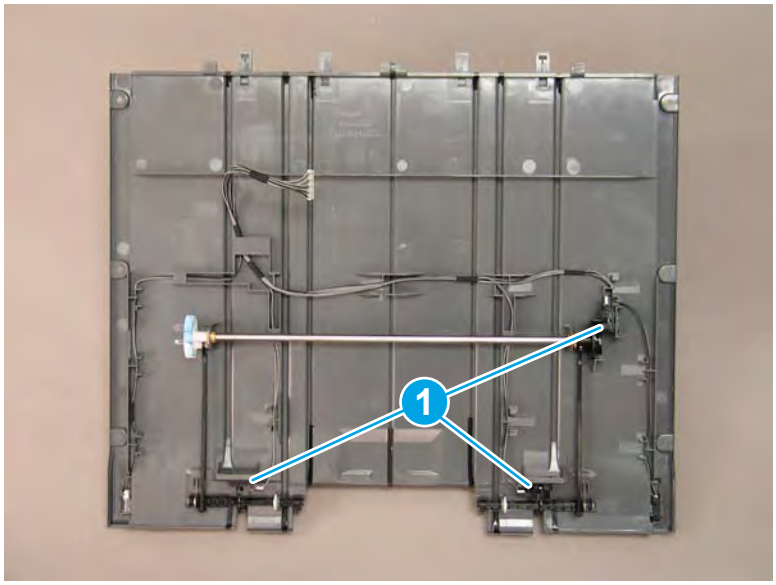
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-494 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

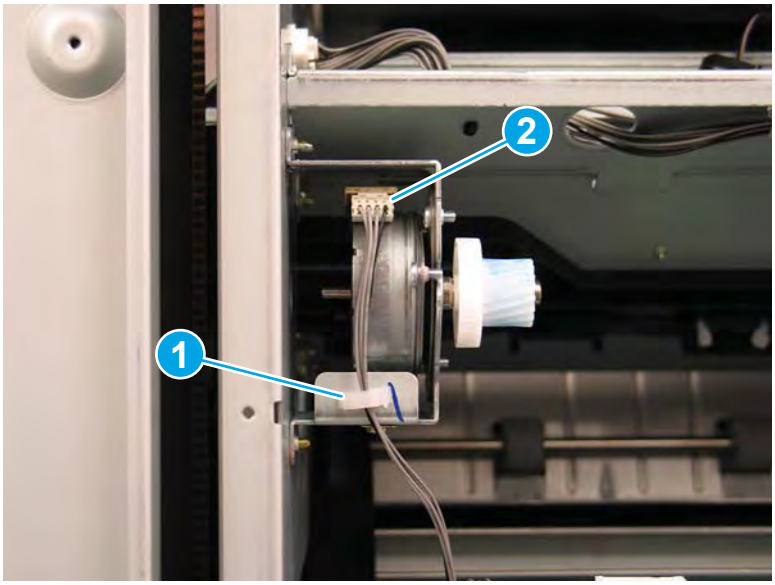
Figure 4-495 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the SCU motor (M10)

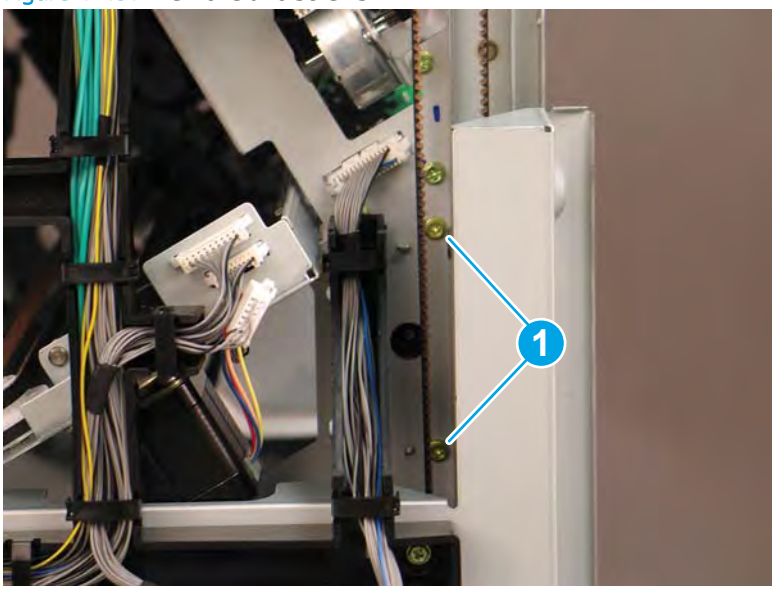
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 4-496 Disconnect one connector



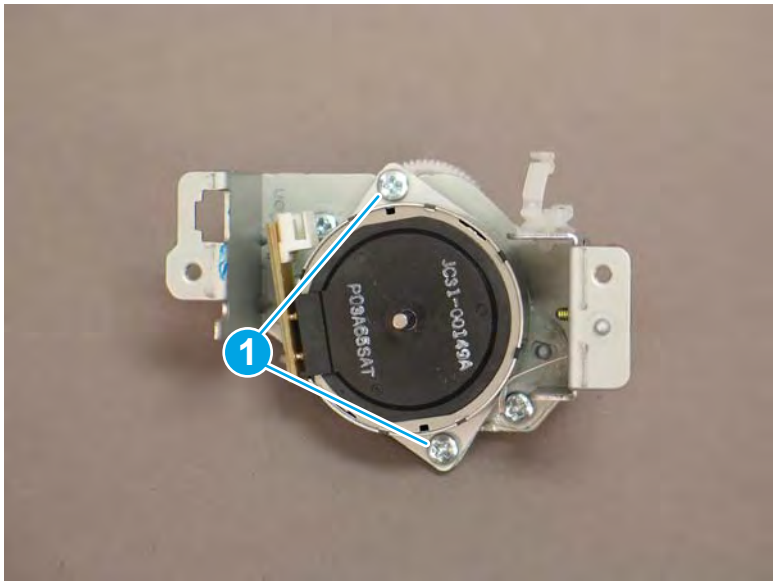
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor and bracket.

Figure 4-497 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor.

Figure 4-498 Remove two screws and the motor



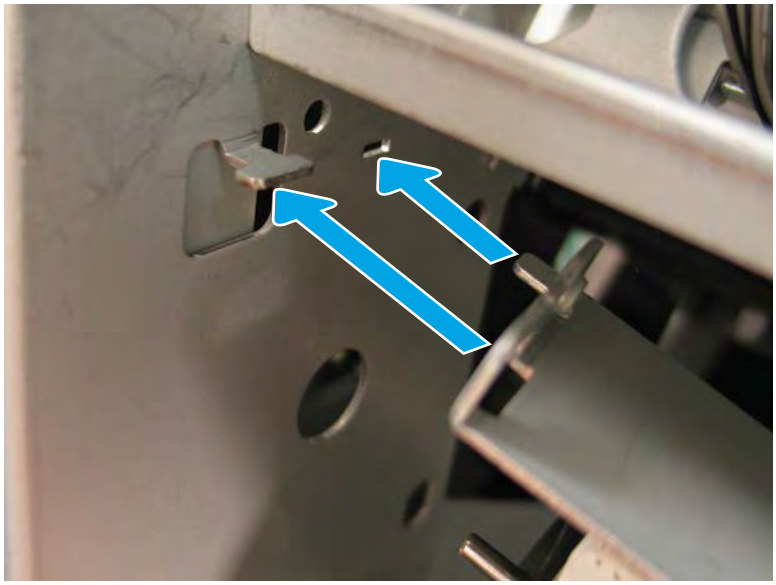
4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: SCU motor (M10)

▲ When installing the motor and bracket, align the tab and slot on the motor bracket with the tab and slot in the printer.

Figure 4-499 Install the motor and bracket



Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main tray moving motor (M11)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the main tray moving motor (M11)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main tray moving motor (M11) on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01415B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

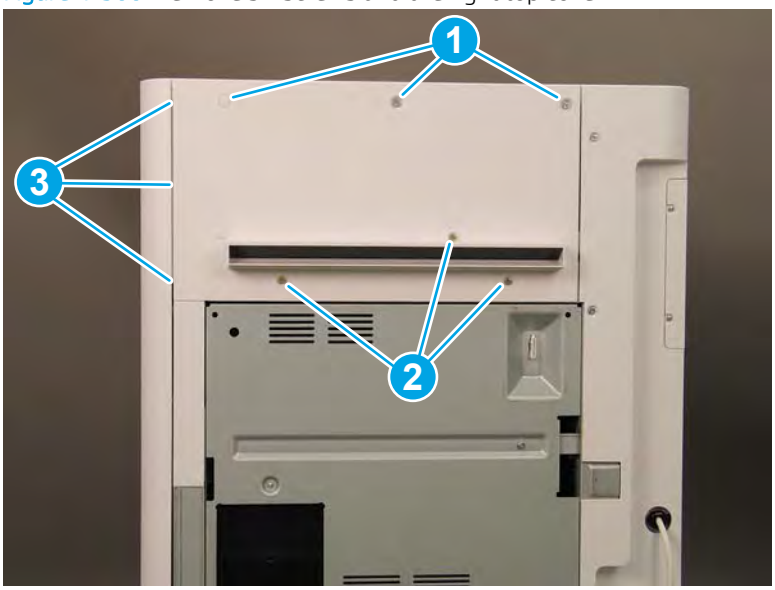
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

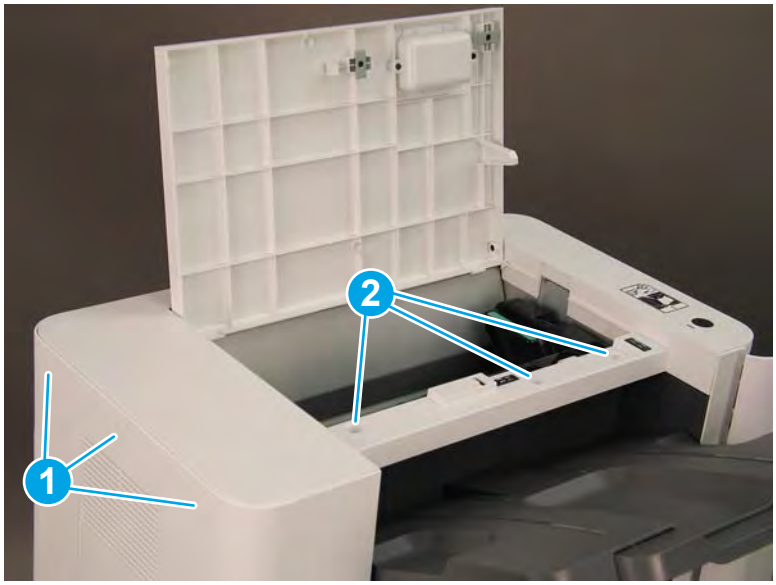
Figure 4-500 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

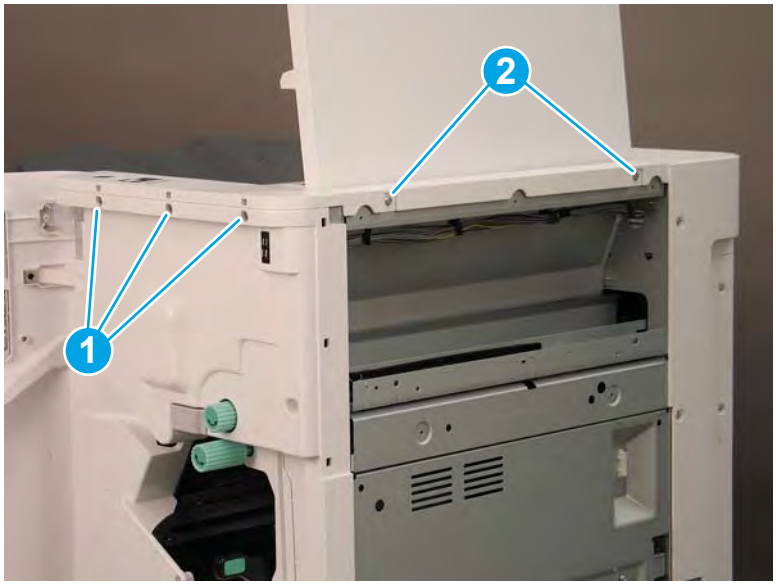
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-501 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

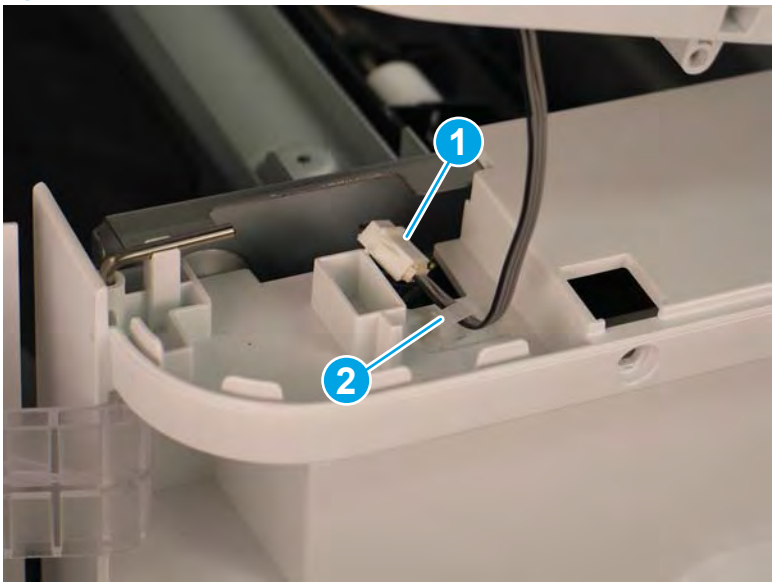
Figure 4-502 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-503 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

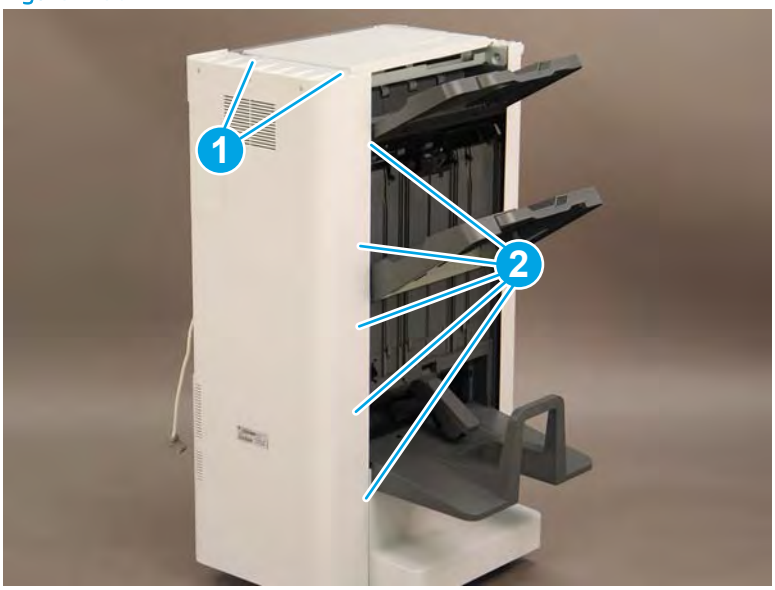


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-504 Remove seven screws

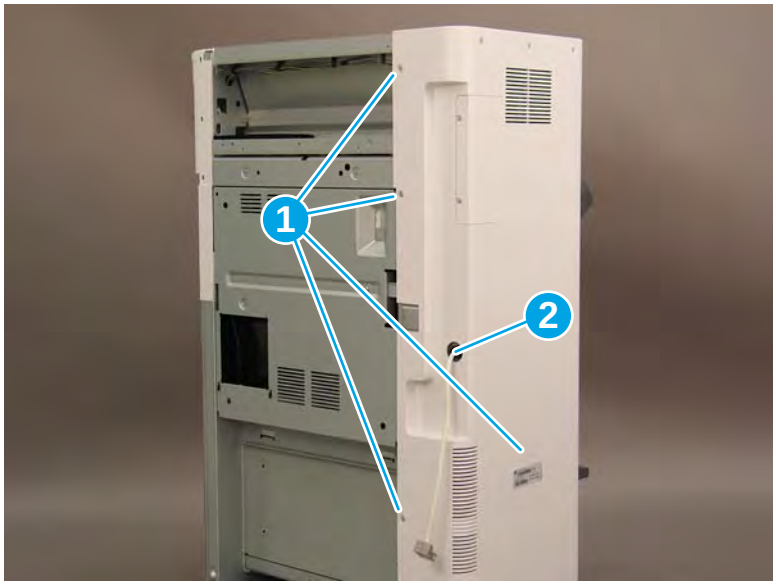


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

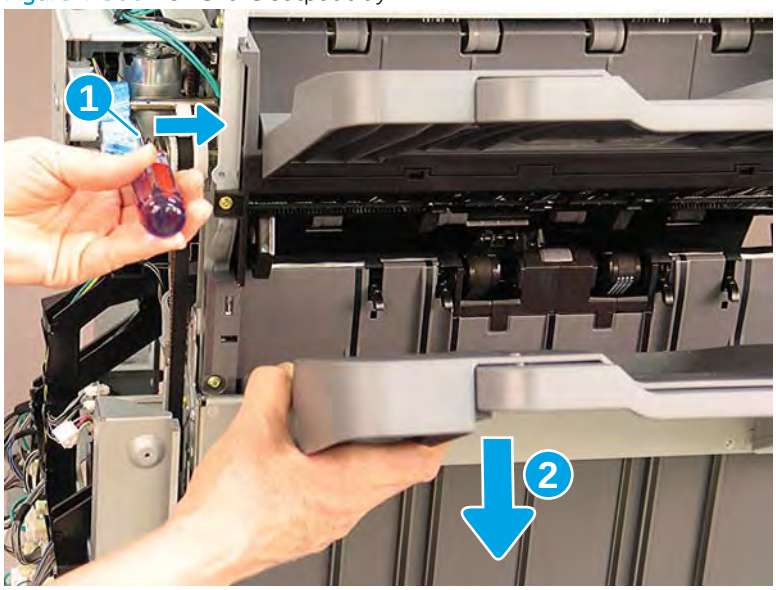
Figure 4-505 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 4: Remove the main tray moving motor (M11)

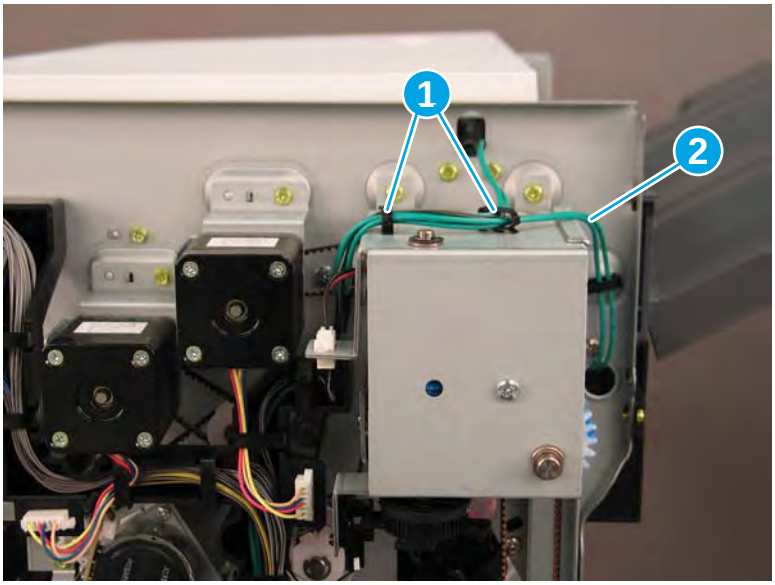
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 4-506 Lower the output tray



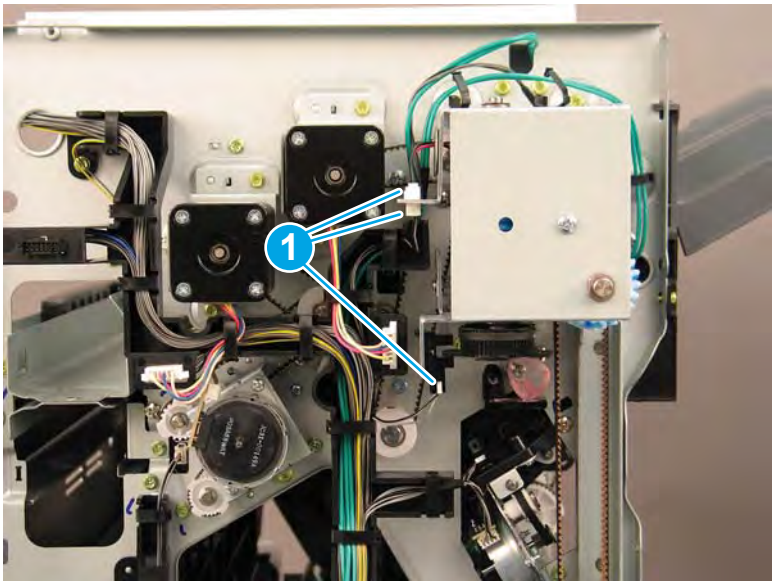
2. Open two retainers (callout 1), and then release the green wires (callout 2).

Figure 4-507 Open two retainers



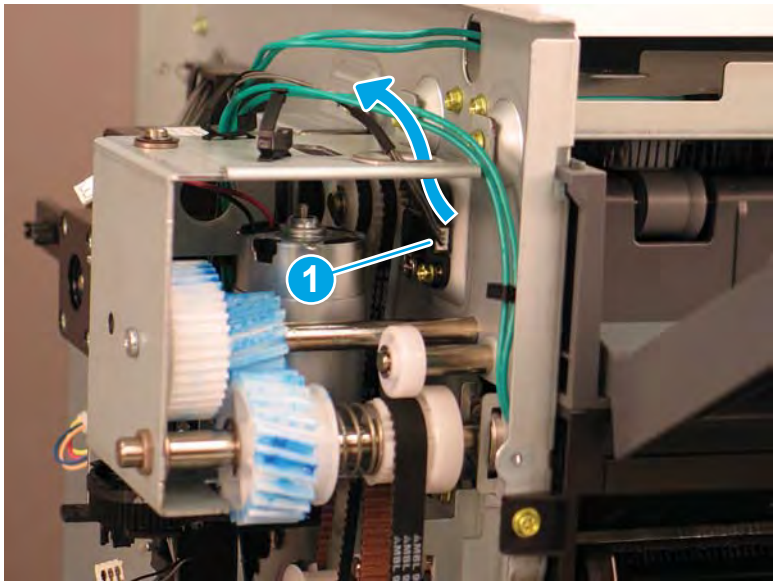
3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-508 Disconnect three connectors



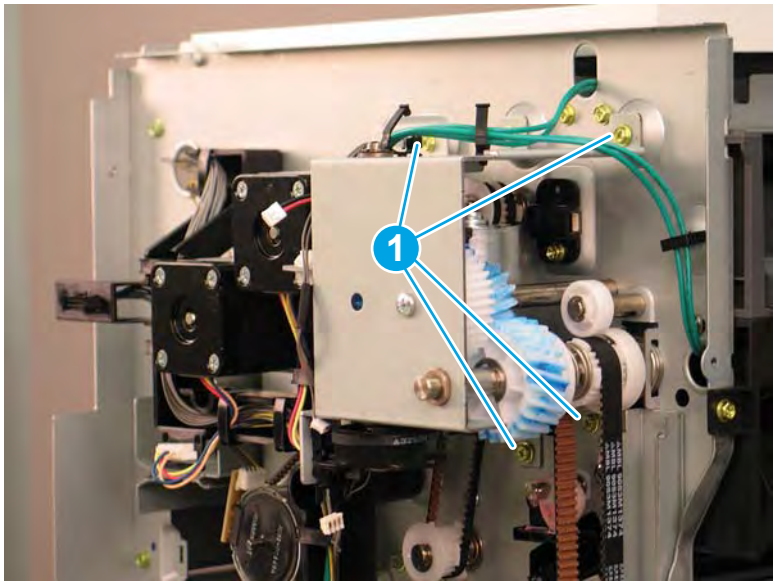
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then thread the cable up through the opening in the top of the bracket.

Figure 4-509 Disconnect one connector



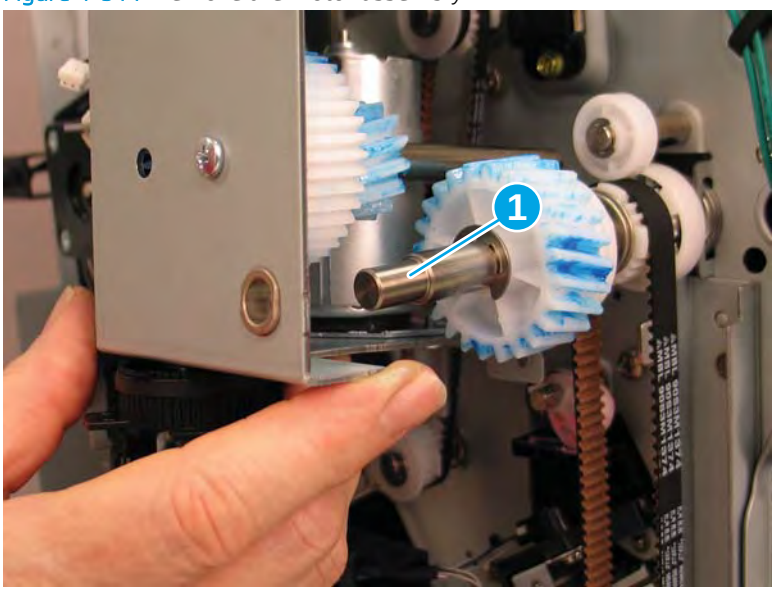
5. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor assembly.

Figure 4-510 Remove four screws and the motor assembly



6. Carefully pull the motor assembly away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 4-511 Remove the motor assembly



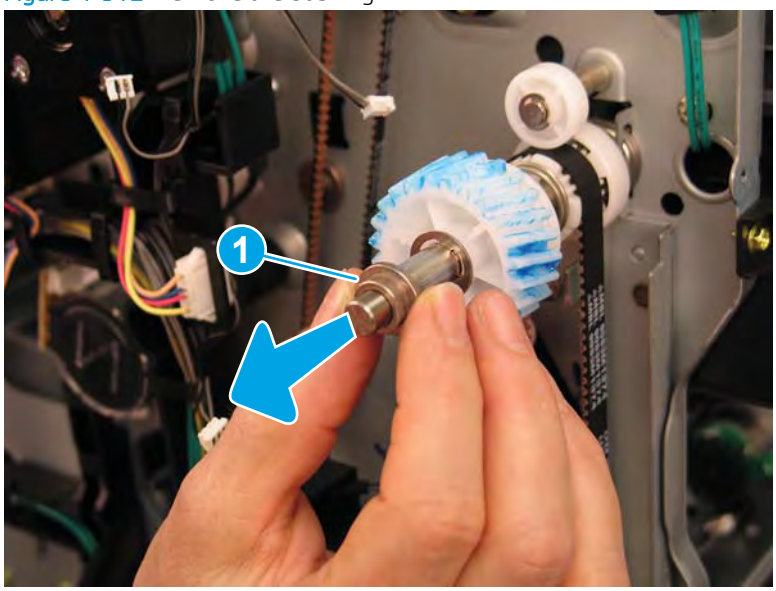
7. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Main tray moving motor (M11)

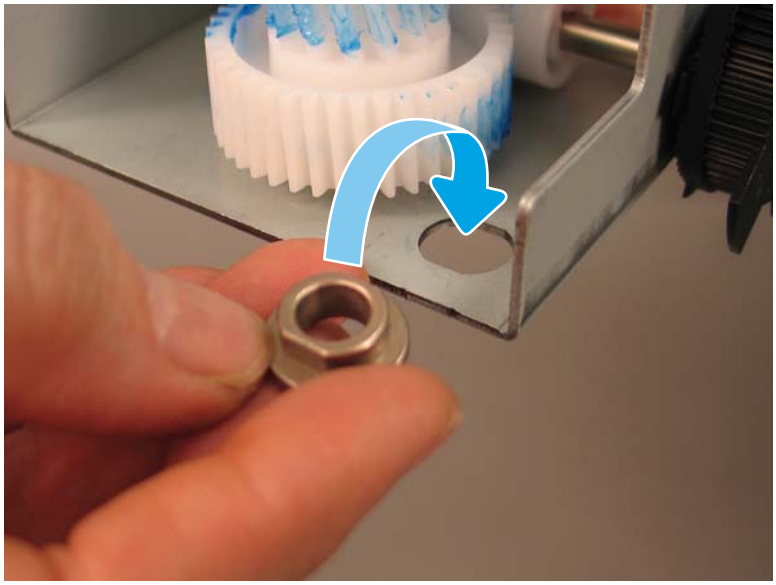
a. Before installing the motor assembly, slide the bushing (callout 1) off of the shaft.

Figure 4-512 Remove the bushing



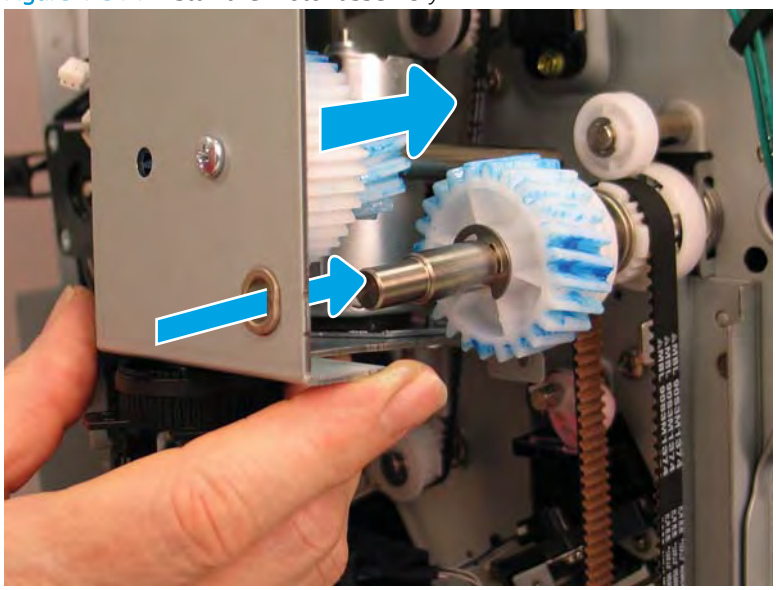
b. Align the flat edges on the bushing with the flat edges on the opening in the motor assembly bracket, and then install the bushing.

Figure 4-513 Install the bushing



c. Position the bushing over the shaft, and then install the motor assembly.

Figure 4-514 Install the motor assembly



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher front cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher front cover.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01478B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher Sub - Cover F Bm

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

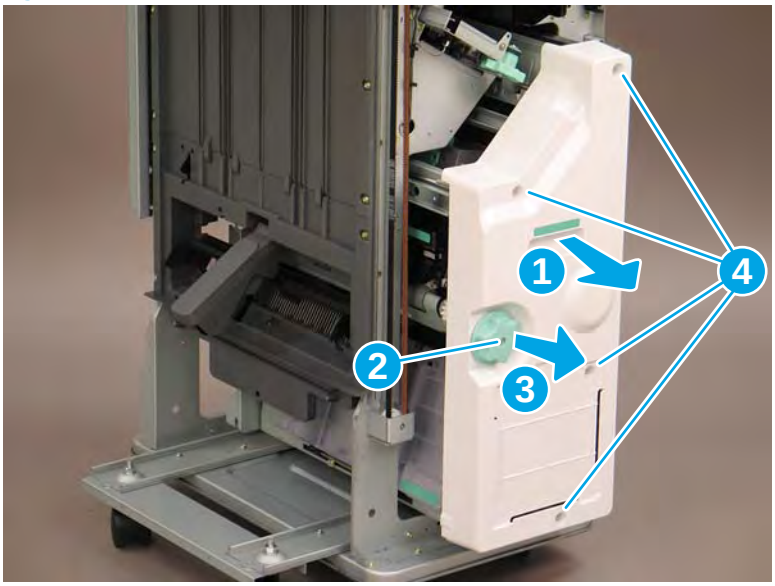
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-515 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01416A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher Sub - Booklet Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

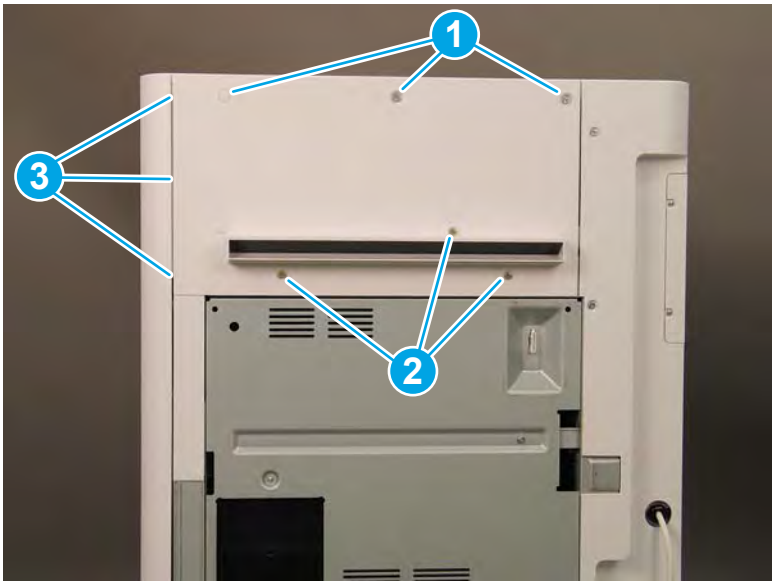
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

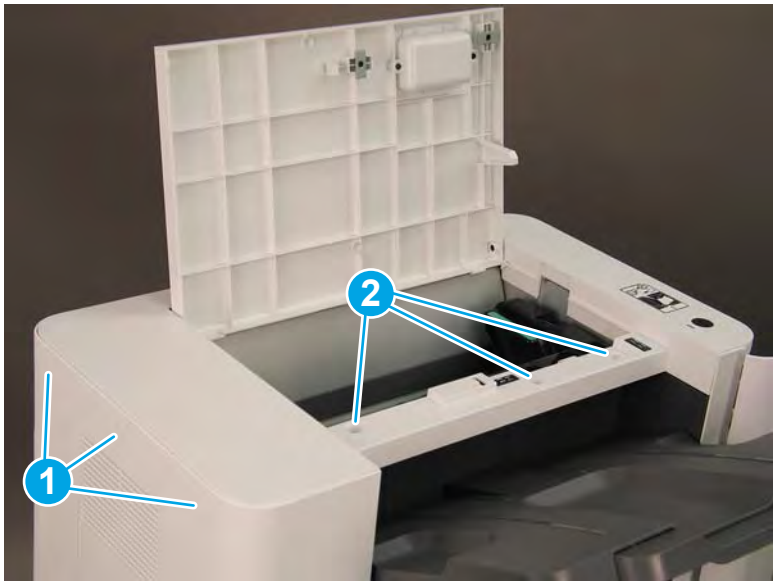
Figure 4-516 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

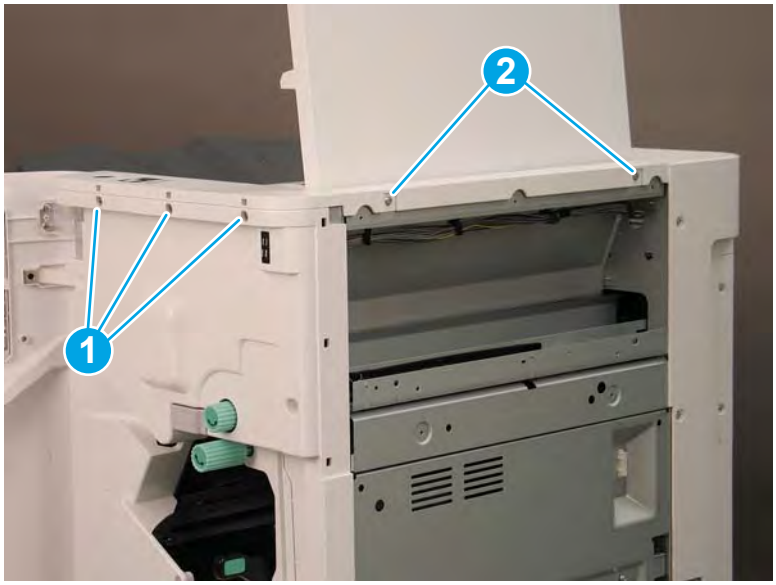
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-517 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

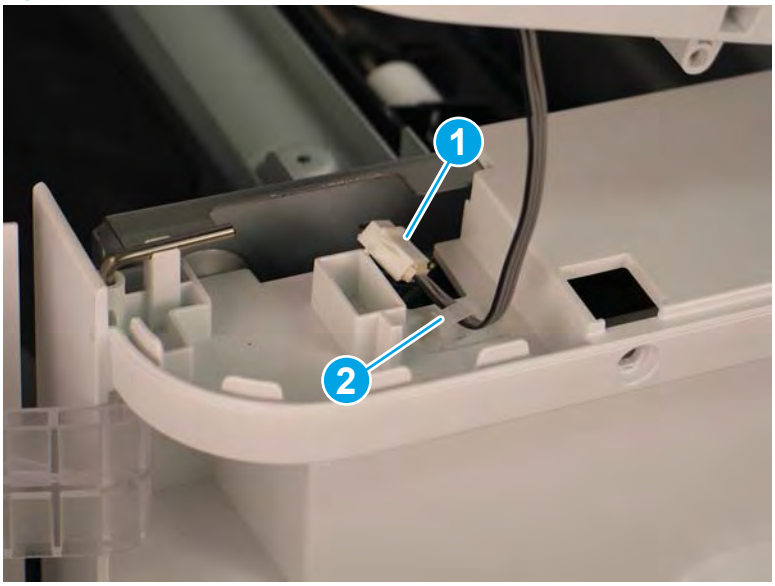
Figure 4-518 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-519 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

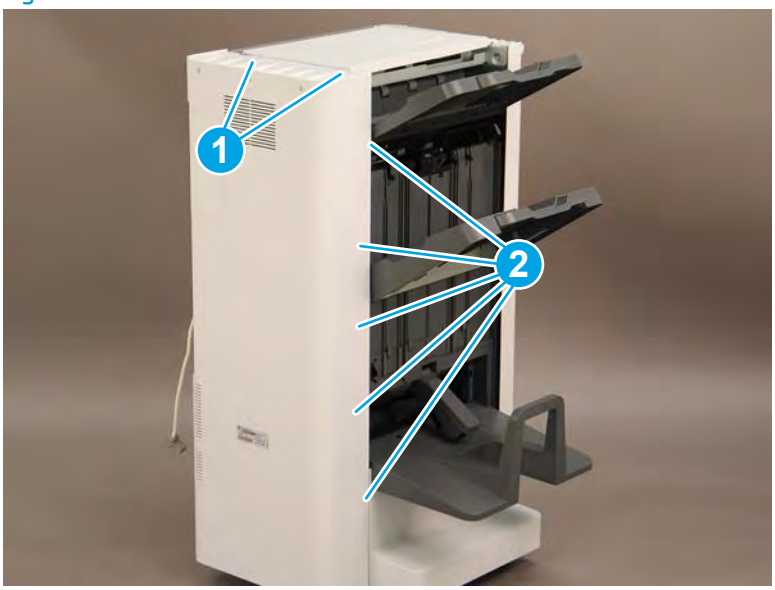


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-520 Remove seven screws

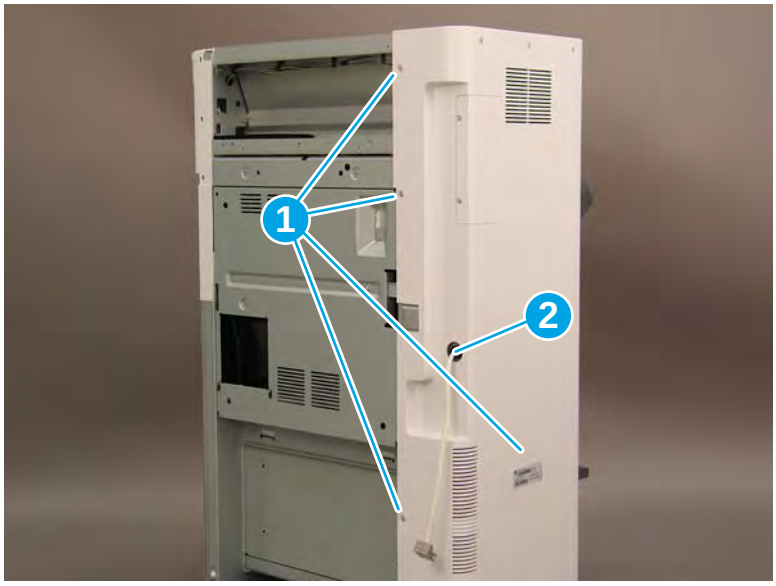


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-521 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher

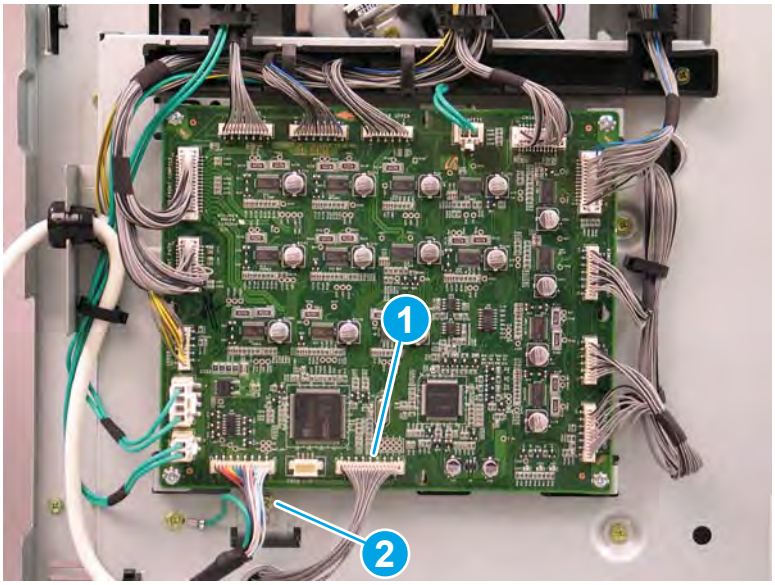
1. Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher.

Figure 4-522 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher



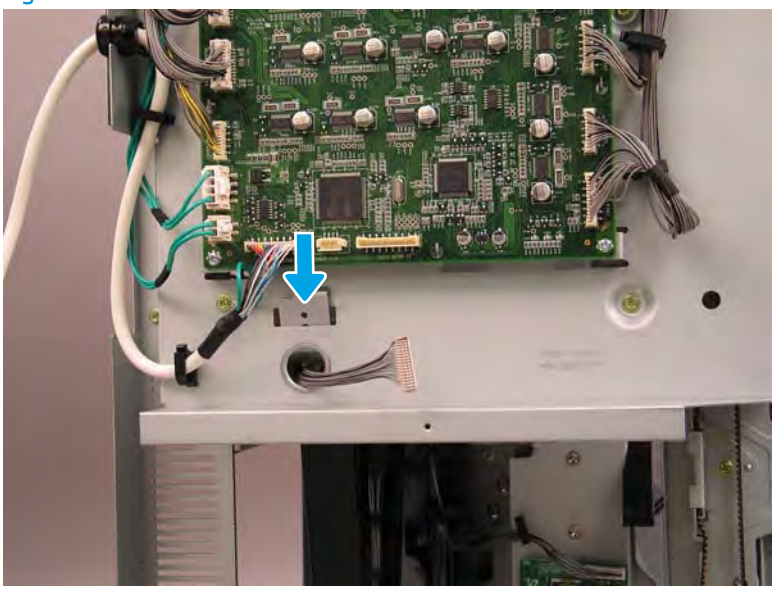
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 4-523 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



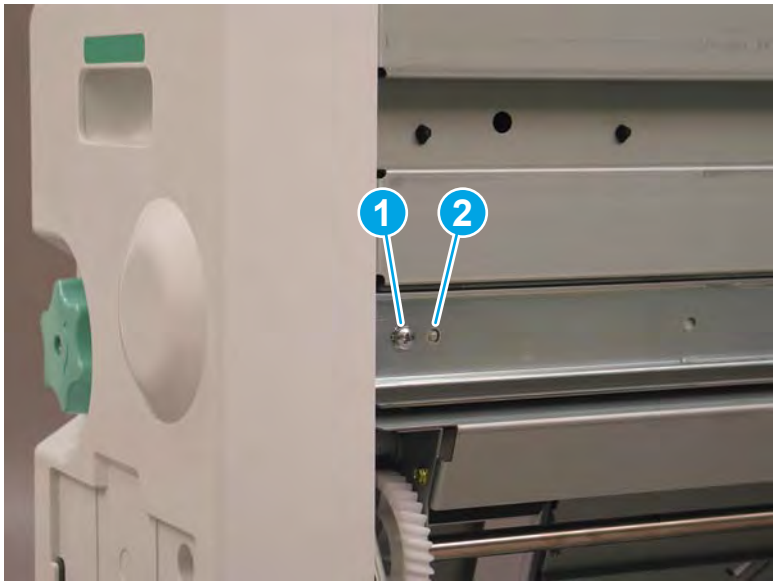
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 4-524 Release the metal bracket



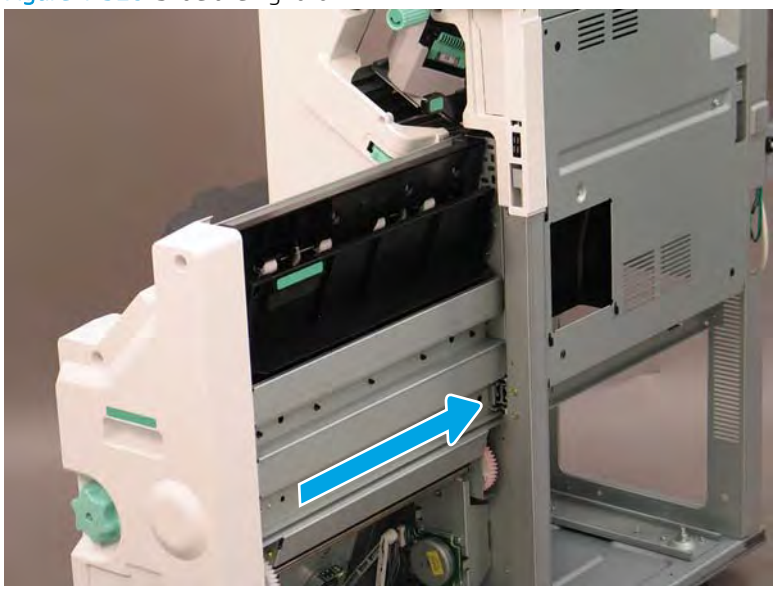
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-525 Remove one screw



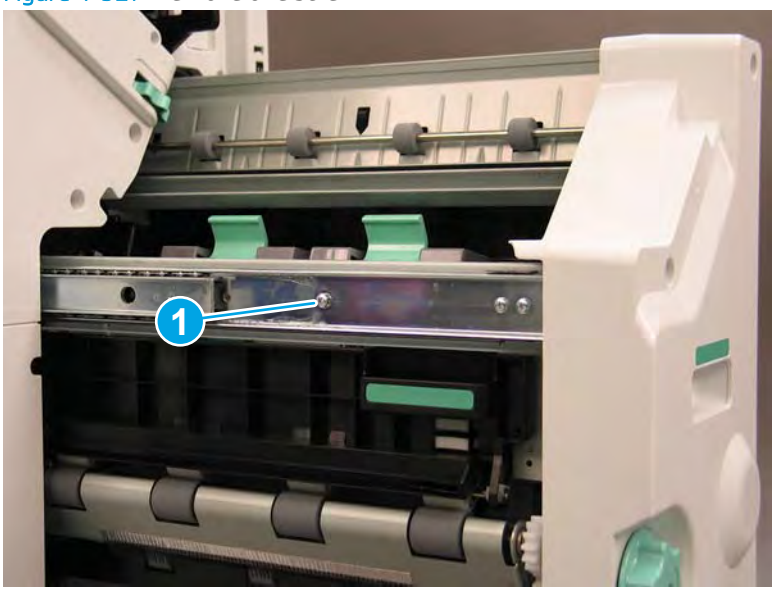
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 4-526 Slide the right rail



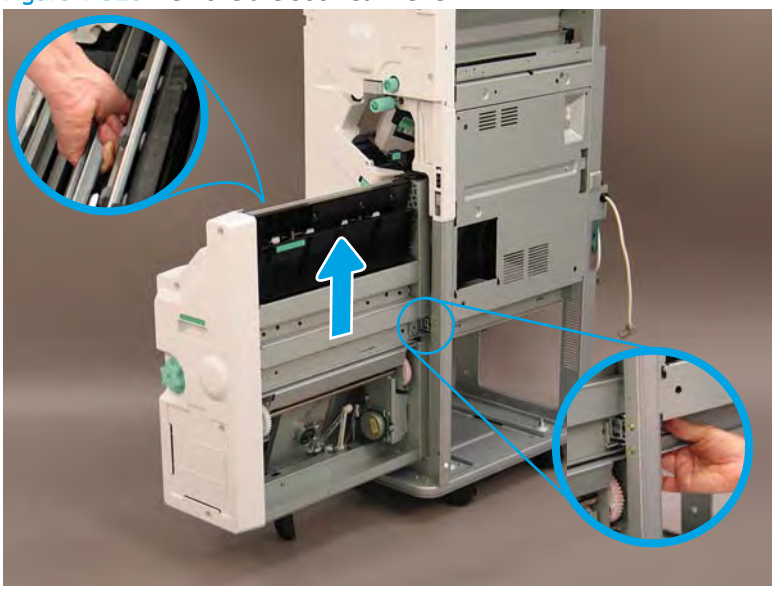
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-527 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet finisher up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-528 Remove the booklet finisher



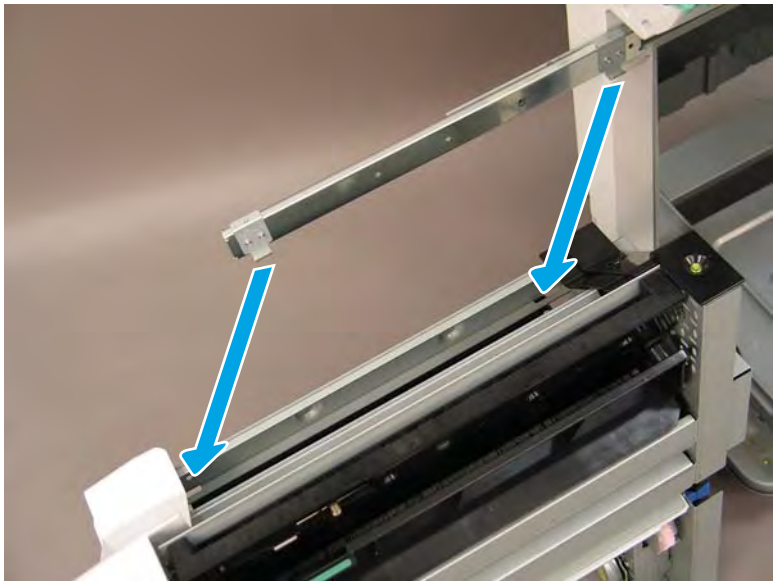
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet finisher

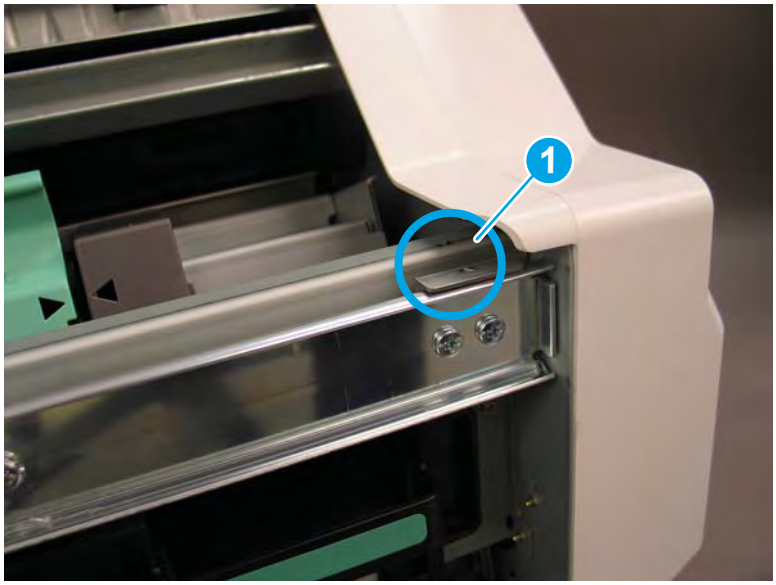
- When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-529 Position the hooks



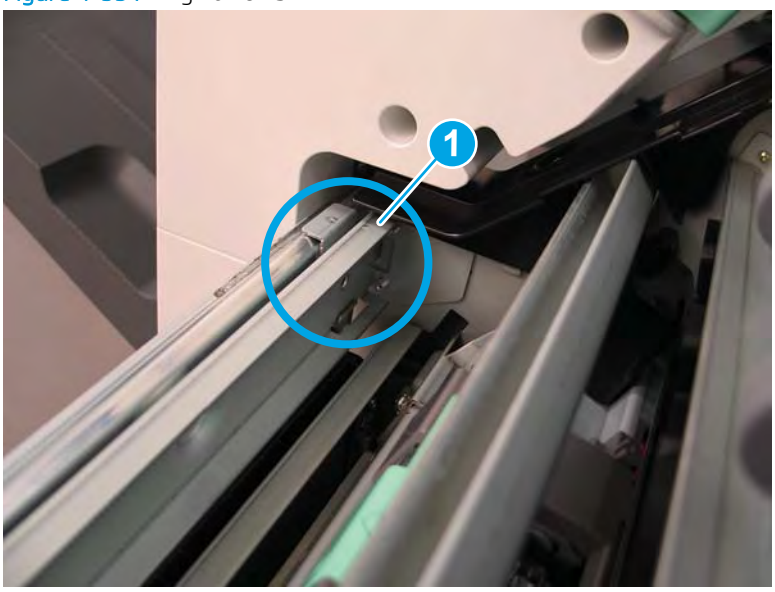
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 4-530 Align arrows



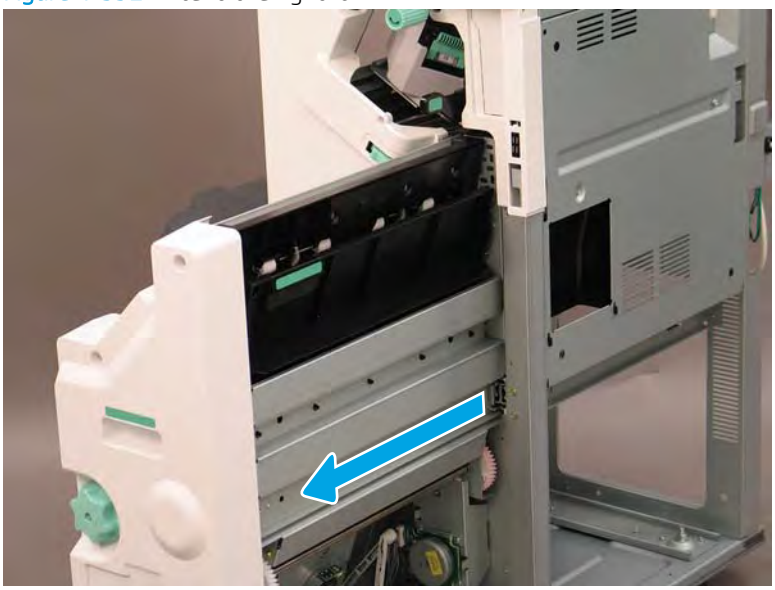
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 4-531 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet finisher slot.

Figure 4-532 Extend the right rail



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher
- Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher PCA
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC92-02790B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Booklet finisher PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

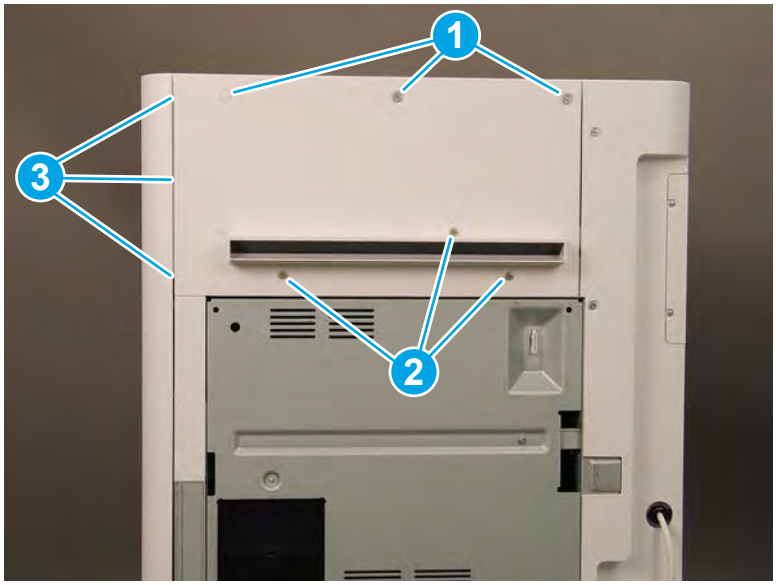
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

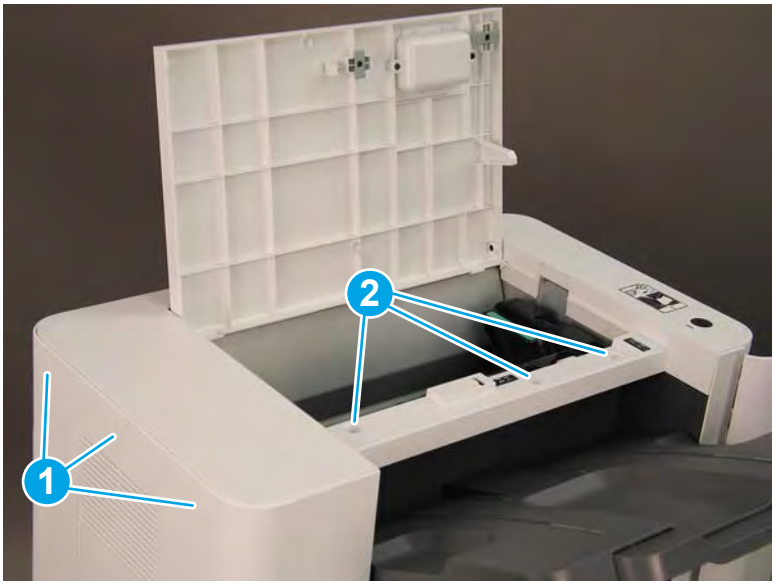
Figure 4-533 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

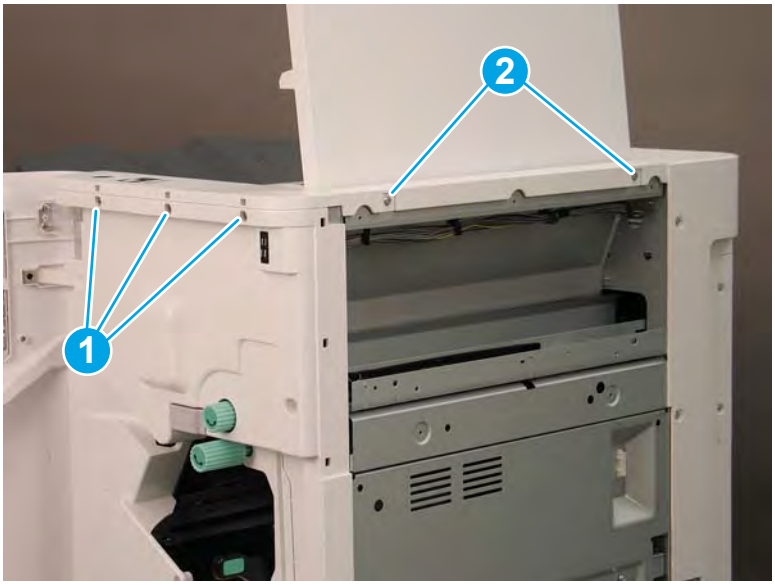
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-534 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

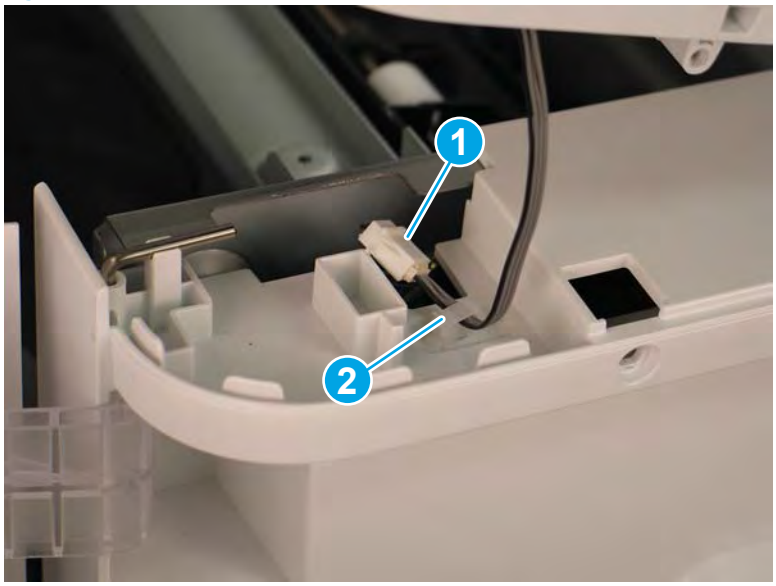
Figure 4-535 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-536 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

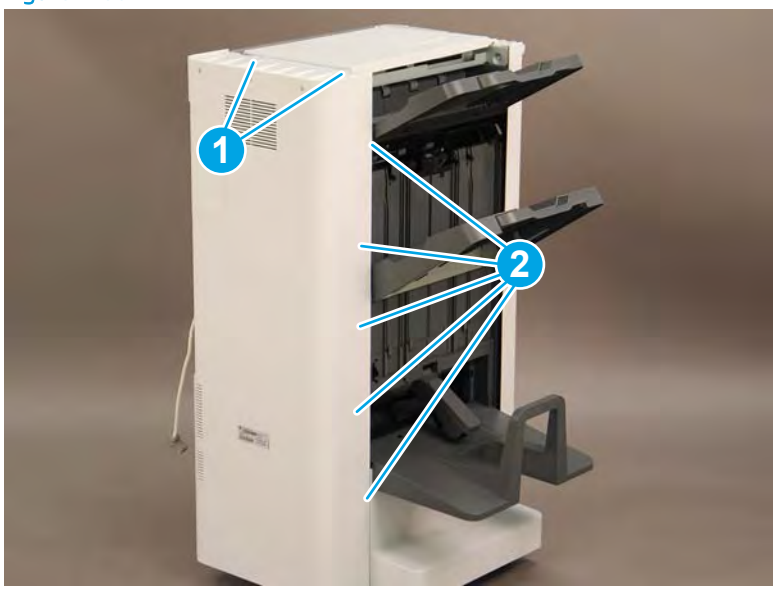


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-537 Remove seven screws

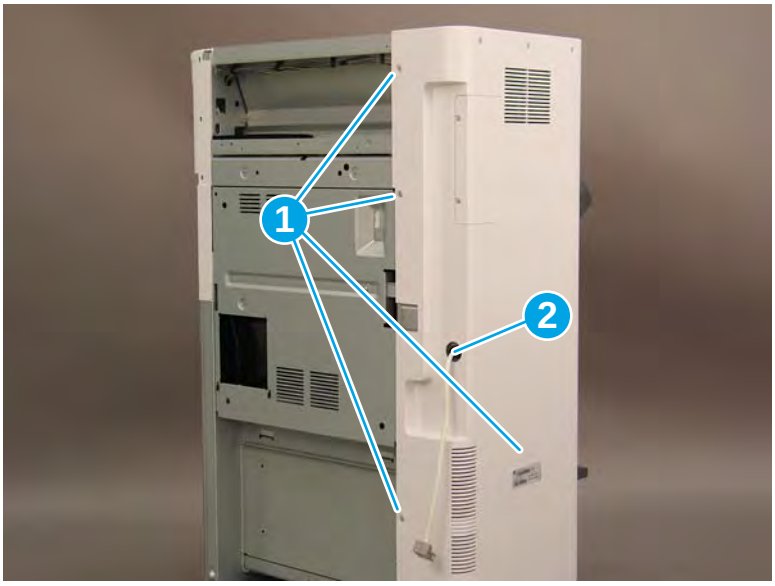


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-538 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher

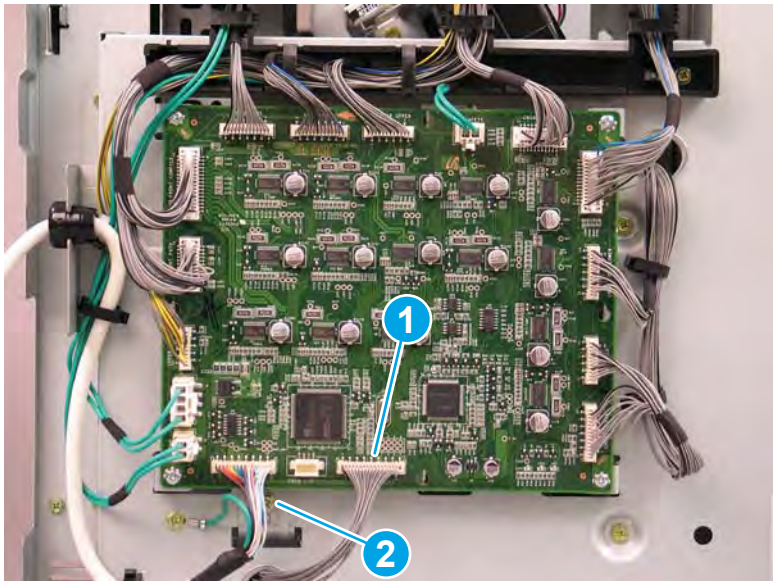
1. Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher.

Figure 4-539 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher



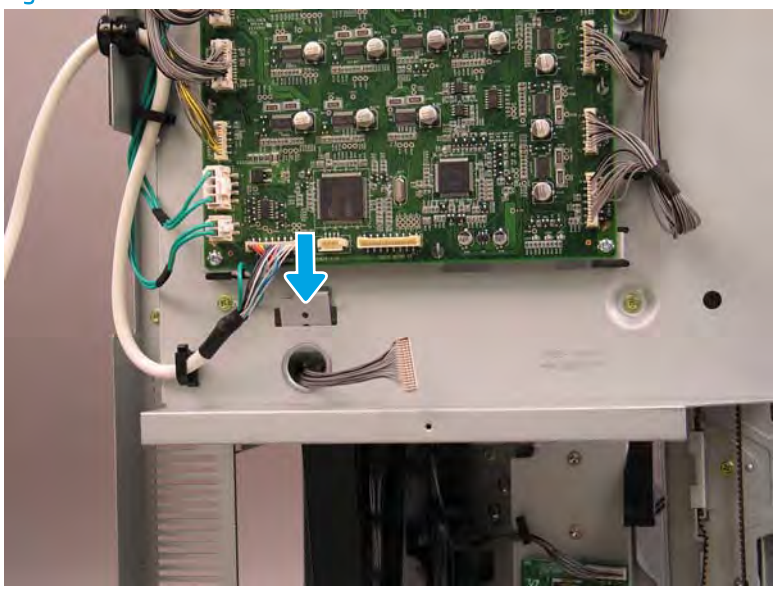
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 4-540 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



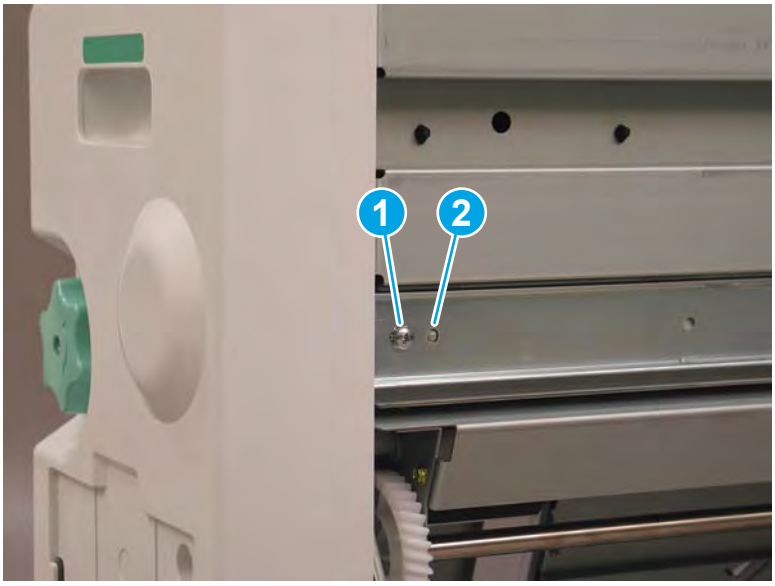
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 4-541 Release the metal bracket



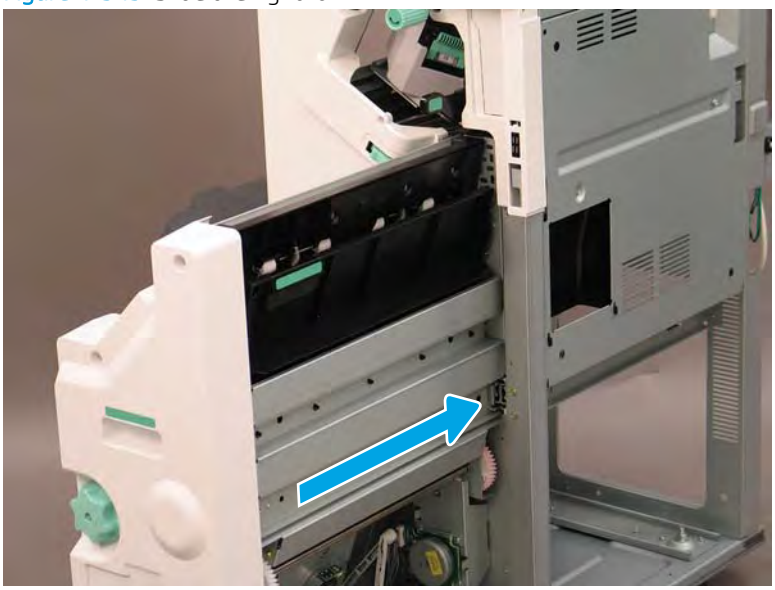
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-542 Remove one screw



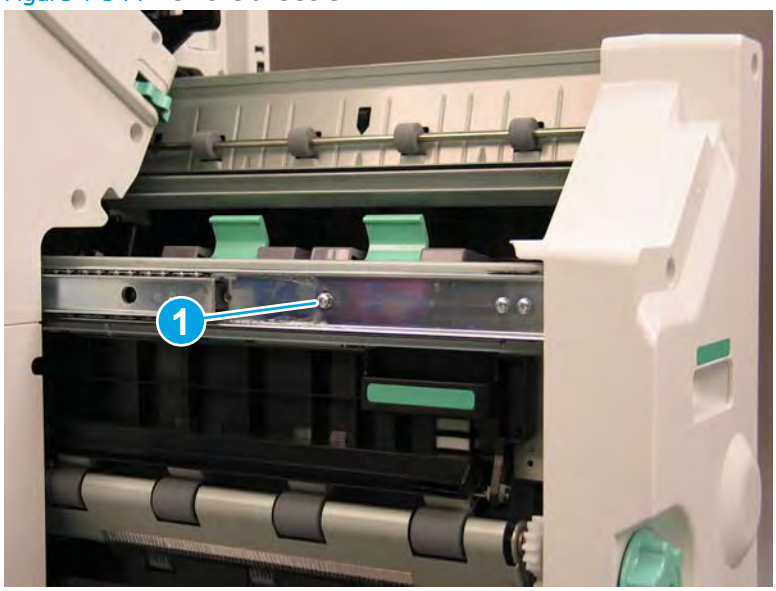
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 4-543 Slide the right rail



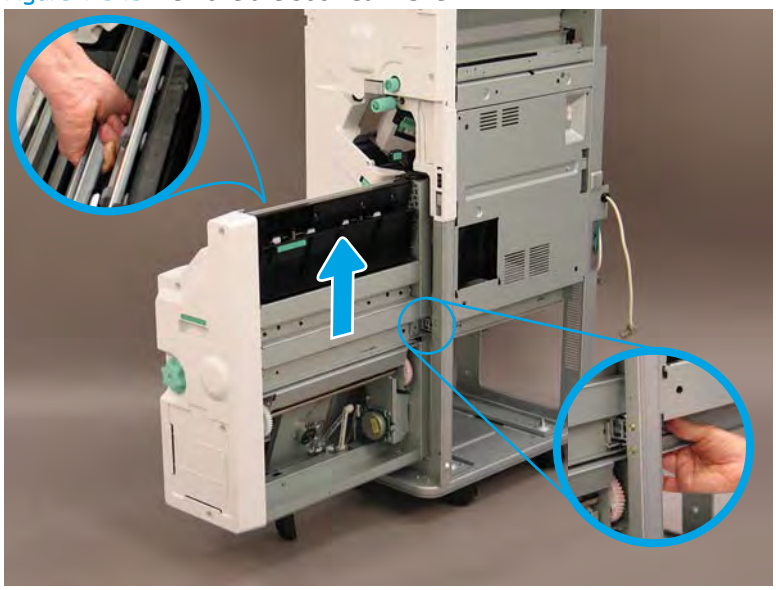
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-544 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet finisher up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-545 Remove the booklet finisher



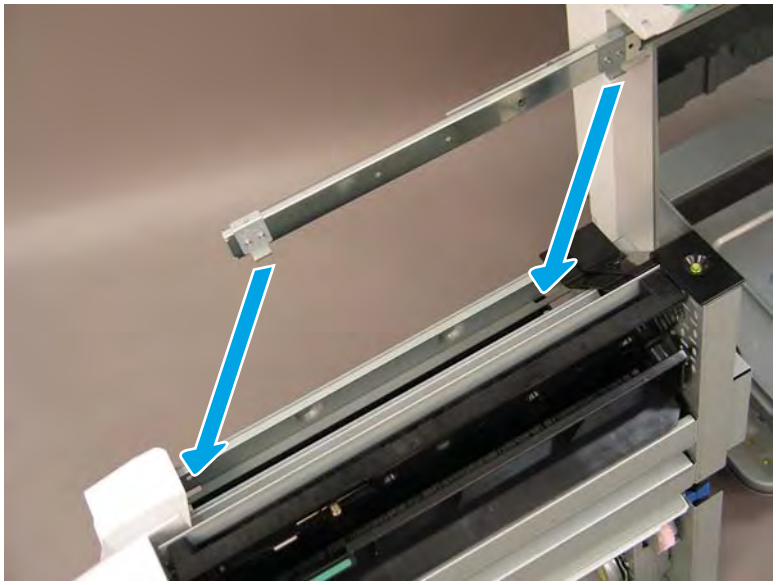
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet finisher

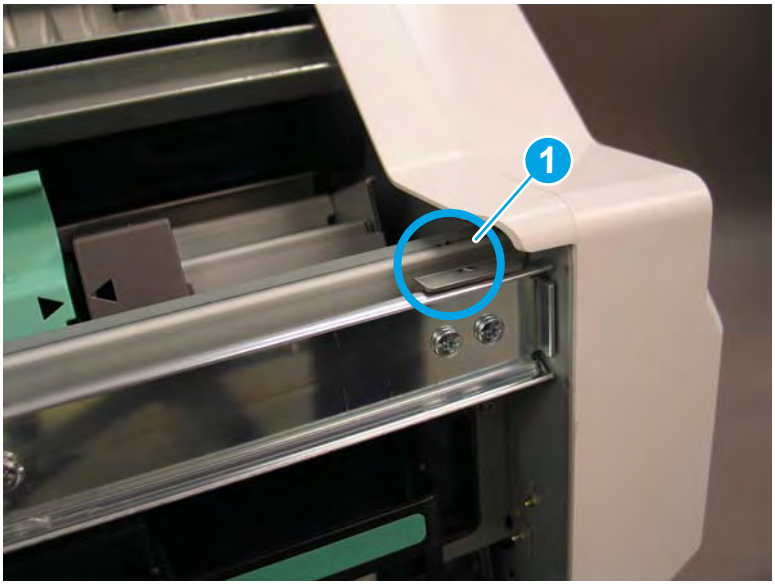
- When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-546 Position the hooks



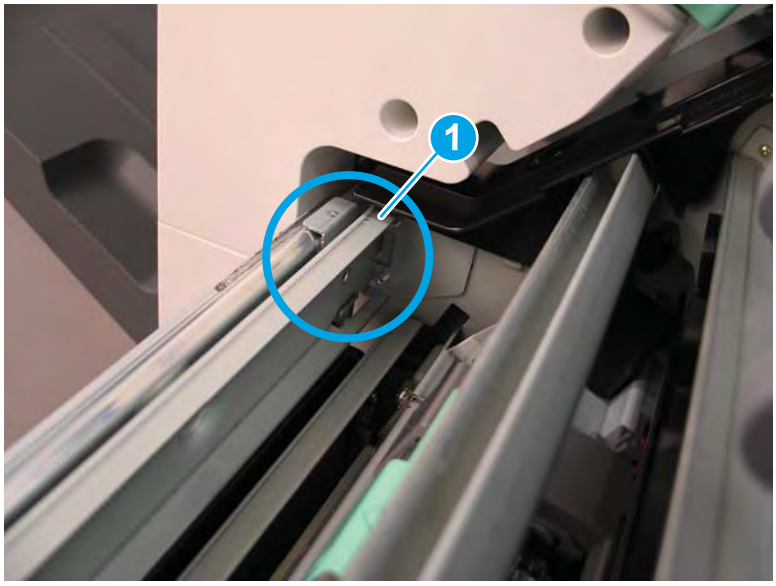
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 4-547 Align arrows



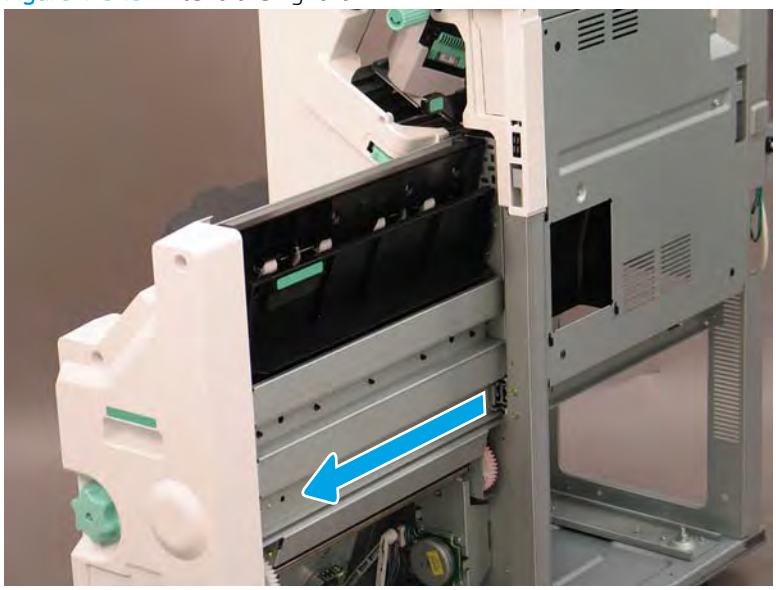
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 4-548 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet finisher slot.

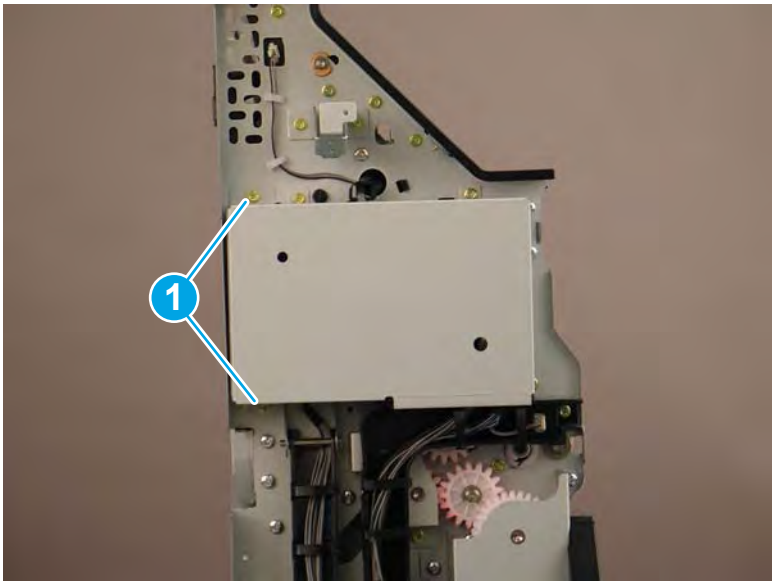
Figure 4-549 Extend the right rail



Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher PCA

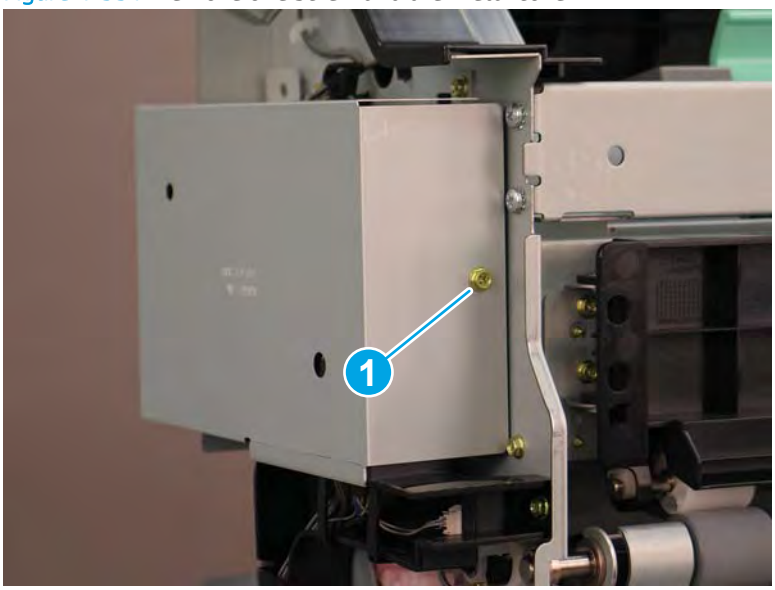
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-550 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the metal cover.

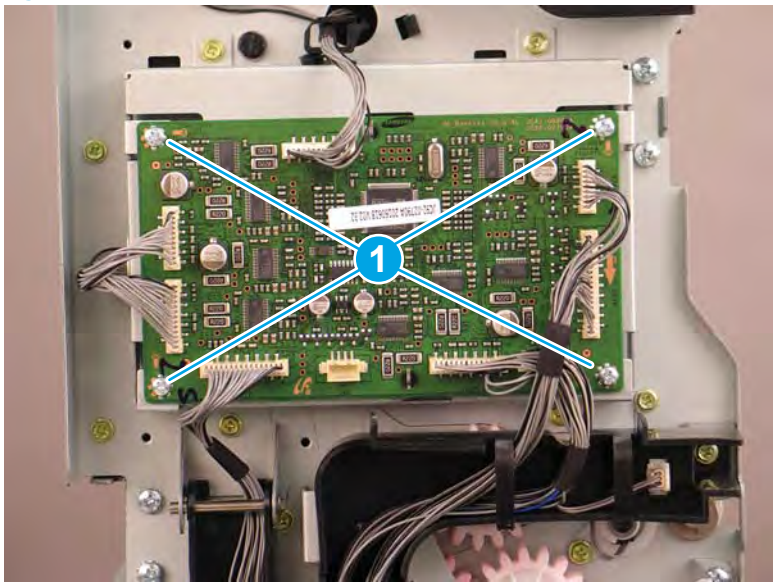
Figure 4-551 Remove one screw and the metal cover



3. Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the booklet finisher PCA.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-552 Remove four screws and the PCA



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher fold stopper unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield
- Step 6: Remove the fold stopper unit
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher fold stopper unit.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01432A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher Sub - Face Down Stopper Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

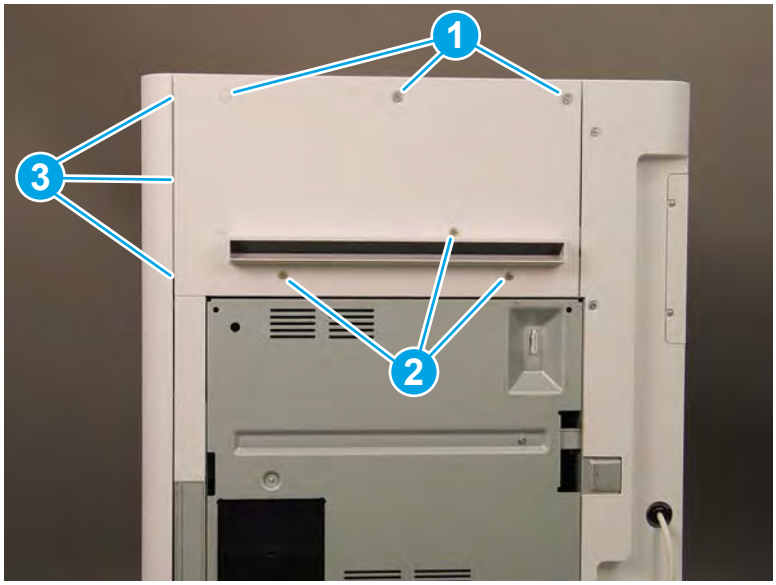
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

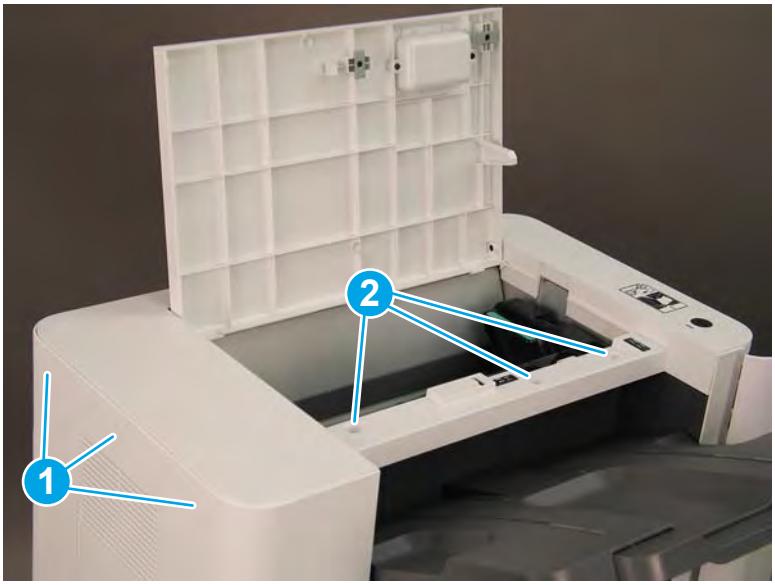
Figure 4-553 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

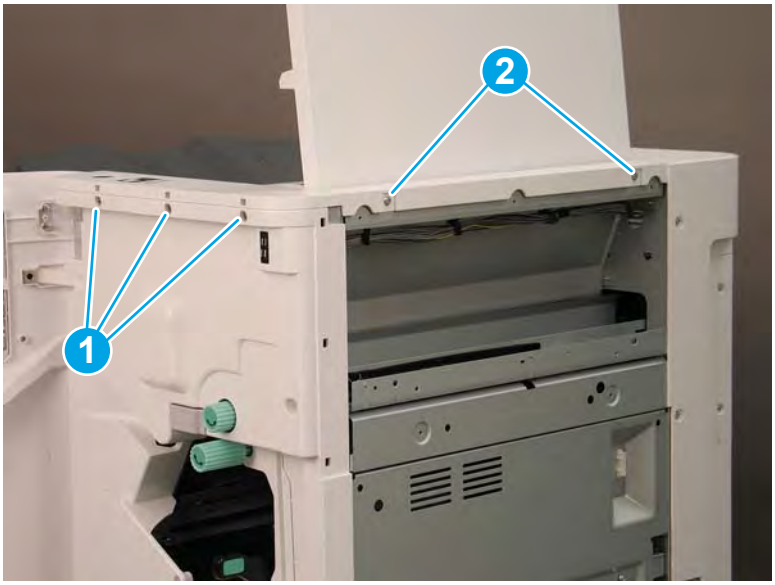
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-554 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

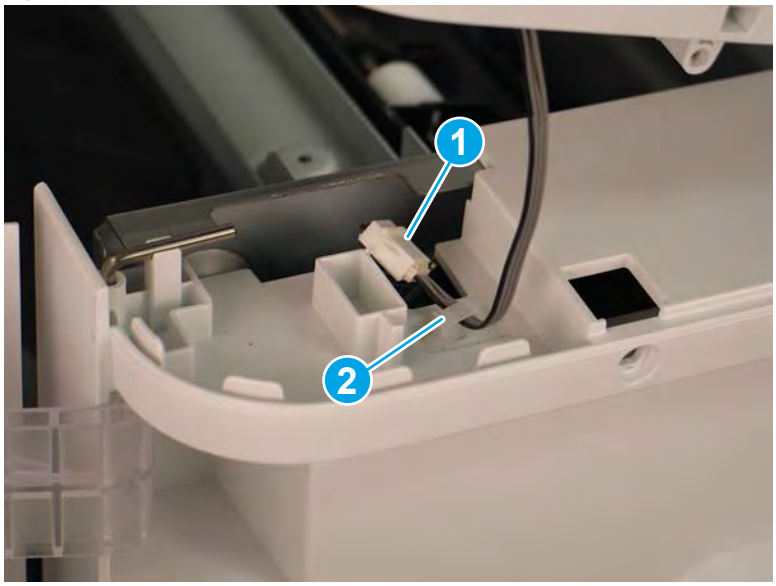
Figure 4-555 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-556 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

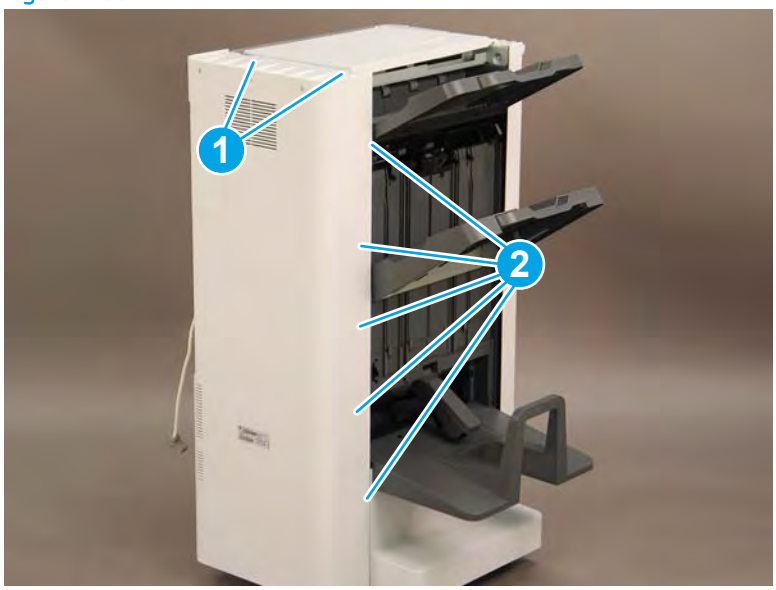


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-557 Remove seven screws

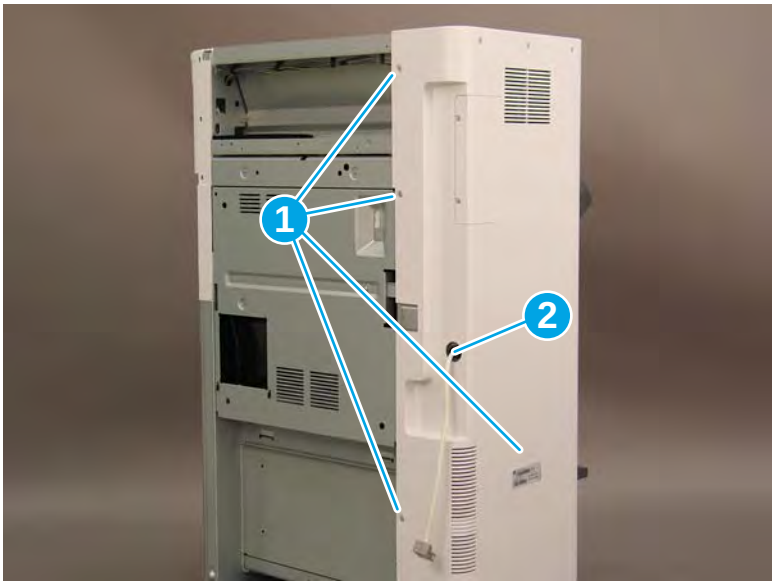


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-558 Remove four screws and the rear cover

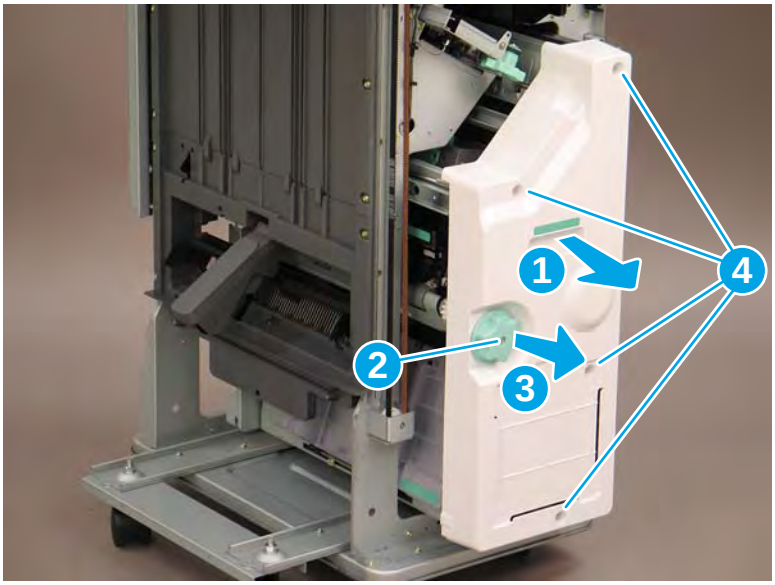


Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

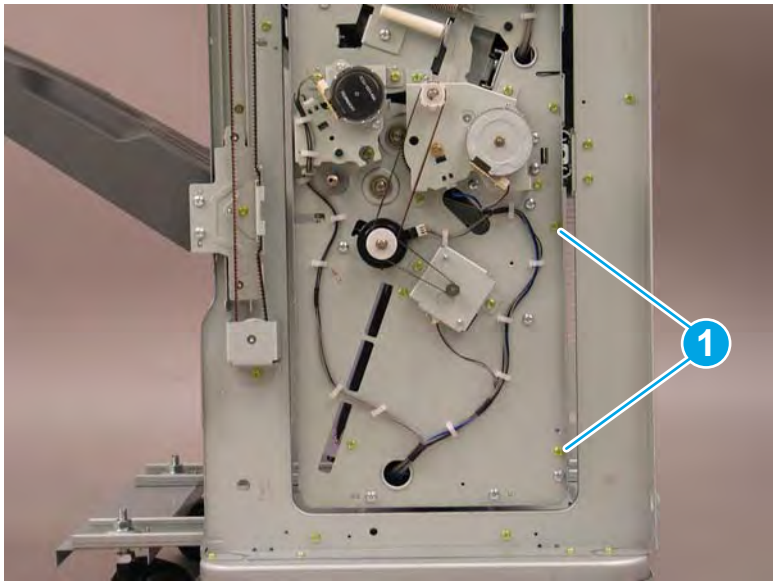
Figure 4-559 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

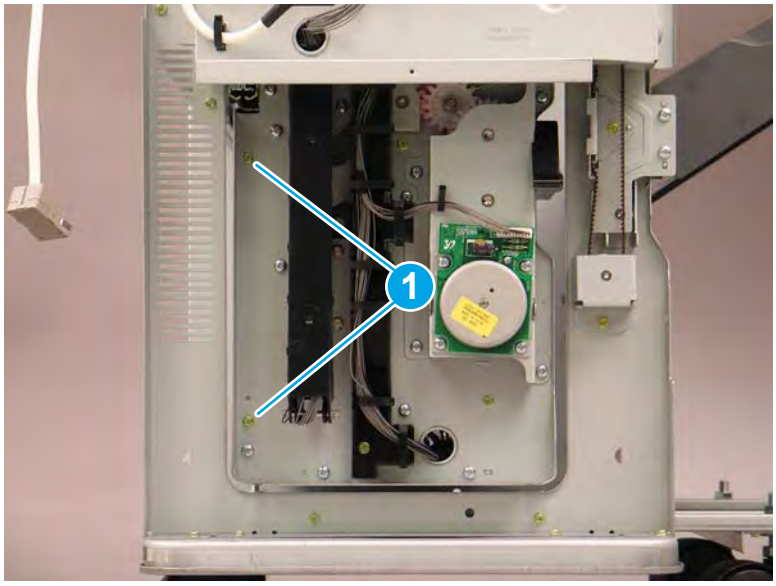
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 4-560 Remove two screws



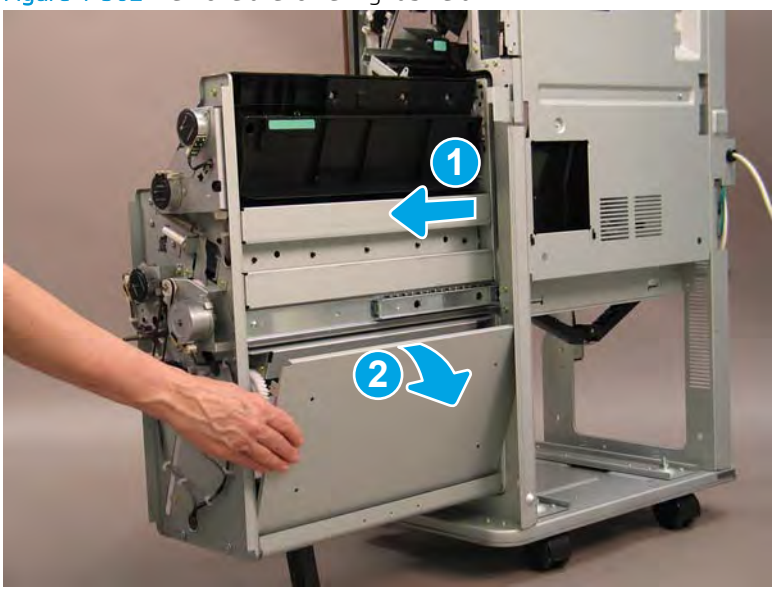
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 4-561 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

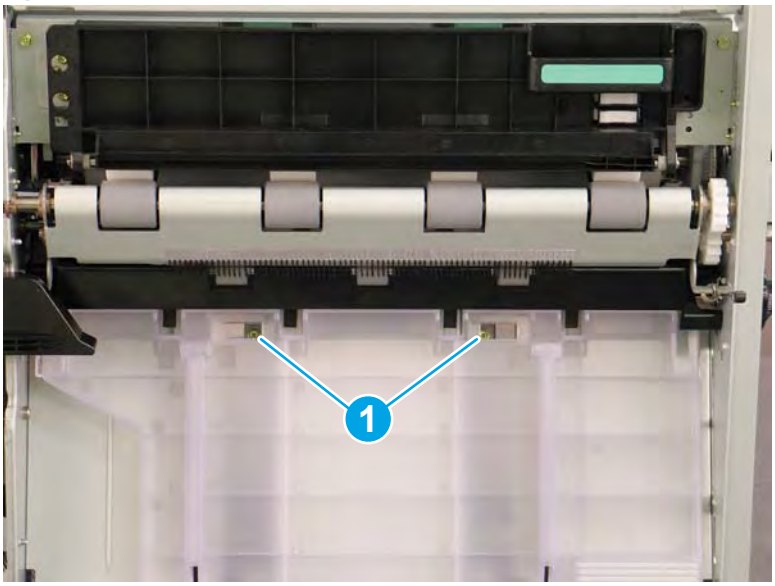
Figure 4-562 Remove the lower right shield



Step 6: Remove the fold stopper unit

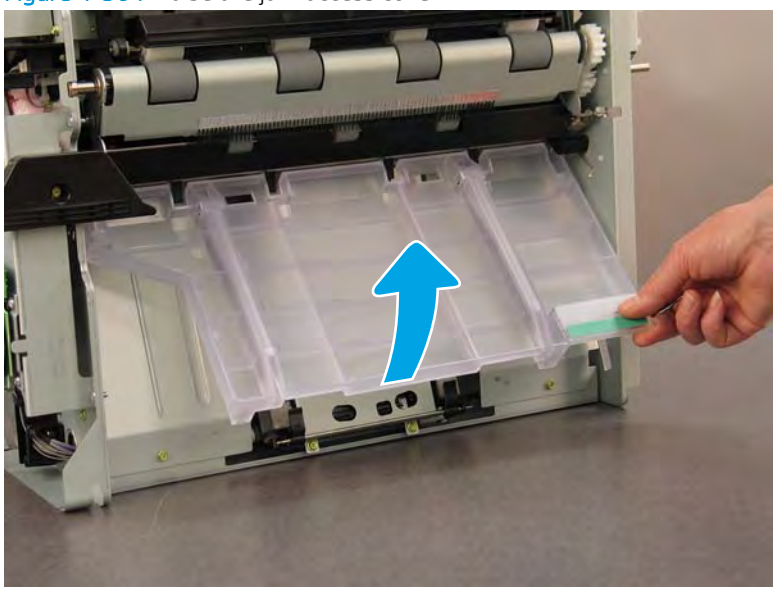
1. On the left side of the booklet finisher, remove two screws through access openings in the jam access cover (callout 1).

Figure 4-563 Remove two screws



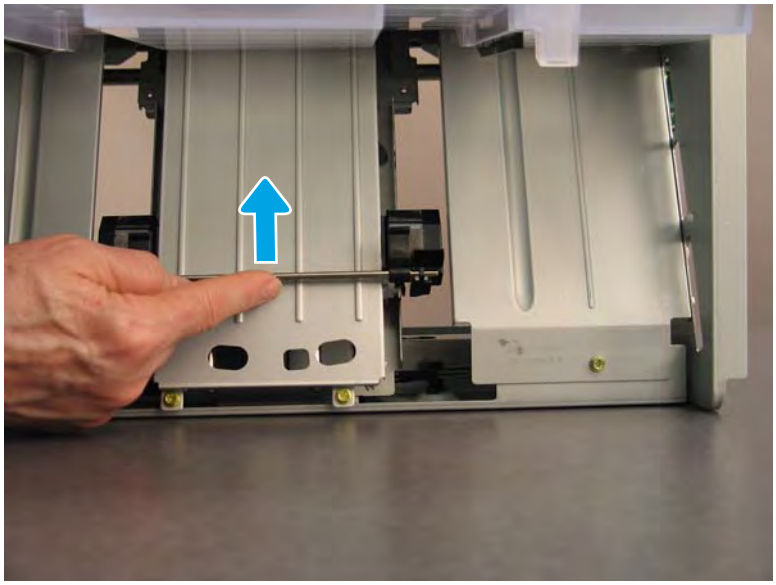
2. Raise the jam access cover.

Figure 4-564 Raise the jam access cover



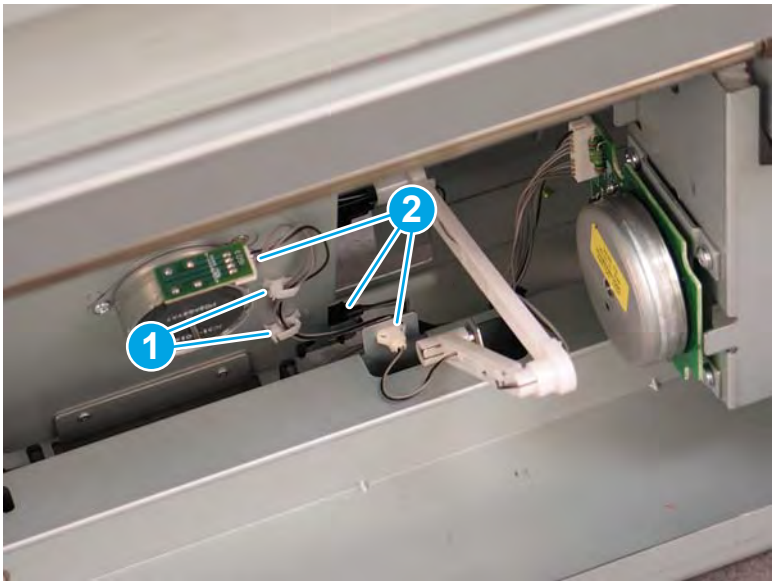
3. Raise the booklet width guide.

Figure 4-565 Raise the booklet width guide



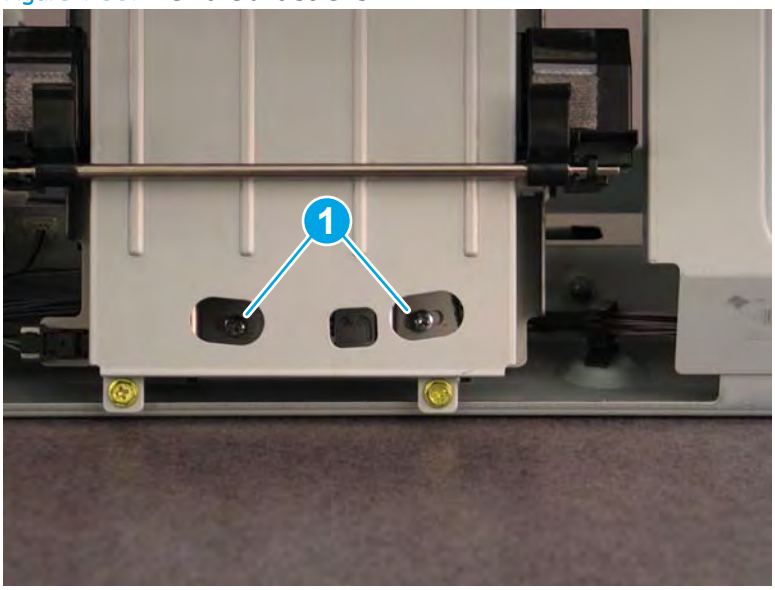
4. On the right side of the booklet finisher, open two retainers (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 4-566 Disconnect three connectors



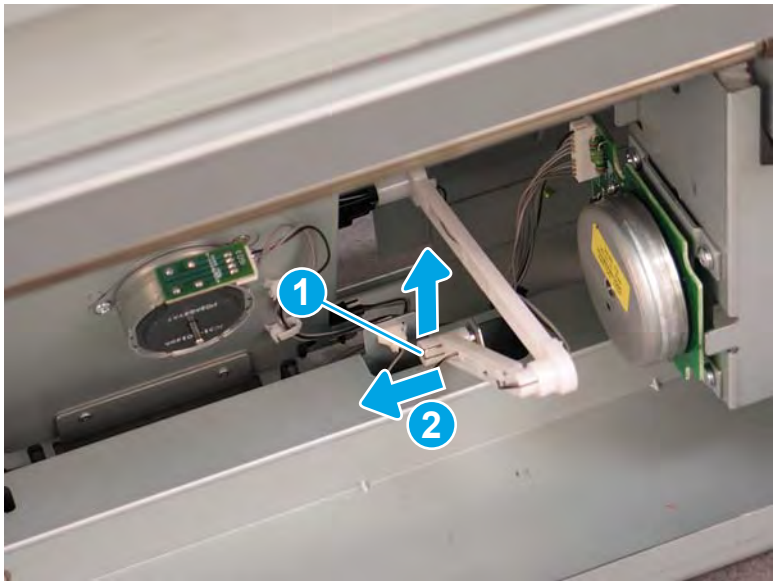
5. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-567 Remove two screws



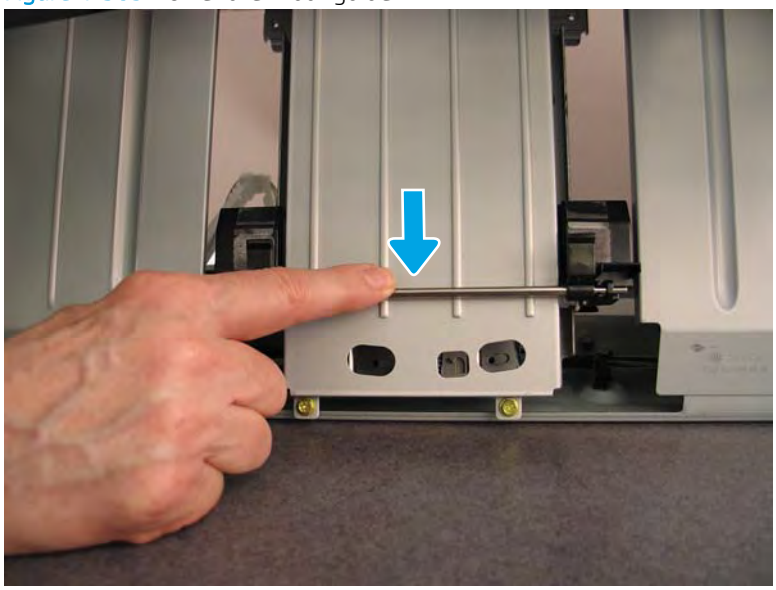
6. Release the tab (callout 1) on the guide arm, and then slide the guide off of the shaft (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-568 Release the guide arm



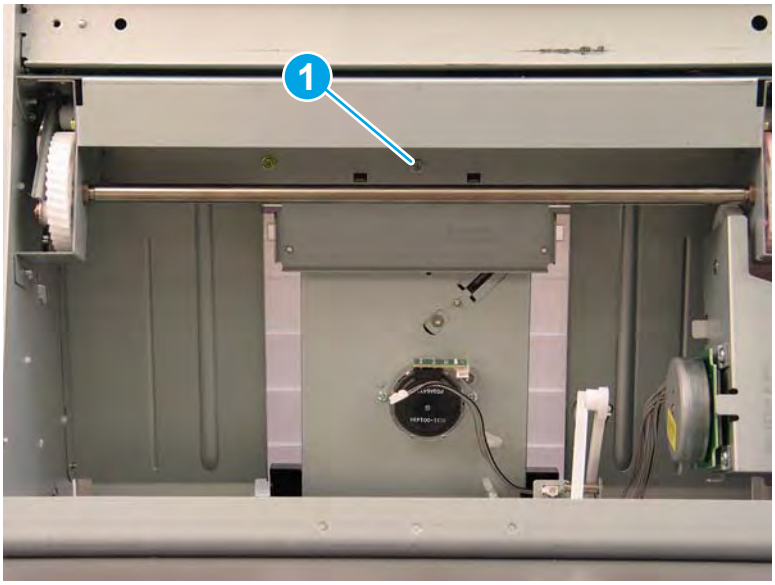
7. Lower the width guide to the lowest position.

Figure 4-569 Lower the width guide



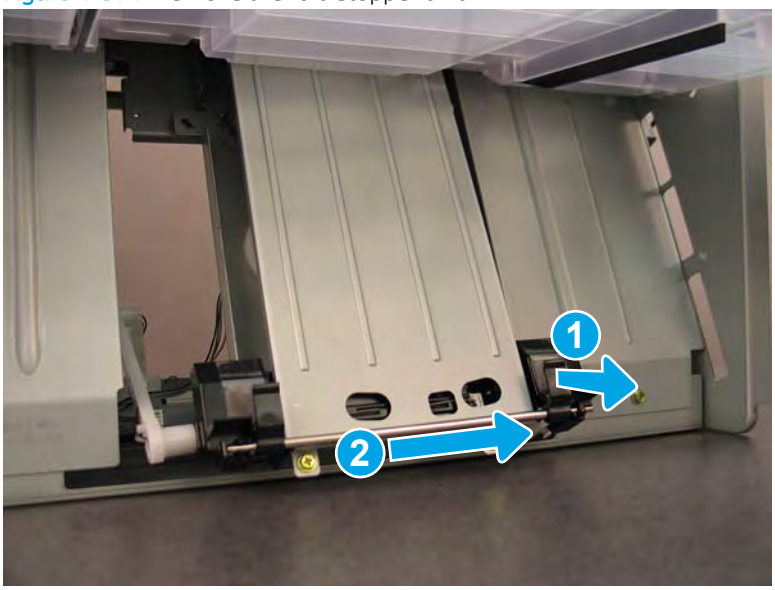
8. On the right side of the booklet finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-570 Remove one screw



9. Lift the right lower corner (callout 1) to clear the cable guide, and then slide the assembly to the right (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-571 Remove the fold stopper unit



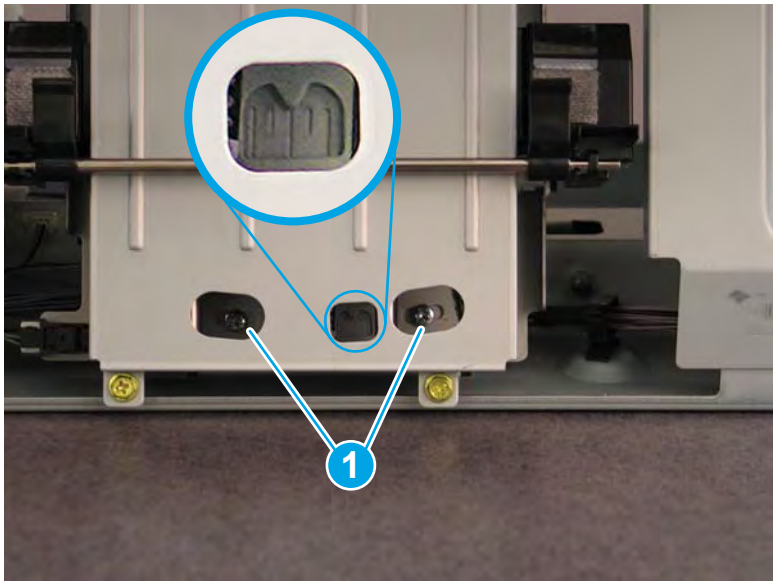
10. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Fold stopper unit

- Loosen the two alignment screws (callout 1) and move the fold unit side to side to until the alignment gauge is positioned on the center line. Tighten the screws and run a folded job through the finisher and verify that the fold is correct. If the fold is not correct, loosen the screws, adjust the alignment, and run another fold job. Continue this process until the fold is correct.

Figure 4-572 Adjust the alignment gauge



Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet feed entrance motor (M13)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the booklet feed entrance motor (M13)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet feed entrance motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC93-01152A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

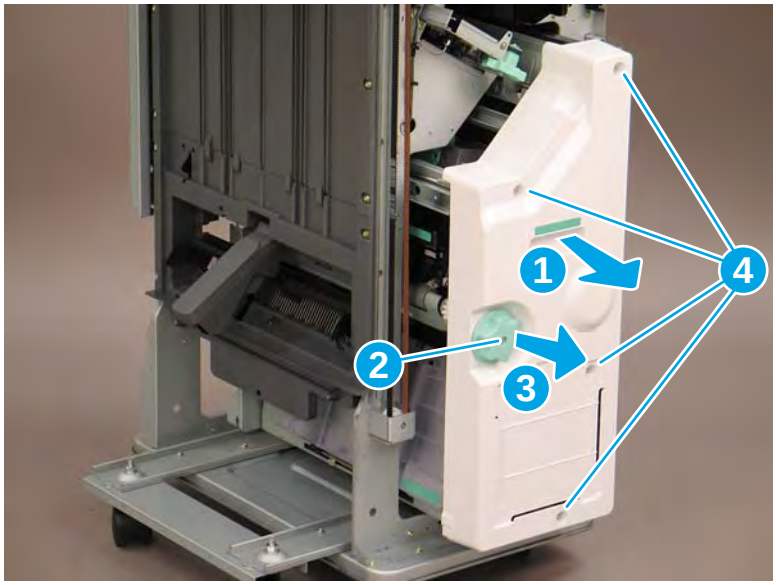
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-573 Remove five screws and the cover

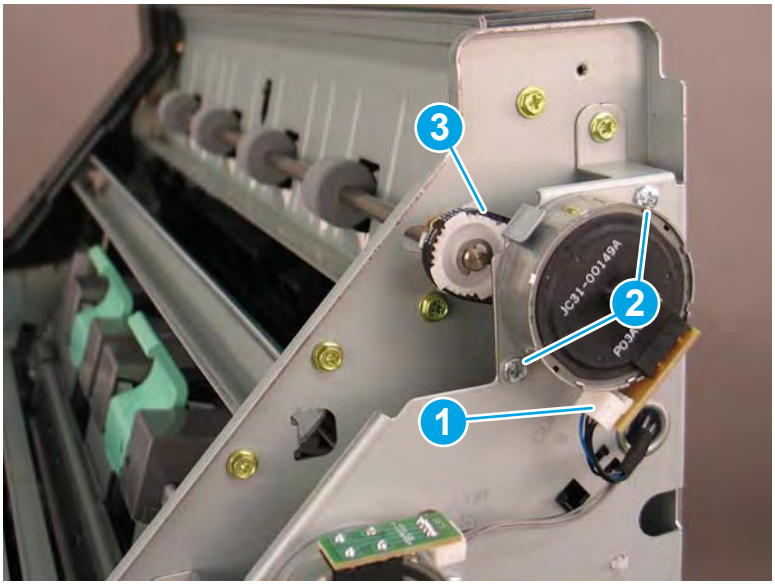


Step 2: Remove the booklet feed entrance motor (M13)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2). Lift the motor away from the booklet finisher and release the belt (callout 3) from the back of the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-574 Remove the booklet feed entrance motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

TE presser motor (M14)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the TE presser motor (M14)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the TE presser motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC93-01155A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

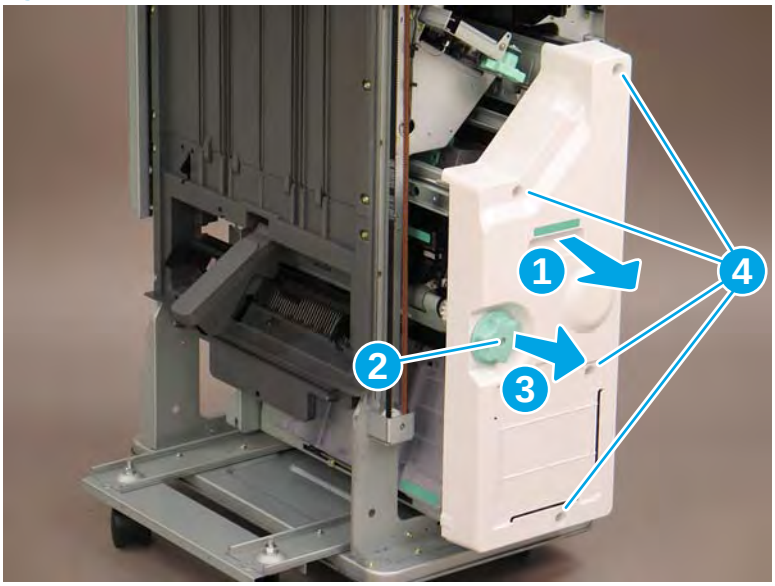
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-575 Remove five screws and the cover

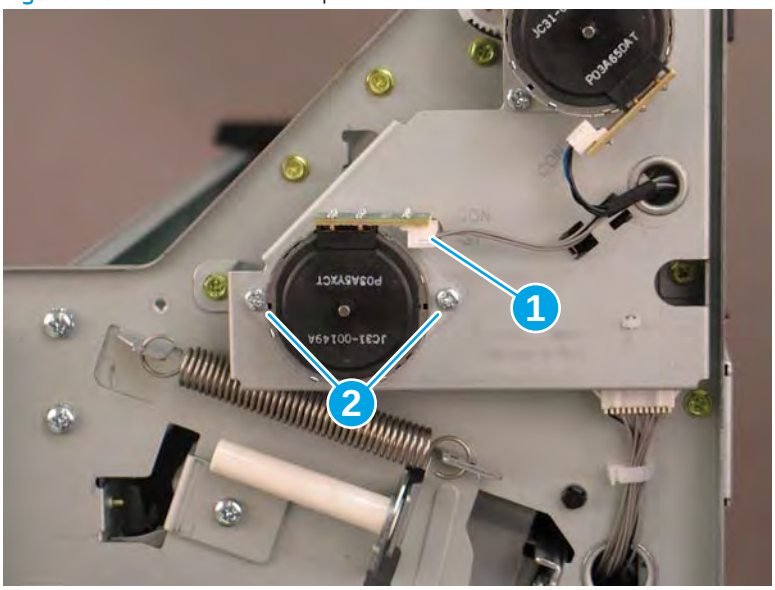


Step 2: Remove the TE presser motor (M14)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the TE presser motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-576 Remove the TE presser motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stopper moving motor (M16)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield
- Step 3: Remove the stopper moving motor (M16)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the stopper moving motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC93-01155A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

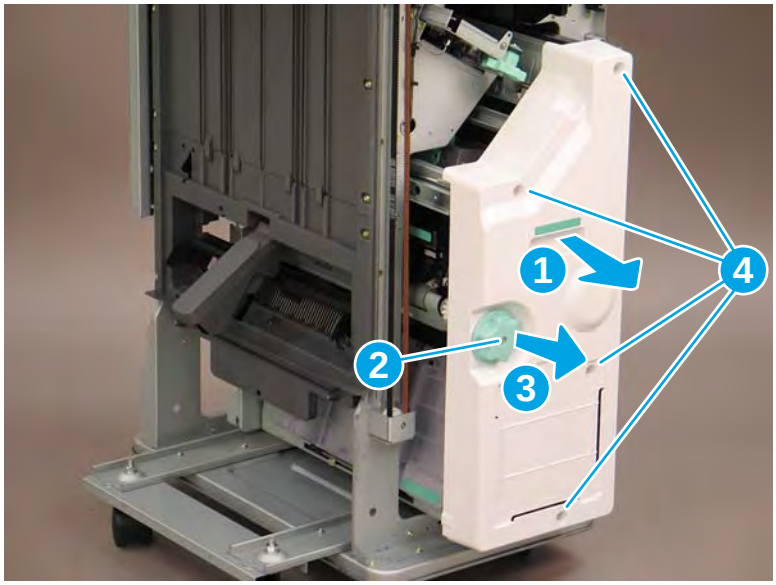
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

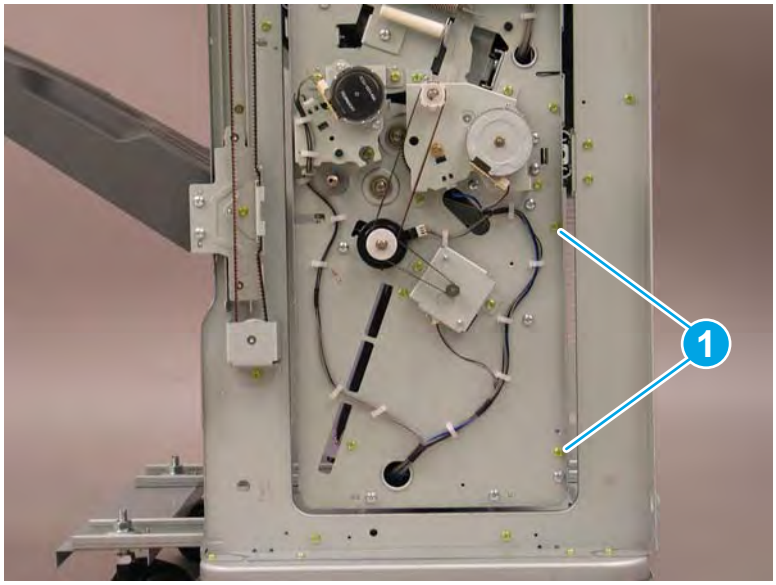
Figure 4-577 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

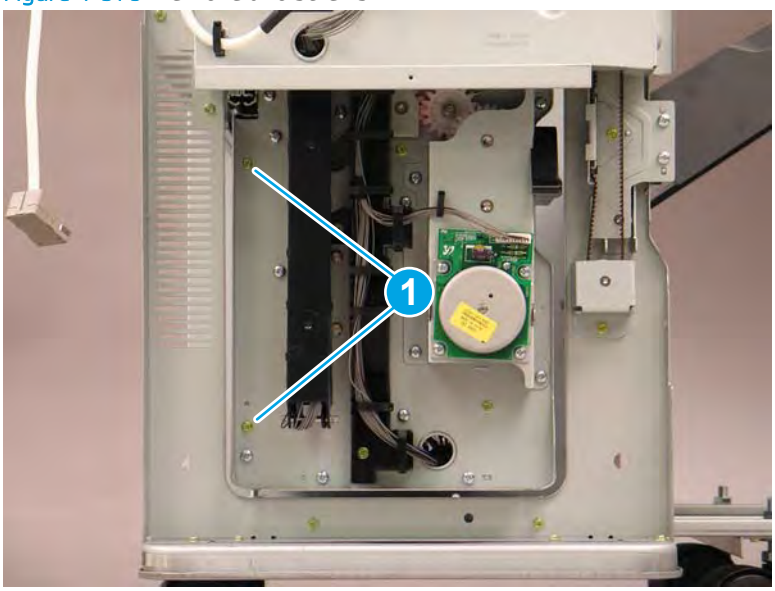
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 4-578 Remove two screws



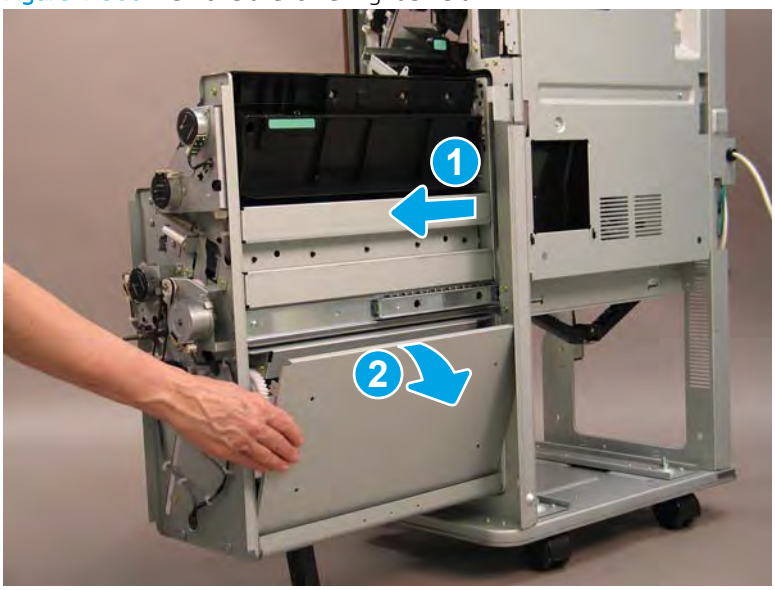
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 4-579 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-580 Remove the lower right shield

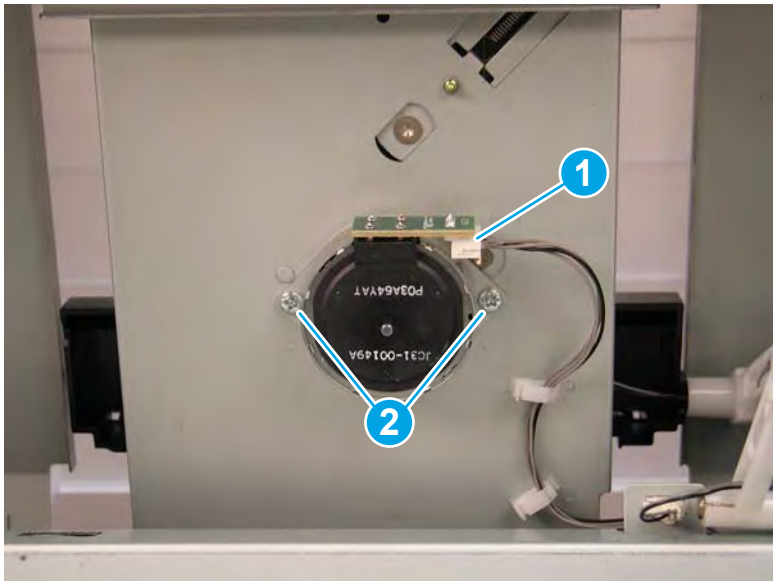


Step 3: Remove the stopper moving motor (M16)

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stopper moving motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-581 Remove the stopper moving motor



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Separate pawl motor (M17)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the separate pawl motor (M17)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the separate pawl motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC93-01001A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Drive, motor step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

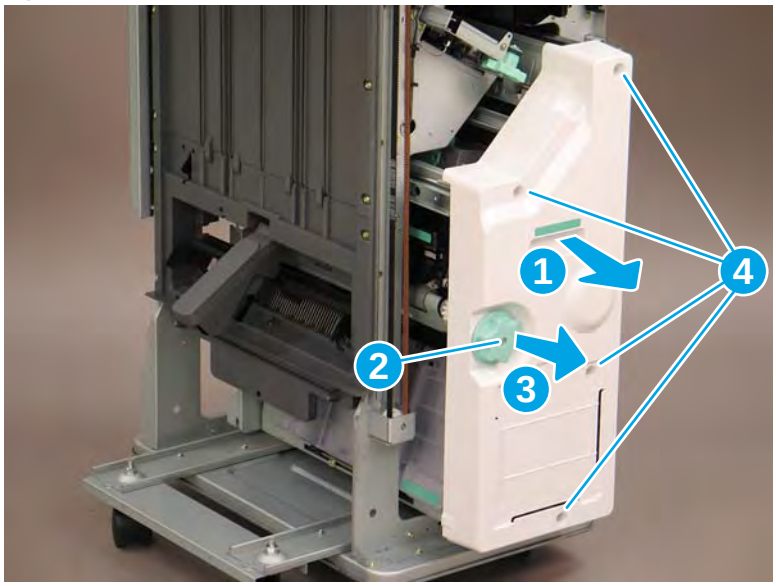
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-582 Remove five screws and the cover

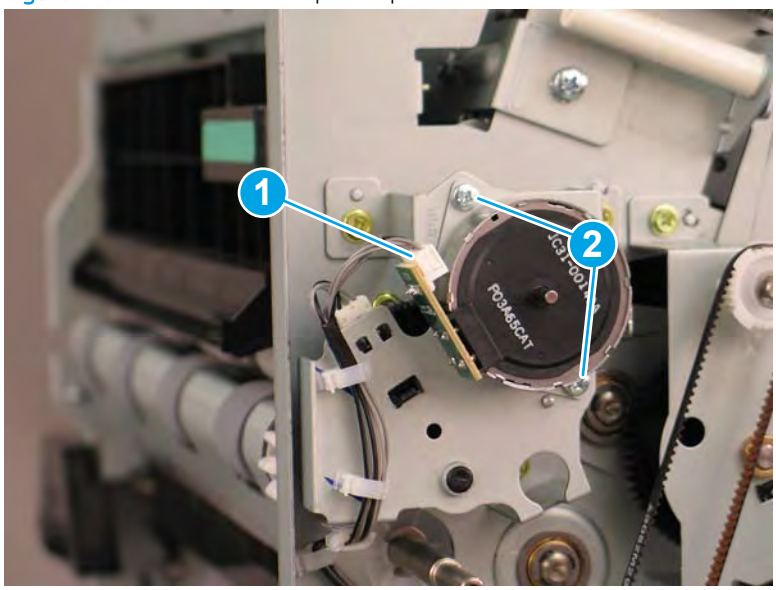


Step 2: Remove the separate pawl motor (M17)

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the separate pawl motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-583 Remove the separate pawl motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Folding roller motor (M18)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the folding roller motor (M18)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the folding roller motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC31-00144A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Folding roller motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

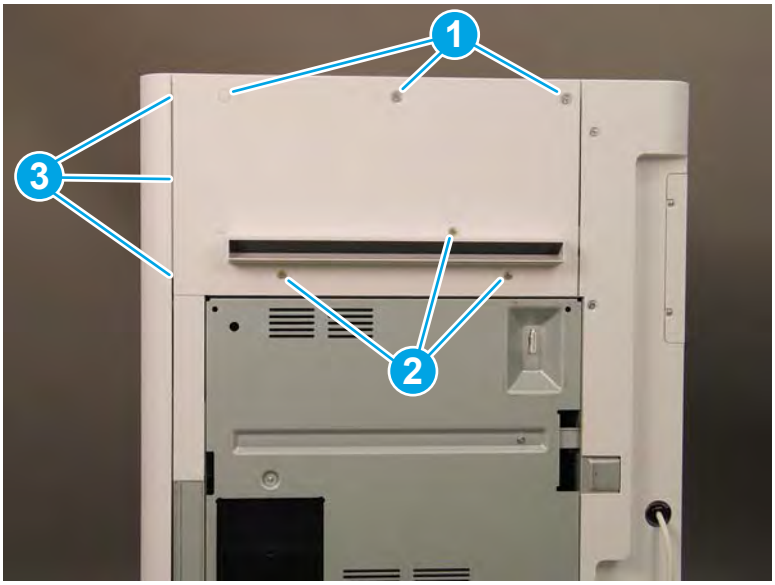
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

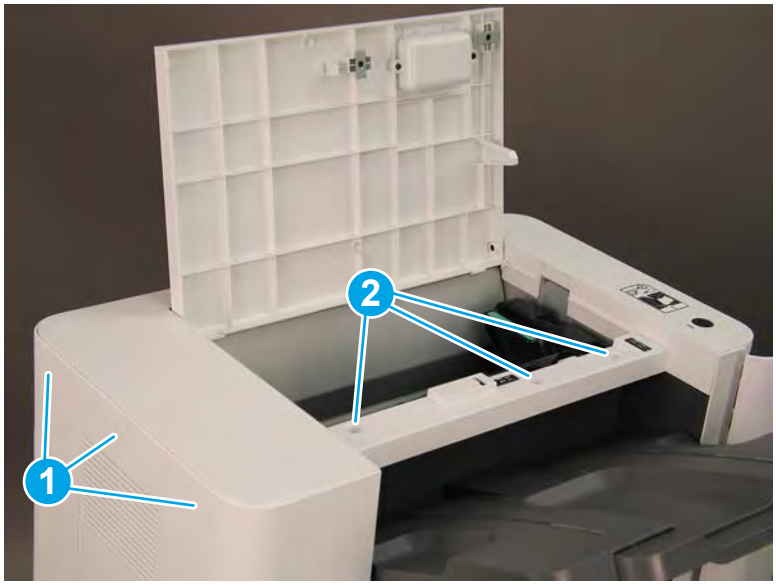
Figure 4-584 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

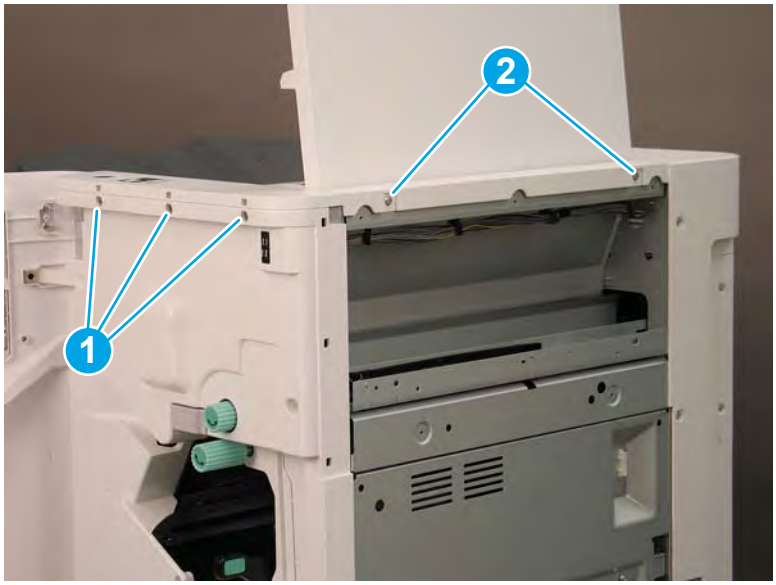
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-585 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

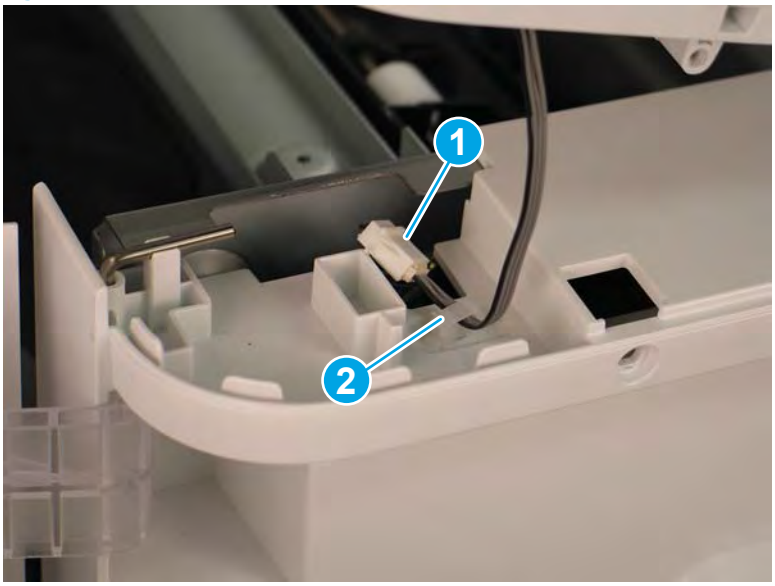
Figure 4-586 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-587 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

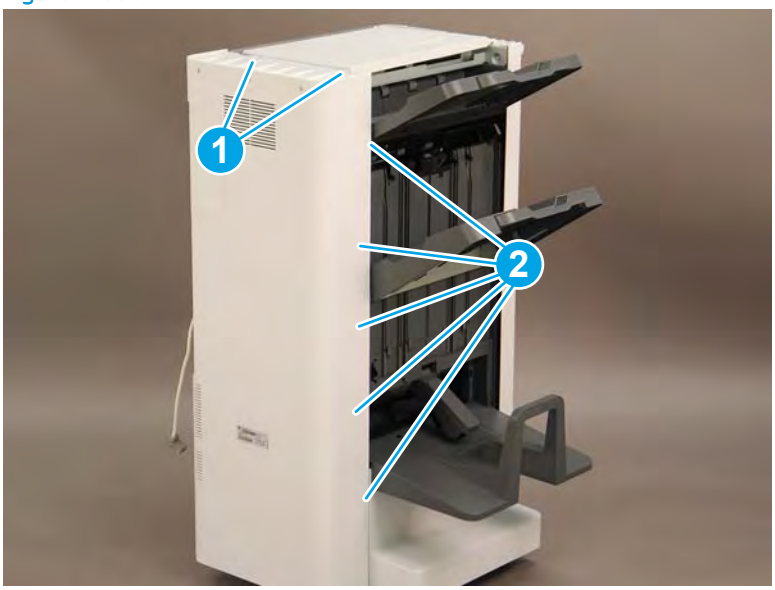


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 4-588 Remove seven screws

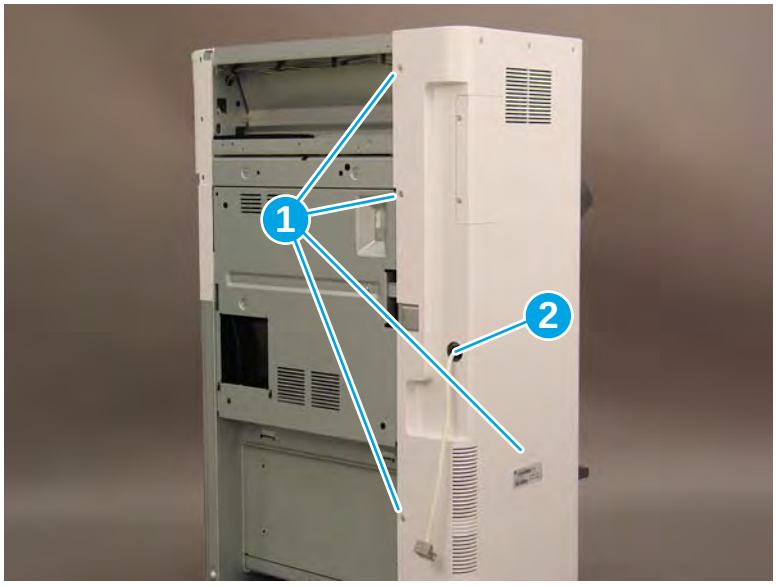


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-589 Remove four screws and the rear cover

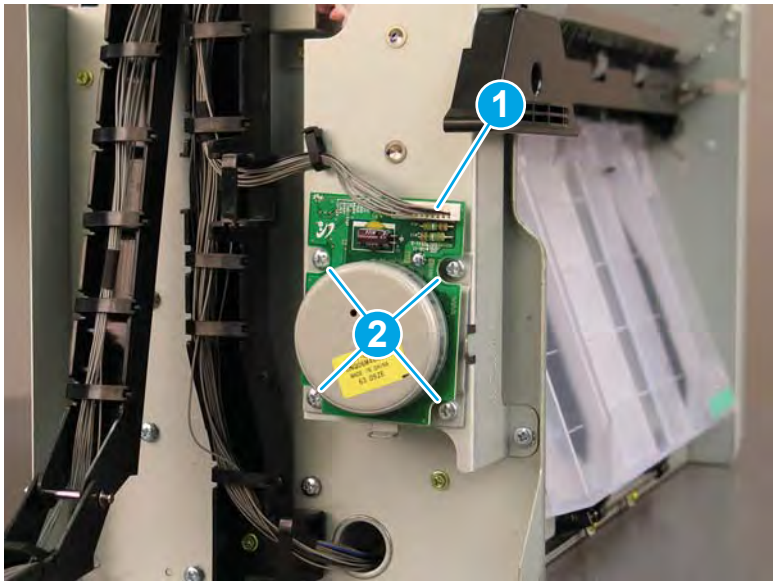


Step 4: Remove the folding roller motor (M18)

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the folding roller motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-590 Remove the folding roller motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Blade motor (M19)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield
- Step 3: Remove the blade motor (M19)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the blade motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC90-01435A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Finisher sub - bm main blade

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

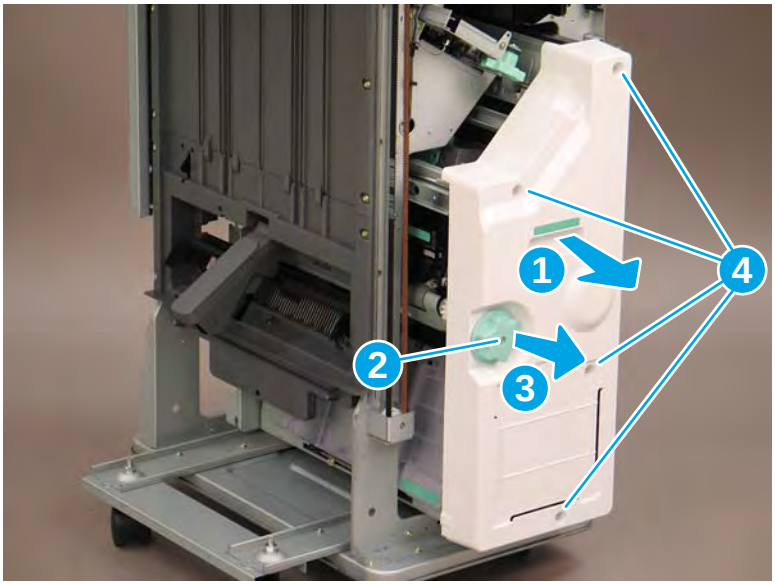
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

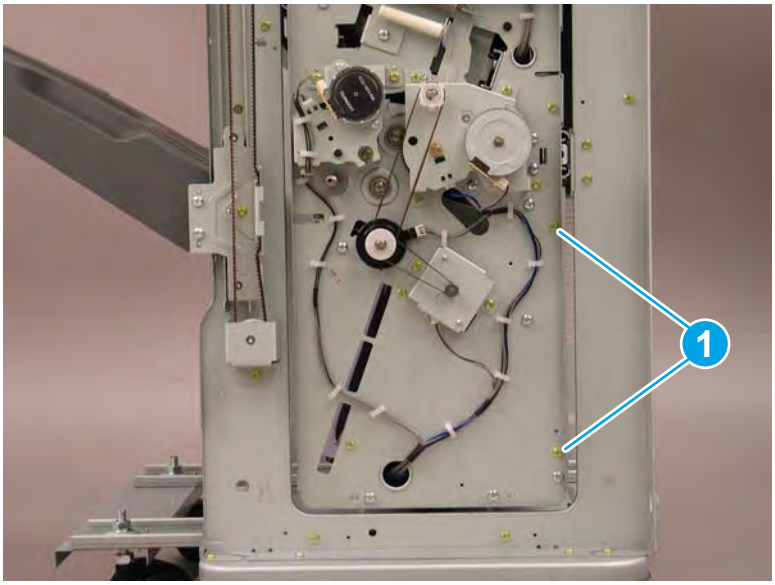
Figure 4-591 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

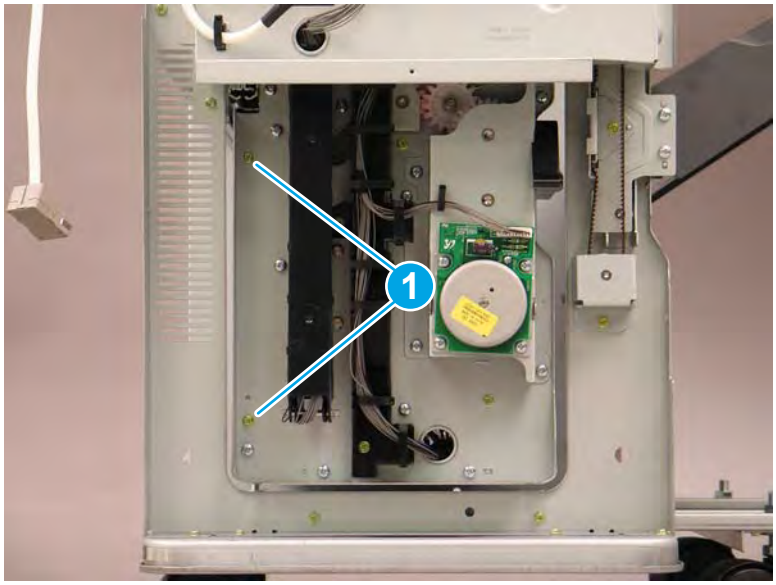
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 4-592 Remove two screws



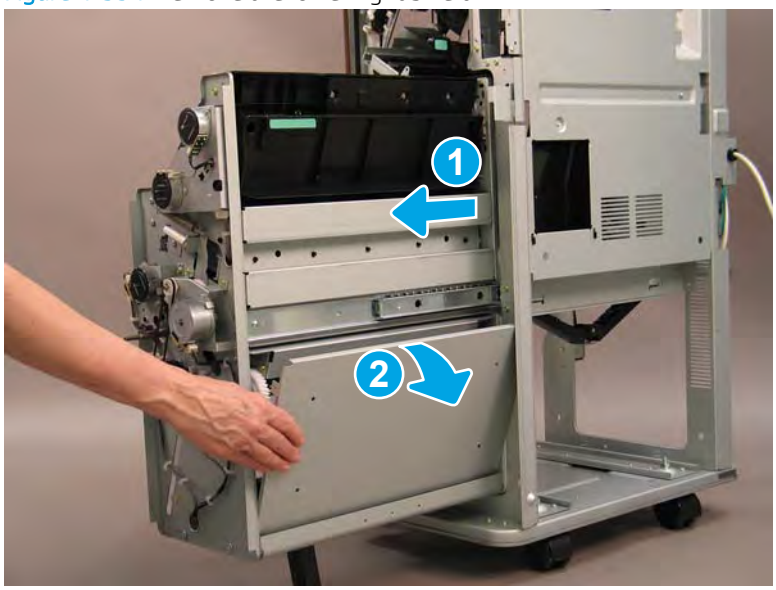
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 4-593 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-594 Remove the lower right shield

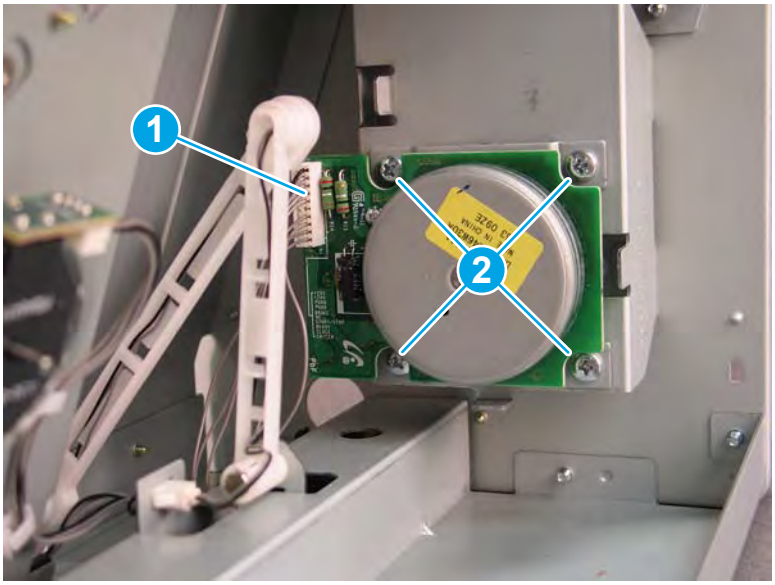


Step 3: Remove the blade motor (M19)

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the blade motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-595 Remove the blade motor



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

C fold motor (M20)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the C fold motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the C fold motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

JC93-01154A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

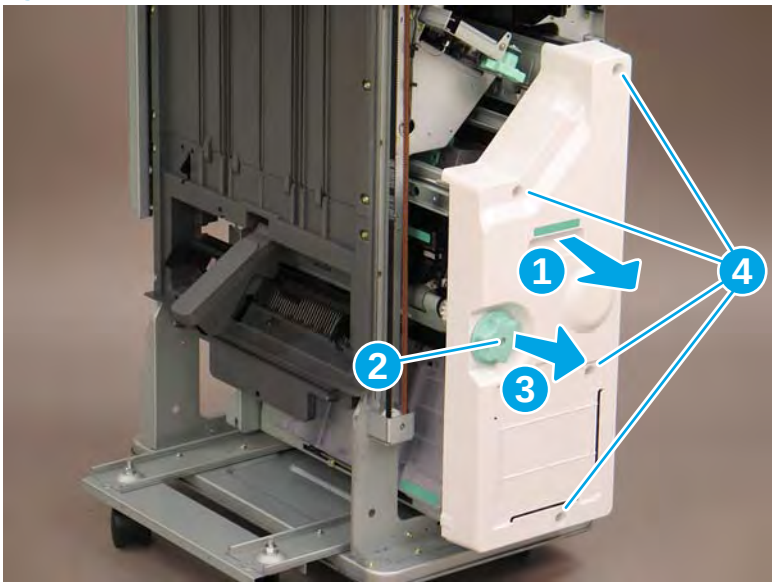
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

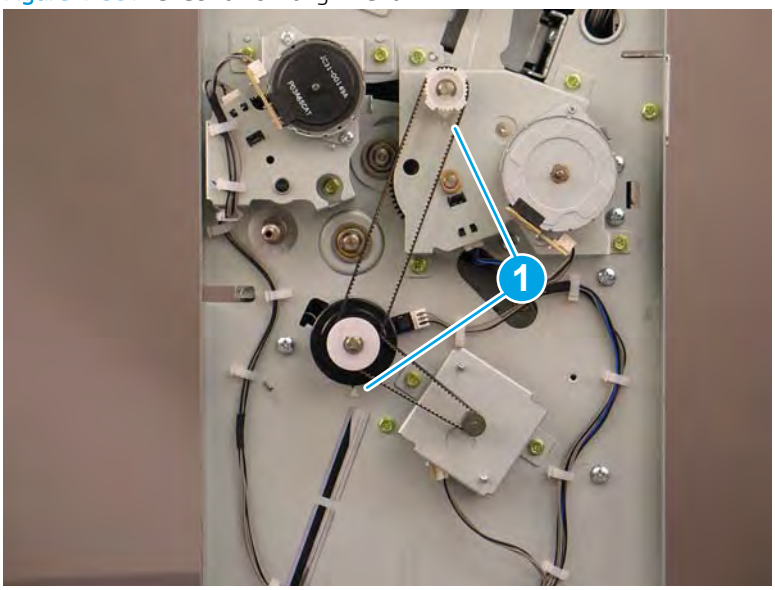
Figure 4-596 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Remove the C fold motor

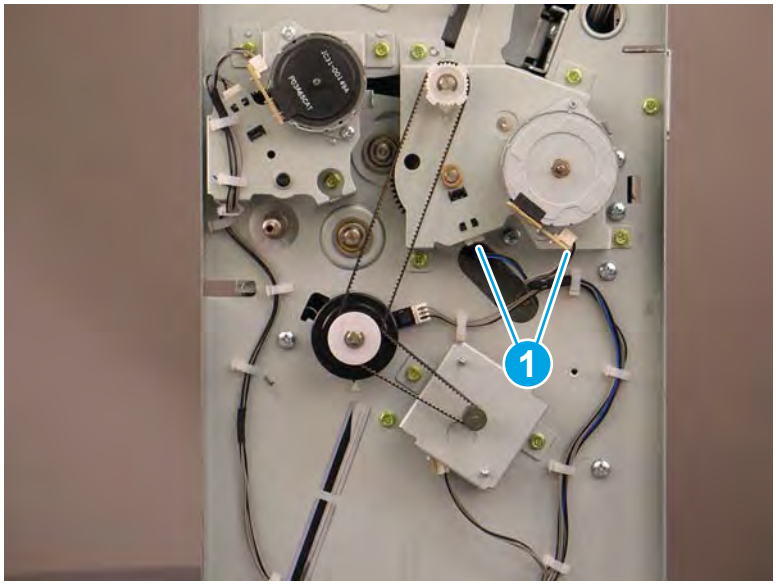
1. Note the position of the alignment arrows on the upper white gear and the lower motor (callout 1). These arrows must be aligned in these positions when the motor is reinstalled.

Figure 4-597 Check arrow alignment



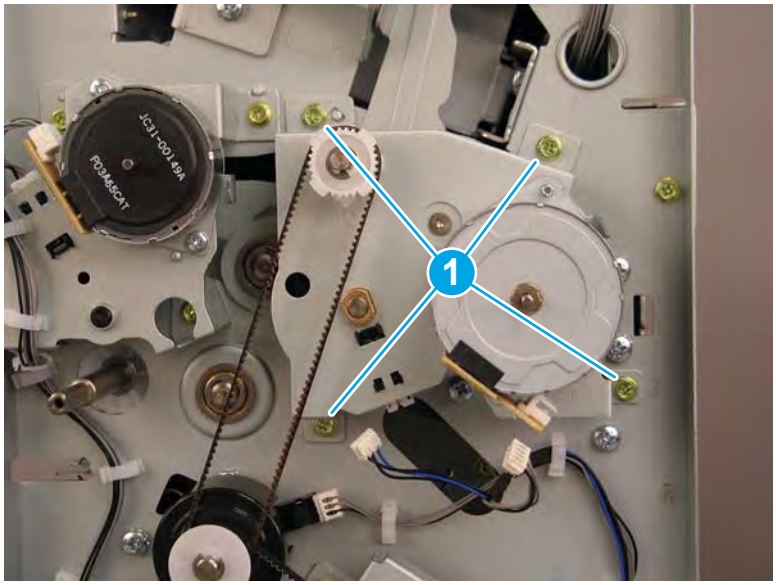
2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-598 Disconnect two connectors



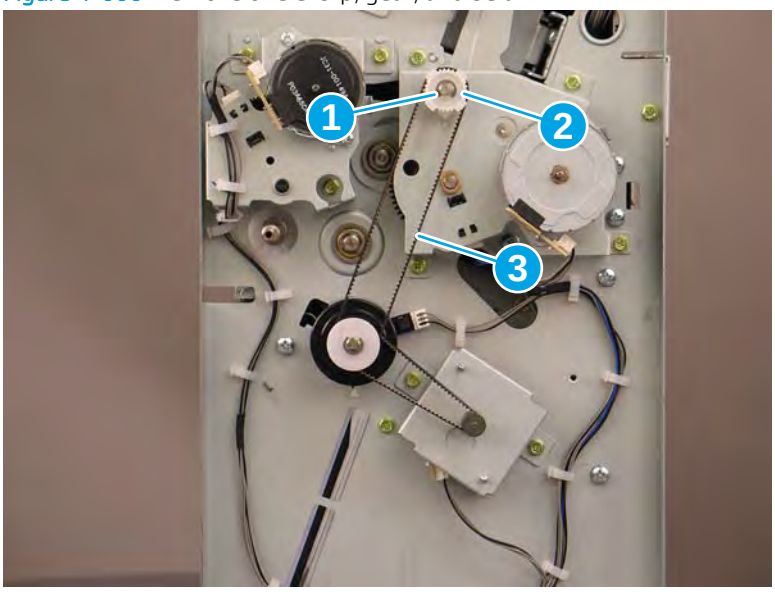
3. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-599 Remove four screws



4. Remove one e-clip (callout 1) on top of the white gear. Remove the white gear (callout 2) and release the belt (callout 3).

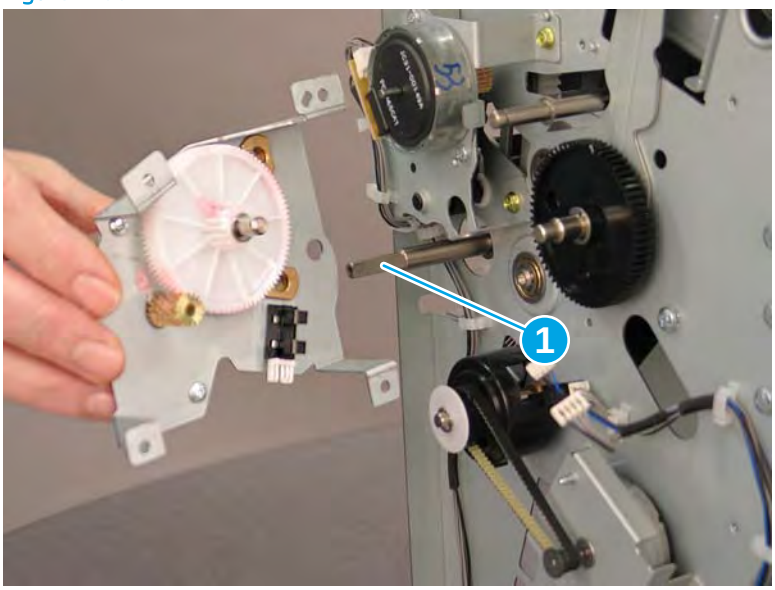
Figure 4-600 Remove one e-clip, gear, and belt



5. Remove the bracket and motor from the booklet finisher.

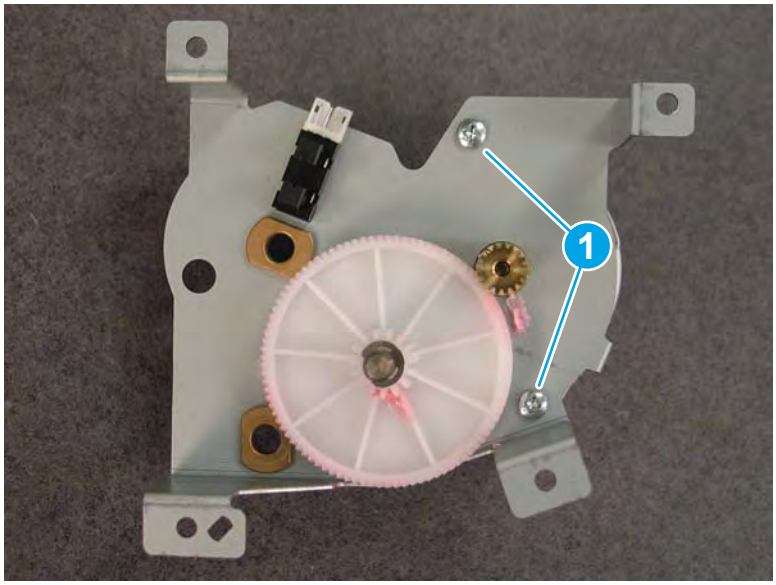
⚠ CAUTION: Do not pull on the shaft (callout 1) while removing the bracket and motor. The shaft might become dislodged at the other end. If the shaft becomes dislodged, remove the booklet finisher PCA shield and PCA bracket to reinstall the shaft.

Figure 4-601 Remove the bracket and motor



6. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the C fold motor.

Figure 4-602 Remove two screws



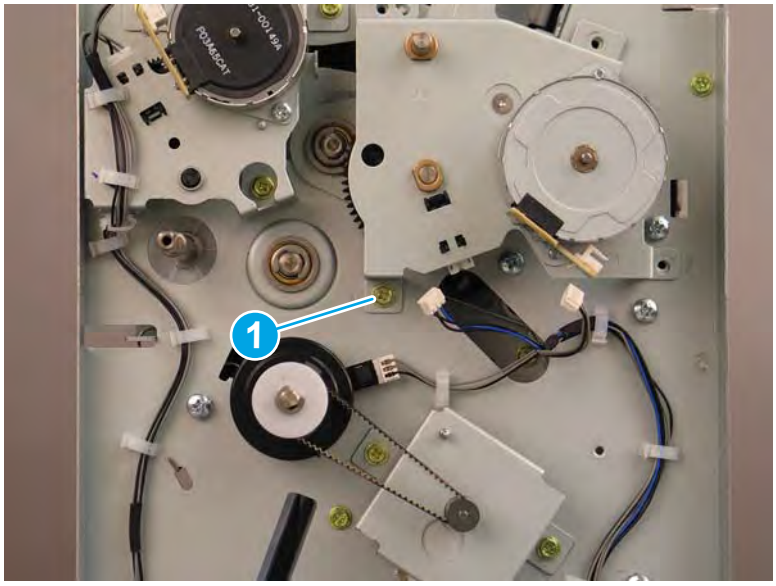
7. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: C fold motor

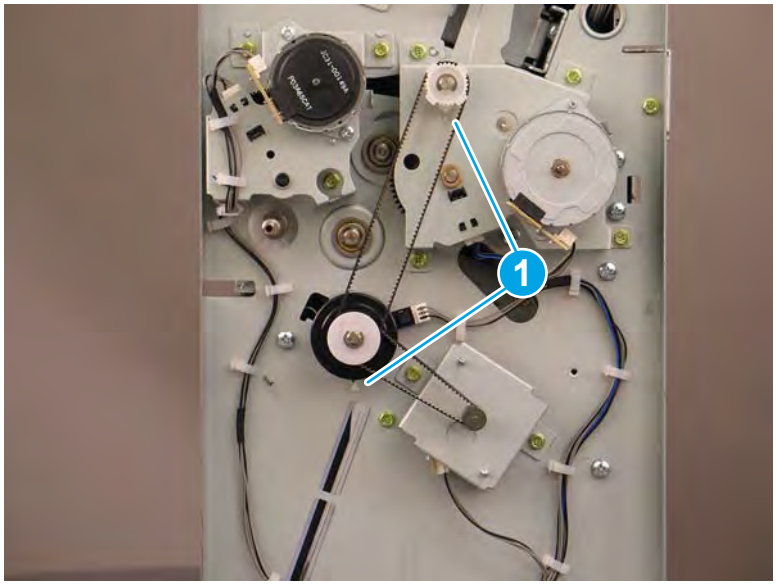
a. When installing the motor, install one screw (callout 1) to hold the bracket in place while installing the gear and belt.

Figure 4-603 Install one screw



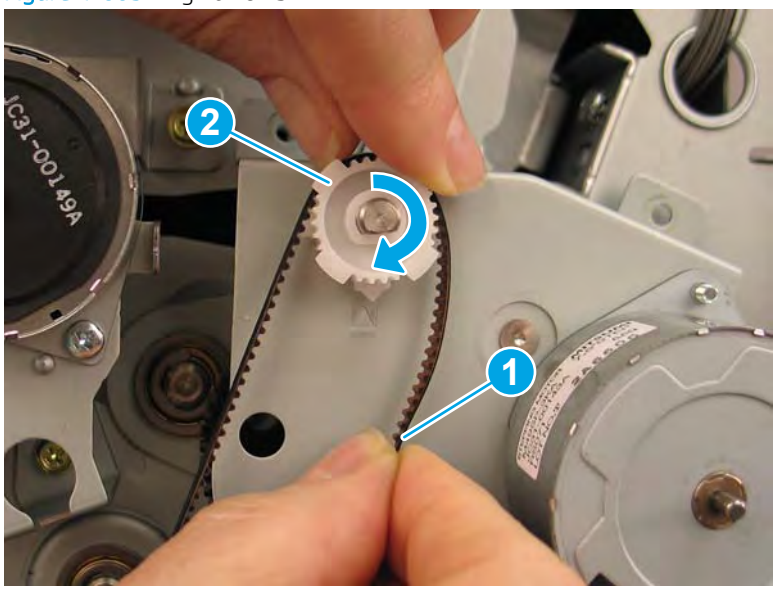
b. Check the position of the alignment arrows on the upper white gear and the lower motor (callout 1).

Figure 4-604 Check arrow alignment



c. If the arrows are not aligned, slightly pull up on the belt to create some slack around the gear (callout 1), and then rotate the gear (callout 2) until the arrows align.

Figure 4-605 Align arrows



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Problem solving

Control panel message document (CPMD)

Error messages and control panel message troubleshooting overview

For additional service and support

HP service personnel, go to one of the following **Web-based Interactive Search Engines** (WISE) sites:

AMS

- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-en
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-es
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-pt

APJ

- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-en
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-ja
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-ko
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-zh-Hans
- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-zh-Hant

EMEA

- https://support.hp.com/wise/home/emea-en

Channel partner resources

Channel partners, go to **HP Channel Services Network (GCSN)** at www.hp.com/partners/csn .

At these locations, find information on the following topics:

- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting

  To view a list of control panel message documents per printer in WISE, enter document ID c05048451, to locate CPMD list.

  Go to WISE and enter this document ID c05791539 written instructions.

  - Refer to "Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview" on page 888 for more details.
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty and regulatory information

Channel partners, access training materials in the Partner First Learning Center at www.hpi-external.sabacloud.com.

To access HP PartSurfer information from any mobile device, go to http://partsurfermobile.hp.com/ or scan the Quick Response (QR) code below.

Clear paper jams

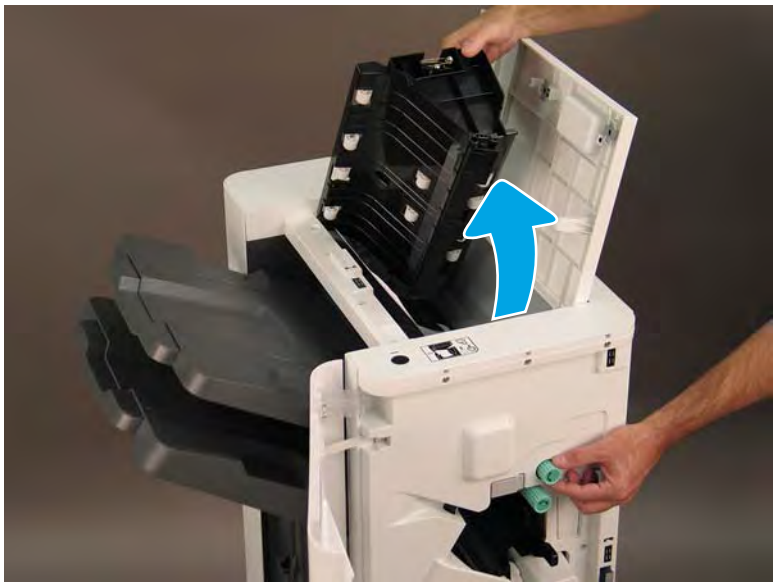
Clear paper jams in the Booklet maker

Clear jams in the top output area

1. Open the top cover.



2. Lift the TF feeder, and then turn the knob while the TF feeder is lifted.



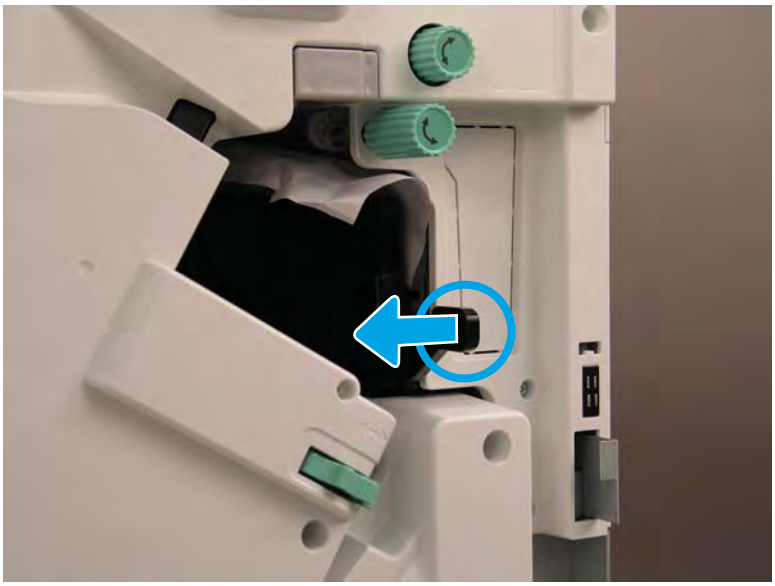
3. Remove any jammed paper.

Clear jams in the booklet maker paper path

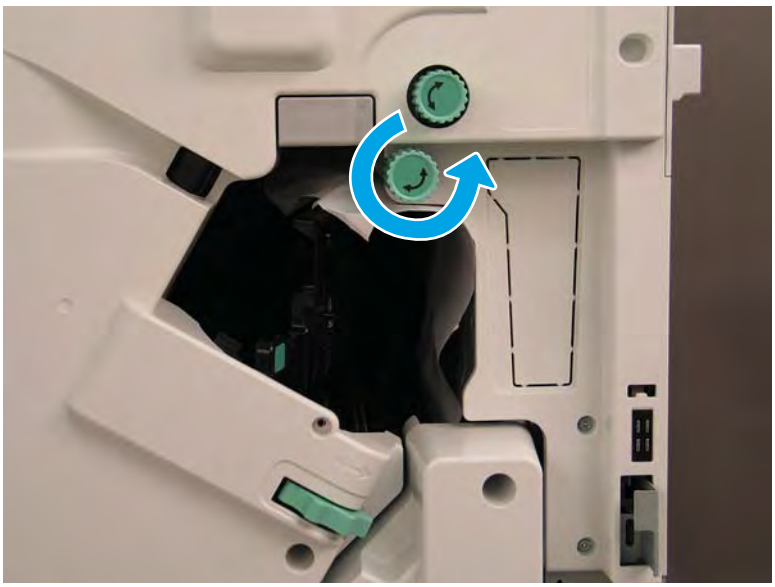
1. Open the booklet maker door.



2. Release the lever.



3. Turn the knob.



4. Remove the jammed paper.

Clear jams in the booklet maker booklet output area

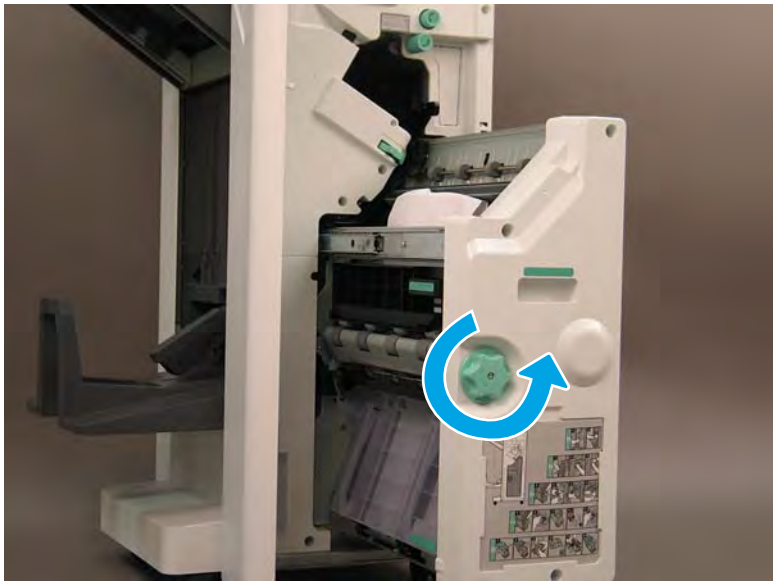
1. Open the booklet maker door.



2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.



3. Turn the knob to advance the jammed paper.



4. Remove the jammed paper/booklet from the output area.

Clear jams in the booklet maker assembly-right-upper area

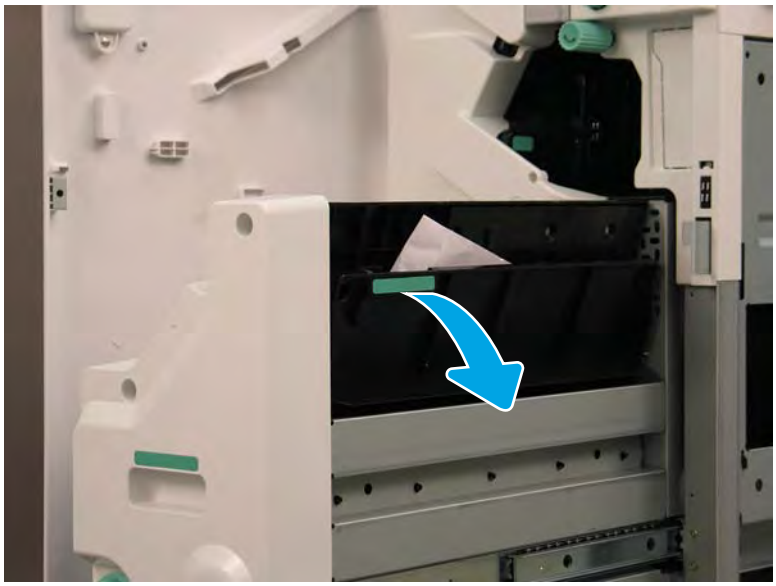
1. Open the booklet maker door.



2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.



3. Open the vertical tray by pulling outward on the green tab.



4. Remove the jammed paper.

Clear jams in the booklet maker assembly left middle area

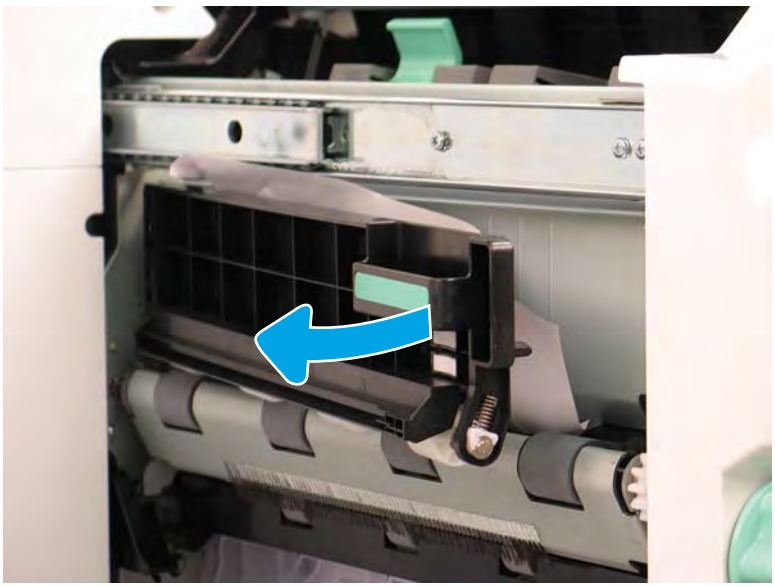
1. Open the booklet maker door.



2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.



3. Pull the green tab.



4. Remove the jammed paper.

5. Open the clear plastic door at the left bottom.



6. Remove the jammed paper.

Clear jams in the booklet maker assembly left lower area

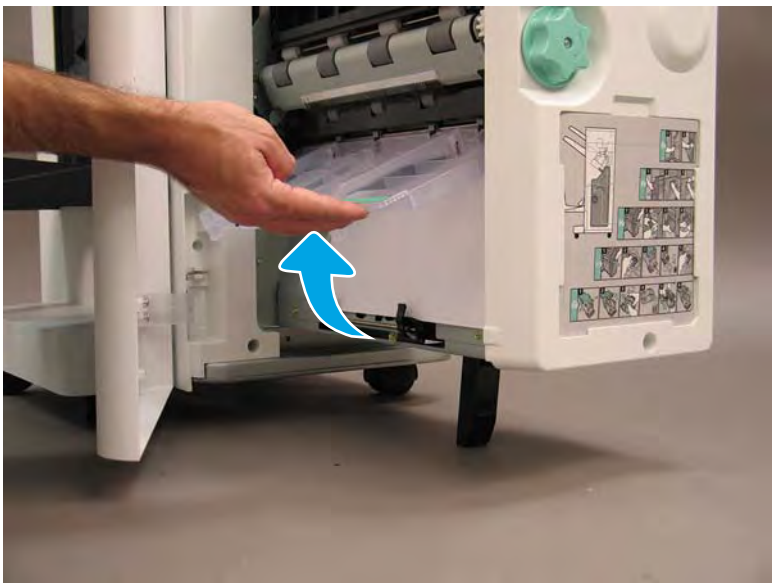
1. Open the booklet maker door.



2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.



3. Open the roller door.
4. Remove the jammed paper.
5. Open the clear plastic door at the left bottom.



6. Remove the jammed paper.

Clear jams in the Bridge

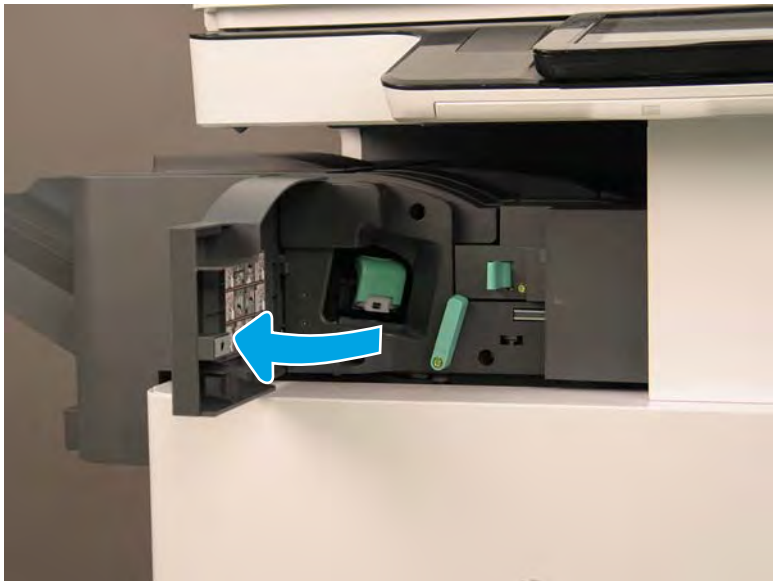
1. Lift the bridge cover and clear any jammed paper inside the bridge.



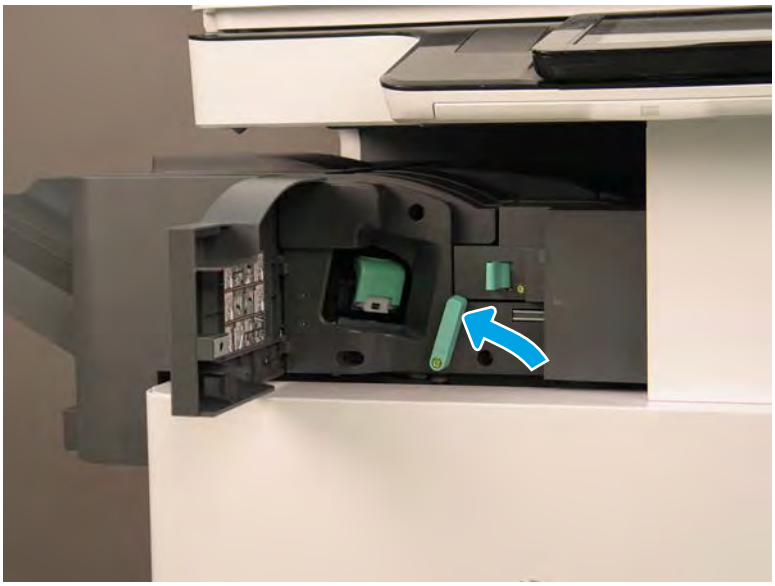
2. Close the bridge cover.

Clear jams in the inner finisher (IF)

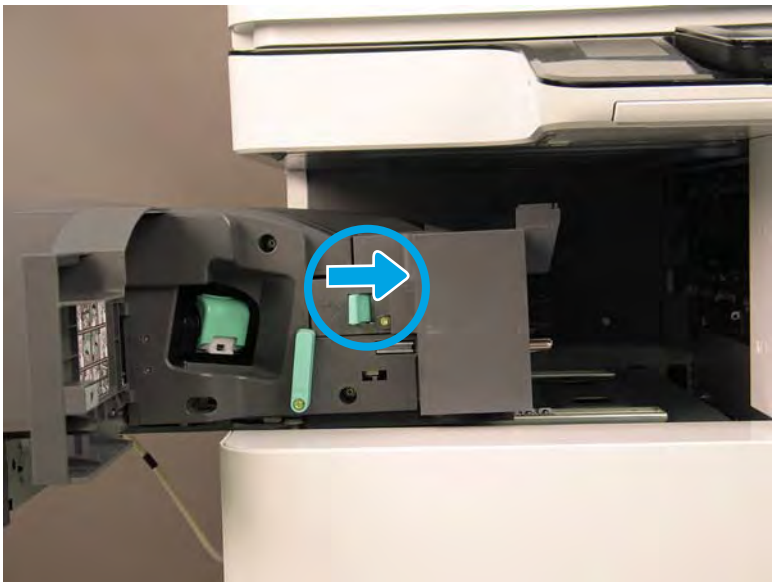
1. Open the staple cartridge access door.



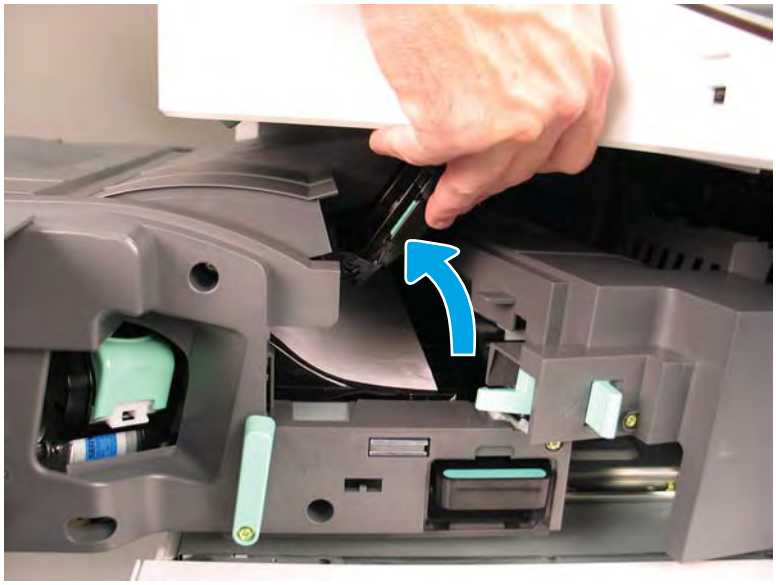
2. Rotate the lever to the left to release the hooks that secure the inner finisher (they hold the IF in place).



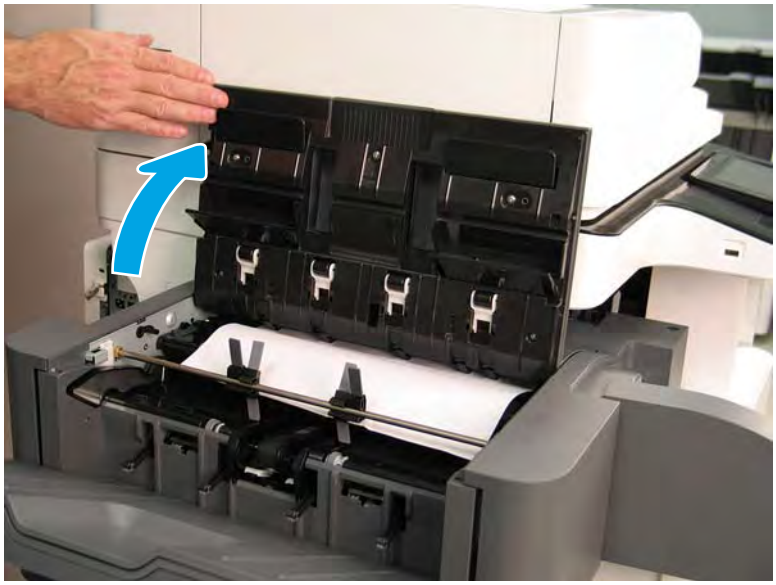
3. Slide the inner finisher partially out.
4. Release the lever to open the right cover on the inner finisher.



5. Lift the inner finisher jam access cover, and then remove any jammed paper inside the rear of the inner finisher.



6. Close the inner finisher jam access cover.
7. Close the inner finisher right cover.
8. Open the output side jam access cover, and then remove any jammed paper.



9. Close the output side jam access cover.
10. Slide the inner finisher in until it clicks into place.
11. Close the staple cartridge access door.

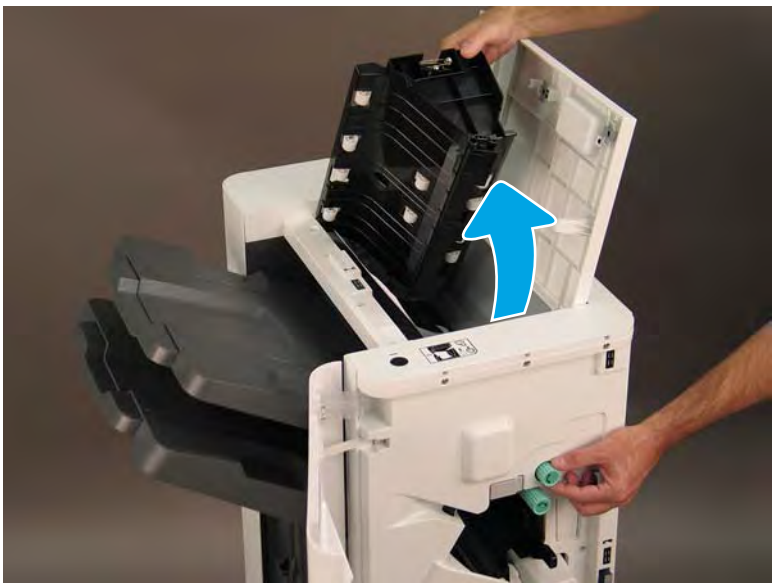
Clear paper jams in the High-volume finisher

Clear jams in the High-volume finisher output area

1. Open the top cover.



2. Lift the TF feeder, and then turn the knob while the TF feeder is lifted.



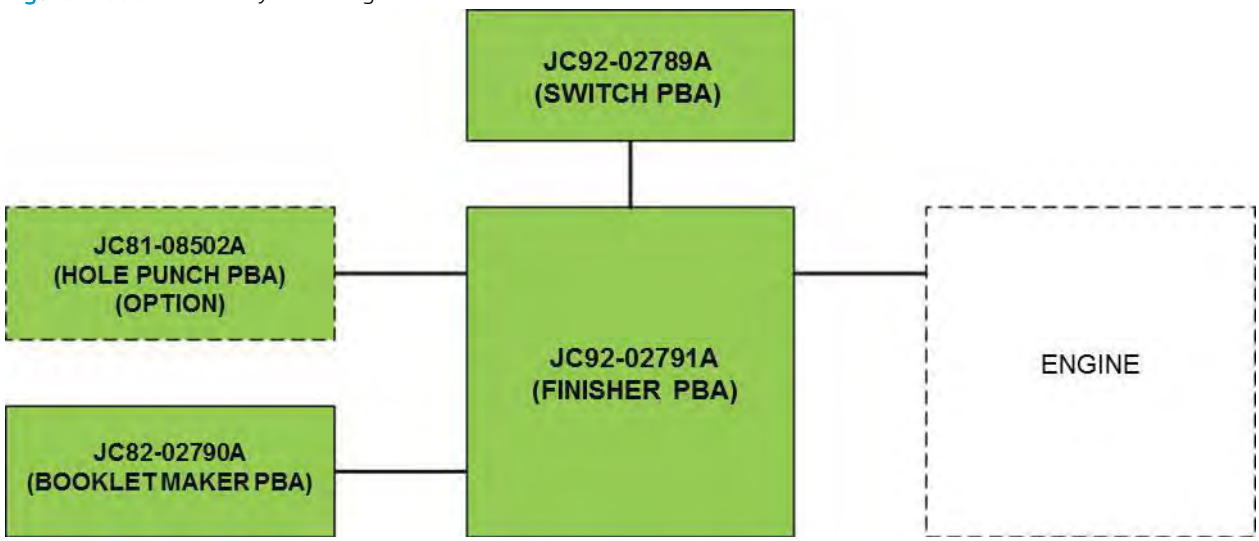
3. Remove any jammed paper.

Finisher system diagram

PCA structure diagram

Finisher system consists of the FINISHER PCA, BOOKLET MAKER PCA, SWITCH PCA, and HOLE PUNCH PCA.

Figure 4-606 Finisher system diagram



PCA function

- FINISHER PCA

  This PCA controls the finisher modules and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

- SWITCH PCA

  This PCA shows the manual stapling condition and accepts the button input for manual staple operation.

- BOOKLET MAKER PCA

  This PCA controls the booklet maker module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

- HOLE PUNCH PCA

  This PCA controls the hole punch module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

5 Inner finisher

- Product Specification and Description
- Service approach
- Part diagrams, removal and replacment (inner finisher)
- Problem solving
- Block Diagram

Product Specification and Description

Specification

Item	Description
Capacity	550 Sheets (Main 500, Top 50) @ 80gsm
Sensing	Paper Jam/Tray Sensing/Stapler/Cover Open
Media Sizes	• Main: 148 - 320 mm x 140-457.2 mm (58.3-126 inch x 55.1-180 inch) • Top: 98 - 297 mm x 140-432 mm (38.6-116.9 inch x 55.1-170.1 inch)
Media types	Plain/Thick/Heavy weight/Thin/Cotton/Colored/Recycled/Bond/Archive/Pre-Punched/Cardstock/Glossy/ Envelope
Media Weight	• Main: 52-256 gsm (13.9-68.3 lb.) • Top: 52-325 gsm (13.9-86.7 lb.)
Number of Bin	2 (Main/Top)
Dimension (W X D X H)	458 x 491 x 173 mm (18.0 X 19.3 X 6.8 inch)
Weight	15 kg (33 lb.)
Tray1 Finishing Capacity	50 Sheets @ 80gsm
Tray1 Finishing Mode	Stapling (Left, Right, Center)/Punch (2/3, 2/4, Swedish)
Tray2 Finishing Capacity	500 Sheets @ 80 gsm

Table 5-1 Paper Size Specification

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B5(JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B5(ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X

Table 5-1 Paper Size Specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	O	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	O	O	X	X	X	X
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47	—	W 148-320 - L 140-1200	X	W 98-297 - L 140-1200	X	X	X

[1] "F/R" means front side and rear side can be supported.

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
B5 (JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
B5 (ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	X	O

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O		O	O	O
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47	-	X	X	X	X	X

Table 5-2 Media performance

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Plain (71-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Thick (91-105 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Heavy weight (106-175 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 1 (176-216 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 2 (217-256 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 3 (257-300 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 4 (301-325 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Thin (60-70 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Cotton (75-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Colored (75-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Pre-Printed (75-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Recycled (60-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Bond	O	O	O	O
Archive (75-105 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
LetterHead	O	O	O	O
Pre-Punched	O	O	O	X
Thin Cardstock (105-163 g/m²)	O	O	O	O

Table 5-2 Media performance (continued)

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Thick Cardstock (170-216 g/m²)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Cardstock (217-256 g/m²)	O	O	O	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 1(257-300 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 2(301-325 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Thin Glossy (106-169 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Thick Glossy (170-216 g/m²)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Glossy (217-256 g/m²)	O	X	X	X
Envelope (75-90 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Thick Envelope (217-256 g/m²)	O	X	X	X
Tab	O	X	X	O
Perforated Paper (75-90 g/m²)	X	O	X	X

Finisher System

Sectional view

Figure 5-1 Finisher system—sectional view

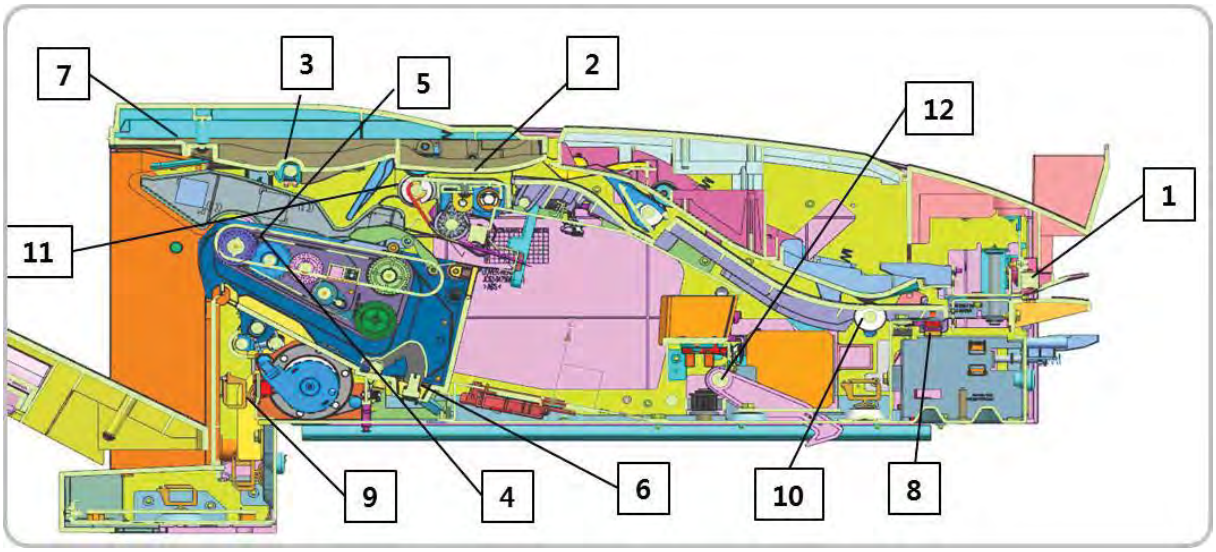


Table 5-3 Finisher system—sectional view

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Entrance sensor	7	Jam Door Open Sensor
2	Passthru Sensor	8	Front Door Open Sensor
3	Paddle Home Sensor	9	Stacker Tray Home Sensor
4	Tamper Home_F Sensor	10	Paper Feed roller
5	Tamper Home_R Sensor	11	Paper Exit roller
6	Eject Home Sensor	12	Turning Knob

Paper path

Figure 5-2 Finisher system—paper path

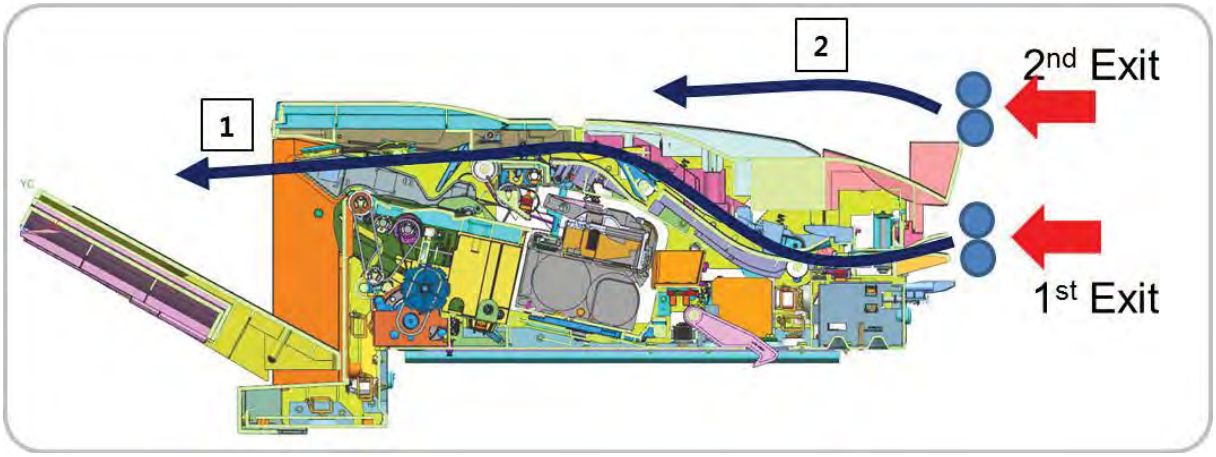


Table 5-4 Finisher system—paper path

Item	Description
1	Finisher Main Tray – Staple / offset / Punch
2	Finisher Top Tray – Stack only

Electrical parts layout

Figure 5-3 Finisher system—electrical parts layout

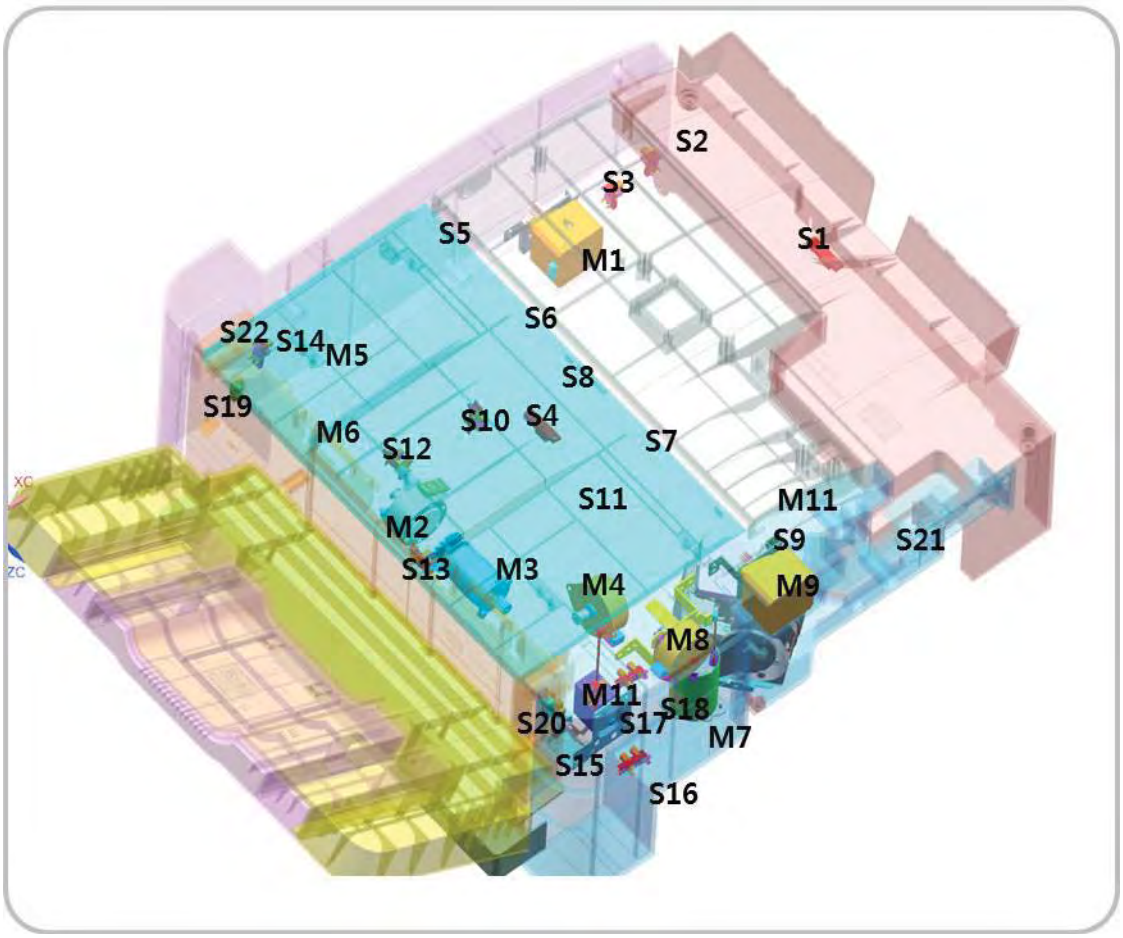


Table 5-5 Finisher system—electrical parts layout

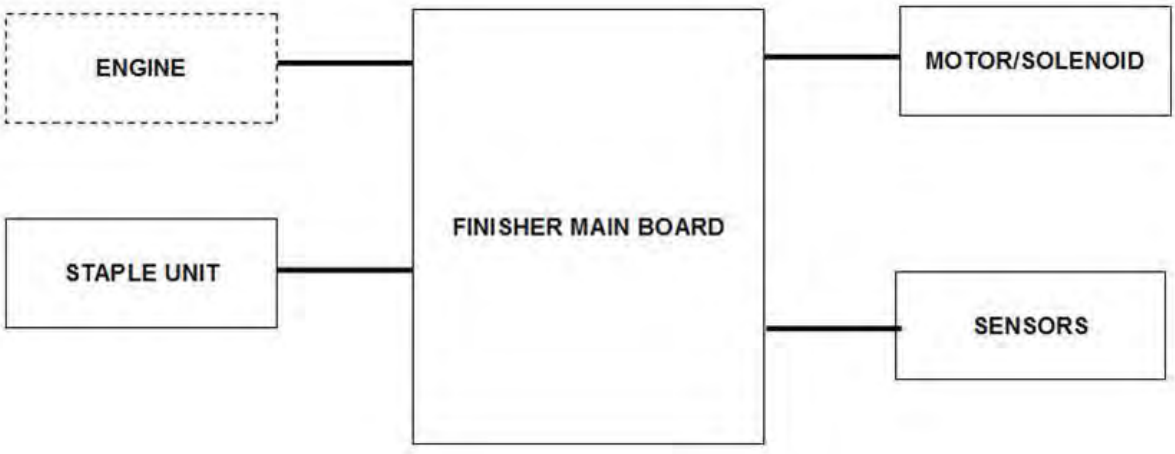
Item	Description	Function
S1	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Entrance Sensor
S2	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Shaft Docking Sensor
S3	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Dust Box Sensor
S4	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Sub Stay Sensor
S5	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler Position Sensor_Rear
S6	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple Position Sensor_ Center 1
S7	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple Position Sensor_ Center 2
S8	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Exit Sensor
S9	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler Position Sensor_Front
S10	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	End Defence Sensor
S11	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject Sensor
S12	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper Support Sensor

Table 5-5 Finisher system—electrical parts layout (continued)

Item	Description	Function
S13	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject 2 Motor Sensor
S14	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tamper Position Sensor_Rear
S15	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper Holder Position Sensor
S16	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tray Home Position Sensor
S17	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tamper Position Sensor_Front
S18	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Main Paddle Position Sensor
S19	JC81-07403A	AS- Sensor
S20	JC81-07396A	AS- Sensor
S21	JC39-01610A	Switch Front cover open
S22	JC39-02175A	Switch Jam door open
M1	JC31-00169A	Entrance Motor
M2	JC31-00009C	EJECTOR_1_Motor
M3	Mabuchi	EJECTOR_2_Motor
M4	JC31-00149A	Tamper_Motor_Front
M5	JC31-00149A	Tamper_Motor_Rear
M6	JC31-00149A	Paper Support
M7	KIG	Tray Motor
M8	JC31-00149A	Main Paddle Motor
M9	JC31-00169A	Exit Motor
M10	JC31-00149A	Traverse Motor
M11	TDS-10SL	Paper Holder Solenoid

Block Diagram

Figure 5-4 Finisher system—block diagram



PCA Connection Information

Figure 5-5 Finisher system—PBA connection information

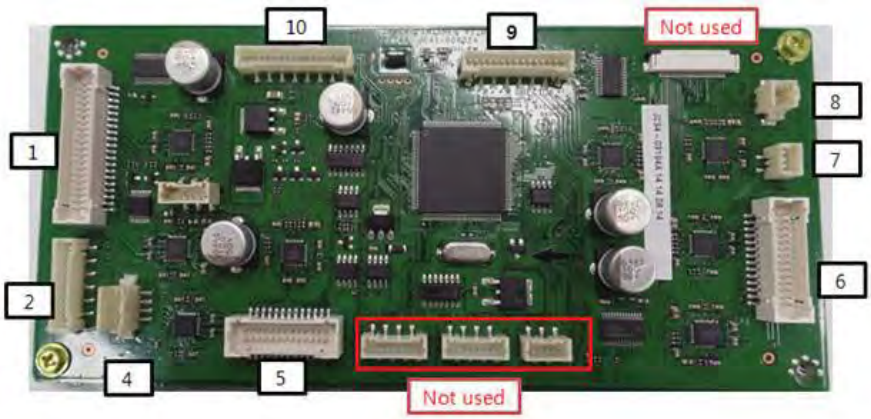


Table 5-6 Finisher system—PBA connection information

No.	Connection
1	CN3 : REAR Joint I/F
2	CN1 : REAR Sensor
3	CN10 : Traverse Mid Sensor
4	CN8 : Debug
5	CN2 : REAR I/F
6	CN7 : FRONT I/F
7	CN6 : Stacker Switch
8	CN9 : Solenoid
9	CN4 : Ejector & Supporter I/F
10	CN5 : Main I/F

Service approach

⚠ CAUTION: When working on the product, do not pick up the unit by the output tray, which will detach under the weight of the product.

Before performing service

- Remove all paper from the product.
- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

ESD precautions

⚠ CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

After performing service

- Plug in the power cable.
- Verify the functions of the printer that might have been impacted by service procedures. Make sure the printer is in complete working order.
- Replace any accessories removed for service.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.

5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

Part diagrams, removal and replacment (inner finisher)

- ESD precautions
- Inner finisher
- Entrance sensor
- Entrance motor
- Exit sensor
- Exit motor
- Front Jogger Motor
- Front Jogger Home Sensor
- Rear Jogger Motor
- Rear Jogger Home Sensor
- Stapler
- Stapler position sensor assembly
- Traverse Motor
- Stacker Motor
- Stacker Encoder Sensor
- Stacker Lower Limit Switch
- Stack Beam Sensor
- Stack Position Sensor
- Paper Holding Lever Solenoid
- Paper Support Motor
- Paper Support Home Sensor
- Ejector Motor assembly
- Main Paddle Motor
- Main Paddle Home Sensor
- Main Paddle
- Ejector assembly
- Punch Dust Full Sensor
- End Fence Home Sensor

ESD precautions

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Inner finisher

- Sub-inner finisher
- Sub 1 - Inner finisher
- Sub 7 Inner finisher
- Sub 7 Inner finisher
- Sub 8 - Inner finisher

Sub-inner finisher

Figure 5-6 Sub-inner finisher

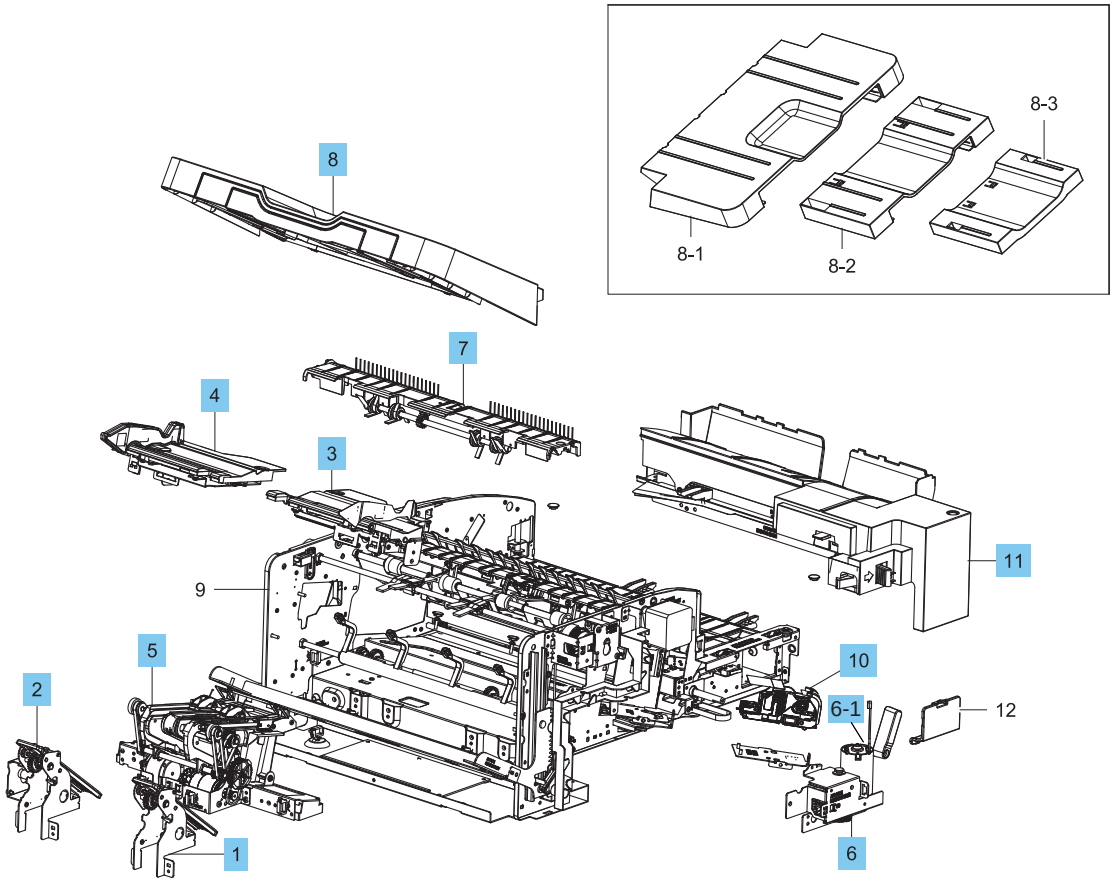


Table 5-7 Sub-inner finisher

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
Complete	Inner innisher whole unit	Y1G00-67901	1
1	Paper support	JC90-01310A	1
2	Paper support, rear	JC90-01311A	1
3	Alignment, front (Front Tamper)	JC82-00899A	1
4	Alignment, rear (Rear Tamper)	JC82-00900A	1
5	Ejector unit assy	JC90-01332A	1
6	Assy - stacker tray motor	JC90-01334B	1
6-1	Handle - lock release	JC66-04233A	1
7	Lower exit guide	JC90-01336A	1
8	Tray	JC90-01337B	1
10	Staple	Y1G14-67901	1
11	IF punch dummy	JC90-01343A	1
Not shown	Harness, inisher to copier PWR	JC39-02169A	1

Sub 1 - Inner finisher

Figure 5-7 Sub 1- Inner finisher

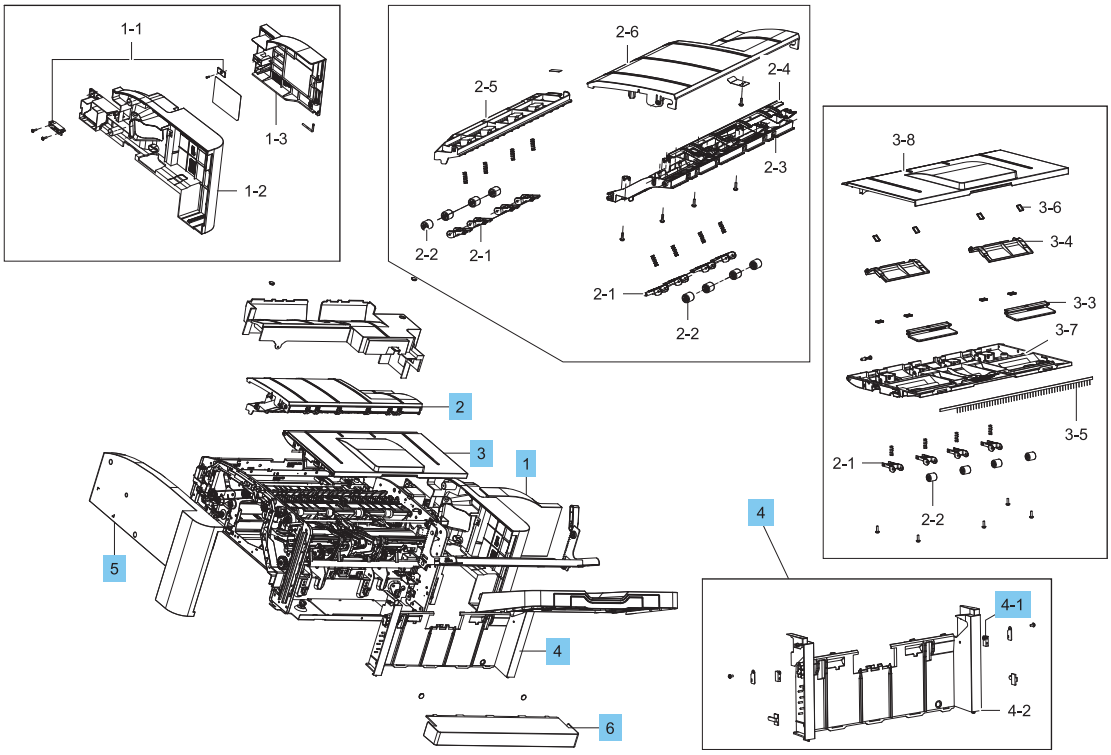


Table 5-8 Finisher sub 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, front	JC90-01321B	1
2	Cover, middle	JC90-01322B	1
3	Cover, compile	JC90-01323B	1
4	Stacker plate	JC90-01324B	1
4-1	IF Photo Interrupter	0603-001309	1
5	IF Cover, rear	JC63-04750B	1
6	IF Cover PCA	JC63-04792B	1
Not shown	Lift motor	JC31-00178B	1

Sub 7 Inner finisher

Figure 5-8 Sub 7 - Inner finisher

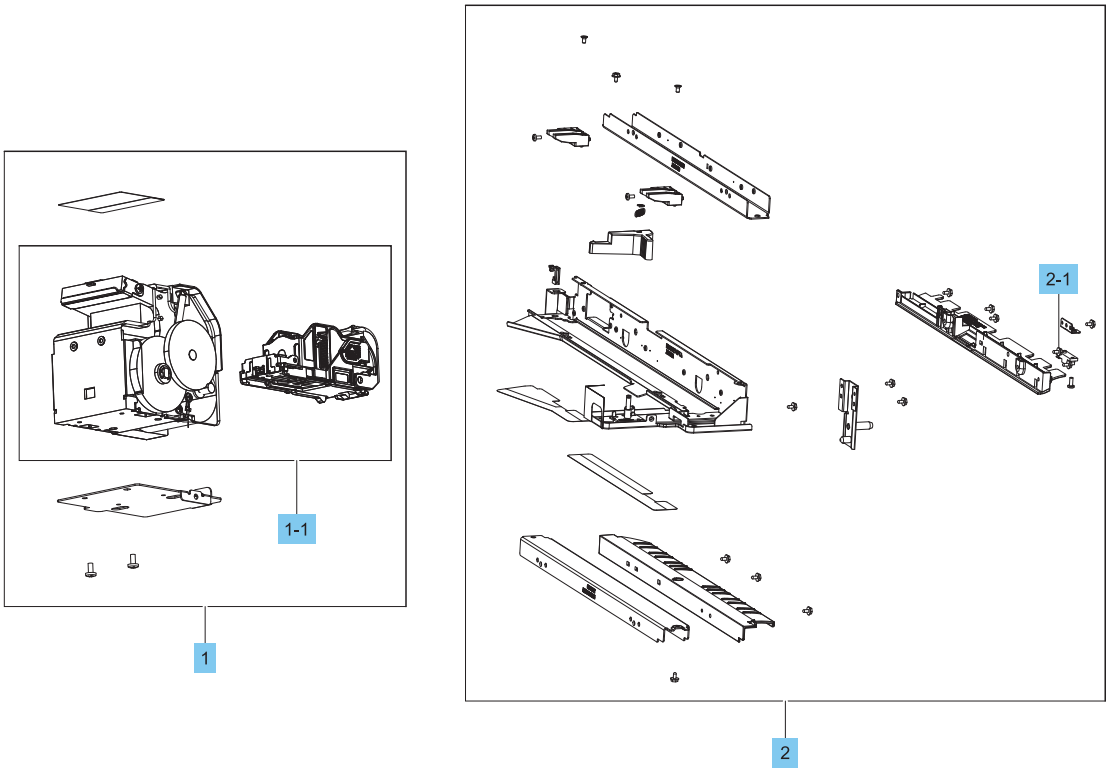


Table 5-9 Sub 7 - Inner finisher

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assy - inner finisher stapler	JC90-01342A	1
1-1	Stapler assembly	JC59-00040A	1
2	IF punch dummy	JC90-01343A	1
2-1	Photo-interrupter	0604-001381	1
Not shown	Staple cartridge – Inner finisher, booklet finisher	Y1G14-67901	1

Sub 7 Inner finisher

Figure 5-9 Sub 7 - Inner finisher

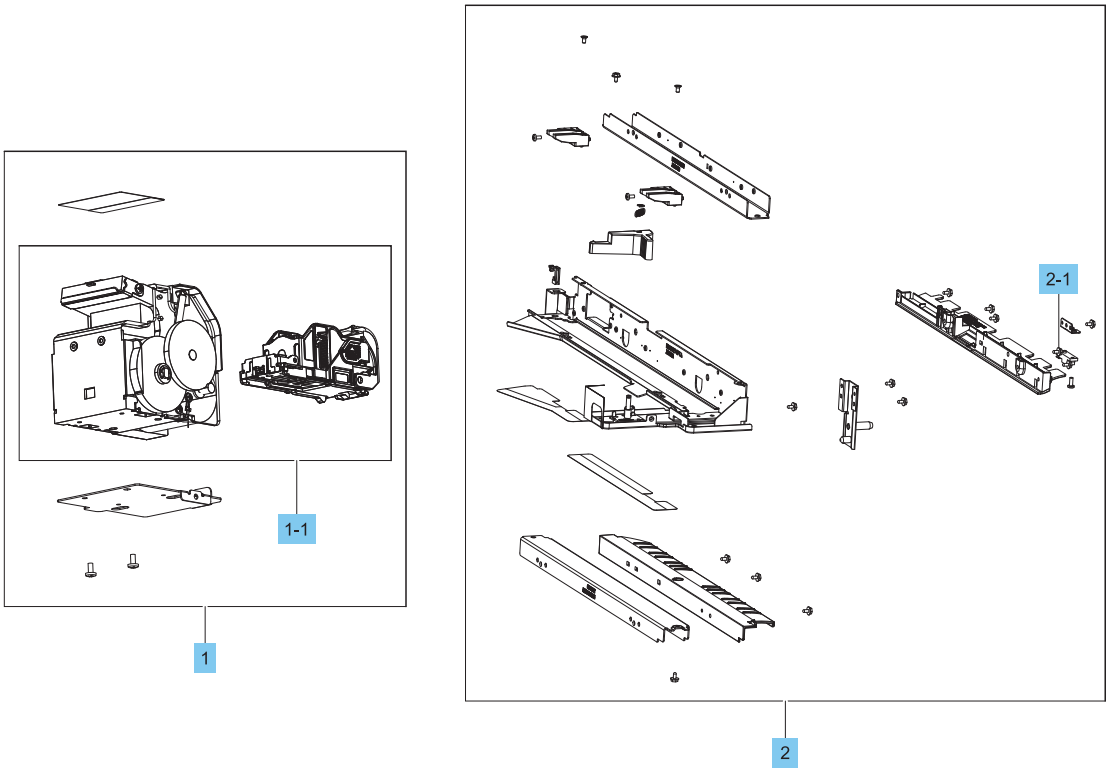


Table 5-10 Sub 7 - Inner finisher

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assy - inner finisher stapler	JC90-01342A	1
1-1	Stapler assembly	JC59-00040A	1
2	IF punch dummy	JC90-01343A	1
2-1	Photo-interrupter	0604-001381	1
Not shown	Staple cartridge – Inner finisher, booklet finisher	Y1G14-67901	1

Sub 8 - Inner finisher

Figure 5-10 Sub 8 - Inner finisher

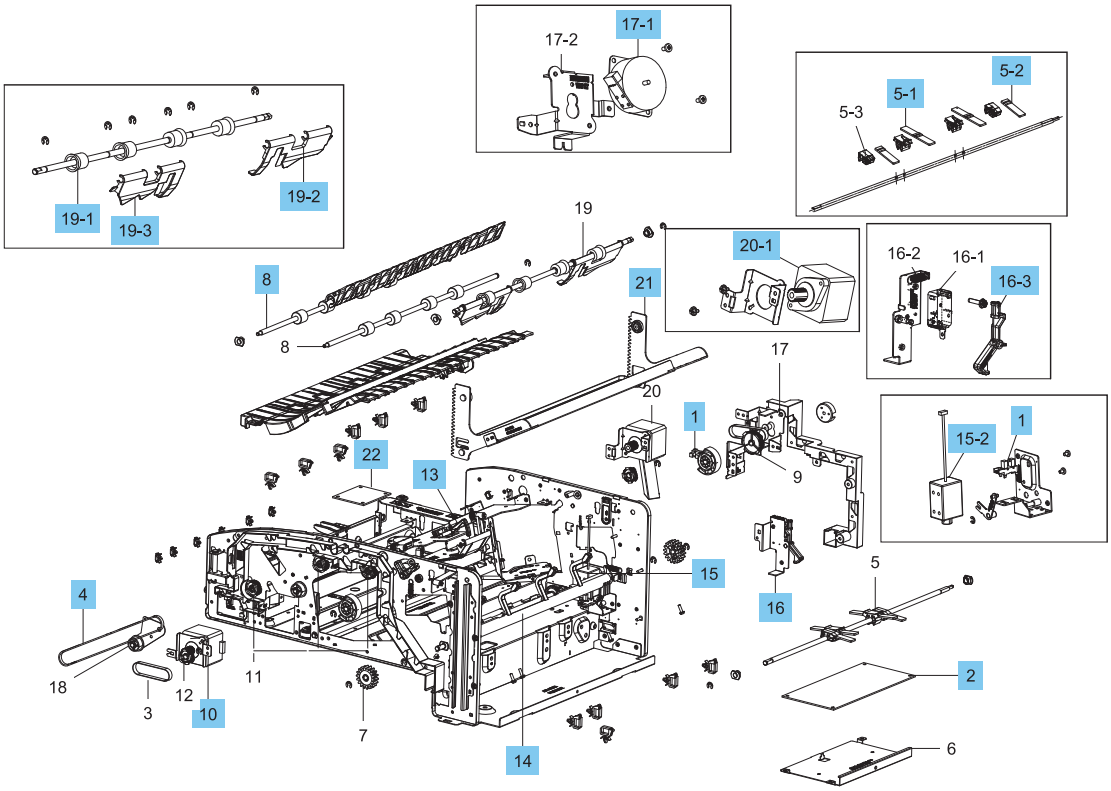


Table 5-11 Finisher sub 8

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	2
2	Inner finisher PCA	JC92-02774B	1
4	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003644	1
5-1	Paddle absorber, rubber a	JC63-04957A	2
5-2	Paddle absorber, rubber b	JC63-04958A	2
8	Roller, feed-entrance	JC66-04243A	2
10	Motor, entrance	JC90-01344A	1
13	Actuator, feed sensor	JC66-04199A	1
14	Actuator tray	JC90-01313A	1
15	Sensor, actuator tray	JC90-01314A	1
15-2	Solenoid TDS	JC33-00037A	1
16	Tray lower limit	JC90-01320A	1
16-3	Actuator tray limit	JC66-04200A	1
17-1a	Drive - motor step	JC93-01001A	1
19-1	Roller, feed-exit	JC66-04244A	1
19-2	Compile guide, front	JC61-07449A	1
19-3	Compile guide, rear	JC61-07450A	1
20-1	Motor - exit step	JC31-00169B	1
21	Tray frame	JC90-01319A	1
22	PCA inner finisher rear	JC92-02780A	1
Not shown	Inner Finisher Staple Unit	JC81-07408B	1

Entrance sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Entrance sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0604-001381

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Entrance sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

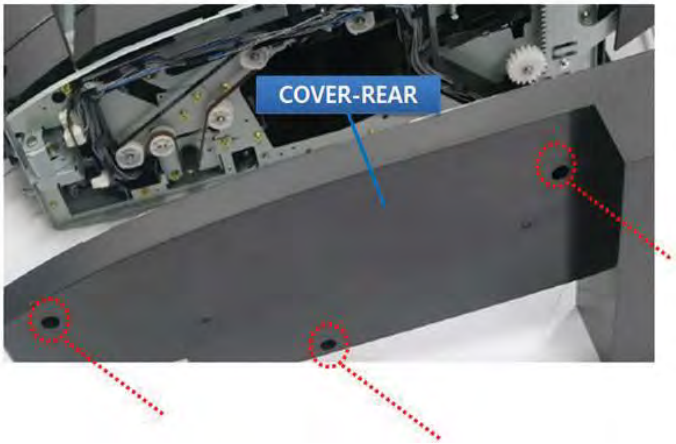
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance sensor

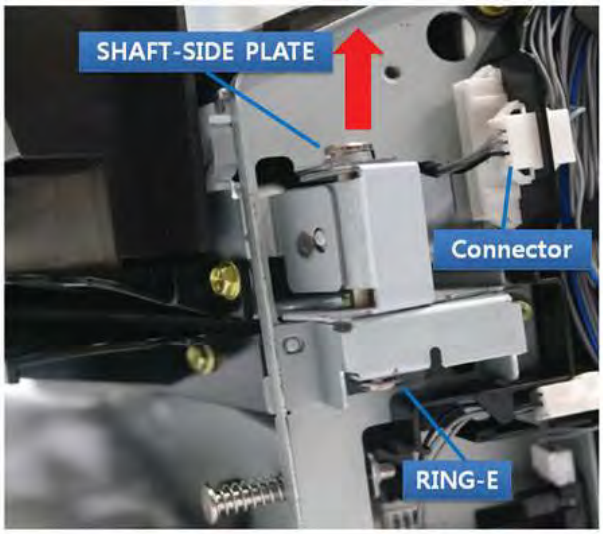
1. On the right-side of the printer remove three screws, and then remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-11 Remove the entrance sensor (1 of 7)



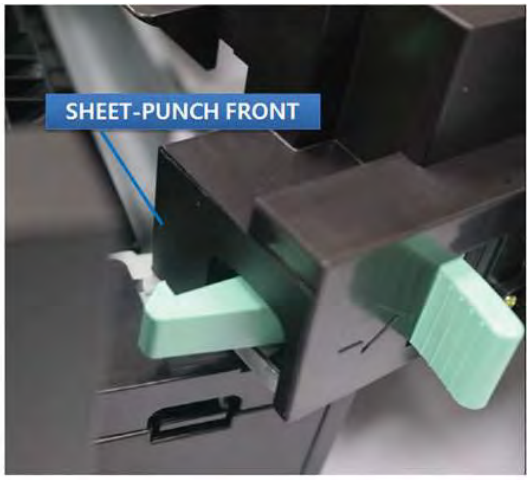
2. On the right, back-side of the printer remove the e-ring, and then remove the shaft-side plate. Unplug the connector.

Figure 5-12 Remove the entrance sensor (2 of 7)



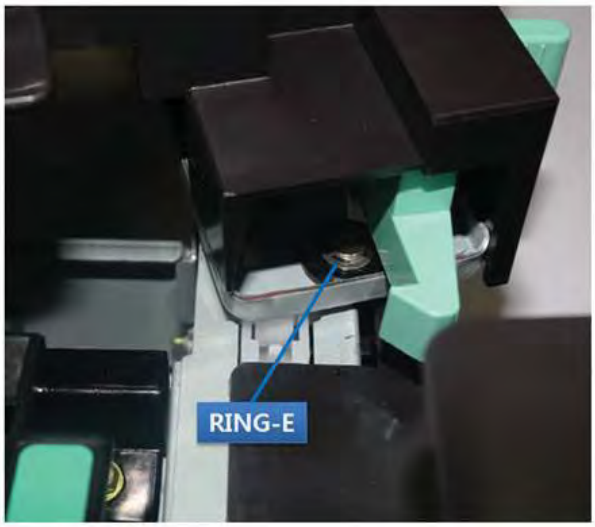
3. On the right, front-side of the printer remove the sheet-punch front.

Figure 5-13 Remove the entrance sensor (3 of 7)



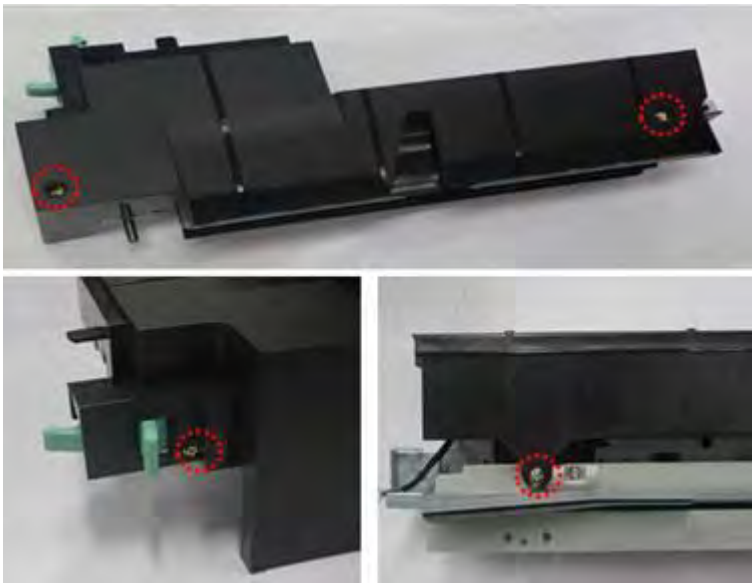
4. Remove the e-ring and washer, and then remove the punch dummy.

Figure 5-14 Remove the entrance sensor (4 of 7)



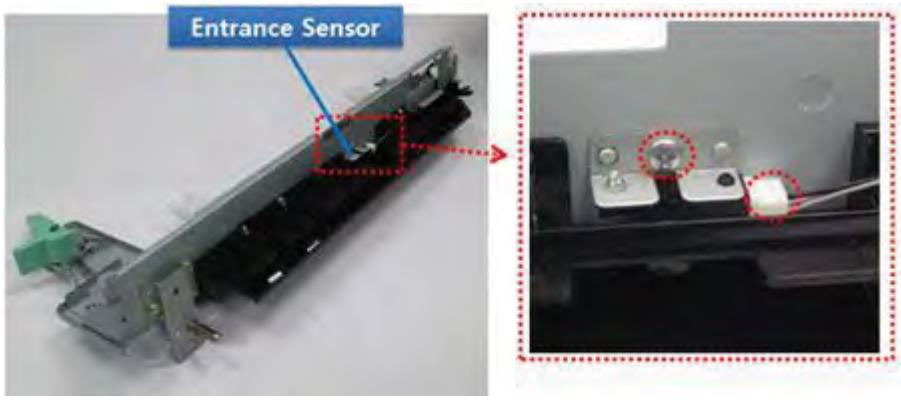
5. Loosen the adhesive tape around, and then remove, four screws. Remove the handle, and then remove the punch dummy cover.

Figure 5-15 Remove the entrance sensor (5 of 7)



6. Remove one screw, unplug the connector, and then remove the sensor bracket.

Figure 5-16 Remove the entrance sensor (6 of 7)



7. Remove one screw, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 5-17 Remove the entrance sensor (7 of 7)



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Entrance motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the entrance motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Entrance motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC90-01344A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Entrance motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

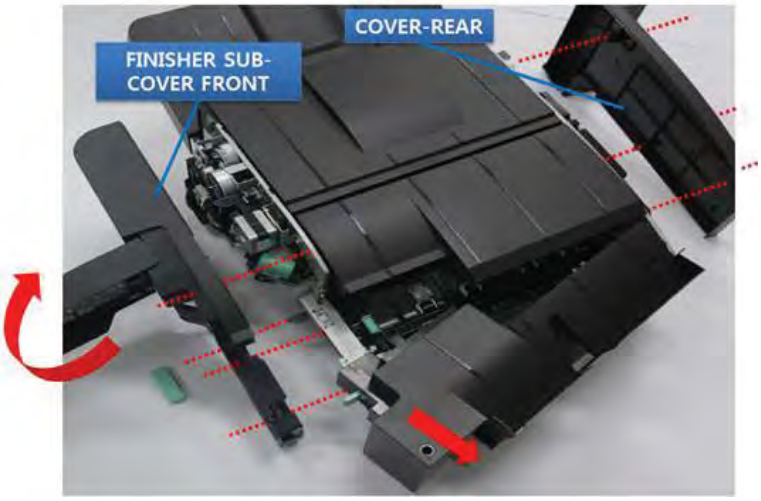
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

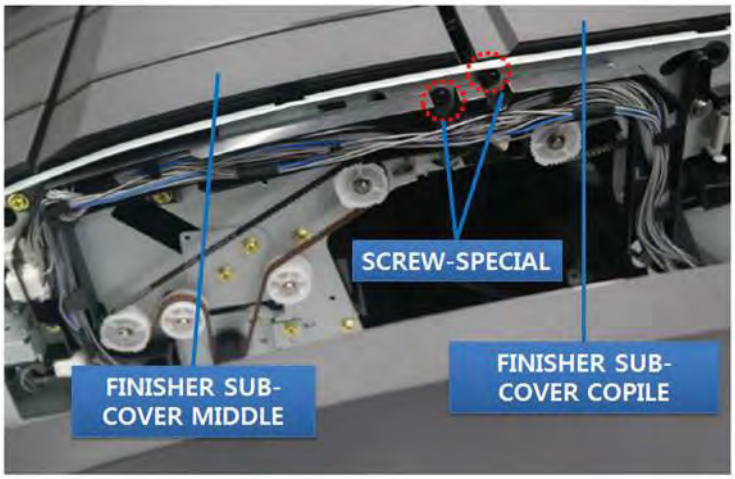
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-18 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-19 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-20 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

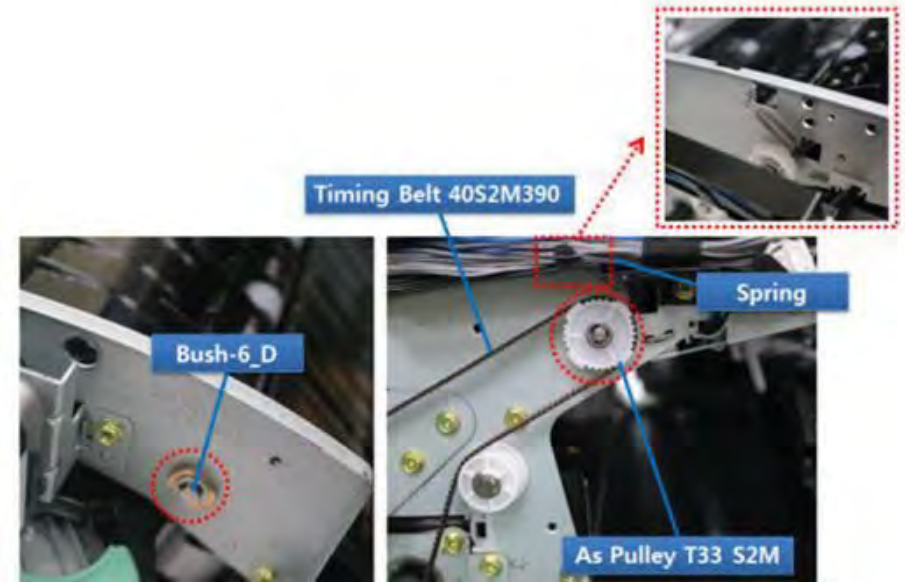
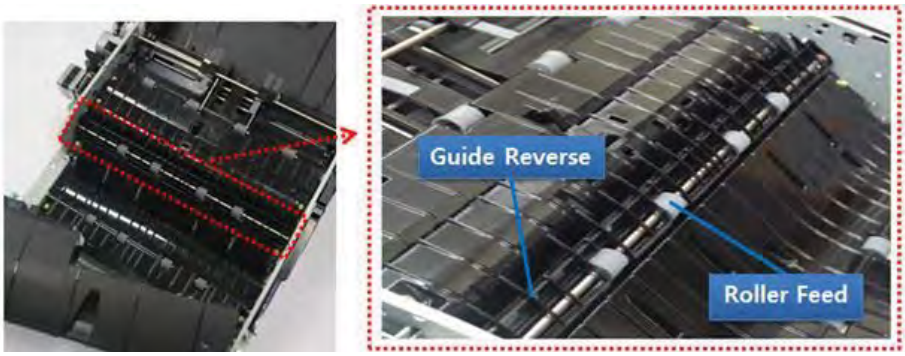


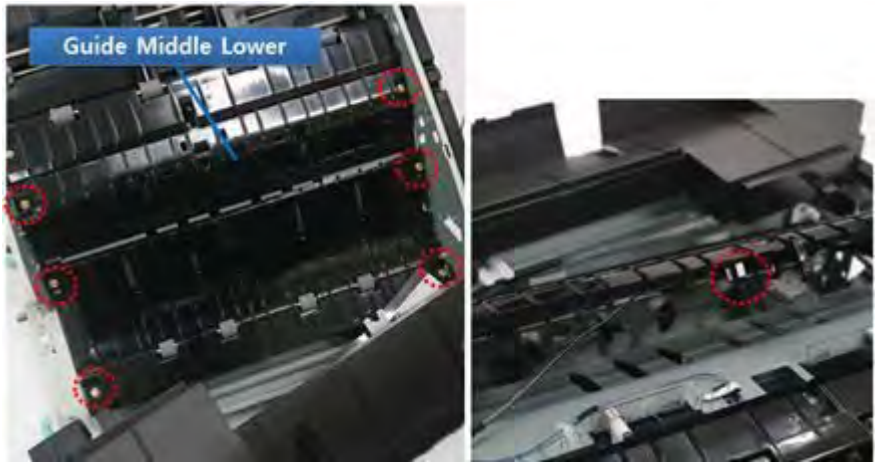
Figure 5-21 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

Figure 5-22 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



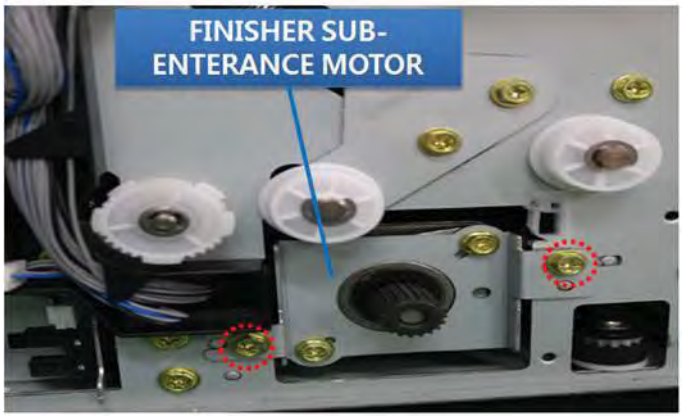
Step 2: Remove the entrance motor

1. Disconnect the sensor cable at the rear.
2. Remove the cable restraint at the rear.
3. Release two tabs that engage with the frame, and then remove the guide middle lower.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not damage the sensor flag.

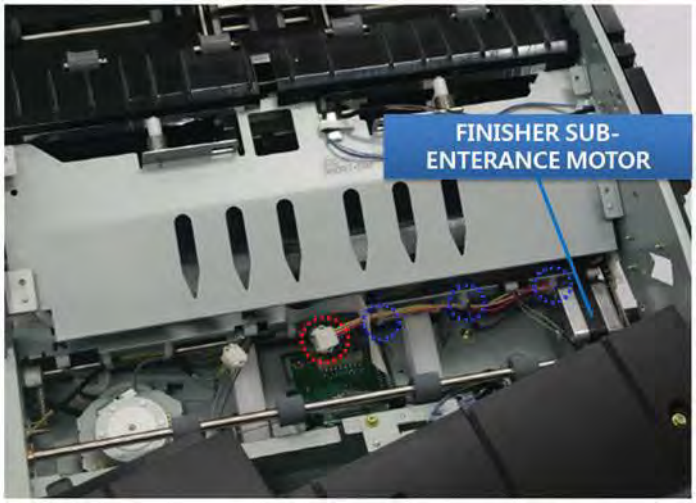
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 5-23 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



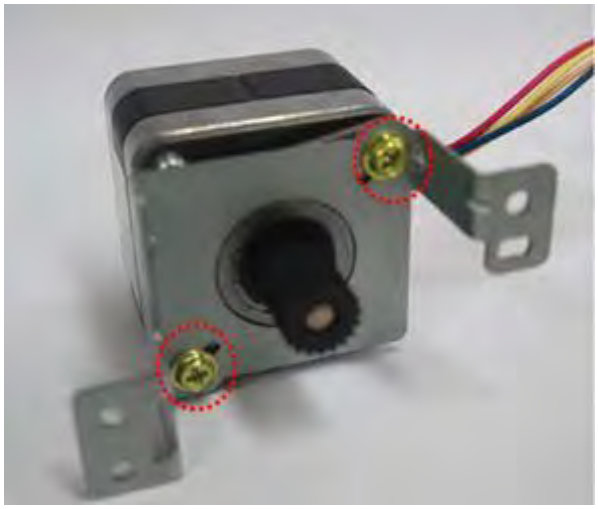
5. Open the clamps, and then unplug the connector.

Figure 5-24 Remove the entrance motor (6 of 7)



6. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 5-25 Remove the entrance motor (7 of 7)



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Exit sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the exit sensor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Exit sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0604-001381

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Feed actuator sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

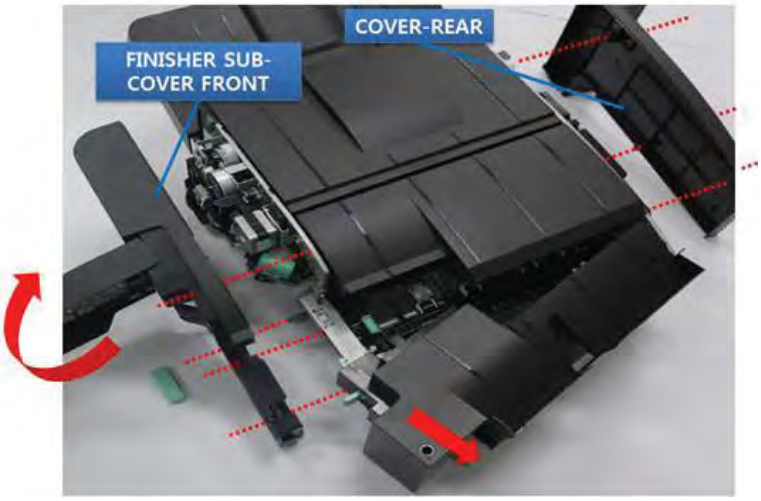
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

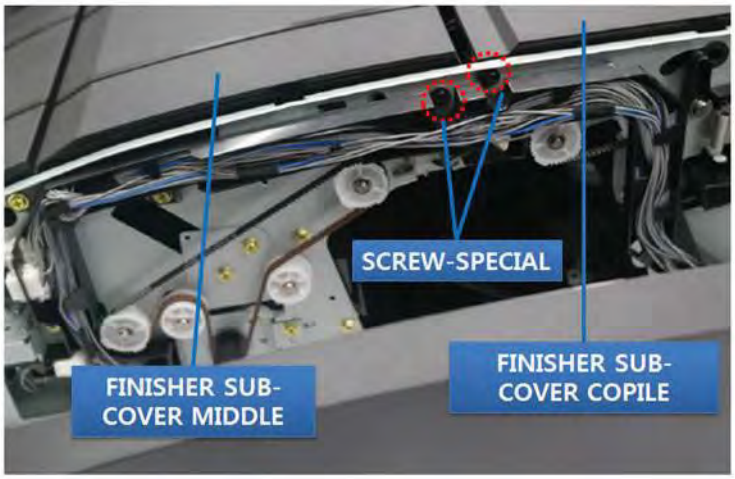
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-26 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-27 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-28 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

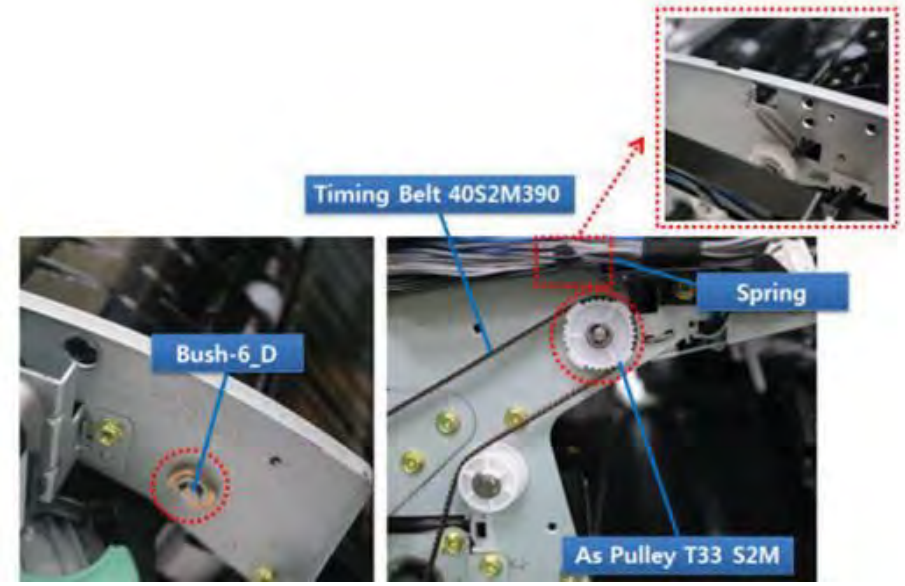
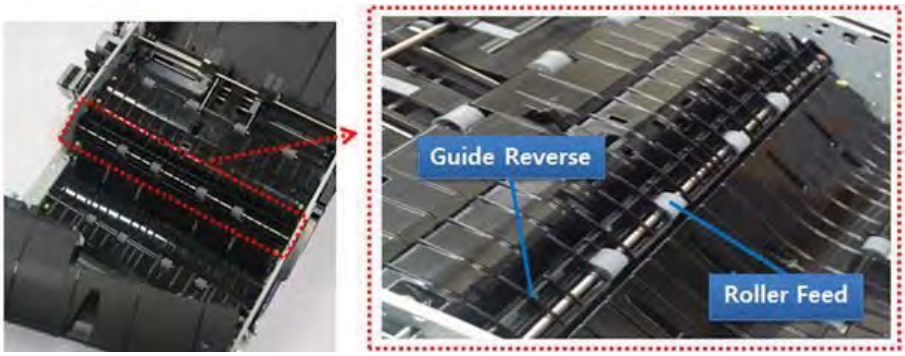


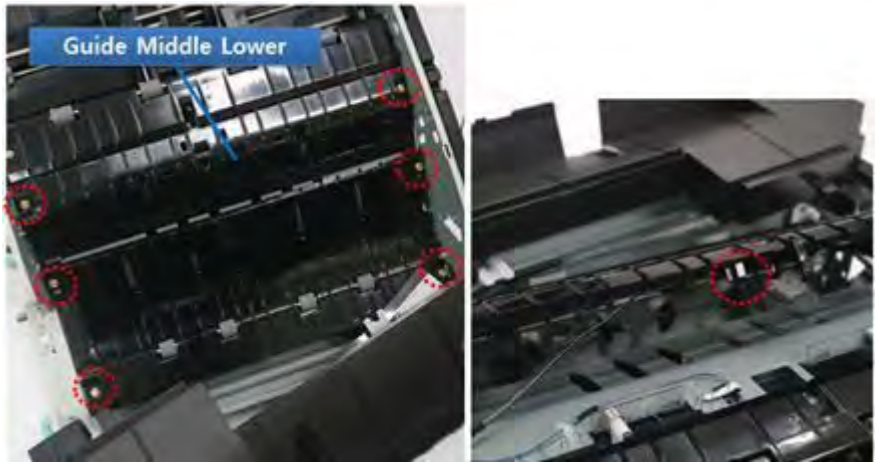
Figure 5-29 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

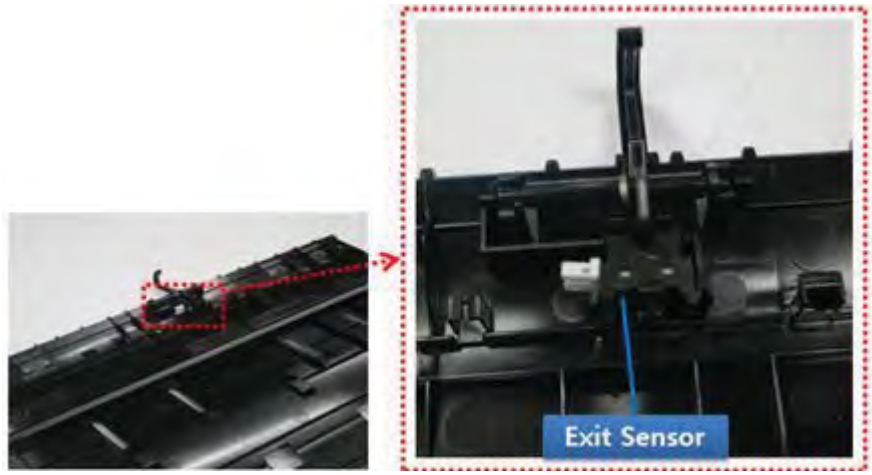
Figure 5-30 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the exit sensor

▲ Remove the hook, and then remove the exit sensor.

Figure 5-31 Remove the exit sensor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Exit motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the exit motor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Exit motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC31-00169B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Exit motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

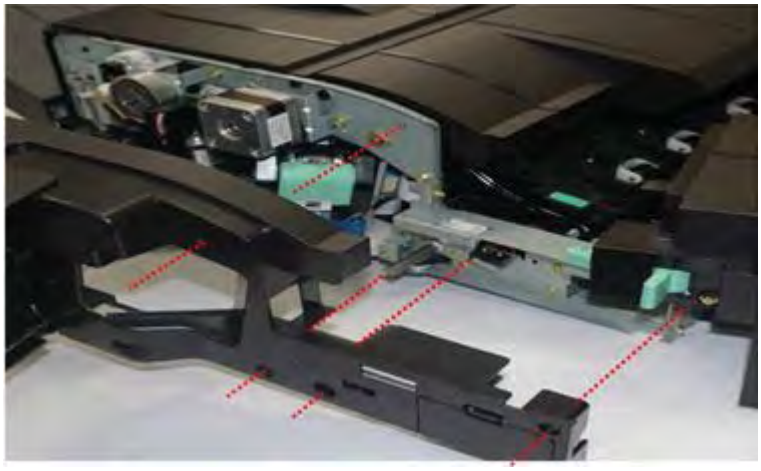
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the exit motor

1. Remove the front cover.

Figure 5-32 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3)



2. Remove two screws, and then unplug the motor connector.

Figure 5-33 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3)



3. Remove the exit motor from the BKT motor feed exit.

Figure 5-34 Remove the exit motor (3 of 3)



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front Jogger Motor (Front Tamper)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front jogger motor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Front Jogger Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC82-00899A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Front Jogger Motor assembly (Front Tamper)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the front jogger motor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

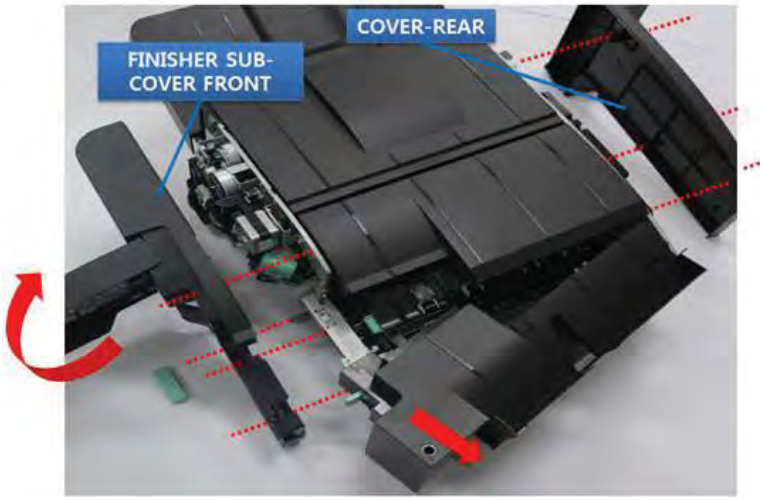
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

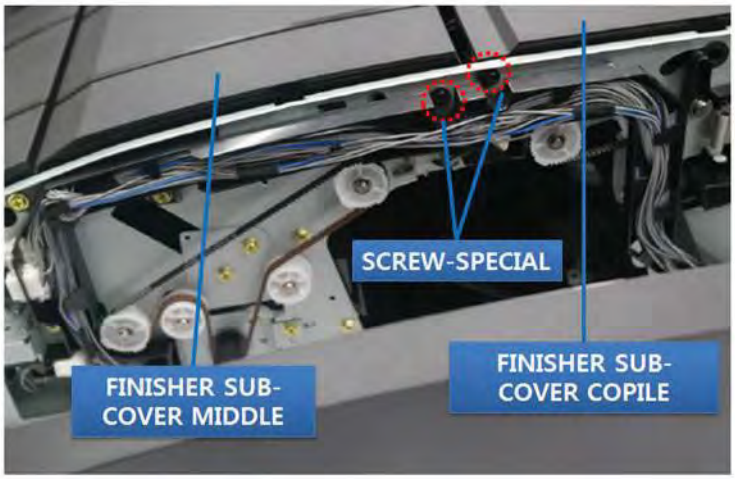
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-35 Remove the front jogger motor (1 of 22)

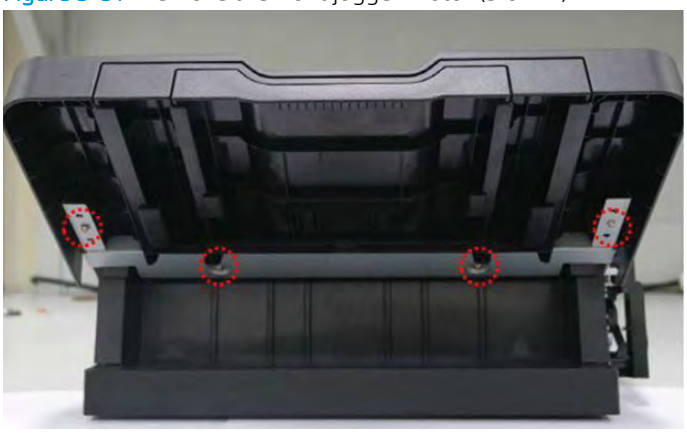
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-36 Remove the front jogger motor (2 of 22)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-37 Remove the front jogger motor (3 of 22)

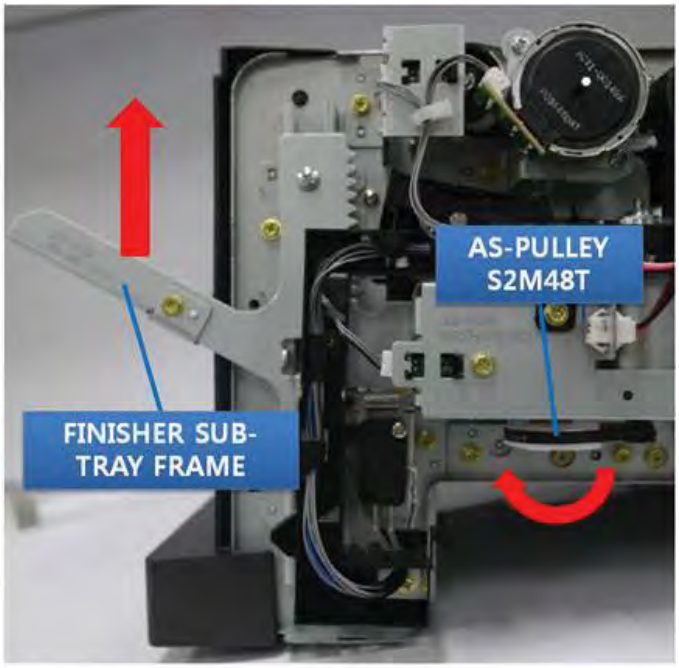


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

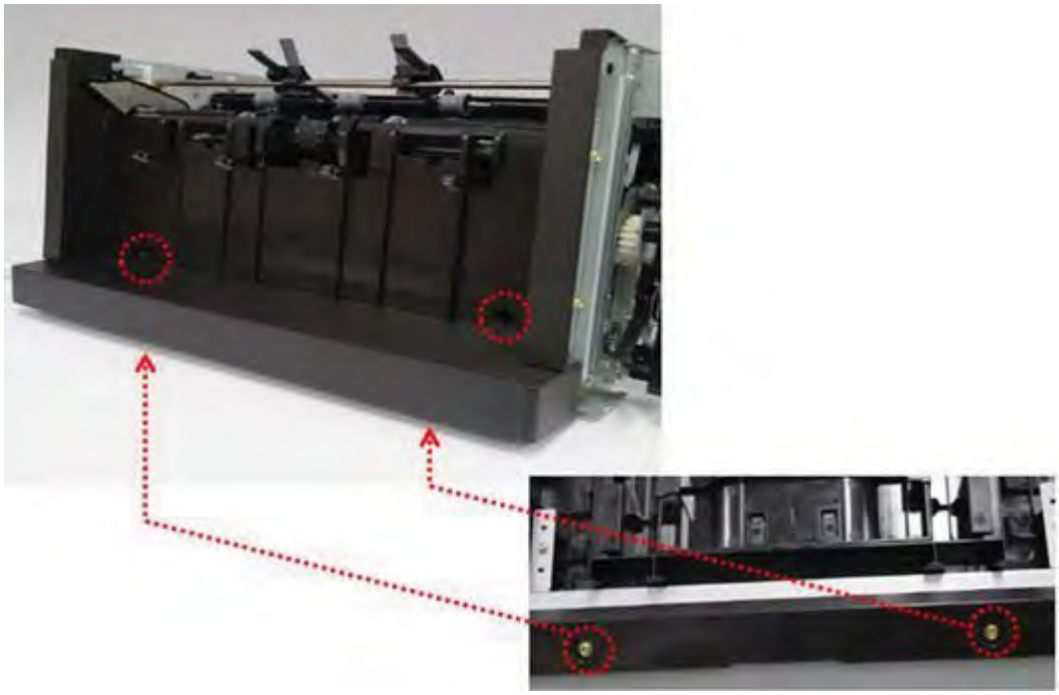
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 5-38 Remove the front jogger motor (4 of 22)



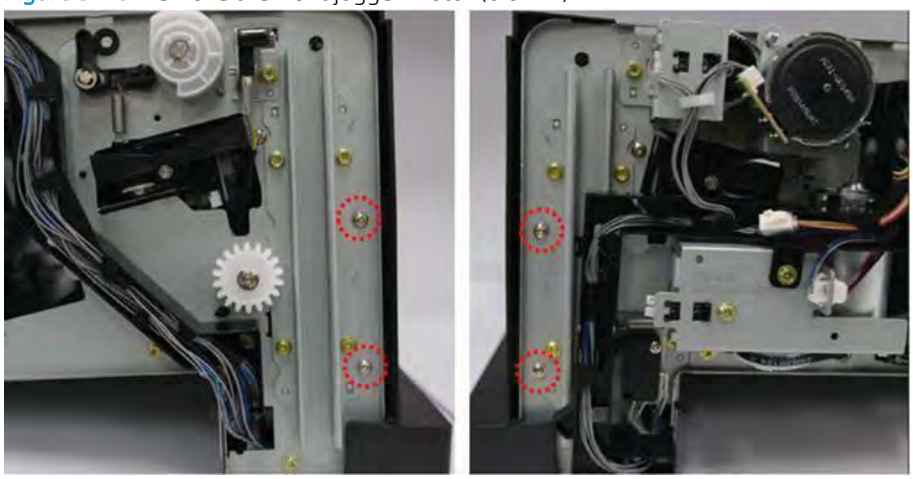
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-39 Remove the front jogger motor (5 of 22)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

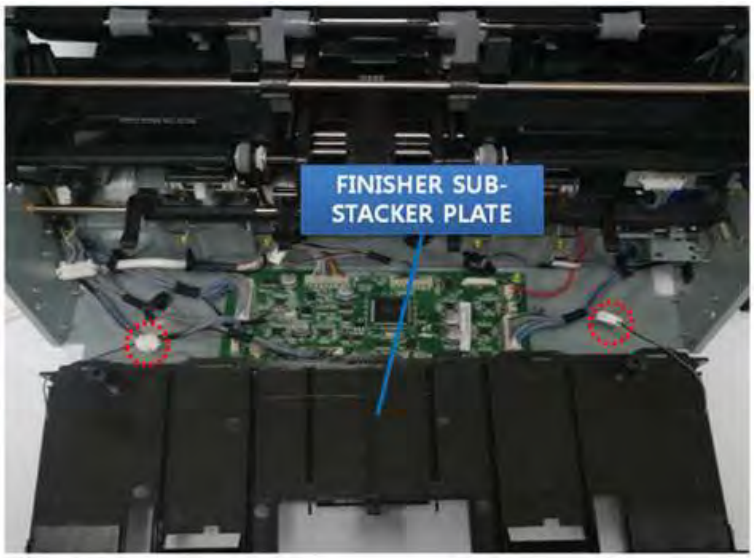
Figure 5-40 Remove the front jogger motor (6 of 22)



7. Remove two screws and then remove the lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-41 Remove the front jogger motor (7 of 22)



9. Remove one screw, and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

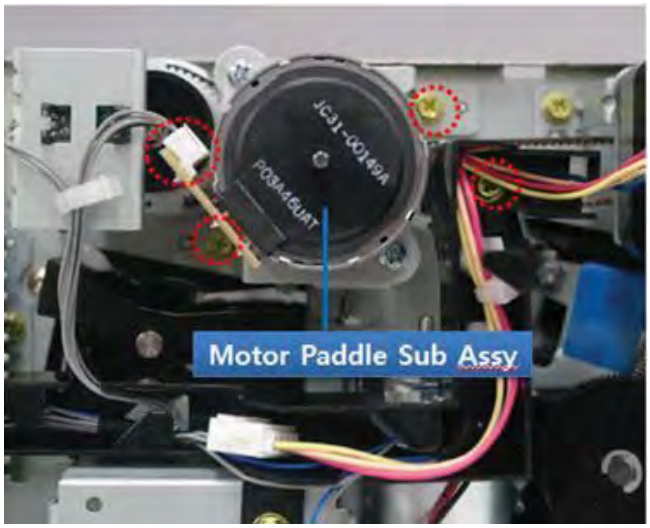
Figure 5-42 Remove the front jogger motor (8 of 22)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

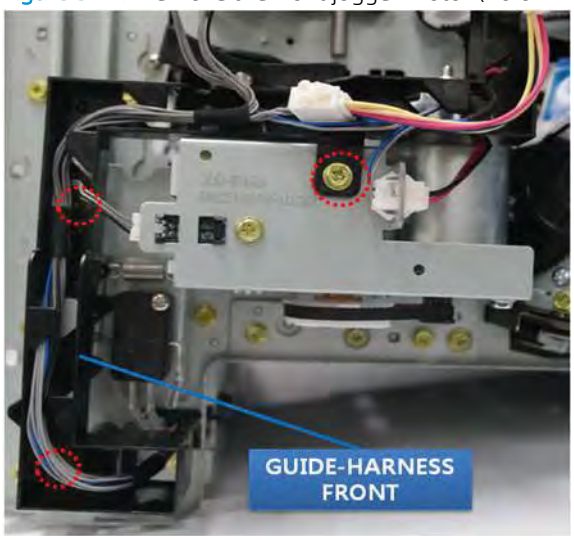
Figure 5-43 Remove the front jogger motor (9 of 22)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

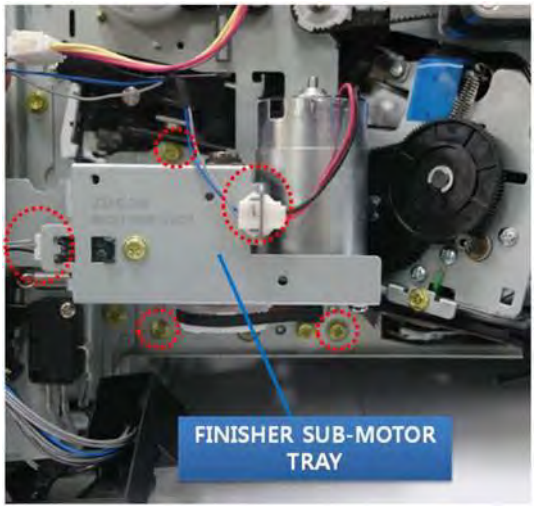
NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 5-44 Remove the front jogger motor (10 of 22)



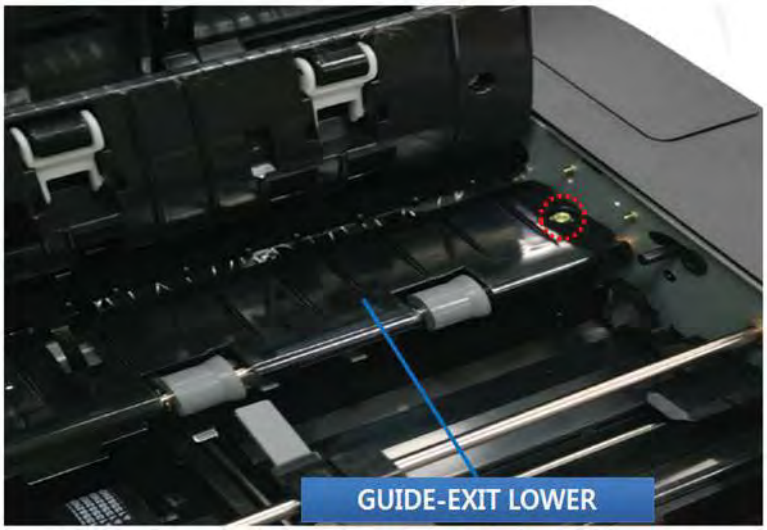
12. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-45 Remove the front jogger motor (11 of 22)



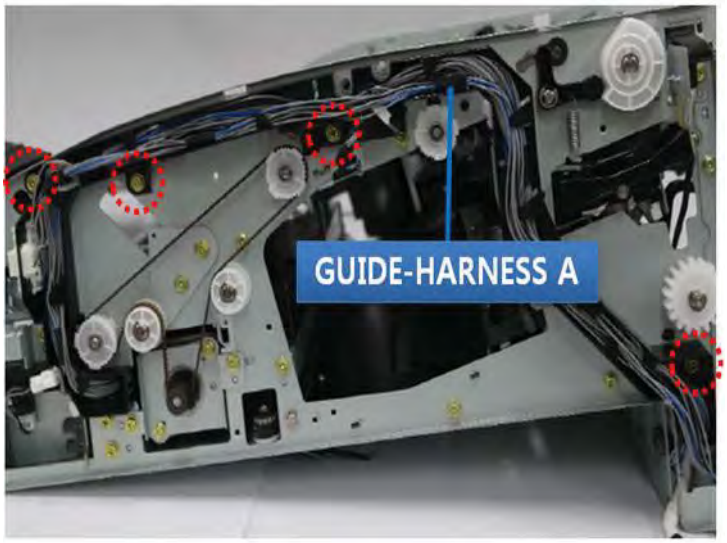
13. Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

Figure 5-46 Remove the front jogger motor (12 of 22)



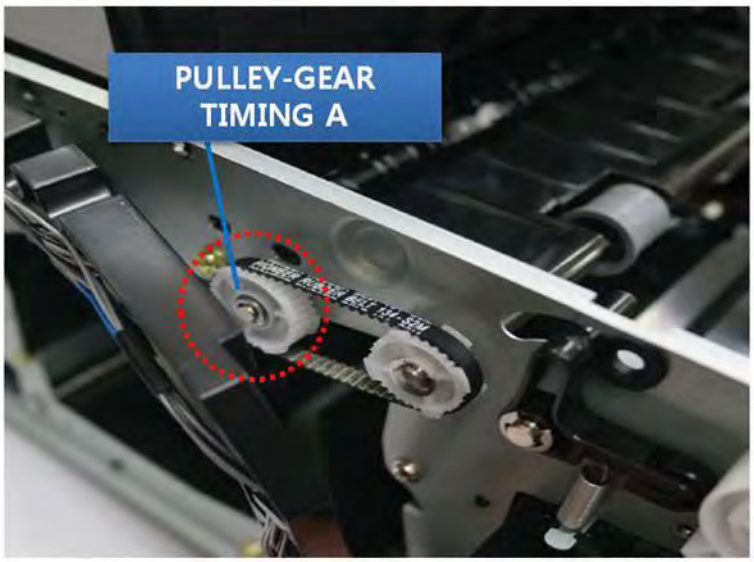
14. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 5-47 Remove the front jogger motor (13 of 22)



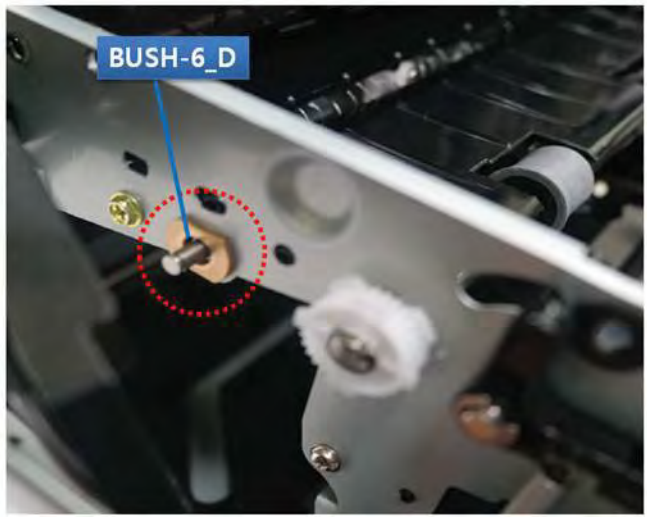
15. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 5-48 Remove the front jogger motor (14 of 22)



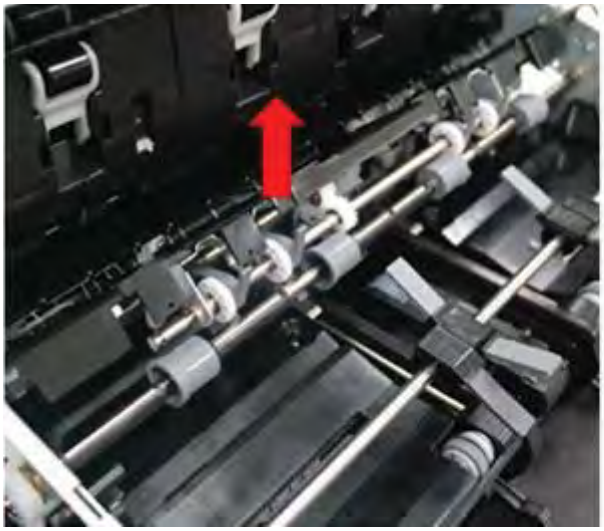
16. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 5-49 Remove the front jogger motor (15 of 22)



17. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 5-50 Remove the front jogger motor (16 of 22)



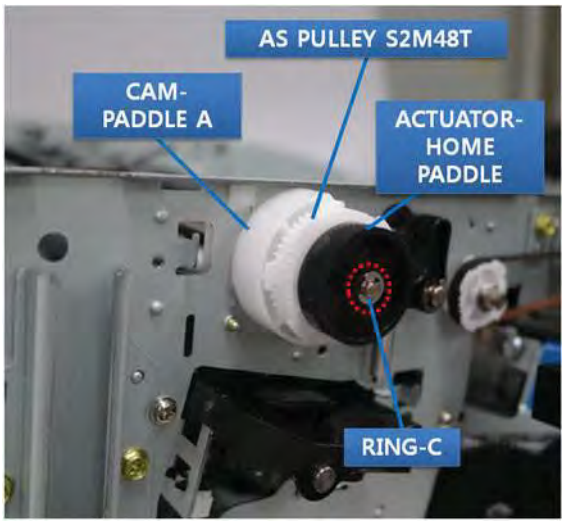


18. Remove the ring-c, actuator-home paddle, AS pulley S2M48T, and cam-paddle A.

Reinstallation tip: The cam must be installed with the same orientation as the cam on the opposite side.

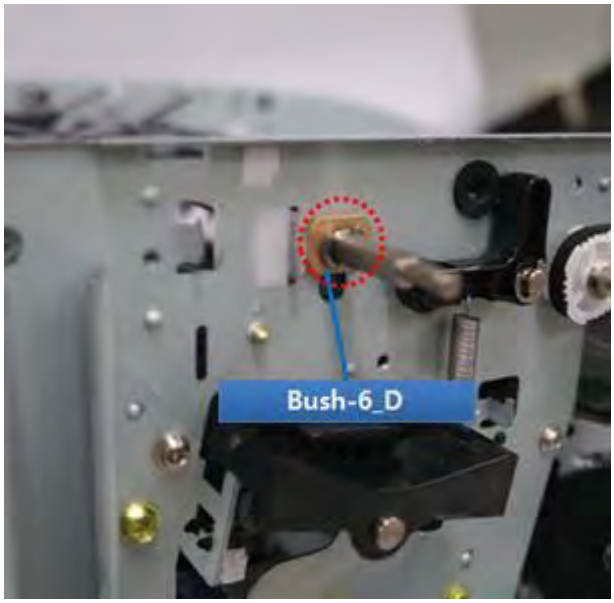
Reinstallation tip: The actuator home cam paddle is installed hollow side out

Figure 5-51 Remove the front jogger motor (17 of 22)



19. Remove the e-ring and bush-6_D.

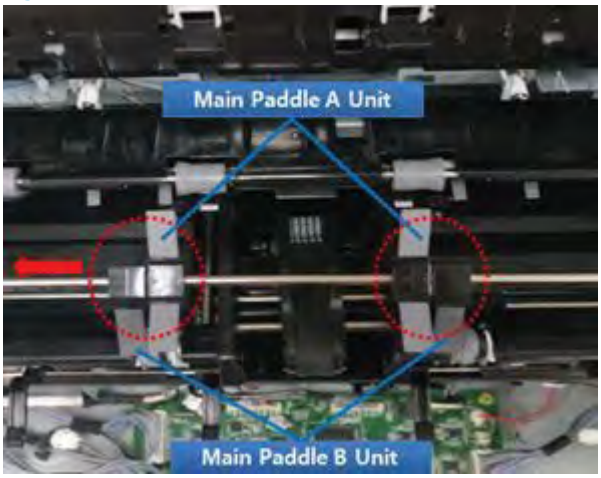
Figure 5-52 Remove the front jogger motor (18 of 22)



20. Remove the main paddle A unit / B unit, and then carefully remove the shaft from its retainer.

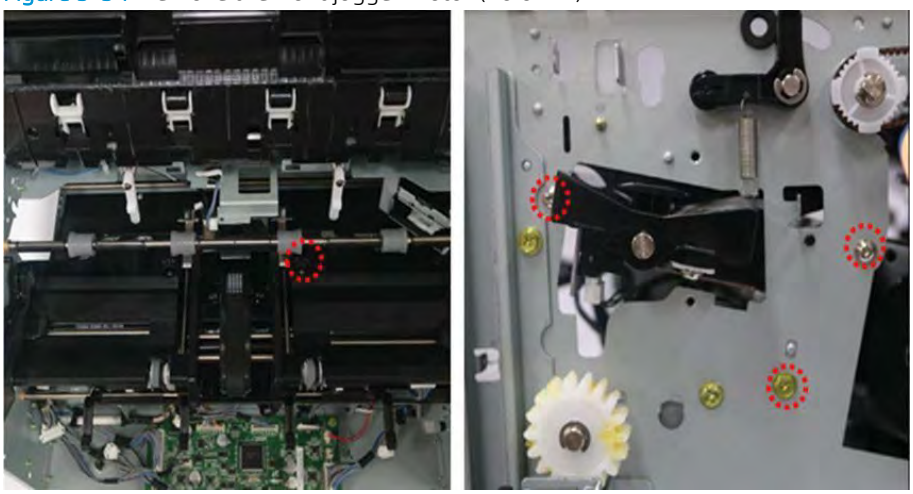
NOTE: Note the orientation of paddles and use caution to not break the plastic locator pin on the paddle.

Figure 5-53 Remove the front jogger motor (19 of 22)



21. Remove four screws.

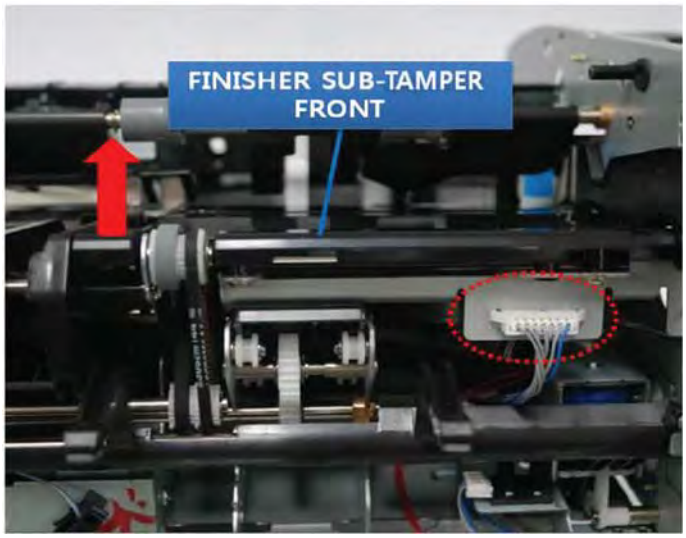
Figure 5-54 Remove the front jogger motor (20 of 22)



22. Unplug the connector, and then pull the finisher sub-tamper front up to remove.

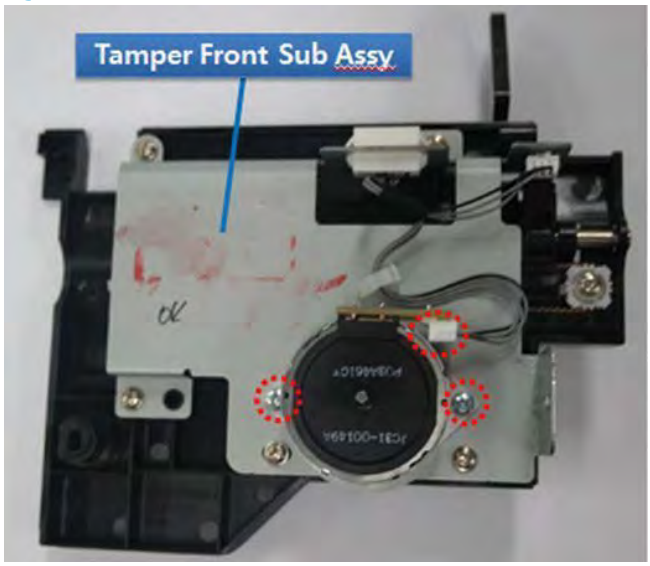
Reinstallation tip: Position the upper left-corner of the sub tamper, and then carefully rotate it counter-clockwise into position.

Figure 5-55 Remove the front jogger motor (21 of 22)



23. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor.

Figure 5-56 Remove the front jogger motor (22 of 22)



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front Jogger Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front jogger home sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Front Jogger Home Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0604-001381

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Front Jogger Home Sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the front jogger home sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

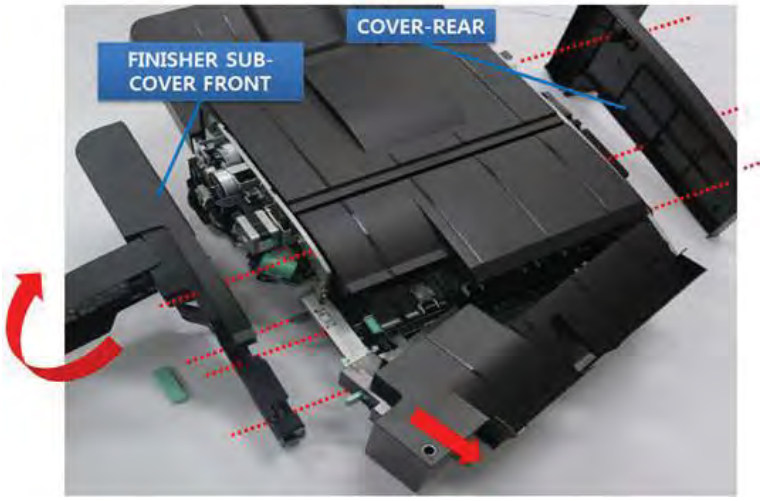
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

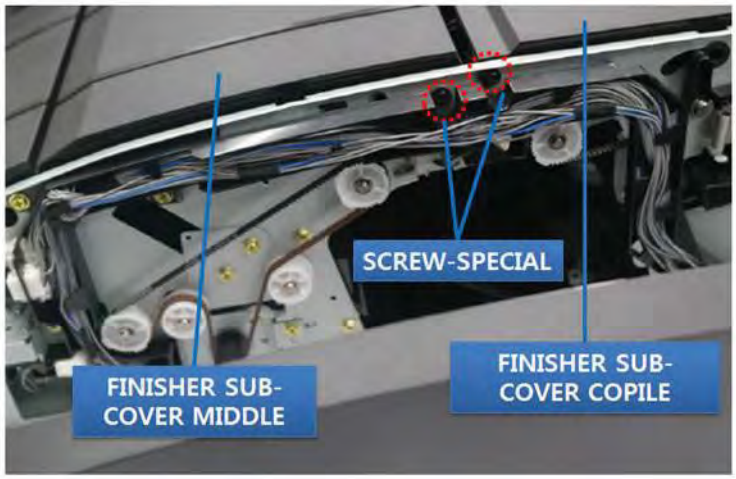
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-57 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

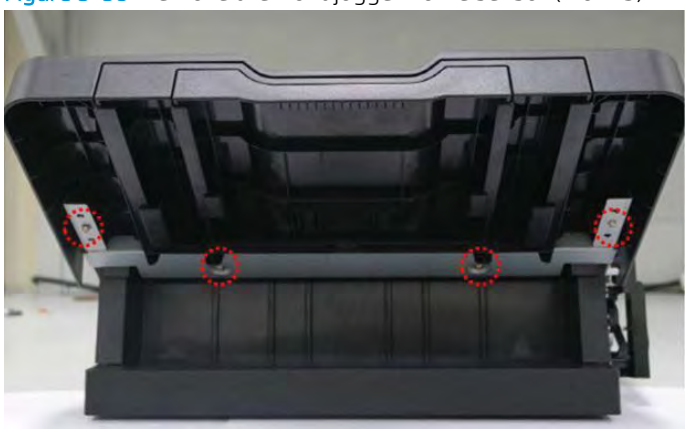
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-58 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-59 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

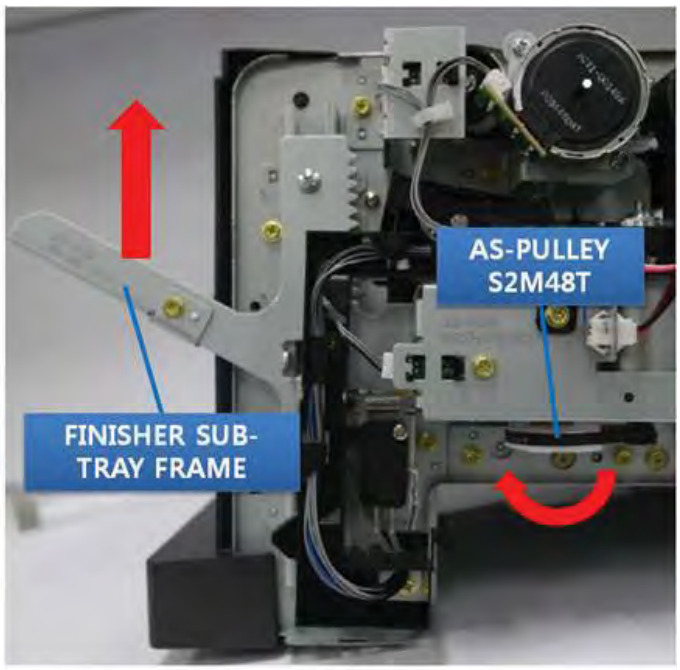


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

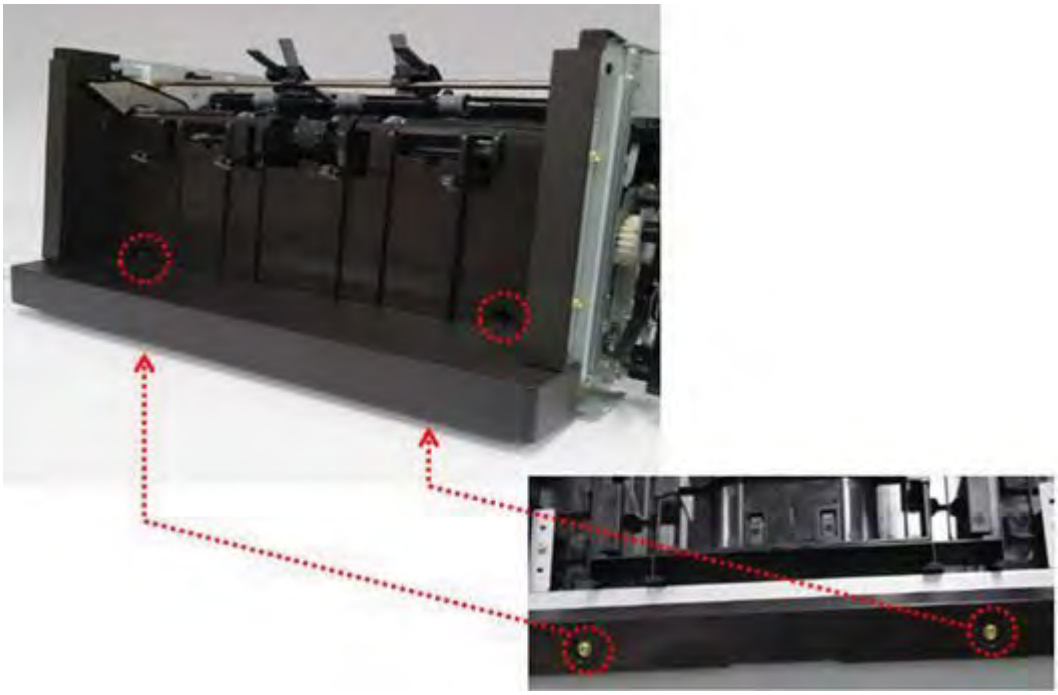
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 5-60 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



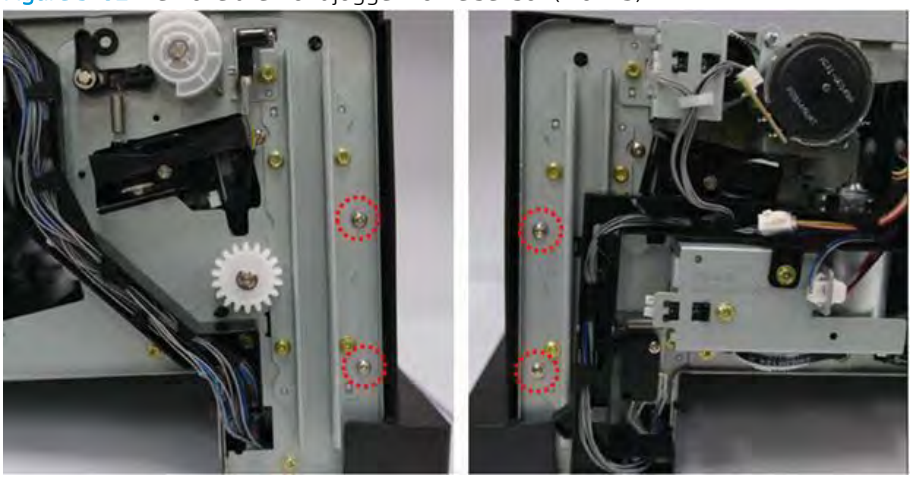
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-61 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

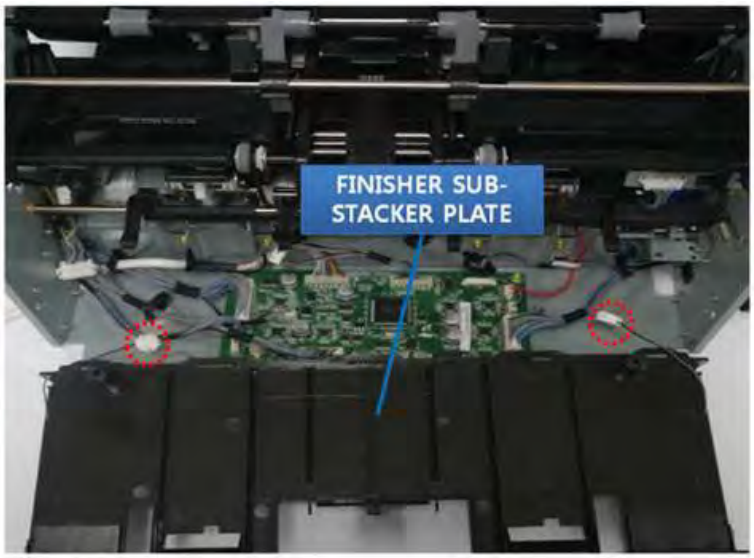
Figure 5-62 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-63 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

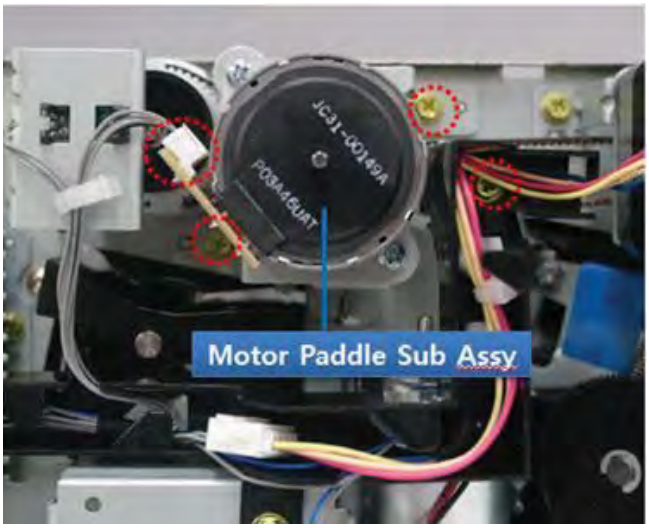
Figure 5-64 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

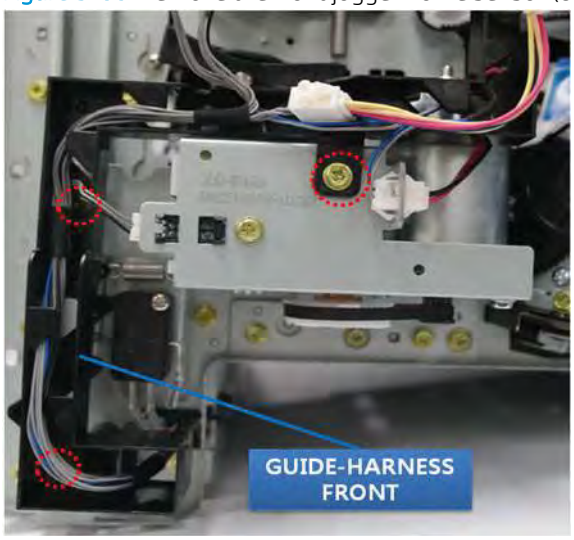
Figure 5-65 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

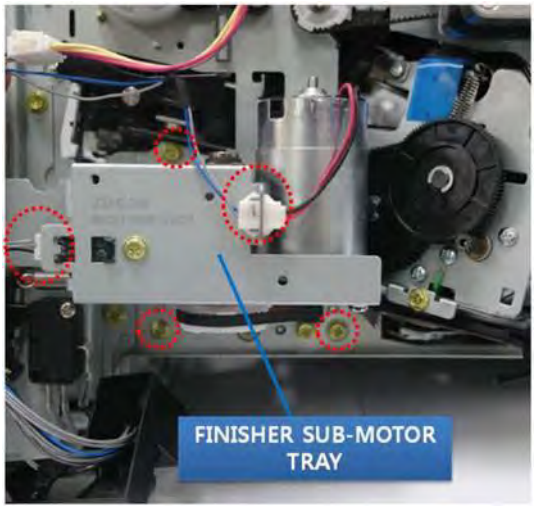
NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 5-66 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



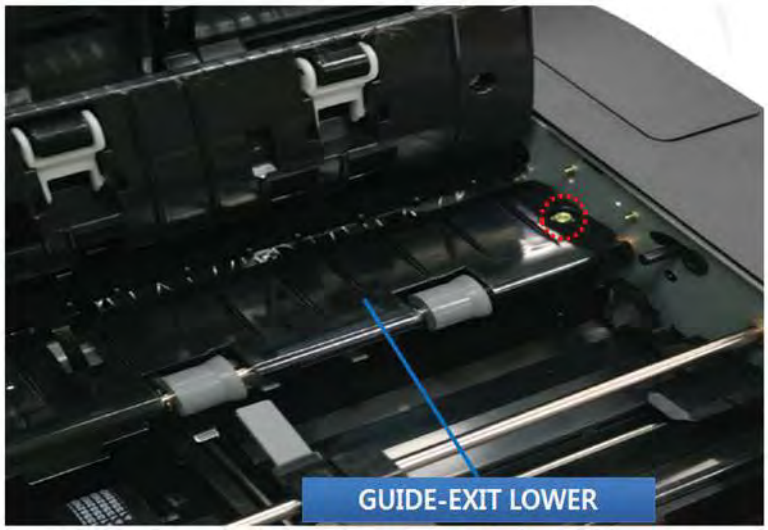
12. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-67 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15)



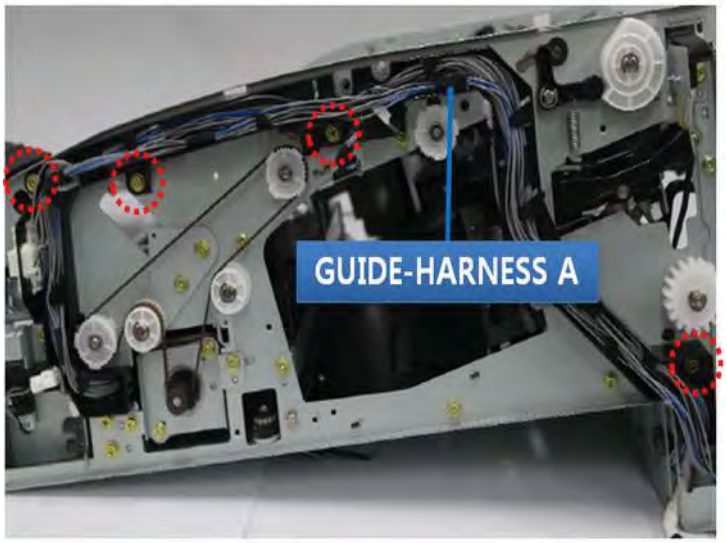
13. Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

Figure 5-68 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (1 of 6)



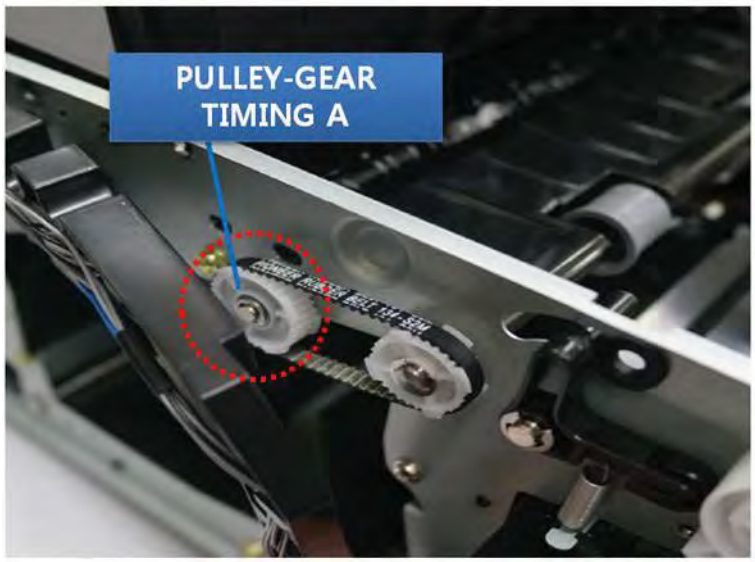
14. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 5-69 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (2 of 6)



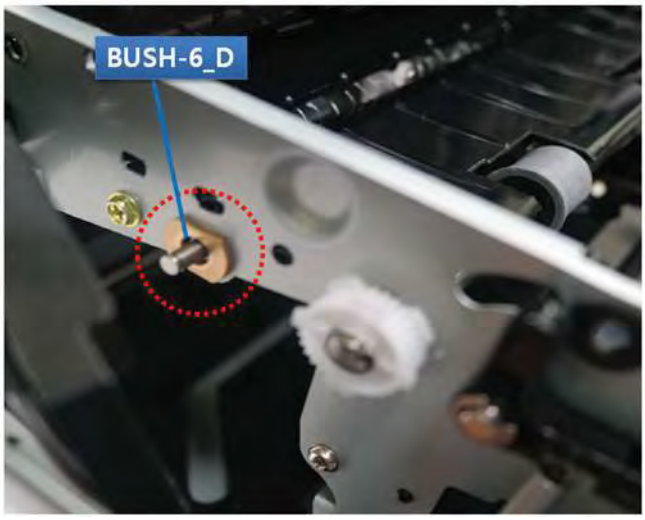
15. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 5-70 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (3 of 6)



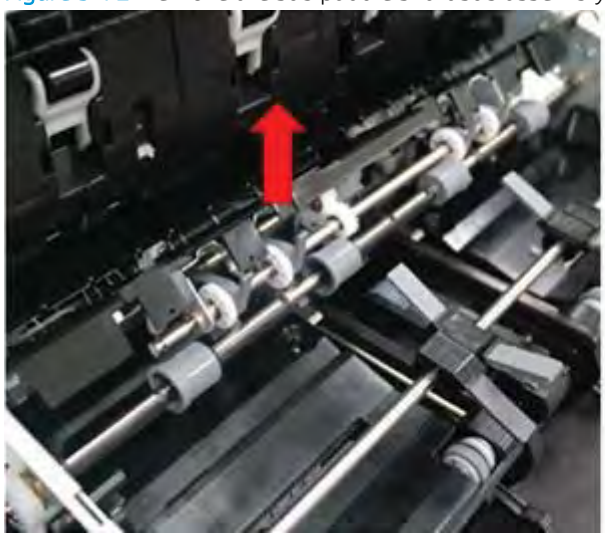
16. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 5-71 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6)



17. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 5-72 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6)



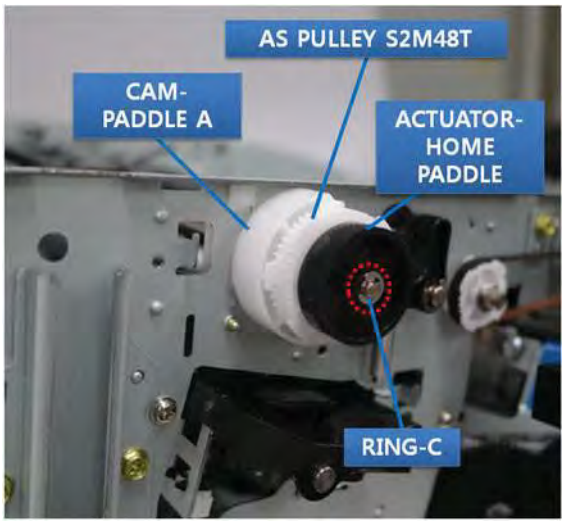


18. Remove the ring-C, actuator-home paddle, AS pulley S2M48T, and cam-paddle A.

Reinstallation tip: The cam must be installed with the same orientation as the cam on the opposite side.

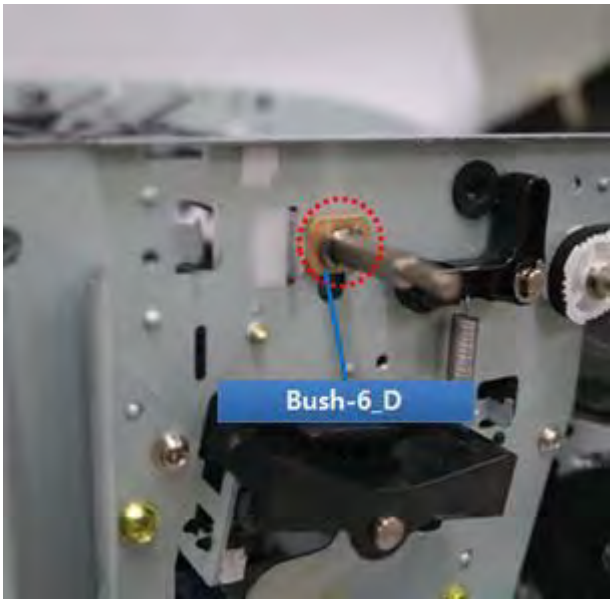
Reinstallation tip: The actuator home cam paddle is installed hollow side out

Figure 5-73 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 15)



19. Remove the e-ring and bush-6_D.

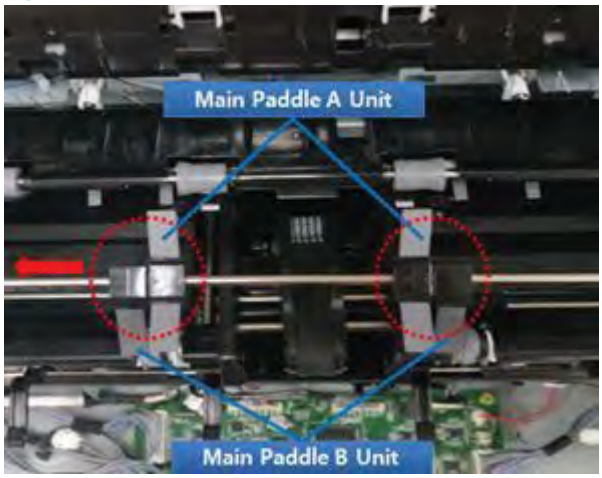
Figure 5-74 Remove the front jogger home sensor (11 of 15)



20. Remove the main paddle A unit / B unit, and then carefully remove the shaft from its retainer.

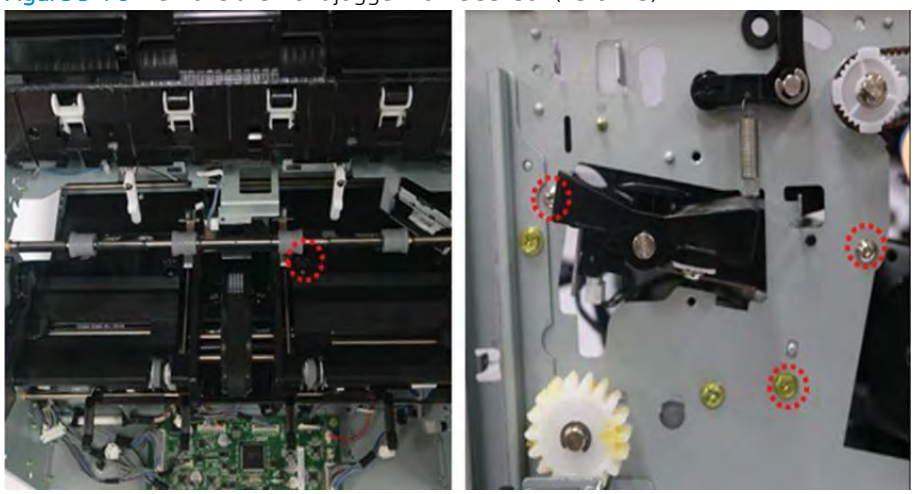
NOTE: Note the orientation of paddles and use caution to not break the plastic locator pin on the paddle.

Figure 5-75 Remove the front jogger home sensor (12 of 15)



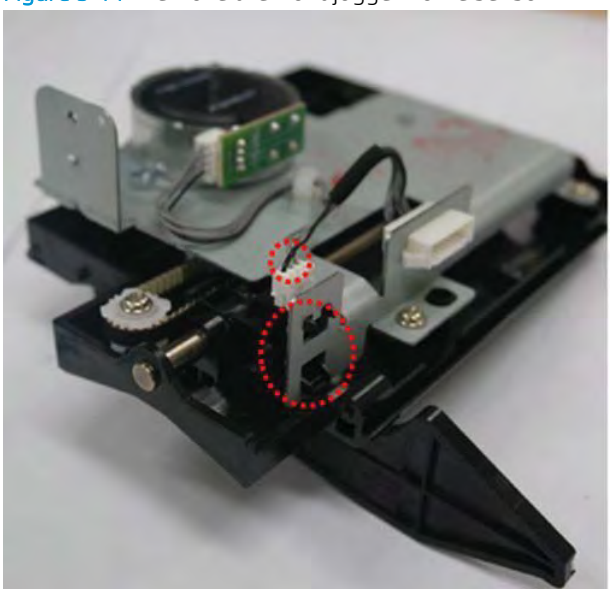
21. Remove four screws.

Figure 5-76 Remove the front jogger home sensor (13 of 15)



22. Unplug the connector, and then remove the front jogger home sensor.

Figure 5-77 Remove the front jogger home sensor



23. Remove the tamper front sub assembly.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear Jogger Motor (Rear Tamper)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear jogger motor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Rear Jogger Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC82-00900A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Rear Jogger Motor assembly (Rear Tamper)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear jogger motor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

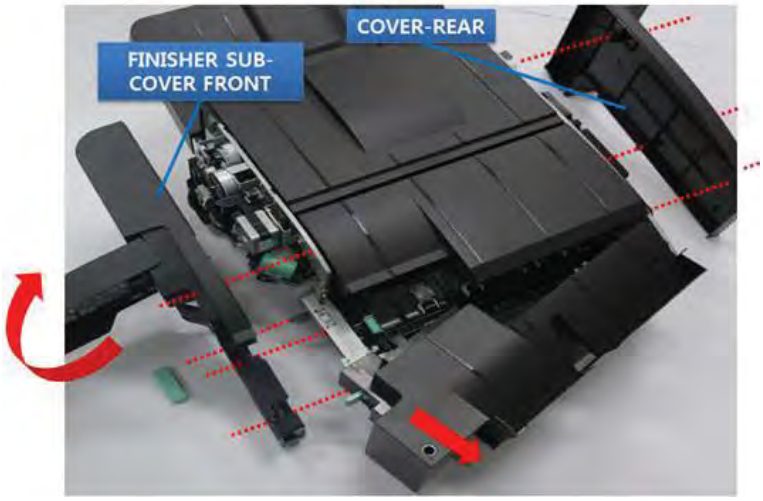
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

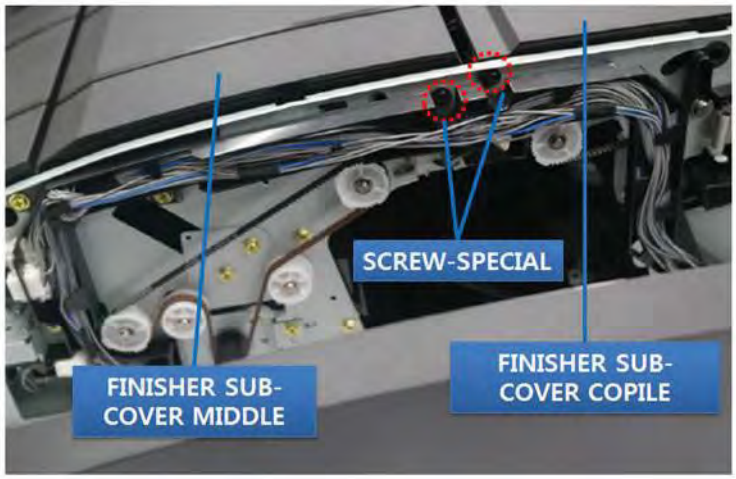
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-78 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

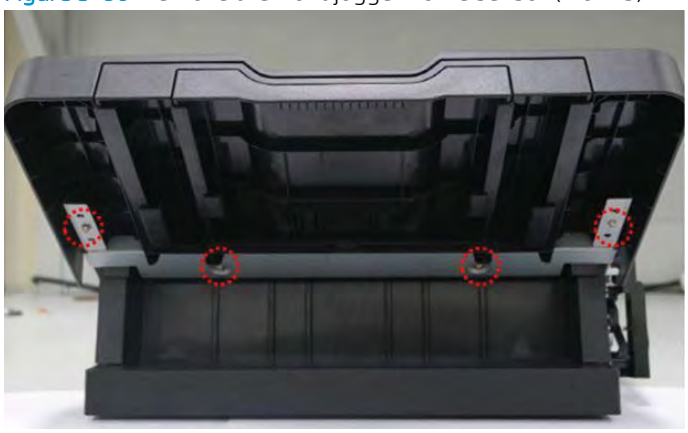
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-79 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-80 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

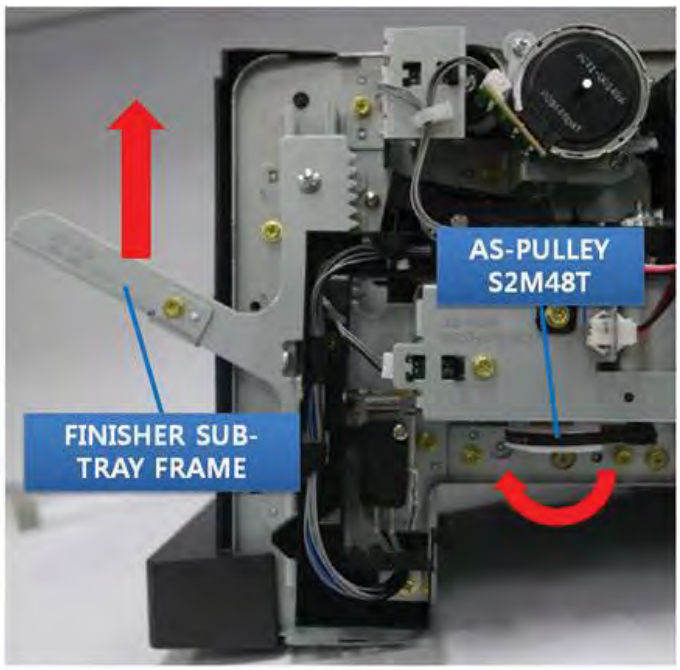


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

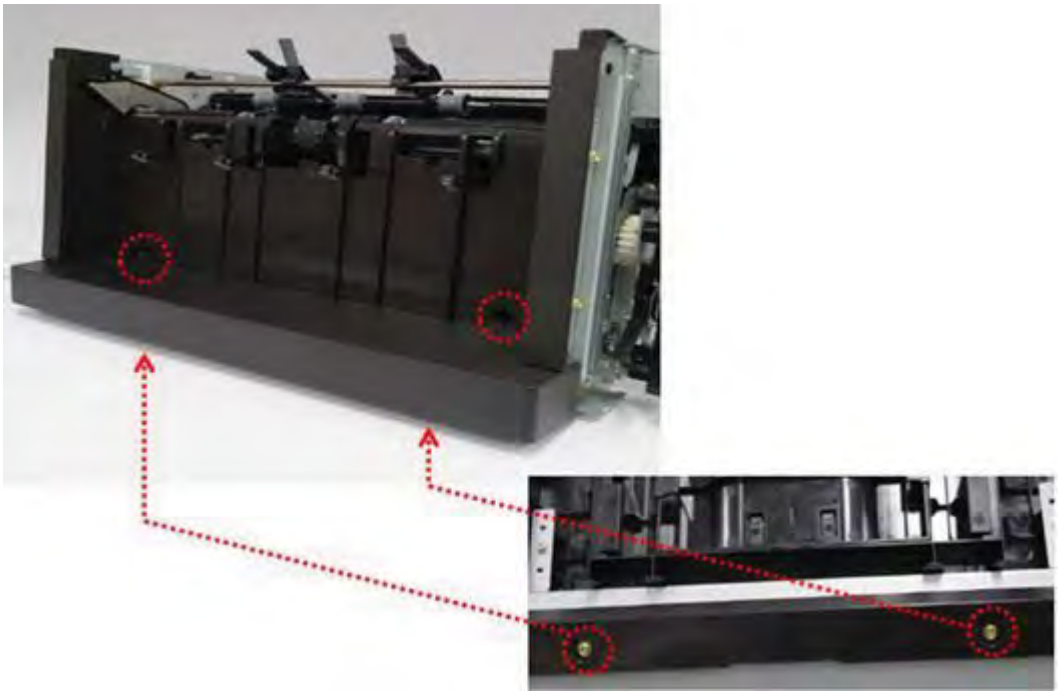
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 5-81 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



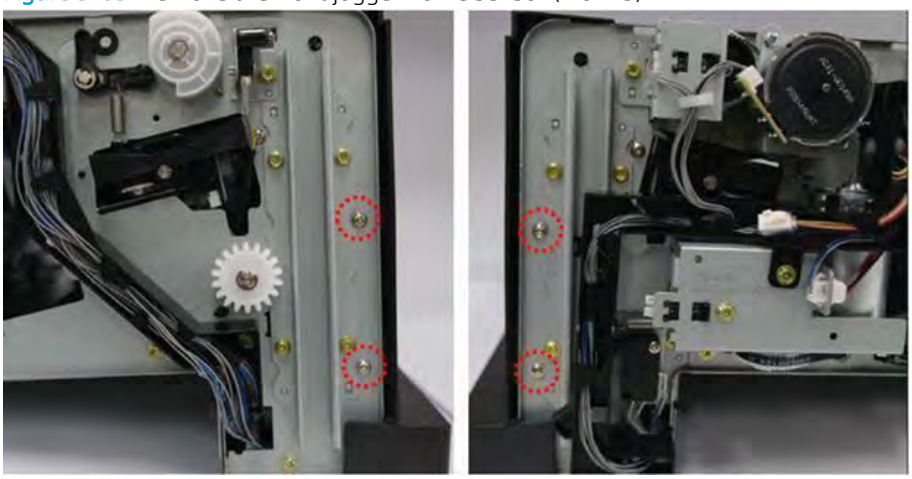
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-82 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

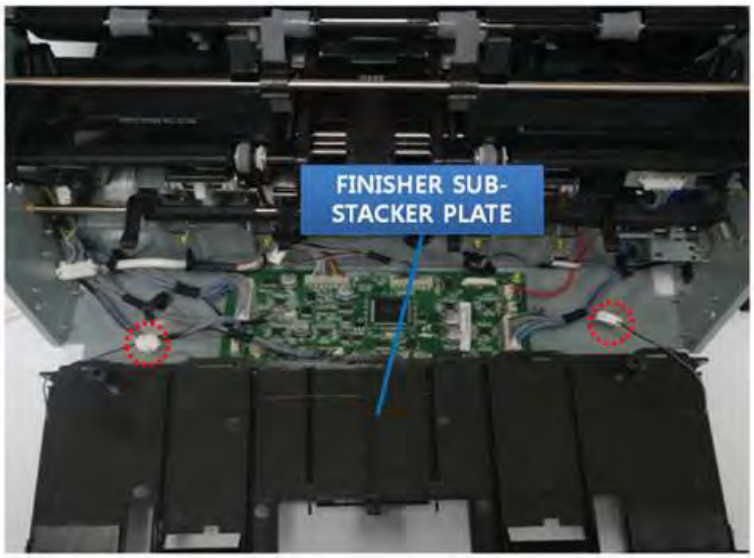
Figure 5-83 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-84 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



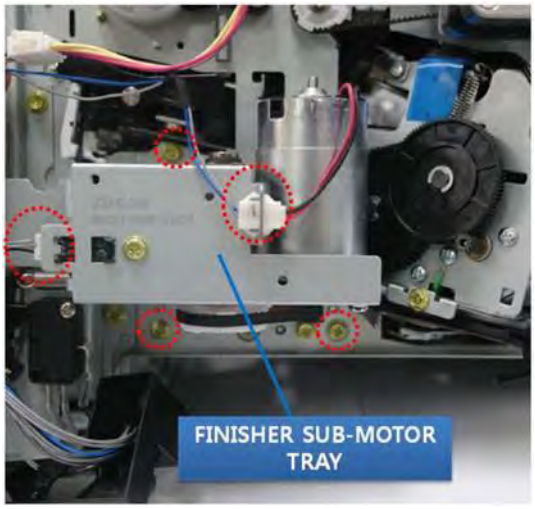
9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 5-85 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

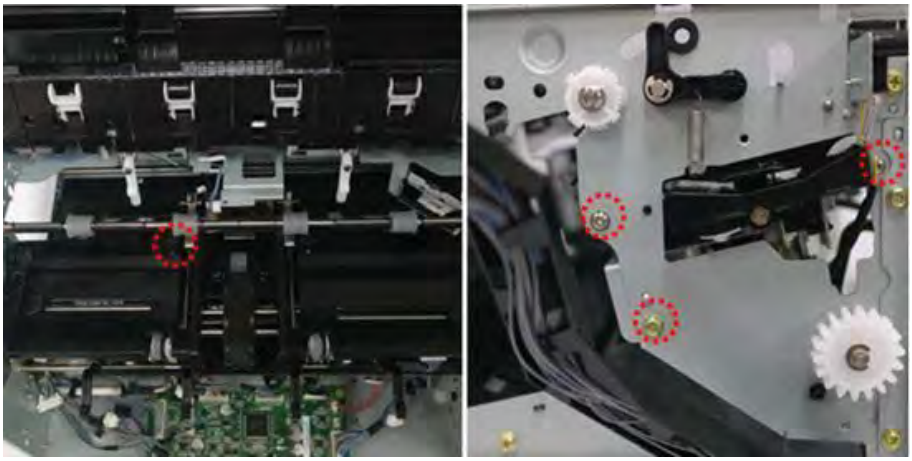
Figure 5-86 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15)



11. Remove four screws.

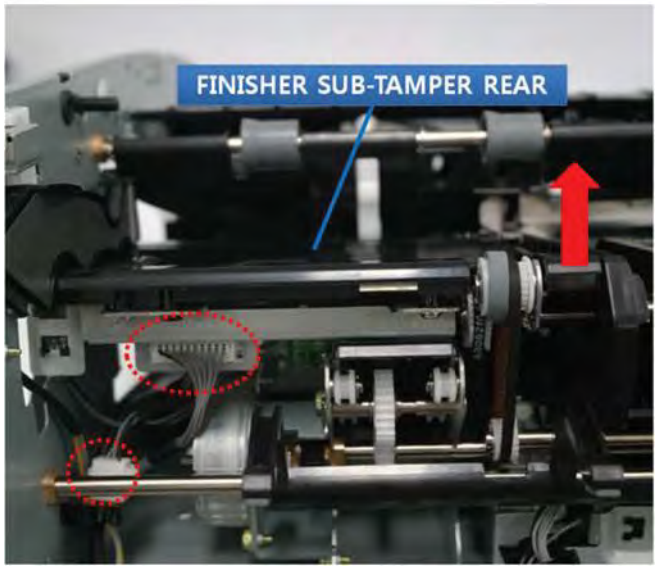
NOTE: Move cable guide out of position to access the screws.

Figure 5-87 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3)



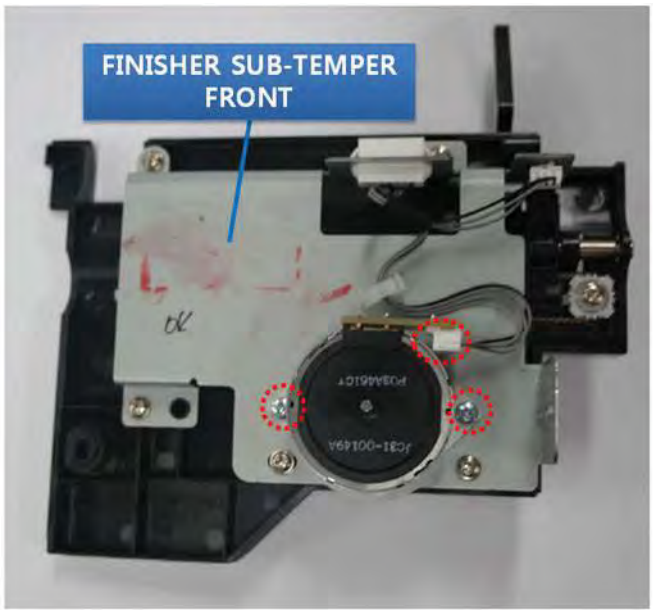
12. Unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-tamper rear.

Figure 5-88 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3)



13. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger motor.

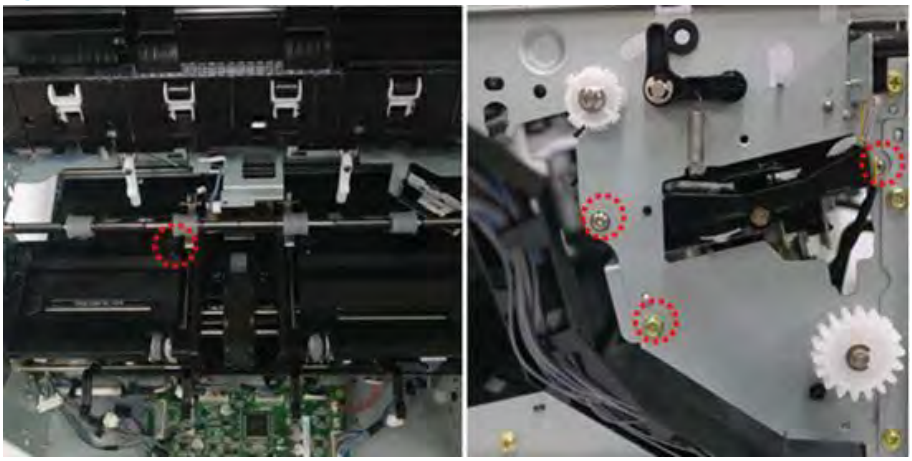
Figure 5-89 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3)



14. Remove four screws.

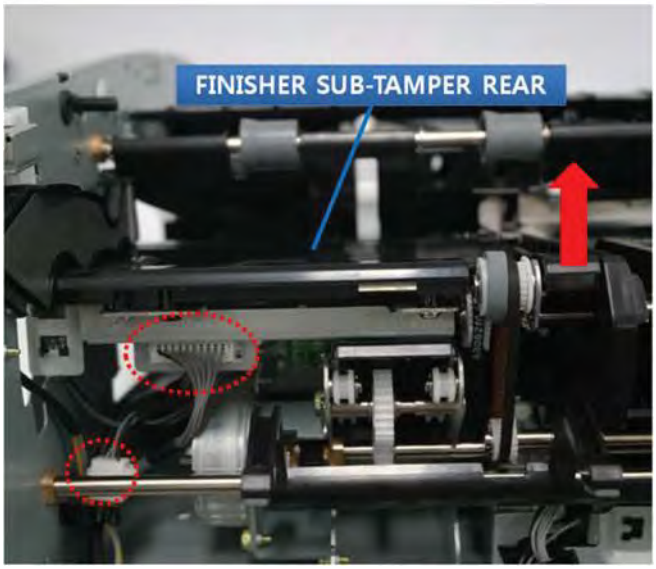
NOTE: Move cable guide out of position to access the screws.

Figure 5-90 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3)



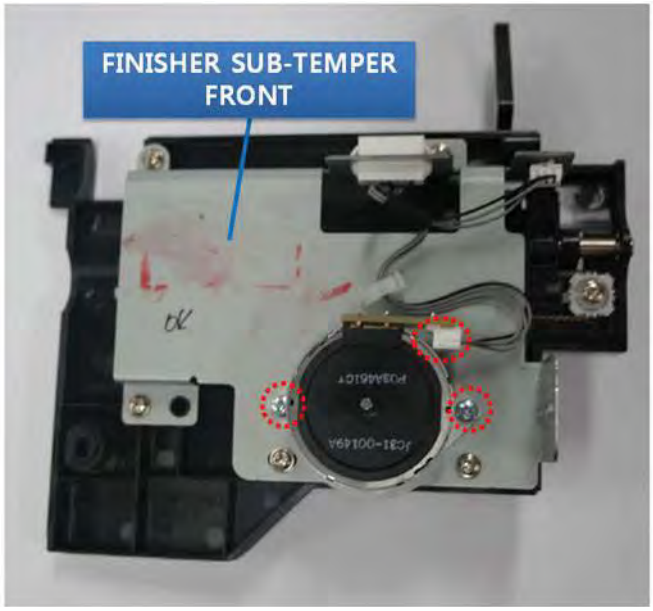
15. Unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-tamper rear.

Figure 5-91 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3)



16. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger motor.

Figure 5-92 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3)



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear Jogger Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear jogger home sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Rear Jogger Home Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0604-001381

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Rear Jogger Home Sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear jogger home sensor

Remove the rear jogger home sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub-cover front and the cover-rear.

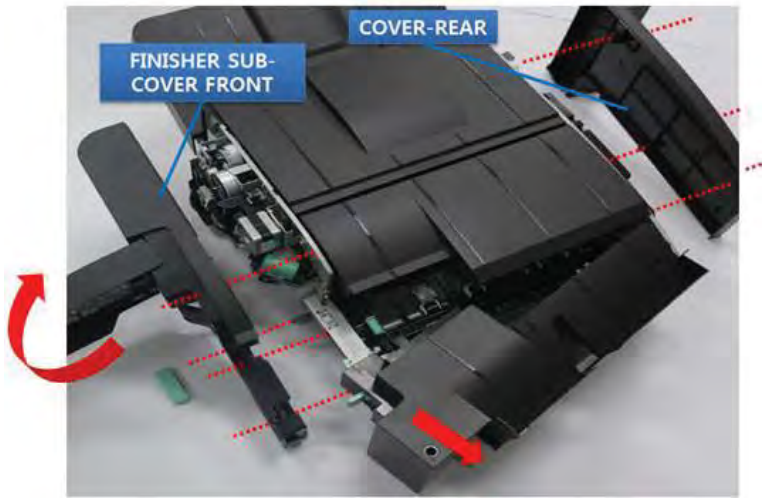
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

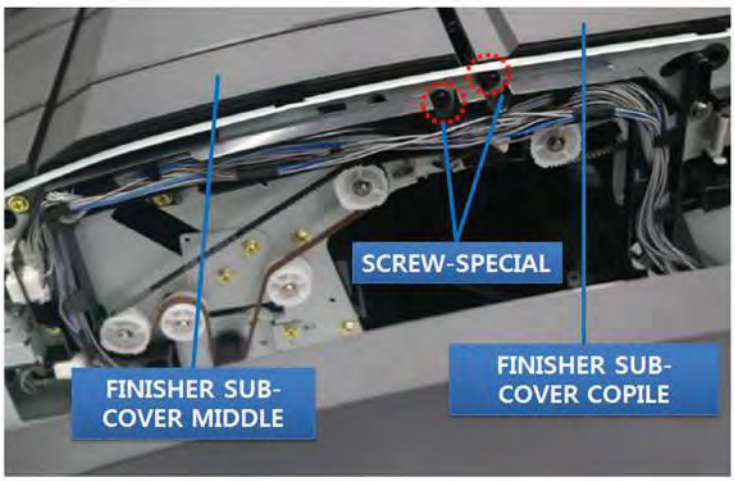
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-93 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 11)

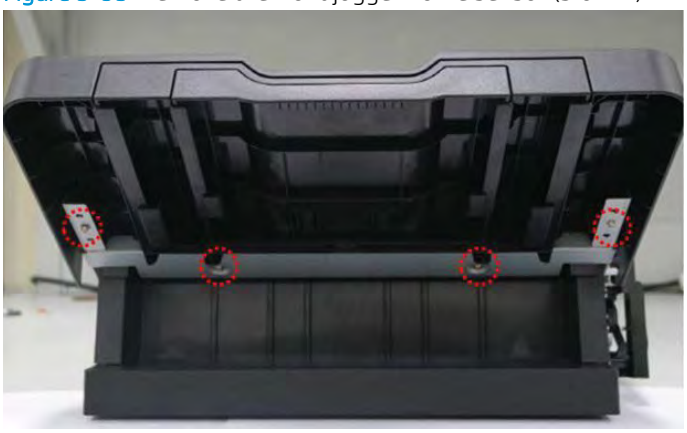
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-94 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 11)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-95 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 11)

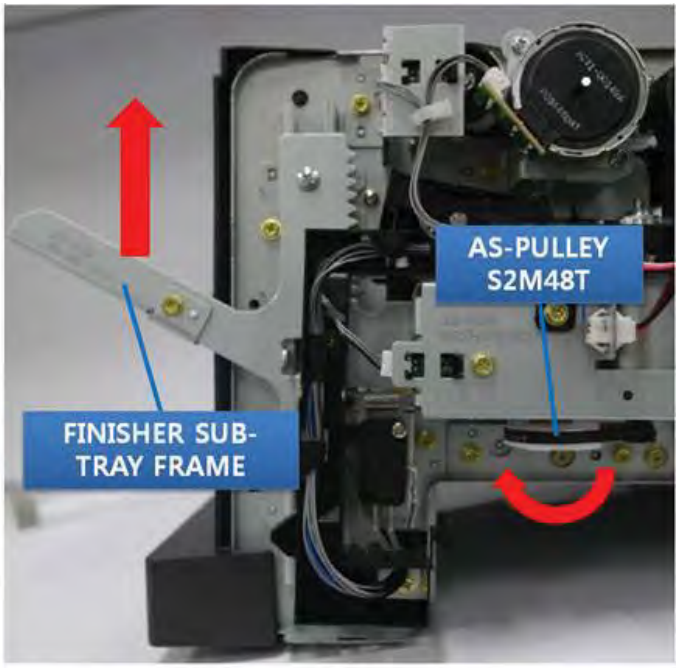


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

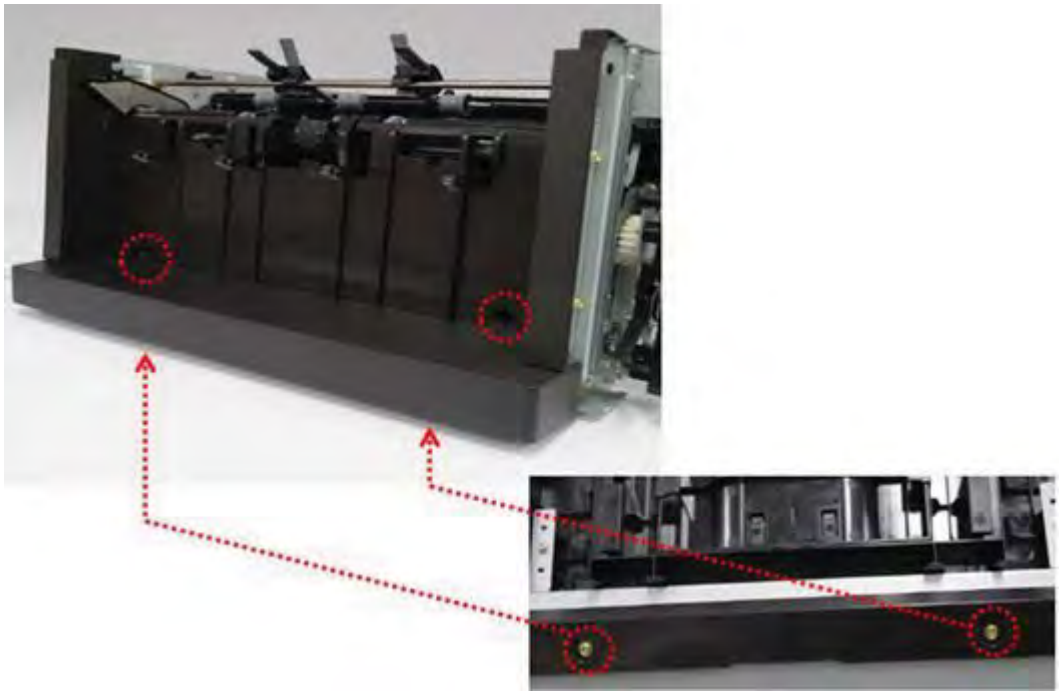
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 5-96 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 11)



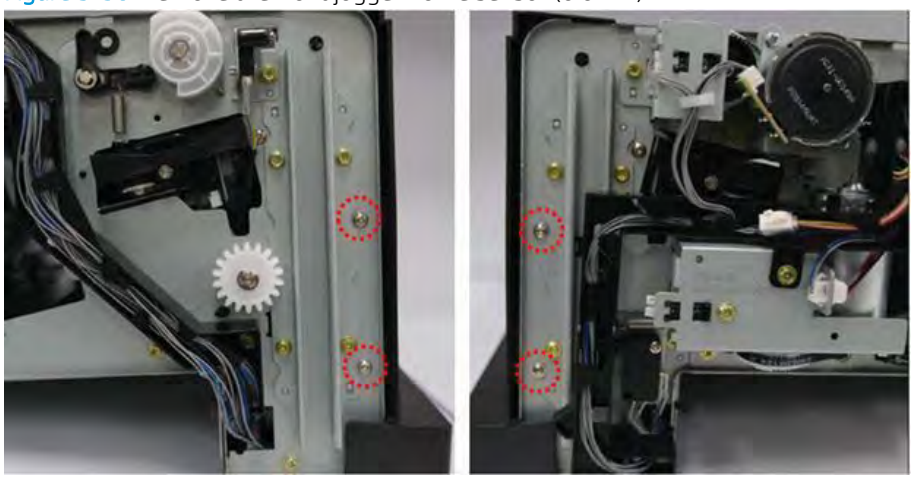
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-97 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 11)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

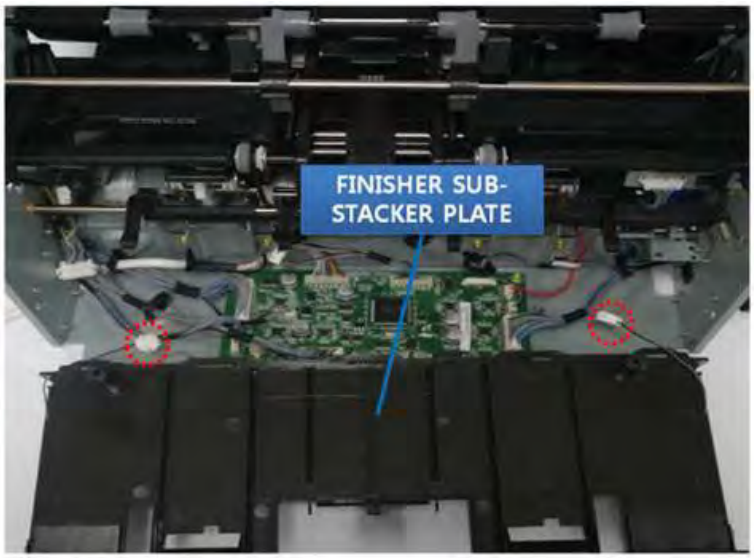
Figure 5-98 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 11)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-99 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 11)



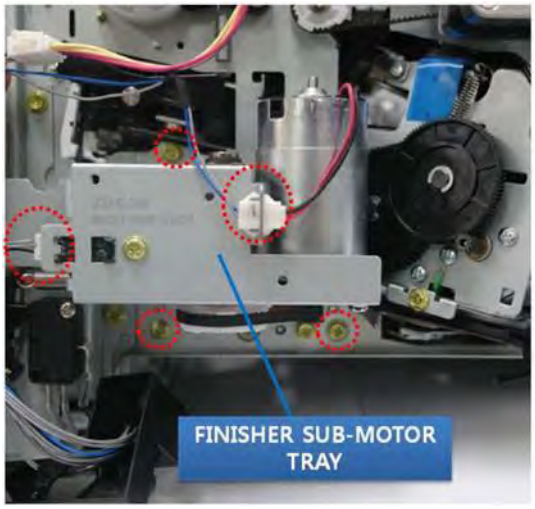
9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 5-100 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 11)



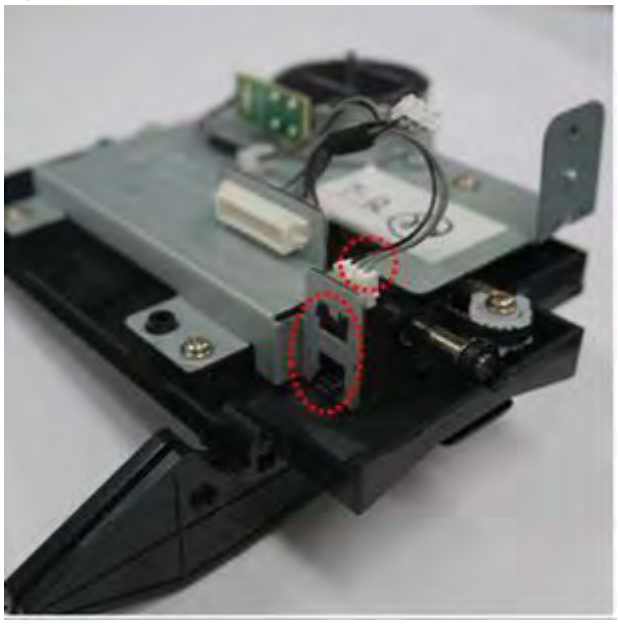
10. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-101 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 11)



11. Unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger home sensor.

Figure 5-102 Remove the rear jogger home sensor (11 of 11)



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stapler

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stapler
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the stapler assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC90-01342A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Stapler assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

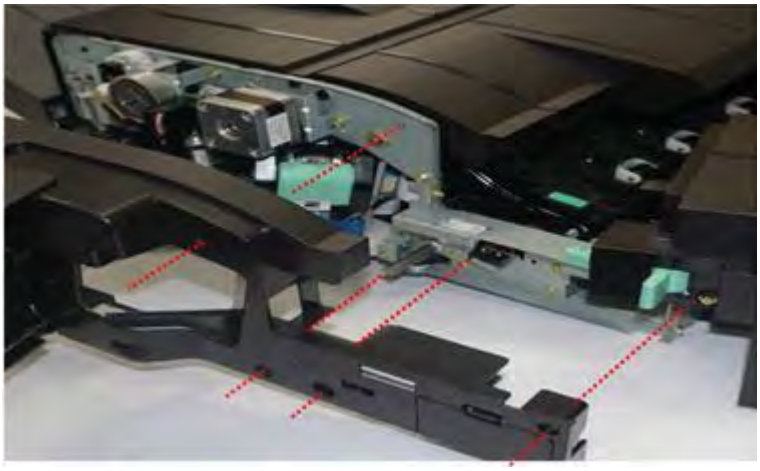
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stapler

1. Remove the front cover.

Figure 5-103 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3)



2. Remove two screws, and then unplug the motor connector.

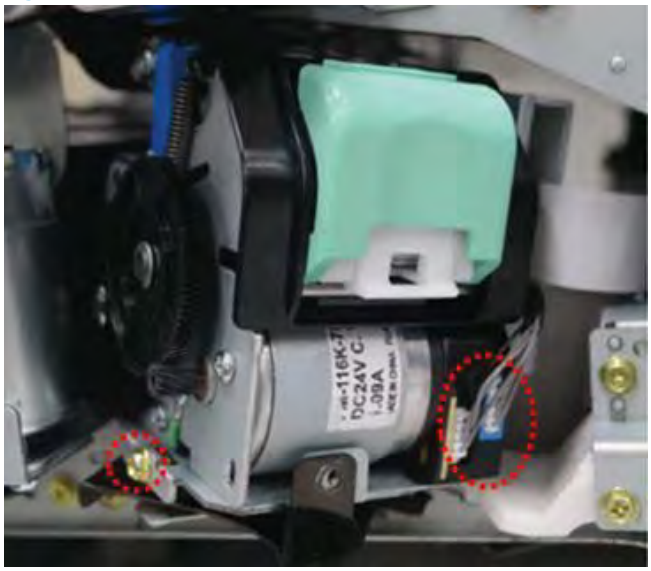
Figure 5-104 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3)



3. Remove one screw, unplug two connectors, and then remove the stapler unit.

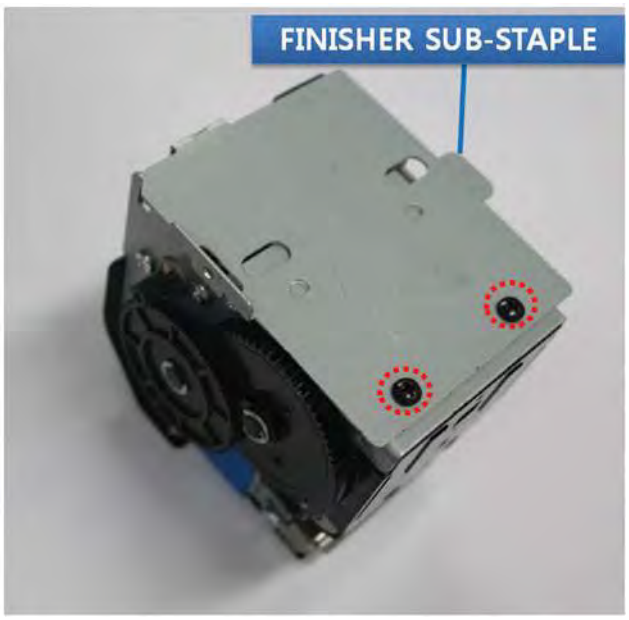
NOTE: Ensure the tab on the back of the stapler unit clears the chassis while removing.

Figure 5-105 Remove the stapler (1 of 2)



4. Remove two screws, and then remove the finisher sub-staple.

Figure 5-106 Remove the stapler (2 of 2)



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stapler position sensor assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly
- Step 3: Remove the staple position sensor assembly
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stapler position sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0604-001415

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Stapler position sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

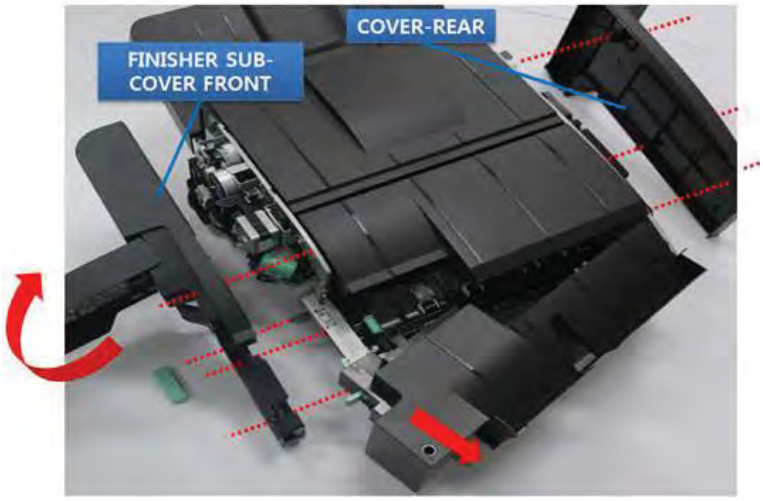
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

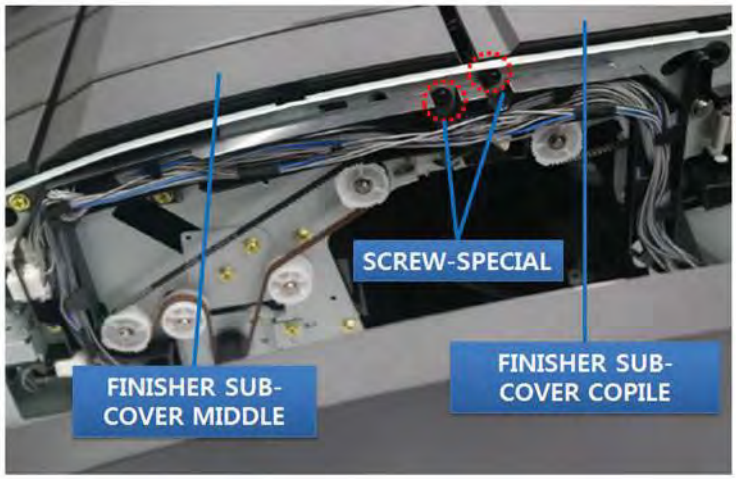
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-107 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-108 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-109 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

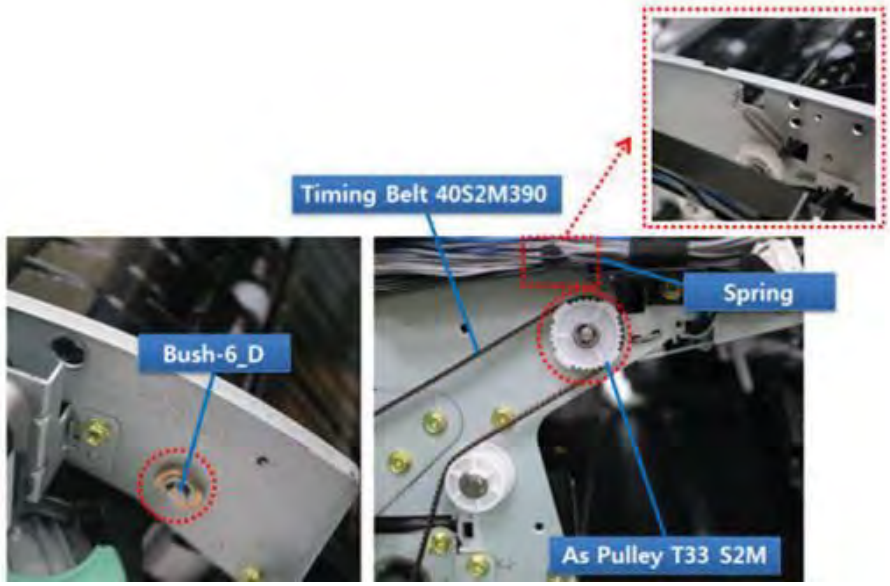
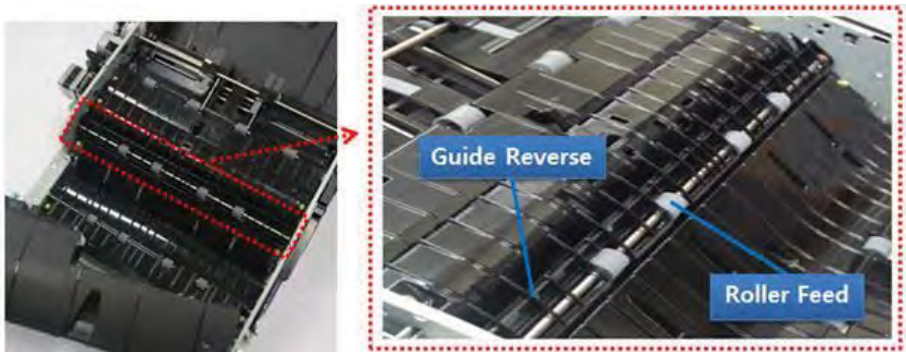


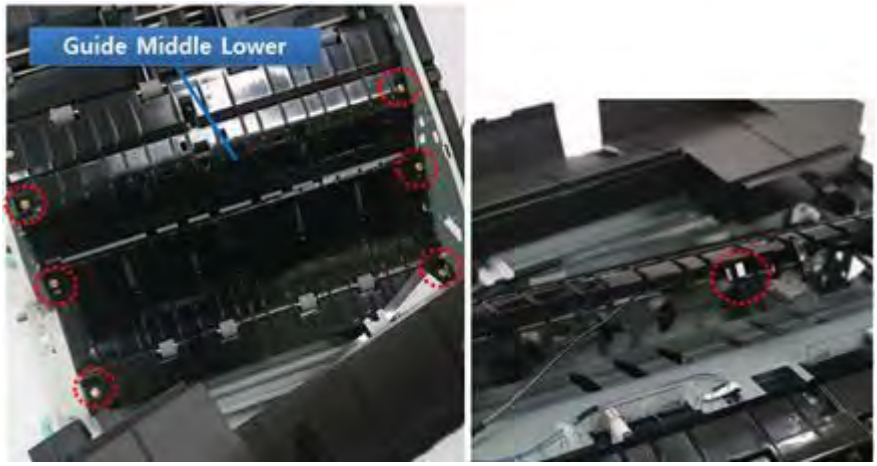
Figure 5-110 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

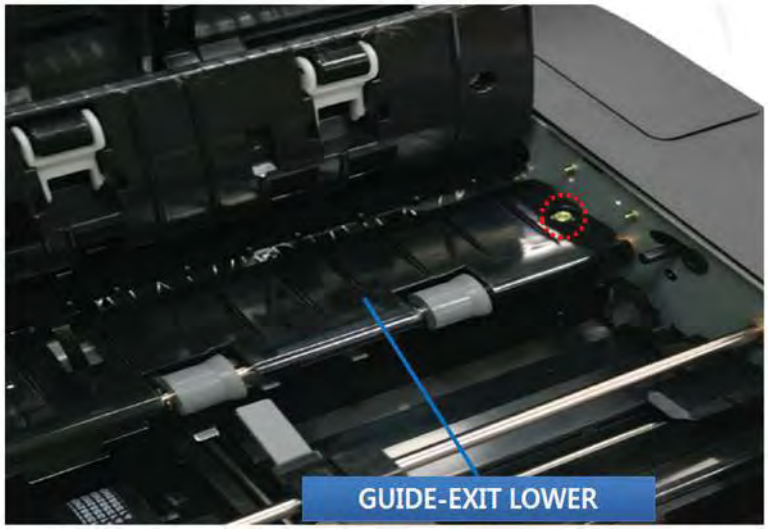
Figure 5-111 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly

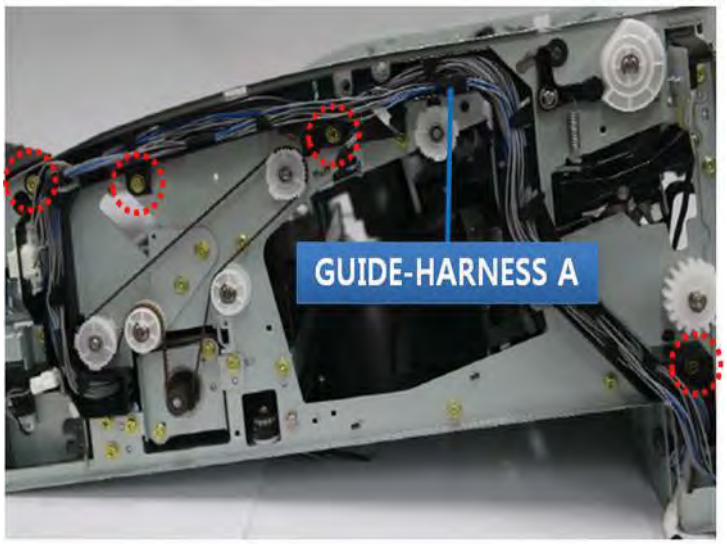
1. Open the cover top tray sub-assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

   Figure 5-112 Remove the Paddle Shaft sub assembly paddles (1 of 6)

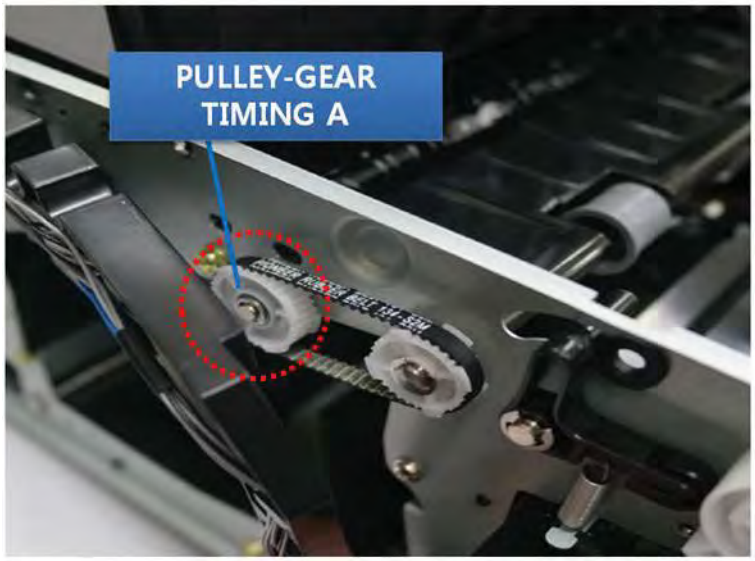
2. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

   Figure 5-113 Remove the Paddle Shaft sub assembly paddles (2 of 6)

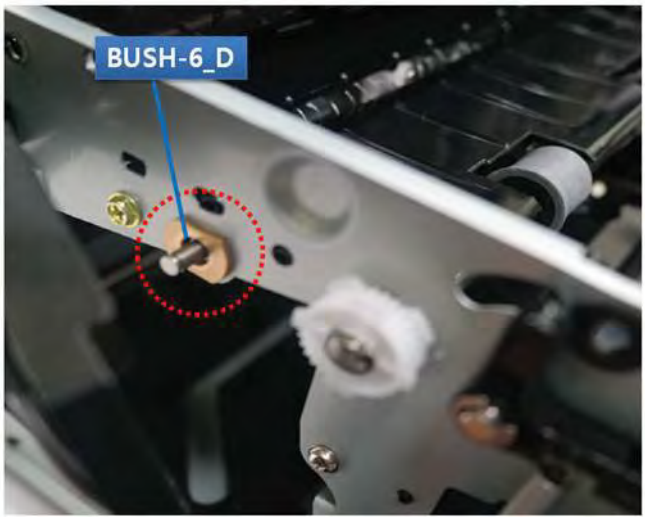
3. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 5-114 Remove the Paddle Shaft sub assembly paddles (3 of 6)



4. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 5-115 Remove the Paddle Shaft sub assembly paddles (4 of 6)



5. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 5-116 Remove the Paddle Shaft sub assembly paddles (5 of 6)



Step 3: Remove the staple position sensor assembly

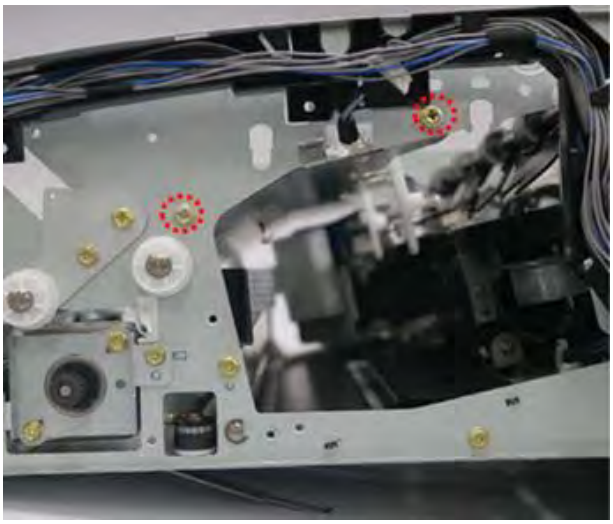
1. Remove two screws from the front of the printer. Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket support.

Figure 5-117 Remove the stapler position sensor (1 of 7)



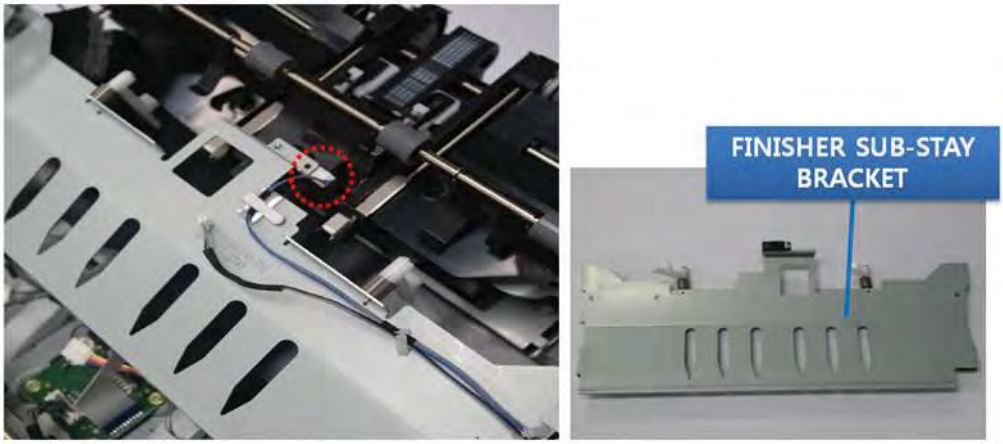
2. Remove two screws from the rear of the printer.

Figure 5-118 Remove the stapler position sensor (2 of 7)



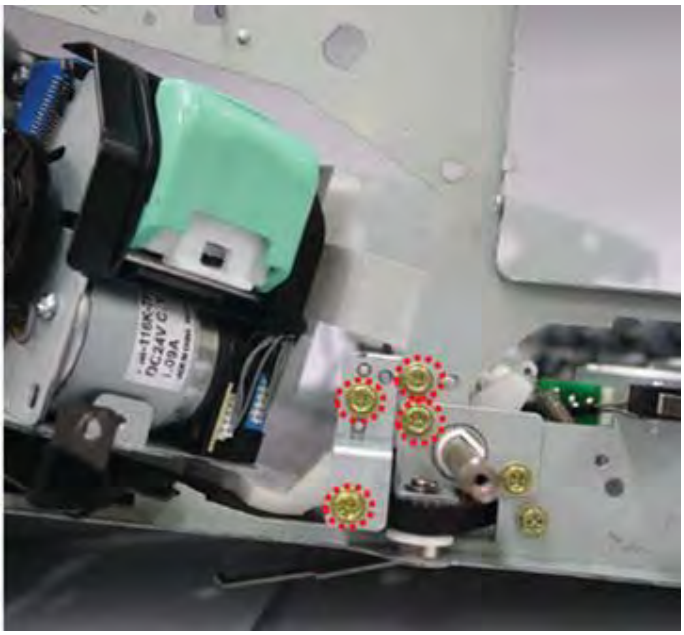
3. Loosen three cable restraints. Unplug the connector at the sensor, and then remove the finisher sub-stay bracket.

Figure 5-119 Remove the stapler position sensor (3 of 7)



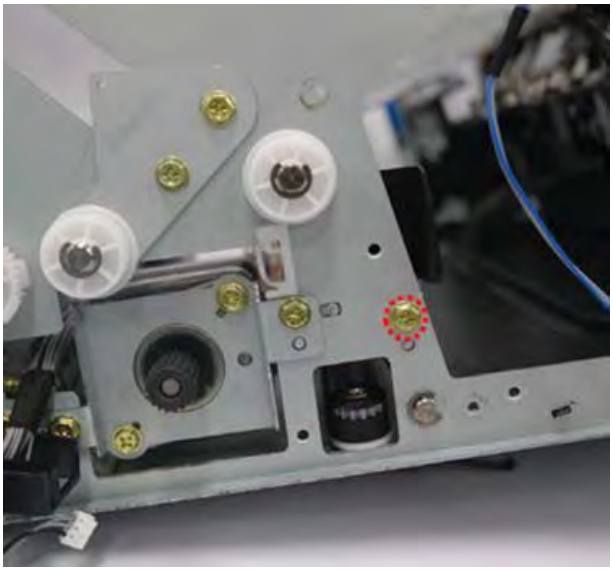
4. Remove one screw from the front of the printer.

Figure 5-120 Remove the stapler position sensor (4 of 7)



5. Remove one screw from the rear of the printer.

Figure 5-121 Remove the stapler position sensor (5 of 7)

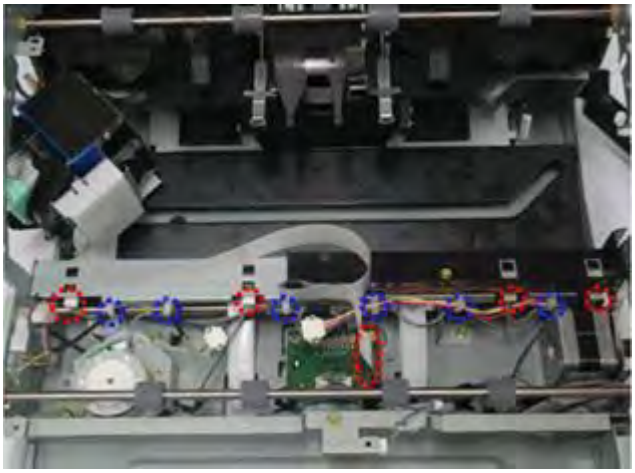


6. Unplug four photo-sensor connectors. Open the six cable restraints, and then unplug the FFC cable.

NOTE: The FFC is glued to the support bracket. However, the sensors can be replaced without removal of the FFC.

Reinstallation tip: Connect the sensors, lock the cable restraints, and then connect the FCC.

Figure 5-122 Remove the stapler position sensor (6 of 7)



7. Remove the assembly, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 5-123 Remove the stapler position sensor (7 of 7)



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Traverse Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the traverse motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Traverse Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC93-00999A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Traverse Motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

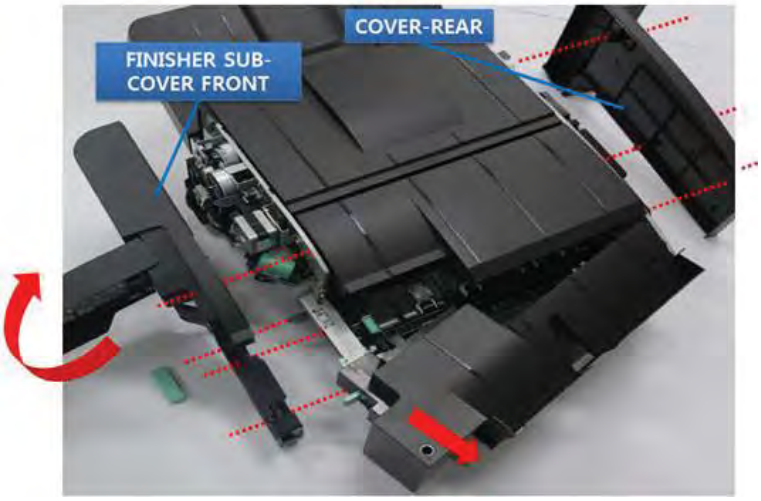
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

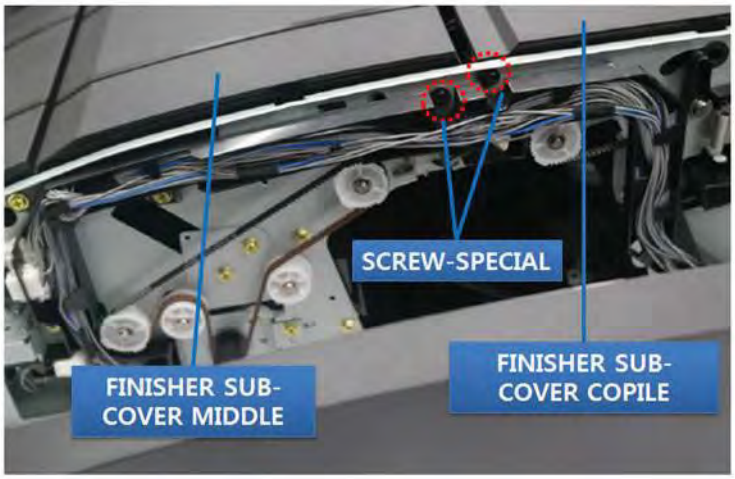
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-124 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-125 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-126 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

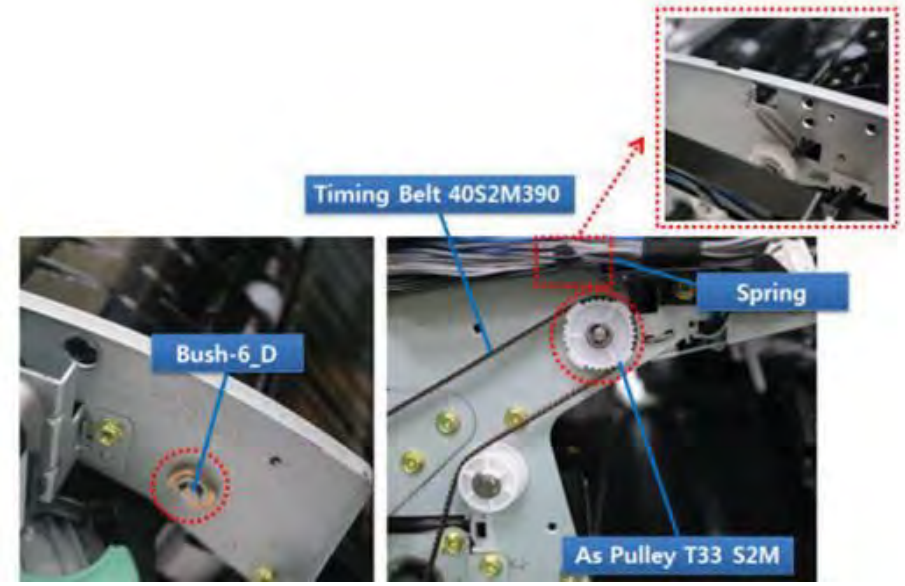
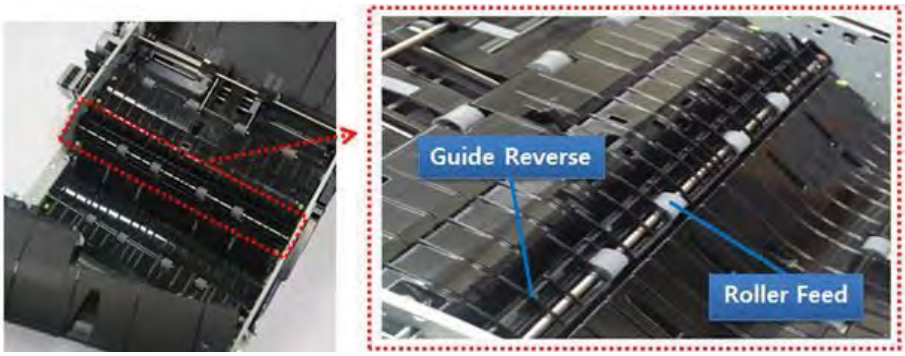


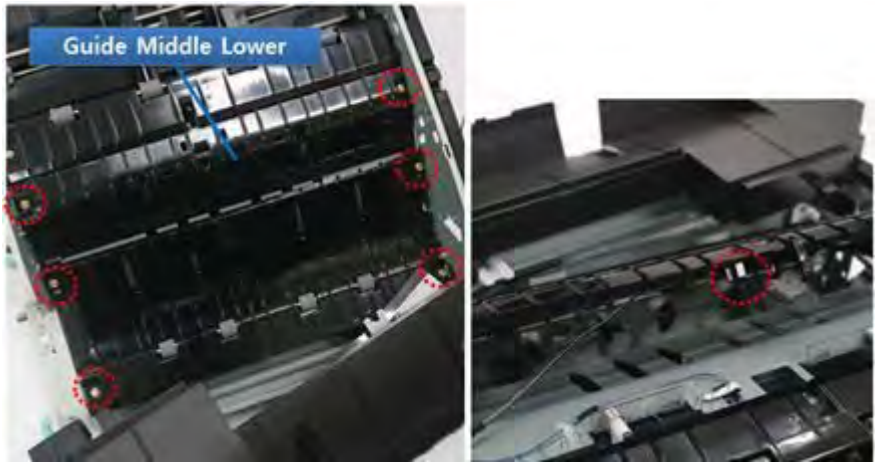
Figure 5-127 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

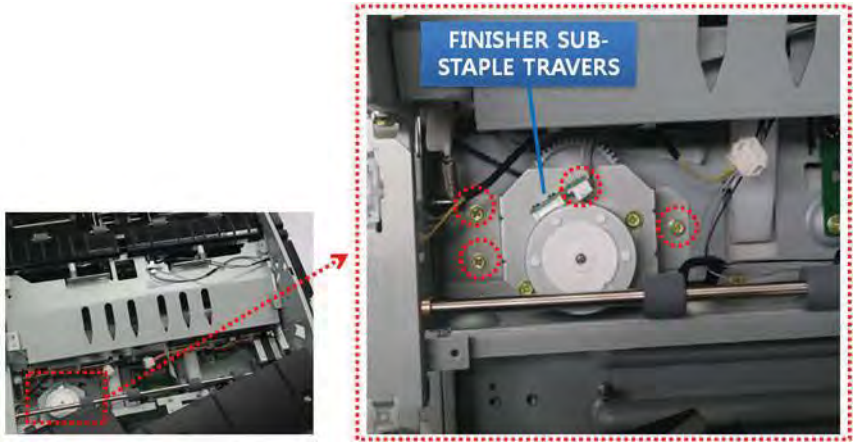
Figure 5-128 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the traverse motor

1. Remove three screws, unplug the motor connector, and then remove the finisher sub-staple travers.

   Figure 5-129 Remove the traverse motor (1 of 2)



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

   Figure 5-130 Remove the traverse motor (2 of 2)



3. Use the following steps when reinstalling the traverse motor:

   a. Apply tension to the spring by pushing toward the center of the printer, and then tighten the screw. Tightening the screw puts maximum slack in the belt.

   b. Lower the motor while placing the belt on the motor pulley.

   c. Secure the bracket with three screws.

   d. Release the spring tension screw to allow the spring to apply tension to the belt.

   e. Tighten the screw.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stacker Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stacker motor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC90-01334B

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Stacker Motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stacker motor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

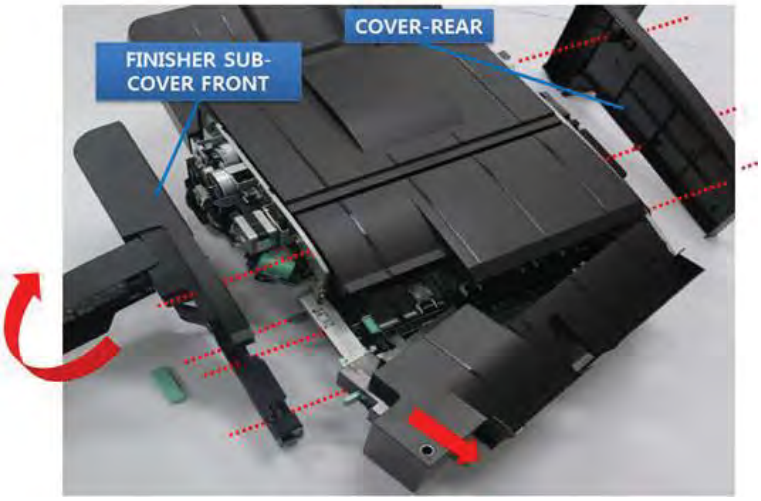
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

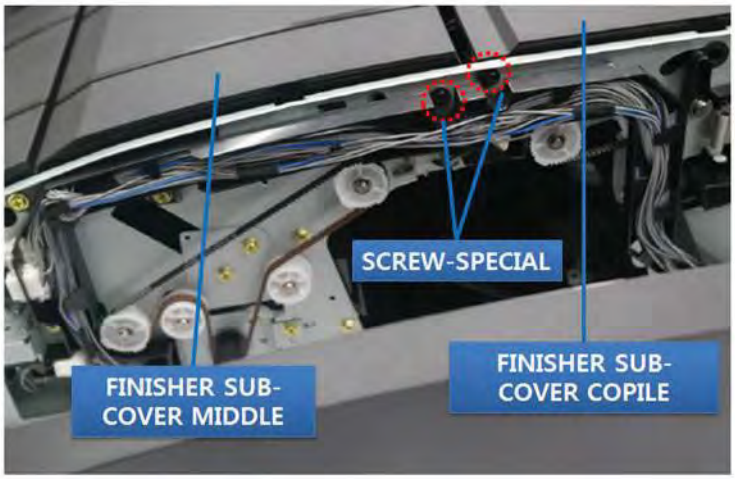
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-131 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



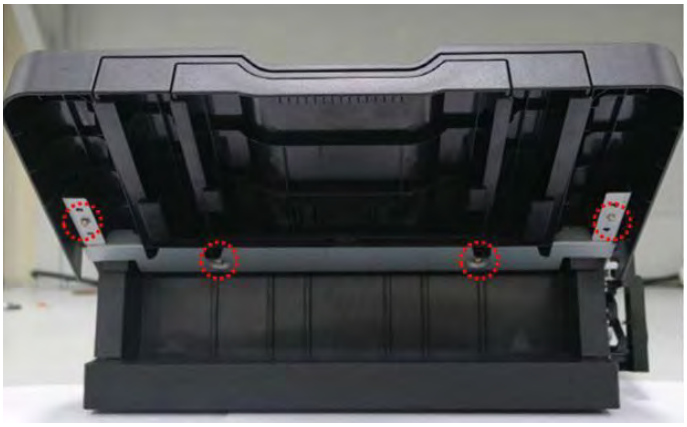
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-132 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-133 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

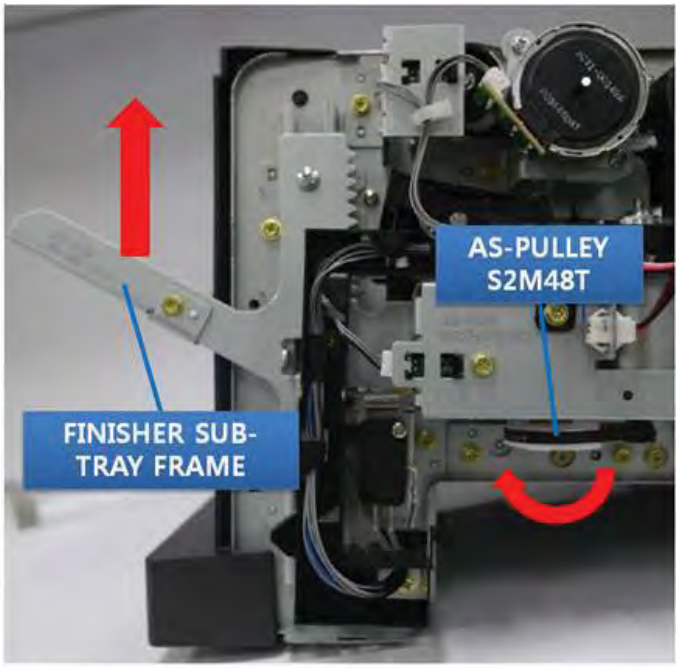


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

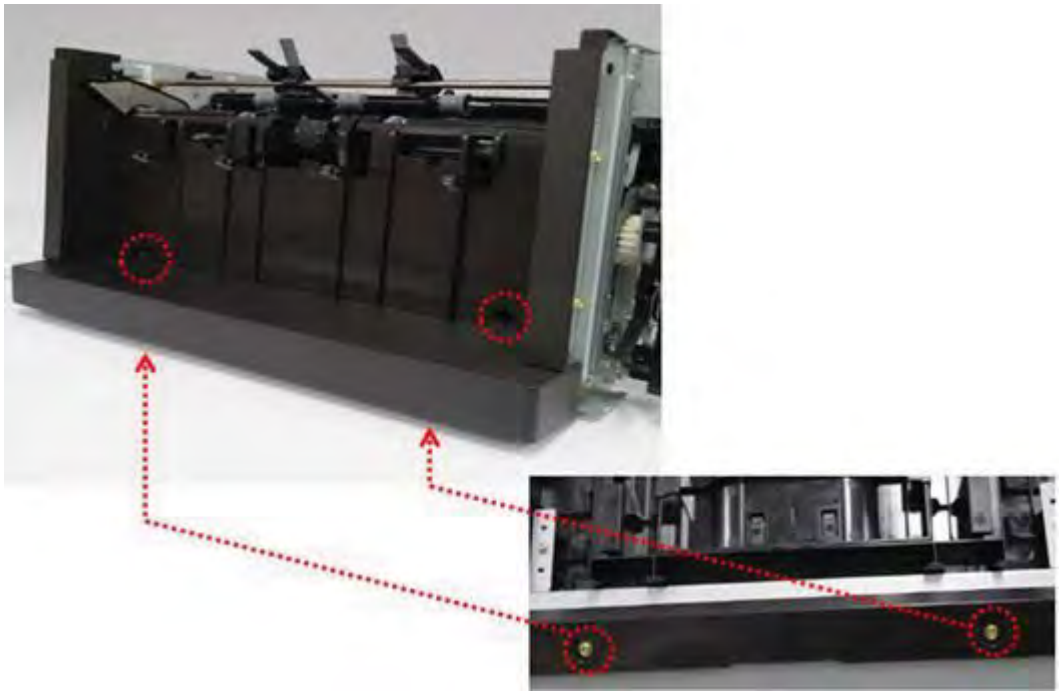
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 5-134 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



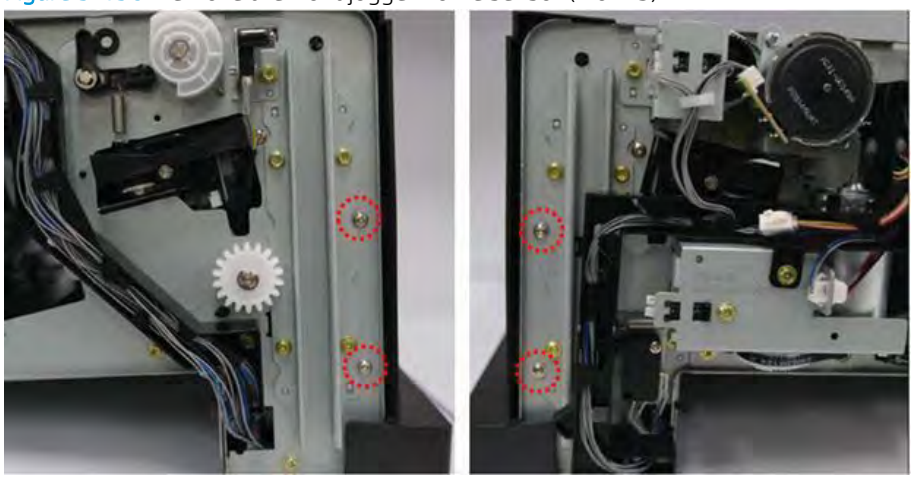
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-135 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

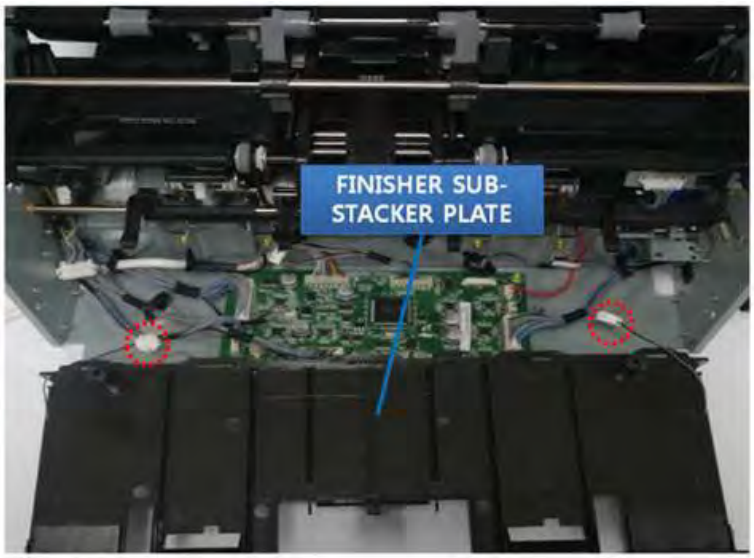
Figure 5-136 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove Lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-137 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

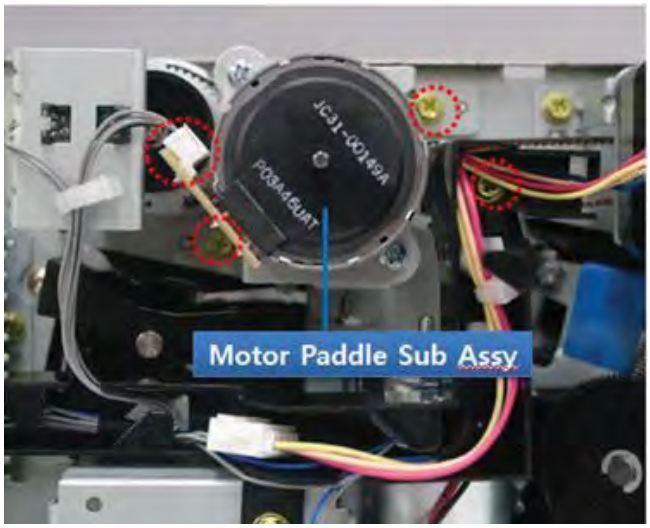
Figure 5-138 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

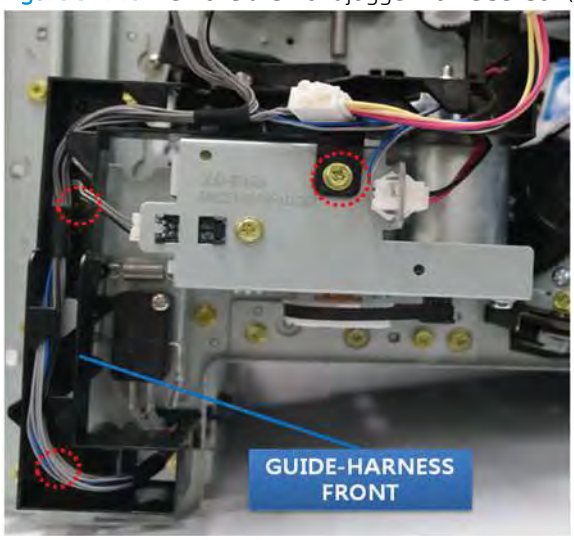
Figure 5-139 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 5-140 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



12. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the stacker motor.

Figure 5-141 Remove the stacker motor



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stacker Encoder Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stacker encoder sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Encoder Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0604-001415

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Stacker Encoder Sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stacker encoder sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

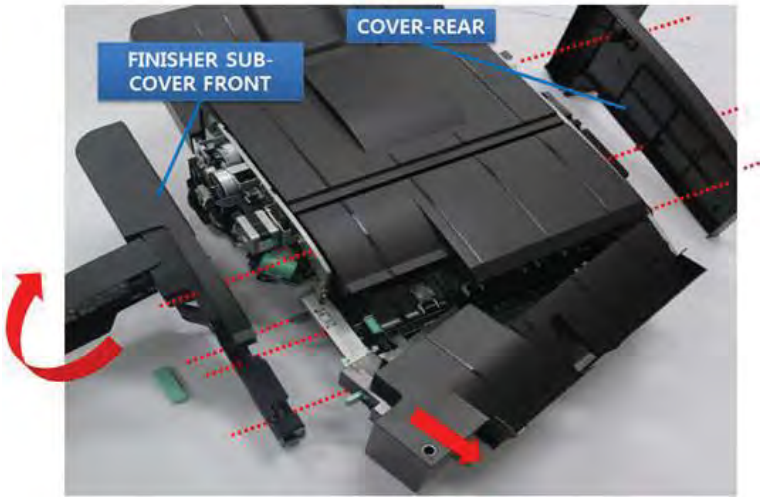
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

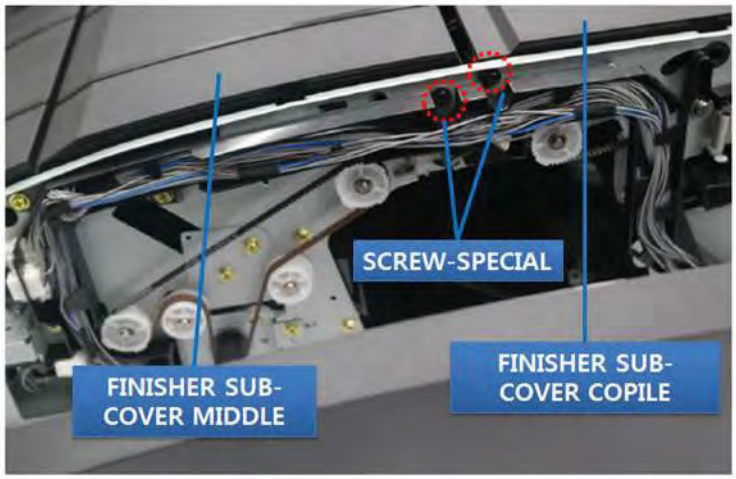
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-142 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

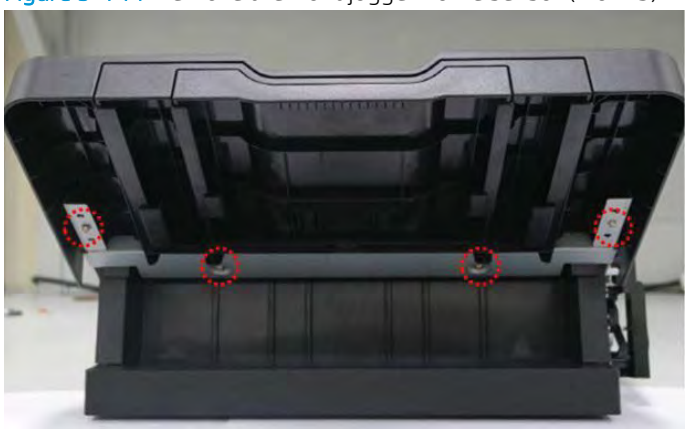
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-143 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-144 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

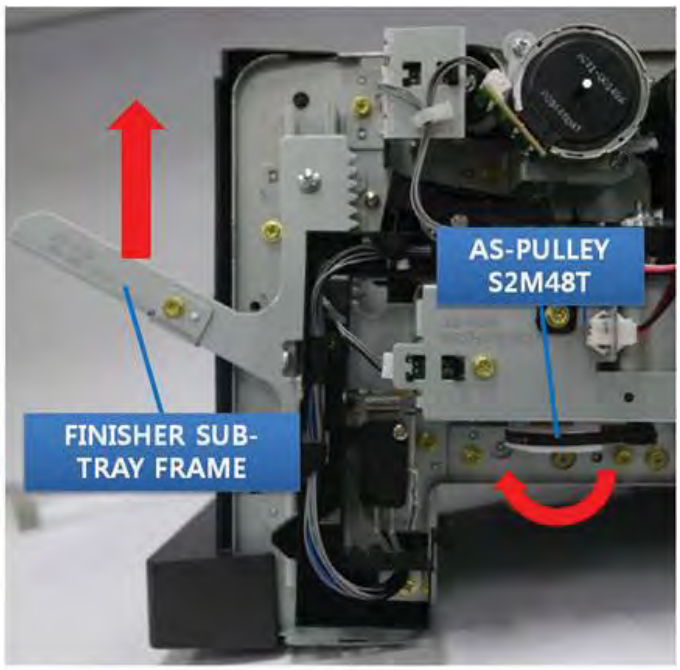


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

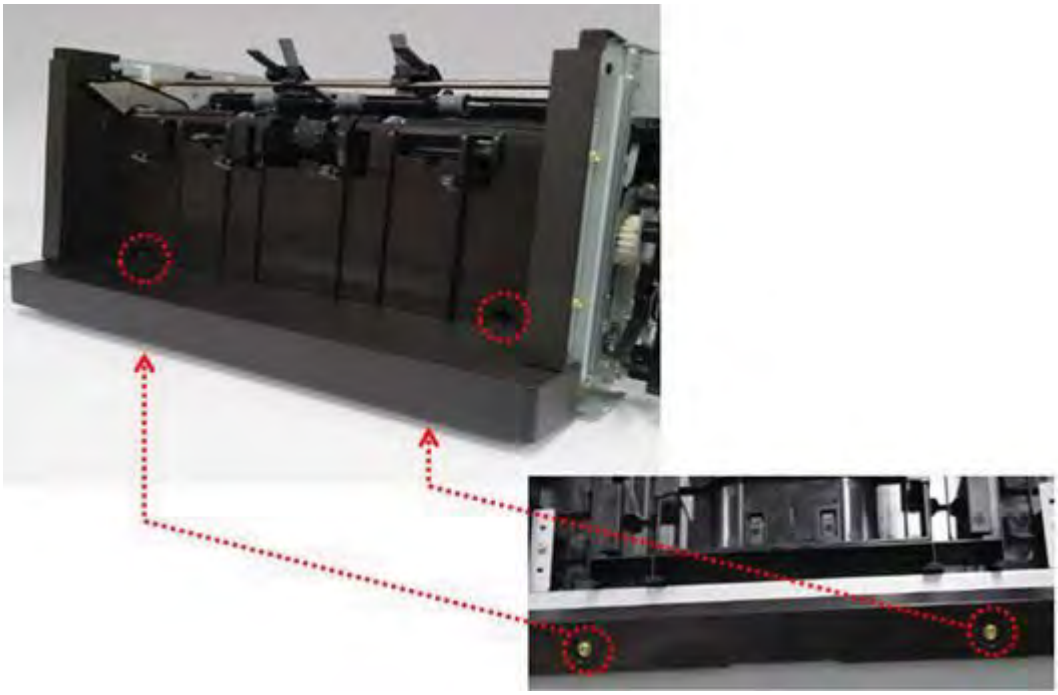
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 5-145 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



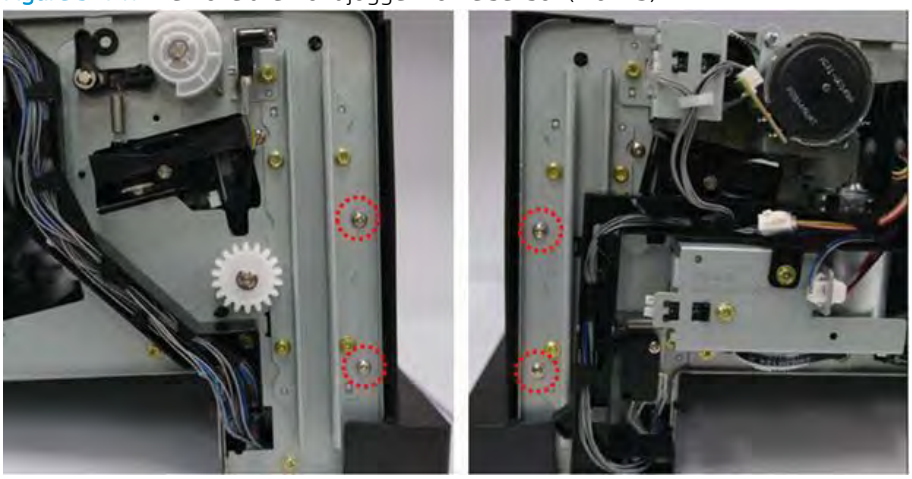
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-146 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

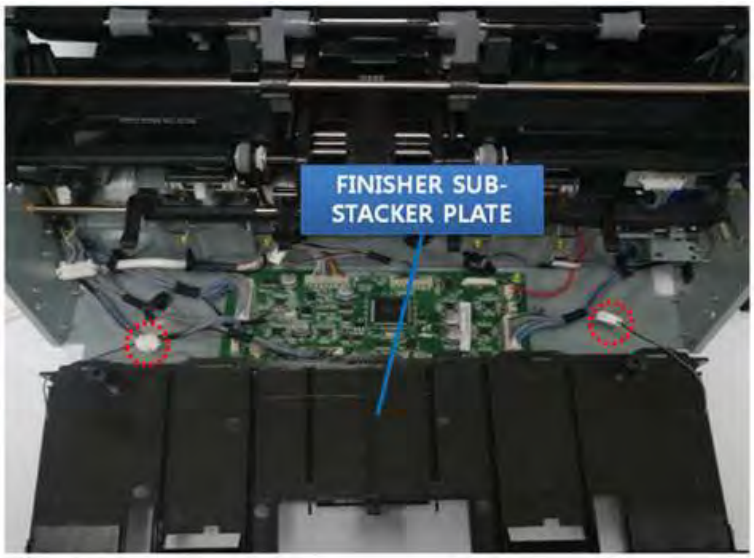
Figure 5-147 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-148 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

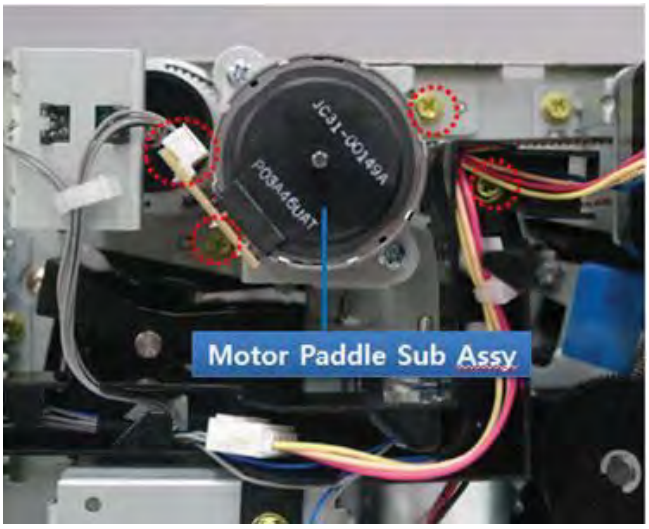
Figure 5-149 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

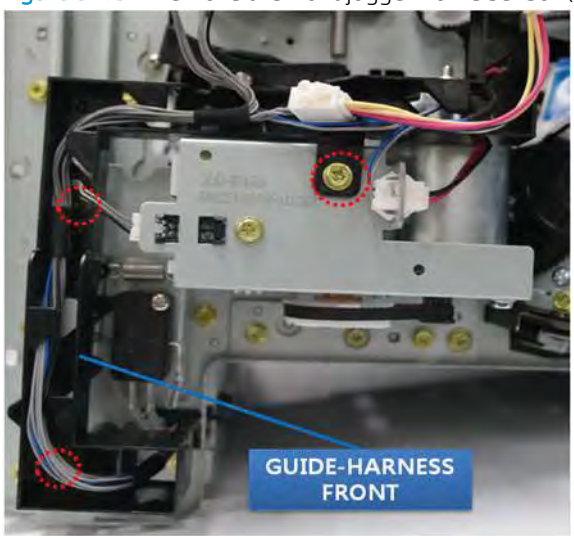
Figure 5-150 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

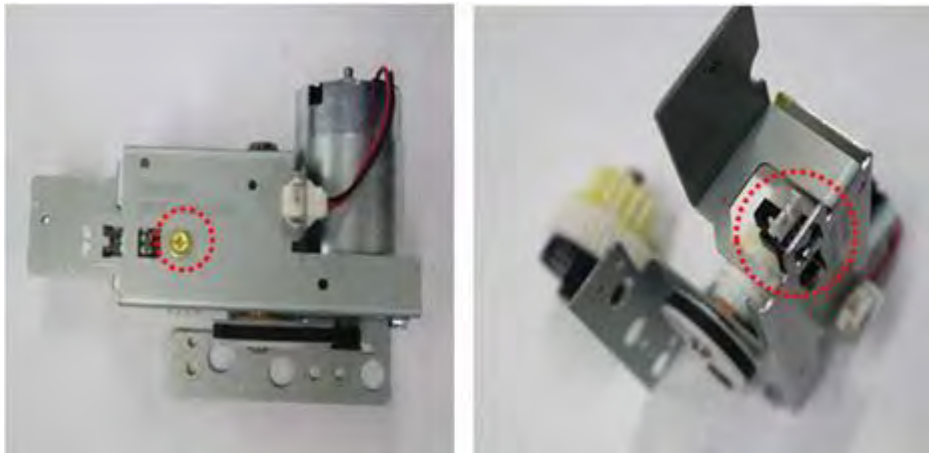
NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 5-151 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



12. Remove one screw, remove the shaft, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 5-152 Remove the stacker encoder sensor



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stacker Lower Limit Switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stacker lower limit switch
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Lower Limit Switch assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC90-01320A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Stacker Lower Limit Switch assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stacker lower limit switch

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

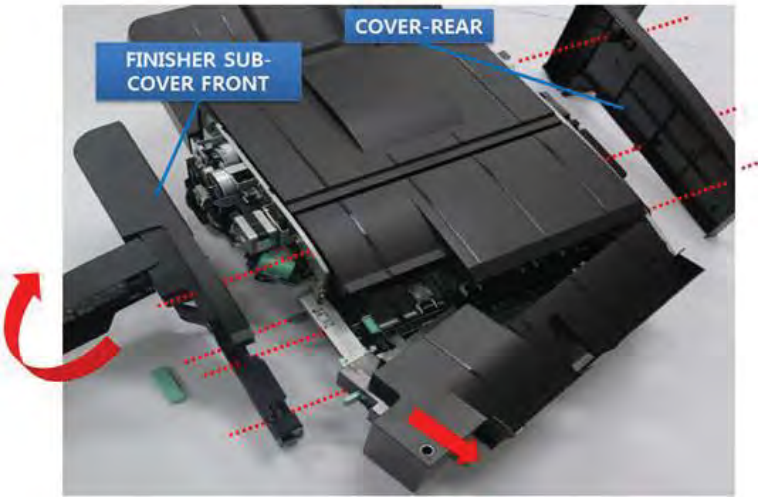
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

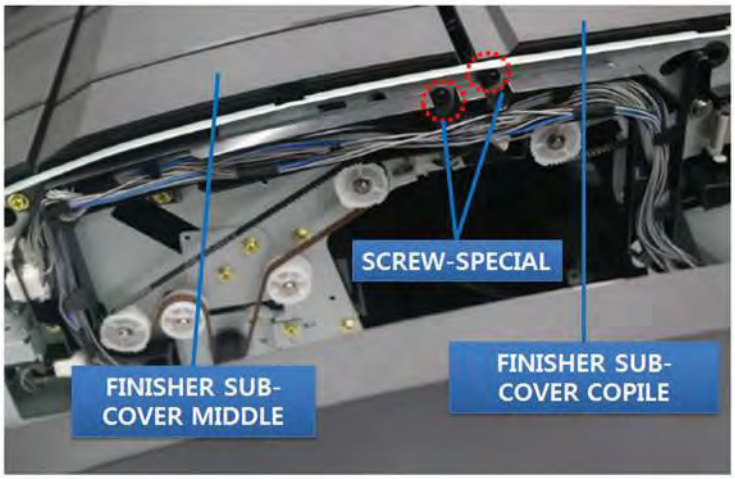
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-153 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



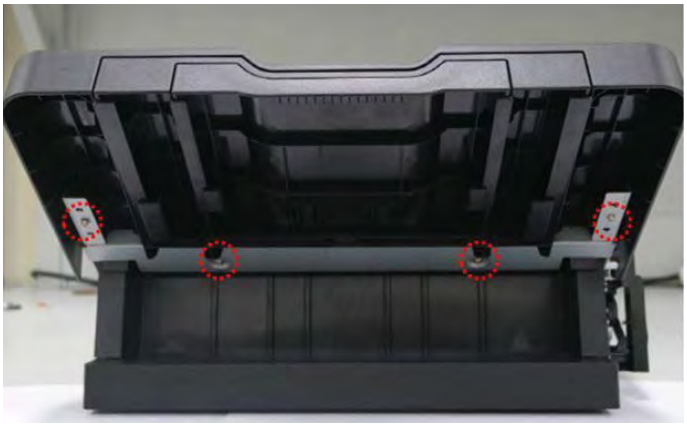
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-154 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-155 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

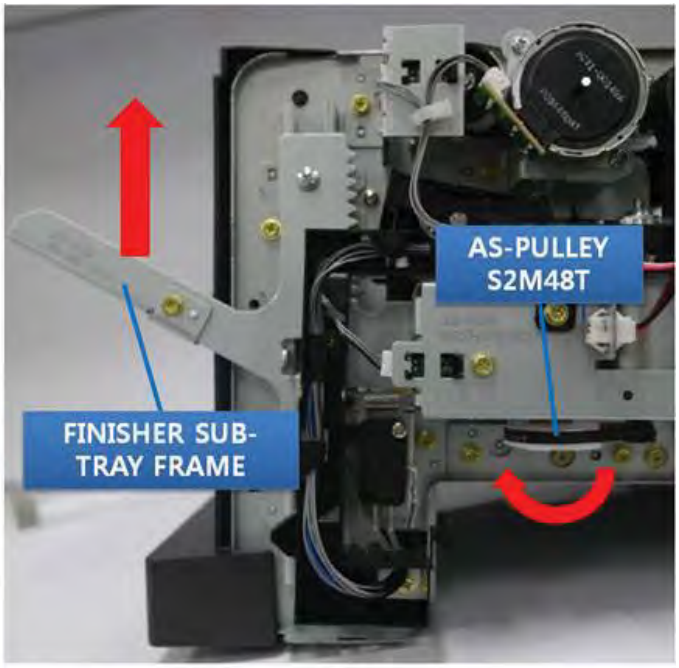


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

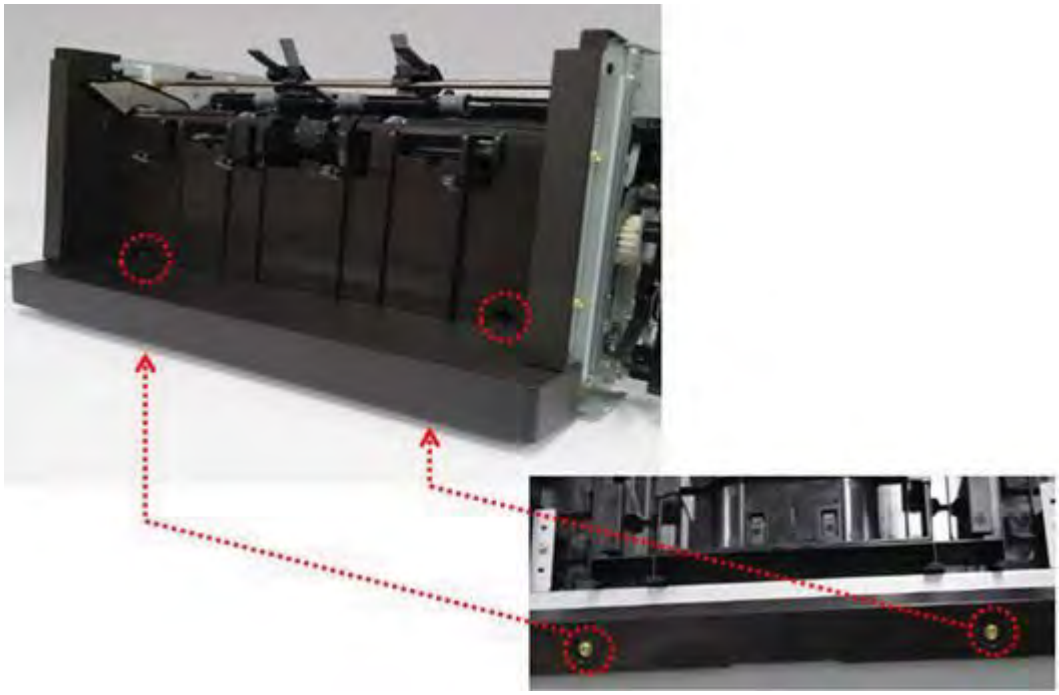
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 5-156 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



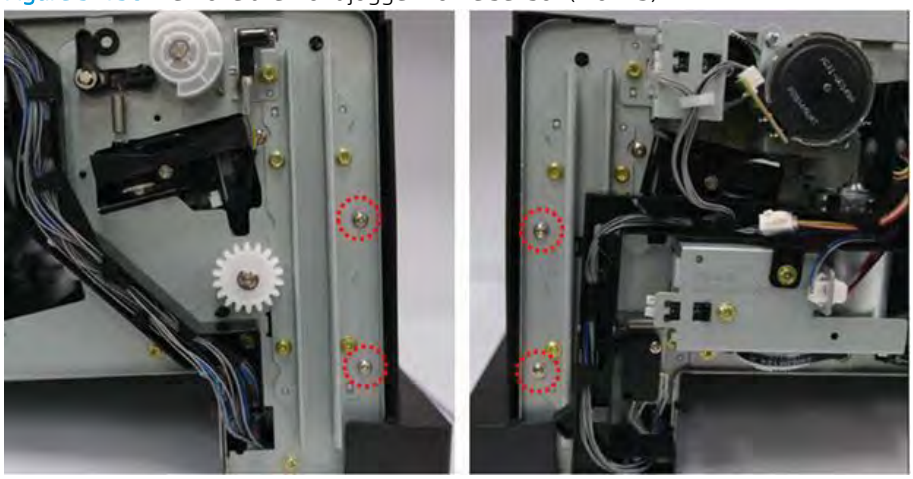
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-157 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

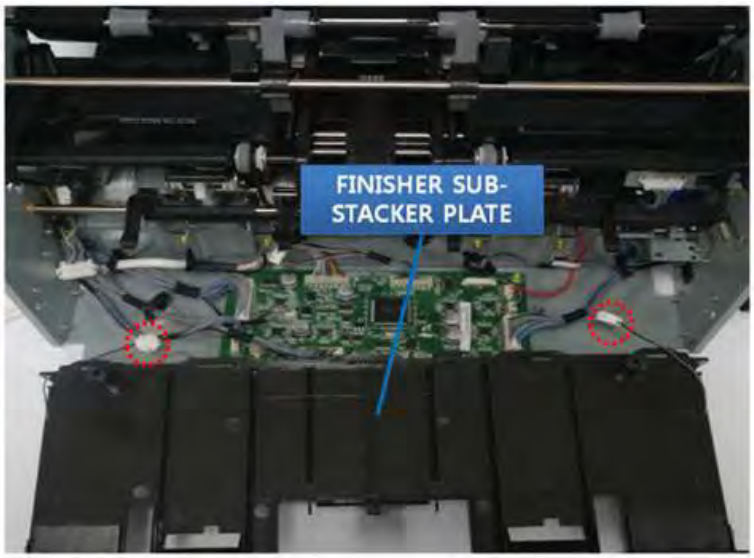
Figure 5-158 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-159 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

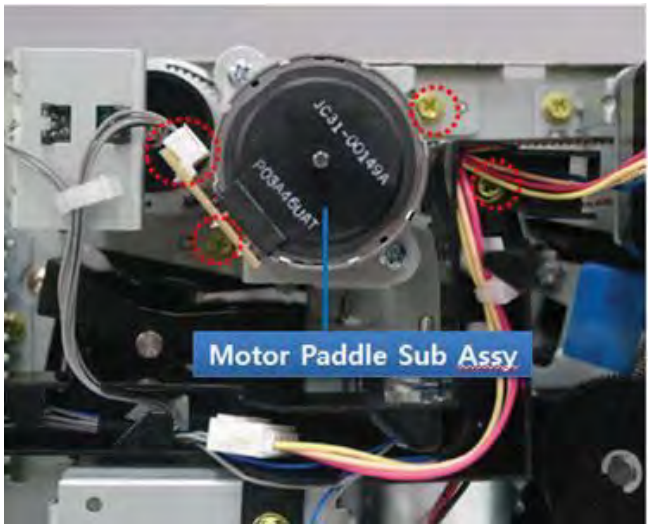
Figure 5-160 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

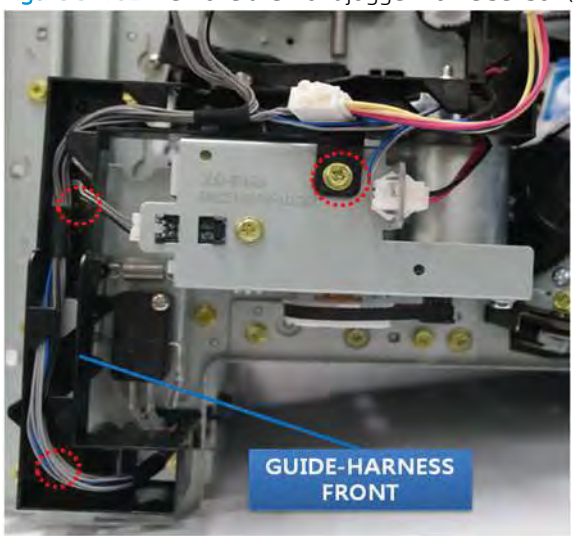
Figure 5-161 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 5-162 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



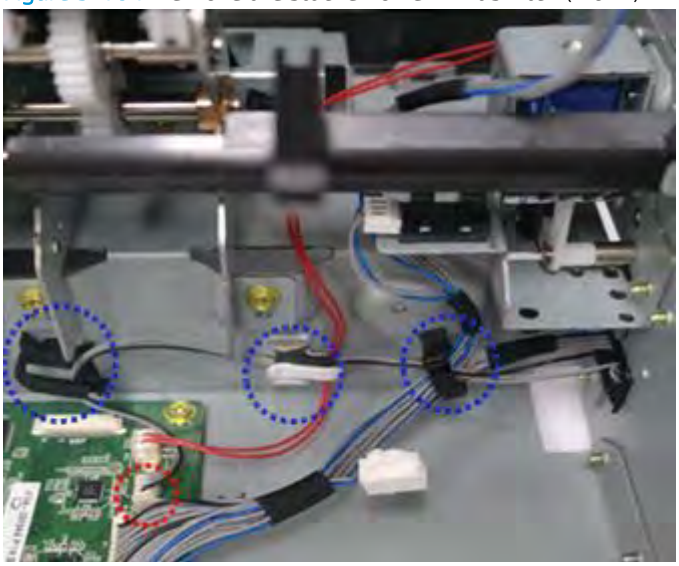
12. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-163 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (1 of 2)



13. Open three clamps, unplug the connector, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 5-164 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (2 of 2)



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stack Beam Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stack beam sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stack Beam Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0603-001309

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Stack Beam Sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stack beam sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

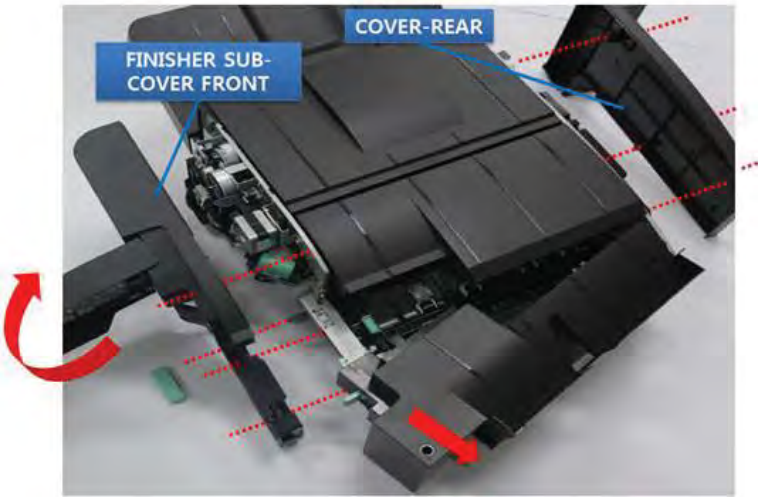
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

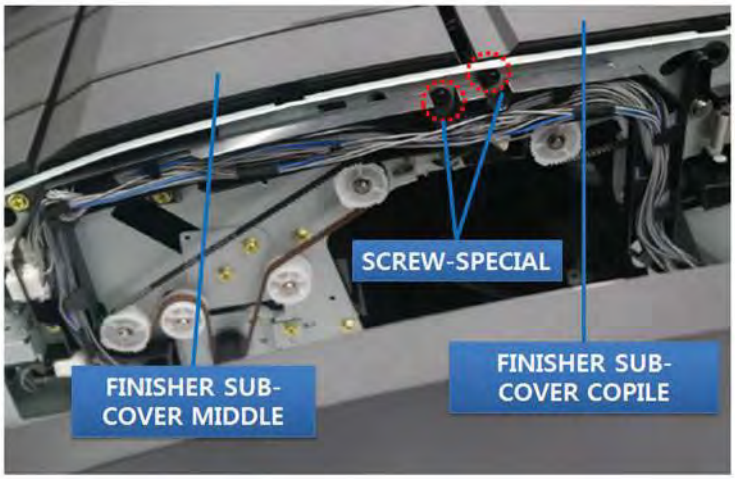
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-165 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

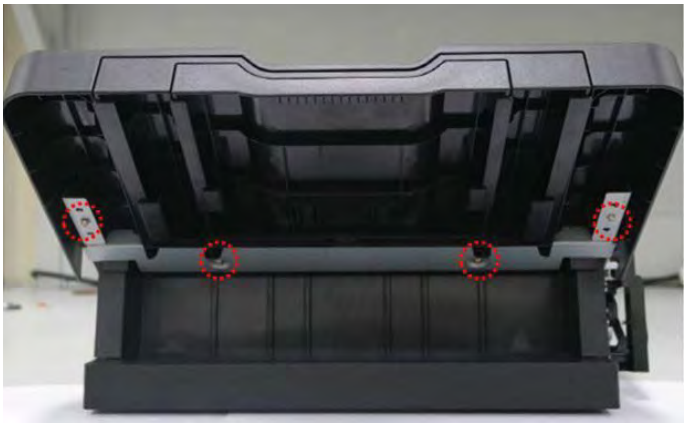
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-166 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-167 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

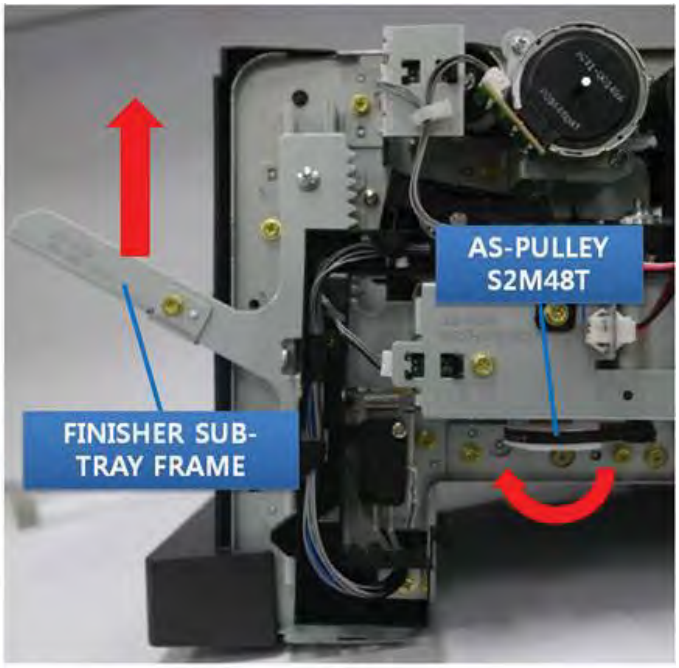


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

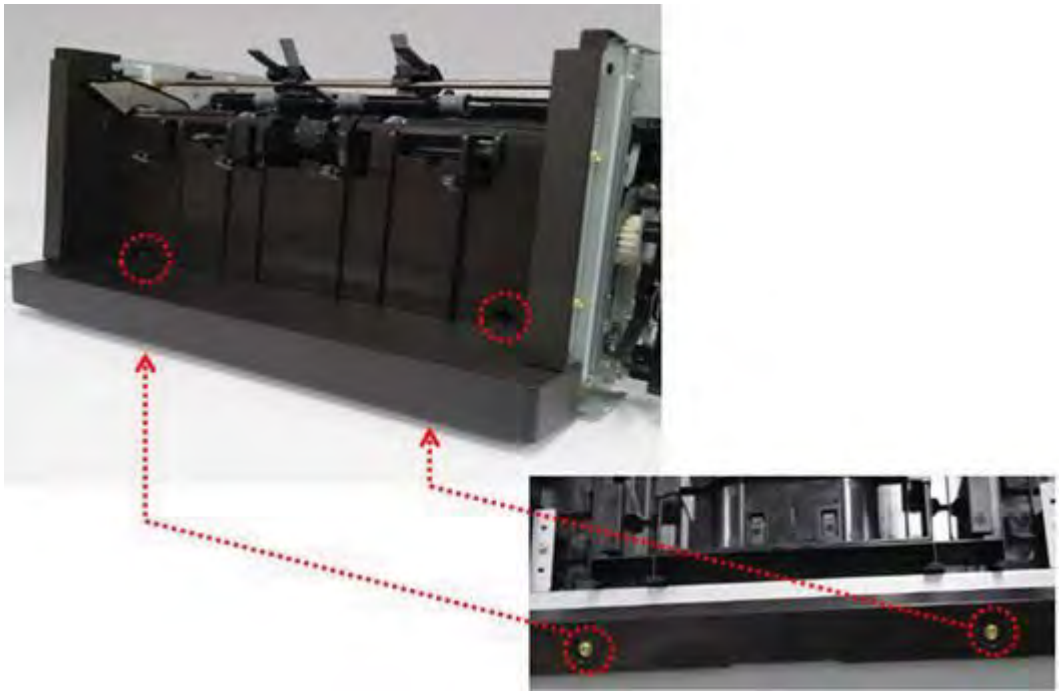
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 5-168 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



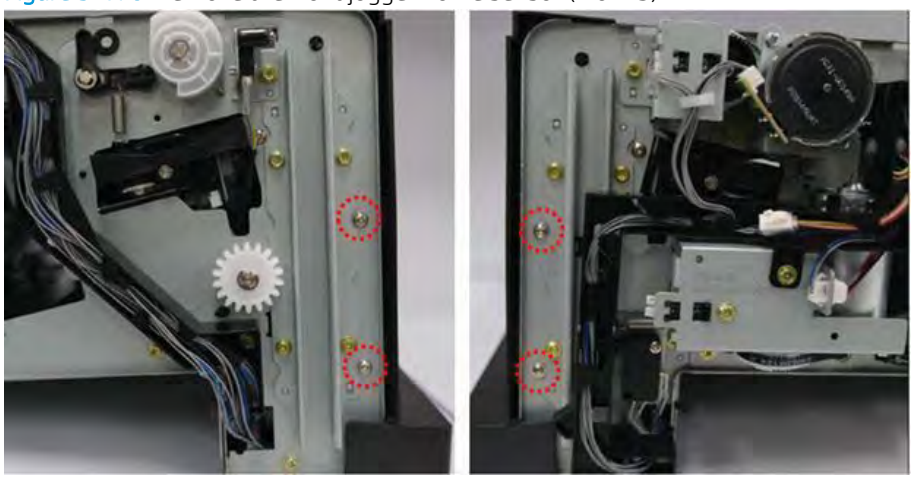
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-169 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 5-170 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Remove two screws from both sides of the finisher sub-stacker plate. Remove the bracket, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 5-171 Remove the stack beam sensor



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stack Position Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stack Position Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0603-001309

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Stack Position Sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

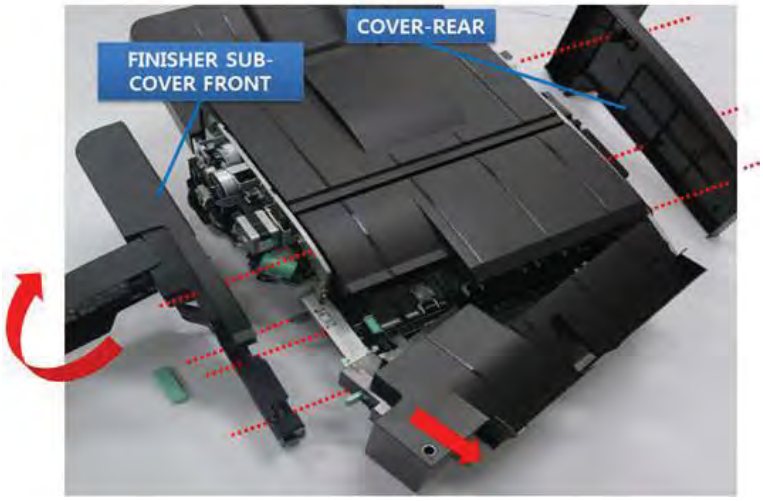
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

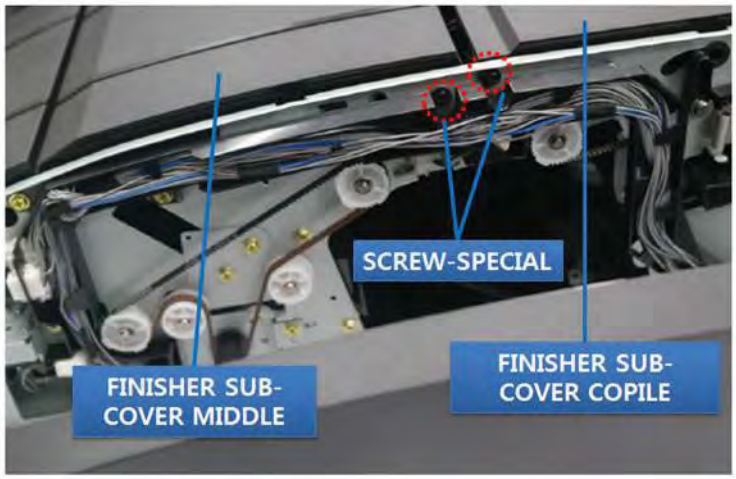
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-172 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-173 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-174 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

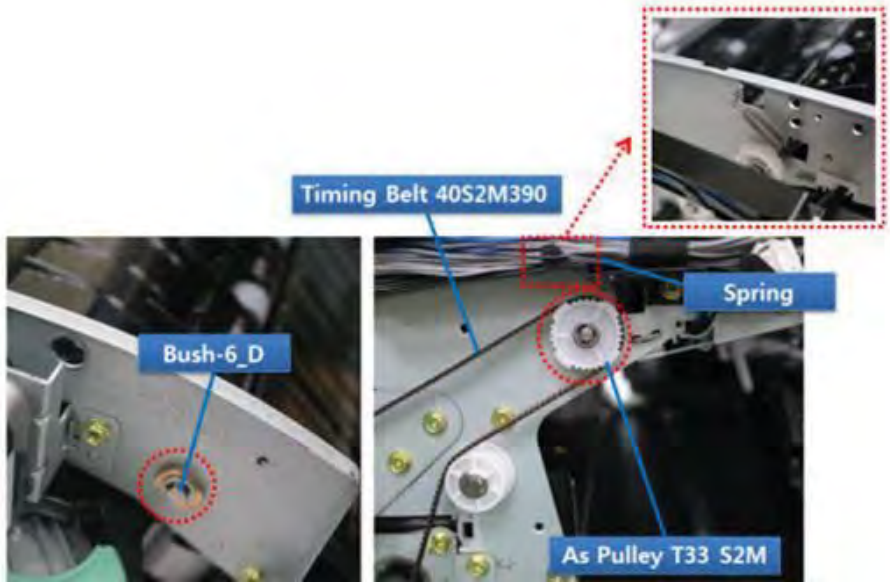
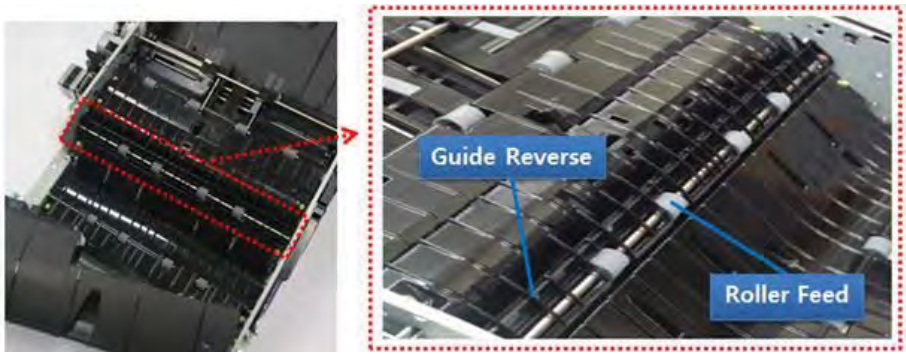


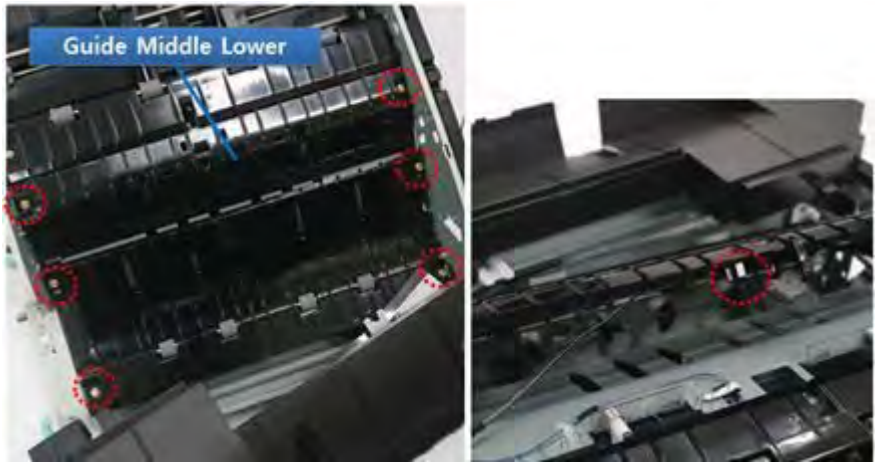
Figure 5-175 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

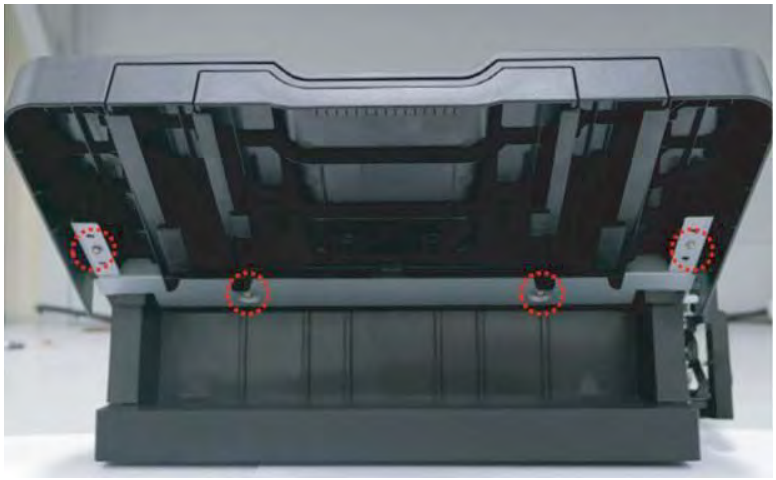
Figure 5-176 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 5-177 Remove the tray

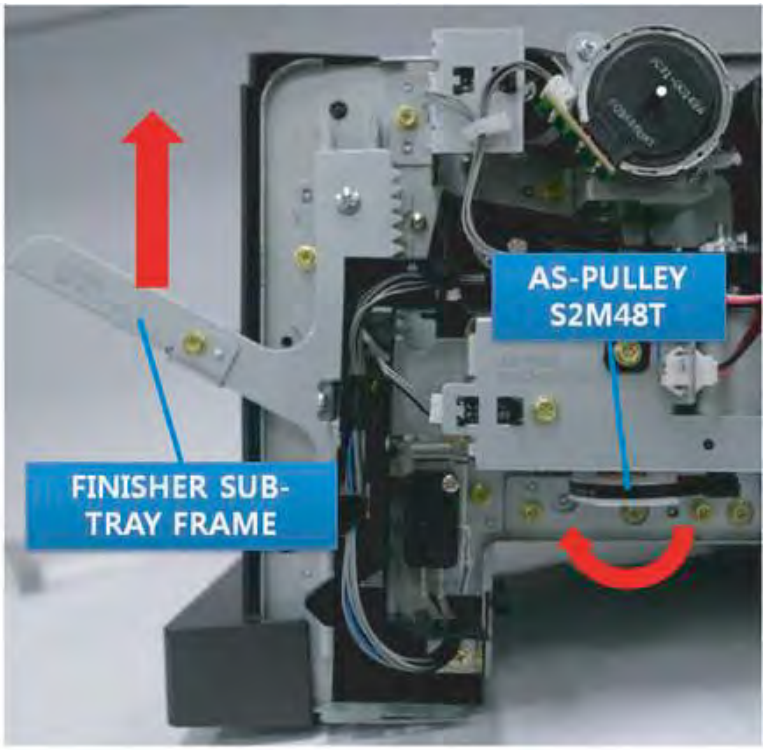


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

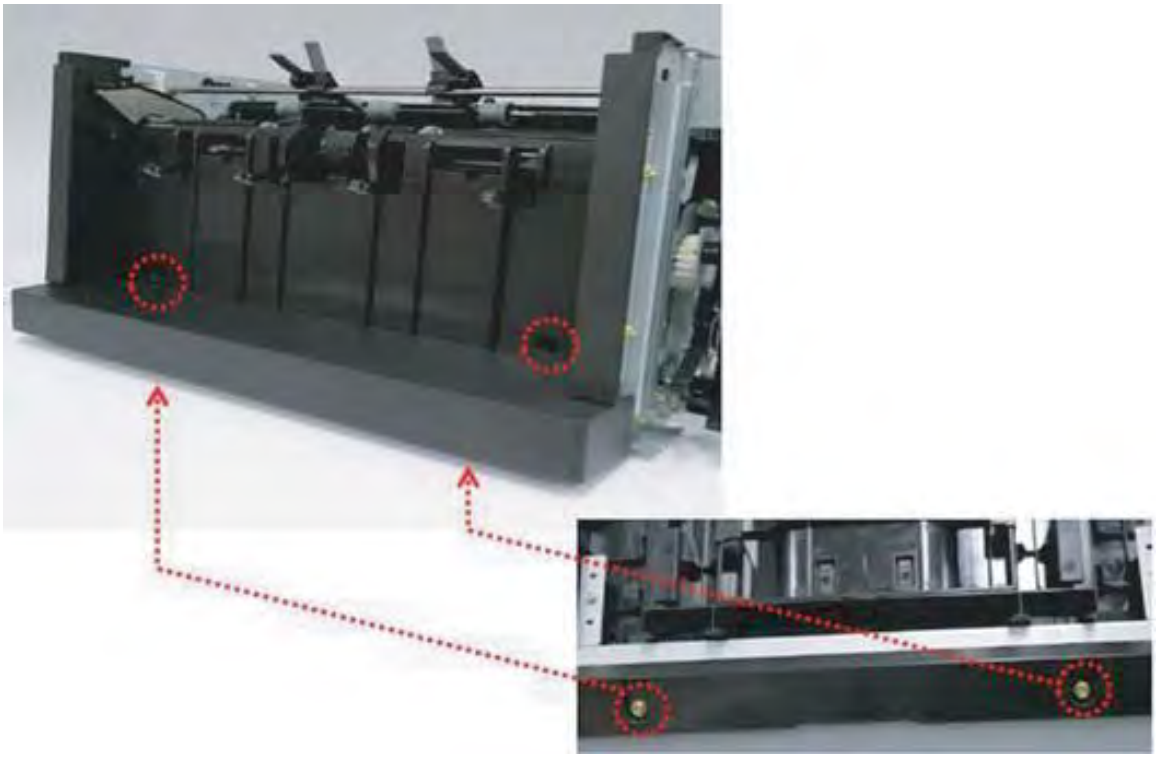
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 5-178 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

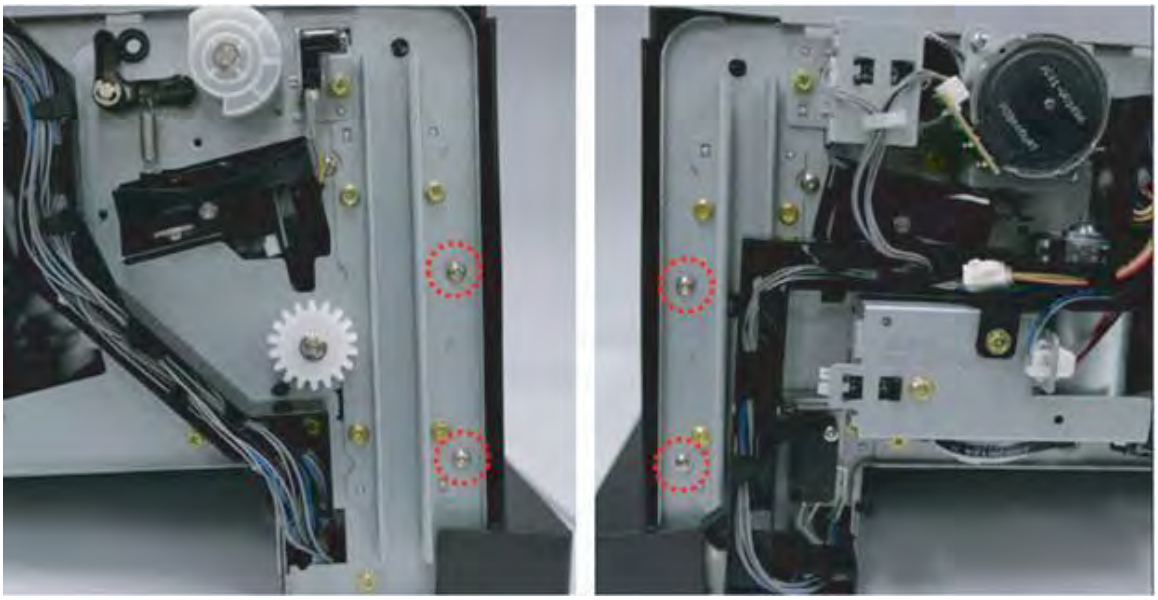
Figure 5-179 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

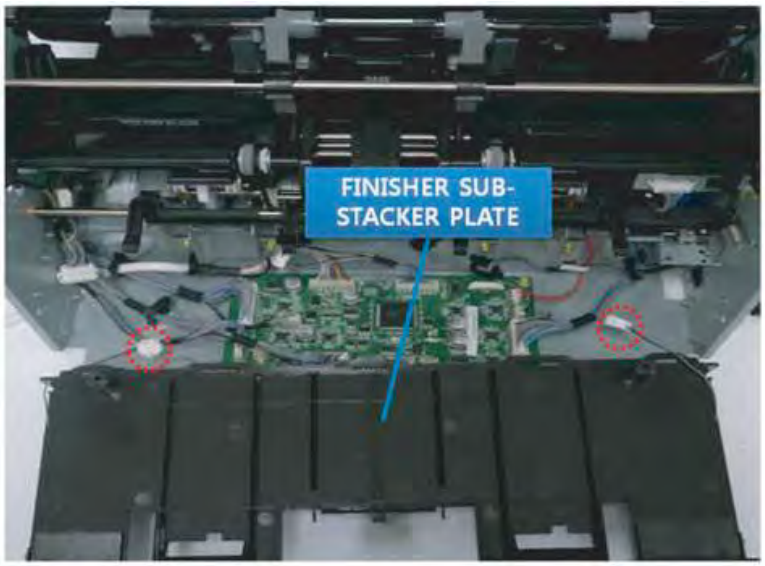
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 5-180 Remove the PBA



5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-181 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

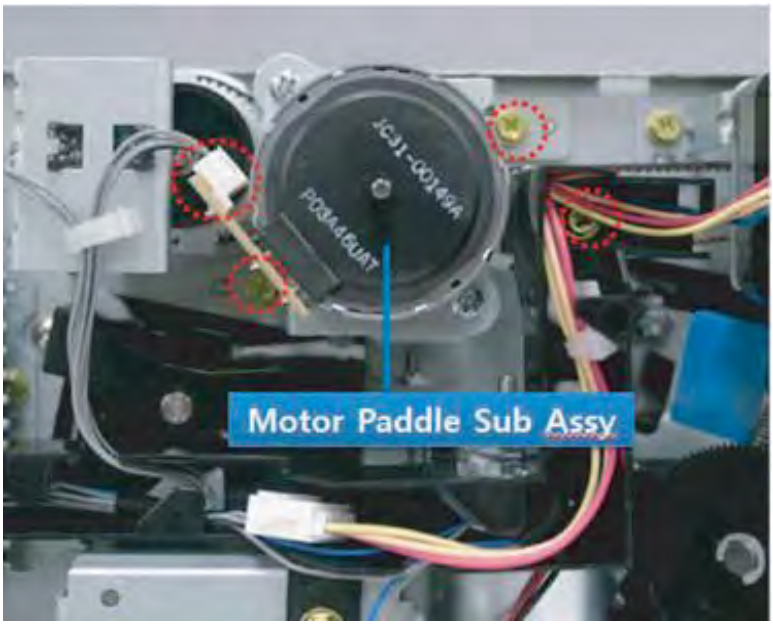
Figure 5-182 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

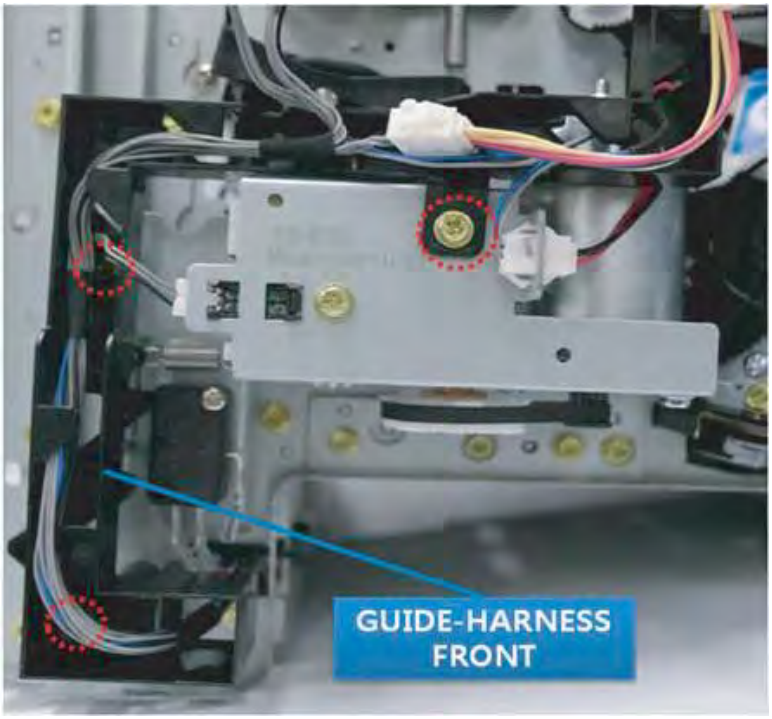
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 5-183 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



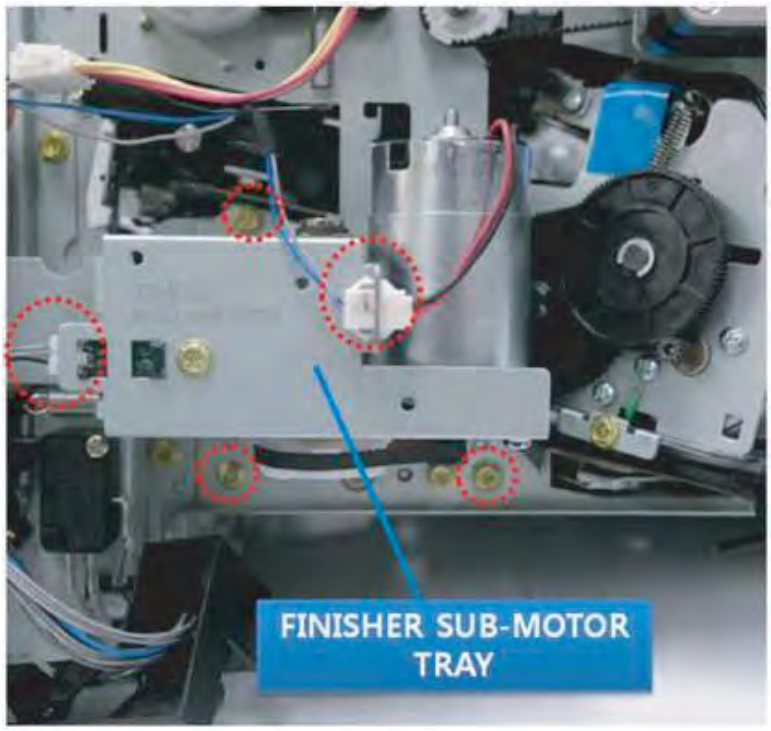
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 5-184 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-185 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



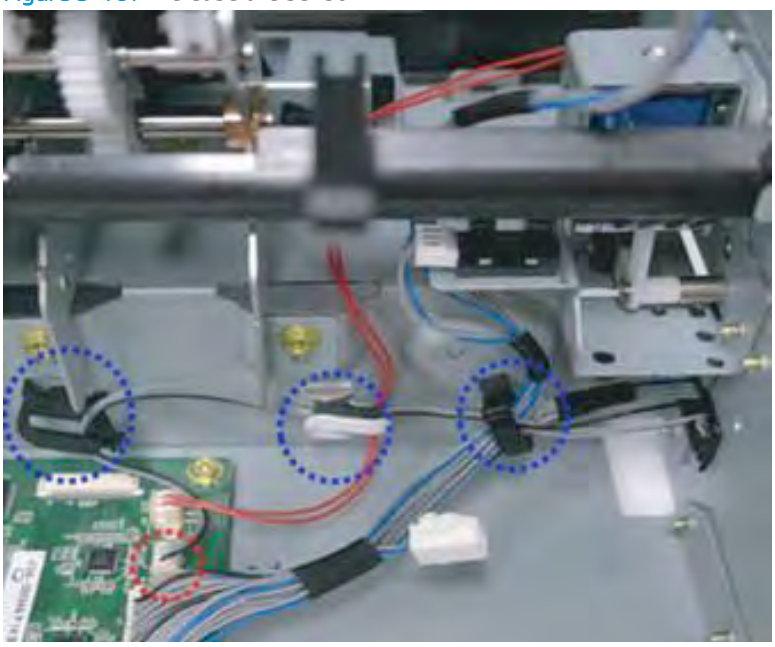
10. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-186 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 5-187 Release the sensor



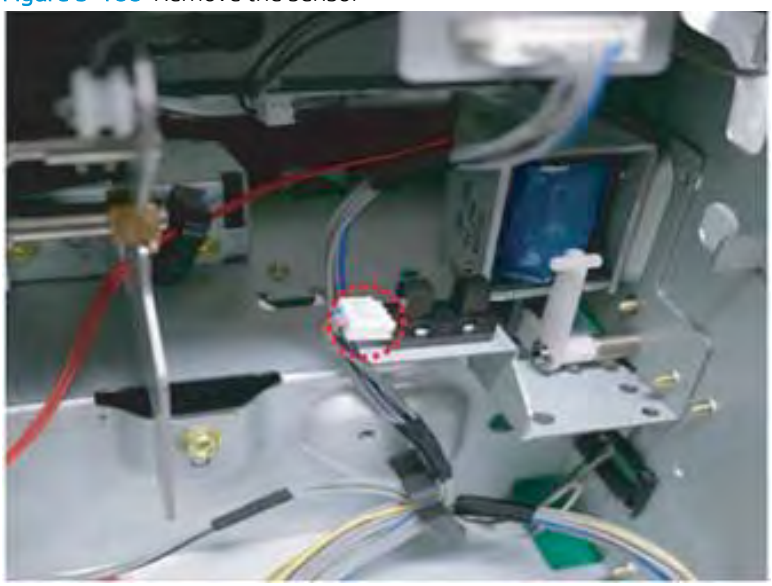
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

Figure 5-188 Remove the sensor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper Holding Lever Solenoid

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the paper holding lever solenoid
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Holding Lever Solenoid assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC33-00037A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Solenoid TDS

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the paper holding lever solenoid

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

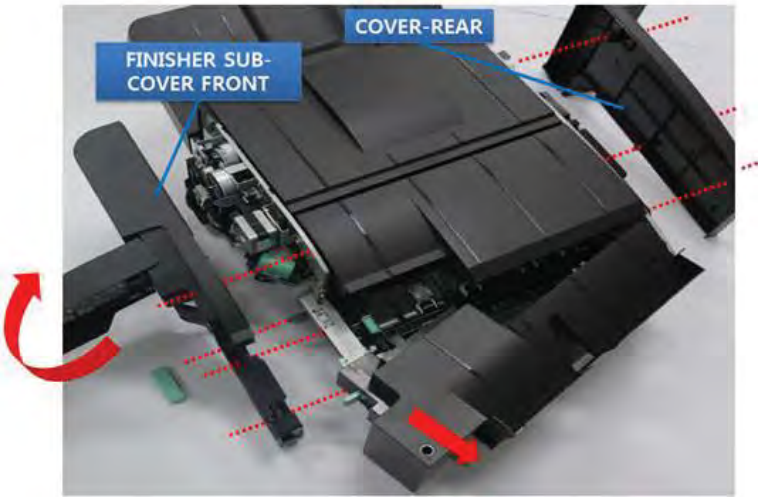
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

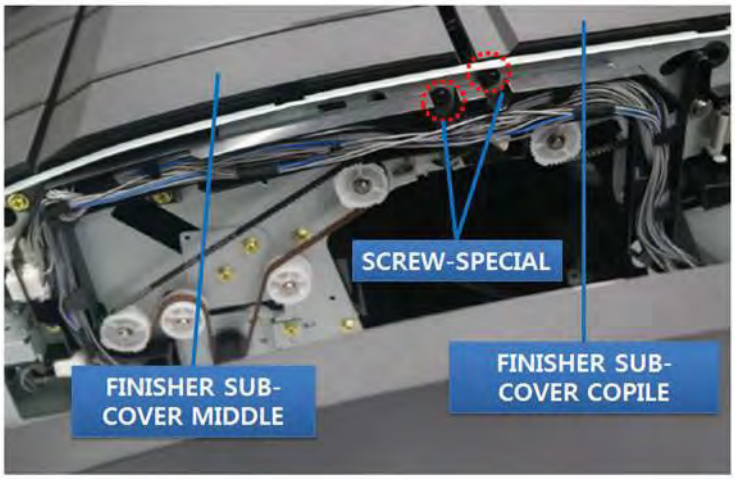
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-189 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

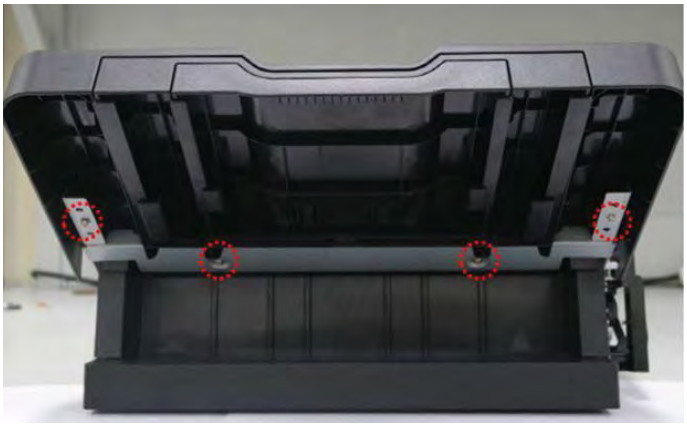
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-190 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-191 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

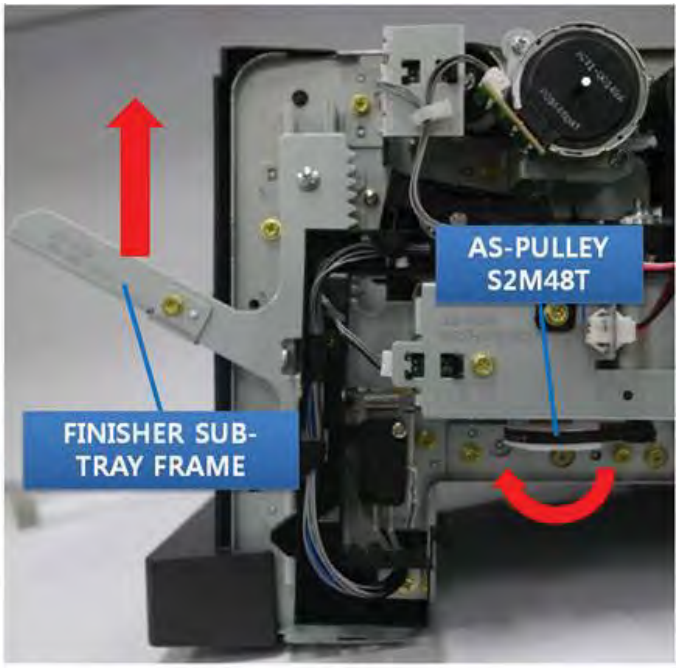


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

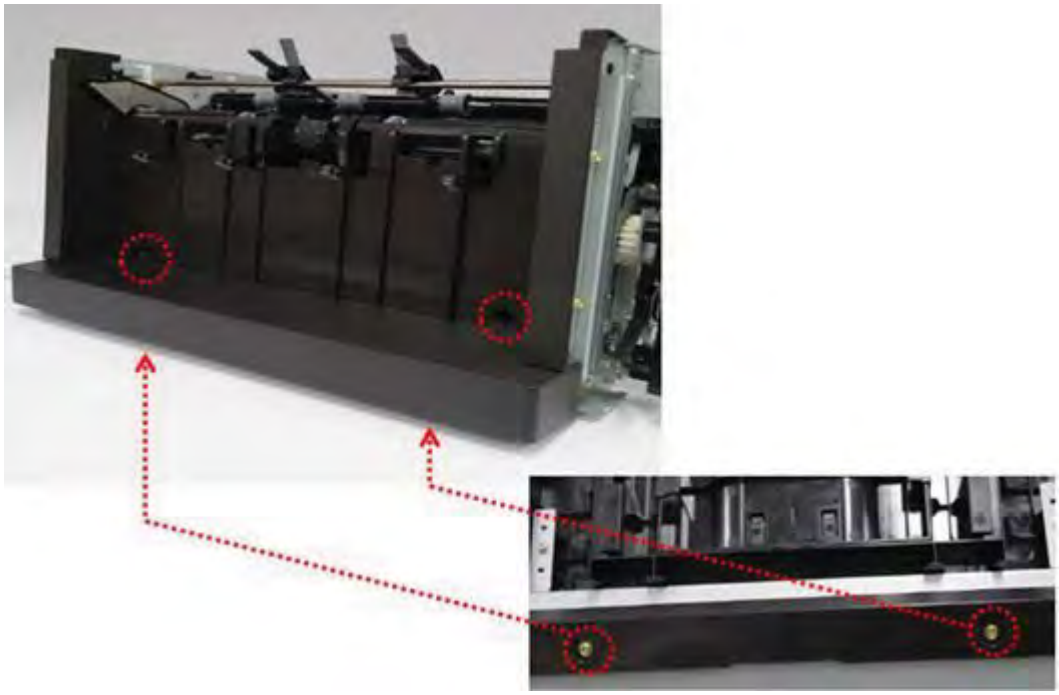
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 5-192 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



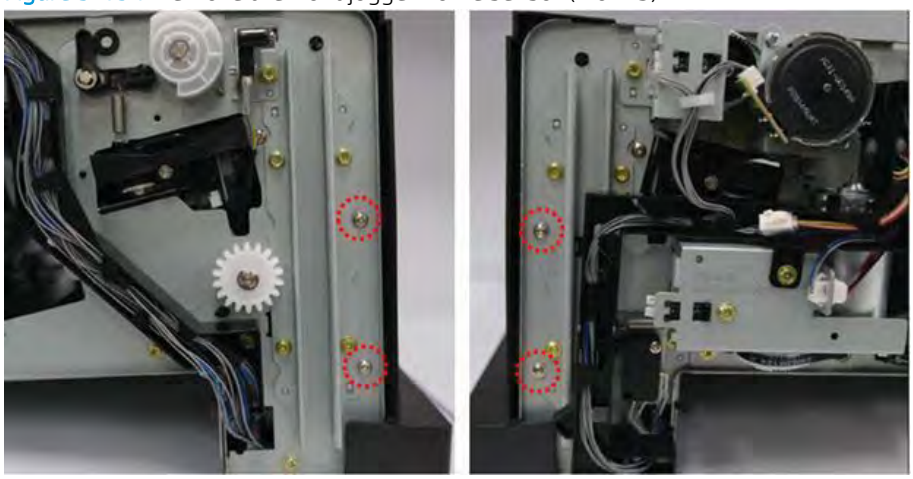
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-193 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

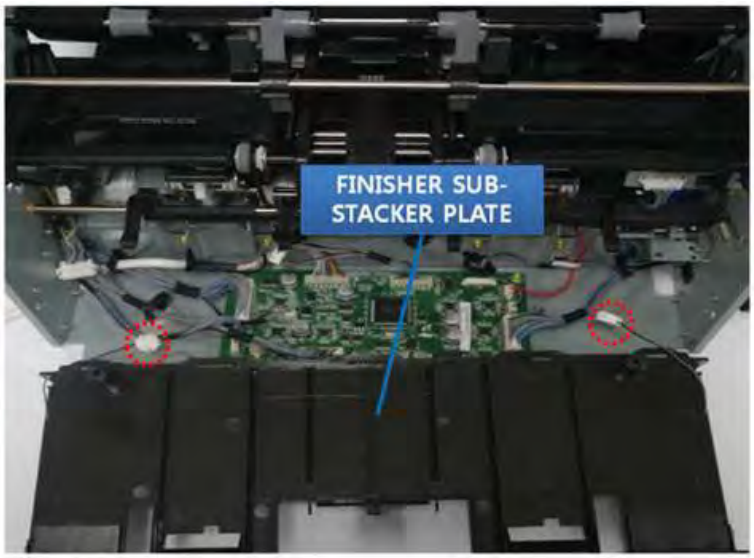
Figure 5-194 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-195 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

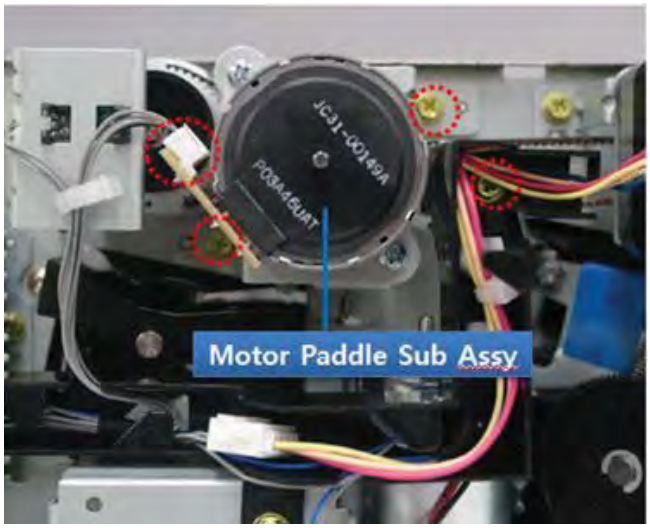
Figure 5-196 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

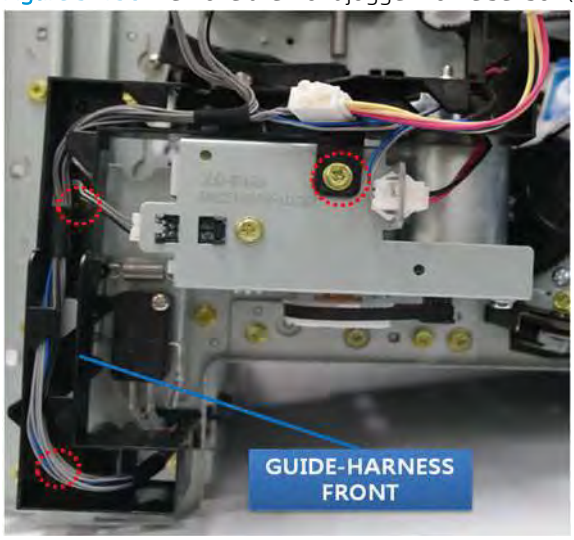
Figure 5-197 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 5-198 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



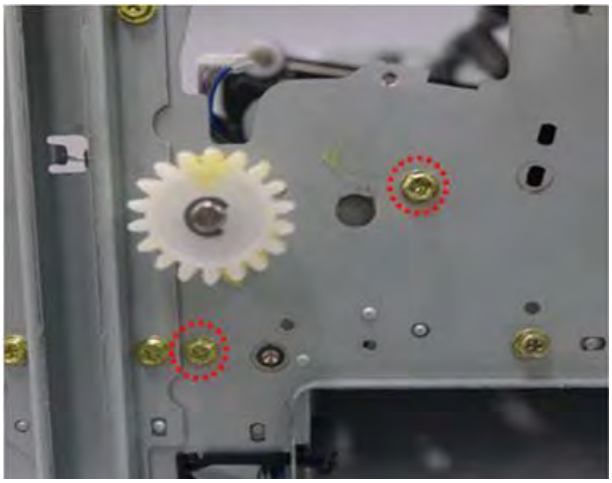
12. Remove one screw, and then remove stack lower limit switch bracket.

Figure 5-199 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



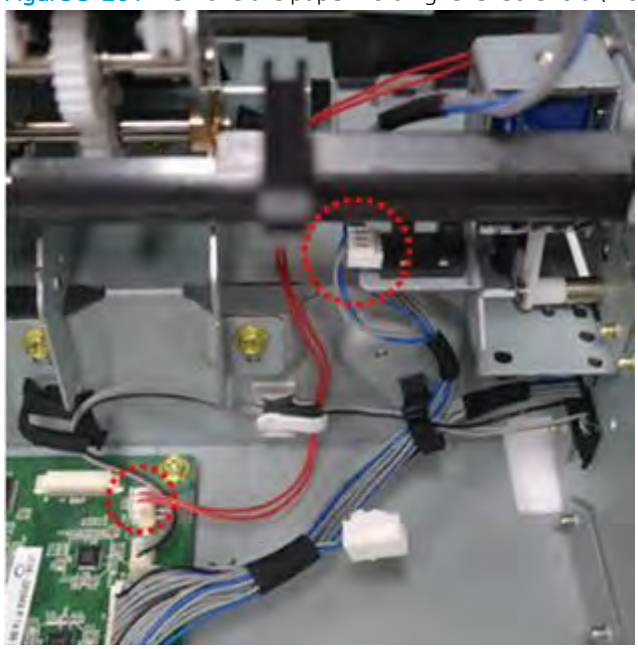
13. Remove the second screw.

Figure 5-200 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



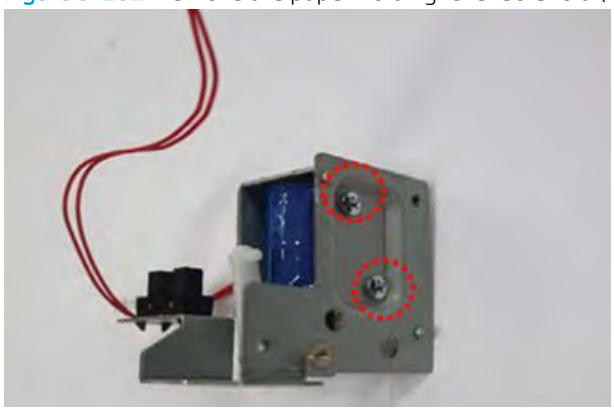
14. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 5-201 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



15. Remove two screws on the solenoid bracket.

Figure 5-202 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



16. Disconnect the connector from the main board.
17. Remove the solenoid assembly.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper Support Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 2: Remove the paper support motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Support Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC93-01001A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Paper Support Motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

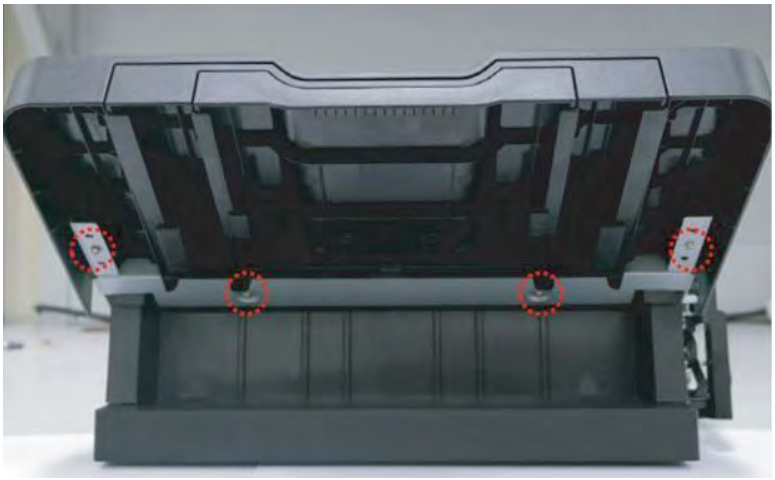
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 5-203 Remove the tray

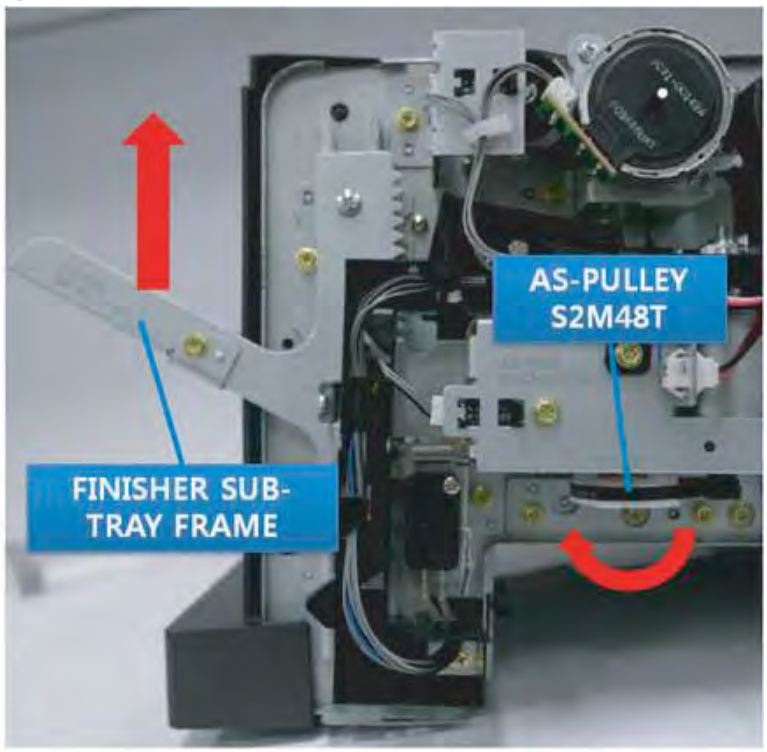


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

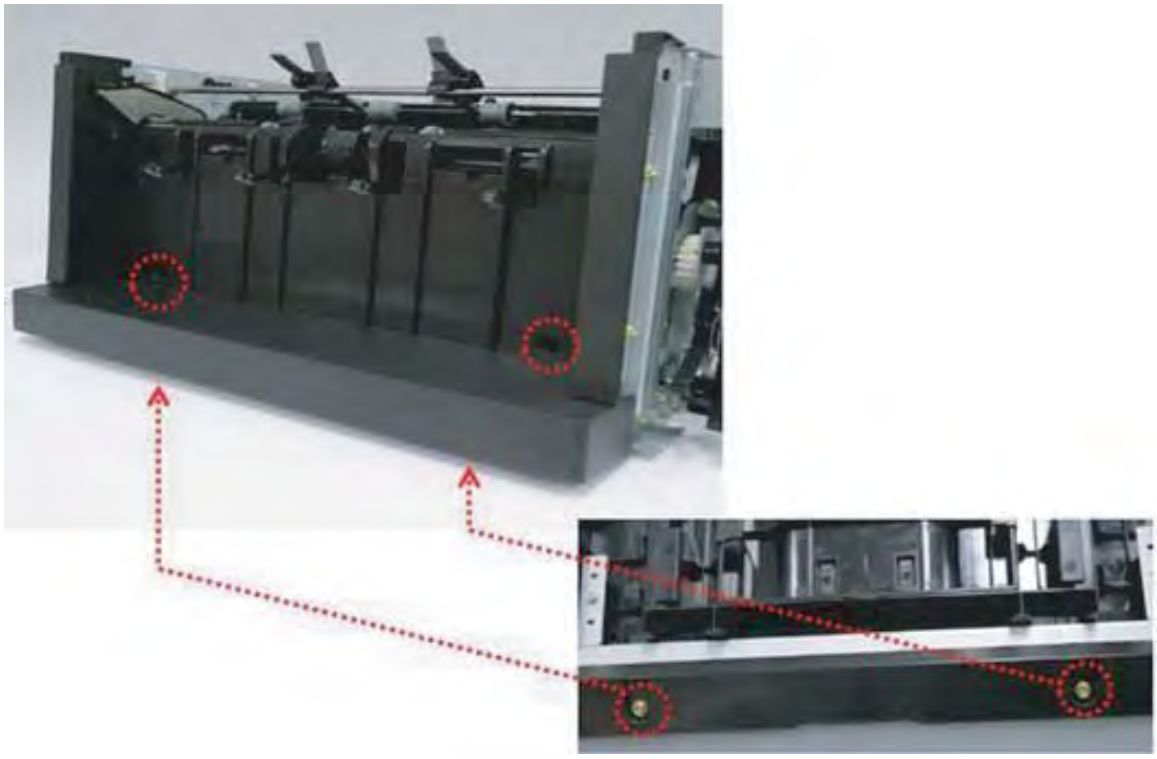
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 5-204 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

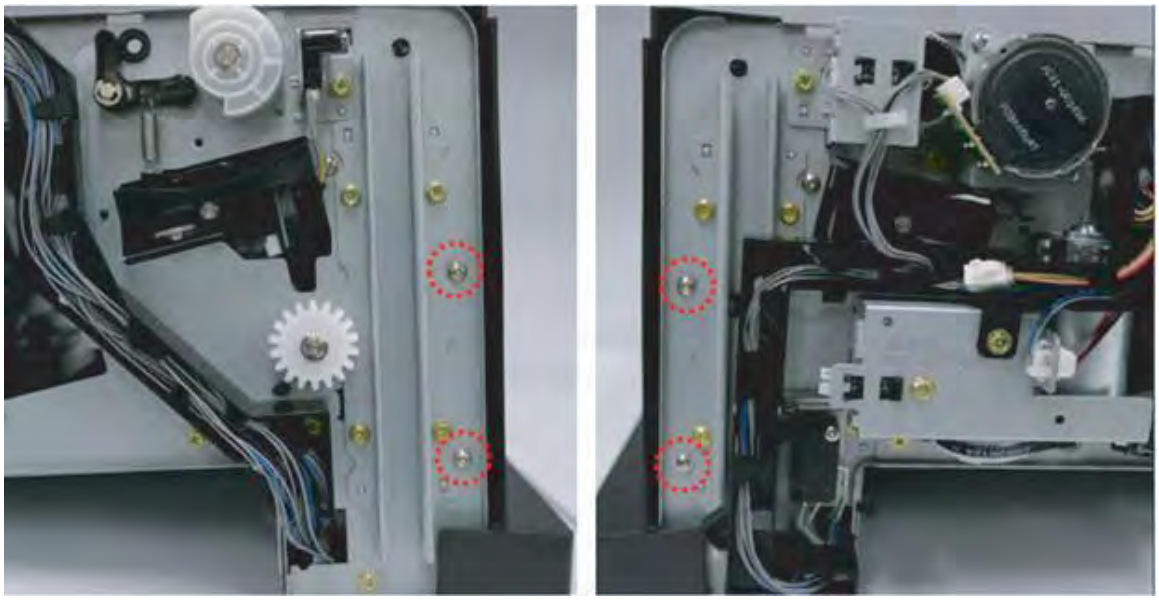
Figure 5-205 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

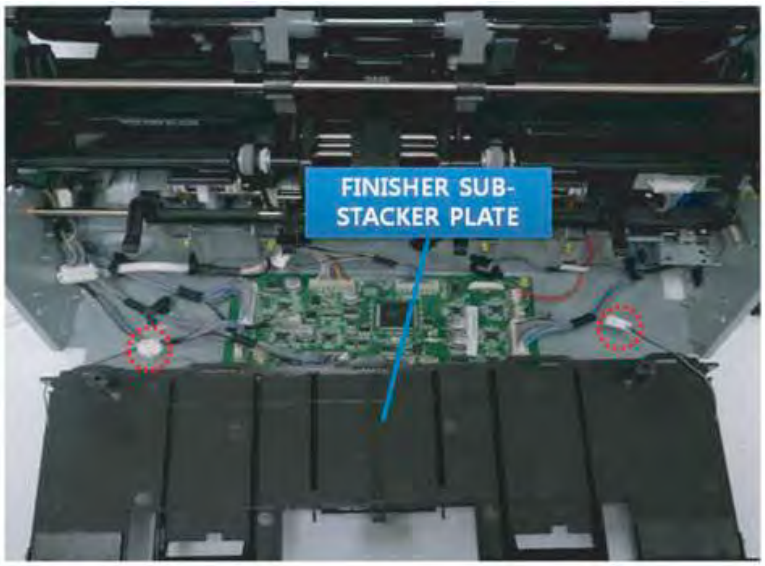
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 5-206 Remove the PBA



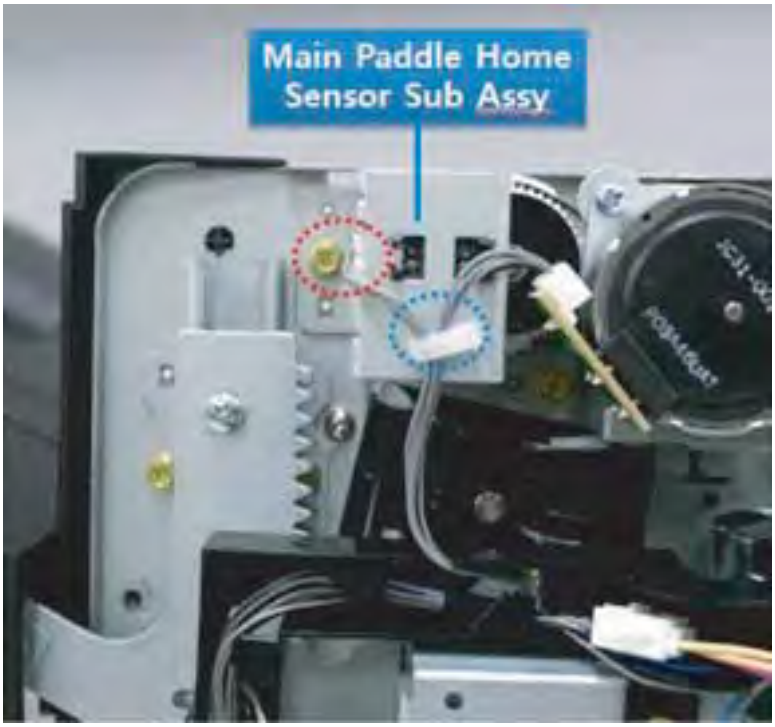
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-207 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

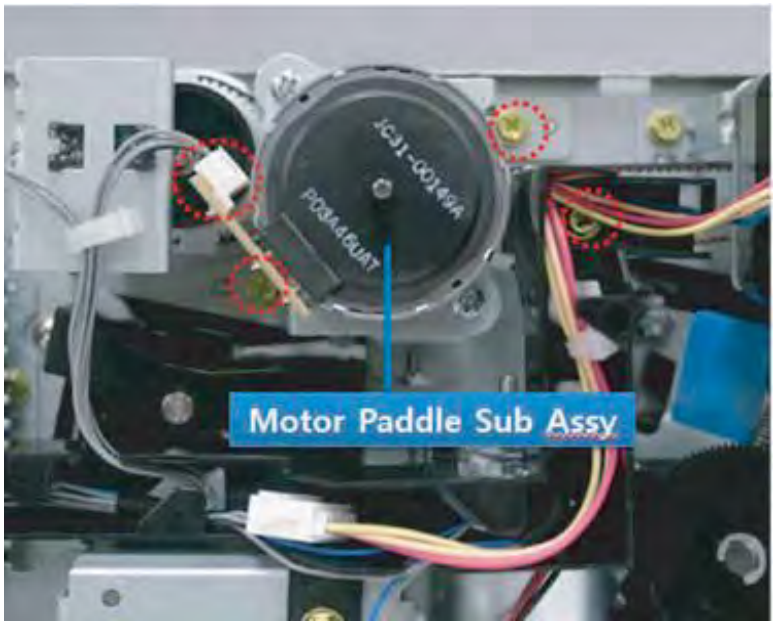
Figure 5-208 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

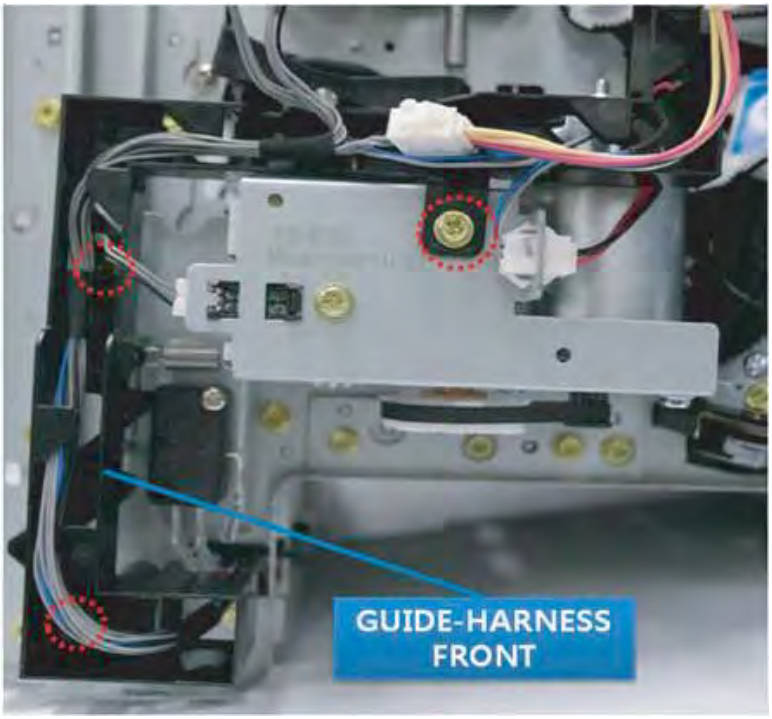
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 5-209 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



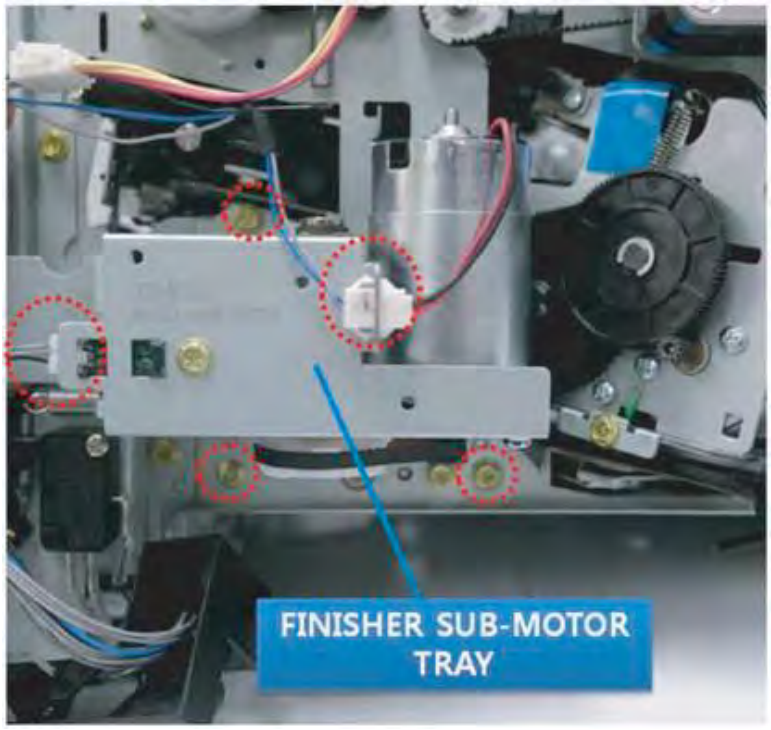
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 5-210 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-211 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



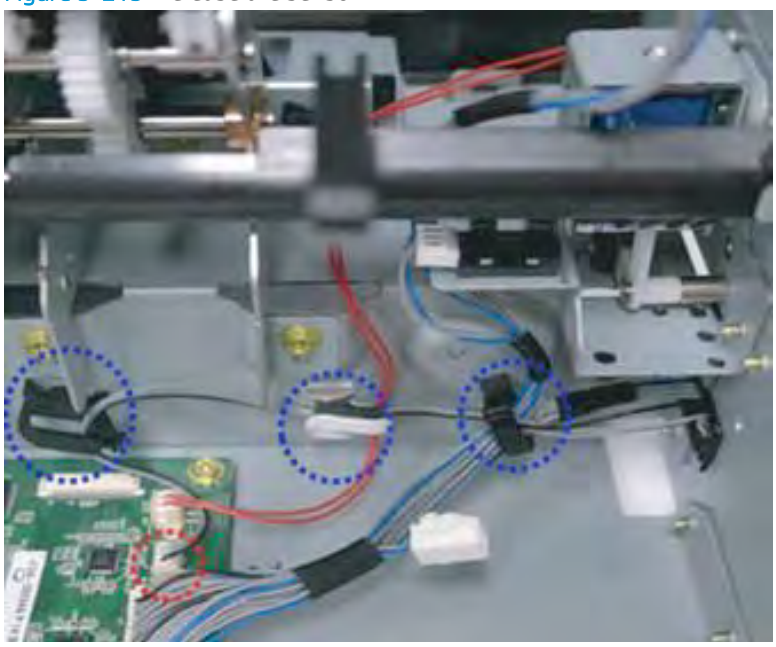
10. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-212 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 5-213 Release the sensor



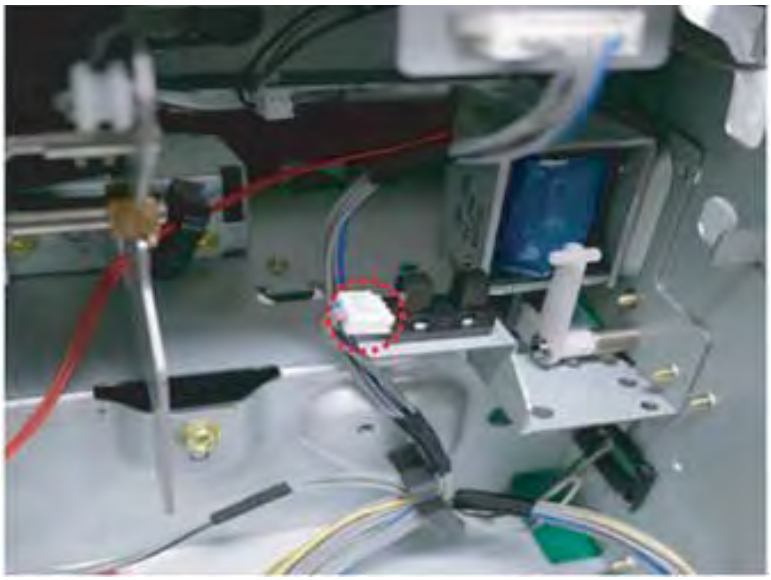
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

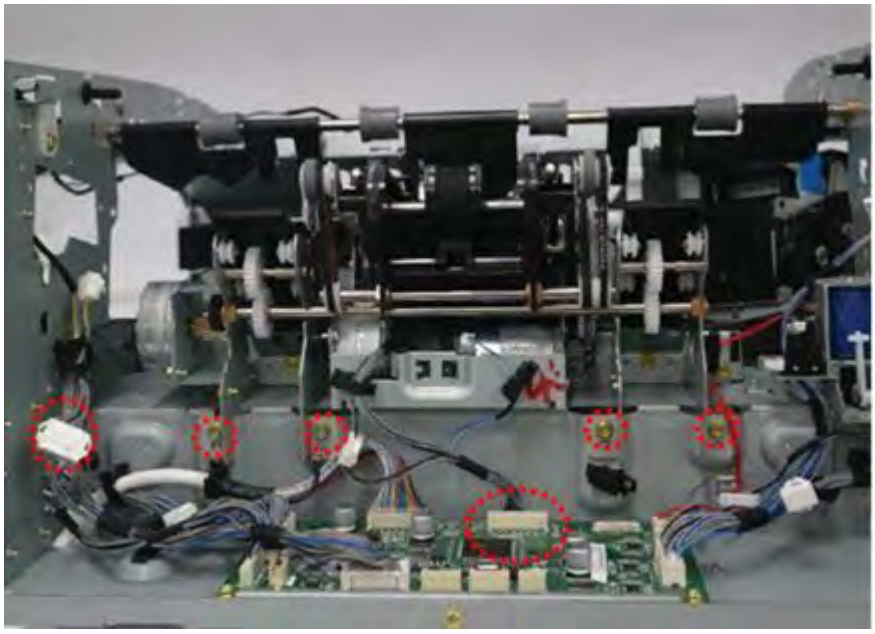
    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

Figure 5-214 Remove the sensor



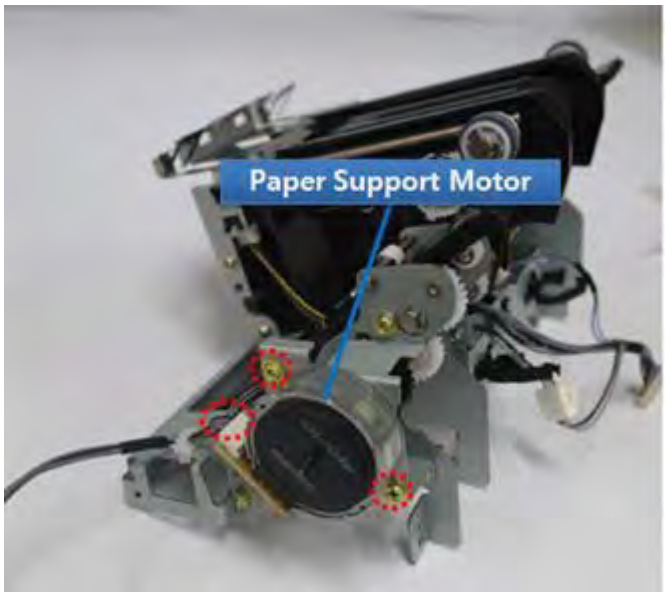
Step 2: Remove the paper support motor



1. Disconnect one connector.
2. Remove four screws.
3. Remove the cables from their restraints at the front of the ejector.
4. Disconnect the motor and the sensor cable at the rear

5. Remove the cables from the cable restraints at the rear.

NOTE: The black paddle is inside the chrome bracket at rear of ejector



6. Remove the ejector.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper Support Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 3: Remove the paper support home sensor
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Support Home Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0604-001415

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Paper support home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

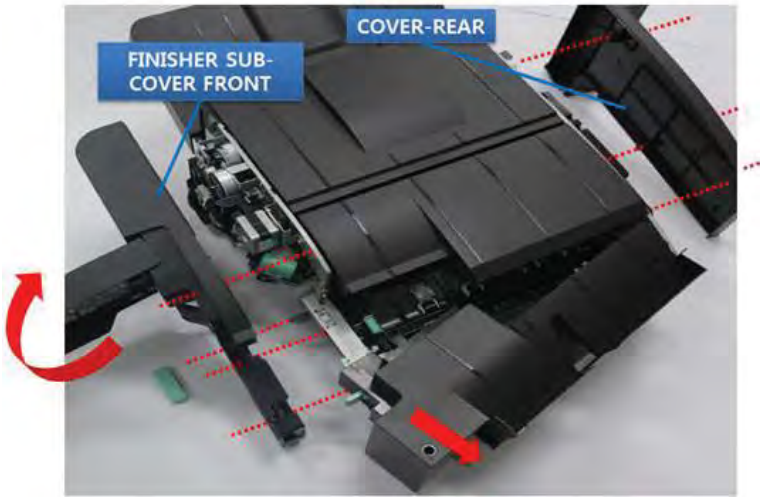
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

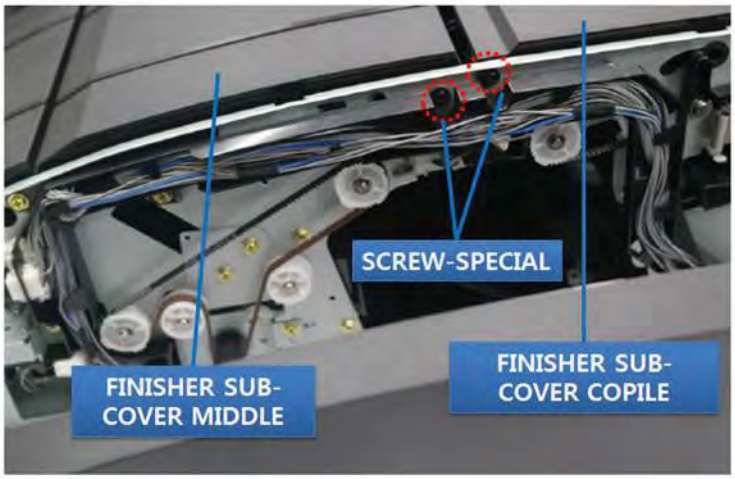
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-215 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-216 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-217 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

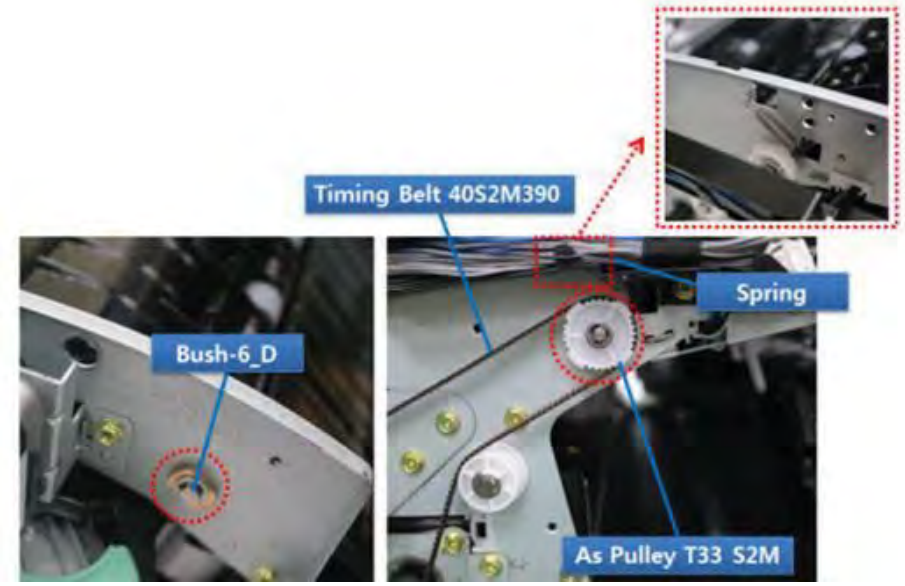
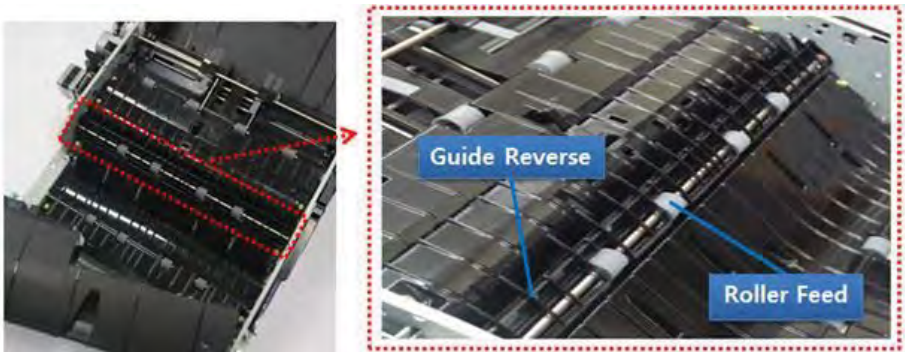


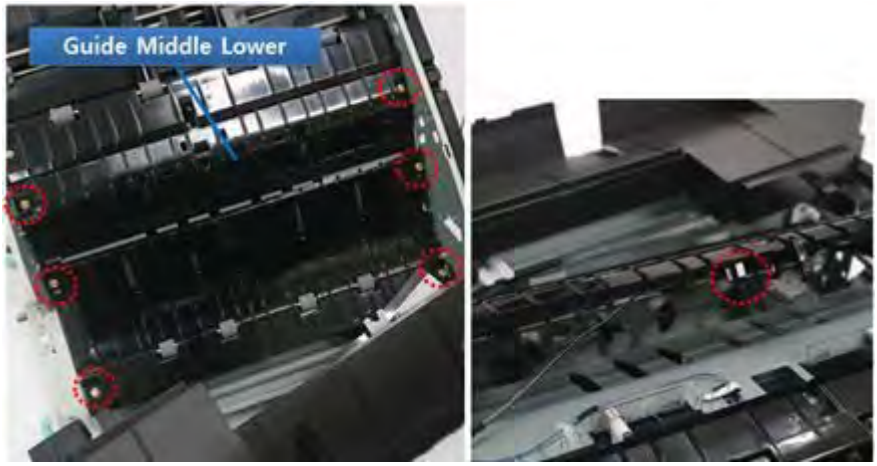
Figure 5-218 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

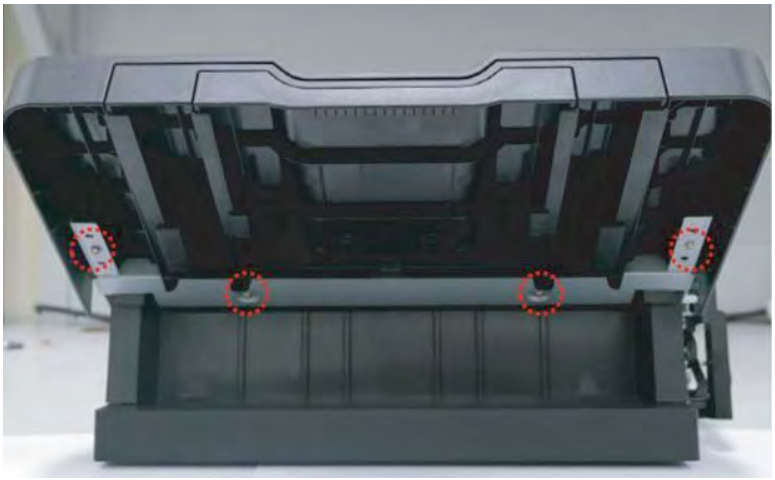
Figure 5-219 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 5-220 Remove the tray

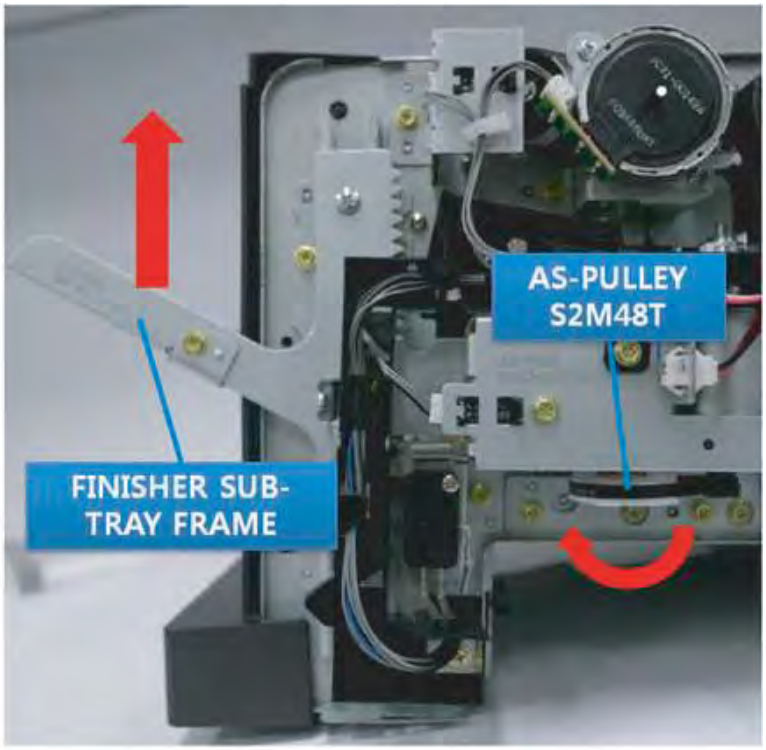


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

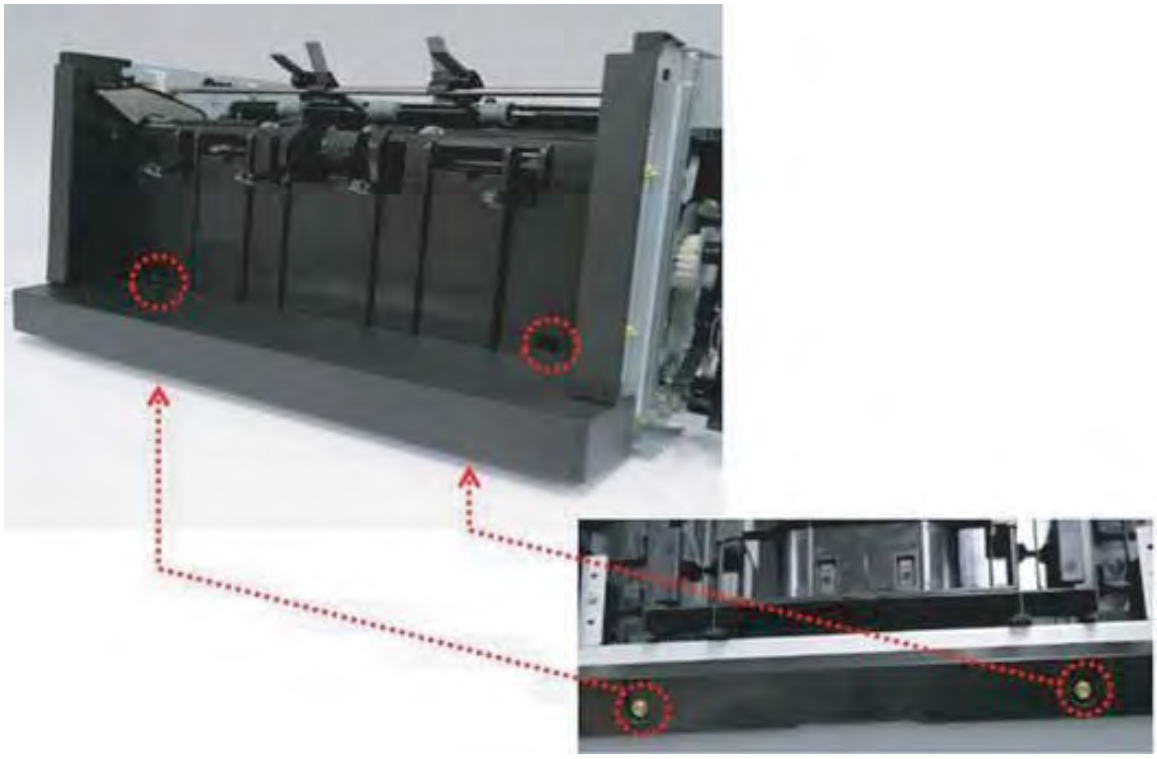
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 5-221 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

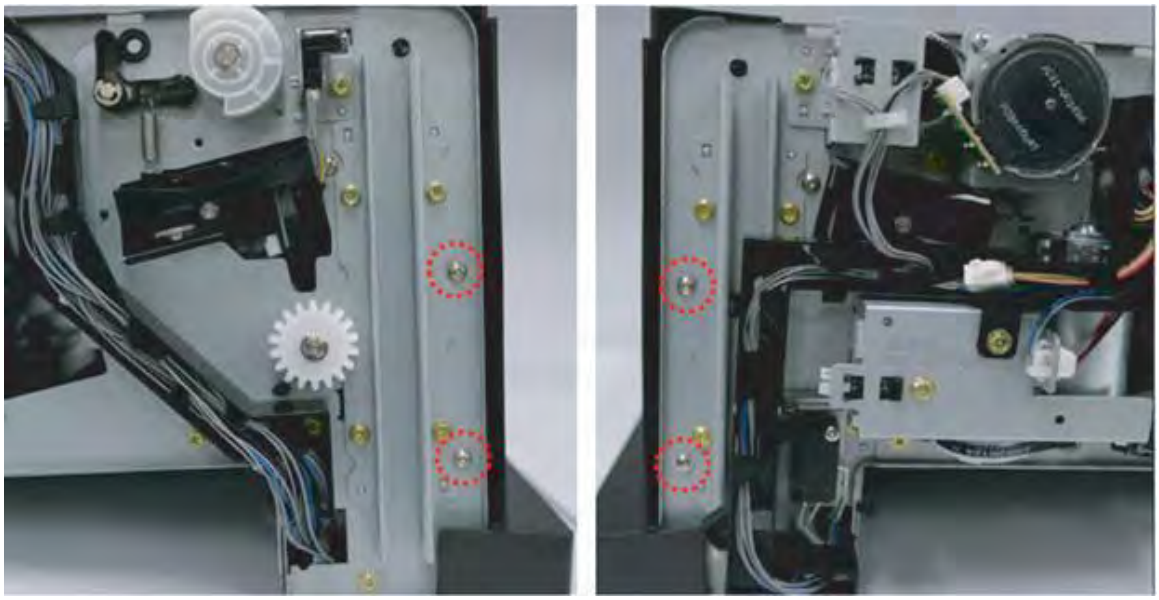
Figure 5-222 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

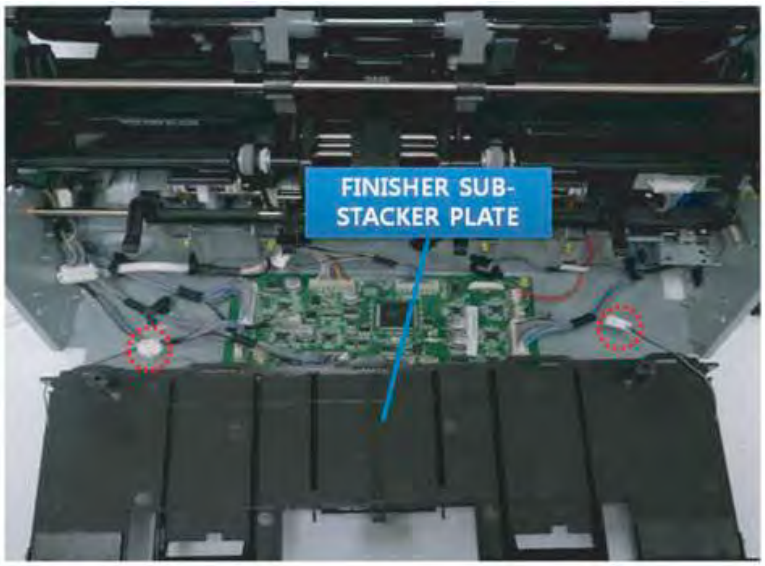
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 5-223 Remove the PBA



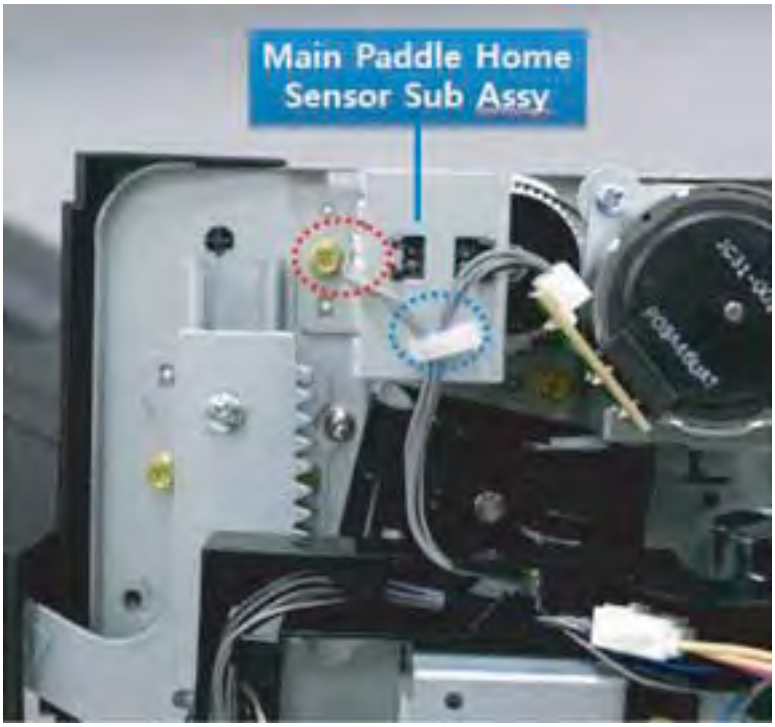
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-224 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

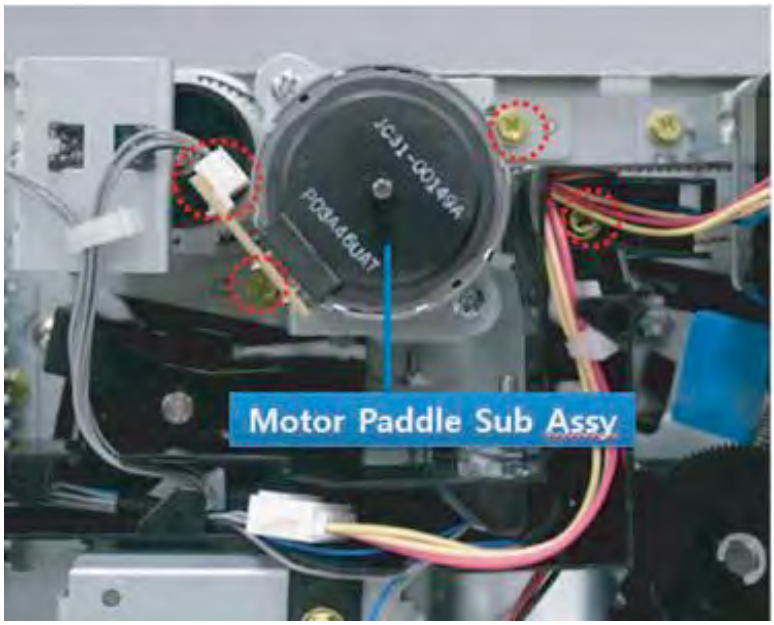
Figure 5-225 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

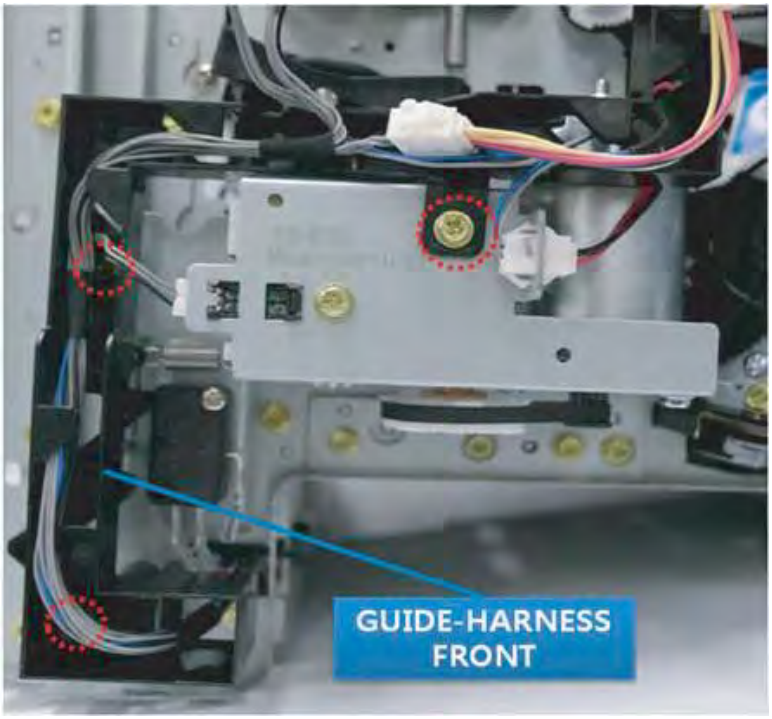
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 5-226 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



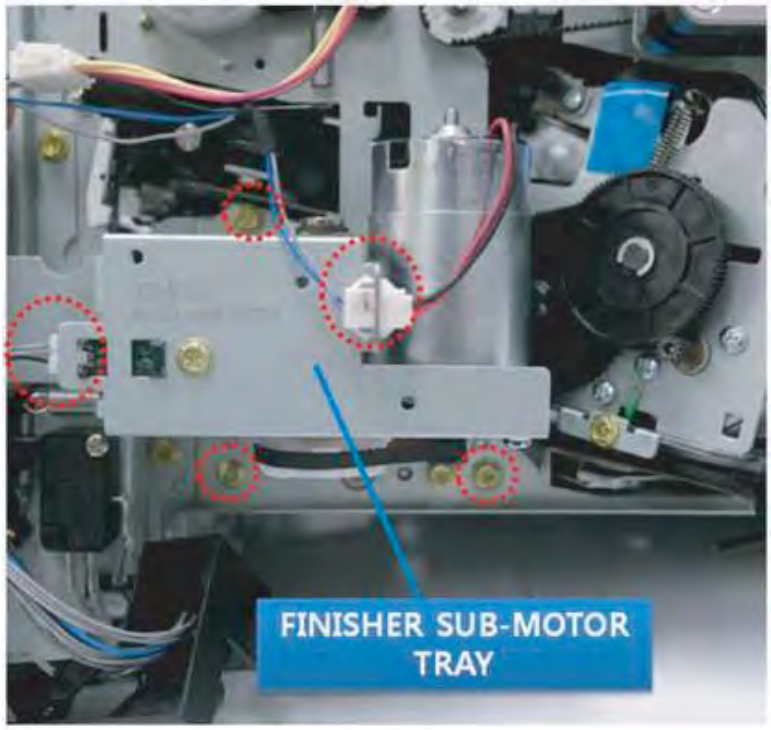
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 5-227 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-228 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



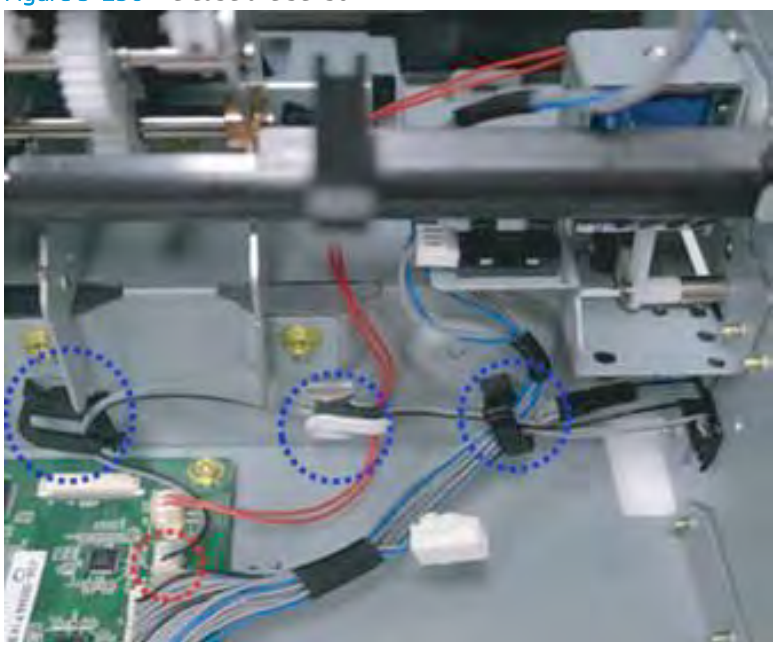
10. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-229 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 5-230 Release the sensor



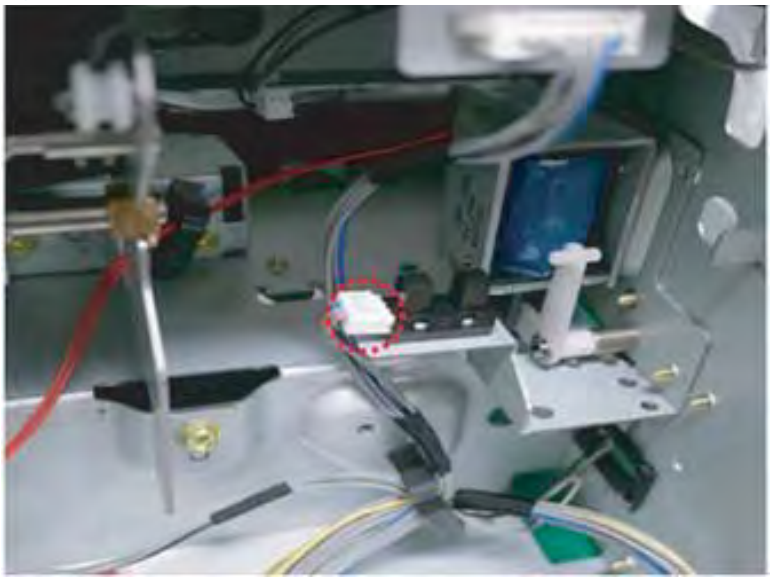
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

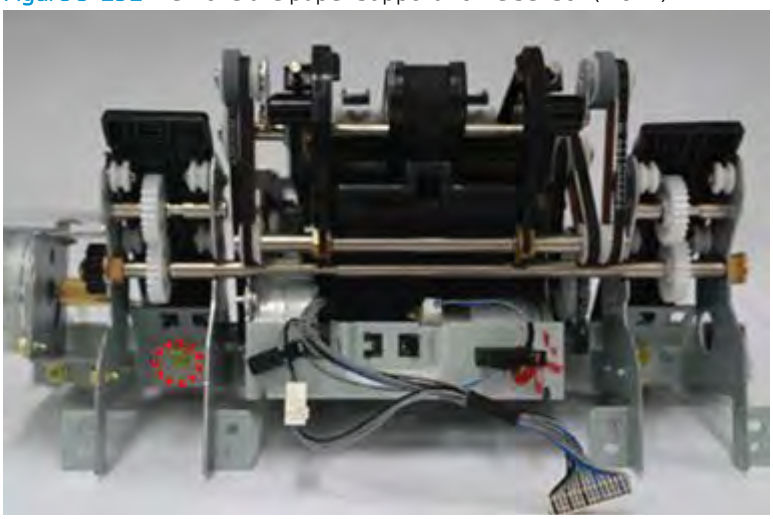
Figure 5-231 Remove the sensor



Step 3: Remove the paper support home sensor

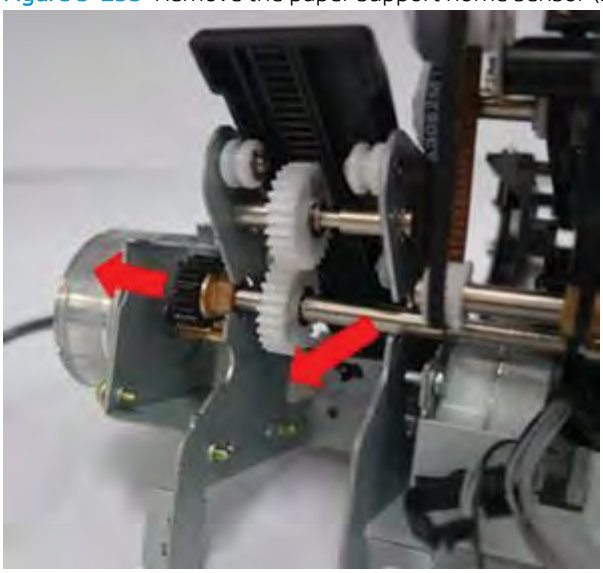
1. Disconnect one connector.
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-232 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



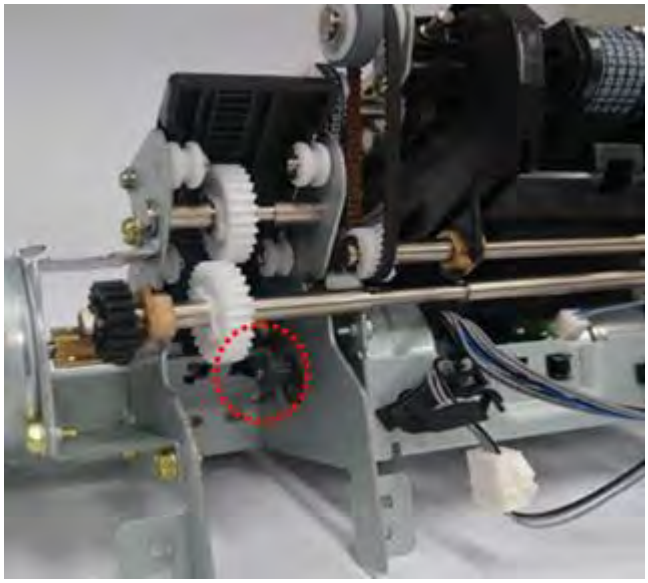
3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

Figure 5-233 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)



4. Remove the paper support with attention for pinion.

Figure 5-234 Remove the paper support home sensor (3 of 4)



5. Remove the sensor from the paper support.

Figure 5-235 Remove the paper support home sensor (4 of 4)



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector Motor assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 3: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Ejector Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC90-01332A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Ejector Motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

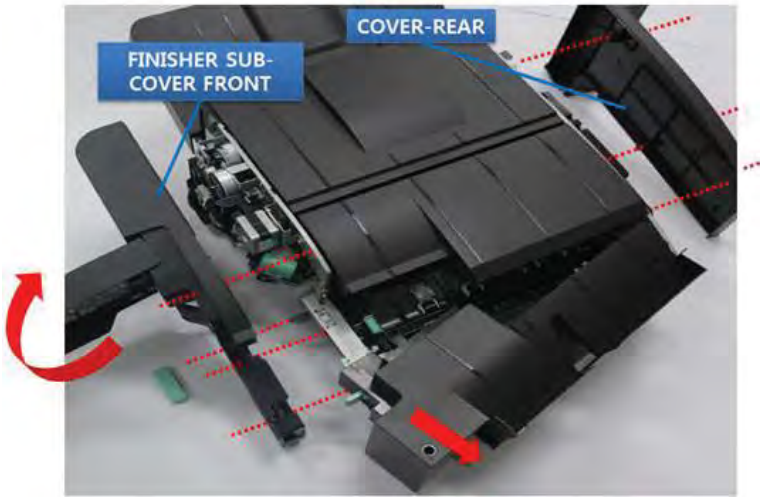
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

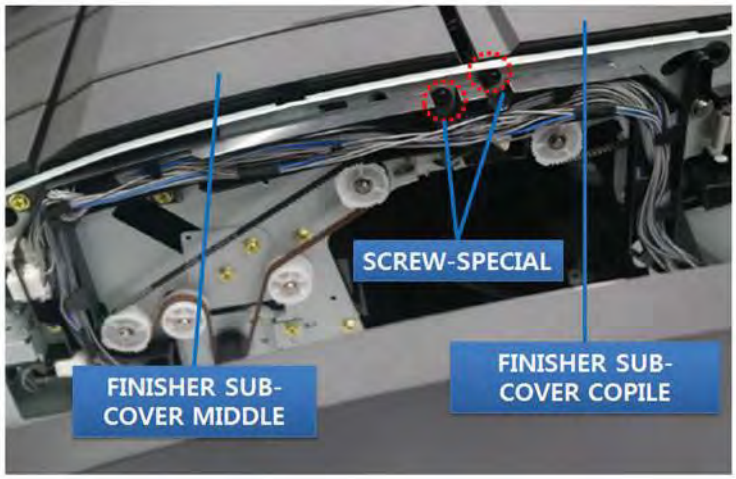
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-236 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-237 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-238 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

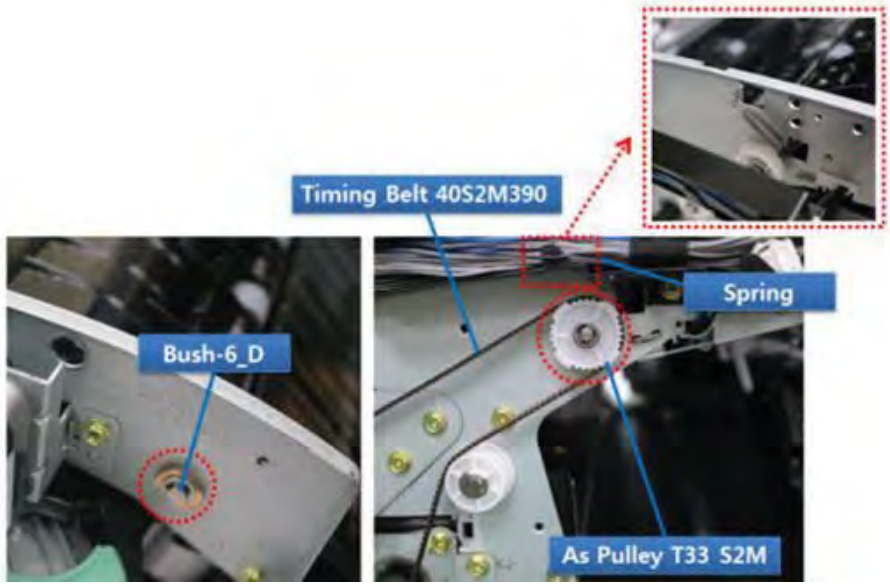
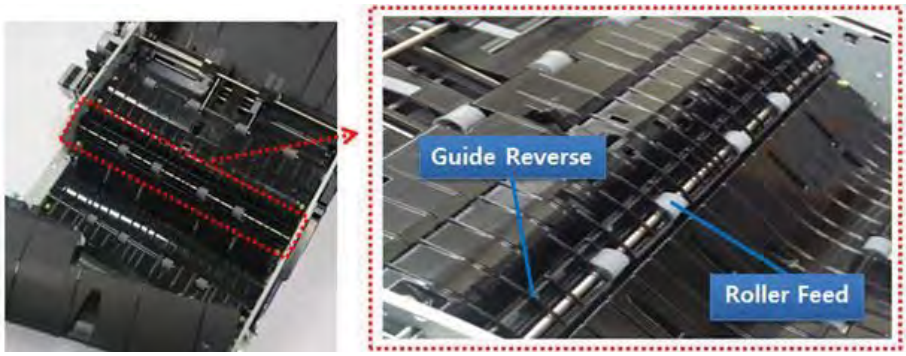


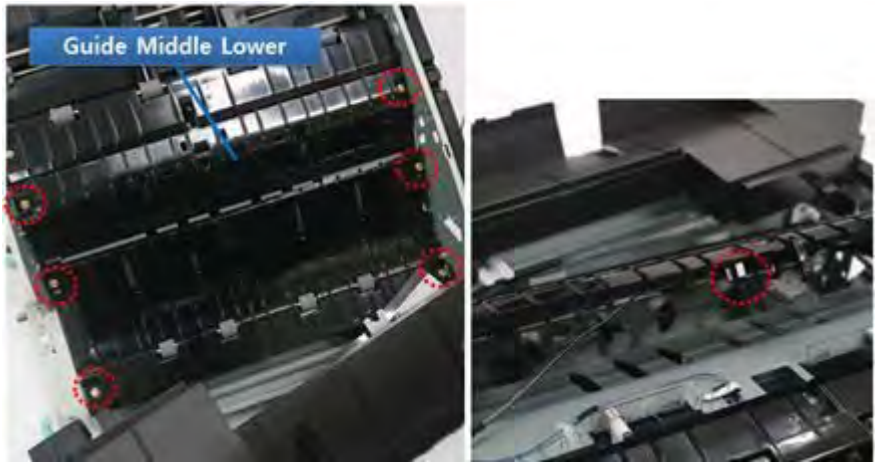
Figure 5-239 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

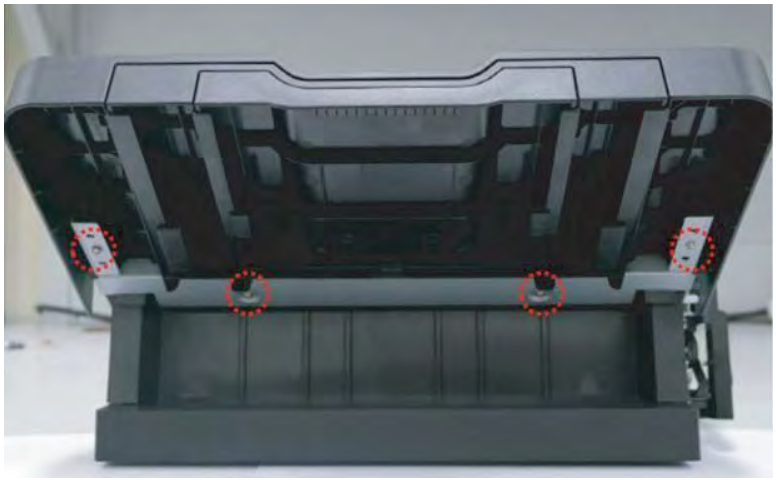
Figure 5-240 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 5-241 Remove the tray

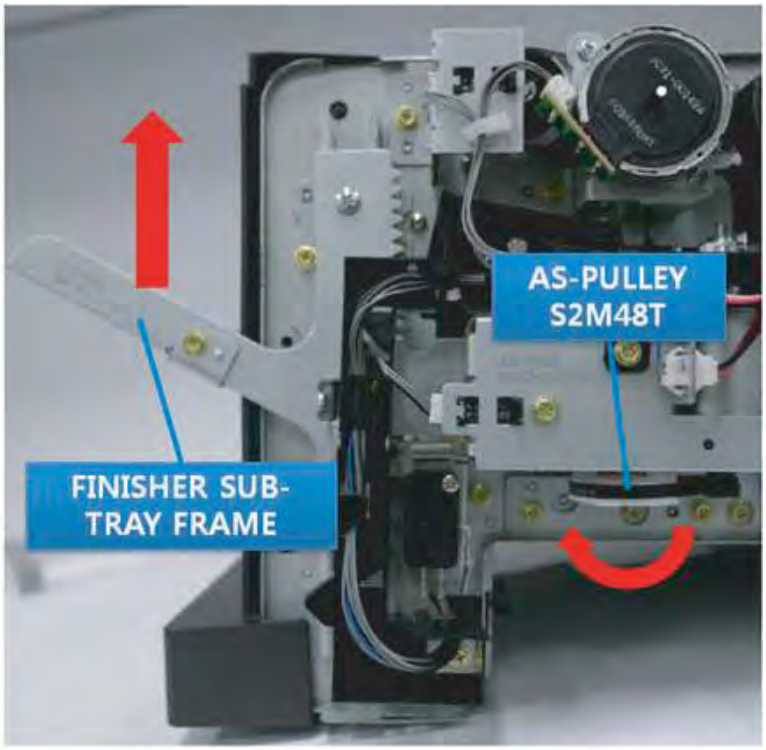


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

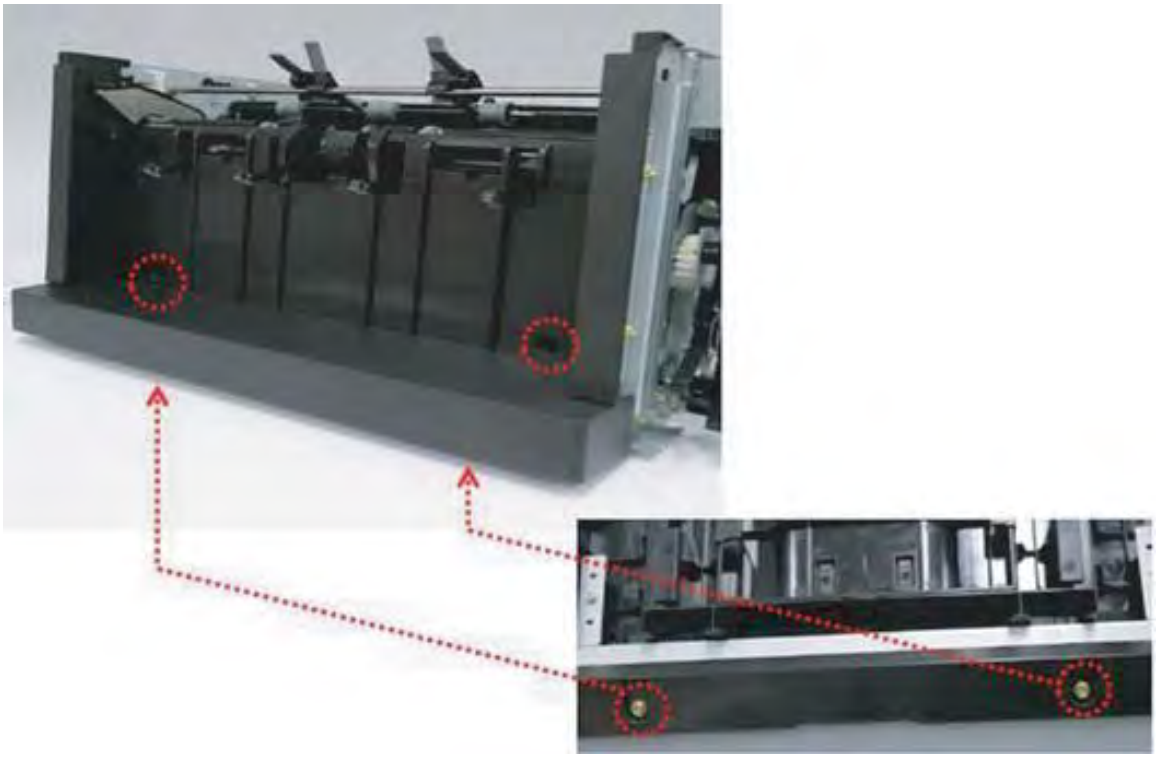
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 5-242 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

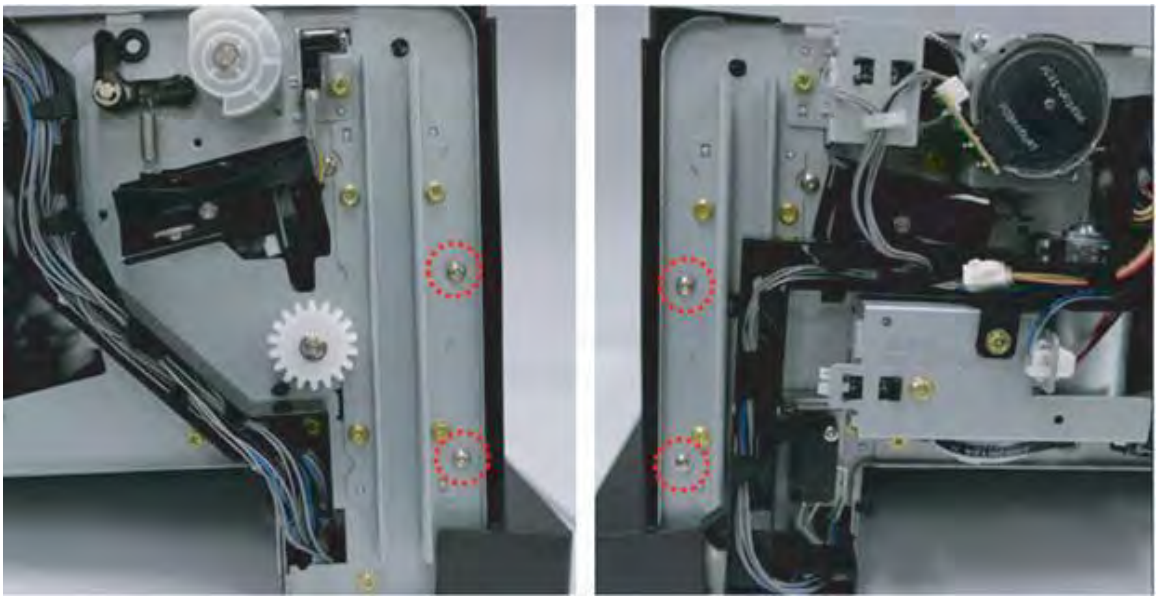
Figure 5-243 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

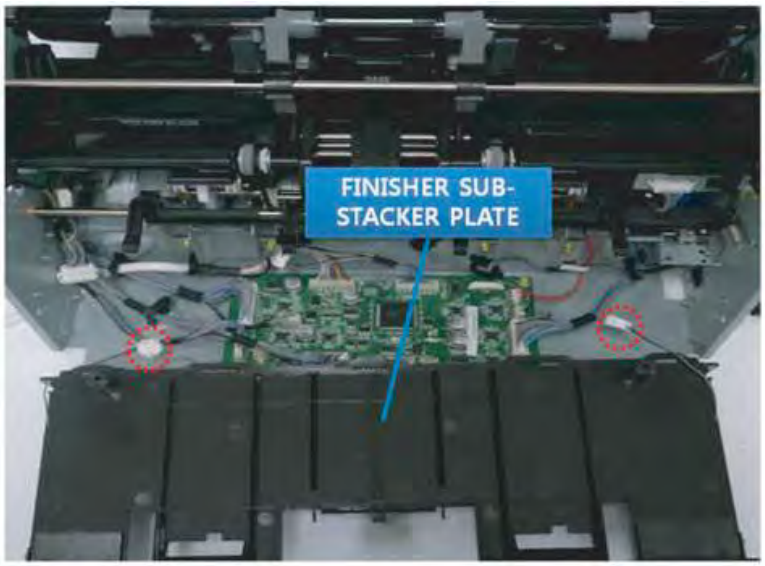
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 5-244 Remove the PBA



5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-245 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

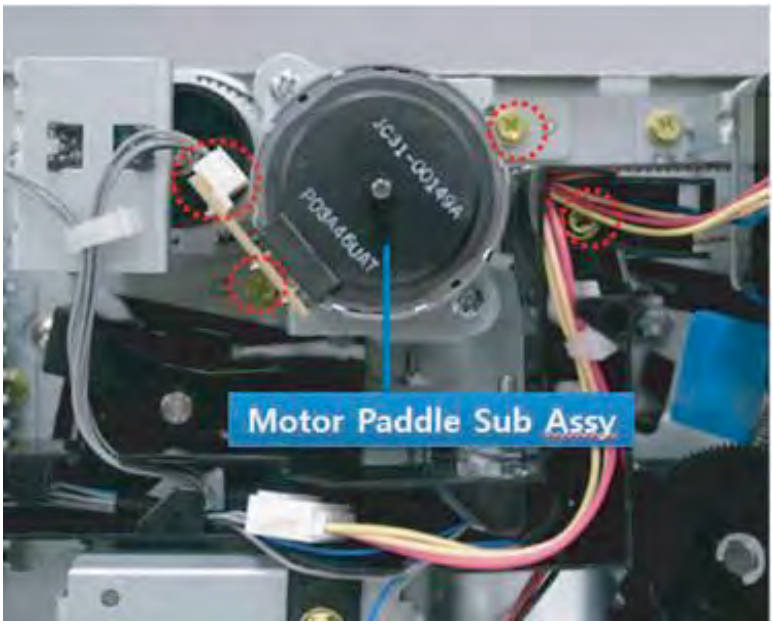
Figure 5-246 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

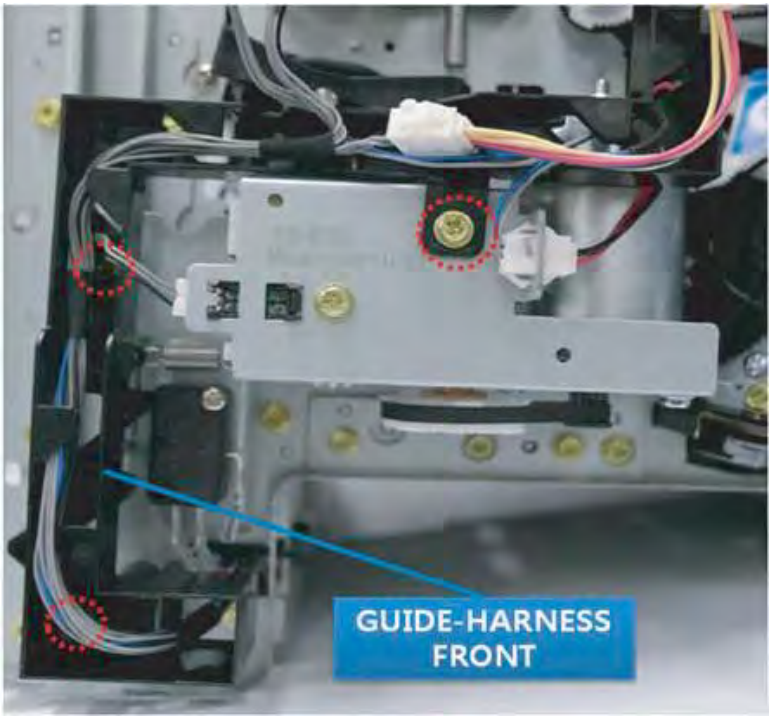
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 5-247 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



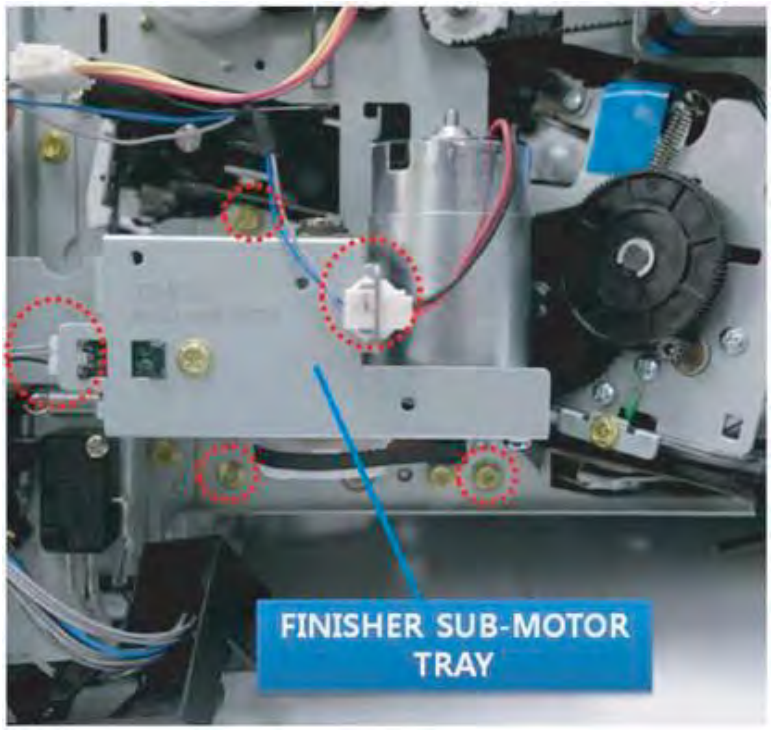
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 5-248 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-249 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



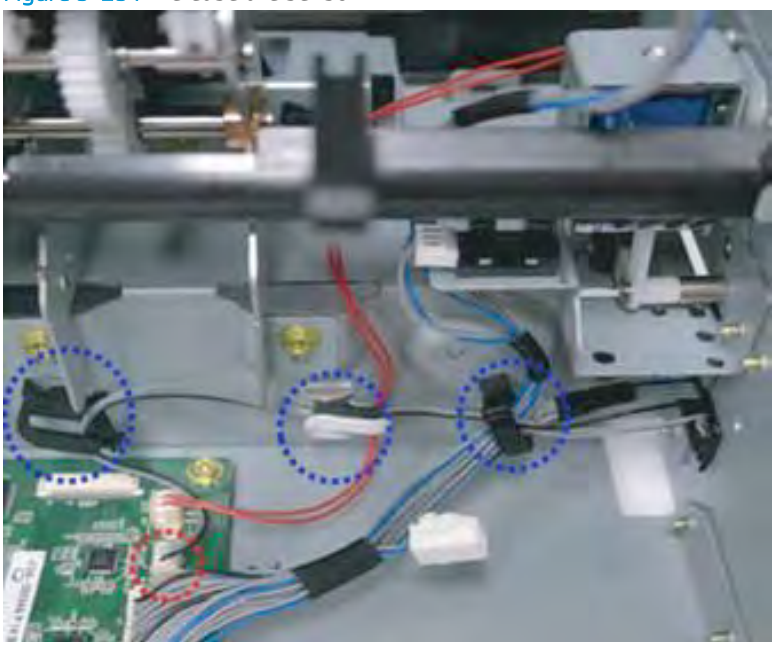
10. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-250 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 5-251 Release the sensor



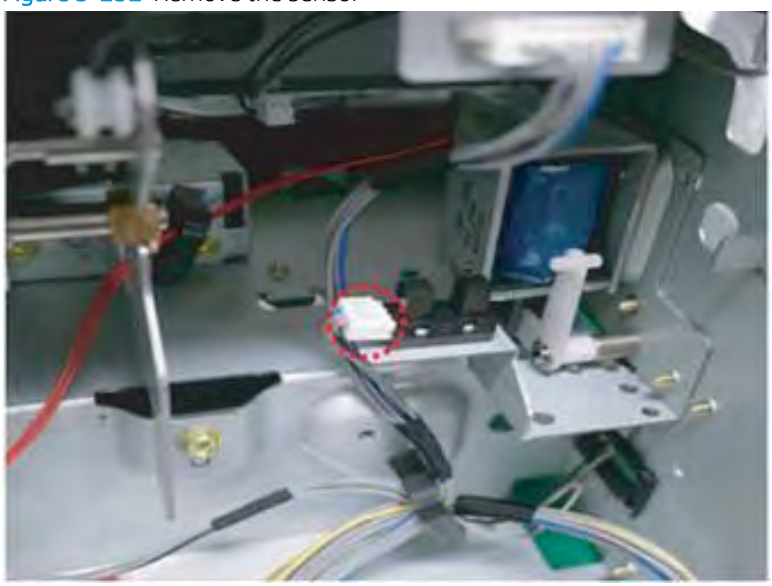
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

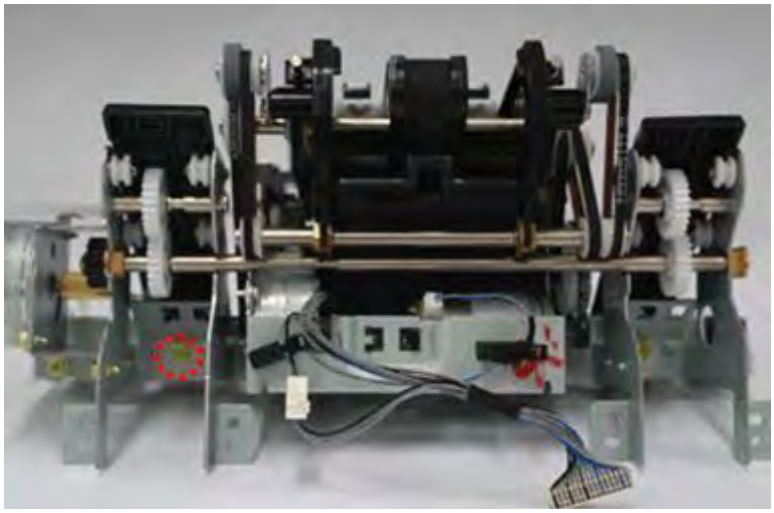
Figure 5-252 Remove the sensor



Step 3: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly

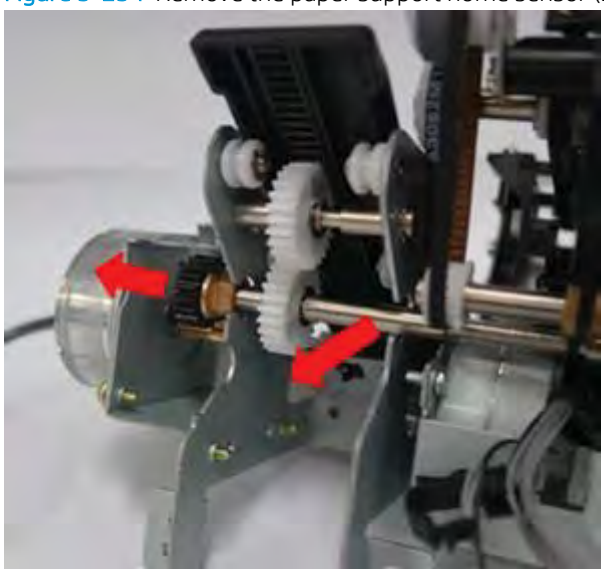
1. Disconnect one connector on the paper support motor.
2. Remove one screw on the paper support home sensor.

Figure 5-253 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



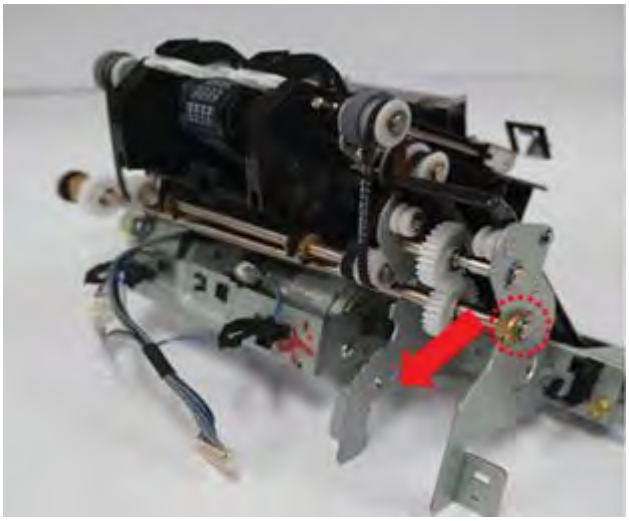
3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

Figure 5-254 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)



4. Remove the e-clip and the bushing, and then pull and remove the drive shaft.

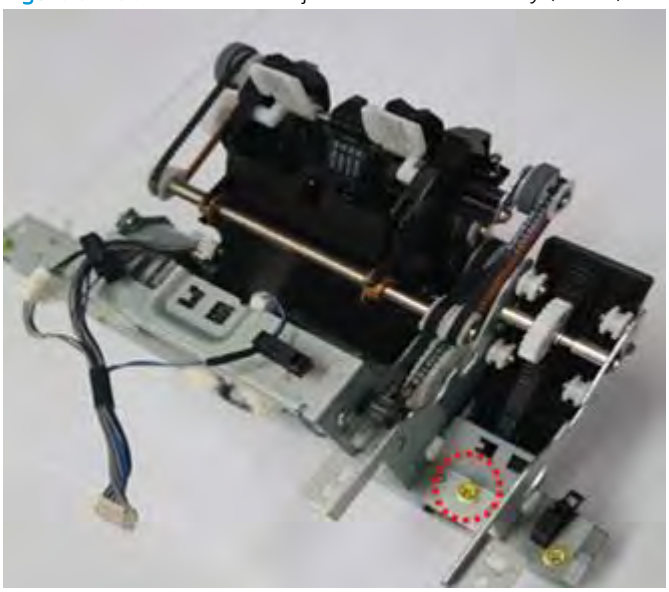
Figure 5-255 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6)



Reinstallation tip: When reassembling the drive shaft, ensure the paper supports are in the full down position (against the stops).

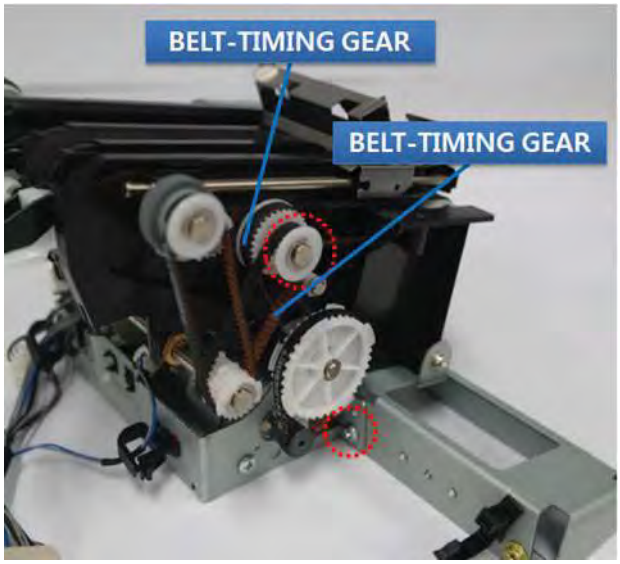
5. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-256 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6)



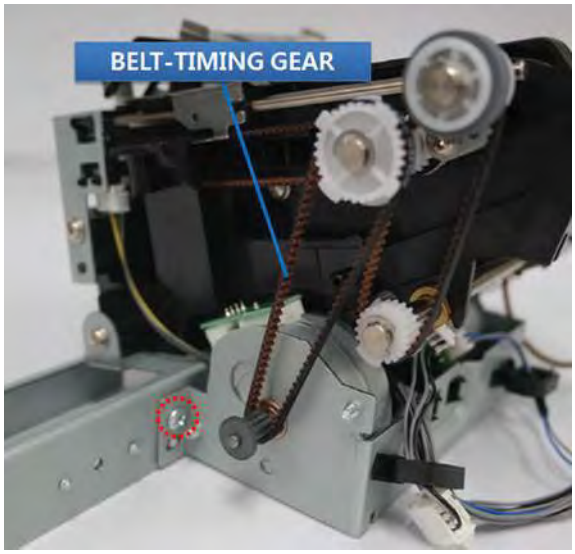
6. Remove the e-ring and washer. Remove two belt-timing gears, and then remove one screw.

Figure 5-257 Remove two belt-timing gears



7. Remove the clip, remove the belt-timing gear, and then remove one screw.

Figure 5-258 Remove the belt-timing gear and one screw



8. Remove the cable from restraint, and then disconnect two motor connectors and the sensor connector. Remove the motor assembly.

Figure 5-259 Disconnect connectors

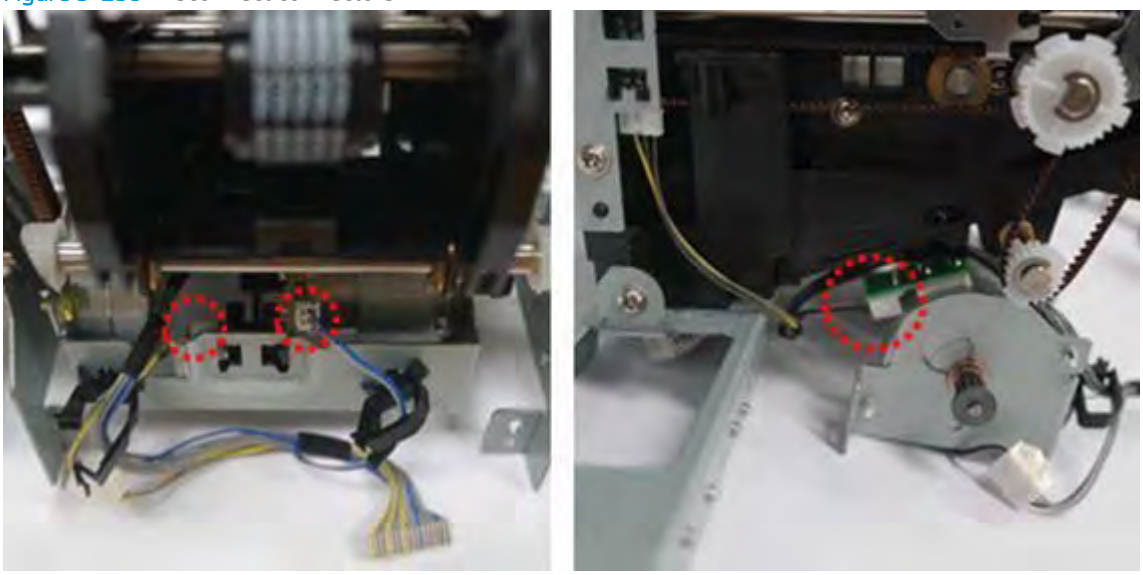


Figure 5-260 Remove the motor assembly



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main Paddle Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the main paddle motor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC31-00149A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Main Paddle Motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

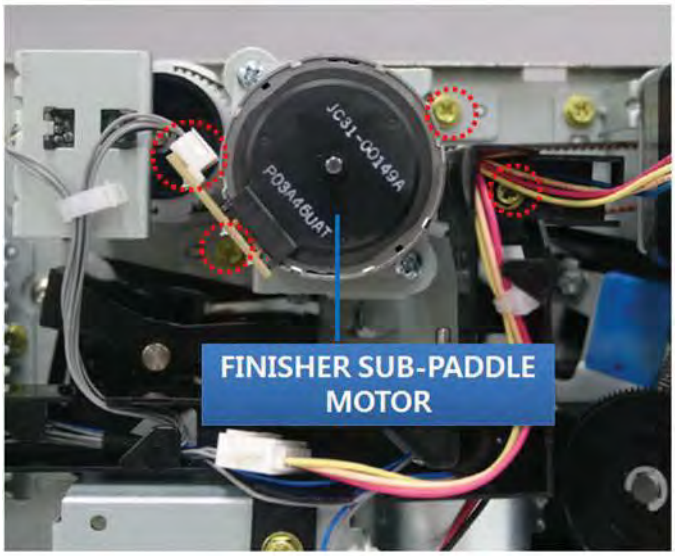
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the main paddle motor

1. Remove the front cover.
2. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor assembly.

   Figure 5-261 Remove the motor assembly

3. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

   Figure 5-262 Remove the main paddle motor

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main Paddle Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the main paddle home sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle Home Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0604-001415

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Main Paddle Home Sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

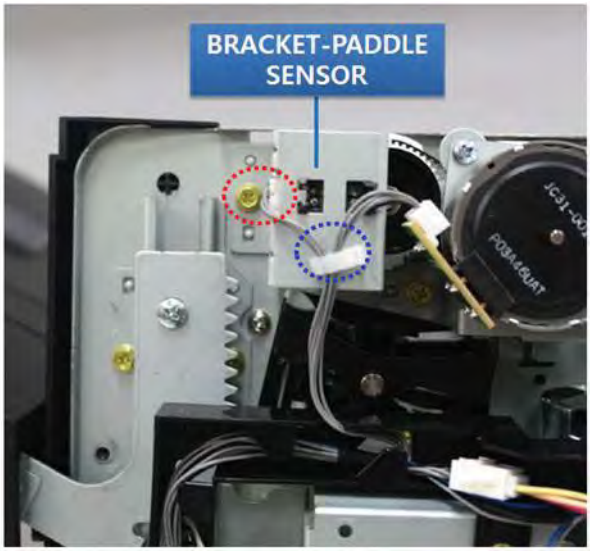
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the main paddle home sensor

1. Remove the front cover.
2. Remove one screw. Open the clamp, and then remove the bracket-paddle sensor.

   Figure 5-263 Remove the bracket-paddle sensor

3. Remove the main paddle home sensor from the bracket.

   Figure 5-264 Remove the main paddle home sensor

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main Paddle

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the main paddle
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC63-04957A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Main paddle A

JC63-04958A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Main paddle B

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

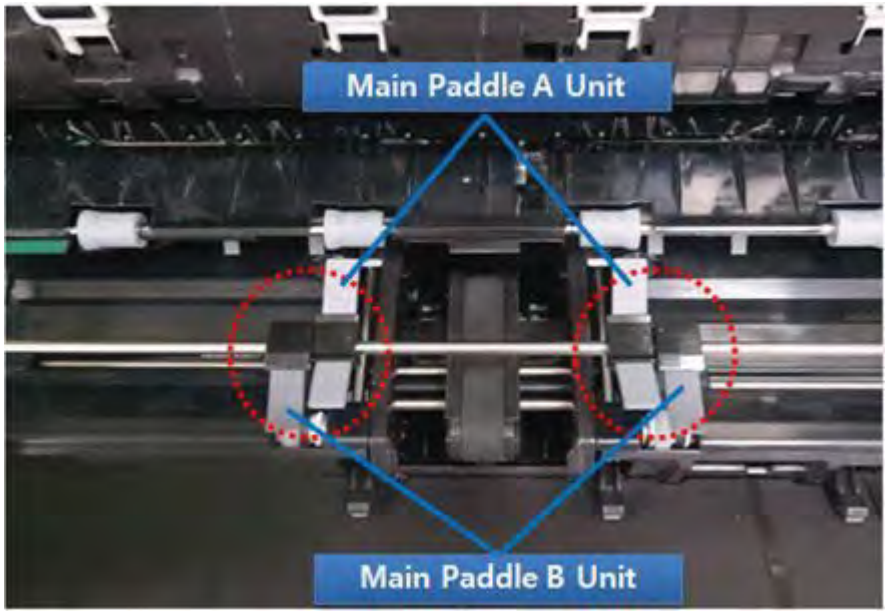
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the main paddle

▲ Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove the main paddle A unit and main paddle B unit.

Figure 5-265 Remove the main paddle



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 2: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly
- Step 3: Remove the paper ejector assembly
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Ejector assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

JC90-01332A

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Ejector assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

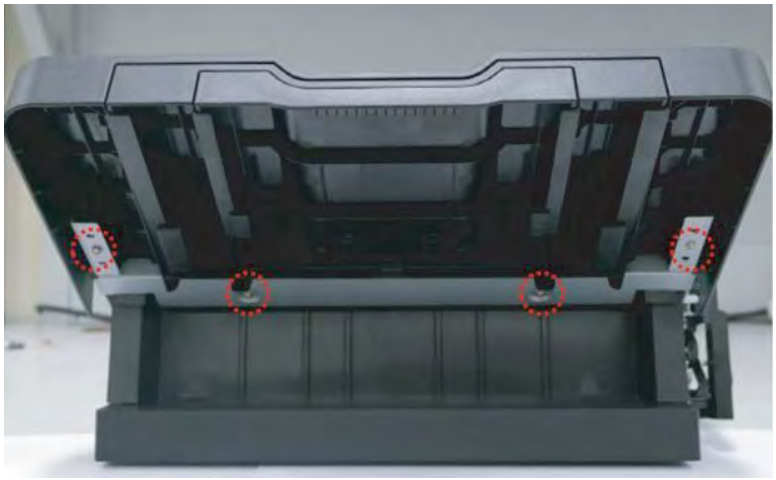
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 5-266 Remove the tray

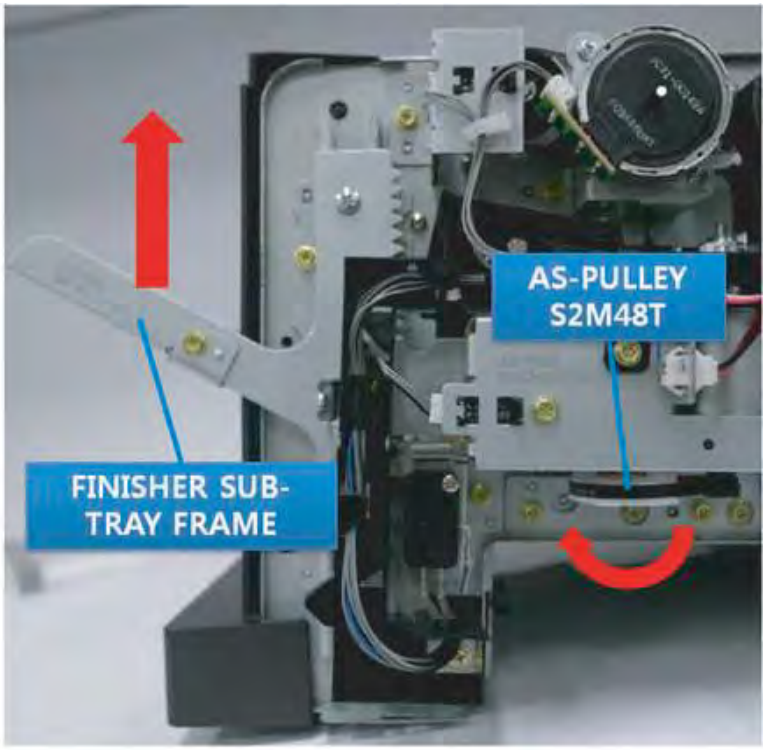


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

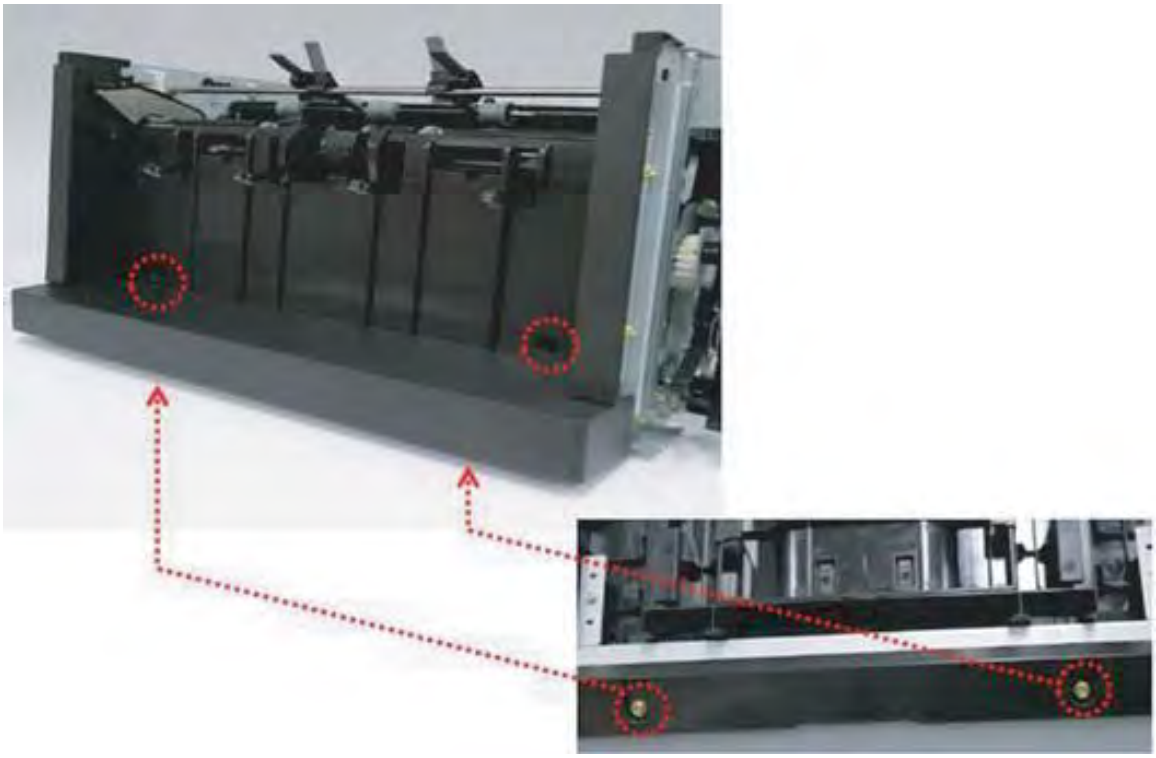
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 5-267 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

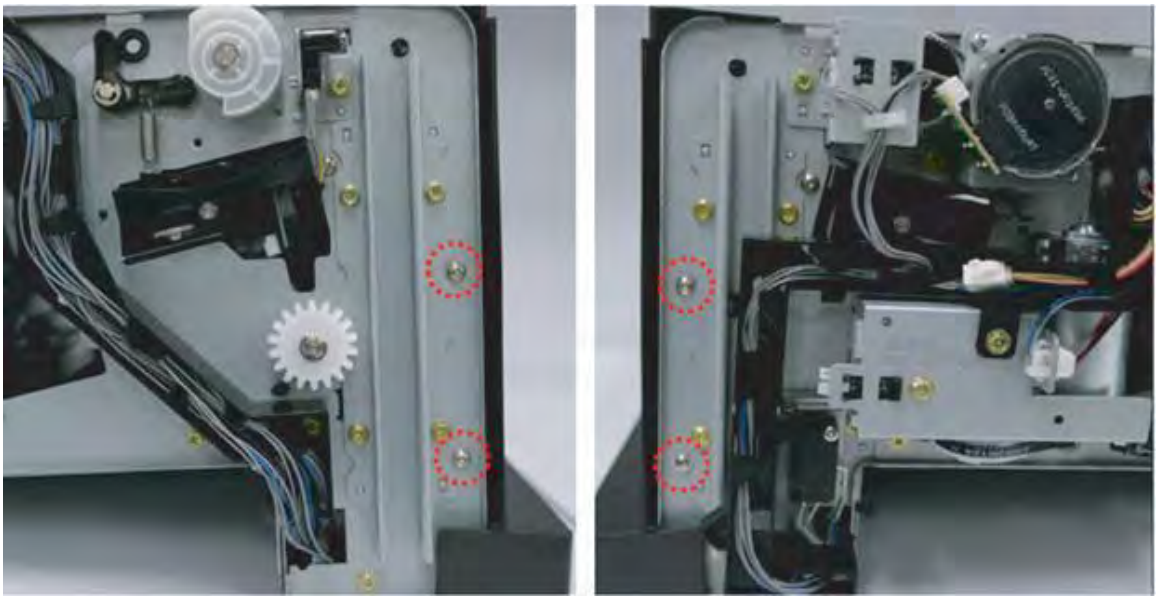
Figure 5-268 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

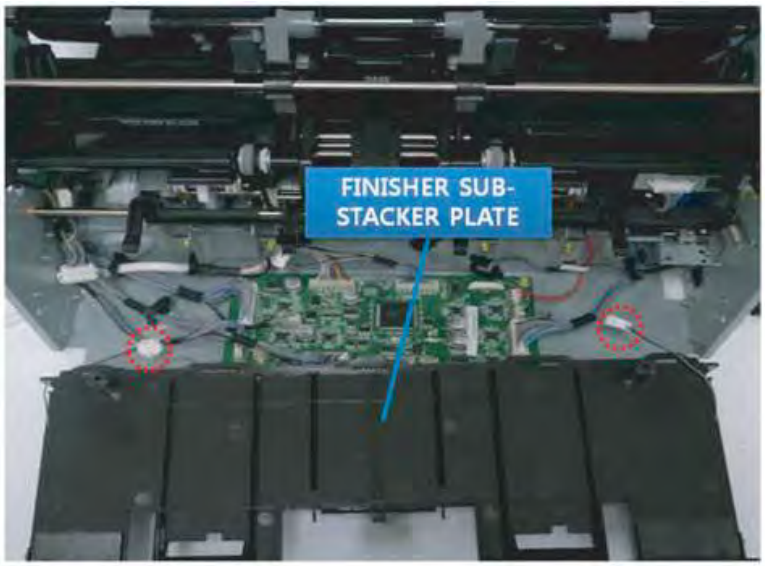
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 5-269 Remove the PBA



5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-270 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

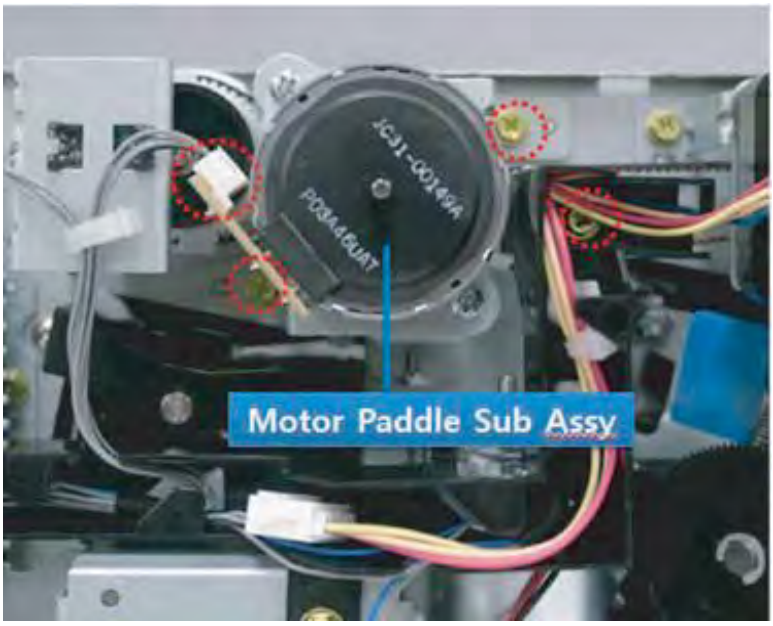
Figure 5-271 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

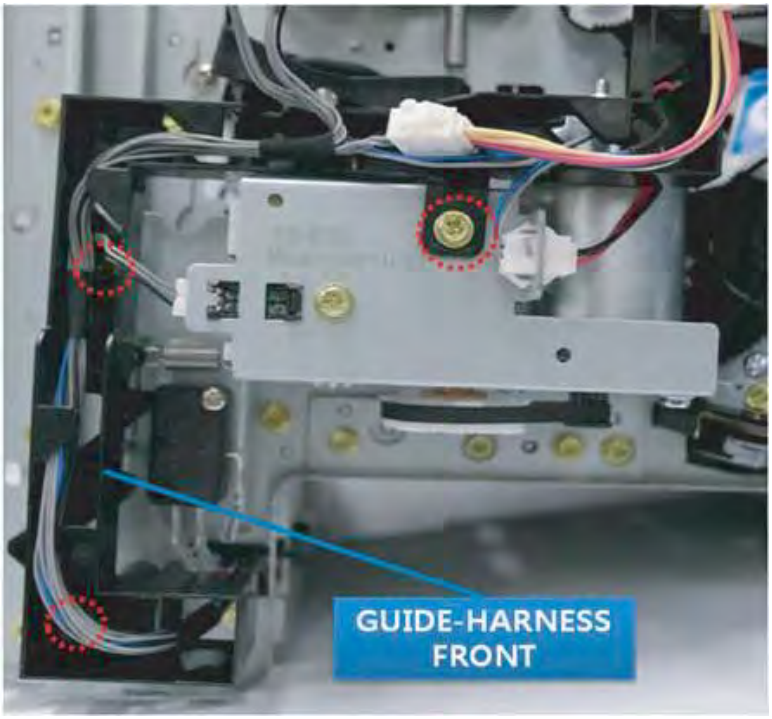
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 5-272 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



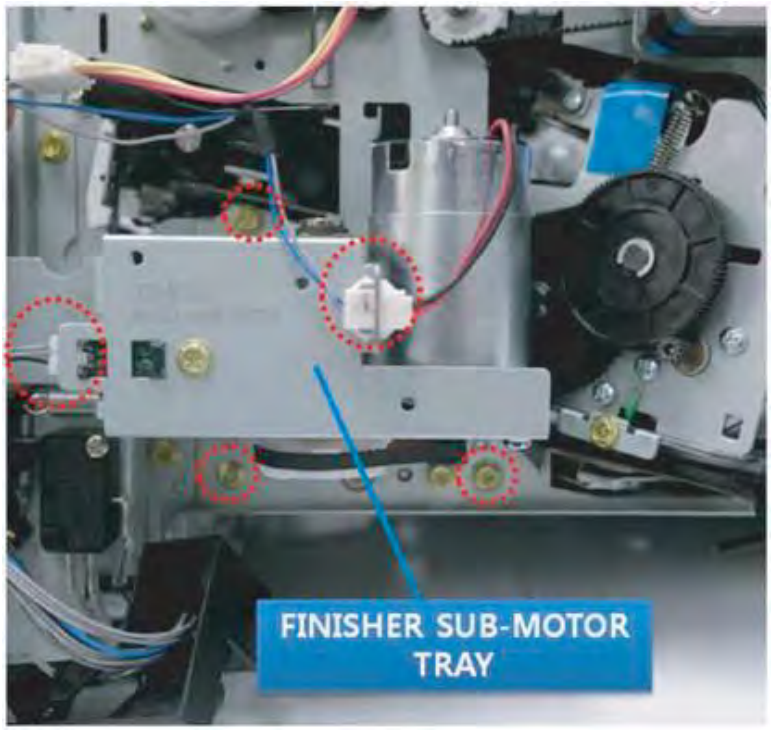
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 5-273 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-274 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



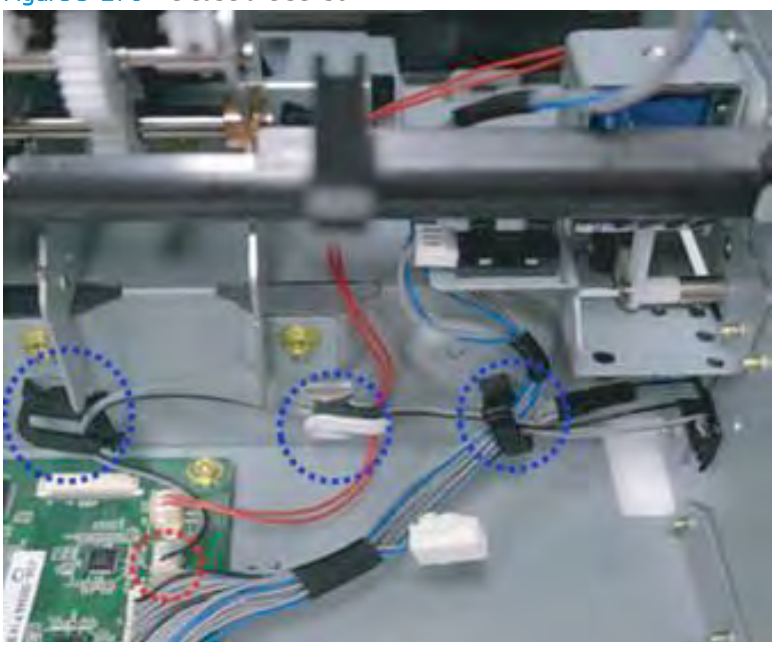
10. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-275 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 5-276 Release the sensor



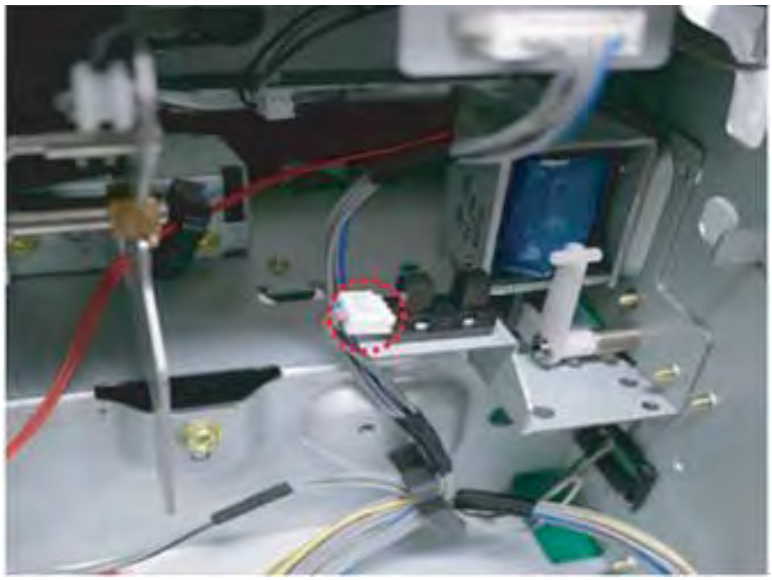
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

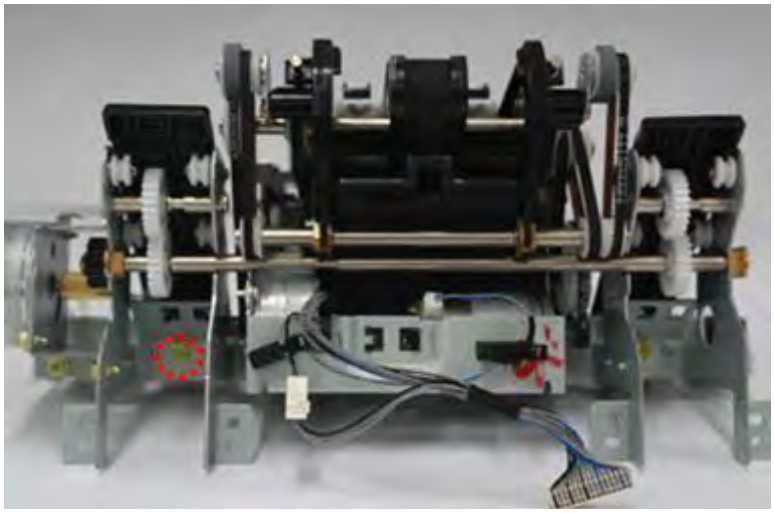
Figure 5-277 Remove the sensor



Step 2: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly

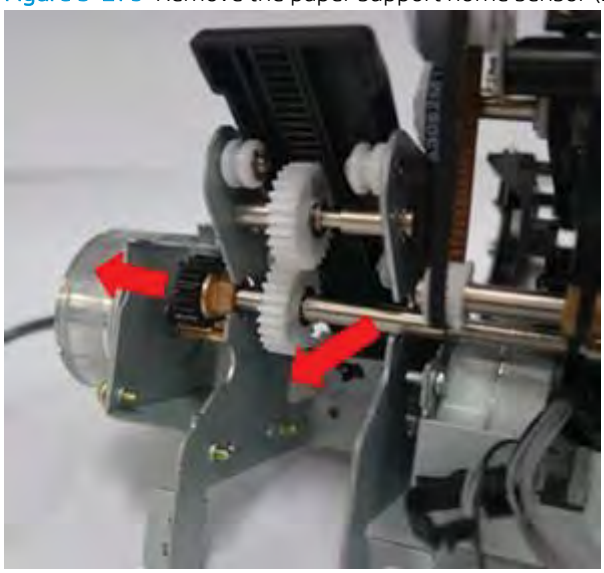
1. Disconnect one connector on the paper support motor.
2. Remove one screw on the paper support home sensor.

Figure 5-278 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



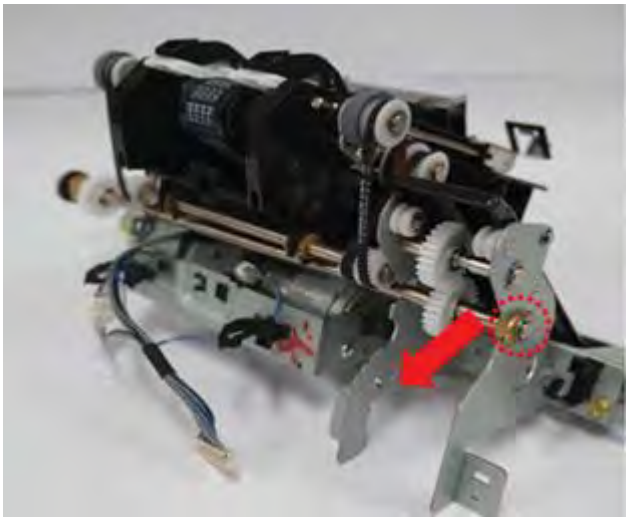
3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

Figure 5-279 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)



4. Remove the e-clip and the bushing, and then pull and remove the drive shaft.

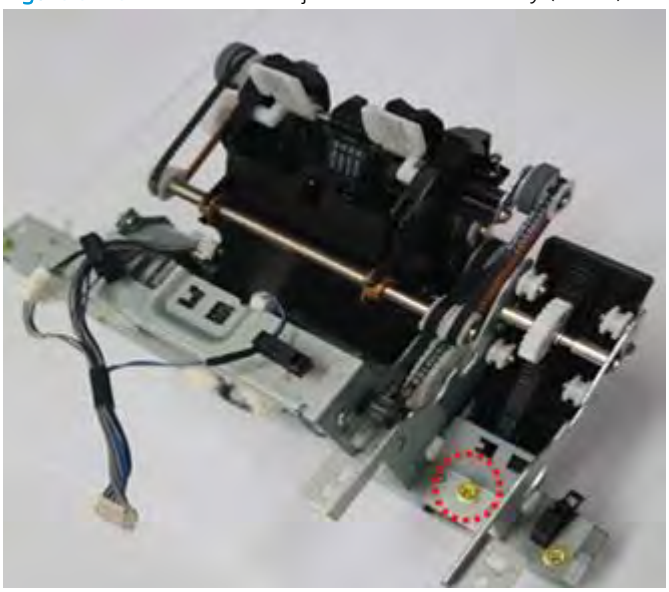
Figure 5-280 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6)



Reinstallation tip: When reassembling the drive shaft, ensure the paper supports are in the full down position (against the stops).

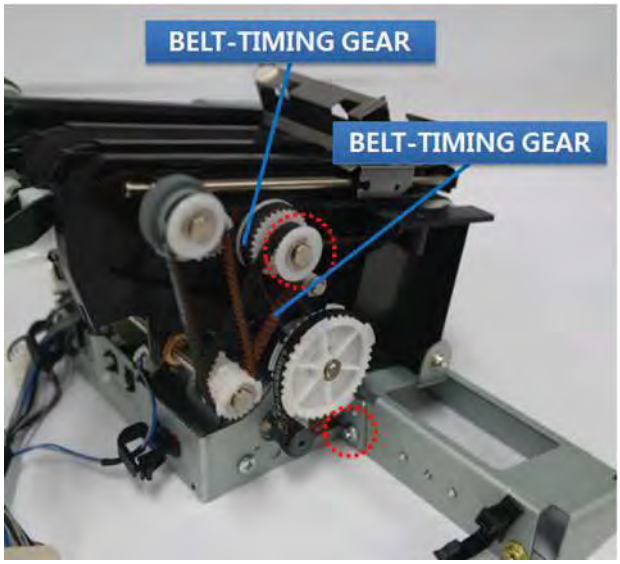
5. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-281 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6)



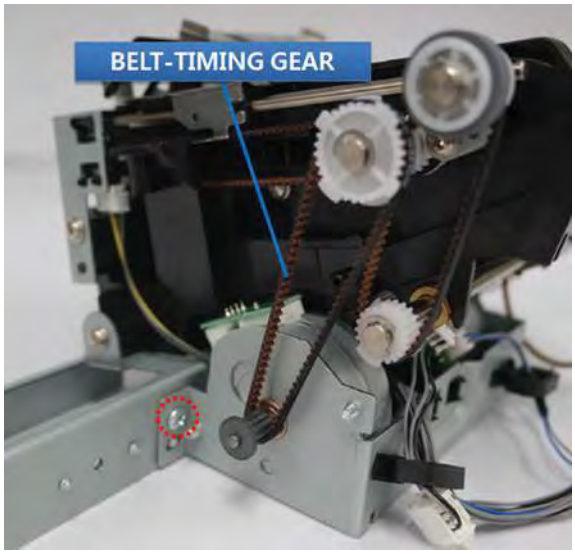
6. Remove the e-ring and washer. Remove two belt-timing gears, and then remove one screw.

Figure 5-282 Remove two belt-timing gears



7. Remove the clip, remove the belt-timing gear, and then remove one screw.

Figure 5-283 Remove the belt-timing gear and one screw



8. Remove the cable from restraint, and then disconnect two motor connectors and the sensor connector. Remove the motor assembly.

Figure 5-284 Disconnect connectors

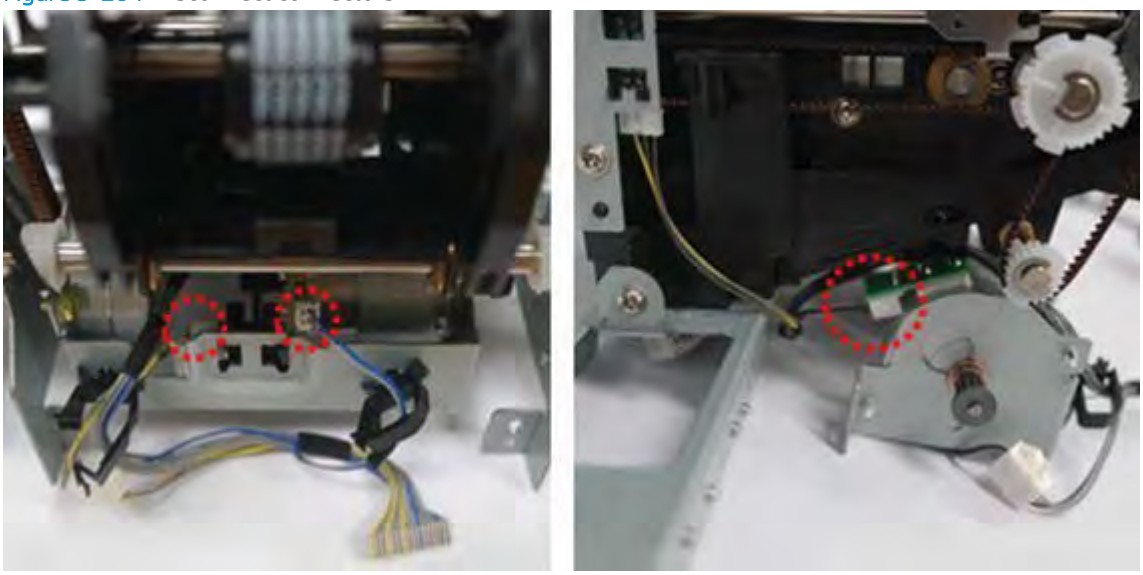


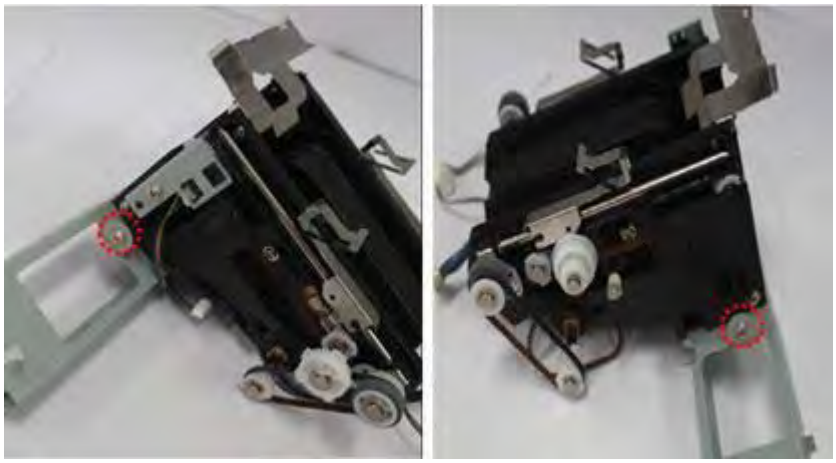
Figure 5-285 Remove the motor assembly



Step 3: Remove the paper ejector assembly

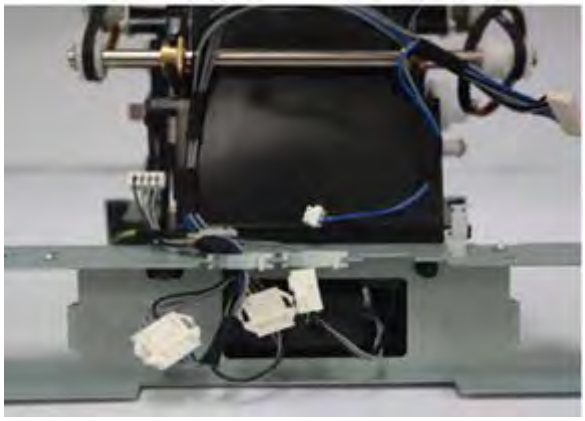
1. Remove two screws.

   Figure 5-286 Remove two screws

2. Unplug the harness, and then remove the ejector assembly.

   Figure 5-287 Remove the ejector assembly

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Punch Dust Full Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the punch dust full sensor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Punch Dust Full Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0604-001381

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- Punch Dust Full Sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

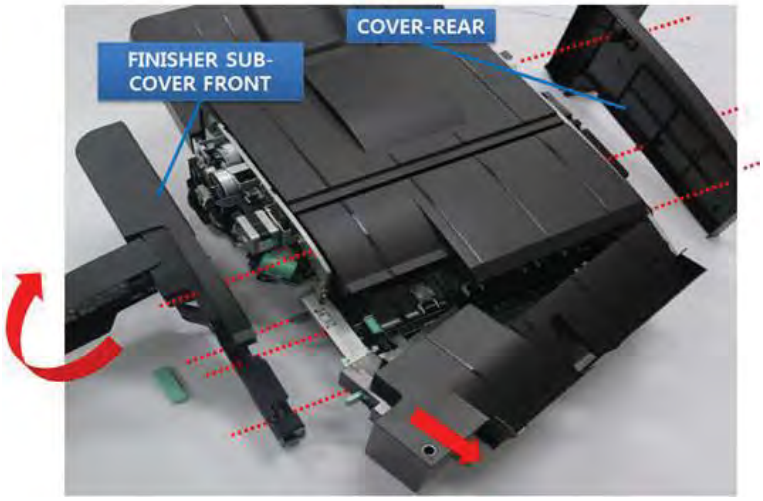
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

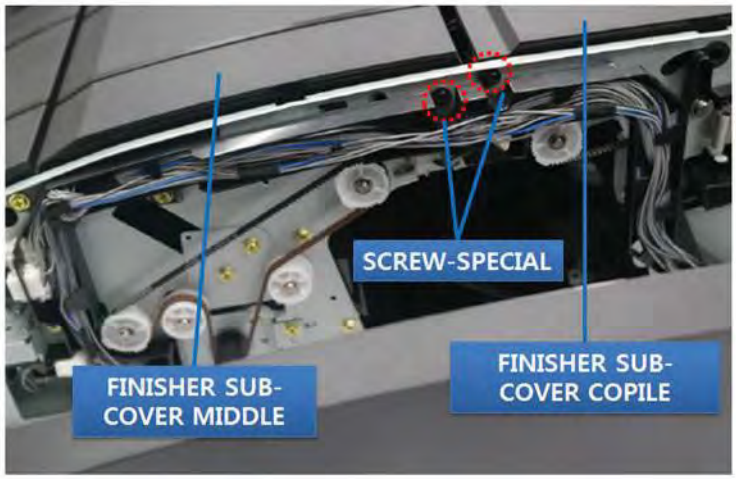
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 5-288 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 5-289 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-290 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

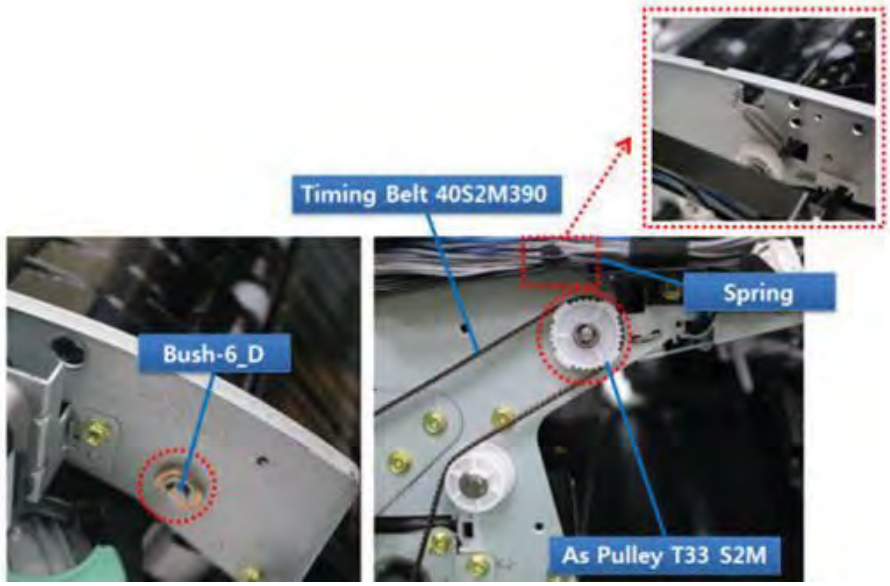
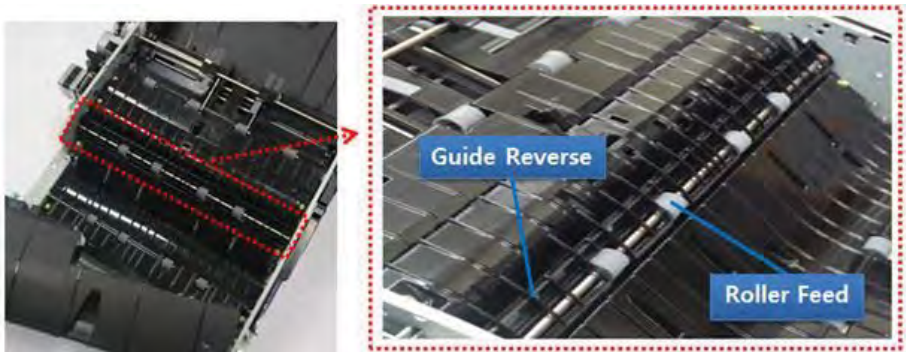


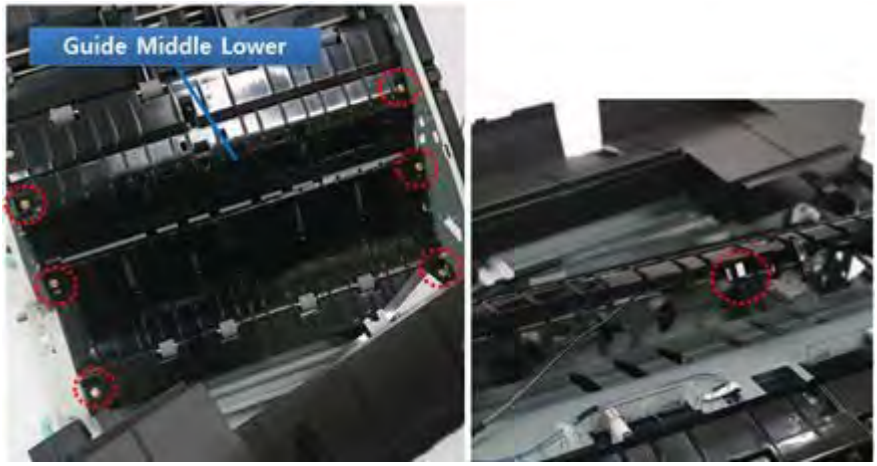
Figure 5-291 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

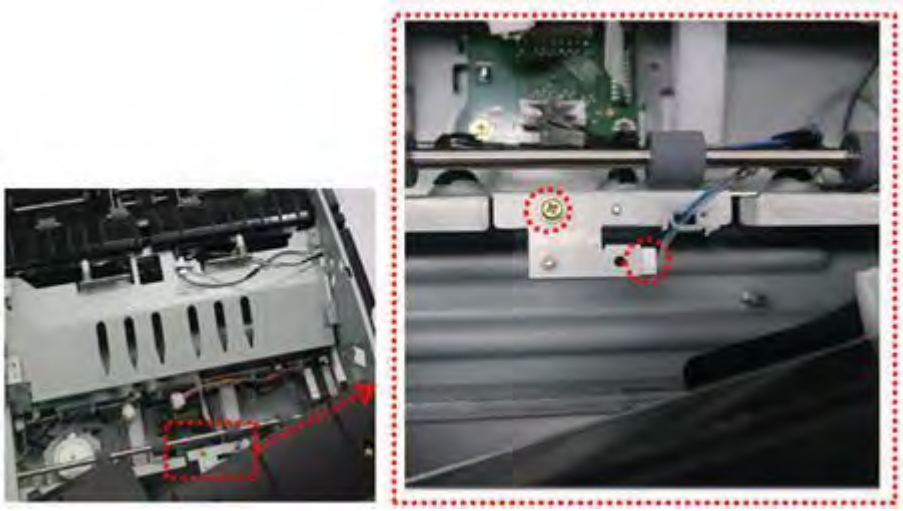
Figure 5-292 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the punch dust full sensor

1. Remove one screw, unplug the connector, and then remove the punch dust full sensor sub-assembly.

   Figure 5-293 Remove the punch dust full sensor sub-assembly



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the punch dust full sensor.

   Figure 5-294 Remove the punch dust full sensor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

End Fence Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the end fence home position sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the End Fence Home Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

0604-001381

To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

- End Fence Home Sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

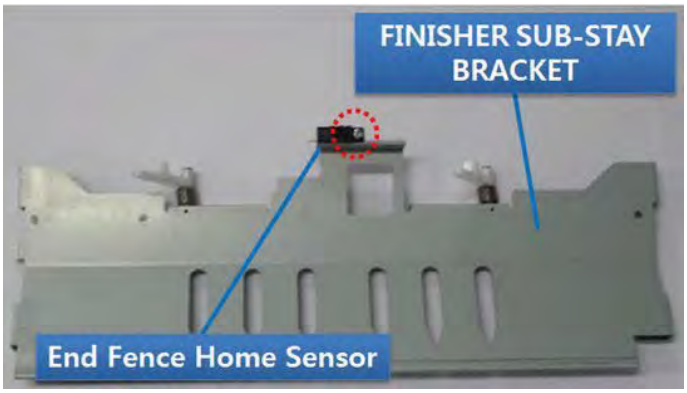
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the end fence home position sensor

1. Follow steps 1-5 in the traverse front home sensor disassembly procedure.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 5-295 Remove the end fence home sensor



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

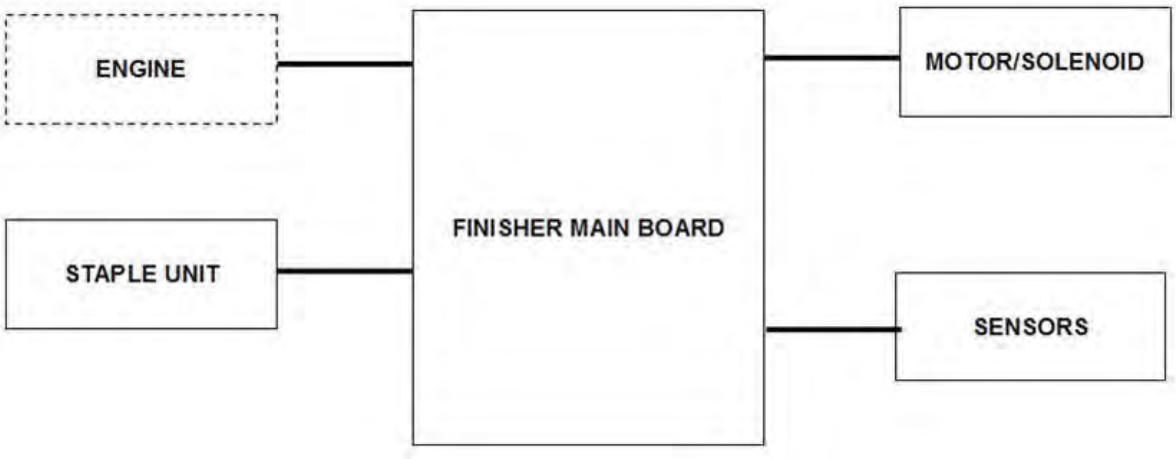
NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Problem solving

Control panel messages document (CPMD)

For CPMD information, go to Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview on page 622.

Block Diagram



6 Diagrams

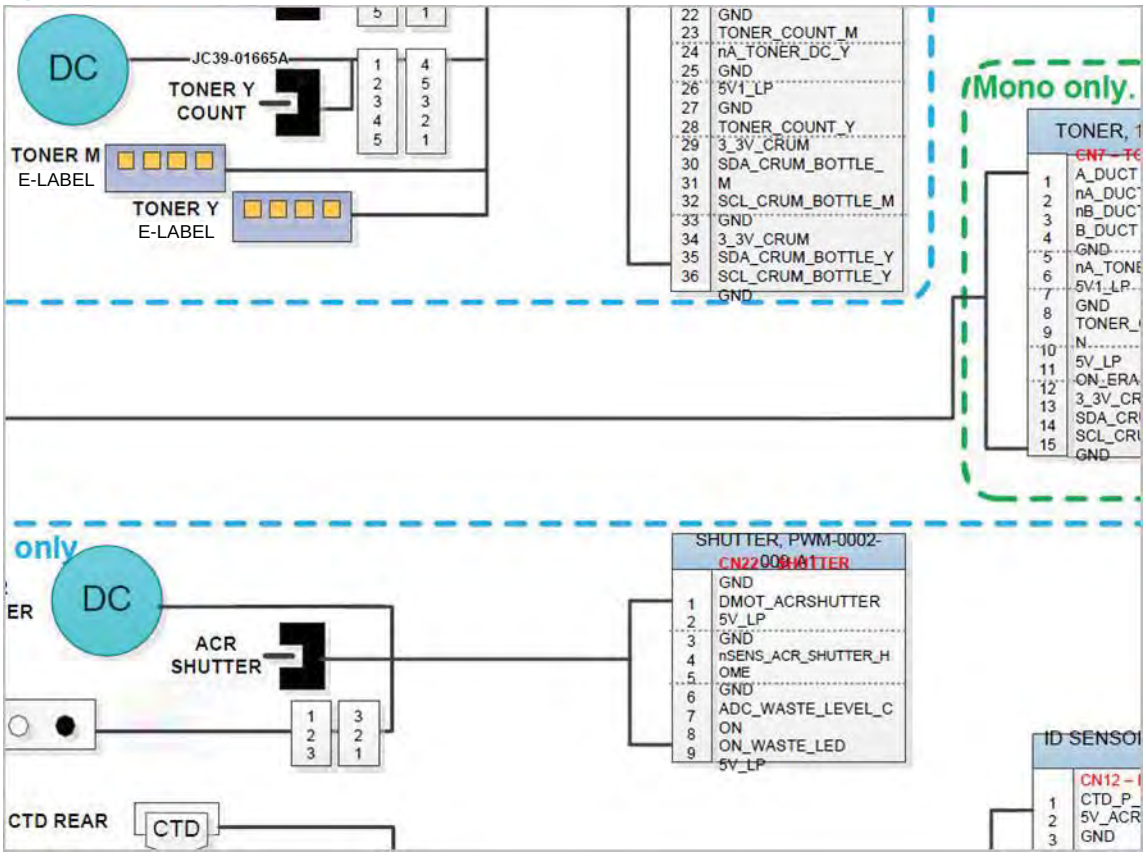
- Diagrams

Diagrams

NOTE: The connection diagram includes the harness part code as shown below:

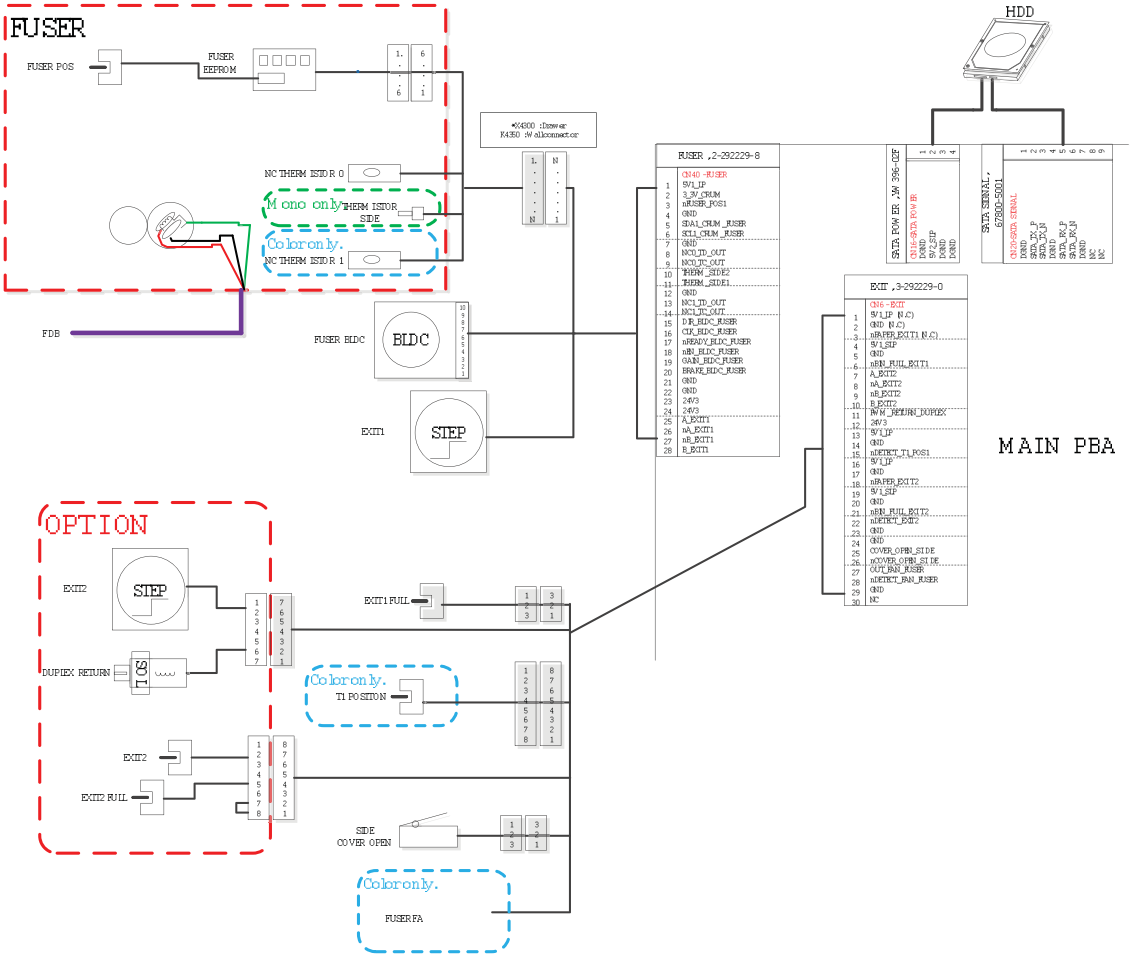
- Blue text harness codes are for both color and mono models.
- Green text harness codes are for mono models.
- Red text harness codes are for color models.

Figure 6-1 Connection diagram



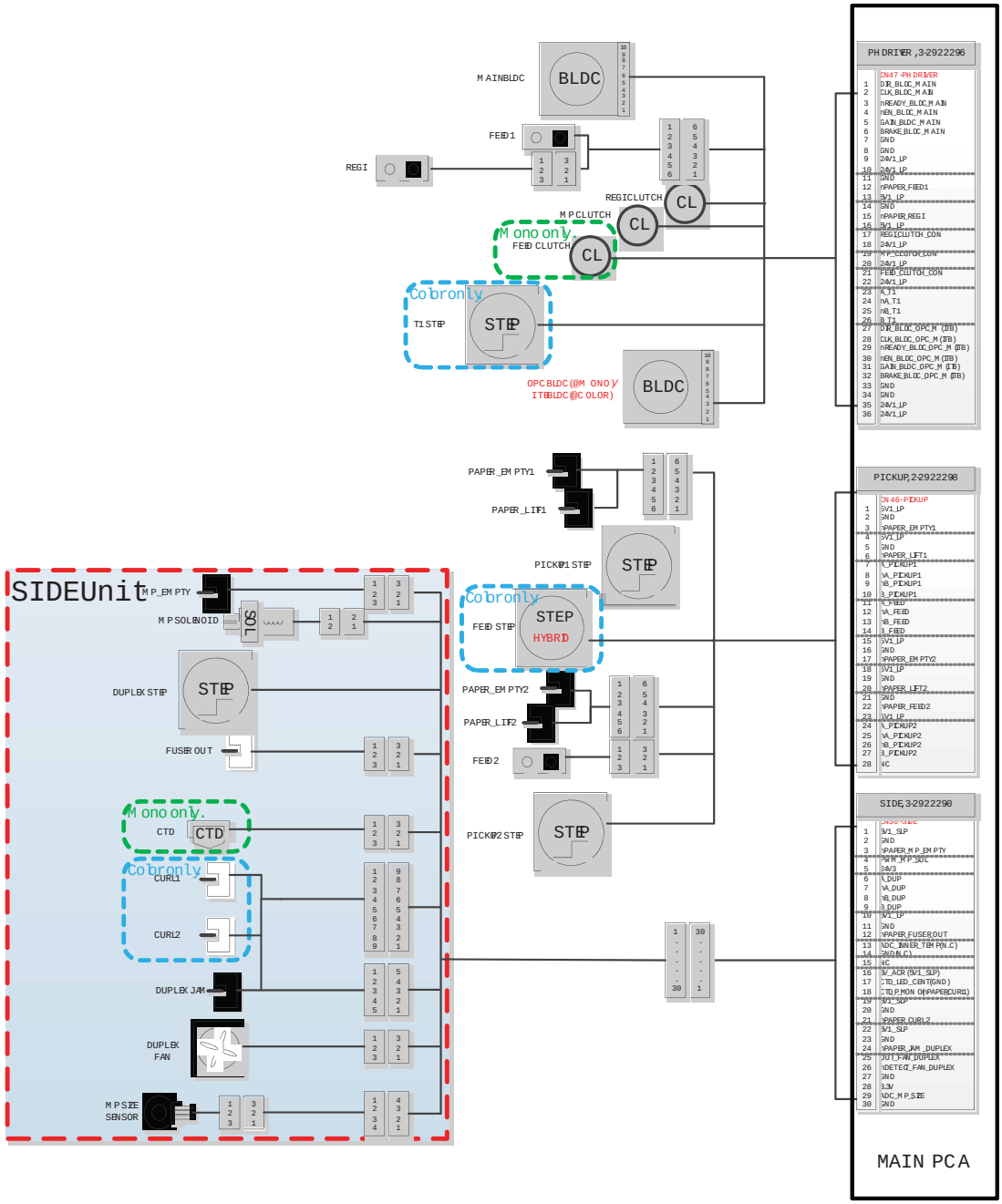
Diagrams (FUSER EXIT)

Figure 6-2 Fuser exit diagram



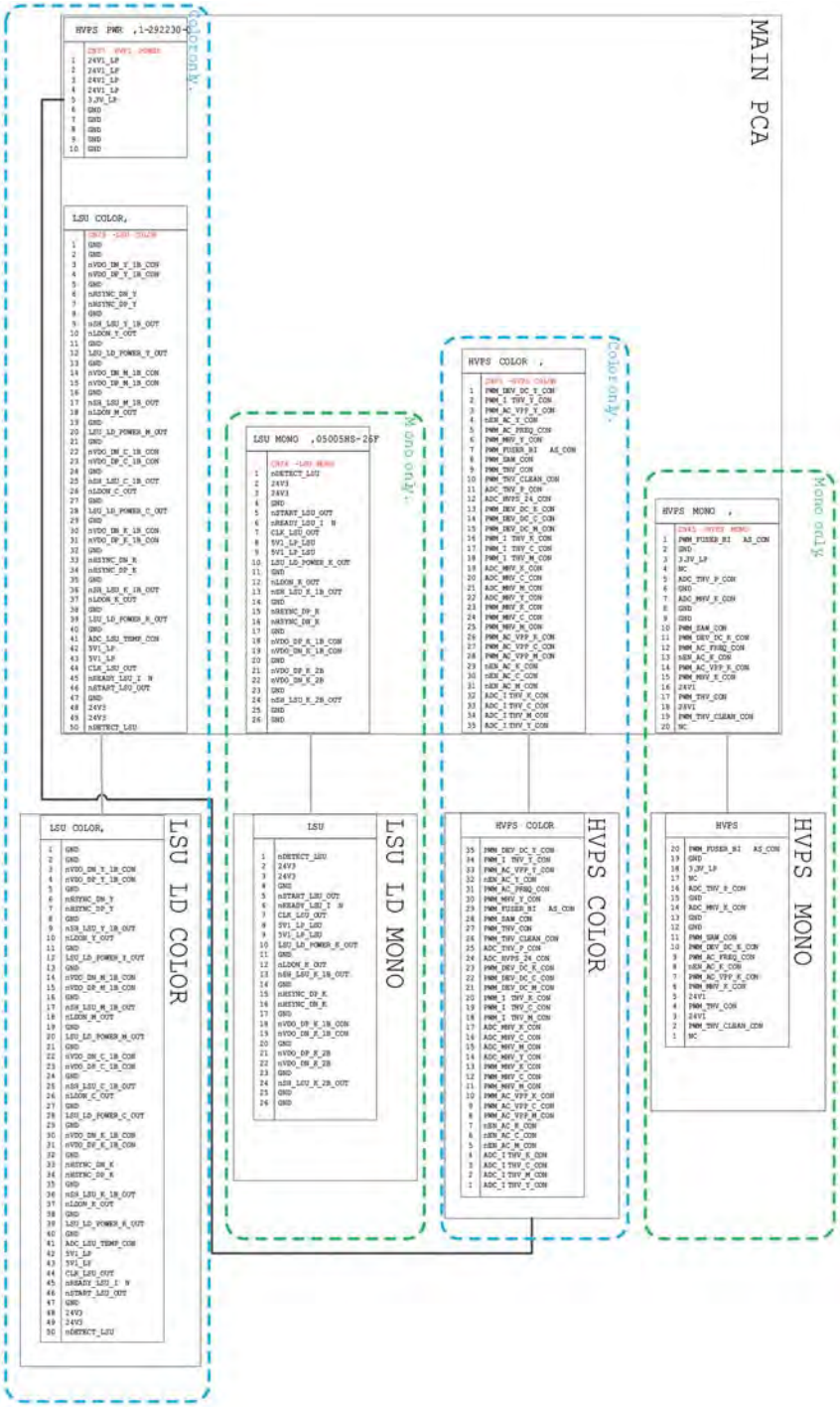
Diagrams (PICKUP/PH DRIVE/SIDE)

Figure 6-3 Pickup/PH drive/side diagram



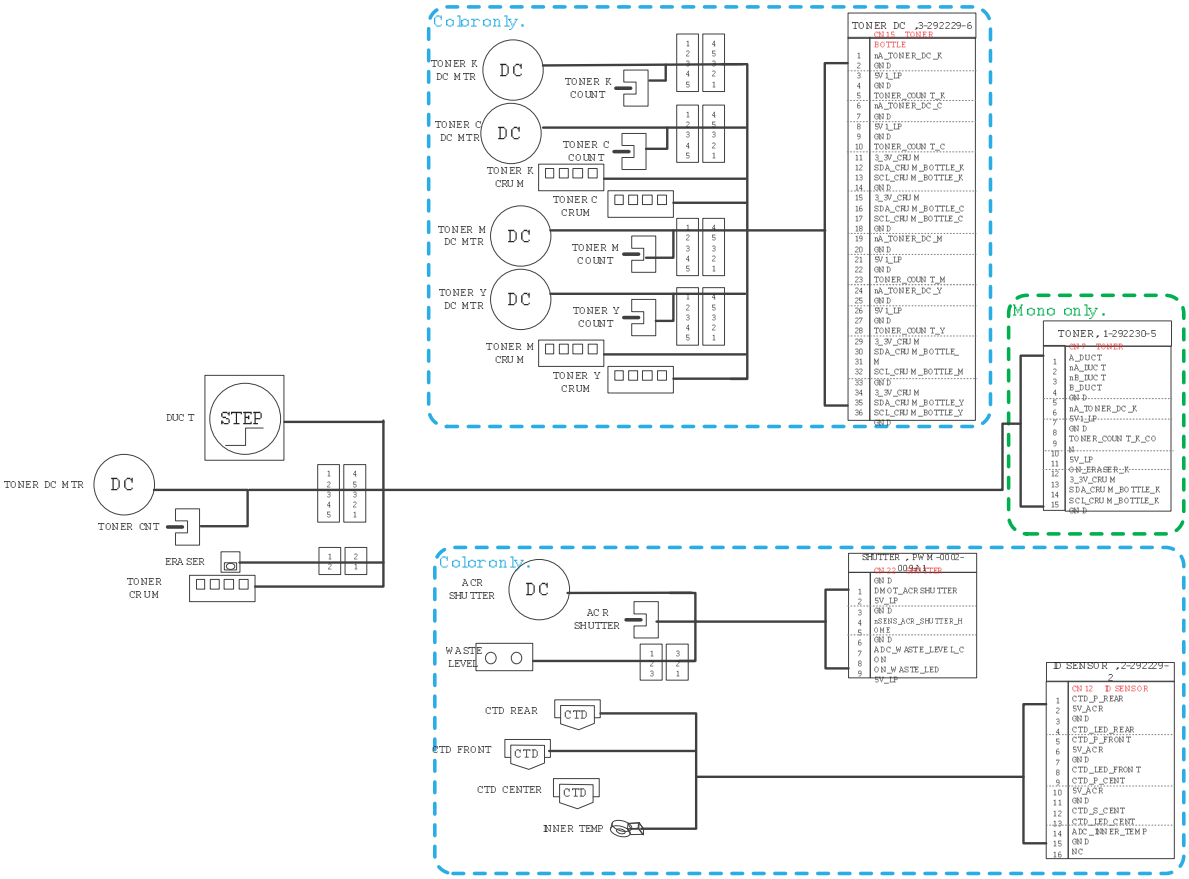
Diagrams (laser scanner assembly/HVPS)

Figure 6-4 Laser scanner assembly/HVPS diagram



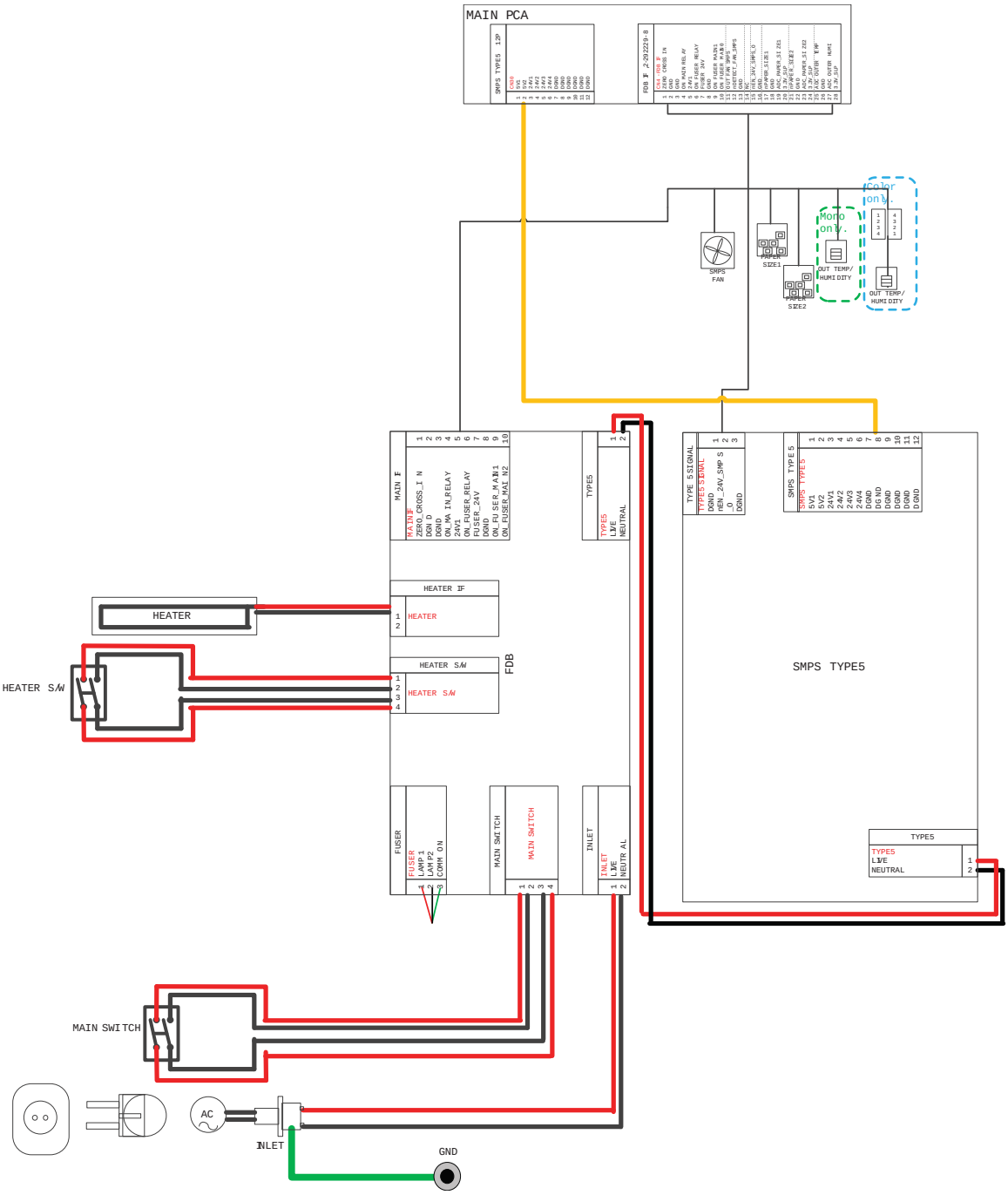
Diagrams (toner)

Figure 6-5 Toner diagram



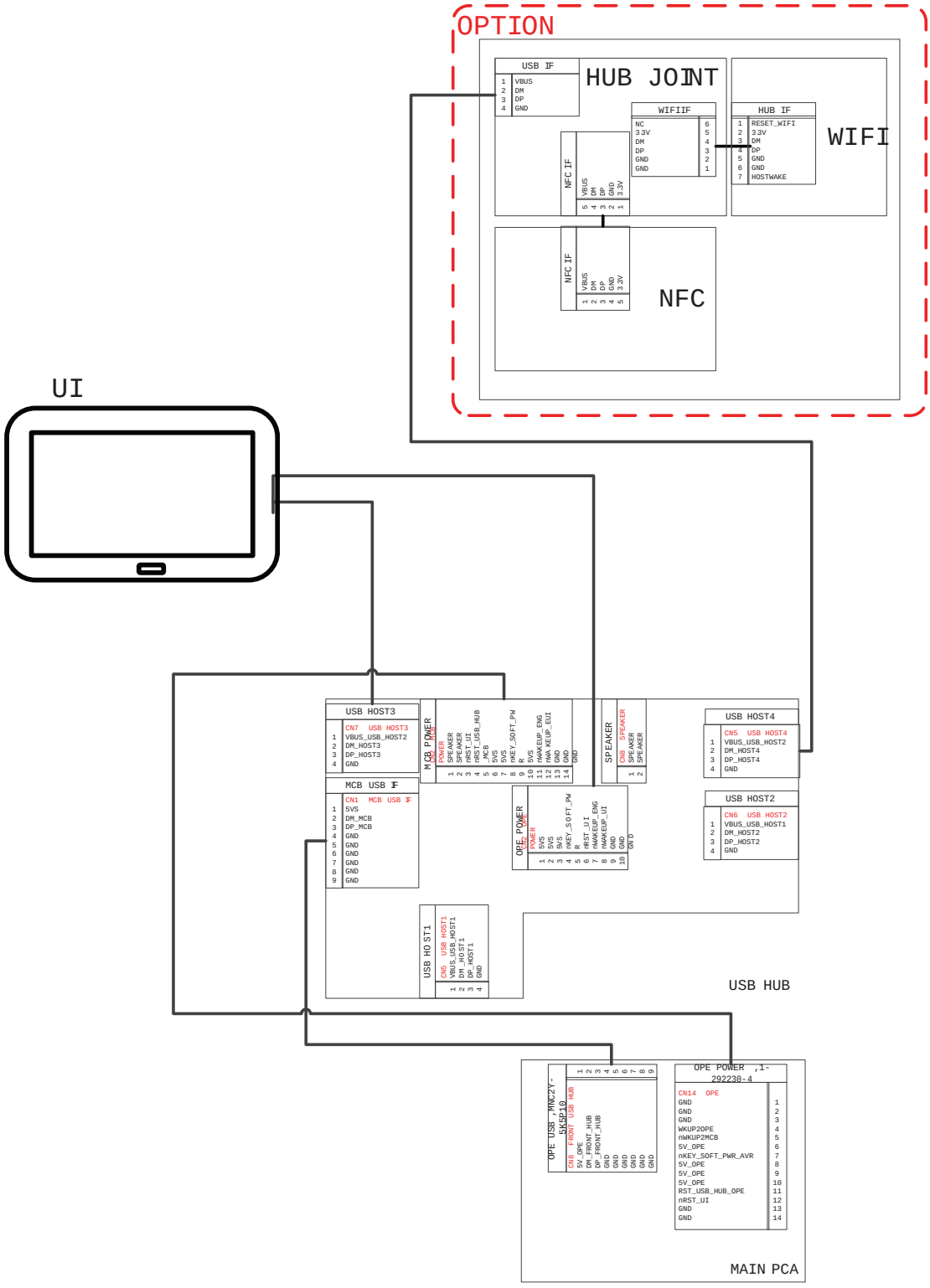
Diagrams (FDB/LVPS)

Figure 6-6 FDB/LVPS diagram



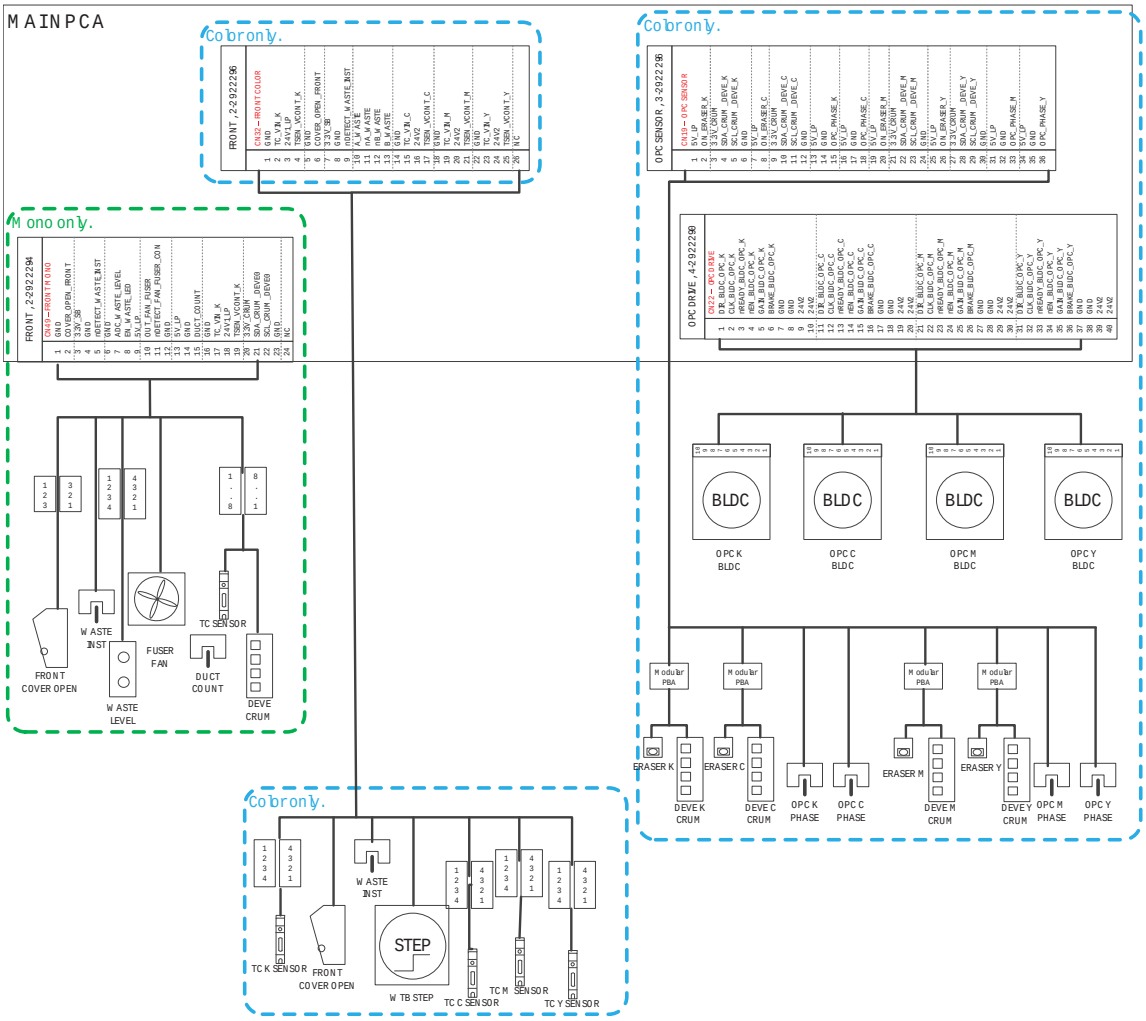
Diagrams (UI)

Figure 6-7 UI diagram



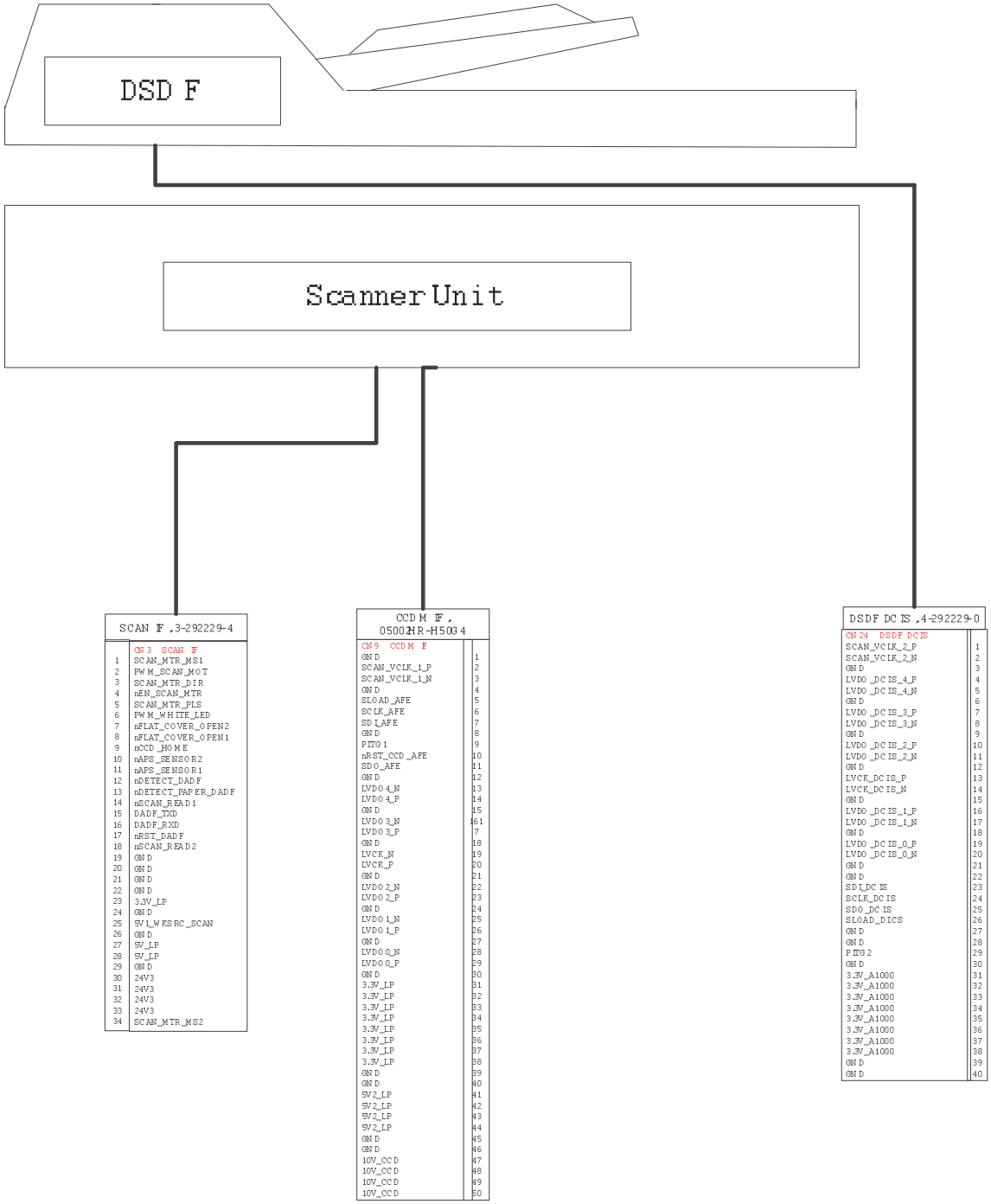
Diagrams (FRONT/OPC)

Figure 6-8 Front/OPC diagram



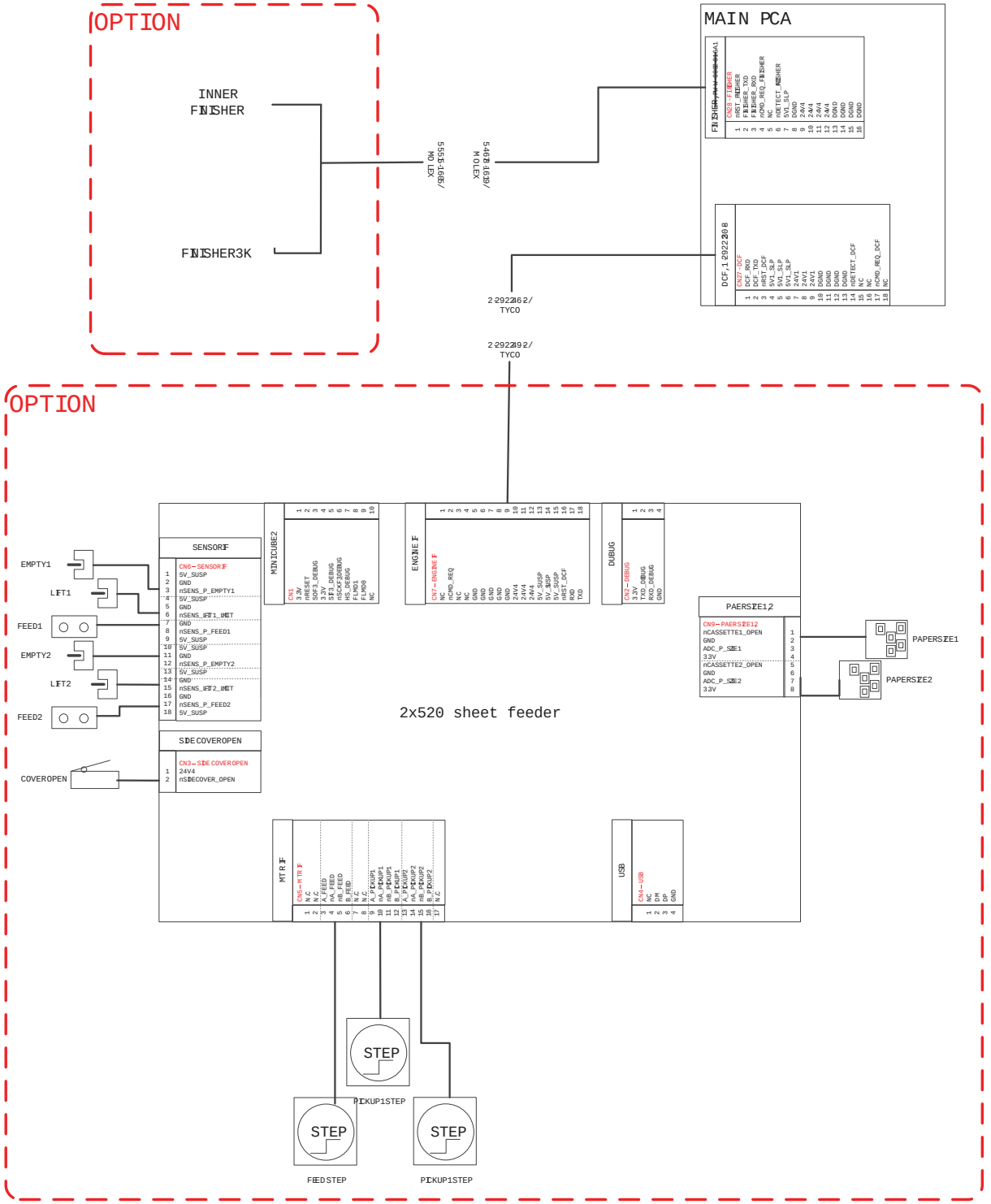
Diagrams (scanner)

Figure 6-9 Scanner diagram



Diagrams (Dual Cassette Feeder)

Figure 6-10 2x520 sheet feeder diagram



A Glossary

- Glossary of terms

Glossary of terms

The following glossary includes terminology commonly used with printing, as well as terminology used in this service manual.

802.11	802.11 is a set of standards for wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, developed by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee (IEEE 802).
802.11b/g/n	802.11b/g/n can share the same hardware and use the 2.4 GHz band. 802.11b supports bandwidth up to 11 Mbps, 802.11n supports bandwidth up to 150 Mbps. 802.11b/g/n devices might occasionally suffer interferences from microwave ovens, cordless telephones, and Bluetooth devices.
ADF	An Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) is a scanning unit that will automatically feed an original sheet of paper for scanning.
BOOTP	Bootstrap Protocol. A network protocol used by a network client to obtain its IP address automatically. This is usually done in the bootstrap process of computers or operating systems running on them. The BOOTP servers assigns an IP address from a pool of addresses to each client. BOOTP enables “diskless workstation” computers to obtain an IP address prior to loading any advanced operating system.
CCD	Charged Coupled Device (CCD) is a hardware which enables the scan job. The CCD locking mechanism is also used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when the printer is moved.
Collation	Collation is a process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collation is selected, the device prints an entire set before printing additional copies.
Control Panel	The control panel is a flat, typically vertical panel or screen where control or monitoring instruments are displayed. The control panel is found on the front of the printer.
Coverage	Coverage is the printing term used for a toner usage measurement on printing. For example, 5% coverage means that an A4 sided paper has about 5% image or text on it. If the paper or original has complicated images or a large amount of text, the coverage will be higher and at the same time, a toner usage will be as much as the coverage.
CRUM	The CRUM is a sub part of the MSOK. fuser,. OPC, imaging drum, and toner cartridge. It stores count information, system, operating system, system parameters, device status, technical information and service information. If a component with a CRUM is replaced the information stored will not be kept.
Default	The value or setting that is in effect when a printer is unboxed, reset, or initialized.
DHCP	A Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a client-server networking protocol. A DHCP server provides configuration parameters specific to the DHCP client host requesting, generally, information required by the client host to participate on an IP network. The DHCP also provides a mechanism for allocation of IP addresses to client hosts.
DIMM	Dual Inline Memory Module (DIMM) is a small circuit board that holds memory. The DIMM stores all data within the machine, such as printing data and received fax data.
DPI	Dots Per Inch (DPI) is a measurement of resolution that is used for scanning and printing. Generally, higher DPI results in a higher resolution, more visible detail in the image, and a larger file size.
Duplex	A mechanism that will automatically turn over a sheet of paper so that the printer can print (or scan) on both sides of the paper. A printer equipped with a duplex unit can print on both sides of the paper during one print cycle.
Duty Cycle	Duty cycle is the page quantity which does not affect printer performance for a month. Generally, the printer has the lifespan limitation such as pages per year. The lifespan means the average capacity of print-outs, usually within the warranty period. For example, if the duty cycle is 48,000 pages per month assuming 20 working days, a printer limits 2,400 pages a day.
Emulation	Emulation is a technique of one machine obtaining the same results as another. An emulator duplicates the functions of one system with a different system, so that the second system behaves like the first system. Emulation focuses on exact reproduction of external behavior. This is different from simulation, which concerns an abstract model of the system being simulated, often considering its internal state.

ESD	An electrostatic discharge (ESD) is a sudden flow of electricity between two electrically charged objects caused by contact, an electrical short, or dielectric breakdown. Discharge of built up static electricity.
Ethernet	Ethernet is a frame-based computer networking technology for local area networks (LANs). It defines wiring and signaling for the physical layer, and frame formats and protocols for the media access control (MAC)/data link layer of the OSI model. Ethernet is mostly standardized as IEEE 802.3. Ethernet has become the most widespread LAN technology in use during the 1990s to present.
FIH	A Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) is a port that enables HP multifunction printers (MFPs) to use third-party devices to extend the capabilities of the MFP.
Flow document feeder	A flow document feeder is a scanning unit that will automatically feed and turn over an original sheet of paper so that the machine can scan both sides of the paper.
FTP	A File Transfer Protocol (FTP) is a commonly used protocol for exchanging files over any network that supports the TCP/IP protocol (such as the internet or an intranet).
Fuser Unit	The fuser unit is part of a laser printer that fuses the toner onto the print media. It consists of a heat roller and a pressure roller. After toner is transferred onto the paper, the fuser unit applies heat and pressure to make sure that the toner stays on the paper permanently, which is why paper is warm when it comes out of a laser printer.
Gateway	A connection between computer networks, or between a computer network and a telephone line. It is very popular, as it is a computer or a network that allows access to another computer or network.
Grayscale	Shades of gray that represent light and dark portions of an image when color images are converted to grayscale. Colors are represented by various shades of gray.
Halftone	An image type that simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.
HDD	Hard Disk Drive (HDD), commonly referred to as a hard drive or hard disk, is a non-volatile storage device which stores digitally-encoded data on rapidly rotating platters with magnetic surfaces.
IEEE	The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is an international non-profit, professional organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.
IP address	An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a unique number that a device uses in order to identify and communicate with other devices on a network utilizing the Internet Protocol standard.
IPM	The Images Per Minute (IPM) is a method of measuring the speed of a printer. An IPM rate indicates the number of single-sided sheets a printer can complete in one minute.
IPP	The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) defines a standard protocol for printing and managing print jobs, media size, resolution, etc. IPP can be used locally, or over the internet to reach hundreds of printers. IPP also supports access control, authentication, and encryption, making it a capable and secure printing solution.
ISO	The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an international standard-setting body composed of representatives from national standards bodies. In produces world-wide industrial and commercial standards.
JBIG	Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) is an image compression standard with no loss of accuracy or quality. It was designed for compression of binary images, particularly for faxes, but can also be used for other images.
JPEG	Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) is a commonly used standard method of loss compression for photographic images. It is the format used for storing and transmitting photographs on the World Wide Web.
LDAP	The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a networking protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP.
LED	A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor device that indicates the status of a machine.
LVPS - SMPS	Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS) / Switching Mode Power Supply (SMPS)

MAC address	Media Access Control (MAC) address is a unique identifier associated with a network adapter. MAC address is a unique 48–bit identifier usually written as 12 hexadecimal characters grouped in pairs (e.g., 00–00–0c-34–11–4e). This address is usually hard-coded into a Network Interface Card (NIC) by the manufacturer, and used as an aid for routers trying to locate machines on a large network.
MFP	Multi Function Printer (MFP) is an office printer that includes multiple functionality in one physical body, such as a printer, copier, fax, scanner, etc.
MHV	Miniature High Voltage (MHV) is designed for high voltage applications of BNC connectors (DC voltage between 500 V and 5 kV).
Modem	A device that modulates a carrier signal to encode digital information, and also demodulates such a carrier signal to decode transmitted information.
OPC	Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) is a mechanism that makes a virtual image for print using a laser beam emitted from a laser printer. It is usually green or rust colored and has a cylinder shape. An imaging unit containing a drum slowly wears the drum surface during its usage in the printer, and it should be replaced appropriately due to wear from contact with the cartridge development brush, cleaning mechanism, and paper.
Originals	The first example of something, such as a document, photograph, or text which is copied, reproduced, or translated to produce additional copies. The original itself is not copied or derived from something else.
PCA	Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA). Once the printed circuit board (PCB) is complete, electronic components must be assembled to form a functional printed circuit assembly or PCA.
PCL	Printer Command Language (PCL) is a Page Description Language (PDL) developed by HP as a printer protocol. PCL has become an industry standard. Originally developed for early Inkjet printers, PCL has been released in varying levels for thermal, dot matrix printers and laser printers.
PDF	Portable Document Format (PDF) is a proprietary file format developed by Adobe Systems. A PDF represents two dimension documents in a device independent and resolution independent format.
PostScript (PS)	PostScript (PS) is a page description language and programming language used primarily in electronic and desktop publishing. PostScript is run in an interpreter to generate an image.
Printer Driver	A program used to send commands and transfer data from the computer to the printer.
Print Media	Media like paper, envelopes, labels, and transparencies which can be used in a printer, scanner, fax, or copier.
PPM	Pages Per Minute (PPM) is a method of measurement for determining how fast a printer works, meaning the number of pages a printer can produce in one minute.
Protocol	A convention or standard that controls or enables the connection, communication, and data transfer between two computing endpoints.
Resolution	The sharpness of an image, measured in Dots Per Inch (DPI). The higher the DPI, the greater the resolution.
SMB	Server Message Block (SMB) is a network protocol mainly applied to share files, printers, serial ports, and miscellaneous communications between nodes on a network. SMB also provides an authenticated Interprocess communication mechanism.
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard for email transmissions across the internet. SMTP is a relatively simple, text-based protocol, where one or more recipient of a message are specified and the message text is transferred. It is a client server protocol where the client transmits an email message to the server.
Subnet Mask	The subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network address to determine which part of the address is the network address and which part is the host address.
TCP/IP	The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP) are the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the internet and most commercial networks run.
TIFF	Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is a variable-resolution bitmapped image format. TIFF describes image data that typically come from scanners. TIFF images use tags, keywords defining the characteristics of the image that is included in the file. This flexible and platform-independent format can be used for pictures that have been made by various image processing applications.

Toner Cartridge	A bottle or container that holds toner, which is used in a machine like a printer. Toner is a powder used in laser printers and photocopiers. The toner forms the text and images on printed paper. Toner can be fused by a combination of heat/pressure from the fuser, causing it to bind the fibers in the paper.
TWAIN	An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN compliant scanner with TWAIN-compliant software, a scan can be initiated from the program. TWAIN is an image capture API for Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh operating systems.
URL	Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is the global address of documents and resources on the internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use. The second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.
USB	Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. Unlike the parallel port, USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.
Watermark	A watermark is a recognizable image or pattern in paper that appears ligher when viewed by transmitted light. Watermarks were first introduced in Bologna, Italy in 1282. Watermarks have been used by papermakers to identify their product, and also on postage stamps, currency, and other government documents to discourage counterfeiting.
XPS	XML Paper Specification (XPS) is a specification for a Page Description Language (PDL) and a new document format developed by Microsoft. This has benefits for portable document and electronic documents. It is an XML-based specification based on a new print path and vector-based, device-independent document format.

B Revision History

- Revision History

Revision History

Table B-1 Revision History

Revision Number	Revision Date	Revision Notes
		Updated parts numbers throughout document to remove "SAM-" prefix and updated new part numbers as identified.
6.0	July, 2018	Minor content edits (including graphics)
5.0	March, 2018	Upload all graphics to data base Part number updates Minor changes
4.0	January, 2018	Minor changes to envirnmental specs and engine dimensions
3.0	November, 2017	Updated code data for Diagnostics and Service Functions Replaced Product Overview with the UG-style Printer Views and removed the previous “Machine external view” section. Updated R&R TOC level to 1. Replaced references to SAW with WISE and removed QR codes. Replaced Samsung Paper Jam content with the UG content Moved specifications out of the appendix to the Product Specifications chapter Added additional specification content to the Product Specifications chapter from the UG Removed the lists of tables and figures and the alphabetical and numerical lists of parts Placed ESD cautions at the beginning of the R&R sections for the main printer and both finishers. Removed the Samsung precaution sections Updated part numbers, part descriptions, diagrams, and photos Linked Removal and Replacement procedures are linked to part number information.

Table B-1 Revision History (continued)

Revision Number	Revision Date	Revision Notes
2.0	July, 2017	Updated TOC to only consist of 3 levels Add error code and CPMD overview Added “How to search for documentation” section. Updated toner average yield data Changed all occurrences of #2 Phillips to #2 JIS
1.0	April, 2017	Service manual initial release

C Certificate of Volatility

Certificate of Volatility

Figure C-1 Certificate of Volatility (E725XXdn/z; 1 of 2)

Hewlett-Packard Certificate of Volatility		
Model: **HP LaserJet Managed MFP E725XXdn** **HP LaserJet Managed Flow MFP E725XXz**	Part Number: **Managed** X3A60A= E72525dn X3A63A= E72530dn X3A66A= E72535dn X3A59A= E72525z X3A62A= E72530z X3A65A= E72535z	Address: Hewlett Packard Company 11311 Chinden Blvd Boise, ID 83714

Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): **Z Bundles** DDR3 - DRAM	Size: HP Formatter 3GB- Obsidian 1 GB –Accel board 4 GB - Main Formatter	User Modifiable: ☐ Yes ☒ No	Function: Operation system and print/scan buffer	Steps to clear memory: When the printer is powered off the memory is erased.
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): **dn Bundles** DDR3 - DRAM	Size: HP Formatter 3GB- Obsidian 4 GB - Main Formatter	User Modifiable: ☐ Yes ☒ No	Function:	Steps to clear memory: .
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: ☐ Yes ☐ No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:

Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): IOD EEPROM	Size: 32KB	User Modifiable: ☐ Yes ☒ No	Function: Store customer setting data for backup/restore	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): **HP side: SPI Flash**	Size: 4MB	User Modifiable: ☒ Yes ☐No	Function: Contains the boot code and factory product configuration data required for the device to function. User modifications are limited to downloading digitally signed HP firmware images.	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): Samsung MSOK : MSOK – TPM MSOK – CRUM MSOK - EEProm	Size: 2 KB 256 Bytes 1 KB	User Modifiable: ☐ Yes ☒ No	Function: RSA Key Pair is stored on the TPM, HP-signed Immutable ID Certificate is stored on the CRUM, the new Key pair is saved on the EEProm	Steps to clear memory: There are none. FW reload will handle any issues.

Figure C-2 Certificate of Volatility (E725XXdn/z; 2 of 2)

Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc.): HDD	Size: 320GB	User Modifiable: ☒ Yes ☐ No	Function: Stores customer data, OS, applications, digitally signed firmware images, persistent data, and temporary data used for processing and system functions	Steps to clear memory: There are several ways to erase this: 1.Erase and Unlock Encrypted Disk – This changes the encryption keys rendering all data unreadable. 2.Secure Storage Erase – Erases temporary files and job data by overwriting information one or three times. 3.Secure Disk Erase – Industry standard ATA Secure Erase. Overwrites all data on the HDD. 4.Secure File Erase – Erases files when jobs finish processing by overwriting them one or three times.

USB
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe below
Print jobs, HP digitally signed firmware upgrades, 3rd party application loading. USB ports can be disabled.
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe below
Diagnostic service logs can be uploaded. Print files can be printed via a USB thumb drive.

RF/RFID	
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics. (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) ☐ Yes ☒ No If Yes please describe below	
Purpose:	
Frequency:	Bandwidth:
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):
Specifications:	

Other Transmission Capabilities	
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe below:	
Purpose: WiFi Direct Print	
Frequency: 2.4 GHz, 5GHz	Bandwidth: 2401 - 2495 MHz; depending on selected channel in 2.4GHz band. 5180 - 5825 MHz; depending on selected channel in 5GHz band.
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):
Specifications: 802.11 b/g/n	

Other Transmission Capabilities	
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe below:	
Purpose: Device Beaconing, Secure Print Apps	
Frequency: 2.4 GHz	Bandwidth: 2400-2483.5 MHz; depending on selected channel.
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):
Specifications: BTLE4.0 compliant	

Other Capabilities
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? ☐ Yes ☒ No If Yes please describe below:
Purpose:
Specifications:

Index

Symbols/Numerics

(GX/z models) document feeder
  document feeder open cover 436
2-x rollers rollers, kit
  high-capacity input (HCI) 578

A

accelerator board 208
  after performing services 208
  before performing service 208
  introduction 208
  post service test 209
  remove the accelerator board 209
  remove the formatter cover 209
  required tools 208
  unpack the replacement assembly 210
acoustic specifications 14
after-service checklist 112, 824, 1268
APS sensor 499

B

backup error
  32.WX.YZ error 622
  reset error 622
  restore error 622
blade motor (M19)
  removing and replacing 1229
blurred image 777
booklet feed entrance motor (M13)
  removing and replacing 1210
booklet finisher
  removing and replacing 1175
booklet finisher fold stopper unit
  removing and replacing 1198
booklet finisher front cover
  removing and replacing 1173
booklet finisher PCA
  removing and replacing 1186
booklet tray
  removing and replacing 914
buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)
  removing and replacing 1085
BYOD table
  card reader 213
  NFC kit 213

C

C fold motor (M20)
  removing and replacing 1233
Calibrate/Cleaning menu, control panel 732
capture log 766
card reader 212
  install 213
caster cover (finisher)
  removing and replacing 917
caster, wheel
  high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit 571
caution for moving the scanner 65
cautions iii
certificate of volatility 1499
Channel partners support
  HP Channel Services Network (CSN) 106, 1241
checklists
  after-service 112, 824, 1268
  preservice 112, 823, 1268
CIS
  cleaning 115
  maintenance 115
cleaning
  CIS 115
  document feeder white bar (LX/dn models) 115
  scan glass 117
  transfer roller 118
cleaning page 733
clear paper jams 1242
component test
  special mode test 640
components
  diagnostic tests 640
  scanning system 59
connector error
  65.WX.YZ error 623
control panel 236
  Backup/Restore menu 732
  Calibrate/Cleaning menu 732
  Copy menu (MFP only) 709
  CPMD 622
  Fax menu (fax models only) 723
  messages, types of 1241
  Print menu 727
  Reports menu 663
  Scan menu (MFP only) 714
  Settings menu 666
  Supplies menu 728
  Trays menu 729
  troubleshooting menu 730
  USB Firmware Upgrade menu 735
control panel diagnostic flowcharts 631
control panel menus 663
controller PCA (finisher)
  removing and replacing 950
conventions, document iii
Copy menu (MFP only), control panel 709
copy specifications 20
current settings pages 644

D

DC controller communication error
55.WX.YZ error 623
DC controller firmware error
70.WX.YZ error 623
debug log 766
decoding
message 622
defeating
interlocks 638
determine problem source 627
developer
fan 171
developer fan 171
developer unit 41
remove 195
replace 195
diagnostics
component 640
engine 638
LED 636
diagrams 1478
DCF 1487
FDB 1483
finisher system 1255
front/opc 1485
fuser exit 1479
HVPS 1481
information 1477
laser scanner assembly 1481
LVPS 1483
pickup/ph drive/side 1480
scanner 1486
toner 1482
UI 1484
digital sending error (firmware)
44.WX.YZ error 623
document conventions iii
document feeder
document feeder input tray (LX/dn models) 367
Document feeder (GX/z models)
document feeder contact image sensor (CIS) fan (GX/z models) 473
document feeder front motor 456
document feeder PCA fan (GX/z models) 470
document feeder rear motors (GX/z models) 460
document feeder with ultrasonic sensor PCA (GX/z models) 476
document feeder error
31.WX.YZ error 622
document feeder input tray (GX/z models)
document feeder input tray (GX/z models) 423
document feeder pick 443
document feeder pick roller 443
document feeder pick roller (LX/dn models) 395
document feeder problems 786
document feeder reverse roller 408
document feeder reverse roller (GX/z models) 447
document feeder skew 803
document feeder white bar (LX/dn models)
cleaning 115
maintenance 115
drain 768
drive
motors 49
system 49
drive system 49
duct drive 54
fuser/exit drive 55
main drive unit 50
pickup drive 53
toner supply drive 56
drive unit problems 794
drivers, supported 11
drum unit
remove 203
replace 203
dual cassete feeder (DCF) motor 520
dual cassete feeder (DCF) PCA 517
dual cassete feeder (DCF) pickup motor 524
dual cassete feeder (DCF) pickup units 531
dual cassete feeder (DCF) rear cover 512
dual cassete feeder (DCF) right door 514
dual cassete feeder (DCF) unit
dual cassete feeder (DCF) motor 524
dual cassete feeder (DCF) PCA 517
dual cassette feeder (DCF) unit 97
dual cassete feeder (DCF) motor 520
dual cassete feeder (DCF) pickup units 531
dual cassete feeder (DCF) rear cover 512
dual cassete feeder (DCF) right door 514
dual cassette feeder diagram 1487
duct drive 54
dummy feed guide
removing and replacing 968
duplex
sensor 356
duplex sensor 356
duplexer error
69.WX.YZ error 623

E

each unit functions
finisher system 819
ejector unit
removing and replacing 998
electrical circuit problem 799
electrical parts layout
finisher system layout 814
electrical specifications 14
electrostatic discharge (ESD) 110, 824, 827, 1268, 1271
Embedded Jetdirect error
80.WX.YZ error 623
engine
diagnostics 638
engine diagnostics 749
engine error (LaserJet)
46.WX.YZ error 623
63.WX.YZ error 623
engine error (PageWide)
61.WX.YZ error 623
envelope rotate 767
error
fault 622
error messages
types of 1241

ESD electrostatic discharge (ESD) 110, 824, 827, 1268, 1271
event log 644
clear using touchscreen control panel 645
event log error (firmware)
42.WX.YZ error 622
exit drive unit 271

F

fan error
58.WX.YZ error 623
fault count 748
fault log 748
Fax menu (fax models only), control panel 723
FDB diagram 1483
feed entrance motor (M1)
removing and replacing 1073
feed exit motor (M2)
removing and replacing 1079
feed roller 290
feed sensor 1 148
feeding system 36
main components and functions 34
overview 33
tray 1 feed assembly 38
feeding system information 33
feeding system problem 795
FIH
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution, install 219
finisher sectional view (Booklet finisher 809
finisher system 809
diagrams 1255
each unit functions 819
electrical parts layout 814
finisher sectional view (Booklet finisher) 809
paper path 813
PCA connection information 820
firmware communication error
49.WX.YZ error 623
firmware install error
99.WX.YZ error 623
hard disk error 623
remote firmware upgrade error 623
flow (GX/z bundles) document feeder
document feeder contact image sensor (CIS) (GX/z models) 428
flow (z bundles) document feeder
document feeder white backing 126
flow ADF
whole unit 132
flow ADF skew 803
foggy image 778
folding roller motor (M18)
removing and replacing 1223
formatter
locating 3
formatter (and cage) 224
formatter lights 636
front cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 897
front door (finisher)
removing and replacing 885
front lower cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 905
front tamper motor (M6)
removing and replacing 1093
front tamper unit
removing and replacing 1023
front/opc diagram 1485
fuser 192
drive assembly board 162
out sensor 245
fuser drive assembly board 162
fuser drive unit 271
fuser error
41.WX.YZ error 622
laser scanner error 622
paper path error 622
fuser error (LaserJet)
50.WX.YZ error 623
fuser exit diagram 1479
fuser problem 785
fuser unit 43, 192
fuser unit temperature control 44
overview 43
fuser unit drive, mono models 44
fuser unit temperature control 44
fuser-out sensor 245
fuser/exit drive 55
fuser/exit drive unit 271
fusing performance problems 782

G

General Settings menu, control panel 666
general specifications 14
guide post and guide post plate
high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit 573

H

hard disk partition error
98.WX.YZ error 623
hard-disk drive (320 GB formatter HDD) 221
hardware configuration 81, 95, 96
HVPS board 92
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 4) GX ADF models 90
LVPS PCA (Type 4) GX ADF models 90
main controller (main board) 84
hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning 636
HDD 231
HDD (320 GB formatter HDD) 221
high-capacity input
high-capacity input kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray 2-x roller 578
high-capacity input belt - timing gear
removing and replacing 556
high-capacity input caster wheel 571
high-capacity input drive assembly - feed
removing and replacing 584
high-capacity input drive assembly - sub-pulley
removing and replacing 599
high-capacity input guide post and guide post plate 573
high-capacity input kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray 2-x rollers 578
high-capacity input main electrical connector 568
high-capacity input motor - feed drive
removing and replacing 589
high-capacity input motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left 594
remove and replace 594

high-capacity input motor - step drive 597
high-capacity input PCA 565
high-capacity input photo interrupter and sensor bracket 617
high-capacity input right door
removing and replacing 549
high-capacity input sub - pickup
removing and replacing 539
high-capacity input sub-paper side right 610
high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit
high-capacity input caster wheel 571
high-capacity input guide post upper and guide post and plate 573
high-capacity input motor - step drive 597
high-capacity input photo interrupter and sensor bracket 617
high-capacity input sub-paper side right 610
high-capacity input tray main electrical connector 568
high-capacity input tray PCA 565
home button is unresponsive 635
HP Channel Services Network (CSN)
Channel partners support 106, 1241
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH), install 219
HP Jetdirect print server
lights 636
HVPS board 92
HVPS diagram 1481

I

image creation 40
developer unit 41
imaging unit 40
overview 40
image management 764
image problem 783
image quality 769
blurred image 777
drive unit problems 794
electrical circuit problem 799
feeding system problem 795
flow ADF or ADF skew 803
foggy image 778
fuser problem 785
horizontal black lines 775
horizontal periodic light/dark lines or dots 776
image problem 783
laser scanner assembly problem 798
light image 779
other errors 783
paper stained 783
poor fusing performance 782
scanner and ADF problems 786
skewed image 781
uneven pitch and jitter 779
vertical black lines 772
vertical light lines 773
imaging unit 40
individual component diagnostics 636
inner finisher
block diagram 1475
ejector assembly 1454
ejector motor assembly 1431
end fence home sensor 1473
entrance motor 1286
entrance sensor 1281
exit motor 1297
exit sensor 1292
front jogger home sensor 1313
front jogger motor 1300
main paddle 1452
main paddle home sensor 1449
main paddle motor 1446
paper holding lever solenoid 1400
paper support home sensor 1418
paper support motor 1409
punch dust full sensor 1467
rear jogger home sensor 1334
rear jogger motor 1325
remove and replace 1270
specifications 101
stack beam sensor 1384
stack position sensor 1389
stacker encoder sensor 1369
stacker lower limit switch 1376
stacker motor 1362
stapler 1341
stapler position sensor assembly 1345
traverse motor 1356
input accessory error
67.WX.YZ error 623
input/output error
40.WX.YZ error 622
install
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution 219
interlocks
defeating 638
internal diagnostics error
90.WX.YZ error 623
video display error 623
interpret control-panel messages and event log entries 1241, 1475

J

jam error (LaserJet)
13.WX.YZ error 622
jam error (PageWide)
13.WX.YZ error 622
jam removal 736
jams
locations 736
Jetdirect print server
lights 636
jitter image 779
job accounting error (firmware)
48.WX.YZ error 623
job management error (firmware) 623
job pipeline error (firmware) 623
job parser error (firmware)
47.WX.YZ error 623
printer calibration error 623

K

keyboard 240

L

laser scanner assembly 46
information 46
laser scanning optical path 47
laser scanner assembly diagram 1481
laser scanner assembly overview 46
laser scanner assembly problem 798

laser scanner error (LaserJet)
51.WX.YZ error 623
52.WX.YZ error 623
laser scanning optical path 47
LED lamp module 490
LEDs. *See* lights
left cover
remove 325
replace 325
light image 779
lights
formatter 636
troubleshooting with 636
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 4) GX ADF models 90
lower shield assembly
removing and replacing 921
LVPS
board 166
LVPS board 166
LVPS diagram 1483
LVPS PCA (Type 4) GX ADF models 90

M
machine cleaning for maintenance (GX/z models)
cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS (GX/z models) 115
main controller (main board) 84
main drive 267
main drive unit 50, 267
main memory clear 766
main pca disk drive 231
main tray moving motor (M11)
removing and replacing 1163
maintenance 114
CIS 115
document feeder white bar 115
machine cleaning for maintenance 114
scan glass 117
transfer roller 118
maintenance counts
fault count 748
part replacement count 749
memory error
82.WX.YZ error 623
EMMC error 623
hard disk error 623
menu map 644
menus, control panel
Calibrate/Cleaning 732
Copy (MFP only) 709
Fax (fax models only) 723
General Settings 666
Manage Trays 729
Print 727
Reports 663
Scan (MFP only) 714
Supplies 728
messages
types of 1241
motor error (LaserJet)
59.WX.YZ error 623
motors 49
motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left, high-capacity input 594
motor - step drive (HCI) 597
mp unit 333
multipurpose unit 333

N
Near Field Communication error
81.WX.YZ error 623
Bluetooth error 623
external I/O card error 623
internal EIO error 623
wireless error 623
NFC kit 212
install 213
no control panel sound 634
notes iii

O
operating systems, supported 11
optional accessories 31
ordering 824, 1269
output accessory error
66.WX.YZ error 623
OXPd/Web kit error
45.WX.YZ error 623

P
page error
21.WX.YZ error 622
paper handling error (LaserJet)
56.WX.YZ error 623
paper handling specifications 22
paper jams
locations 736
paper path
finisher system 813
paper size sensor 300
paper stained 783
part replacement alert 767
part replacement count 749
parts and accessories 824, 1269
parts and diagrams
ADF (GX/z models) 421
ADF (LX/dn models) 359
ADF exterior (LX/dn models) 393
ADF image scanner (LX/dn models) 486
ADF image scanner, lower (LX/dn models) 494
ADF main frame (GX/z models) 454
ADF main frame (LX/dn models) 406
ADF pickup (LX/dn models) 393
ADF upper pickup (GX/z models) 441
ADFstacker (GX/z models) 452
alignment (finisher) 848
BKT main blade (finisher) 852
booklet finisher 1 828
booklet finisher 2 830
booklet finisher 3 832
booklet finisher 4 834
booklet finisher 5 836
booklet finisher 6 838
booklet finisher 7 840
cover 323
cover f bm (finisher) 870
curl pawl (finisher) 842
curl pawl motor (finisher) 842
DCF main 510
DCF main frame pickup 529
DCF main frame pickup 1 527
DCF main frame pickup, upper 535
div cam (finisher) 862
door (finisher) 858
drive buffer (finisher) 850
dual cassette feeder (DCF) 510
entrance guide (finisher) 846, 860
entrance motor (finisher) 848

FD stopper unit (finisher) 852
finisher sub 1 1273
finisher sub 8 1279
finisher sub booklet 872
Flow image scanner 484
fold roller (finisher) 854
front alignment (tamper) (finisher) 864
fuser exit drive 275
hb motor (finisher) 862
hb motor, floor standing finisher 844
HCI drive 583
HCI sub - cassette 608
HFC main 538
HFC sub - frame 555
HFC sub - pickup upper/lower 576
high-capacity input (HCI) tray (E725XX and E778XX only) 538
idle fold (finisher) 870
idle fold paddle(finisher) 870
Image scanner, lower 503, 504
inner finisher 1271
IPTU (bridge) 874
jam clear (finisher) 852
low exit, floor standing finisher 844
low paddle (finisher) 848
main assembly 120
main blade (finisher) 854
main engine frame 253
main exit (finisher) 860
main frame 298
main frame pickup 288
main frame pickup 1 286
main frame pickup 2 286
main frame pickup, upper 296
main parts 120
mid jam (finisher) 860
paddle motor (finisher) 848, 862
PCA bm (finisher) 870
rear alignment (tamper) (finisher) 866
registration guide (finisher) 858
registration sub-frame 277
right door 331
right door duplex 354
right door exit 352
right jam (finisher) 862
SCU motor (finisher) 846
shield (finisher) 868
STK motor (finisher) 846
Sub 7 - Inner finisher 1275, 1277
sub-inner finisher 1271
three fold blade (finisher) 856
three fold exit (finisher) 842
three fold motor (finisher) 842
top cover (finisher) 858
top door (finisher) 858
top frame (finisher) 854
top guide, floor standing finisher 844
top jam (finisher) 850
top lower (finisher) 850
transfer buffer (finisher) 862
parts, diagrams, removal and replacemnt 105
PCA - ADF HIC (GX/z models) 482
PCA connection information
finisher system 820
PCA precautions 111, 822
periodic black dots 775
periodic horizontal light/dark lines or dots 776
photo interrupter (and sensor bracket)
high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit 617
pick 290
pick roller
document feeder 443
document feeder (LX/dn model) 395
pickup drive 53, 264
pickup drive unit 264
pickup roller 290
pickup/ph drive/side diagram 1480
plastic latches information 112, 823
post-service tests 112, 824, 1268
power
consumption 14
power subsystem 627
power supply
troubleshooting 627
power-on troubleshooting overview 627
pre-boot menu options 646
precations
information 111, 822
preservice checklist 112, 823, 1268
print adjustment 760
print bar error (PageWide)
62.WX.YZ error 623
print drivers, supported 11
Print menu, control panel 727
print quality
test 112, 824, 1268
print quality problems 769
print quality troubleshooting 769
print reports 748
print specifications 17
Print Test Page 679
print test patterns 765
printer memory error
20.WX.YZ error 622
printing process overview 40
problem-solving
messages, types of 1241
Process Cleaning Page 733
product number
locating 3

R

real-time clock error
11.WX.YZ error 622
rear cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 892
rear tamper motor (M7)
removing and replacing 1119
rear tamper unit
removing and replacing 1048
rear top cover
remove 328
replace 328
registration unit 279
removal and replacement
right top cover (finisher) 878
removal and replacement precautions 111, 822
removal order
removing order 113
remove
left cover 325
rear top cover 328
remove and replace
inner finisher 1270
removing and replacing
blade motor (M19) 1229
booklet feed entrance motor (M13) 1210

booklet finisher 1175
booklet finisher fold stopper unit 1198
booklet finisher front cover 1173
booklet finisher PCA 1186
booklet tray 914
buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3) 1085
C fold motor (M20) 1233
caster cover (finisher) 917
controller PCA (finisher) 950
dummy feed guide 968
ejector unit 998
feed entrance motor (M1) 1073
feed exit motor (M2) 1079
folding roller motor (M18) 1223
front cover (finisher) 897
front door (finisher 885
front lowercover (finisher) 905
front tamper motor (M6) 1093
front tamper unit 1023
high-capacity input belt - timing gear 556
high-capacity input drive assembly - feed 584
high-capacity input drive assembly - sub-pulley 599
high-capacity input motor - feed drive 589
high-capacity input right door 549
high-capacity input sub - pickup 539
lower shield assembly 921
main tray moving motor (M11) 1163
rear cover (finisher) 892
rear tamper motor (M7) 1119
rear tamper unit 1048
SCU motor (M10) 1145
separate pawl motor (M17) 1220
stapler unit 956
stopper moving motor (M16) 1216
TE presser motor (M14) 1213
top cover (finisher) 881
top jam access cover 974
top lower feed assembly 985
top output bin 876
upper shield assembly 934
removing parts
checklists 112, 823, 1268
replace
remove 325, 328
Reports menu, control panel 663
reverse roller 290
document feeder 408
right door 188
open switch 320
right door open switch 320
right top cover (finisher)
removal and replacement 878

S

scan glass 488
Scan menu (MFP only), control panel 714
scan specifications 18
scanner
caution for moving 65
imaging unit 496
PCA - ADF HIC (GX/z models) 482
scan glass 488
scanner diagnostics 755
scanner diagram 1486
scanner error
30.WX.YZ error 622
scanner glass
cleaning 117
maintenance 117
scanner imaging unit 496
scanner problems 786
scanner system
information 57
scanner system overview 57
scanning system
components 59
scanning system components 59
SCU motor (M10)
removing and replacing 1145
security error
33.WX.YZ error 622
sensor error
54.WX.YZ error 623
58.WX.YZ error 623
separate pawl motor (M17)
removing and replacing 1220
separation roller
document separation 447
serial number
locating 3
service and support information 808
WISE and CSN 106, 1241
service approach 111, 822, 1268
service functions 765
service mode
adjustment 760
capture log 766
debug log 766
drain 768
engine diagnostics 749
envelope rotate 767
fault count 748
fault log 748
how to enter 741
image management 764
information 741
information, general 747
main memory clear 766
menu tree 741
part replacement alert 767
part replacement count 749
print reports 748
print test patterns 765
scanner diagnostics 755
service functions 765
software version 747
supply status 747
TR control mode 766
service parts 31
size sensor 300
skewed image 781
software and solution specifications 30
software version 747
specifications 8
copy specifications 20
electrical and acoustic 14
general specifications 14
optional accessories 31
paper handling specifications 22
print specifications 17
scan specifications 18
service parts 31
software and solution 30
supplies 31
stain on back of paper 783

standard (dn bundles) document feeder
document feeder white backing 123
document feeder whole unit 129
standard (LX/dn bundles) document feeder
document feeder (ADF) PCA 400
document feeder feed motor 415
standard (LX/dn model) document feeder
document feeder main motor 386
standard (LX/dn model) document feeder (ADF)
document feeder (ADF) contact image sensor (CIS; LX/dn model) 374
standard (LX/dn models) document feeder (ADF)
document feeder (ADF) jam access cover (LX/dn models) 361
stapler unit
removing and replacing 956
static, precautions for 110, 824, 827, 1268, 1271
status
messages, types of 1241
stopper moving motor (M16)
removing and replacing 1216
sub-paper side rights
high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit 610
supplies 31, 824, 1269
supplies error (LaserJet)
10.WX.YZ error 622
supplies error (PageWide)
17.WX.YZ error 622
Supplies menu, control panel 728
supply status 747
system error (LaserJet)
62.WX.YZ error 623
system requirements
minimum 12

T

TE presser motor (M14)
removing and replacing 1213
tech mode
information 741
temperature sensor 356
tests
post-service 112, 824, 1268
print-quality 112, 824, 1268
tips iii
toner
collection unit 302
sensor 302
toner collection unit sensor 302
toner diagram 1482
toner duct 259, 305
toner duct drive unit 259
toner supply 255
toner supply drive 56, 255
toner supply drive unit 255
top cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 881
top jam access cover
removing and replacing 974
top lower feed assembly
removing and replacing 985
top output bin
removing and replacing 876
torque limiter
HCI kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray 2-x roller 578
touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image) 632
touchscreen has an unresponsive zone 633
TR control mode 766
transfer roller 314
cleaning 118
maintenance 118
Tray 1
jams, clearing 736
Tray 2
jams, clearing 737
Tray 3
jams, clearing 737
tray motor error (LaserJet)
60.WX.YZ error 623
tray selection - use requested tray 680
trays
jams, clearing 737
Trays menu, control panel 729
troubleshooting
checklist 641
control panel checks 631
lights, using 636
power 627
process 627

U

UI diagram 1484
understand lights on the formatter
formatter lights 636
understand the lights on the formatter
HP Jetdirect LEDs 637
uneven pitch and jitter 779
upper shield assembly
removing and replacing 934
Use Requested Tray 680

V

vertical black lines 772
vertical light lines 773
vertical white lines 773

W

warnings iii
Web-based Interactive Search Engine
WISE 106, 1241
WISE
Web-based Interactive Search Engine 106, 1241
working table
card reader 213
NFC kit 213